

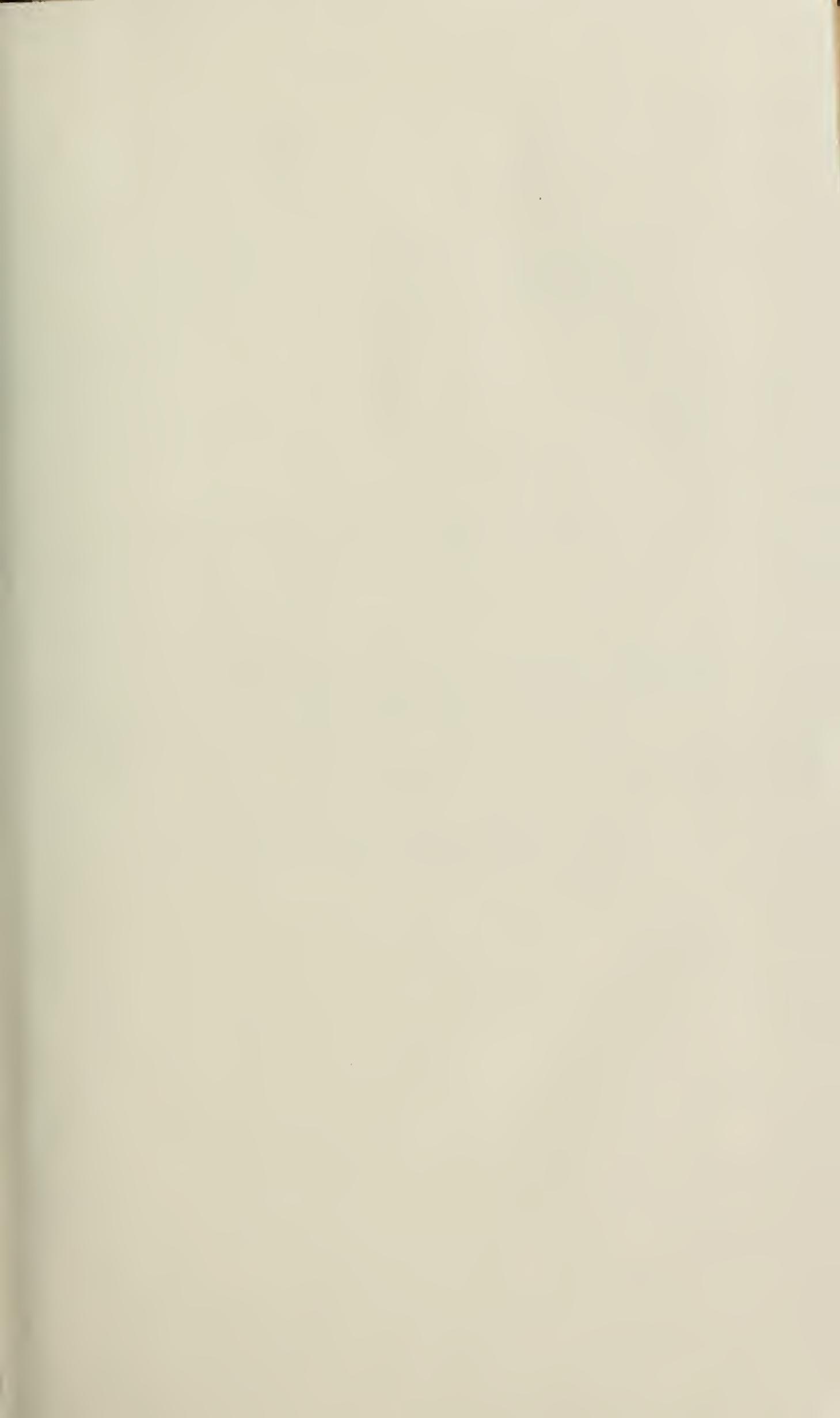




*Conservation of this  
volume was made  
possible through the  
generous support of  
PETER WARRIAN  
and the Friends  
of the Library*

**PIMS**

PONTIFICAL INSTITUTE OF MEDIAEVAL STUDIES





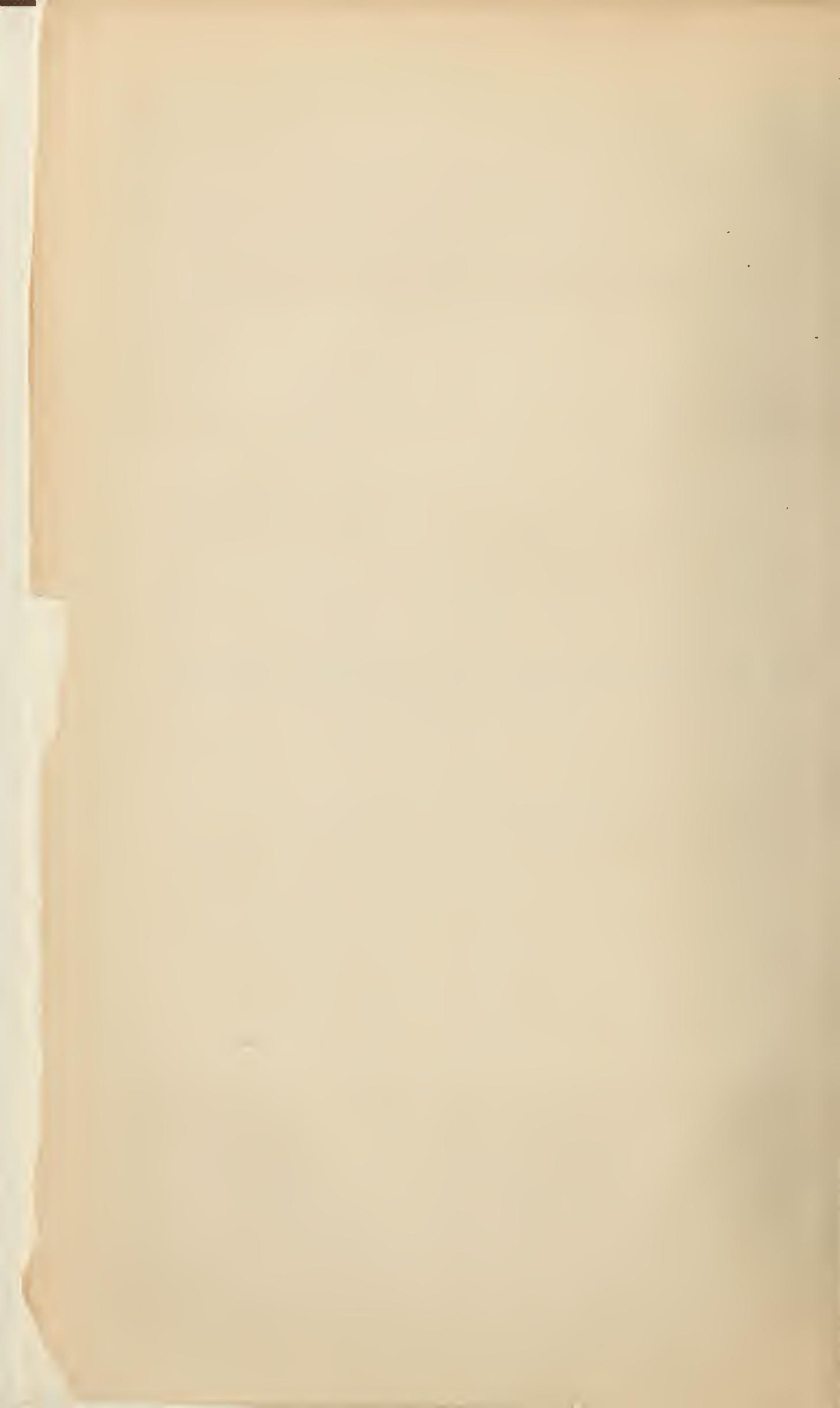
RERUM BRITANNICARUM MEDII ÆVI  
SCRIPTORES,

OR

CHRONICLES AND MEMORIALS OF GREAT BRITAIN  
AND IRELAND

DURING

THE MIDDLE AGES.



THE CHRONICLES AND MEMORIALS  
OF  
GREAT BRITAIN AND IRELAND  
DURING THE MIDDLE AGES.

PUBLISHED BY THE AUTHORITY OF HER MAJESTY'S TREASURY, UNDER  
THE DIRECTION OF THE MASTER OF THE ROLLS.

---

On the 26th of January 1857, the Master of the Rolls submitted to the Treasury a proposal for the publication of materials for the History of this Country from the Invasion of the Romans to the Reign of Henry VIII.

The Master of the Rolls suggested that these materials should be selected for publication under competent editors without reference to periodical or chronological arrangement, without mutilation or abridgment, preference being given, in the first instance, to such materials as were most scarce and valuable.

He proposed that each chronicle or historical document to be edited should be treated in the same way as if the editor were engaged on an *Editio Princeps*; and for this purpose the most correct text should be formed from an accurate collation of the best MSS.

To render the work more generally useful, the Master of the Rolls suggested that the editor should give an account of the MSS. employed by him, of their age and their peculiarities; that he should add to the work a brief account of the life and times of the author, and any remarks necessary to explain the chronology; but no other note or comment was to be allowed, except what might be necessary to establish the correctness of the text.

The works to be published in octavo, separately, as they were finished ; the whole responsibility of the task resting upon the editors, who were to be chosen by the Master of the Rolls with the sanction of the Treasury.

The Lords of Her Majesty's Treasury, after a careful consideration of the subject, expressed their opinion in a Treasury Minute, dated February 9, 1857, that the plan recommended by the Master of the Rolls "was well calculated for the accomplishment of this important national object, in an effectual and satisfactory manner, within a reasonable time, and provided proper attention be paid to economy, in making the detailed arrangements, without unnecessary expense."

They expressed their approbation of the proposal that each chronicle and historical document should be edited in such a manner as to represent with all possible correctness the text of each writer, derived from a collation of the best MSS., and that no notes should be added, except such as were illustrative of the various readings. They suggested, however, that the preface to each work should contain, in addition to the particulars proposed by the Master of the Rolls, a biographical account of the author, so far as authentic materials existed for that purpose, and an estimate of his historical credibility and value.

*Rolls House,  
December 1857.*

---

MATTHÆI PARISIENSIS,  
MONACHI SANCTI ALBANI,  
HISTORIA ANGLORUM.



Digitized by the Internet Archive  
in 2011 with funding from  
University of Toronto

<http://www.archive.org/details/matthiparisie01pari>



De coronacione Regis Westfalia primi.

Hoc dicitur Teneatque de Leibniz  
metropolitae regis felio et sanctissimo  
coheredario. Hoc uerum in  
oꝝ Artilio epiphate nunc  
muniti aperte coꝝ sibi  
adiuuante uisopra-  
ta uictoria. Auctio[n]e  
letatu adiutio lo-

Donatianum.

Non illi nam p[ro]p[ter]a antequam e[st]i possit perita. Eliguntur  
et. tunc: nunclet sue threnuratae: aetere harald.

Ego p[ro]p[ter]o e[st]i siuia evanescere inteciat:



Et quod papa nunc pro iustitia et contra pacem  
debet agere: nunc est illa threnuratio incepientia  
et regno cuiusdam ex ultimis incepientia  
vicio unitari obit pacis: invenit angeli  
seminatur. Quia est enim ab hanterio  
vano regno erit deinceps multa et vacuitas  
et angustia velut ab alto Beatus enim  
semeiam: ipso Simeone qui dicitur Seve  
futuram in mundo prefigurauit. Tertius  
tico amputans per seipsum velut  
eum si ab utraro homine nesciret: ut non  
comitare ad latitudinem. **H**ic tamen  
est de aliis aliud: dicitur alio latitudine  
regni dicitur latitudine. **C**ontra enim esse  
annuntiatur secundum a scripturam eam debet  
eo distingue et aliterne designaverat  
ut excellenter significaret. **D**einde homini  
obligatio est sicut ergo in fratrum suorum  
et regna spiritualia: sicut et terrae.  
**Q**uoniam etiam etiam est disponit fratre un  
nus ipsius: sed non a nomine sed in obediens  
ab aliis: et huiusmodi sunt multi inveniuntur.  
**Q**uod tamen est si nichil collat. neque  
mater transiret a filio: non videtur  
manum: et huiusmodi sunt que regni sponse de  
Dante: magis in nomine datur: non in modicū  
and est quid remittitur: sed Hugo postulat  
eum invenire. **C**ontra voluntate regum  
sicutus sententia: quod omnes alii  
doluerit: quid est ad regis facies onus? et  
quod in diecum annis in nobis reges. **Q**uod  
ad alia frequentem confringere: invenire. **M**ulto  
invenimus. **A**llus pro loco dicitur penitentia  
in novis etiam pataverit: multo crederet  
quod Recuperatio: sicut est in aliis: angela  
sed ad latitudinem: non enim latitudinem  
ut invenimus. **M**ulto videtur quod: operari  
non invenimus. **A**llus pro loco dicitur penitentia  
in novis etiam pataverit: multo crederet  
quod Recuperatio: sicut est in aliis: angela  
sed ad latitudinem: non enim latitudinem  
ut invenimus. **M**ulto videtur quod: operari  
non invenimus.

qui precepsa regnante. Deinde etiam  
qui amicata, et fratellata fuerat  
ab eo regnante regnante. Tunc  
ad regnum apostolam: festet terrem.  
**Q**uoniamque est regnum dei sicut regnum  
nisi regni: et non tam sicut regnum  
angeli: et sicut regnum animalium.  
**Q**uia Ieronimus: sicut archi euclidi. Neputa  
maro quoniam tam comitatu[m] sicut non  
manum: et tam anglo que leprospice de  
dante in genere distingue: in dicit  
al[ia] q[uod] omnia mundi: sub uno profect  
sunt iusti. Unde nobilior regnum  
secundum regnum animalium iusti ab  
debet. Quod si ad regnum animalium  
reducatur in duciam ad non regnare. q[uod] si  
ad alia regna regnare costringatur: inveniret. At  
nam breviter et latenter spiritu: operari  
in centro Mallo: superba vnde non  
inveniret. Atq[ue] loca decora penitentia  
in voluntate parauerit: inde crederet  
quod regnum regnare. Et cetera. angla  
sedecim annos utriusque fabri. Unde ageretur  
ad regnum regnare. Unde ageretur  
ad regnum regnare.

De rebus quae sunt in libro primo de rebus bellicis. De rebus quae sunt in libro secundo de rebus bellicis. De rebus quae sunt in libro tertio de rebus bellicis. De rebus quae sunt in libro quarto de rebus bellicis. De rebus quae sunt in libro quinto de rebus bellicis. De rebus quae sunt in libro sexto de rebus bellicis. De rebus quae sunt in libro septimo de rebus bellicis. De rebus quae sunt in libro octavo de rebus bellicis. De rebus quae sunt in libro nonagesimo de rebus bellicis. De rebus quae sunt in libro nonagesimo primo de rebus bellicis. De rebus quae sunt in libro nonagesimo secundo de rebus bellicis. De rebus quae sunt in libro nonagesimo tertio de rebus bellicis. De rebus quae sunt in libro nonagesimo quarto de rebus bellicis. De rebus quae sunt in libro nonagesimo quinto de rebus bellicis. De rebus quae sunt in libro nonagesimo sexto de rebus bellicis. De rebus quae sunt in libro nonagesimo septimo de rebus bellicis. De rebus quae sunt in libro nonagesimo octavo de rebus bellicis. De rebus quae sunt in libro nonagesimo nonagesimo de rebus bellicis.

MATTHÆI PARISIENSIS,

MONACHI SANCTI ALBANI,

HISTORIA ANGLORUM,

SIVE, UT VULGO DICITUR,

HISTORIA MINOR.

ITEM, EJUSDEM

ABBREVIATIO CHRONICORUM ANGLIÆ.

EDITED

BY

SIR FREDERIC MADDEN, K.H., F.R.S.,  
KEEPER OF THE DEPARTMENT OF MANUSCRIPTS, BRITISH MUSEUM.

VOL. I.

A.D. 1067–1189.

R. 5016

PUBLISHED BY THE AUTHORITY OF THE LORDS COMMISSIONERS OF HER MAJESTY'S  
TREASURY, UNDER THE DIRECTION OF THE MASTER OF THE ROLLS.

LONDON:  
LONGMANS, GREEN, READER, AND DYER.

1866.



JAN 16 1950

15441

O

942.05

5016

Printed by  
EXYRE and SPOTTISWOODE, Her Majesty's Printers.  
For Her Majesty's Stationery Office.

---

P R E F A C E.

---



## P R E F A C E.

---

AMONG the great monastic houses founded by the piety <sup>Foundation of the</sup> and munificence of the monarchs of the Anglo-Saxon <sup>abbey of</sup> race, there is no one which presents more claims to our St. Alban. interest than the Benedictine abbey of St. Alban. Its origin is due to Offa, the powerful sovereign of Mercia (contemporary and friend of Charlemagne), who in the year 793, with the sanction of pope Adrian, caused a monastery to be reared in honour of the protomartyr of Britain, and endowed it with ample lands and privileges. The locality of this building was in all respects advantageous. Placed on the summit of an eminence, and commanding an extensive prospect, it looked across the narrow valley watered by the river Verlam or Ver on the remains of the Roman city of Verulam (the Anglo-Saxon Waetlingceaster), beyond which the ancient Watling Street pursued its course northwards, and formed a junction at no great distance with the Ikenild Way and other roads leading to various parts of the kingdom.

From the proximity of the abbey to the metropolis, <sup>Great resort to it by travellers and others</sup> and also from its position on the great highway from south to north, it is obvious that it must not only have served as a place of resort and hospitality to travellers and pilgrims (as contemplated by the founder),<sup>1</sup> but also to the courtiers and gentry; and this was manifested in later times by the frequency of the royal visits with

---

<sup>1</sup> See Matth. Paris, *Vita Offæ Secundi*, p. 30, and *Vitæ Abbatum*, p. 45, ed. Wats, 1640.

DA  
25  
.88  
v. 44

which it was honoured. This close connexion with the court is further evidenced in the appointment of the early abbats, for we find that previous to the Norman

The early abbats were of royal or noble affinity.

conquest the majority of them were either of regal affinity or of noble birth ; but, however such a distinction may have increased the secular reputation of the monastery, it could scarcely have been conducive to the interests of religion or of literature. We are informed, indeed, by the Historian of the abbey in the thirteenth century,

They loved field sports more than praying and fasting.

that the Anglo-Saxon abbats were famed more for their love of apparel, field sports,<sup>1</sup> and feasting, than of praying and fasting. One of them named Wulsig, in the reign of Alfred, is said to have worn silken dresses, and used rich trappings to his horses; nay, what was worse, to have invited ladies to his banquets, and to have died from excess in drinking, so that he merited the appellation of “pessimus.”<sup>2</sup> Yet his successor Wulnoth seems to have surpassed him in such excesses, for he is called “pejus priore!” He was fond of hawks and hounds, and pursued the pleasures of the chase with the ardour of a modern sportsman.<sup>3</sup> Like Chaucer’s monk,

“ He ȝave not of the text a pulled hen,  
That saith that Hunters ben not Holy Men.”<sup>4</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Although the pastime of hunting was forbidden by the Canons of the Church to ecclesiastics, yet it was practised by them both in France and England. As early as the year 774 the abbat and monks of St. Denys obtained a grant from Charlemagne, permitting them to hunt for the purpose of providing covers to their books, as well as girdles and gloves (Mabillon, *Annal. Ord. Bened.* ii. 229); and at a later period, in 789, the monastery of Sithiu had a similar privilege conceded to it. (*Ibid.* ii. 294, and *De Re. Dipl.* p. 611). On this War-

ton remarks (Dissert. ii. p. lxxxv. in *Hist. Eng. Poetr.*, ed. 1840) that the monks must have been fonder of hunting than reading. “It is certain,” he says, “that they were obliged to *hunt* before they could *read*.” But this is a false conclusion, for the deer-skins only supplied the external covering of their books, and not the material on which the text was written.

<sup>2</sup> Matth. Paris, *Vitæ Abbatum*, p. 37.

<sup>3</sup> *Ibid.* p. 38.

<sup>4</sup> Cant. Tales, Prol. l. 177.

But in those days there appears to have been nobler game in view for these frocked Nimrods than hares or foxes, for we are told that the woods to the north of the abbey abounded with wolves, boars, and wild bulls, which were not extirpated till the reign of Edward the Confessor.<sup>1</sup>

Under a rule of so remiss and secular a character, —which in the ninth and tenth centuries was rendered still more lax in consequence of the inroads and ravages of the Northmen,—it would be hopeless to look for evidence of any literary efforts having been made at period. St. Alban's; and in the course of more than two centuries and a half, which elapsed between the foundation of the monastery and the arrival of the Normans, we only meet with one name of any note, namely, that of abbat *Ælfric*, who subsequently became archbishop of Canterbury in 995, and to whom has been attributed, on very doubtful grounds, the authorship of the Anglo-Saxon Homilies, and other works and translations.<sup>2</sup>

<sup>1</sup> *Vitæ Abbatum*, p. 45.

<sup>2</sup> Notwithstanding all that has been written on the subject, it seems impossible to identify *Ælfric* the writer with *Ælfric* the archbishop of Canterbury. It appears certain that archbishop *Ælfric*, who was promoted to the see in 995, was previously bishop of Ramsbury and Wilton (under which titles he occurs in Anglo-Saxon charters in 993–995, *Cod. Dipl. Aevi Saxon.* iii. 269, 275, 278, 284), and, in all probability, abbat of St. Alban's at an earlier period. The account given of the abbats by Matthew Paris in his *Vitæ Abbatum* from *Ælfric* the seventh to *Ælfric* the eleventh in succession, is not only confused and unsatisfactory, but directly at variance with facts. He tells in his

text that it was *Leofric*, the tenth abbat, who was made archbishop, although he had at first refused the dignity in favour of his brother *Ælfric*. But Matthew Paris ought to have known better, for he must have had before his eyes the charter of *Æthelred*, dated 1007 (in MS. Cott. Nero. D. I. fol. 149, and printed in *Cod. Dipl. A. S.* vi. 157), which proves that *Ælfric* was really the archbishop, and his brother *Leofric* at the same time the abbat. It would seem that Paris had some intention of correcting the error, for in his autograph copy of the Lives of the Abbats (Nero D. I. fol. 32) he has written, “*Leofricus electus in archiepiscopum, non consensit, asserens fratrem suum Alfricum fuisse multo digniorem. Alfricus igitur effectus*

Change of  
affairs after  
the advent  
of the  
Normans.

With the advent of the Normans, however, a different state of things commenced, and a fresh impulse was given to literature, which at that period had sunk in England to its lowest ebb. The appointment of Paul, monk of Caen, to be abbat of St. Alban's in 1077, produced a marked and durable revolution in the government of the abbey. He not only rebuilt the church (for which purpose he made free use of the materials afforded by the ruins of Verulam), but by the help of his kinsman, archbishop Lanfranc, "the father and protector

est archiepiscopus Cantuariæ," but afterwards the first syllable of Alfricus has been erased. Wats prints this note as he found it, and it is amusing to find Wharton (*Anglia Sacra*, i. 127) accusing the editor of stupidity for adding it *himself* to the text! Ælfric certainly *preceded* Leofric as abbat of St. Alban's, instead of *succeeding* him, as stated by Matthew Paris. According to Eadmer (*Vita Oswaldi*, in *Anglia Sacra*, ii. 201), Ælfric was instituted abbat by Oswald, bishop of Worcester and archbishop of York. Some place this event about the year 969, and others in or soon after 978. Leofric probably succeeded his brother as abbat when the latter became bishop of Wilton, and we find the former signing in charters as abbat in the years 993, 996, 997, 1002, and 1006 (misdated 990 by Kemble). He survived the archbishop (who died in 1006), as proved by the charter of Æthelred of 1007, referred to above, and by the will of the archbishop, who, after bequeathing to St. Alban's various lands and all his books, names abbat Leofric as one of his executors to dispose of the residuary property. This will is printed by Hicke's (*Diss. Epist.* p.

62), and, more correctly, in Stevenson's *Chronicon Monasterii de Abingdon*, ii. 416. Diceto is cited by Wharton (from *Abbrev. Chron.* col. 446) as an undoubted authority for the succession of Leofric, eleventh abbat, immediately after his brother Ælfric, the archbishop; but this passage really forms no part of Diceto's work, but was added by a monk of St. Alban's soon after the year 1200, on the margin of a copy of Diceto which belonged to that monastery, and is now preserved in the Old Royal Library, 13 E. vi. fol. 23. There are several other marginal additions in the same MS. relating to St. Alban's, all of which are inserted in Diceto's text by Twysden (edit. 1652), without comment. This is only one more proof how utterly valueless, in a critical point of view, these early editions of our historians really are. Matthew Paris must have read this MS. of Diceto, for at fol. 11 is a note in his handwriting, and Wendover also borrowed from it the correct succession of the abbots, vol. iii. p. 295, ed. Coxe, where his text has been altered by the editor to make it agree with the Greater Chronicle of Matthew Paris, p. 253, ed. Wats.

of monks,<sup>1</sup> he obtained the loan of many precious volumes, which he caused to be copied by chosen scribes. To him is due the merit of having established the *Scriptorium*, <sup>Scriptori-  
um esta-  
blished by  
abbot Paul.</sup> which in aftertimes rendered the abbey of St. Alban so deservedly famous. The books transcribed appear to have been chiefly liturgical,<sup>2</sup> required for the service of the church; and we find that the succeeding abbats, alternately Norman and English, to the close of the twelfth century, contributed many other volumes of a similar character.

One of these, the English abbat Simon (1167–1188), Books who was “librorum amator specialis,” not only caused many excellent books to be written, but had them placed in a painted *Ambry*, or book-press (*in Almario picto*), which was stationed in the church opposite to the tomb of Roger the Hermit.<sup>3</sup> He also made an order that in future the abbat should always have one special scribe in the *Scriptorium*, and, in addition, he employed two or three very select copyists continually in his own chamber, by whose aid he presented to the church numerous “libros pretiosissimos.”<sup>4</sup> In the time also of abbat John

<sup>1</sup> *Chron. Sax.* i. 358, ed. Thorpe.

<sup>2</sup> *Vitæ Abbatum*, p. 51.

<sup>3</sup> *Ibid.* pp. 91–93. Newcome, in his *History of St. Alban's*, p. 75, says of this *Ambry* (which he incorrectly terms *Almonry*), that it was “somewhere within the body of the church.” The precise locality of the tomb of Roger is pointed out in the curious tract on the monuments in the church, compiled in the time of abbat Whethamstede (MS. Harl. 3775, fol. 130), where we read, “Prope hostium ecclesiæ quod dicit ad claustrum, in arca seu fornice muri tumbæ Rogeri Heremitæ;” and this agrees with the account given in the legend of Roger in MS. Cott. Claud. E. IV. fol. 112, where

we are told that his body was buried “in arcuato locello qui fit in muro ecclesiæ versus austrum, prope chorum fratrum dicti loci.”

<sup>4</sup> One of these volumes, written by order of abbat Simon, is preserved among the Royal MSS. in the British Museum, marked 13 D. iv. It is a large folio, containing a copy of the *Polycraticon* and other works of John of Salisbury, finely written, with large initial letters in gold and colours, very artistic in execution, and affording a favourable specimen of English illumination of the period. On the fly-leaf is a note stating the volume to have been made by direction of abbat Simon, and subsequently sold [by abbat Richard

*Historia Scholastica*  
caused to  
be trans-  
cribed by  
prior Rei-  
mund.

No histori-  
cal writers  
at St. Al-  
ban's till  
the thir-  
teenth  
century.

de Cella (1195–1214) the prior Reimund caused some noble and useful books to be transcribed, among which is particularly mentioned a “liber elegantissimus,” containing the *Historia Scholastica cum Allegoriis* of Peter Comestor, which was subsequently deposited in the *Almariolum* by abbat William of Trumpington.<sup>1</sup>

But although the library of the monastery was thus gradually increased,<sup>2</sup> we meet with no indication up to this date of any work having been undertaken of a strictly historical character. Many other monastic houses, and some not equal in rank to that of St. Alban, had produced writers during the twelfth century, who had acquired distinction as historians, but of what has been called “The Historical School of St. Alban’s,” there is no trace whatever until we come to the reign of king John.<sup>3</sup> And here it can hardly fail to have been observed, in reviewing the works of the earlier chroniclers, how many

de Wallingford] to Richard de Bury, bishop of Durham, and purchased back in 1345 from his executors by abbat Miehael de Mentmore. Some indignant remarks on this sale of books of the monastery to Richard de Bury may be seen in Walsingham’s continuation of the *Vitæ Abbatum*, in MS. Cott. Claud. E. IV. fol. 203 b.

<sup>1</sup> *Vitæ Abbatum*, pp. 168, 127. This specially commended volume is preserved also among the MSS. of the Royal Library, 4 D. vii., and, besides the work of Comestor, contains, in the handwriting of Matthew Paris, the *Testamenta duodecim Patriarcharum*, translated from the Greek by Robert Grosseteste, bishop of Lincoln, and some other traets, one of whch, *Qualiter probata Virginitas Beatae Marie*, was received by Paris from the bishop himself.

<sup>2</sup> Among the manuscripts still in existence which were transcribed at St. Alban’s before the year 1200 may be noticed Eusebius, *Ecclesiastica Historia*, of the eleventh century MS. Reg. 13 B. v.), and Josephus, *De Antiquitatibus Judæorum* (13 D. vi., vii.), Cassiodorus, *Historia* (13 C. xiv.), Beda, *De Temporibus et Chronicle* (12 F. ii.), Dieeto, *Abbreviationes Chronicorum et Imagines* (13 E. vi.), and Joh. Sarisberiensis *Polycraticon* and other works (13 D. iv.), all of the twelfth century.

<sup>3</sup> According to Pits, *De Illustribus Angliae Scriptoribus*, 1619, p. 845, Walter, precentor of St. Alban’s, wrote, about the year 1180, “quædam Angliearum rerum Chroniea,” but no proof is given of this statement, which is repeated by Tanner, p. 352. A work of a totally different character is assigned to him by Bale, cent. x. p. 40.

of them terminate their annals shortly before the year 1200, thus leaving the field open, as it were, for a new succession of writers, who should continue to record and perpetuate public events onwards from the commencement of the thirteenth century. There is an unfounded tradition, indeed, which represents the early English sovereigns as having been accustomed to employ a special chronographer in the monasteries of royal foundation, for the express purpose of recording the acts of their reigns, and St. Alban's is instanced as one of the places thus distinguished. But this statement rests on no credible or even ancient authority,<sup>1</sup> and there can be little doubt that the annalist of a monastery was usually nominated by his abbat, and in no case received either a royal appointment or stipend. At St. Alban's it appears certain that Roger of Wendover may claim the merit of having first commenced the great work which was subsequently referred to as the *Chronica Magna*,

<sup>1</sup> The earliest source of this tradition seems to be a passage in Walter Bower's continuation of Fordun's *Scotichronicon*, lib. xvi. c. 39 (ed. Goodall, ii. 513), written about 1440, and quoted, as worthy of credit, by archbishop Parker in the preface to his edition of Matthew Paris, in 1571. The same tradition is mentioned by Bale in his *Comments on Leland's "Laboryouse Journey,"* 1549, where he writes, "Thomas Gascoigne reporteth in hys boke of the Floudes of Babylon, that the kynges here in Englande were wonte to holde a great nombre of good writers within the monasteryes of their foundacyons, to non other ende but only to coppie out the memorable workes of olde writers, specyally of the hystoryanes and chronyclers, that they myghte

in their lybraryes perpetually remayne, appoyntynge them great stypendes." Gascoigne was born in 1403, became chancellor of Oxford in 1444, and died in 1457. No copy of his *Septem Flumina Babyloniae* is now known to exist, but his *Dictionary Theologicum*, a compilation of much interest, is still preserved in Lincoln College Library. Bale repeats this story in his bibliographical work, ed. 1559, under the article *Rishanger*, but there quotes Ponticus Virunius as his authority, which is duly repeated by Parker. This compiler from Geoffrey of Monmouth died in 1520, and I can find no such passage in his printed work. Pits, as usual, pp. 308, 403, copies and tampers with the information he finds in Bale.

or *Chronica Majora Sancti Albani*.<sup>1</sup> At what period he began to compile his Chronicle (which, under the title of *Flores Historiarum*, commenced with the Creation, and was brought down to the year 1235) it is not possible to fix with certainty. We know that he was a monk (Bale says precentor) of the monastery, and, in the reign of king John, became prior of the cell of Bealvoir, in Leicestershire, from which having been removed by abbat Trumpington, about the year 1219, he appears to have returned to St. Alban's,<sup>2</sup> where he ended his days not long after the completion of his work, namely, in May 1236.<sup>3</sup> In consequence, however, of his Chronicle having subsequently been augmented and continued by Matthew Paris, his name fell into obscurity, and, indeed, narrowly escaped oblivion. He was not known to Boston of Bury in the

<sup>1</sup> Had we not sufficient evidence of this from existing MSS., the precise testimony of Walsingham, the latest continuator of the St. Alban's Chronicals, would suffice to prove the fact. In a notice of the monks of that abbey who were distinguished for piety and industry, after having mentioned the holy hermits Roger and Sigar (who lived in the twelfth century), he proceeds thus: "Consequenter in nostro monasterio floruit Rogerus de Wendovere, noster monachus, cui pæne debent totius regni cronographi quicquid habent. Nam plane et perlucide ab initio mundi per annorum distinctionem digessit Cronica sua, usque ad tempora regis Henrici a conquestu Secundi [a mistake for Tertii.]" MS. Cott. Claud. E. IV. fol. 332 b.

<sup>2</sup> He certainly was there in 1228, when he heard from the Armenian archbishop who visited St. Alban's the legend of Joseph Cartaphila, the Wandering Jew. See ed. Coxe, vol. iv. p. 176. A curious drawing of

Cartaphila by Matthew Paris is in MS. C. C. C. C., No. xvi. fol. 70 b.

<sup>3</sup> This date is taken from the lists of monks deceased at St. Alban's, written by the hands of Matthew Paris and John of Wallingford, the first extending from the year 1216 to 1253 (MS. Cott. Nero D. I. fol. 166), the other from 1232 to 1259 (MS. Cott. Jul. D. VII. fol. 112 b). In both of these lists the entry is the same, "ii. non. Maii Rogerus de Wendovere sacerdos," and the Dominical letter of the year is E. bissextile, which can only apply to 1236. With the first of these lists before him, it is surprising how Wats should have falsified the date to 1237 (Pref. to Matth. Paris, ed. 1640); and this error has not only been copied by many recent bibliographers, but also by the editor of Wendover and his translator Dr. Giles. The writer of the introduction to the French translation of M. Iluillard Breholles reads the date falsely 1235. In Tanner it is correctly given.

fifteenth century, nor to Leland a century later, and his name, falsely written *Wyndore*, is first found in Bale's additions to his *Scriptorum Illustrium Majoris Brytanniae Catalogus*, in 1559, and then even, not from a knowledge of his work, but on the authority of an old monastic catalogue.<sup>1</sup>

The silence of Leland, in regard both to Roger of Silence of  
Wendover and Matthew Paris, is marvellous. He cer-  
tainly paid a visit to St. Alban's abbey, apparently about  
the year 1535, for the express purpose of examining the  
celebrated library there, which, he tells us, was readily  
shown to him by one of the monks;<sup>2</sup> yet in his *Collectanea*  
he gives the most meagre and unsatisfactory notice of  
the volumes which came under his observation.<sup>3</sup> He

Leland in  
regard to  
Wendover  
and Paris.

<sup>1</sup> "Ex vetere Catalogo," p. 91, and "Ex Catalogo Nordovicensi" (MS. Selden, 64 B.) See also *Introductio cent. xiv.*, p. 169. Archbishop Parker merely mentions this writer by the corrupt name of *Roger de Windeleshor* (which he found in a manuscript copy of the pseudo Matthew of Westminster, MS. Cott. Claud. E. VIII., under the year 1235), but the earliest historical references to his work appear to be those of Stow, in his *Survey of London*, 1598, and *Annales*, 1615. Pits makes two persons out of one, first as *Roger de Windover*, p. 292, and next as *Roger de Windeshora*, p. 308. Selden, however, having borrowed Sir Robert Cotton's MS. of Wendover (Otho B. V.), defined more correctly the extent of the Chronicle in his *Notes on Eadmer*, 1623, p. 169.

<sup>2</sup> It is remarkable that there is no mention of St. Alban's in Leland's *Itinerary*, as it has come down to us, but in his *Comment. de Scriptoribus Britannicis*, vol. ii. p. 316, he writes, "Annis abhinc plus minus decem Verolamium me contuli, mu-

nicipii veteris Romani ruinas curiose inspecturus, quod cum fecisset, diverti ad Fanum Albani, muris collapsae urbis vicinum. Hic me quidem monachus eleganter eruditus, cui a Regia Curia [Kingsbury] nomen, vir antiquitatis omnis studiosissimus, thesauros pergamenicos monasterii ingentis officiosissimus nihilo ostendit;" and again, vol. i. p. 166, "Agebam dies aliquot apud Fanum Albani, ut aliquid antiquitatis Britannicae e thesauris bibliothecae, quae ibidem celebris est, eruerem."

<sup>3</sup> Vol. iv. p. 163. He only notices nine authors, all on medical or theological subjects, and then gives some brief extracts "Ex libro de Gestis Offæ regis," and "Ex libro de Gestis Abbatum S. Albani, quem scripsit Matth. Parisiensis." The copy he used contained the continuation of the Lives of the Abbots by a later writer, and was probably the volume now preserved among the Cottonian MSS., Claud. E. IV. He also notices the life of St. Albau by Ralph of Dunstable.

informs us, it is true, that a fine copy of the History of Matthew Paris had been stolen from the library,<sup>1</sup> but not a word is added to lead us to suppose he knew its extent, or whether it comprised his greater or lesser work. This absence of accurate information would lead us to infer that no copy of either was at that time in the library, for otherwise Leland could hardly have failed to notice them ; yet such a conclusion may be unsafe, seeing that he maintains the same silence respecting the writings both of Rishanger and Walsingham,<sup>2</sup> which were probably in the abbey library when he visited it. Leland undoubtedly discovered elsewhere (but he does not state where) a copy of the larger work of Matthew Paris, comprising the text of Wendover, and continued to the year 1253, for in another part of his *Collectanea* he has extracts from it,<sup>3</sup> and there is good reason to believe that it was the identical manuscript now preserved in

<sup>1</sup> "Matthæi Parisiensis, monachi S. Albani, pulcherrima *Historia furto sublata.*" *Ibid.* p. 163. This could scarcely have been the MS. now in the Old Royal Collection, 14 C. vii., from which our text is printed, for this volume had left the abbey library long before. (See *postea*, p. xxxix.) Among the MSS. of Bale, of which he gives a list in 1559, p. 167, appear, "Registra bibliothecarum *Divi Albani*, *Ramesiae*, *Glastoniæ*, *Nordovici et Dominicorum Londini*," but I cannot trace what became of those volumes.

<sup>2</sup> Of Rishanger Leland was wholly ignorant, and all he knew of Walsingham (as he ingenuously confesses in his *Commentarii*, vol. ii. p. 360) was derived from an incidental mention of his "Chronica Majora," in a chronicle written by a monk of St. Alban's, from 1259 to 1399, which he found in the priory of Tynemouth

(itself a cell of St. Alban's), and from which, in his *Collectanea*, vol. iii. p. 403, he gives extracts. This Tynemouth manuscript now forms a portion of the Cottonian MS. *Faus-tina B. IX.*

<sup>3</sup> Vol. iii. pp. 335-341. "Ex Annalibus Matthæi Parisiensis, monachi S. Albani," from 1189 to 1253 inclusive ; after which he notes, "Explicit Chronicon Matthæi Parisiensis in anno D. 1253, qui fuit xxxvii. annus regni regis Henrici 3<sup>1</sup>." Under the year 1191 (but which really belongs to 1195) is a notice of the "Apologus" of Vitalis the Venetian noble, which is one of the autograph additions of Matthew Paris to the text of Wendover in the Sidney MS. in C. C. C. C., No. xvi. He refers also particularly to this MS. of Paris in his *Commentarii*, ii. 266, in the account there given of John of Basingstoke.

Corpus College Library, Cambridge. Had Leland, indeed, met with so important a work at St. Alban's, we may reasonably suppose he would at once have transferred it to the Royal Library. He seems to have possessed the authority to do so under the commission granted to him in 1533 by Henry VIII.;<sup>1</sup> and, if not on this occasion, he certainly exercised this power at other times, as he did notably at Rochester, St. Augustine's Canterbury, St. Edmund's Bury, and many other places.<sup>2</sup>

The general dispersion of the monastic libraries which took place not long afterwards, and the destruction of considerable portions of them, have been often and loudly lamented, but by no one more than by John Bale, who himself witnessed the spoliation, and whose exertions to stay its progress intitle him to the especial thanks of all who are interested in our historical litera-

Exertions  
of John  
Bale.

<sup>1</sup> This commission is not now to be found, but we learn from Leland himself (in "The Laboryouse Journey," addressed to king Henry VIII. in 1546) that its object was to enable him "to peruse and dylygentlye to searche all the libraryes of monasteryes and collegies of thys your noble realme." He adds that he had "conserved many good authors, of the whiche *parte remayne in the most magnificent libraryes of your royll palaces*, part also remayne in my custodye."

<sup>2</sup> In the Old Royal Collection of manuscripts in the British Museum presented by George II. in 1757, there are above 270 volumes, bearing internal evidence of the locality from which they were taken, and, no doubt, most, if not all, of these were acquired by Leland. Fifty-seven monasteries and five colleges at Oxford furnished these "spolia opima," and among them are 78 volumes

from Rochester, 27 from St. Alban's, 15 from St. Augustine's Canterbury, and the same number from St. Edmund's Bury, 13 from St. Mary's Reading, 10 from St. Mary's Worcester, and nine from St. Mary's Merton. Ramsey only supplied four, St. Peter's Westminster, two, and Battle Abbey only one. The colleges at Oxford produced five. Archbishop Parker does not seem to have been aware of Leland's services in this respect, or else undervalued them, since, in lamenting the destruction of historical monuments (Preface to *De Antiq. Brit. Ecclesiar.*, 1572), he complains that those persons who were sent by Henry VIII. to select ancient manuscripts from the monastic houses had only examined them "leviter et perfuntorie." He adds that many had afterwards been rescued from the shops of the apothecaries and cooks!

He urges  
the publi-  
cation of  
the early  
English  
historians.

ture. His industry and energy seem never to have flagged, and although much indebted to Leland for the groundwork of his bibliographical collections, yet these were enlarged and improved by his own extensive researches.<sup>1</sup> He was the first, also, to point out the value of the early English historians, and to urge, in the most strenuous language, their publication. His words are so remarkable, and breathe so strongly the spirit which, in more recent times, has awakened a taste for historical inquiry, and contributed to produce, as the result, the successive editions of our early historians, and the present series of writers issued under the authority of the Master of the Rolls, that I am tempted to quote the passage at length. He says, "Let one noble man bring fourth one noble author, and an other emprinte an other, to the conservacion of Englandes antiquities. In lyke case lete one ryche merchaunte brynge one worthye worke of an aun-

<sup>1</sup> The result of a portion of Bale's labours is preserved in a valuable volume in his handwriting among Selden's MSS. in the Bodleian Library, No. 64 B. This volume contains his collections for the enlargement of the first edition of his bibliographical work, made between the years 1549 (when he returned from Germany) and 1552. From this MS. Wats printed the notes on Matthew Paris, among the "Protestantium Testimonia." Bale speaks of these collections in his Comments on Leland, 1549, where, after mentioning the first edition of his work in five books, he says, "Sence I returned agayne thereunto [that is to say, to England], by the serche of dyverse most ruynouslye spoyled, broaken up, and dyspersed lybraryes, I have collected by no small labour and dylygence so much as wyll make so many bokes more." And again, in reference to the destruction

of manuscripts, he writes, "Among the stacyoners and bokebynders I found many notable antiquities, of whom I wrote out the tytles, tymes, and begynnynges," and adds, "Yf the byshop of Romes Lawes, Decretals, Extravagantes, Elementines, and other suche dregges of the Devyll, yea, yf Heytesburyes Sophismes, Porphyryes Universals, Aristotles olde Logyckes, and Dunses Dyvynyte, wyth such other lowsy legerdemaynes" had been used as coverings for books brought from abroad, it would not matter, "But to put our auncient Chronicles, our noble Hystoryes, our learned Commentaries and Homelyes upon the Scriptures, to so homely an office of subjecyon and utter contempte, we have both greatly dishonoured our nacyon, and also shewed our selves very wycked to our posteryte."

cyent writer to lyght, and an other put fourth an other. Besides the Bryttshe authors, whome I oft named afore, lete one bryng fourth *Bedas de Gestis Anglorum*, an other *Willyam of Malmesbery de Gestis Pontificum et Regum*. Lete an other brynge fourth *Simeon of Durham*, wyth *Rycharde* and *Johan of Hangustalde*, an other *Aldrede* and *Willyam of Rieuall*, wthy *Marianus the Scott*. An other *Giraldus Cambrensis*, an other *Henry of Huntyngdon*, an other *Alphred of Beverley*, an other *Florence of Worcestre*, and an other *Walter of Excestre*. An other *Roger Hoveden*, an other *MATHEW PARYS*, an other *John Bever*, an other *Radulphus Niger*, an other *Radulphus de Diceto*, an other *William Newburg* of Bridlington, an other *John of Oxford*. An other *Scalæ Temporum*, an other *Flores Historiarum*, *Asserius*, *Osbernus*, *Gervasius*, *Stephanides*, and *Ricardus Diviensis* of Wynchestre, wthy a wonderfull nombre besydes.”<sup>1</sup>

It seems far from improbable that we owe to these Historical noble sentiments of Bale the subsequent publication of writers published by archbishop Parker. This learned prelate was a friend of the ex-bishop of Ossory, and himself a “great collector of ancient writings,” many of which he obtained from the scattered remains of the monastic libraries by the aid of active agents.<sup>2</sup> He had, indeed, after the death of Bale in 1563, contemplated the acquisition of the manuscripts of that indefatigable scholar, and wrote to secretary Cecil, that “he was promised to have them for money,” but he does not appear to have succeeded in this design.<sup>3</sup>

Assisted by the labour of his secretary Joscelin, and *Flores Historiarum* influenced, doubtless, by the praise bestowed by Bale ascribed to

<sup>1</sup> “The Laboryouse Journey,” &c. in the “Conclusyon.”

p. xi. vol. ii. pp. 522, 528; Wharton, Pref. in *Angl. Sacr.* i. xviii.

<sup>2</sup> Strype’s *Life of Parker*, Pref.

<sup>3</sup> The letter is dated 20 Nov. 1563 (MS. Lansd. 6, art. 81.)

“Matthew of Westminster,”<sup>1</sup> the archbishop first of Westminster selected for the press the *Flores Historiarum* ascribed to that hitherto mysterious writer; but although he brought abundance of zeal to the task, he was sadly deficient in critical ability, and in the knowledge acquired only by the careful collation of manuscripts. This, his first choice of an historical work, was published in 1567, and was rather unfortunate, for the manuscript made use of was afterwards found to be incomplete as compared with others, which occasioned a new edition to be issued in 1570, much enlarged, but with many interpolations from various copies.<sup>2</sup> In Parker’s time, and indeed down to the present day, this work has been taken to be a compilation made by a writer of the fourteenth century, named “Matthew of West-

Taken to  
be a com-  
pilation of  
the 14th  
century.

<sup>1</sup> *Scriptores*, p. 472, ed. 1557.

<sup>2</sup> The archbishop gives us no information whence he procured the copies used by him in these editions, and it is only after a long course of persevering research that I am enabled with some confidence to state as follows:—1. The edition of 1567 was printed wholly (with the exception of the last year, 1307) from a MS. now preserved in Eton College, which was written at Merton abbey; 2. The edition of 1570 is founded on the former, but enlarged from a manuscript now in the Bodleian library, Laud. 572 (no doubt, the “vetustissimum exemplar” mentioned by Parker in his Preface), and from the Cottonian MS. Claudius E. VIII., written for Henry Spence, bishop of Norwich, before the year 1406. In all three of these MSS., particularly the first, are marginal notes in Parker’s handwriting, and from one of these notes we learn that he had the Eton MS. in his hands in 1562. Besides the above MSS. represented in the edition of 1570, Par-

ker has occasionally borrowed from the Rochester copy of the work (MS. Cott. Nero D. II.), and taken many other passages from various sources. His edition, in truth, is a mere piece of patchwork, and exhibits an utter disregard of the ordinary rules to be observed in publishing an historical work. Joscelin, in his List of Historians printed by Hearne (*Avesbury*, p. 292), mentions the Eton MS., as also two other copies in the hands of the archbishop; probably the Tenison MS. (now belonging to Sir Tho. Phillipps), and the Land MS. 572. A copy seems also to have been borrowed by him from Stow, as stated in the *Annales*, ed. 1615, p. 679; and in the list of Stow’s books taken by order of the bishop of London in Feb. 1568 (MS. Lansd. 11. fol. 7), we find “*Flores Historiarum*, in parchment, wrytten hand.” I have been unable to satisfy myself that Stow’s copy was the same with MS. Cott. Claud. E. VIII., although it is by no means improbable.

minster,"<sup>1</sup> (surnamed by Bale and his followers *Florilegus* from the title of the work) who, commencing at the Creation, had constructed a series of annals to the year 1307, but of whom nothing more was known.<sup>2</sup> It was pointed out by Parker, and afterwards by several bibliographers, that the part previous to the conquest had been borrowed almost verbally from the larger Chronicle of Matthew Paris (itself based on Wendover), and that onwards to the year 1259, the same authority had been closely followed, but much abridged and transposed, with some occasional additions.<sup>3</sup> Further than this no historical criticism has been exercised on the work,<sup>4</sup> yet the evidence supplied by several passages of mere local interest after the above date would clearly

<sup>1</sup> The only copy of the *Flores Historiarum* hitherto known to contain the name of *Matthew of Westminster* as the author is the Norwich MS. already mentioned (MS. Cott. Claud. E. VIII.), as first pointed out by Josecelin in his Historical Collections, MS. Cott. Vitell. E. XIV. anno 1252. But I have discovered among the Fairfax MSS. in the Bodleian Library, No. 20, an earlier copy of the work (ending imperfect in A.D. 635), written at Norwich before the year 1344, in the time of prior Claxton. The title of the work stands thus : "Incipit Prologus in librum qui Flores Historiarum intitulatur, secundum Matheum monachum Westmonasterii." The words in italics have been added by a later hand, and I cannot doubt that from this MS. was taken the similar heading in the Cotton copy. That the two MSS. had a close connexion is proved by the list of Norwich priors, which in both is brought down only to 1344. It was, apparently, from this source that Bale derived the information respecting

*Matthew of Westminster*, entered in his Collections in MS. Selden 64 B. fol. 130, where he quotes his authority, "Ex Bibliotheca et Catalogo Nordovicensi."

<sup>2</sup> Hardy, Introd. to *Mon. Hist. Brit.*, p. 7.

<sup>3</sup> Preface to edit. 1570, Wharton, *Angl. Sacr. Praef.* i. xxxi.; Fabricius, *Bibl. Med. Lat.* iii. 55; Oudin, *Comm. de Scriptt. Eccles.* iii. 700, 707; Nicolson, *Engl. Hist. Libr.* p. 54, ed. 1776; Tanner, *Bibl. Brit.* p. 578.

<sup>4</sup> In an able article in the Quarterly Review, No. xxxiv., published in 1826, Mr. (afterwards Sir Francis) Palgrave pointed out the problematical existence of "Matthew of Westminster." He calls him "a phantom, who never existed," but errs greatly in supposing the compiler of the work attributed to him to have lived anterior to Florence of Worcester and Malmesbury. Yet, in spite of this warning, my late talented friend Mr. Henry Buckle was so deceived by the general tone of confidence manifested in quoting this writer,

point out the author or compiler as an inmate of St. Alban's abbey, and a closer examination of the text soon led me to the conclusion that the entire work to the year 1265 must have been written in that monastery. This conclusion has been unexpectedly confirmed by

*Discovery of the original copy of the work in the Chetham Library.* the important discovery (made by myself) of the *original copy of the work*, which is at present preserved in the Chetham library at Manchester, No. 6,712, and which, by the liberality of the Feoffees of that institution, I have had an opportunity of carefully examining.

This manuscript establishes beyond all doubt that the largest portion of the *Flores Historiarum*, attributed to the pseudo "Matthew of Westminster," was written at St. Alban's, under the eye and by direction of Matthew Paris, as an abridgment of his Greater Chronicle, and the text from the close of the year 1241 to about two-thirds of 1249 is *in his own handwriting*. He had evidently intended to conclude the work here, as appears by the two lines of verse at the close,<sup>1</sup> and

*It proves to be an abridgment by Matthew Paris of his Greater Chronicle.*

that, in his "History of Civilization in England," vol. i. p. 290, ed. 1861, he characterizes him as "after Froissart, the most celebrated historian of the fourteenth century!" Of the three legendary stories quoted by Mr. Buckle from the *Flores Historiarum* as specimens of *monkish history*, it may be remarked, that two of them (under A.D. 31 and 60) are interpolations of the text, and the third does not occur in any copy of the work, but is foisted in by Parker from one of the additions of Matthew Paris to Wendover, under A.D. 798.

<sup>1</sup> "Cernis completas hic nostro tempore metas,  
Si plus forte petas, tibi postea nunciet ætas."  
ed. 1570, lib. ii. p. 238. This will account for the strange appearance

of these lines in the printed text, occurring as they do in the course of the year. The portion of this manuscript written at St. Alban's is very carefully executed, and ornamented with some interesting miniatures of the coronations of several of the sovereigns. It commences with the usual title and prologue, and affords with certainty the means of detecting the interpolations in later copies. Several handwritings appear in it. The first proceeds only as far as "De Juda Maehabeo" (ed. 1570, lib. i. p. 63); but the second goes on to 1241, where Matthew Paris himself commences. The latter part of 1249 and part of 1250 is by a fourth hand, and a fifth carries the work on to 1265.

the manuscript seems to have been left in this state until after his death in 1259. It was then continued on the same plan by another hand, abridging the larger work<sup>1</sup> of Matthew Paris up to the date last mentioned, and carrying it on by a contemporary and valuable narrative of events to the issue of the battle of Evesham in 1265.<sup>2</sup> Here it would seem that the manuscript ceased to be written at St. Alban's, and

<sup>1</sup> It is remarkable that at the end of 1250, a passage is taken verbatim not from the Greater Chronicle, but from the *Abbreviatio Chronicorum* of Matthew Paris, the *autograph* copy of which is presented in the Cottonian Collection of MSS. Cott. Claud. D. VI.

<sup>2</sup> This Continuation from 1259 is written in close imitation of the style of composition of Matthew Paris, so much so, that we find illustrative documents referred to as being in the *Liber Additamentorum*. Thus, in reference to some papal and episcopal letters (ed. 1570, lib. ii. p. 287), the writer says, "qui videre juraverit, in *Libro Additamentorum ad hoc signum* invenire prævalebit." This passage is marked *vacat* in the manuscript, and it is omitted in every other copy but one (MS. Cott. Claud. E. VIII., from which Parker took the passage), but the documents themselves are added on to the original *Liber Additamentorum* of Matthew Paris (MS. Cott. Nero D. I. fol. 136 b), with the *signum* annexed. Again, in the same year, (p. 289), concerning the Provisions made by the barons in parliament, the writer adds, "Quos Gallice conscriptos per eosdem barones duximus alibi scripturis commendare." These Provisions in French are also entered in the *Liber Additamentorum*, fol. 204 b. In both these instances the

documents are written by the hand of the fellow-monk and friend of Matthew Paris, who assisted him in writing and correcting the latter pages of his works. This associate of Paris tells us expressly in a colophon to the year 1259, (MS. Reg. 14 C. vii. fol. 218 b) "Sciendum est, quod hucusque perscripsit venerabilis vir frater Matheus Parisiensis . . . . Quod tamen amodo appositum est et prosecutum, cui-dam alteri fratri sit ascribendum, qui tanti prædecessoris opera præsumens aggredi . . . . cum non sit dignus ejusdem corrigiam solvere calcamenti, paginae non meruit nomine tenus annotari." This colophon cannot possibly refer, as Mr. Riley supposes (*Will. Rishanger Chronica*, Introd. p. xxi.) to the Continuation annexed in the same volume, (written in a late hand of the fourteenth century, and which, on the mere conjecture of Bale, has been assigned to Rishanger), but to the *contemporary* Continuation of Paris, which we have here preserved in the so-called "Matthew of Westminster." In addition to the above references under 1259, we have in the following year a commission mentioned (p. 291) as "alibi inter Brevia," and we accordingly find it in the *Liber Addit.*, fol. 139 b. In regard to this Continuation, it is important also to

After-  
wards  
trans-  
ferred to  
St. Peter's,  
Westmin-  
ster.

it passed subsequently into the library of the monastery of St. Peter at Westminster.<sup>1</sup> At what precise date this transfer took place is not recorded, but there is abundant proof of the fact in the volume itself,<sup>2</sup> and also that the work was carried on by some monks of Westminster from 1265 to 1325.<sup>3</sup> From the evidence collected in an examination of nearly all the extant manuscripts of the work,<sup>4</sup> it would appear certain that the author of the first Continuation after the manuscript left St.

remark, that in 1261 the narrative, from p. 304 to p. 309 of edit. 1570, is (with some omissions) copied verbally in the *Liber Chronicorum* (composed in or after 1302) at St. Alban's, and inserted among the writings of Rishanger in MS. Cott. Cland. D. VI. fols. 115-118; and that in the years 1263 and 1264 there are entire pages of the text, pp. 314-329, transcribed word for word into the *Chronicles of Rishanger*, edited by Mr. Halliwell for the Camden Society, pp. 10-17, 21, 25-34.

<sup>1</sup> It is not unlikely that the manuscript may have been specially prepared by Matthew Paris for the use of the monks of Westminster, which would account for the insertion of some passages relating to that monastery, not found in his larger work, under the years 1049, 1118, 1246, 1249; but this design seems to have been laid aside after his death, since in the years 1250-1258 local matters about Westminster are omitted by the continuator, although inserted in the Greater Chronicle of Paris. In the Cottonian MS. Vitell. A. XX. we have another abridgment of the larger work, from 1066 to 1245 inclusive, made by direction of Matthew Paris (who writes the commencement of

lege, the Very Rev. the Dean of it himself) for the use of the cell of Tynemouth (dependent on St. Alban's), and intitled "Cronica excerpta e Magnis Cronicis Sancti Albani." (See *postea*, p. li. n.)

<sup>2</sup> On many of the margins are written "Liber ecclesiae beati Petri Westmonasterii," or "Liber Westmonasterii," in a hand of the 14th century, and there are numerous marginal and textual notes referring to the monastery. Nothing is known of the subsequent history of the manuscript, except that it was given in 1657 to the Chetham library by Nicholas Higginbotome of Stockport, gentleman.

<sup>3</sup> There are many handwritings in this portion of the manuscript, the most regular of which occurs from 1267 to 1274, carried on by others from 1275 to 1278, from 1278 to 1284, from 1285 to 1293, and from 1293 to 1298. A later hand of the 14th century supplies the years 1298-1302. Then follows a good firm hand from 1303 to 1325 inclusive, after which the later hand of the 14th century adds the remainder of the year and part of 1326, with which the volume concludes.

<sup>4</sup> I gladly take an opportunity here of expressing my obligations to the Rev. the Provost of Eton Col-

Alban's was John Bevere, otherwise named John of John Be-  
London,<sup>1</sup> whose separate Chronicle is noticed by Le-<sup>vere, alias</sup> John of

Westminster, the Feoffees and librarian of the Chetham Library, Manchester, the Rev. H. O. Coxe, Bodleian's librarian, W. Aldis Wright, Esq., librarian of Trinity College, Cambridge, and the Rev. J. O. Ryder, librarian of All Souls College, Oxford, for the great facilities afforded me of consulting various manuscript copies of "Matthew of Westminster" under their charge.

<sup>1</sup> This identity is expressly asserted by Widmore (*History of St. Peter's, Westminster*, 1751, p. 85), who had access to the muniments of the church, and is confirmed by various considerations:—1. In the letters patent by which Edward I., in Oct. 1303, appointed justices to examine the charge against the abbat and monks of Westminster (imprisoned in the Tower) for having plundered the royal treasury (*Monasticon*, i. 312), all their names are given, and among them appears *John of London*, but no *John Bevere*, although the latter was then living, as proved by his Chronicle. In the Infirmary Rolls of the abbey *John of London* occurs in 1294 and 1298, and also in 1310–11, at which time he was dangerously ill for many weeks, and eventually died. 2. Tanner is mistaken in supposing him to be a monk of St. Augustine's Canterbury, as is Black, in locating him in Christ Church (*Cat. of Arundel MSS. in Coll. of Arms*, No. xx.). The name written in the Bodleian MS., Mus. 48, referred to by the former, does not apply to the Chronicler, but to another John

of London, the friend of Roger Bacon; and with regard to the MS. in the College of Arms, only the first portion seems to have been written at Christ Church Canterbury, but at all events the chronicle from the conquest is an abridged compilation, the text of which agrees with Bevere from 1281 to 1306. 3. Tanner is again in error in saying that John of London wrote his Chronicle at the request of Queen Margaret. It is not the Chronicle, but the tract intitled "*Commendatio lamentabilis*," on the death of Edward I., that is addressed by him to the queen, and which is annexed to the Chronicle after the year 1306 in the MS. of the College of Arms, as also in the copies of "Matthew of Westminster," MS. Cott. Nero D. II., Laud MS. 572, and Hatton MS. 53. This tract evidently proves the connexion of John of London with the chronicle of John Bevere, and this appears further in a reference made in the year 1303 to a narrative in defence of the imprisoned Westminster monks, "*secundum Johannem*," which corresponds with the title of the "*Commendatio lamentabilis*" in the Cotton MS., which is also said to be "*secundum Johannem*," and *de Londonia* is supplied by a coeval hand. The above reference is found in the Chetham manuscript, and in ten other copies, and its absence in the Bevere Chronicle (MS. Harl. 641) is easily accounted for, as being a local matter of no interest to the Canterbury scribe of that MS.

London,  
author of  
the first  
Continua-  
tion.

The Eton  
MS. of  
“Matthew  
of West-  
minster”  
copies Be-  
vere’s text.

Abridg-  
ment of  
Bevere’s  
text in the  
Chetham  
MS.

land,<sup>1</sup> Bale, and Tanner. This separate Chronicle commences with Brut, and from the year 1066 incorporates the text of the St. Alban’s (now Chetham) manuscript, but with some additions and omissions, the most striking of which appear in the great abridgment of the years from 1244 to 1264 inclusive, and the enlargement of 1265 by the insertion of a *résumé* of the events from 1258, which led to the conflicts of Lewes and Evesham. The work is then continued by Bevere to 1306 inclusive. In the Eton manuscript of “Matthew of Westminster” this Chronicle of Bevere has been implicitly followed,<sup>2</sup> and the text so constituted has been met with in a few other copies, which form a class apart from the majority.<sup>3</sup> But in the *original copy* of the *Flores Historiarum*, after it came to Westminster, a different plan was necessarily pursued. The annals from 1244 to 1265 were left untouched, and the continuation (taken up after the battle of Evesham), although substantially the same with Bevere’s Chronicle, has additions to it in 1274 and 1292,

<sup>1</sup> Excerpts are given from it in the *Collectanea*, i. 279–283, from 1092 to 1244, which exactly agree with the text of MS. Harl. 641. This is the only complete copy of the Chronicle I have met with, and has the following title written by a coeval hand inside the cover, “Cronica de edicione domini Johannis dicti Bevere, monachi Westmonasterii.” It was written at St. Augustine’s Canterbury, in the time of abbot Thomas de Fyndone, who died in 1309. Some liberties have evidently been taken by the Canterbury scribe (as usual in such cases) of omitting a few local entries relating to Westminster, and inserting others (as at the end of 1284). See also Joscelin’s notice of Bevere, (*ap. Hearne*) p. 288.

<sup>2</sup> The Harleian MS. 641, would seem to have been the one actually copied, as otherwise it is difficult to account for the error in 1262, in making *Henry de Sandwich* succeed to *Henry de Wengham* as bishop of London, instead of *Richard Talbot*. This error occurs both in Bevere and in the Eton MS., but not in the copies which follow the Chetham MS.

<sup>3</sup> The only MSS. I have met with which have the abridged text in 1244–1264 are a copy at All Souls College, Oxford, No. 37 (transcribed from the Eton MS. by Sir John Rochefort, about the year 1406), the Tenison MS., and a MS. in the Rawlinson Collection, B. No. 377, Bodl. Libr. In reprinting the *Flores*

but on the other hand is much abbreviated in 1291, and also from 1293 to the close in 1306.<sup>1</sup>

The work thus compiled at various times became exceedingly popular, partly from the acceptable form in which so wide a period of time was comprised, (and thereby superseding the more diffuse works of Wendover and Matthew Paris), but also from its authority as

*Historiarum* in 1570, Parker discards the text of the Eton MS. in 1244–1264, but retains it in 1265, and also after 1293, where it is fuller, to 1306, but he inserts much also from MS. Cott. Claud. E. VIII. The year 1307 is *made up* by him, partly of passages which belong to the previous year, and partly of an addition found in the Cotton MS., eked out with another from the Tenison MS., and also in Adam Murimouth. This chapter presents a lamentable example of editorship in the sixteenth century.

<sup>1</sup> In the blank space after this year has been written (but now obliterated and scarcely legible), “Hic frater alter,” and near the close of the supplemental annals, after the words “recepit pro labore mercedem,” in 1325, we read a memorandum by a later hand, as follows:—“Sicque frater Robertus de Reding, quondam monachus ecclesiae beati Petri apostoli Westm. Cronicarum vitæ quoque suæ finem conclusit,” and in the margin, “Finis Cronicarum R. Reding, monachi de Westm. et inchoacio Adæ Merimouthe, S. Pauli.” This note has given rise to the erroneous supposition that the *entire work* of “Matthew of Westminster” should be assigned to Robert of Reding, and Tanner (*Bibl. Brit.* p. 619) partially quotes a very confused passage from a Stillingfleet MS. (now MS. Harl.

292, and copied from Joscelin’s Collections, MS. Cott. Vitell. E. XIV.), beginning “Frater Ricardus (sic) Reding, monachus Westm. collegit librum qui dicitur *Flores Historiarum*, sicut vidi in libro primo hujus Historia, quantum adhuc habent in monasterio prædicto, de manu prædicti Ricardi scriptum,” &c., but which seems of very questionable authority. As to the real share of Robert of Reding in the work, it may be fairly assumed that he began where Bevere alias John of London left off, that is to say, in 1307, and went on to 1325. His name occurs on the Westminster Infirmary Rolls in 1294 and 1298, and also in the letters patent of Edward I., of 1303, already noticed. He was therefore the contemporary, and probably the associate of John of London in his labours, and may, perhaps, have had something to do with the *abridgment* of the Chronicle of the latter after 1293. In the Cottonian MS. Cleop. A. XVI., we find a series of Annals from 1299 to 1367 inclusive, in a hand of the 15th century, the first portion of which to 1325 has been ascribed to Robert of Reding by Sir Robert Cotton, but as this portion is a verbal transcript from the Chetham manuscript, there is no apparent reason why the years before 1307 should be given to him.

emanating from two such famous monasteries as St. Alban's and Westminster. Many copies were made of it, more or less complete,<sup>1</sup> under the original title of *Flores Historiarum*, with omissions on the one hand, or insertions of a local character on the other, according to the views of the respective scribes, by whom also it was often continued to later dates. Thus, we find copies written at Westminster,<sup>2</sup> St. Paul's London,<sup>3</sup> St. Mary's Southwark,<sup>4</sup> Merton,<sup>5</sup> Norwich,<sup>6</sup> Rochester,<sup>7</sup> St. Bennet Hulm,<sup>8</sup> and other places, each of which is distinguished by special insertions and alterations. It was, no doubt, from the fact that the latter portion of the *Flores Historiarum* was composed by a Westminster monk, that the entire work was afterwards attributed to a *Matthew of Westminster*, for the name of *Matthew* really belonged to *Matthew Paris*,<sup>9</sup> whilst the affix of *Westminster* was supplied by conjecture; and this pseudonym having been recognized by Bale and Joscelin, and adopted by archbishop Parker, the error has been perpetuated to our own times.<sup>10</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Thus, the Arundel MS. 96 was transcribed in 1284; the Laud MS. 572 (spoken of by Tanner as "autoris prototypon," but copied immediately from the Chetham MS.) in 1293, and afterwards continued to 1296; and the Bodleian MS. Mus. 149 to 1303, and carried on to 1306. Mr. Luard is of opinion that Bartholomew Cotton made use of a copy of "Matthew of Westminster" not later than 1272, and hence reasonably infers that the latter work was composed at different periods. He is mistaken, however, in supposing the earlier portion of the work to have been compiled in a monastery in the diocese of Norwich, since the passages he refers to only occur in the Norwich copy of Matthew of Westminster (MS. Cott. Claud. E.

VIII.), and are not found in other copies. See Preface to *Barth. Cotton*, pp. xxxviii., xxxix.

<sup>2</sup> MS. Tenison, *olim* Clarendon 93.

<sup>3</sup> MS. Lambeth 1106, *olim* Clarendon 1.

<sup>4</sup> MS. Rawlinson B. 177.

<sup>5</sup> MS. Coll. Eton 58.

<sup>6</sup> MSS. Fairfax 20, and Cott. Claud. E. VIII.

<sup>7</sup> MS. Cott. Nero D. II.

<sup>8</sup> MS. Reg. 14 C. vi.

<sup>9</sup> Widmore asserts, apparently with authority, that the name of *Matthew* is not to be found in any of the lists of monks of Westminster abbey extant. (*Hist. St. Peter's Westm.*, p. 86.)

<sup>10</sup> Of course, this work must gain much in point of authority if regarded as the production of con-

Some years, however, previous to the publication of *Greater Matthew of Westminster*, archbishop Parker had turned his attention to a far more important work, the *Greater Chronicle of Matthew Paris*.<sup>1</sup> He had turned his attention to the *Chronicle of Matthew Paris*, but had not at first succeeded in meeting with a copy of it. This we may infer from a letter addressed to the archbishop by Mathias Flacius (Francowitz), surnamed Illyricus, in May 1561, who writes from the University of Jena, where he was Professor, in the following terms: "Et quoniam etiam proxime tua Amplitudo indicavit Matthei Paris Chronica apud vos non reperiri, mitto Excerpta ejus, quæ dudum per quendam amicum fueram consecutus."<sup>2</sup> These Excerpts had, no doubt, been communicated to Flacius by Bale, and were published by the former at Basle in the *Catalogus Testium Veritatis* in 1556, pp. 593–631, and reprinted in 1562 and 1608. They were not, however, taken (as Flacius supposed) from the larger work of Matthew Paris, but are chiefly derived from his shorter History, intitled by the author *Historia Anglorum*, printed for the first time in the present publication.<sup>3</sup>

temporary writers, and for the future it would be very wrong to quote it under the name of *Matthew of Westminster*. It is somewhat difficult, however, to suggest a substitute. In the table prefixed to the Norwich copy it is intitled *Chronica Westmonasterii*, but this excludes the share Matthew Paris had in the authorship. It might, perhaps, be best to retain the title of *Flores Historiarum*, which it bears in common with the histories of Wendover and Paris. In that case the original Chronicle of Wendover should be called by his name, and the enlarged work of Paris be known as the *Chronica Majora* of St. Alban's.

<sup>1</sup> Strype, iii. 52, and App. No. xviii. The original letter is in C. C. C. C., No. cxix., art. 47.

<sup>2</sup> The Excerpts from Matthew Paris extend from 1094 to 1259, and afterwards from the Continuation of 1260–1273, ascribed to Rishanger. They are by no means made *verbatim*, and are much abbreviated. From 1094 to 1253 inclusive, they are from the shorter History, and from 1254 to 1259 from the larger one; and this is easily accounted for from the fact that they were all copied by Bale from the Old Royal MS. 14 C. vii., which is the *only one* that preserves the text of the years 1254–1259. (See pp. xlvi. n., li.) Parker in his Preface refers expressly to these Excerpts from the "Historia Minor," as reprinted in the Strasburg edition of 1562, and conjectures (but on what authority I know not) that they were copied

MSS. of  
the work  
obtained  
by arch-  
bishop  
Parker.

Subsequently to the receipt of this letter from Flacius, the archbishop appears to have been more successful in his inquiries for copies of the works of Matthew Paris, aided, no doubt, by the printed order of Privy Council, July 1568, which empowered him or his deputies to borrow all the “ancient records and monuments belonging to the late dissolved monasteries,” that were in the hands of private persons.<sup>1</sup> He had thus obtained from Edward Aglionby, of Balsall Temple, co. Warwick, Esquire, the first volume of the larger work (founded on Wendover’s, and intitled also *Flores Historiarum*), from the Creation to the end of 1188;<sup>2</sup> while the second volume of the same, from 1189 to 1253 inclusive (the greater part of which was in the autograph of the author), had been fortunately acquired from Sir Henry Sidney, K.G., Lord Deputy of Ireland.<sup>3</sup> In addition to this great treasure (the value of which Parker was quite unable to appreciate properly), he had borrowed a MS.<sup>4</sup> from Sir William Cecil, Secretary of State, commencing in 1066 and ending in 1208,<sup>5</sup> compiled in the fifteenth century, and containing a *mixed text*, that is to say, partly taken from the Greater Chronicle, and partly from the shorter History. The earl of Arundel had also lent the archbishop a valuable volume containing the *Historia An-*

from a MS. borrowed from the library of St. Paul’s, London. In the Geneva edition of 1608, edited by Simon Goulart, there are some interpolations under the years 1170 and 1239, which are taken from the printed text of the greater work of Matthew Paris.

<sup>1</sup> In No. exiv. art. 12. *ap.* Nasmith, *Catal. libb. MSS. in Bibl. C. C. C. C.*, p. 139. Cf. Strype, *Life*, i. 523.

<sup>2</sup> Now in Corp. Chr. Coll. Cambr., No. xxvi.

<sup>3</sup> Now C. C. C. C., No. xvi.

<sup>4</sup> His letter to Cecil is in MS.

Lansd. 11, art. 62, dated 9 Aug. 1569, in which he desires “to borowe but for a weke or two your boke of Mathue Paris story,” and adds, “I wole torne it to the commoditye of our own contrye.” He must, however, have borrowed this MS. previously, for Lambarde in 1565 seems to allude to it as then being in his hands, and in the transcript of 14 C. vii. made for Parker in 1567 (MS. C. C. C. C. No. lvi), a marginal reference is made to the Cecil MS.

<sup>5</sup> Now in the Bibl. Impériale at Paris, No. 6048 B.

*glorum*, and the concluding portion of the larger work from 1254 to 1259; the whole in the author's autograph.<sup>1</sup> But, besides these, Parker undoubtedly had the use of a manuscript belonging to John Stow,<sup>2</sup> containing the larger work from the commencement to the year 1250, by the aid of which copy some deficiencies in the Sidney MS. were supplied. These were all the copies at that time known to exist of the historical writings of Matthew Paris, so that the archbishop might well feel justified in remarking, “*quod rara sint et paucissima hujus Historiae exemplaria, quæ hodie extant*”<sup>3</sup> (in comparison with those of Geoffrey of Monmouth, Henry of Huntingdon, or other historians), and after the lapse of three centuries this statement remains uncontradicted.

Provided with such materials (ample enough in themselves) Parker prepared his edition of 1571 for the press. Edition of 1571.  
“Great was the pains,” says Strype, “our prelate took in the finishing this work, and the exactness he used about it;”<sup>4</sup> an assertion which, on a careful examination of the text, we shall find not merely doubtful, but absolutely untrue. And this examination becomes the more necessary, since the *Historia Anglorum*, now first published, is based throughout on that portion of the larger work, so improperly intitled by Parker “*Historia Major*.<sup>5</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Now in the British Museum, MS. Reg. 14 C. vii.

<sup>2</sup> Now MS. Cotton. Nero. D. V. Stow says that the archbishop “made diligent search for the antiquities [i.e. manuscripts] of the Brytons and English Saxons . . . . and such whereof he knew *very few examples* to be extant (among the which was Matthew Paris, Matthew Florilegus, Thomas Walsingham, and other, *all which he received of my hands*) he caused to be printed.” *Annales*, 1615, p. 679. This copy is certainly the one mentioned by Parker in the Preface

to his edition, 1571, as “*aliud honesti ejusdam hominis exemplar.*”

<sup>3</sup> The scarcity of copies of Matthew Paris had been long previously remarked by Leland, *Comment.* ii. 260, and Parker grounds thereon an argument by no means well founded, as to the practices of the Romanists to prevent their circulation.

<sup>4</sup> *Life*, i. 553.

<sup>5</sup> This title has been the cause of great confusion and error, for the biographers of Matthew Paris, to the time of Tanner inclusive, have in-

He must have been well aware, first, that no such title was to be found in the MSS., and secondly, that the text, whether taken up at the year 1066 or 1067, was really the *continuous narrative* of Wendover adopted by Matthew Paris, enlarged and continued. Although as late as 1570 Parker's knowledge of the works of the later writer was extremely erroneous,<sup>1</sup> yet in the following year he distinctly points out that Matthew Paris was to be accepted as the author of the entire great work from Adam to the year 1259, notwithstanding that the portion anterior to the Conquest had been incorrectly ascribed to "Matthew of Westminster."<sup>2</sup> As this portion had already been printed, Parker intended his new publication to continue and complete the work ; but to effect

ferred that the *Historia Major* was a different work from the Chronicle of the preceding period, instead of being (as it is) the continuation of it. Elsewhere, as in the treatise *De Antiq. Eccles. Brit.*, 1572, the archbishop refers to it indifferently as *Hist. Major* or *Chron. Major*. All the extant copies of the entire work preserve the original heading of *Flores Historiarum*, given to it by Wendover, but on the fly leaf at the end of the Aglionby MS. I find in the hand of Matthew Paris himself, "Chronica ab origine mundi usque ad annum Domini millesimum . . . simum, videlicet, usque ad mortem Henrici II. regis Angliæ." It is referred to by Paris and other writers (Wallingford, John of Oxneade, Pike, &c.,) under other titles, namely, *Majora Chronica S. Albani*, *Magna Chronica S. Albani*, *Liber Chronicorum*, *Chronica S. Albani*, *Historiae S. Albani*, *Liber Historiarum*, *Liber Historiarum Annalium*, etc., and the work is also noticed as *Historia prolixior* and *Historia-*

*rum plenitudo*. The editors of the *Recueil des Historiens de la France*, tom. xvii. speak of the text from 1066 to 1259, as "Majoris Historiæ pars tertia;" but Matthew Paris himself divided the entire work into three volumes: 1, from the Creation to 1188 ; 2, from 1189 to 1253 ; and 3 (not completed), from 1254 to 1259.

<sup>1</sup> In the Preface to the second edition of "Matthew of Westminster," he says that Matthew Paris wrote about the year 1286 (corrected 1268 in the *Errata*) a double History, *Major* and *Minor*, of which the *Major* extended from the Creation to 1287 (corrected 44 Hen. III.) It must be remembered that Paris died in 1259.

<sup>2</sup> "Putandum est illum authorem fuisse hujus ingentis ac ampliæ Historiæ, continuatæ ab Adamo usque ad regnum Guilielmi dueis Normanniæ Conquistoris, quæ tamen non recte (ni fallor) eum titulo et nomine Matthæi Westmonasteriensis inscribitur." Pref. to ed. 1571.

this he adopted a course hardly to be justified. Misled, perhaps, in some measure, by the mixed text<sup>1</sup> of the Cecil MS. (compiled by a monk of St. Alban's about the year 1420-1430), or rather availing himself of the garbled text furnished by that compiler, he borrowed from it the Prologue beginning "De Chronographia," really belonging to the *Historia Anglorum*,<sup>2</sup> to which he joined on (but with many omissions and alterations) the prefatory chapters in the same MS. relating to events in 1066, from the death of Edward the Confessor to the battle of Hastings.<sup>3</sup> After this he proceeded to construct his text in the following manner :—From the Aglionby MS. he took the years 1067 to 1188 inclusive; from the Cecil<sup>4</sup> and Cotton MSS., 1089 to the middle of 1092; from the Sidney MS. the remainder of 1092 and to 1253 inclusive; and from the Arundel MS. the years 1254-1259. Not that, strictly speaking, any single manuscript was followed at all, but interpolated throughout from others, or altered by conjectural and arbitrary readings.<sup>5</sup> That this is not an exaggerated statement can be proved, not only by the collations of the text given by Wats in the reprint of the work in 1640, but by his express testimony in reference to Parker's

<sup>1</sup> As Parker held in his hands the autograph or contemporary copies of both sources from which the Cecil MS. was derived, he ought not to have mistaken its character.

<sup>2</sup> It will be seen by reference to the present edition, what liberties Parker took with the text of this Prologue.

<sup>3</sup> Taken by the compiler (but abridged) from the larger work (MS. Cott. Nero D. V. ff. 98 b—99 b), and may be found in Wendover, vol. i. pp. 501, 510-11, 513, 515-521, ed. Coxe.

<sup>4</sup> Parker, no doubt, had intended at first to make much greater use of

the Cecil MS., and had caused it to be transcribed for the press from 1188 to 1199 (as we learn from Wats, *Var. Lect.*), but he afterwards substituted the text of the Sidney MS. from 1192. His obligations to the Aglionby MS. are very inadequately represented by his phrase, "nonnulla petita sunt e vestuto quodam codice Ed. Aglionby."

<sup>5</sup> In una eademque sententia heic excerpens ex uno, ibi commisceens ex alio, et non semel interpolans ex proprio." Wats, in *Præf. ad Adversaria.*

Unfaithful  
and worth-  
less cha-  
racter of  
Parker's  
printed  
text.

transcript originally prepared for the press, which subsequently fell into Selden's hands, and was lent by him to the editor of the new edition.<sup>1</sup> He tells us that the text had been everywhere altered and disfigured by the editor and printer, so that the sense often became “*aut faede mutilus, aliorum transvorsus, aut denique horsum vorsum divaricatus!*”<sup>2</sup> To afford some idea of the extent of these unwarrantable liberties, I subjoin two or three instances taken almost at hazard from Parker's text, compared with that of the manuscripts. The alterations are marked by *italics*.

PARKER'S TEXT, 1571, p. 19.  
(A.D. 1088.)

Pecunias *autem* vel posses-  
siones pro suo arbitrio *acci-  
pere*, et prorsus quæcunque vo-  
luerint, in regno pro *voluntate*  
*statuere* (*dummodo notam pro-  
ditionis non incurvant*) illis se  
concedere. *Idem autem* illis  
*eventurum* *quod sibi*, si secus  
quam ratio postulaverit secum  
agant, *præcipue* cum idem  
se regem, qui illos comites  
constituerit.

*Cum autem rumor facti hu-  
jus ad regias aures pervenisset,  
rex ira inflammatus stipendiarios milites suos Anglos  
congregat, et absque mora ut  
ad obsidionem veniant jubet:  
nisi velint nomine Nithing,  
quod Latine Nequam sonat,  
recenseri. Angli (qui nihil  
contumeliosius et vilius aesti-  
mant quam hujusmodi igno-*

TEXT OF THE MSS.

Si velint pecunias vel pos-  
siones, pro suo arbitrio ac-  
cipiant, et prorsus quæcunque  
voluerint in regno pro bene-  
placito suo disponant; tantum-  
modo videant, ne periclitetur  
judicium proditoris. Quod si  
de se judicaverit contempnen-  
dum, exemplum caveant de se-  
ipsis, *præcipue* cum idem se-  
regem qui comites constituit  
illos.

Sed rumor facti ad regem  
cito perlabitur, qui iram intra  
conscientiam revolvens, sti-  
pendiarios suos Anglos con-  
gregat. Jubet ut compatriotæ  
ad obsidionem veniant, nisi  
velint sub nomine Nithing,  
quod Latine Nequam sonat,  
remanere. Angli siquidem,  
qui nihil miserius aestimant  
quam hujusmodi dedecore vo-

<sup>1</sup> This transcript does not appear to be now among Selden's MSS. in the Bodleian library. It is mentioned by Selden as written by “a country

viear,” in his “England's Epino-  
mis,” *Works*, iii. p. 27, ed. 1726.

<sup>2</sup> Pref. in *Adversaria sive Var. Lect.*

*minioso vocabulo notari) eater-  
vatim ad regem confluente,  
ingentes copias conficiunt. Obs-  
sensi autem longiorem obsidio-  
nem ferre non valentes castel-  
lum regi reddiderunt.*

*Ibid*, p. 24 (A.D. 1094.)

Eodem anno, rex Willielmus in Walliam exercitum *ducere festinavit*, quod anno præterito, Wallenses, multis Normannorum *occisis*, procerum *confrcatis firmitatibus*, castello montis Gomerii *direpto*, et habitantibus in eo *interfectis*, igne et ferro finitimos *depopulati fuerant*.

cabuli notari, catervatim ad regem confluunt, invincibilem exercitum congerentes. Nec inclusi diutinam obsidionem ferre prævalentes, castellum regi reddiderunt.

Eodem anno impiger rex Willelmus in Walliam exercitum duxit, eo quod anno præterito i[i]dem Walenses multos Normannorum occiderant, et procerum confregerant firmates. Castellum de Monte Gomerii prostraverant, et habitantes in eo necaverant, igne et ferro finitimos conterentes.

It is obvious that a text made up with this unbounded license (even if it gained somewhat in point of Latinity)<sup>1</sup> can be of no authority or value, and it is to be regretted that some recent editors of historical works have taken the trouble to give various readings from the printed edition of Matthew Paris, which in many instances represent only the arbitrary corrections of Parker, his editor, or his printer. So far, indeed, did this license extend, that occasionally several lines, or even an entire paragraph, are inserted, which will be sought for in vain in the manuscripts!<sup>2</sup> Yet, notwithstanding these facts,

<sup>1</sup> “Scilicet!” exclaims Wats, “Ac si hoc esset antiquos authores edere, et non seipsum potius authorem constituere !”

<sup>2</sup> See instances under 1192, ed. 1571, p. 229, l. 35 (one line), and under 1237, p. 590, l. 45 (six lines). A more striking example occurs under 1258, p. 1296, l. 19, where the Arundel MS. (the *unique* copy of the text) wants a leaf. Lambarde in his transcript (MS. Cott. Vitell.

D. II.) leaves a space of nearly two pages, but not so Parker, who, following his mischievous habit of supplying deficiencies, connects the narrative together by *eleven lines*, from “Certe tanta famæ” to “importunas satis,” (ed. Wats, p. 970), taken chiefly out of “Matthew of Westminster,” but these even altered and interpolated! In the present volume, at pp. 168–175, will be found a similar instance of two leaves (in

the archbishop took occasion a few years afterwards, in his preface to the edition of Asser's *Alfredi Regis Res Gestae*, 1574, to make the most positive assertion (I use Strype's translation of his words) that "in all the books he put forth, he never added anything of his own, nor diminished from the copy, but expressed, to a word, everything as he found them in the originals; for he feared, as he said, if he should have put in anything of his own, out of pretence to smooth the wrinkles and wipe off the stains of antiquity, that what Cornelius Nepos writ to Sallust might be verified of him, that they might not seem so much their histories that writ them as his own."<sup>1</sup> How are we to interpret this language?

reality only one of the original MS.) supplied, which are made up partly from the larger Chronicle of Matthew Paris, and partly from Eadmer and Higden; and the text thus arbitrarily constructed is inserted without scruple as the work of the original author! It is surprising that Wats should have republished Parker's text, but he was not so much to blame, if we consider that the work was printed off as far as the reign of Henry II. before he was applied to by the booksellers to edit it, and he endeavoured by his collations (although far from complete or accurate) to remedy the faults of the first edition.

<sup>1</sup> *Life*, by Strype, vol. ii. p. 501. It is worth while to give the very words of the archbishop: "Quod autem ad historiæ fidem attinet, hoc te scire volo, eam me semper rationem secutum in omnibus iis libris quos divulgavi, nihil ut de meo adjecterim aut diminuerem, sed cuncta, prout in primis exemplaribus reperiuntur, ad verbum expresserim. Alioquin, si quid forsitan de meo attulisset, aut vetustatis veluti rugas ac nævos

delere omnes voluisse, metuendum mihi sane foret (ne quod Salustio suo scribit Cornelius Nepos), non tam illorum qui illas conscripserunt historiæ, quam meæ videri possunt. Judicio erunt ipsa prima exemplaria, quæ idcirco Cantabrigiae in Bibliotheca Coll. Corp. Christi, ad sempiternum hujus rei testimonium extare voluimus. Ubi si quis cum codicibus manuscriptis impressos comparare voluerit, enimvero *nihil nos aut detraxisse aut addidisse inveniet, sed summa ubique fidem et religionem præstitisse.*" The boldness of this challenge may well astonish us! It has, however, been accepted, and the result is as I have stated above, and affords a complete contradiction to Parker's statement. I speak here in regard to the texts of Matthew Paris and "Matthew of Westminster." As to Walsingham (published together with Asser, 1574), let Mr. Riley's opinion be taken, who declares the text to be utterly worthless, and one portion "a mass of perversion and absolute nonsense." Introd. to vol. ii. p. xvii.

Are we really to believe that Parker was ignorant of the alterations and disfigurement of the authors published under his sanction, or must we be reduced to the necessity of supposing him to have written what he knew to be false? It is a dilemma hard to determine, but I would willingly, if possible, throw the blame on the editor or printer, rather than on the archbishop himself.

It must, however, I think, be considered a subject of Intention of Parker to print the *Hist. Anglorum*,—called by him *Historia Minor*,—for which purpose he had caused a falsely transcript to be made in 1567 from the Arundel manuscript.<sup>1</sup> This title of *Historia Minor* is not derived from the manuscript itself, but was first employed by Lambarde, as a relative term, to distinguish it from the larger work;<sup>2</sup> and this term being found convenient, and repeated by Parker, Pits, Cotton, Speed, Wats, Twysden, and other writers, it has descended unquestioned to the present time. Other titles have also been given to it. Bale always names it *Liber Chronicorum*,<sup>3</sup> while else-

<sup>1</sup> Now in Corp. Ch. Coll. Cambridge, No. lvi. Parker mentions in his preface to Matthew Paris his design to publish the work, unless the earl of Arundel should undertake it himself; but he speaks of it erroneously as ending in 1250, instead of 1253, and then commits a more serious and unaccountable blunder, in stating that the Prologue of the work began with the words, “Considerans prolixitatem Chronicorum Angliae,” whereas this Prologue has no connexion whatever with the *Historia Anglorum*, but belongs to a brief Genealogical History, from Alfred to Henry III., by Matthew Paris, prefixed, with other matter, to the Greater Chronicle in

the Aglionby copy. This error is copied by Pits, Selden, and others.

<sup>2</sup> For the same reason the two works of Walsingham were distinguished as *Historia Major*. and *Minor*.

<sup>3</sup> This title is taken from the conclusion of the year 1259 in the Arundel MS., but, as before remarked, the years 1254–1259 constitute a portion of the larger work, added on to the *Historia Anglorum* after the death of the author. This union of two different works has been the source of much error to bibliographers. Even Wats, who had the MS. before him, makes great confusion between the *Liber Chronicorum* or *Chronicon* and the

where it is simply cited as *Chronicon*. In the heading to the Prologue it is expressly intitled by Matthew Paris himself *Historia Anglorum*, and although afterwards incidentally spoken of as "Anglorum Chronica," yet the former title has been adopted in the present edition as the most precise.

Only one complete copy of it known to exist.

Its history.

Walsing-ham.

Of this work only one complete copy is known to exist,<sup>1</sup> but as this is in the handwriting of the author, there is little more to be desired. It is preserved among the manuscripts of the Old Royal Collection in the British Museum, and its history, so far as can be ascertained, is somewhat remarkable. We are told by Matthew Paris that he began to write it in the year 1250,<sup>2</sup> that is to say, immediately after the completion of the Greater Chronicle, as originally intended; and he continued it to the year 1253 inclusive. When finished, he presented it to the church of St. Alban's, as appears by the autograph inscription in the volume,<sup>3</sup> and it was long preserved there, together with his other writings. It was there when Walsingham (a monk of the same abbey) compiled his *Ypodigma Neustriæ*, who borrows often from it, particularly under the year 1216, where it is copied verbally.<sup>4</sup> This was probably about 1419, in which year his work was completed. At a later

*Historia Minor*, at one time asserting them to be the same, and at another speaking of them as different. He errs also, with others, in supposing the briefer History to come down to 1259.

<sup>1</sup> The Cecil MS. at Paris, No. 6048 B., copies the text to a considerable extent, but is also made up from the larger work. Lambarde perhaps alludes to this MS. when he writes (in MS. Cott. Vitell. D. II.), "Hujus libri duo tantum vetus exemplaria," one of which was the Arundel MS., (now Reg. 14. C. vii.) and the other

"penes Mattheum Cant. archiepiscopum." Parker, however, only acknowledges one copy, namely, the Arundel MS. Pref. to Matth. Westm.

<sup>2</sup> See the present volume, p. 9.

<sup>3</sup> Now partly effaced, but which can be supplied by the similar inscription in MS. Cott. Nero, D. I., containing the *Vitæ Offarum*, *Vitæ Abbatum*, and *Liber Additamentorum*.

<sup>4</sup> P. 56, ed. 1574. Compare the words there cited of "quidem miles," [the Vicomte de Bethune,] with the present edition, vol. ii. p. 187.

period, about 1430–1440, we find it made use of in the “*Breviarium Chronicorum*” of Thomas Rudborne, a monk of Winchester, preserved in MS. Cott. Nero A. XVII.<sup>1</sup> Not long after this there is reason to believe that the manuscript came into the possession of Humphrey Duke of Gloucester, to whom it may have been given by abbat Whethamstede,<sup>2</sup> for on the last leaf of the volume (at the close of the Continuation of Matthew Paris,<sup>3</sup> ascribed to Rishanger) an inscription has been written in the duke's hand as follows, “*Ceste livre est a moy, Homffrey Duc de Glowcestre;*” and, although carefully erased at a later period, it can still be read by the aid of a chemical agent.<sup>4</sup> What became of this volume after the duke's death in 1447 is uncertain. It was not included among the numerous manuscripts presented by him in his lifetime (in 1439–1443) to the University of Oxford,<sup>5</sup> and which were so lamentably dispersed in the reign of Edward VI.; and when we next meet with

<sup>1</sup> See particularly fol. 137 and fol. 151 b, and compare pp. 163, 295 of the present volume.

<sup>2</sup> Leland tells us, *Collectanea*, iii. 58, that the duke of Gloucester received many illuminated manuscripts as presents from the heads of monasteries. Several volumes were certainly given to him by abbot Whethamstede about the year 1431, as specified in a register of his time, MS. Arund. 34, fol. 65 b, but Matthew Paris is not mentioned among them. Duke Humphrey was received into the fraternity of St. Alban's as early as 1433, and was their firm friend and patron. See MSS. Cott. Nero D. VII. f. 147, and Harl. 3775, f. 100.

<sup>3</sup> This “Continuation” appears to have been added on to the work of Matthew Paris early in the 15th century, and there is a note in the

margin of fol. 230 (A.D. 1272), in a hand of the period, which has also written another note at fol. 97 b (A.D. 1216), proving that the volume was then in the same state as at present. It must, however, be observed, that the original pagination does not include the “Continuation,” but stops short of it.

<sup>4</sup> A similar inscription is in MS. Cott. Nero E. V. Other volumes which belonged to the duke of Gloucester are, MSS. Reg. 5, F. ii., and 16 G. vi., Harl. 1705, Sloan. 248, and Eg. 617, 618.

<sup>5</sup> So I am informed by the Rev. John Griffith, the registrar, who kindly examined the University Register F. for me. Wood's account of the number of volumes given appears not to be accurate. See *Hist. et Antiq. Oxon.* ii. 49, ed. 1674, and Ellis, *Letters of Em. Lit. Men*, p. 356.

John Russel, bishop of Lincoln (translated from Rochester in 1480), who wrote the following memorandum on the fly-leaf:—

“ Si is liber probari possit pertinuisse et pertinere debere ad proprietatem monasterii Sancti Albani, Lincoln. diocesis, jurisdictionis tamen exempta, declaro hanc fore mentem meam, ut in eo casu ego hoc libro tanquam ex precario sub eis utor, qui monachi ipsius loci pro tempore fuerint. Alioquin, justa condicionem sub qua is liber in meam possessionem venerat, volo ut pertineat Collegio Beate Marie Winton. in Oxonia, de fundacione Willielmi Wykham, quondam Wintoniensis episcopi.

Scriptum per manum meam propriam apud Bokedene,  
x<sup>mo</sup>. die Junii, a<sup>o</sup>. 1488.

JO. LINCOLN.

Qui deleverit seu corruperit hoc scriptum anathema sit.”

From this note it would appear that the monks of St. Alban's had laid claim to the volume, but unsuccessfully,<sup>1</sup> which may, perhaps, have some connexion with the erasure before noticed.<sup>2</sup> It is to be regretted that the bishop of Lincoln has not stated from whom he acquired the manuscript, under the condition of leaving it to St. Mary's College (now New College), Oxford, after his death; but he certainly intended this condition to be carried out. He died 30th December 1494, but in his will<sup>3</sup> there is no mention of this or of any other manuscripts in his library. How it happened that the volume

<sup>1</sup> Warton notices this memorandum, *Diss.* 1, p. lxxxviii. H. E. P., ed. 1840, but in very exaggerated terms. He says, “The disputed property of a book often occasioned the most violent altercations. *Many claims* appear to have been made to a manuscript of Matthew Paris, in which John Russell, bishop of Lincoln, thus conditionally defends or explains his right of possession, ‘If this book,’ &c.” The signature of the bishop is engraved by Casley, pl. xvi.

<sup>2</sup> See pp. xxxviii., xlvi.

<sup>3</sup> The will, dated the day of his death, and proved 12th Jan. 1495, is in the Prerogative Court, Register *Vox*. The only passage in it which refers to the bishop's library is a clause, that each of his chaplains who had taken a degree should select one work relating “ad facultates suas,” but with this restriction, “proviso tamen, ut electio librorum hujusmodi sit tota de *litera impressa*, et non *scripta calamo*.”

did not go to the college, as directed above,<sup>1</sup> it is now impossible to ascertain. The bishop had ordered the residue of his property to be sold, in order to establish an anniversary for ten years in the church of Lincoln, and pay his debts and expenses, and it is possible that the manuscript of Matthew Paris may have been thus disposed of. However this may be, we next trace it in the hands of Polydore Vergil, an Italian of considerable attainments, who had been sent to England in 1502 by pope Alexander VI. as a tax collector, and who undertook, at the request of king Henry VII., to write a History of England. In a letter to his brother, dated from London in 1517, prefixed to the treatise *De Inventoribus* (published at Basle in 1521), he says that he had been employed on the work for twelve years, but it was not completed till long afterwards.<sup>2</sup> The manuscript bears evidence of his having read it attentively, and has marginal notes in his handwriting throughout the greater part of it. He has borrowed much from this volume (but without acknowledgment) in his *Anglica Historia*, particularly in the twelfth book, in the account of the peace concluded between Stephen and the empress; and in the fifteenth book, where the speech of archbishop Hubert in favour of king John is verbally copied.<sup>3</sup>

Polydore  
Vergil.

<sup>1</sup> Bishop Russell had given in his lifetime (in 1482) several MSS. to the college. See Coxe's Catalogue, under the Nos. 263, 271, 274. His motto in them is, "Ve Rus. celluy je suis," which is elucidated by the following lines in No. 267:—

" Stirpe parum clarus, magis aptus  
quam doctus,  
Fraudis inexpertus, facto sermo-  
neque *Ve Rus.*  
Celluy je suis."

In Nichols's "Autographs of remarkable Personages," 1829, this is

engraved from MS. Cott. Vesp. E. XII., and falsely read as "*Jo. Russellus je suis.*"

<sup>2</sup> The first edition (in 26 books) was printed at Basle in 1534, dedicated to Henry VIII., and later editions, enlarged, appeared in 1540 and 1555. For a full account of this writer see Sir H. Ellis's Prefaces to the eight first and three last books of his History, in an English version, edited for the Camden Society in 1844 and 1846.

<sup>3</sup> Pp. 208 and 263, ed. 1555, Cf. the present edition, i. 295, ii. 80.

Polydore Vergil has been accused of partiality and falsehood, and a more serious charge was made against him by Dr. Caius, of Cambridge,<sup>1</sup> that he had burnt a waggon-load of ancient historical writers, after making use of them; but the charge is evidently false, as proved by this manuscript of Matthew Paris, and others still existing, with notes in them by the hand of Polydore.<sup>2</sup>

About the same period an abstract of this same manuscript, from 1067 to 1259, inclusive, was made by a John Ske-wys.<sup>3</sup> Cornish man, named John Skewys,<sup>3</sup> or Skuish, intitled, “A Brevyat of a Cronacle made by Mathewe Paris, monke of Seynt Alban, of the conqueste of Duke William of Normandy uppone this realme,” which is still preserved in the Harleian MS. 2258. The volume was afterwards given by the compiler to Raynold Mohun (as we learn from a note prefixed),<sup>4</sup> and was seen by Bale in his house, who quotes from it, as “*Ex Chronico Reginaldi Mohun*,”<sup>5</sup> a reference sufficiently perplexing, but which I was enabled to explain by accidentally consulting the volume in question. This John Skewys

<sup>1</sup> *De Antiq. Cantabrigiae*, 1574, p. 52.

<sup>2</sup> See MS. Reg. 13 D. v., Cott. Nero D. II., and Harl. 3775.

<sup>3</sup> Misread *Rewys* or *Reeves* by Wanley, in Harleian Catalogue, ii. 594. The MS. belonged previously to the Rev. Rob. Bourcough of Totness, No. 90 (*Cat. MSS. Angl.* ii. 235), and was purchased by Lord Oxford in 1715.

<sup>4</sup> “Raynold Mohun owner hereof by the gyfte of John Skewys, law-yar, and borne in the contye of Cornewalle, whoo drewe and wrote thys worke wythe hys owne honde, and brevyatyd owte of dyvers antyke auctors.”

<sup>5</sup> MS. Selden, 64 B. fol. 129 b, and hence printed by Wats among

the “Testimonia,” but by the fault of the printer the references appear to relate to the citations which follow instead of precede. This has been a source of much error to modern writers. In the same MS., fol. 110 b, is a brief account of John Skuysh, “multarum rerum cognitione præditus,” and a notice of the historical compilation made by him from Gildas, Geoffrey of Monmouth, Richard of Cirencester, Matthew Paris, and others, which he refers to “*Ex domo Reginaldi Mohun*.” This information is repeated in the *Scriptores*, ed. 1557, p. 710, and with additions, by Pits, p. 709; Wood, *Athenæ Oxon.* i. 58, ed. 1813; and Fuller, *Worthies*, 1662, p. 204.

was a person of note, a member of Lincoln's Inn in 1518, and, as learned in the law, "a consiliis" in the household of cardinal Wolsey. In 1514 he had the privilege granted to him of keeping on his hat in the king's presence, and in a subsidy roll of the cardinal's household is assessed at 100s. for the first payment (May 1523).<sup>1</sup> Skewys does not state where the manuscript was deposited from which he made his abstract, but, according to all probability, it had previously found its way into the Old Royal Library, to which Polydore Vergil certainly had access, and to which also Skewys, from his position about Wolsey, could hardly have failed to gain admission. We know that it was in the king's library at a somewhat later date, when Bale made use of it, that is to say, about the years 1550–1552.<sup>2</sup> He not only derived from this volume the information he possessed of the writings of Matthew Paris, as given in the second edition of his *Scriptores*,<sup>3</sup> but made large excerpts from it (portions of which, as we have seen, he communicated to Flacius), and incorporated them in the text of his work, under the headings of *Appendices* and *De Papis*.<sup>4</sup> It would appear that Bale, having borrowed this MS. from the

John Bale,  
bishop of  
Ossory.

<sup>1</sup> For notices of Skewys, see the Calendar of State Papers, i. 134, 803, 838, ii. 1,404; and Lay Subsidy Rolls, 27, No. 29, in the State Papers at the Record Office. Cavendish, in his Life of Wolsey, mentions among his household "four counsailours learned in the lawe," p. 32, ed. 1852. A pedigree of the family is in MS. Harl. 4031, f. 71 b.

<sup>2</sup> Several notices of Matthew Paris are taken "Ex Bibliotheca domini Regis," in MS. Selden, 64 B. fol. 129 b; and in the list of MSS. in the same library consulted by Bale, is "Chron. Mathei Parys," fol. 193. He notes also, under his own name, fol. 114 b, "Joannes Balæus citra redditum ex Germania [in 1549]

scripsit Excerptiones Matthæi Paris, li. 1. Anno Domini, 1070." It is worthy of note that Bale never saw a copy of the Greater Chronicle of Matthew Paris.

<sup>3</sup> P. 315, ed. 1557. In his previous edition of 1548–9, he knew so little of the author, that he supposed him to have lived in the reign of Edward the Third!

<sup>4</sup> These extracts extend from 1103, p. 162, to 1259, p. 310, and chiefly refer to papal or ecclesiastical affairs. They are not given *textually*, and are much abbreviated. The portion *De Papis* was afterwards printed separately at Basle in 1558, under the title of "Acta Romanorum Pontificum."

Royal library, took it into Ireland with him, for in the list of his manuscripts<sup>1</sup> left there after his flight in 1553, we find the entry of “Matthæi Parisii ingens Chronicorum opus. Guilhelmi Rishangri Continuationes eorundem,” which no doubt refers to the volume in question. After Bale’s death, in 1563, the MS. was acquired by Henry Fitzalan, earl of Arundel, from whom archbishop Parker borrowed it. The earl died 24th February 1580,<sup>2</sup> and his valuable library descended to his son-in-law, John Lord Lumley, at whose decease in 1609, without issue, the whole was purchased by king James I.<sup>3</sup> for the use of prince Henry,<sup>4</sup> and so became united to the Royal Collection,<sup>4</sup> which was eventually presented by George II. to the British Museum in 1757.

Henry  
Fitzalan,  
earl of  
Arundel.

Historical  
value of  
the work.

It will be evident from all that has preceded, that the great historical value of the lesser work of Matthew Paris, intitled by him “*Historia Anglorum*,” was recognized at once from the time it first came under the notice of the scholars of the sixteenth century. Besides Polydore Vergil, Bale, and Flacius Illyricus, already noticed, it was made much use of by archbishop Parker in his work, *De Antiquitate Britannicæ Ecclesiae*, 1572; by Joscelin, in his historical Collections, preserved in MS. Cott. Vitell. E. XIV.; and by Lambarde in his *Dictionarium Angliæ Topographicum*, compiled between 1565 and 1577, but first published in 1730.<sup>5</sup> More than

<sup>1</sup> This list (which is very remarkable) is printed at the end of cent. xiii. of the *Scriptores*, p. 160, ed. 1559. Many of the MSS. appear to have come afterwards into Sir Robert Cotton’s hands, a few to the earl of Arundel, others to Selden, and some to the Ware and Clarendon collection.

<sup>2</sup> Tierney’s *History of Arundel*, p. 344, on authority of MS. Reg. 17 A. ix. f. 69.

<sup>3</sup> See Dr. Birch’s *Life of Henry Prince of Wales*, 1760, pp. 161, 163.

<sup>4</sup> In 1614 Casaubon had the MS. of it from the Royal Library, and at a later period, Selden, Wats, and Twysden.

<sup>5</sup> Excerpts from the MS. from 1067 to 1259, in a hand of the 16th century, very carelessly made, exist in MS. Lansdowne, 205, ff. 159–218 b. At the end they are said to be derived “Ex Minore Historia fratris Matthæi Parisiensis, in Bibliotheca comitis Arundelii.”

half a century later, a very partial and inaccurate collation of the text was given by Wats<sup>1</sup> in his reprint of Parker's edition of the “*Historia Major*,” 1640; and a transcript of the entire work was made by Twysden in 1648, with a view probably to publication.<sup>2</sup>

Subsequently, however, to this period it appears to have been overlooked and forgotten, or, if noticed at all, only in the inaccurate references by later bibliographers. The first in recent times who called attention to the importance of this work, was the Rev. Joseph Stevenson, in the notes and illustrations to his valuable edition of Sir Robert Gray's *Scalacronica*, 1836, p. 211, and he remarks that it varied so much from the Greater Chronicle printed by Wats, “as to assume the appearance of a distinct version, and a version, too, which in many points is fuller, stronger, and better than that already given to the public.” The same opinion is expressed also by the Rev. H. O. Coxe in the supplemental volume to his edition of Wendover, 1844, who adds, “It does seem extraordinary that the work itself should never have been printed, being, as it is, so entirely throughout the original work of Matthew Paris;” and to afford some idea of the mode adopted in the composition of this “highly interesting Chronicle,” he prints the text of the years 1067–1072 inclusive.

The manuscript so often alluded to as being in the Old Royal Library, under the press-mark 14 C. vii., is a good-sized folio, and consists of 231 leaves, as recently num-

Descrip-  
tion of the  
Royal MS.  
14 C. vii.

<sup>1</sup> This collation is chiefly limited to the years 1190–1199, and has the mischievous effect of mingling together the texts of two works meant to be quite distinct; and this is repeated in the “Appendix” to the edition of Wendover by the Rev. H. O. Coxe, 1844. Wats does not seem to have been aware that the Royal MS. 14 C. vii. was written by the hand of the author, or that the

abridged transcript by Lambarde and others in MS. Cott. Vitell. D. II. was taken from it. He designates the former as *Chronicon*, but the latter as *Minor*.

<sup>2</sup> This transcript was in Sir John Sebright's library, and at his sale in 1807 (lot 1206) was purchased by Heber, and resold in 1836, to Sir Thomas Phillipps, bart., the present possessor.

bered. Three early series of numbers, however, exist, by different hands, the first of which is a pagination, probably of the early part of the 15th century, which commences on the *verso* of the ninth leaf, and extends from page 1 to page 413 (now fol. 218). The second numbering, nearly of the same period, begins at the tenth leaf, and marks the folios from 1 to 209<sup>1</sup> (now fol. 218 *b*), and is continued by a hand of the 16th century to fol. 220 (now fol. 231). There is a third foliation in pencil, of later date (after 1567), beginning at the ninth leaf, and extending from 1 to 222. On the second fly-leaf is written the name of "Johannes Minsheus" (probably of 17th cent.), and on the third (now numbered fol. 1) the autograph memorandum of the bishop of Lincoln previously noticed (p. xl). Below this is the signature of John Lord "Lumley," and on the top of the page an ancient press-mark A, and, in the right-hand corner, No. 1,041, by which number the volume was formerly known in the Old Royal Library. The contents of this volume consist of three works originally distinct, but subsequently joined together; as here described:—

*a.* A circular figure to illustrate the theory of the winds, rudely sketched by a hand of the 14th century, and probably copied from a more finished figure in MS. C.C.C.C. No. xvi. . . . fol. 1.

*b.* Itinerary from London to Jerusalem, drawn in colours and gold, in double columns, with representations of the several stations or towns; accompanied by an explanatory text in French, which is very full towards the close. . . . ff. 2 *a*–5 *a*.

This Itinerary, intended, no doubt, for the direction of pilgrims to the Holy Land, is of considerable interest. The route is by Dover to Witsand, and thence through France over Mount Cenis to Rome and Sicily, and then

---

<sup>1</sup> Owing to an error in numbering, another hand has partly erased and altered the foliation, so that | fol. 209 is now fol. 207, and fol. 208 is added by the corrector.

by sea to Acre, with the coasts of Syria and Egypt as far as Damietta, and the routes to Jerusalem by Damascus and Jaffa.<sup>1</sup> A small portion of it (from London to Dover) was engraved in Gough's *British Topography*, 1780, vol. i., pl. vii., fig. 1, and described at p. 85; and the whole has recently been included in *Les Monumens de la Géographie* of M. Jomard, but so incorrectly as to give no adequate idea of the original. Another copy of this Itinerary is in MS. C.C.C.C. No. xxvi., and two others, not complete, are in MS. C.C.C.C. No. xvi., and MS. Cott. Nero D. I., fol. 182 b. All these are drawn by Matthew Paris. A portion of a copy made at St. Alban's at the close of the 13th century is in MS. Cott. Tib. E. VI. fol. 1, and there is a modernized transcript of the whole by Camden in the Lansdowne MS. 253, ff. 228–231.

c. Coloured Map of Britain, comprising England, Wales, and Scotland, on which is marked the Roman road from Dover through St. Alban's to Durham. . . . fol. 5 b.

It is engraved by Gough, pl. ii., with a very faulty description, pp. 61–64; but the names of places are much disfigured. He is at a loss to account for the introduction of Binham, Wymondham, and others, not knowing that they were Cells to St. Alban's, and therefore of interest to the maker of the map.<sup>2</sup>

d. A large coloured figure of the Virgin seated, holding the infant Jesus, whom she kisses. Beneath is the artist himself, in his monastic habit, represented in a prostrate attitude, and undoubtedly to be accepted as a real

<sup>1</sup> This is the “Descriptio Mundi” noticed by Bale among the writings of Matthew Paris, in his *Scriptores*, p. 315, ed. 1557. Gough, *Brit. Top.* i. 86, is mistaken in supposing that Bale referred here to the map of the world in MS. C.C.C.C., No. xxvi.

<sup>2</sup> Two much fuller maps of Britain, drawn also by Matthew Paris,

should be compared with the above. One of these is prefixed to the *Abbreviatio Chronicorum*, in MS. Cott. Claud. D. VI. f. 8 b. (engraved very incorrectly by Gough, pl. iv.), and the other is inserted in the Chronicle of John of Wallingford, MS. Cott. Jul. D. VII. f. 50 b., and has not yet been engraved.

portrait. Above him is written in capital letters, alternately blue and red, FRAT<sup>’</sup> MATHIAS PARISIENSIS. The V in *Mathius* was at first A, but the latter is expuncted and V substituted above, yet the I is left without alteration. . . . fol. 6.

e. Table to show the Dominical letter, bissextile, concurrent, and Easter day, from 1116 to 1620, the key to which is inserted in the Calendar which follows, from 22 March to 25 April. . . . fol. 6 b.

Below this table is written in red letters by the author, “*Hunc librū dedit fr̄ Math’s Parisiensis. . . . . Anima Math’i & anime omniū fidelium defunctor̄, requiescant in pace. Amen.*” The words erased can be supplied from a similar note in MS. Cott. Nero D. I. fol. 1, and undoubtedly were, “*Deo et eccl̄ sci Albani.*”

f. Calendar in double columns, ruled in colours, comprising four months in a page. The only special entry is the dedication of the church of St. Alban, on 28th December. On the 29th the name of St. Thomas is erased. . . . ff. 7 a–8 b.

g. Coloured figures of eight sovereigns of England, from William I. to Henry III. inclusive, four in a page, represented seated under arches, within an ornamented frame. Opposite each, in the margin, is written the name, in blue letters, and above or below a brief character of the monarch, in red. The features cannot be depended on as portraits. Between Henry II. and Richard I. is introduced a bust of *Henricus Junior*, on a smaller scale. . . . ff. 8 b–9 a.

The whole of the above articles, from b to g, are by the hand of Matthew Paris, and may be considered as prefatory matter pertaining to the History which follows:—

1. The *Historia Anglorum* of Matthew Paris, from 1067 to 1253 inclusive, preceded by a Prologue, as printed in the present edition. . . . ff. 9 b–156 b.

The text throughout (with the exceptions subsequently

noted) is in the handwriting of the author, in a fair, well-marked character, which becomes looser and not so firm at the close. It is in double columns, with initial letters of red and blue, which are larger and more ornamented at the commencement of a reign. There are also headings in red over each page. A good specimen of the manuscript is afforded by the facsimile prefixed to the present volume. The text has been revised and corrected by the author more than once, and there are numerous erasures, substitutions, and additions, all of which have been carefully noted in the present edition.<sup>1</sup> Some of these alterations are written in blue ink, which serves to mark a revision at a particular period,<sup>2</sup> and at other times corrections are made in the lower margin with a plummet, and afterwards introduced into the text. In many instances passages of the text have been partially or wholly erased, and re-written on slips of vellum fastened down over the original readings. This is especially the case in the years 1244–1251. These slips have been carefully raised, and the text beneath deciphered and noted, whenever it was possible to be done. Coloured shields of arms of the English and foreign sovereigns are drawn in the margins, as also of many of the barons and distinguished personages, all of which have been engraved and inserted in their places in the present edition. Illustrative drawings are occasionally added by the author (who was of equal repute both as an artist and historian), and these have been described in my notes.

A few unimportant marginal memoranda occur written in the 13th, 14th, and 15th centuries, but at a later date

<sup>1</sup> Mere clerical errors, *corrected by the author himself*, are not noticed, such as *avarie*, *efficater*, *in-chotum*, for *avaricie*, *efficaciter*, *in-choatum*. It was useless to load the pages with such instances.

<sup>2</sup> This blue ink occurs at ff. 24*b*,

27*b*, 31, 123, 125, 126, 126*b*, 127–131. The chief of these alterations are in the years 1235–1240. The leaf 28 has been wholly written with this blue ink, and corrected with black.

(perhaps about 1520 or earlier) the hand of Polydore Vergil appears throughout the greater part of the work.<sup>1</sup> The quires have signatures (marked in red on the *verso* of the last leaf of each) from i. to XIII., but the number of leaves in each varies, generally twelve, but sometimes more or less. The first quire comprises the prefatory matter, and ends on fol. 9 *b*. With regard to the insertion of *two* leaves<sup>2</sup> after fol. 33 (by the direction of archbishop Parker), it is certain that only *one* leaf of the original text is lost, and apparently from the time of the author. Matthew Paris has himself pointed out with a plummet the deficiency, and the numbering of the leaves of the quire proves the fact. The third quire begins at fol. 24, and is noted on the lower margin to consist of *twelve* leaves. These are numbered from i. to x. (fol. 33), and the next leaf (fol. 36) is numbered xii. The early pagination (previous to the insertion of these leaves) goes on from 49 to 50 without break, and so does the first foliation. It is evident, therefore, that the bishop of Lincoln was mistaken in supposing *two* leaves to be missing, but he has been followed in this error by the transcribers of the 16th century, Skewys,<sup>3</sup> Lambarde, and Parker's *amanuensis*.

Towards the close of the year 1252 (fol. 154 *a*, col. 2), the second and coeval hand—closer and darker than that of Matthew Paris—presents itself in three lines written over an erasure, and the same hand wholly takes up the text soon after the beginning of the year 1253 (fol. 154 *b*, col. 2), and continues it to the end of the year. It also supplies the headings and rubrics for the same extent, and has drawn the shield of arms of de Vescy in a very

<sup>1</sup> See the facsimile. Notes by Polydore are also on the margins of the portion of the Greater Chronicle, 1258-9, ff. 197 *b*-216 *b*.

<sup>2</sup> Two leaves of the writing of the sixteenth century are equal only to

one leaf of the original; and thus we find in MS. C. C. C. C. No. xvi., eight leaves inserted to supply four of the missing text.

<sup>3</sup> MS. Harl. 2258, fol. 134 *b*.

inferior style of art. We shall meet with this hand again in other manuscripts of Matthew Paris;<sup>1</sup> and as it is certainly that of the fellow-monk and associate of the author in his historical labours, as well as his continuator, it is deserving of especial notice.

2. A portion of the Greater Chronicle of Matthew Paris, from 1254 to 1259, intended to form the *third* volume of his work, in continuation of MS. C. C. C. C., No. xvi. This portion, of which no other copy exists, remains incomplete in consequence of the death of the author, and is comprised in five quires, numbered in red, the first and fourth of which consist of thirteen leaves each, and the second and third of twelve. At the end of the first quire (fol. 169 b) is written, “*Primus quaternus de tercio volumine,*” and so with the remainder. In the year 1258 a leaf is wanting after fol. 209, but is not noticed in the early pagination, and must therefore have been lost previously. The text is in the writing of Matthew Paris, but larger and more irregular than before, and bears marks of having been penned at various times, particularly after 1257, as we approach the close of his life. Each reign commences with a large coloured initial letter, more or less ornamented, and a few shields of arms are added in the margins, as also the papal insignia on the death of Innocent IV. in December 1254 (fol. 167). The contemporary hand of his fellow-monk and associate (no doubt called in aid in consequence of the failing energies of the historian), first appears in fol. 158, col. 2, and re-writes several passages over erasures

<sup>1</sup> Not only in the Cambridge MSS. C. C. C., Nos. xxvi. and xvi., as hereafter specified, but in MSS. Cott. Nero D. I., ff. 157–160 b, Claud. D. VI., ff. 87–94 b; and also as an occasional corrector of an abridgment of the Greater Chronicle of Matthew Paris, from 1066 to

1245 inclusive, in MS. Cott. Vitell. A. XX. This abridgment was given to the church of Tynemouth (a cell of St. Alban's) by the prior Ralph de Dunham, who was living at the period when it terminates. (See *Monasticon*, iii. 307.)

in other pages; but in 1258 (fol. 210, col. 2) it takes up the text entirely (ed. Wats, p. 970, l. 39), and continues it to the end. It concludes with a notice of the death of Walter de Scotinni (ed. Wats, p. 988, l. 14), after which is added the remarkable note already noticed (p. xxiii. n.), and the drawing of Matthew Paris on his death-bed. It represents him raised upon his couch, with his eyes closed, and his head supported by his left arm, which rests on an open volume placed on a reading-desk, on which is written "*Liber Croniconum Mathei Parisiensis*." Over his head we read, "*Hic obit Matheus Parisiensis*," and these words, with the title of his great work, serve at once for his epitaph and eulogium. It is very much to be regretted that the humility of the monk who wrote the above has consigned his own name to oblivion, since, as I have previously attempted to prove, the real Continuation of the Greater Chronicle after 1259 is to be ascribed to him. There can be little doubt that this portion of the larger work was added on to the *Historia Anglorum* not long after the death of the author.

3. The Continuation of Matthew Paris next follows, ascribed (but without sufficient authority) to William Rishanger, monk of St. Alban's, extending from 1259 to the death of Edward I. in 1272 (here dated 1273), . . . ff. 219–231. It is written on thirteen leaves of vellum, in double columnus, in an ordinary hand of the latter part of the fourteenth century. The lower margins of the leaves have suffered from damp, and the injury has extended to several of the preceding leaves. At the conclusion is the autograph note of the duke of Gloucester (now erased), previously mentioned. The scribe has performed his task in a careless manner, as is evident on comparing the text with other copies in MSS. Cott. Faust. B. IX., and Claud. E. III. It was printed from this MS. by archbishop Parker, and re-

printed by Wats; but a more correct and critical edition has lately been published under the editorship of Mr. H. T. Riley.

On the whole, it would appear certain that, with the exception of the two leaves inserted by Parker, the volume remains at present exactly in the same state in which it was left at the beginning of the fifteenth century.

In preparing the *Historia Anglorum* for press, the Text of the manuscript has been scrupulously followed, except in <sup>present</sup> <sub>edition.</sub> cases of obvious error or omission; but no correction whatever has been made unaccompanied by a note to point it out. Notwithstanding the repeated revision of the text by the author himself, many imperfect, obscure, or erroneous passages were found, in which aid from other sources was required; and as the present work is based throughout on the Greater Chronicle, and the latter (down to the year 1235) on Wendover, it became almost a labour of necessity to recur in all doubtful cases to the existing manuscripts of these works; and this was the more necessary from the fact, that in re-writing his Chronicle in an abridged form, Matthew Paris certainly had before him the copy of the greater work now fortunately preserved in Corpus Christi College, Cambridge.<sup>1</sup> Not only this copy, but others, have been consulted with MSS. con- advantage, and their readings referred to in the notes by letters, which indicate the several manuscripts, of which a description is here annexed.<sup>2</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Proofs of this occur throughout; and in the year 1249 (fol. 144) there is a passage, as originally written, referring to a letter from cardinal Reinier to the pope "in Magnis Chronicis," with a peculiar sign affixed, and a similar mark occurs

in the MS. C. C. C. C., No. xvi., fol. 225.

<sup>2</sup> It is hoped that the descriptions here given of the MSS. of Matthew Paris may be of use to some future editor, who may undertake the arduous task of a new edition of the Greater Chronicle.

In Corp.  
Ch. Coll.,  
Cambridge. A. In C. C. C., Cambr., No. xxvi.—A folio volume written on vellum in double columns, in the middle of the thirteenth century, and consisting of 143 leaves. The first six leaves at the beginning and two at the end are not numbered, but the rest are paged by a hand of the fifteenth century from 1 to 281. The quires are also numbered in Roman numerals from I. to XII., as far as page 248. It contains the first part or volume of the Greater Chronicle of Matthew Paris, the *Chronica Majora Sancti Albani*, from the Creation to the end of the year 1188. The text of Wendover has been transcribed under the eye of Paris, and corrected by himself, with autograph additions, either on leaves inserted, or written in the margins. These inserted leaves occur at pp. 15–20, 31–2, 37–8, 253–256. The remainder of the volume is written by two hands, the first of which is that of the associate of Paris, whose aid has been given to him in his other manuscripts (see p. li.), and is easily to be recognized by its regular, black, upright character. This hand begins the work, and extends through pp. 1–14, 21–30, 33–36, 39–117, 193–252, 257–282, but the rubrics and coloured initial letters are supplied by Paris throughout a portion of the text, and the headings from p. 174 to the end. The second hand is somewhat similar to the first, but is rounder, and appears to extend from p. 117 to 192, but occasionally varies. The Chronicle begins with the rubric, *Incipit Prologus in librum qui Flores Historiarum intitulatur*, over which archbishop Parker has written, “Author Matthæus.” The text previous to the Conquest is known only by the printed *rifaccimento* of it, ascribed to “Matthew of Westminster.” The marginal additions of Matthew Paris (both in his round and secretary hands) are at first few in number, but gradually become more numerous after the year 1100. The text is illustrated also by shields of arms of the sovereigns from William I., and by drawings from the

pen of the author, some of which exhibit much artistic talent. At the close of the year 1188, on the lower margin, is the following note by a hand of the fourteenth century :<sup>1</sup> “Anno dominice incarnationis MCLXXXIX. est vera continuacio historie Mathei Parisiensis in alio volumine, ejusdem manus,” which undoubtedly refers to the second volume of the work in MS. C. C. C. C., No. xvi.

The leaves at the beginning and end of this volume are filled with miscellaneous subjects, written or drawn by Matthew Paris, which may be regarded as prefatory or supplementary to the Chronicle, *viz.* :—

*a.* The Itinerary from London to Jerusalem, in colours, with a description in French, similar to the one in MS. Reg. 14 C. vii., but containing some interesting variations.  
It occupies seven pages. The portion from London to Dover is engraved by Gough, *Brit. Topogr.*, pl. vii., fig. 2. . . . . [ff. 1–4 *a.*]

*b.* A brief Genealogical Chronicle, intitled, “*Cronica sub compendio ab[b]reviata a fratre M. Parisiensi*,” the introduction to which commences, “Considerans prolixitatem Cronicorum Angliæ.” . . . . . [fol. 4 *b.*]

This is the preface mentioned by archbishop Parker so erroneously<sup>2</sup> as the Prologue to the “Historia Minor.” The Genealogy begins with Alfred (whose bust is drawn in the centre of two circles, the outer of which is divided into the kingdoms of the Heptarchy), but terminates abruptly at the bottom of the page, with the children of Edward the Elder. It is resumed, however, at the end

<sup>1</sup> The same hand has continued the list of abbats in MS. C. C. C. C., No. xvi., fol. 37 *b*, to Michael Mentmore [1334–1349].

<sup>2</sup> See p. xxxvii. *n.* It is worth notice that the Preface of the Chronicle of John of Wallingford (a friend and contemporary of Matthew Paris), in MS. Cott. Julius D. VII. fol. 46 *b*, commences in the same manner, and

he has borrowed this Genealogy (as he has his Chronicle to the year 1258) from the St. Alban’s manuscripts. A much later writer, Roger of St. Alban’s, who compiled an abridgment of history from Adam to the reign of Henry VI., begins his Preface also with the same words. See MS. Coll. Regin. Oxon. No. 168.

of the volume, p. 285, and is continued to the reign of Henry II. The leaf immediately following has been cut out, but at a very early period, for in a copy made of this Genealogy at St. Alban's, towards the close of the thirteenth century, in MS. Cott. Tib. E. VI., fol. 5, it terminates in the same manner.

c. A large circular Table beautifully executed in colours, with arabesques, showing the periods of the principal feasts, the epact, lunar cycle, &c. . . . .

[fol. 5 a.]

d. Another Table, showing the Dominical letter, Easter day, &c., from 1116 to 1620, with a key; similar to the one in MS. Reg. 14 C. vii. Below this is a circular figure to display the theory of the winds, smaller than the one in MS. C.C.C.C. No. xvi., with the lines beneath, "Sunt sub solano socii," &c., attributed to Matthew Paris in MS. Cott. Nero D. I. fol. 184 b. . . . [fol. 5 b.]

e. A Calendar, in triple columns, filling two pages. In the month (3 id.) of April a later hand has added a notice of the death of abbot Michael de Mentmore in 1349 . . . . [fol. 6.]

f. At the end of the volume, on page 283, are finely drawn heads of the Virgin and Child, and of Christ, which afford a good specimen of English monastic art of the period.

g. A Map in outline of the World, rudely sketched, and evidently copied from an earlier one, is on page 284, with the inscription, "*Summatim facta est disposicio mappa mundi,*" &c., noticed by Nasmith, *Cat. libb. MSS.*, p. 15, and by Gough, *Brit. Topogr.*, vol. i., pp. 66, 86. This is the original from which the one in MS. Cott. Nero D. V. was taken.

On the flyleaf at the end are a few brief memoranda by Matthew Paris, relating to St. Patrick, Simon, earl of Leicester, the seven climates, &c.

This manuscript (as well as the second volume, now MS. C.C.C.C. No. xvi.) appears to have been lost from the

library of St. Alban's previously to the reformation, and its fate is unknown until about 1560–1570, when we find it in the possession of Edward Aglionby, of Balsall Temple, (whose name is written on the flyleaf at the end,) and who lent it to archbishop Parker for his edition. There are some notes in it in Parker's handwriting, one of which, at p. 214, refers to the account given of the marriage of Matilda to Henry I. in 1101 (ed. Wats, p. 58), and a similar note by him is found in MS. Cott. Nero D. V., fol. 124 b, at the same passage.

B. In C. C. C. Cambr., No. xvi.—Folio, vellum, consisting of 286 leaves. This is the second part or volume of the Greater Chronicle, continuing the work from 1189 to 1253 inclusive.<sup>1</sup> Before the middle of the sixteenth century it seems to have come into the hands of Robert Talbot,<sup>2</sup> prebendary of Norwich [1547–1558], and afterwards belonged to Sir Henry Sidney, K.G., from whom Parker borrowed it. The greater portion of the volume is in the handwriting of Matthew Paris, but there are two other hands employed. The first is a fine black angular character, and appears in ff. 1–3 b, 8–10 b, 13–32, col. 2, 46 b, col. 1,–50, col. 2; and the second (which is that of the author's associate especially noticed before) continues the text from fol. 32, col. 2, to fol. 33 b, col. 2, and from fol. 55 to fol. 61 b, col. 2; the same hand also re-writes several passages over erasures of the original text at ff. 157, 197, &c.<sup>3</sup> Throughout these pages the

<sup>1</sup> Wats says, erroneously, 1255. He only collated the text in this volume from 1251 to 1253 inclusive, of which portion no other copy is known.

<sup>2</sup> This appears probable from a note written by Talbot on fol. 245, in reference to the *Liber Additamentorum* mentioned in the text, on which he remarks, "Hunc librum Additamentorum puto me habere." [It is now in the Cottonian collection

marked Nero D. I.] It was from Talbot that Bale derived his knowledge of the works specified in his collections, MS. Selden 64 B, and in his *Scriptores*, p. 315, ed. 1557.

<sup>3</sup> This is the hand so ignorantly blamed by Parker, when he speaks of the volume as "per *fraterculum aliquem* turpiter admodum in aliquot foliis mutatus et in plurimis locis erasus." What was done by this scribe was unquestionably di-

headings and rubrics are by Matthew Paris, as also marginal additions and alterations. He commences himself to write the text at ff. 11–12 b (1195); then from fol. 33 b, col. 2 (1213) to fol. 46, col. 2 (1216); from fol. 49 b (1216) to fol. 54 b (1219); from fol. 61 b, col. 2 (1225) to fol. 111 b (1238); and from fol. 112 b (1238) to fol. 281 b (1253). These pages exhibit the variations in the hand of the author at different periods, neater and closer at first, and looser and more irregular towards the close. Some of the large initial letters are elaborately ornamented. There is also a fourth hand, but only through a page and a half, at fol. 112. By a mistake in the original numbering, there is no folio 77, and the volume is imperfect in several places, having lost four leaves in 1190–1192, after fol. 3; one in 1237, after fol. 103; one in 1238, after fol. 116; and one in 1250, after fol. 232. The missing portions (except fol. 116) have been supplied by Parker, and chiefly from the text of MS. Cott. Nero D. V. The first five leaves of the volume are not numbered, but the remainder are folio'd in Arabic numerals by a contemporary hand,<sup>1</sup> from fol. 1 to fol. 281. The quires also have signatures from I. to XX. (fol. 256), exclusive of twenty-five leaves at the end, which have no signatures. On the six leaves at the commence-

rected by Matthew Paris himself. But after the blame thus bestowed, what shall we say of Parker himself, or his amanuensis, who has written over an erased text at ff. 37 b, 60 b, col. 1, 167, col. 1 (nearly two columns), and often elsewhere! In excuse, it can only be suggested that some of these passages may have been copied from slips of vellum originally fastened over the text, but which had become detached. If this is not so, then a heavy charge would lie against the archbishop for defacing the text.

<sup>1</sup> Although Arabic numerals are said (and no doubt truly) to have been employed by Robert Grosseteste, bishop of Lincoln, about the year 1240, yet the earliest instance hitherto referred to of their use is Robert Bacon's Calendar, about 1292, in MS. Cott. Vesp. A. II. The example in the text (corroborated also by the Cottonian copy, Nero D. V.) proves that Matthew Paris made use of these figures soon after 1250. See Astle, *Origin of Writing*, 4to., 1803, pp. 186–188.

ment various historical and miscellaneous matters have been written and drawn by Matthew Paris (as in the previous volume), as follows :—

*a. Nomina Regum antiquorum et modernorum*, from Ina to Henry III., with the duration of their reigns ; continued by later hands to the time of Elizabeth . . . .

[fol. \*1 a.]

*b. Large circular figure to show the theory of the winds*, with the names in Latin and French, and with the lines, “Sunt sub solano,” &c., as in No. xxvi. . . . .

[fol. \*1 b.]

In MS. Cott. Nero D. I., ff. 184, 184 *b*, a similar figure is said to be “secundum magistrum Elyam de Derham,” but another in MS. Cott. Jul. D. VII., fol. 51 *b* (compiled also under the eye of Paris) is stated to be “secundum Robertum Grosseteste, episcopum Lincolniensem.”

*c. Itinerary from London to Jerusalem*, on two leaves, but both mutilated . . . . . [ff. 2, 5 *a*.]

*d. Genealogia Orbiculata*, from Alfred<sup>1</sup> to the children of Henry III. (part of which is torn off); much briefer than those in No. xxvi. and MS. Cott. Claud. D. VI. . . . . [fol. \*3.]

*e. Drawing of the Elephant sent to England by Louis IX.*, in 1255, as a present to Henry III., accompanied by the keeper; with a text descriptive of the animal’s nature in general . . . . . [fol. \*4.]

Another drawing of this elephant by Paris is in MS. Cott. Nero D. I., fol. 161 *b*, and a third of smaller size, also by him, is inserted in the Chronicle of John of Wallingford, MS. Cott. Jul. D. VII., fol. 114.

*f. Map of Britain*, comprising England, Wales, and Scotland; mutilated in the lower part. . . . . [fol. \*5 *b*.]

<sup>1</sup> Nasmyth says, erroneously, from *William I.* See *Cat. libb.* p. 16. This Genealogy seems referred to in No. xxvi., fol. 129, where there is a draw-

ing of Alfred’s bust, and below, “Alfredus primus monarcha Angliæ, a quo incipit Genealogia Orbiculata.”

It is wretchedly engraved by Gough, *Brit. Topogr.*, vol. i., pl. iii., fig. 3, and described at p. 64, with many errors. The names are strangely disfigured ; thus *Bamburc* (Bamborough) is turned into *Bàbè*, and *Stratherne* into *Scocia marina* !

On the seventh leaf commences the Chronicle, and on the top of the page is an inscription in red letters, now partly erased, by which Matthew Paris recorded his gift of this volume to the church of St. Alban's. The year 1189 begins “*Anno Dominicæ Nativitatis . . . . .<sup>1</sup>* octagesimo nono, rex Henricus.” The text of Wendover is retained to the year 1235, but with large additions, and is then continued to 1253, with numerous corrections, erasures, and marginal additions, exhibiting the work in its state of progress, so that it is not surprising that the entire volume should have been attributed to Matthew Paris by a later writer of St. Alban's.<sup>2</sup> Wendover's portion ends at fol. 95 (ed. Coxe, vol. iv., p. 339), and is continued without any break ; but in the margin is a note in a contemporary hand, “*Dñs Rog. de Wendoure, prior aliquando de Beluero, hucusque Cronica sua digessit. Incipit frater Math' Parisiensis.*” The Chronicle ends abruptly at the close of 1253 (the last leaf having been lost), and it is worthy of remark how archbishop Parker has dealt with the imperfect text. He has crossed out with his pen the whole of it after the words “*princeps apostolorum constituitur*” (ed. Wats, p. 880, l. 45), and on the lower margin transcribes the short annual summary from the Arundel MS., which he prints in the place of the portion struck out. Yet Wats reprints this text without one word of comment or note of any variation, which does not say much for his collation ! The matter thus crossed out on the

<sup>1</sup> Erased in the manuscript, but a hand of the 16th century has inserted *M<sup>o</sup>. Cent<sup>o</sup>.* The date is given rightly in MS. Nero D. V., so that it is sur-

prising it should be omitted in Parker's edition (ed. Wats, p. 148).

<sup>2</sup> MS. Cott. Claud. E. IV. fol. 332 b. See *ante*, p. xiv. n.

*recto* and *verso* of fol. 281, contains a chapter on the miracles of St. Richard in the church of Chichester,<sup>1</sup> after which follow letters of pope Innocent IV. addressed to the abbot of St. Alban's relative to the concession of the right of presentation to benefices. These letters end with the words "et beneficiorum," but a copy of the whole is preserved in MS. Cott. Nero D. I., fol. 118, and thence printed by Wats among the *Additamenta*, p. 184, with a reference to the year 1252 (p. 846), but the letters are dated "3 non. Nov. pontif. anno xi.," which falls in November 1253.

Archbishop Parker made much use of this volume, as already remarked, and has inserted in its margins references to his edition, particularly from 1229 to 1253. He has also written notes on several passages, one of which, at fol. 184 b, contains a distinct reference to the Arundel MS.

C. In the Cottonian Collection, Nero D. V.—A thick folio volume, of 395 leaves according to the recent numbering, written on vellum, and consisting of two parts or volumes, which were originally, no doubt, separate and distinct. It contains the *Flores Historiarum*, or Greater Chronicle of Wendover and Paris, from the Creation to the year 1250 inclusive, at which date the work was at first intended to terminate. The first part extends to the end of 1188 (fol. 161 b), written in a thick, square black letter, in double columns, in the latter part of the 13th century. The text has been very carelessly transcribed, and abounds with errors. On a fly-leaf at the beginning are some notes in Dr. Thomas Gale's handwriting, and on the top of fol. 2 is the signature of Sir Robert Cotton, who has added the following title: "Historia ab initio mundi ad ann. 1251, per Matthæum Paris, monachum Sancti Albani." Prefixed to the Chronicle, on fol. 1 b, is a coloured Map of the World,

<sup>1</sup> These miracles are noticed very briefly in ed. Wats, p. 868. A fuller relation is referred to in the MS. as existing in the library at St. Alban's.

copied from the one in MS. C. C. C. C. No. xxvi. It has been engraved in the Atlas of the Viconte de Santarem, pt. i. 1849, and described in tom. ii. pp. 257–272 of his *Essai sur l'Histoire de la Cosmographie*. The heading at the commencement of the Chronicle is the same as in C. C. C. C. xxvi., from which, doubtless, it was transcribed, and the marginal additions of Matthew Paris in the original are here inserted in the text.

The second part extends from 1189 to 1250, and has been folio'd by a contemporary hand, from fol. 1 to fol. 232 (now 392). The text is in double columns, written in a thin, close character, with large red and blue initials of the narrow form peculiar to the period at which it was copied. It was certainly transcribed from MS. C. C. C. C. No. xvi., and probably soon after the work had been completed and corrected to the year 1250, and therefore under the eye of Matthew Paris himself. If any further proof of this were required, it is furnished by the notes in his handwriting on the margins of ff. 214 b, 216 b, 226, and elsewhere, as also by his drawings in the years 1216 and 1217, at ff. 208, 213, and 214, similar to those in the Cambridge MS. Here, as in the first part, the corrections and marginal additions of the original are incorporated into the text. Occasionally, but very rarely, there are insertions in this copy not in the Cambridge MS., as may be seen in Wats's collations under the years 1216 (ed. p. 290), and 1242 (ed. p. 584). The text concludes on fol. 293 with the words "Quod postea proferat ætas," after which a much later hand has added, "Quædam Gesta de rege Arthuro," taken out of Geoffrey of Monmouth. The portion of the Chronicle assigned to Wendover (near the close of 1235) ends on fol. 257 with the words "dignissima judicatur," and in the margin is noted, "Hucusque in a<sup>o</sup>. li<sup>o</sup>. [alio libro]."<sup>1</sup> It is, however, remarkable that we should find, not here,

<sup>1</sup> Misread by Wats (followed by Cox), "e vetusto libro." The note is not earlier than the fourteenth cent.

but in the preceding year, 1234, at fol. 252 (ed. p. 403), the following note by the original rubricator, “*Dominus Rogerus de Wendoure,<sup>1</sup> prior aliquando de Bealuair, hucusque Cronica sua hec digessit. Incipit frater Matheus Parisiensis.*” This is very precise, and must have been written with the knowledge, apparently, of Paris himself; moreover, it is confirmed by the heading of the Cottonian MS. of Wendover (Otho B. V.); yet, on the other hand, the evidence of the Cambridge MS., No. xvi., and of the two separate copies of Wendover’s text would seem to afford sufficient proof that he continued his work to the later date. On the margins of the second part of Nero D. V. are notes by a hand of the end of the 13th century or beginning of the next, marking the omissions found in another manuscript, with the headings of chapters, and, in a few instances, a transcript of some short chapters from it (as in 1206, 1220, 1245, and 1248). The earliest appearance of these notes is in 1200 (fol. 181 b), and they are continued to the end of 1239 (fol. 291 b). Gale supposed that the manuscript referred to was a copy of Wendover; but he is mistaken, as it was undoubtedly the volume containing the *Historia Anglorum*, now in the Old Royal Collection, 14 C. vii., as verified by myself.

Before the two parts of this volume came into the possession of Sir Robert Cotton (who, doubtless, bound them up together), they belonged to John Stow, the antiquary, who has written his name on the upper corner of fol. 161, and notes on certain passages in ff. 9, 20, 192b. As before mentioned (p. xxxi.), he lent the MS. to archbishop Parker, who made use of it to supply the

<sup>1</sup> Written at first *Wendouren*, but expuncted. Wats (in his Preface to edit. 1640), not observing this, or ignorant of the ancient practice of *expunction*, has raised a weak argument as to Wendover’s having been

“generosa familia procreatum,” from the circumstance of his name (as he thinks) being written *Rogerus Wendoure de Wendoure*. See also Coxe, Pref. Wend., p. vii., *notc.*

deficiencies in the Cambridge MS., No. xvi., and has also written notes in ff. 124*b*, 214. In the Cambridge MS., under the year 1250 (fol. 233), the text reads, “*Et cum hujus libri scriptor, frater scilicet Matheus Parisiensis, dominum . . . . . redargueret*” (ed. Wats, p. 783), and Parker has noted in the margin:—“*In alio codice scripto aliena manu sic legitur, Et cum hujus libri confector, frater scilicet Mattheus, dominum . . . redargueret;*” immediately after which he adds, “*Memor. quod aliud exemplar hujus partis Historiae progreditur non ultra hunc annum, et incipit ab aº. 1189, sed prior pars hujus Historiae, ab Adam scilicet, eodem modo habetur in libro per se, et hæc duo exemplaria sunt in custodia Mři Ramsey Oxoniensis, qui jam servatur in carcere Oxoniis, ob quam causam nescio.*” The reading quoted by Parker is found in the Cottonian MS. fol. 384*b*, and the two parts of it correspond accurately with the notice of those in the hands of Ramsey.<sup>1</sup> The difficulty is to account for the transmission of them to Stow, and at what time this took place. Without more precise information, it is hazardous, perhaps, to give an opinion as to the identity of the copies, but my own belief is, that the two parts of the Cottonian MS. Nero D. V. are the same as those belonging to Ramsey.

In the  
Harleian  
Collection.

D. In the Harleian Collection, No. 1620.—A folio volume of 189 leaves, written on vellum, double columns, in a hand somewhat similar to the first part of MS. Cott.

<sup>1</sup> I can find nothing in Wood's *Fasti* or *Athenæ* to throw any light on this *Magister Ramsey*. In Strype's *Memorials*, vol. ii. pt. i. p. 370, ed. 1822, mention is made of a *Laurence Ramsey*, one of the chief sectaries in Kent, who was brought into the Ecclesiastical Court in 1550, and who is mentioned at a later date as the author of a poem called “*The Practise of the Divil*.” (See *Resti-*

*tuta*, vol. iii. p. 439.) Ritson thinks he is the same who wrote “*Ramsie's farewell to his late lord and master therle of Leicester,*” who died 4 Sept. 1588. Stow, in his manuscript collections, notices also a *Lenard Ramsey* as having written certain articles “*preached secretly by one Geyton,*” MSS. Harl. 367, f. 17, and 530, p. 142.

Nero D. V., and of the same period. It appears from Wanley's description in the Harleian Catalogue, vol. ii. p. 162,<sup>1</sup> to have belonged formerly to Sir William Cecil, whose arms were on the old binding, now, unfortunately, replaced by another. Previously it seems to have been in the hands of Nicholas Brigham (a friend of Bale),<sup>2</sup> who has written "Matheus Florigerus" on the first page, and hence, in later times, when it was in the library of Henry Worseley, of Lincoln's Inn, No. 14, it was erroneously described as "Matthæi Westmonasteriensis Flores Historiarum" (*Catal. MSS. Angliae*, 1697, p. 212). The Worseley manuscripts came subsequently by gift into the collection of Lord Oxford.

This volume contains the first part of the *Flores Historiarum* of Wendover and Paris, from the Creation to the death of Henry II. in 1189 (ed. Wats, p. 152). Above the usual heading a hand of the fourteenth century has added, "Flores Ystoriarum est nomen hujus libri [misread by Wanley *omnium primus liber*], quia fructus omnium Ystoriarum hic inveniuntur." The text ends on fol. 188 b, and is followed by short annals of the reign of Richard I., in a hand of the fifteenth century. It agrees in its readings closely with the Cottonian MS., and was, doubtless, derived from the same source.<sup>3</sup> A few variations, either as omissions or additions, may be noticed, the chief of which occur in the years 1101, 1109, 1126, 1140, 1169, 1189.

E. In the Cottonian Collection, Claudius D. VI.—A In the  
small folio volume, written on vellum, in various hands Cottonian  
Collection.

<sup>1</sup> Wanley is entirely mistaken in his conjecture that before this MS. belonged to Cecil, it was in the Royal Library, and the same mentioned by Bale *apud* Wats.

<sup>2</sup> See the *Scriptores*, p. 718, ed. 1557.

<sup>3</sup> Under 1134, fol. 150, there is a

very brief notice of the death of Robert Curtehoise, and in the margin is written, "Hæc evidencius in margine libri, *In eodem anno*," etc., which undoubtedly refers to MS. C. C. C. C., No. xxvi. p. 225, where we find the marginal addition so quoted (ed. Wats, p. 73).

of the thirteenth and fourteenth centuries, at St. Alban's. It contains the *Abbreviatio compendiosa Chronicorum Angliae*, from A.D. 1000 to A.D. 1255, compiled chiefly by Matthew Paris from the *Historia Anglorum*, together with various historical works by Rishanger and others. As the entire work will be printed in the third volume of the present edition, a future opportunity will occur of describing this manuscript more at length.

In the Bibliothèque Impériale at Paris.

F. In the Bibliothèque Impériale at Paris, No. 6048 B, formerly No. 3121 of the Colbert Collection.—This is the manuscript which was lent by Sir William Cecil to archbishop Parker for his edition of 1571, and is particularly mentioned by him in the Preface.<sup>1</sup> Parker caused a portion of it to be transcribed from 1189 to 1199, and it is from this transcript that Wats made his collation in 1640. What became of the manuscript after Cecil's death is not known, nor in what manner it passed into the hands of Colbert, but it was purchased with the rest of his manuscripts in 1732 for the Bibliothèque du Roi.<sup>2</sup> This manuscript is in folio, and is written on paper in a small neat hand, probably about 1420–1430, and consists of 156 leaves. Archbishop Parker has written at the bottom of the first page of the History, “Manus ejusdem qui scripsit Chronicum Thomæ Walsingham.” The copy of Walsingham alluded to is in Corp. Chr. College, Cambridge, No. cxcv., and is the one used by Parker for his edition of that writer,<sup>3</sup> as is evident from the notes on the margins. The writing is certainly the same in both manuscripts (as I have ascertained by means of a carefully executed fac-simile from the Cecil copy), and the paper mark, a pair of scales, is

<sup>1</sup> Mr. Hardy (Gen. Introd. to *Monumenta Hist. Brit.* p. 8) supposed this MS. of Cecil to be now MS. Arundel 96; but this is an error. The latter MS. contains a copy of the so-called Matthew of Westminster to the year 1296.

<sup>2</sup> See Le Prince, *Essai sur la Bibliothèque du Roi*, p. 174, ed. 1856.

<sup>3</sup> This fact seems to have escaped the notice of Mr. Riley. See his Introduction to *Thomæ Walsingham Historia Anglicana*, p. xi.

common to both. The contents of the Cecil volume were described, but not very correctly, in the *Catalogus Codd. MSS. Bibl. Regiae*, 1744, tom. iv. p. 196. The first twenty-three leaves are filled with various historical, legendary, and other tracts, all of which appear to have been copied from an earlier volume written at St. Alban's, now preserved in the Old Royal Collection, 13 E. ix. The rest of the volume, from fol. 24 to the end, is occupied by the work of Matthew Paris. At the beginning the remains of an early title are visible, “*Matthei Parisiensis . . . . p . . t . . . .*,” under which, in the hand of Etienne Baluze, is “*M. Paris Historia Anglica*.” It extends from the year 1067 to 1208,<sup>1</sup> in which year it ends abruptly with the words, “*sine fructu resideri*.” (ed. Wats, p. 226, l. 10.)

The text, which was certainly compiled at St. Alban's, is made up from both historical works of Matthew Paris, namely, the *Historia Anglorum* (MS. Reg. 14 C. vii.), and the Greater Chronicle (Cott. Nero D. V.).<sup>2</sup> These two manuscripts must have been in the hands of the compiler, and he used them arbitrarily to form a work intended for general circulation. He has taken the prologue, “*De chronographia*,” from the lesser History, and added on to it an abridgment from the larger work of the events which took place between the death of Edward the Confessor and the coronation of William I. The text of the History is of a mixed character throughout, but the greater portion of it follows the *Historia Anglorum*, and where it differs is pointed out in my notes. The compiler manifests a great desire to retain the legen-

<sup>1</sup> At the beginning of John's reign a somewhat later hand than the text has written, “*Historia Radulphi Nigri*,” and it is so attributed in *Cat. Codd. Bibl. Reg.*, but the statement is not correct. See Nasmyth, *Cat. libb.*, p. 309.

<sup>2</sup> Mr. Coxe, misled by the colla-

tion of Wats, thought that the Cecil MS. was a copy of the Royal MS. 14 C. vii. (Introd. to *Append. Wend.* p. vi.) The real nature of the text was first ascertained by myself, by the aid of a transcript obtained from Paris.

dary narratives omitted in the lesser work, and has borrowed from the larger one the legends of St. Patrick's Purgatory (in 1153), of Wulfric the Hermit (1164), Godric the Hermit (1170), of the Monk of Evesham (1196), and various others. For other reasons he takes from the same source the speech of pope Urban (1095), the papal letters relative to Becket (1164), and those addressed to the sultan of Iconium (1169), and to king John (1207). On the other hand, he omits the local notices in the *Historia Anglorum* relative to the abbats of St. Alban's, under the years 1093, 1146, 1152, and elsewhere.

The proof that the compiler of this copy transcribed from the manuscript now 14 C. vii. appears constantly. He not only copies verbally, but retains the very errors of the original, even when mere slips of the pen.<sup>1</sup> It seems also almost equally certain that the manuscript consulted for the fuller text was the one now MS. Cott. Nero D. V.<sup>2</sup> That this compilation is really the Cecil manuscript is evident, not only from Parker's notes in it, but also by the story relative to Richard I. in 1199, intitled "De patientia regis Ricardi in tribulationibus," mentioned in Wats's *Variantes Lectiones* (ed. p. 196). The portions of this manuscript borrowed from the *Historia Anglorum* have been collated throughout for the present edition, but without much advantage. In one or two instances it corrects an error, as *sextam* for *quintam*, vol. i. p. 362, or supplies a word erased in the original, as *non*, vol. i. p. 430; *tirannide*, vol. ii. p. 106; and under the year 1192 (vol. ii. p. 37) is a curious

<sup>1</sup> Thus, in the present edition, i. 218, where *manifeste* is written for *Mamistre*; i. 390, *memoratorium* for *Normannorum*; ii. 77, *regis* for *tegis*, etc. Not unfrequently the compiler or scribe has faults of his own, arising from carelessness or ignorance, but it would be useless to specify them.

<sup>2</sup> This appears from the fact that in passages where the Cotton MS. varies from the *original* text in MSS. C. C. C. C., Nos. xxvi. and xvi., the Cecil MS. always agrees with the Cotton MS.

addition relative to Ralph Besace, physician of Richard I. The editors of the “Recueil des Historiens de la France,” tom. xvii., print a few pages from this manuscript under the years 1201–1208, where it differs from the printed text of Wats, and suggest the strange hypothesis (p. 680) that this copy represents the original work of Wendover, and that the variations or interpolations in the Greater Chronicle of Paris were intended to soften down the *scommata* of the previous writer !

G. In C. C. C., Cambr., No. lvi.—A thick folio volume, <sup>In Corp.</sup> written by various hands of the sixteenth century for <sup>Chr. Coll.,  
Cambridge</sup> archbishop Parker, in or about 1567. It is described falsely by Nasmith as “Matthæi Parisiensis Historia Minor a coronatione Willelmi I. ad mortem Henrici III. anno 1273.” It contains a transcript of the Arundel manuscript, including the *Historia Anglorum*, from 1067 to 1253 ; the latter portion of the Greater Chronicle, from 1254 to 1259 ; and the Continuation, from 1259 to 1273. The Prologue, “De chronographia,” has been collated in the present edition, in order to show the extreme licence taken by the copyist in altering the original text. In the initial letter D are introduced the arms of Parker, and to carry out a silly conceit of making the first eight lines commence with the vowel *e*, several words have been altered, and so printed ! At the beginning of the reign of Henry III., Parker’s arms are again inserted, with the date 1567, and at the end of 1253 is the following note : “Hucusque progreditur Historia Minor; quæ sequuntur sunt ex Historia Majore Matthæi Parisiensis.” At the beginning also of 1254 is written, “Ex libro Arund. Com.” The portion from this year to 1273 has been used for the press, as appears by Parker’s references to his edition in the margins. Throughout the transcript there have been marginal notes, now covered over with paper, and one of them, in 1167, reads, “Omnes hæ literæ inseruntur in exemplari dñi Cecilii,” which proves that at that date Sir Will. Cecil’s manuscript was in the arch-

bishop's hands. Between the prologue and the transcript of the *Historia Anglorum* is a copy of the brief genealogical work in MS. C. C. C. C. No. xxvi., with the prologue, "Considerans prolixitatem." It comes down to the reign of Henry III., with a few notes by the copyist referring to a later period. Another copy of this Genealogy, also made for Parker, may be found in MS. C. C. C. C., No. c., where it is continued to the reign of Henry V. It may be added, that a second transcript of part of the *Historia Anglorum*, from 1136 to 1179, made for Parker, and followed by the Continuation from 1259 to 1273, is in MS. C. C. C. C., No. ccclviii., art. 1, 2.

In the  
Cottonian  
Collection.

H. MS. Cotton. Vitellius D. II.—An abridged transcript of the Arundel manuscript, made in 1565 by William Lambarde, assisted by Laurence Nowell and some other person, whose hand has not been identified. In some notes originally prefixed (preserved by Wats, *Praef. ad Var. Lect.*), but now missing, Lambarde intitles it "Matthæi Paris Historia Minor," and again, "Historia rerum ab octo primis post Conquisitionem Angliæ regibus gestarum, Matthæo Parisiensi authore," signed W. Lambarde, 1565; and adds, "Advertendum est, quod hoc exemplar non est ad verbum transcriptum, sed ea quæ ad historiam Angliæ pertinent summa fide et fere verbatim traducuntur. Cætera (forinseca cum sint) ut plurimum levi præterit pede scriptor, nonnunquam etiam plane omisit." The transcript, however, is by no means literal or faithful, but great liberties have been taken with it. A short specimen from the year 1118 is given by Wats, and he collates it from 1255 to 1273, under the title of *Minor*, not knowing that it was copied from the Arundel MS. There is ample evidence of this, therefore the assertion first made by Sir Robert Cotton in his MS. Catalogue (MS. Harl. 6018, f. 51), and repeated by his librarian James in the notice prefixed of the contents of the volume, as also by Dr. Smith in his printed catalogue,

1696, that it was transcribed from a manuscript in Bennet College, Cambridge, is incorrect.<sup>1</sup>

This volume originally consisted of 286 leaves, but suffered considerable injury in the fire of 1731, and in the report published the year afterwards it is stated that "about 120 loose leaves remain," and so repeated in Planta's Catalogue, 1802. Instead, however, of 120, there were 170 leaves kept in a case, and I discovered 97 more bound up improperly in Appendix xlii. as "Fragmenta historici cujusdam operis." These, with 16 leaves in addition recovered from the refuse, I caused to be repaired and inlaid in the year 1847; and having arranged them by the aid of the original MS., they now form a volume of 283 leaves; three at the end, containing drawings of coats of arms, are still wanting.

W. In the Douce Collection, Bodleian Library, No. ccvii.—A folio volume, which, besides the *Flores Historiarum* of Wendover, contains part of Hoveden, an abridgment of the work called "Matthew of Westminster" (written probably at Ramsey abbey, and continued to 1326), and Geoffrey of Monmouth. The work of Wendover occupies the first portion of the manuscript, and is written on vellum, in double columns, at the close of the thirteenth century. It is deficient from A.D. 879 to 894, and also in A.D. 1191, 1192. At the end of the year 1188 is a note in plummet, "Huc usque in libro Cronicarum Johannis abbatis," which is repeated in ink by a later hand thus, "Usque huc Cronica Joh. abbatis, et hic finis." This note perhaps refers to the first volume of the Greater Chronicle of Wendover and Paris (now in C. C. C. C., No. xxvi.), which may have been written for or by the direc-

In the  
Douce  
Collection,  
Bodleian  
Library.

<sup>1</sup> The readings of Lambarde's copy prove it could not have been derived from MS. C. C. C. C., No. lvi. Thus, in vol. ii. p. 194 of the present edition, the Arundel MS.

and Lambarde read, "nec *mutire* permittebat," but in Parker's transcript this is altered to "nec *mentiri* permittebat."

tion of the abbat John de Hertford, elected in 1235. The work terminates at the close of this year on fol. 220 *b* with the words “in omnibus dignissima judicatur,” after which is written, “Huc usque scripsit Cronica dñis Rogerus de Wendoure.” The text from the year 447 has been ably edited by the Rev. H. O. Coxe, for the English Historical Society, in 1841. As to the previous history of the manuscript nothing certain is known. Mr. Halliwell supposed it<sup>1</sup> to be the same as a MS. in the possession of Dr. Matthew Carewe in 1585, but there is no proof of the fact. It is said also to have been purchased by Mr. Douce at the sale of Sir John Sebright’s library<sup>2</sup> in 1807, but I can find no notice of it in the catalogue. The readings from this manuscript, indicated by the letter W, are meant also to include those of the Cottonian copy and of the printed edition, unless otherwise noted.

In the  
Cottonian  
Collection.

I. Cottonian MS. Otho B. V.—Folio, vellum, of the fourteenth century, reduced by the fire of 1731 to a crust, and stated to have been lost by Casley and Planta, but subsequently flattened, inlaid, and arranged under my direction, in 1850.<sup>3</sup> It originally consisted of 464 leaves, but now only of 459, very much damaged as far as A.D. 1150, and also after A.D. 1330. It contains the second book of Wendover, beginning at the birth of Christ, and ending in 1235, like the Douce MS. The heading at the commencement is, “*Incipit liber secundus de Floribus Historiarum, a Nativitate dñi nři Jhesu Christi usque ad annum millesimum ducentesimum tricesimum quar-*

<sup>1</sup> Introd. to the *Chronicle of William de Rishanger*, p. xvii. Extracts from this MS. of Carew by Robert Glover are in MS. Cott. Otho D. IV. ff. 123 *b*–126 *b*, and thence copied by James Strangeman in a volume of his collections, MS. Sloane 1301, ff. 177–181 *b*.

<sup>2</sup> Coxe’s Pref. to *Roger de Wendover Chronica*, p. xxxiv.

<sup>3</sup> A drawing representing the state of this manuscript as left by the fire, and after it was flattened and inlaid, may be seen in MS. Add. 18,457.

*tum.*<sup>1</sup> The text (except in the preface) agrees throughout very closely with the Douce copy, so that it is rare to find even the slightest variation. At the conclusion is the same notice of the author, "Hucusque," etc. There can be no doubt that this is the manuscript which formerly belonged to Sir Christopher Heydon, of Baconsthorpe, in Norfolk (a scholar of considerable eminence, who died in 1623),<sup>2</sup> as proved by a note of that MS. prefixed to a copy of "Matthew of Westminster" in the Bodleian Library, MS. Laud 572, and referred to by Tanner in his *Bibliotheca Britannica*, p. 757. Mr. Halliwell is mistaken in stating that Sir Robert Cotton purchased the manuscript of Mr. Vincent [Augustine Vincent, Windsor Herald], since the entry in the original catalogue of the library (made about 1621)<sup>3</sup> merely intimates that the latter had borrowed the volume.

As the work of Wendover forms the basis of the one Reference now published as far as the year 1235, references have been given in the margin to Mr. Coxe's edition, and, in order to point out more readily the new matter introduced by Matthew Paris, dots have been added opposite such passages as are not found in Wendover, or are re-written and altered. Portions, however, of these passages sometimes occur in the Greater Chronicle of Paris. In general, the marginal additions and corrections are peculiar to the present work, and are not met with elsewhere. Subsequent to the year 1235, it was at first proposed to add references to Wats's edition of the larger work, but on further consideration it was thought unnecessary and, in some respects, inexpedient.

In regard to the punctuation of the text, division of sentences, and use of capital or small letters, some liberty has been taken, since the manuscript is by Punctuation, &c.

<sup>1</sup> This heading is very illegible, and a few words obliterated, but they are supplied by the note in MS. Laud 572.

<sup>2</sup> See Blomfield's *Hist. of Norfolk*, vol. vi. p. 508.

<sup>3</sup> MS. Harl. 6018, fol. 79.

no means uniform, and very often inaccurate in these particulars. Several orthographical changes have also been made, in compliance with the rules laid down for the guidance of editors. Thus, the diphthongs *æ* and *œ* have been substituted for the single *e*,<sup>1</sup> and the letter *t* for *c* in words ending in *cio* or *cia*, or similar forms. In every other alteration the reading of the manuscript is given in the notes.<sup>2</sup> In printing from the author's *autograph*, it might seem, indeed, doubtful whether such alterations were absolutely necessary or advisable, for the middle-age Latinity has a special character of its own, which cannot be converted by orthographical correction into a classical garb. Public documents have been, on this account, literally published in Rymer, and the German method, as represented in Pertz, seems preferable to the practice of the French school. To those who have felt sufficient interest in the subject to look into the dry treatises of Dausquius or Cellarius,<sup>3</sup> the whole question of classical orthography will appear to rest on very uncertain and conflicting authorities; and forms which are now repudiated as the corruptions of a monastic age are really found on the earliest monuments extant of the Latin tongue. Moreover, they are admitted into the languages immediately derived from the Latin, namely, the Italian, Spanish, and French. Nor has the practice of editors been uniform in this matter, and many of them have perceived the advantage of retaining forms which bear the impress of the age and

<sup>1</sup> The ancient use of *e* and *æ* is well known, and *optime feminine*, in the dative, occurs in an inscription in the Roman Catacombs. See also Cellarius, vol. i. p. 42. Modern editors differ much in writing such words as *heres*, *seculum*, *cetero*, *pretium*, *fenus*, *frenum*, &c.

<sup>2</sup> It would seem a great anomaly for an editor to point out the most

trivial errors of the pen, such as *a* for *ad*, *du* for *di*, and such like, and at the same time to alter without notice the orthography of words so sweepingly, that the original writer would fail to recognize them.

<sup>3</sup> Dausquius, *De Orthographia Latini Sermonis*, fol., Par. 1677; —Cellarius, *Orthographia Latina*, 2 vols. Svo., Altenb. 1768.

writer. The same licence has therefore been taken to some extent in the present volumes, in regard to such words as *benivolentia*, *cotidie*, *elemosina*, *genitrix*, *quatinus*, and others ; as also in the usage so constant in middle-age writers of employing *i* for *y* in *martir*, *presbiter*, *tiran-nus*, *lacrima*,<sup>1</sup> &c., and so retained in Italian and Spanish. Thus, also, in words compounded with a preposition, the final consonant of the first syllable becomes assimilated to the letter which follows, as *sullime*, *suffossus*, *assunt*, *suppriorem*.<sup>2</sup> This arises from pronunciation ; and by the same law *b* becomes *p* before the letter *t*, as *optuli*, *optinere*, &c., as long ago remarked by Quintilian.<sup>3</sup> The chief orthographical peculiarities observable in the text of Matthew Paris are, the substitution of *m* for *n* in *imfra*, *imfirmatus*, *imferior*, *imfelix*, &c., and the converse in *nanque*, for which, however, there is some show of authority ;<sup>4</sup> he also writes *exercitus* and *excercere*, *cisma*, *cintillis*, *aucgmentum*, *mangna*, *congnitus*, &c. These have been replaced by the more usual spelling. In other respects the forms are the same as found in most middle-age writers, such as *set* for *sed*, *michi*, *nichil*,<sup>5</sup> *cicere*, *obicit*, *dampna*, *sompno*, and many more. Double letters are often employed for single, and vice versa ; the *h* is used redundantly in such words as *habundare*, *harena*, *hanelus* ; but, on the other hand, is sometimes omitted, as *ebetasset*, *ortis*, *talamum* ;

<sup>1</sup> Giphanius, in his edition of Lucretius, boldly advocates the use of *i* in such words, and adds, “Eadem ergo ratione, *lacrima*, *clipeus*, *inclitus*, etc., scribenda existimo, consentientibus etiam libris vetustis omnibus.” Epist. ad Lect. ed. Lugd. Bat. 1595.

<sup>2</sup> Cellarius, vol. i. p. 99.

<sup>3</sup> *De Instit. Orat.* lib. i. cap. 7. There is abundance of ancient authority for this in Cellarius, vol. ii. p. 289. In truth, Quintilian

seems to authorize all such forms arising from pronunciation, when he says, “Ego, nisi quod consuetudo obtinuerit, sic scribendum quidque judico, quo modo sonat,” lib. i. cap. 7.

<sup>4</sup> See Cellarius, vol. i. pp. 59, 66. It is so printed by Parker.

<sup>5</sup> Mr. Wright, in his *Early Mysteries*, 1830, expressly retains such forms, as “marking the established orthography of the age.” Pref., p. xxvii.

whilst the letters *ph* and *f* are convertible, as *nephas*, *philosofum*. A few grammatical forms may also deserve notice, such as the use of *idus* and *nonas* undeclined, in the same manner as *kalendas*, and the constant employ of *mille* in the singular, but *milia* in the plural, for which Cellarius<sup>1</sup> cites the authority of the old grammarian Cledonius, as well as that of inscriptions in Gruter. After *milia* we find a genitive or other case used indifferently, as *milia marcas*, or *milia marcarum*.

Want of space in the present volume, and the advantage of having the whole of the text first printed off, have induced me to defer to a future occasion the consideration of such biographical and other notices as we possess of Matthew Paris, as also an estimate of the historical value of the work now first published. This will appear in the Preface to the third volume.

British Museum,  
February 16th, 1866.

---

<sup>1</sup> Vol. i. p. 288. [See *Grammaticæ Latinæ Auctores Antiqui*, | opera Hel. Putschii, 4to. Han. 1605, col. 1901, 2339.]

## CORRIGENDA.

---

Page 4, line 9, *for evenet perhaps we should read invenietur*. Cf. page 276, line 23.

- „ 7, note <sup>1</sup>, *supply Conquestor after qui, and for E. read F.*
  - „ 15, line 14, *before omnes insert [ut], to complete the sense.*
  - „ 18, line 15, *for rege Willelmo (as in MS.) substitute rex Willelmus.*
  - „ 35, line 25, *add in side margin 27 Sept.*
  - „ 45, line 7, *for cœpit (as in MS.) substitute fecit, as in W. A. C. D.*
  - „ 45, line 12, *for Normanniam (as in MS.) substitute Normannia.*
  - „ 59, line 17, *the correction may be unnecessary. Cf. p. 100, l. 26, and p. 113, l. 5.*
  - „ 62, line 11, *for antem read autem.*
  - „ 73, line 1, *supply A.D. 1096 in side margin.*
  - „ 82, line 21, *for innuens perhaps we might read irruens.*
  - „ 95, line 17, *for superbiam (as in MS.) substitute substantiam.*
  - „ 111, line 13, *for equitus read equites.*
  - „ 113, line 22, *for solidos read solidis.*
  - „ 118, line 8, *for nunclaret read nunciaret.*
  - „ 183, line 1, *for mandacis read mandatis.*
  - „ 190, note <sup>2</sup>, *for and F. read and E. F.*
  - „ 202, line 1, *no correction is necessary, but cf. p. 181, l. 21, and p. 369, l. 18.*
  - „ 230, note <sup>4</sup>, *for in C. read in A. C.*
  - „ 235, line 9, *for achiepiscopi read archiepiscopi.*
  - „ 365, line 21, *for marturiori read maturiori.*
  - „ 397, note <sup>1</sup>, *for so C. D. read so A. C. D.*
  - „ 424, note <sup>3</sup>, *after MS. add and E.*
  - „ 445, line 23, *for 1118 in the margin, read 1188.*
-



MATTHÆI PARISIENSIS,  
MONACHI SANCTI ALBANI,  
HISTORIA ANGLORUM.



## PROLOGUS.

fol. 9b. *Incipit Prologus in Historiam Anglorum, post conquisitionem Angliae a Normannorum duce Wilhelmo.*

DE chronographia,<sup>1</sup> id est, temporum descriptione locuturi, primo<sup>2</sup> detractoribus<sup>3</sup> invidis et nostrum laborem inanem reputantibus<sup>4</sup> respondebimus;<sup>5</sup> dein<sup>6</sup> benivolis et id<sup>7</sup> expectantibus, immo expostulantibus,<sup>8</sup> rerum causam præsenti Prologo breviter<sup>9</sup> aperiemus. Dicunt enim obloquentes,<sup>10</sup> “Quid necesse est vitas vel mortes, diversos<sup>11</sup> mundi hominumque<sup>12</sup> casus literis commendare; prodigia rerum diversarum scriptis impressa perpetuare?” Noverint quid dicat Philoso-

<sup>1</sup> *De chronographia . . . veraciter ediderunt*] The whole of this is borrowed, with some omissions and alterations, from the Prologue of Robert de Monte to his Additions to Sigebert of Gemblours. See Pertz, “Monumenta Hist. Germ.” tom. vi. p. 480. Portions are also found in the Preface of Roger of Wendover and his copyist Matthew of Westminster.

<sup>2</sup> *primo*] primo quidem, G. and Edd.

<sup>3</sup> *detractoribus*] detrectatoribus, G.; detractatoribus, Edd.

<sup>4</sup> *inanem reputantibus*] deputantibus inanem, G. and Edd.

<sup>5</sup> *respondebimus*] Originally written *respondemus*, but altered by a recent hand, and the correction is confirmed by the text of Robert de Monte and F.

<sup>6</sup> *dein*] deinde, G. and Edd.

<sup>7</sup> *id*] Om. F.

<sup>8</sup> *expostulantibus*] postulantibus, F.; depostulantibus, G. and Edd.

<sup>9</sup> *breviter*] describemus ac breviter, G. and Edd.

<sup>10</sup> *Dicunt enim obloquentes*] Delatores enim dicunt, G. and Edd.

<sup>11</sup> *diversos*] hominum, diversosque, G. and Edd.

<sup>12</sup> *hominumque*] Om. G. and Edd.

plus,<sup>1</sup> “Omnis<sup>2</sup> homo naturaliter scire desiderat;” et, “Homo sine literis, et præteritorum reminiscentia, in bestialem dilabitur stoliditatem, et ejus vita vivi hominis reputanda est sepultura.” Et si tu mortuorum antiquorum et præteritorum contempnendo oblivisceris, quis tui reminiscetur? Hæc<sup>3</sup> est imprecatio Psalmistæ dicentis, “Dispereat de terra memoria illius;”<sup>4</sup> et ejusdem adoptiva benedictio, “In memoria æterna erit justus;”<sup>5</sup> et cum benedictione evehet<sup>6</sup> nomen ejus in æternum; injusti<sup>7</sup> autem cum maledictione ignominia<sup>8</sup> recitabitur. Ut igitur perversorum devitentur gressus, bonorum, quorum gesta describimus, vestigia sequamur pedetentim. Ecce fructus Scripturarum, ecce speculum humanæ conditionis! Hac de causa, licet aliæ non desint, Moyses legislator in Veteri Testamento innocentiam Abel, invidiam Caim, simplicitatem<sup>9</sup> Jacob,<sup>10</sup> dolositatem Esau,<sup>11</sup> malitiam undecim filiorum Israel, bonitatem duodecimi, scilicet Joseph, pœnam quinque civitatum, pœnitentiam Ninivitarum manifestat, et scripturis commendando nititur perpetuare; ut sic, scilicet, bonos imitemur, malorum autem esse pedisse quos abhorreamus. Ad hoc anhelantes<sup>12</sup> sancti Evangelistæ,<sup>13</sup> theologi, Josephus, historiographus Ebraeus, Cyprianus, Cartaginensis episcopus et martir, Eusebius Cæsariensis, Jeronimus sacerdos, Sulpicius Severus, Fortunatus et<sup>14</sup> Beda, presbiteri venerabiles,<sup>15</sup> Prosper

Authority  
of the Old  
Testament  
narrative.

Ancient  
theological  
writers and  
historians.

<sup>1</sup> *Philosophus*] Aristotle, in *Metaphys.*, lib. i. e. 1; but the latter portion of the quotation (if quotation it be) seems founded on the words of Seneca, “Otium sine literis mors est et hominis vivi sepultura.” Ep. lxxxii. p. 542, ed. Lipsii, 1652.

<sup>2</sup> *Omnis*] Omnis siquidem, G. and Edd.

<sup>3</sup> *Hæc*] Hoc, F. G.

<sup>4</sup> Ps. eviii. 15.

<sup>5</sup> Ps. exi. 7.

<sup>6</sup> *evehet*] evenet. MS.

<sup>7</sup> *injusti*] injustus, Edd.

<sup>8</sup> *ignominia*] et ignominia, Edd.

<sup>9</sup> *simplicitatem*] dolositatem, Edd.

<sup>10</sup> *Jacob*] Roger of Wendover and the best MSS. of Matthew of Westminster read *Job*.

<sup>11</sup> *dolositatem Esau*] negligentiam Esau, simplicitatem *Job*, Edd.

<sup>12</sup> *anhelantes*] hanelantes, MS.

<sup>13</sup> *Evangelistæ*] Euangeliste, MS.

<sup>14</sup> *et*] Om. Edd.

<sup>15</sup> *presbiteri venerabiles*] præsbyter venerabilis, et, Edd.

Aquitannicus, gesta Dei scripserunt<sup>1</sup> et antiquorum. Et, ut ad modernos veniam, Marianus Scotus, Fulden- sis monachus, et Sigisbertus, Gemblacensis monachus, et quidam alii pectoris profundi Cronica veraciter edi- derunt.

Incipimus igitur<sup>2</sup> Anglorum Cronica a duce Normannorum Willelmo, qui ab Haraldo,<sup>3</sup> Anglorum rege perfido et perjuro, lacessitus, ipsum a regni solio depulit diffiduciatum; cujus facti causam lectoribus breviter intimabo. Navigans autem idem Haraldus,<sup>4</sup> dum adhuc juvenis esset, aspirans ad regnum Angliæ, sponte spaciatum<sup>5</sup> navigando raptus est invitus vi ventorum; dum<sup>6</sup> Flandriam credidit attigisse,<sup>7</sup> compulsus venit in Pontivam<sup>8</sup> provinciam. Quem captum consul Ponticus<sup>9</sup> Willelmo, Normannorum duci, præsentavit. At Haraldus<sup>10</sup> asserebat se hæc omnia sponte fecisse, ut clam veniens in Normanniam confederaretur duci, filiam ejus in sponsam accepturus. Quod<sup>11</sup> juravit super sanctorum multorum reliquias, se fideliter ad quendam terminum completerum. Tanto igitur majori honore susceptus est, quanto secretius adventasset; fuerant enim antea<sup>12</sup> inimici ad invicem. Juravit insuper se post mortem regis Eduuardi, qui jam senuit sine liberis, regnum Angliæ duci, qui in regnum jus habuit, fideliter conservaturum. Consummatis igitur aliquot diebus cum summa lætitia, amplis muneribus ditatus,

<sup>1</sup> *Dei scripserunt*] At first written *descripserunt*, but corrected by the author.

<sup>2</sup> *Incipimus igitur*] Et hic nos incipimus, Edd.

<sup>3</sup> *Haraldo*] Horaldo, MS.

<sup>4</sup> *Haraldus*] Haroldus, F.

<sup>5</sup> *sponte spaciatum*] et sponte spaciatus, Edd.

<sup>6</sup> *dum*] et dum, Edd.

<sup>7</sup> *attigisse*] se attigisse, Edd.

<sup>8</sup> *Pontivam*] Pontinam, G. and Edd.

<sup>9</sup> *Ponticus*] Guy, count of Pontthieu. Wats proposes to read *Pontivus* (with Eadmer, Will. Malmesb., and Rog. Wend.), but the text is here taken from Hen. Hunt. See "Mon. Hist. Brit.", p. 760.

<sup>10</sup> *Haraldus*] Haroldus, F.

<sup>11</sup> *Quod*] Quod et, Edd.

<sup>12</sup> *antea*] ante, Edd.

in Angliam reversus est Haroldus;<sup>1</sup> sed cum in tuto constitueretur, jactitabat se laqueos evasisse hostiles, perjurii crimen eligendo. Adveniente igitur termino, quo cuncta compleri deberent promissa, et iam elapso, nihil fecit. Misit igitur dux ad eum nuncios sollempnes, causam quærens; sed Haraldus mendax et superbus omnia prælocuta procaciter denegando, nuncios turpiter lacesitos, jumentis mutilatis, remisit. Dux igitur merito provocatus, regem Francorum, et omnes vicinos parentes et amicos suos ad ultionem tantæ injuriæ excitavit. Interea, mortuo rege Eduuardo, Haroldus sibi regnum, ut injurias cumularet ampliores, usurpavit, diadema sibi sine ecclesiastica auctoritate imponendo; unde papam Alexandrum et omnes Angliæ prælatos sibi creavit inimicos. Haroldum quoque, regem Norwagiæ, cum mille navibus ipsi adversanti occurrentem<sup>2</sup> rex Anglorum Haroldus devicit; unde superbior effectus suos oppressit.<sup>3</sup> Sed dux Willelmus, Deo<sup>4</sup> Domino ultionum<sup>5</sup> juvante, Angliam, ipso contrito, sicut præcedens<sup>6</sup> narrat historia, sibi conquisivit.<sup>7</sup>

Harold  
usurps the  
throne.

<sup>1</sup> *Haroldus*] Haraldus, G. and Edd.

<sup>2</sup> *oecurrentem*] Added in the margin, but inserted in the text of F. Om. G.

<sup>3</sup> *Interea . . . oppressit*] om. Edd.

<sup>4</sup> *Deo*] Om. G. and Edd.

<sup>5</sup> *ultionum*] ultionem, F. G. and Edd., but the same expression is found elsewhere, at ff. 32 a, 60 a.

<sup>6</sup> *præcedens*] subsequens, G. sec. m. and Edd.

<sup>7</sup> In MS. F. here follows a long addition, comprising the events of the year 1066 previous and subsequent to the battle of Hastings, which, with omissions and alterations, is copied into the Edd.

MATTHÆI PARISIENSIS,  
MONACHI SANCTI ALBANI,  
HISTORIA ANGLORUM.

fol. 10 a. *De coronatione regis Willelmi Primi, qui Conquestor Anglie dicitur, interempto rege Haraldo, qui, Deo judice et vindice, propter superbiam suam A.D. 1067. periit.<sup>1</sup>*

R.Wend. .ANNO Dominicæ incarnationis M<sup>o</sup>.LXVII<sup>o</sup>., interempto  
vol. ii. p.1.. rege superbo et falsidico Haraldo, dux Romanorum  
. Willelmus, triumphator magnificus, obtenta contra sibi  
. adversantes inopinata victoria, urbem lætus adiit Lon-  
. doniarum.<sup>2</sup> Ubi propter suam piam justitiam et justam  
. pietatem, necnon et militiæ suæ strenuitatem, a clero

Victory of  
William  
over Ha-  
rald, and  
coronation  
at London.

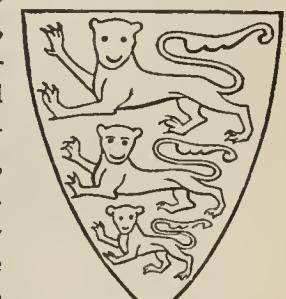


*Clipeus Haraldi.*

<sup>1</sup> *qui . . . periit*] Om. E.

<sup>2</sup> *Anno Dominicæ . . . Londoniarum*] These lines at the commencement of the Chronicle are written by Matthew Paris on a piece of vellum pasted down over the text as it originally stood; but the alteration was made previous to the addition of the present rubric or heading. On raising this piece of vellum carefully, the text, although partially erased, can be deciphered thus: "Anno Dominicæ incarnationis M<sup>o</sup>.LX<sup>o</sup>VII<sup>o</sup>. christianissimus dux Normannorum Willelmus ac triumphator magnificus, optenta

contra Haroldum regem tam inopinata victoria, urbem adiit Londoniarum." In the initial A., as at first drawn, was inserted the shield of arms of William, viz., gules, three lions or leopards passant gardant or, but a larger and more ornamental letter was afterwards substituted, and the shield, surmounted by a crown, drawn in the margin. The shield also of Harald, azure, a lion rampant double quevè or, is introduced between the columns of text, but reversed, to betoken his death.



*Clipeus Willelmi, ducis Normannorum, et jam novi Anglorum regis.*

A.D. 1067. et populo cum summa exultatione susceptus, in verbo .  
veritatis omnibus pacem et veritatem Anglis denun- .  
ciavit. Cives autem, qui ab Haraldo, tiranno et im- .  
probo exactore, injustis exactionibus et angariis veluti .  
ab altero Beornredo<sup>1</sup> premebantur, ipsum ducem, quasi .  
hostiam de cœlo transmissam, in muneribus pretiosis- .  
simis, in classico campanarum, processionibus religio- .  
sorum, cum omni alacritate honorantes, ipsum regem .

25 Dec. communiter acclamaverunt. Dominicæque Nativitatis. R. Wend.  
die ab Aldredo, Eboracensi archiepiscopo, regni diadema  
suscepit; timuit enim hoc munus consecrationis a Sti-  
gando, Cantuariensi archiepiscopo, suscipere, eo quod  
illegitime occupaverat illius excellentiam dignitatis.  
Deinde, homagiis a magnatibus cum fidelitatis jura-  
mento obsidibusque susceptis, in regno confirmatus,  
omnibus qui ad regnum aspiraverant factus est terrori.

He returns Civitatibus igitur et castris dispositis, propriisque mi- Rog. Wend.  
to Nor- nistris impositis, ad Normanniam cum obsidibus An- ii. 2.  
mandy. gliae et thesauris innumeris navigavit; quibus incarce-  
ratis et sub arcta custodia deputatis, ad Angliam denuo

Histyranny remeavit. Et jam, Deo irato, tirannizans, commilito-  
over the nibus suis Normannis terras Anglorum, qui se ipsi  
English. sponte dederant, ingrat more distribuit; et modicum .  
illud, quod eis<sup>2</sup> remanserat, sub jugo posuit perpetuae  
servitutis. Unde nobiliores regni servitutis ignari, in-  
dignati inconsolabiliter doluerunt. Quidam igitur ad .  
regem Scotorum Malcolmum, quidam in Daciam, qui- .  
dam in Norwegiam, quidam ad alias regiones confu- .  
gerunt; malentes propriam strenuitatem et virtutem .  
experiri, quam ingratissimo tiranno Willelmo et super- .  
biæ subjacere Normannorum. Alii quoque loca deserta .  
petentes, insidias Normannis parantes, multos ex eis .

<sup>1</sup> *Beornredo*] Boenredo, MS. The allusion is to Beornred, the tyrannical king of Mercia. See Rog. Wend. *ad ann. 758, 769.*

<sup>2</sup> *eis*] illud, MS. Corrected from Wendover and the larger Chronicle in A. C. D.

. pereemerunt. Recesserunt igitur tunc temporis ab Anglia A.D. 1067.  
 . nobilissimi viri comites Eaduuinus et Morcardus fra- Flight of  
 . tres, Mercherus<sup>1</sup> et Weltherus,<sup>2</sup> milites invictissimi et the English  
 locupletes, cum episcopis, clericis, et aliis multis viris nobles.  
 nominatissimis, quos longum est exprimere nominatim.  
 . Quorum major pars ad dictum regem Scotorum confu-  
 gientes, ab ipso honorifice, ne rebellantes ipsum forte  
 expellerent, sunt recepti. Tunc etiam Eadgarus Ethel- Eadgar  
 ing, sanguine et probitate præclarus, et de regno Angliæ Etheling  
 heres legitimus, cernens res natalis patriæ undique takes re-  
 patere discrimini, ascensa nave, cum Agatha,<sup>3</sup> matre sua, fuge in  
 et sororibus Margareta et Cristina, in Hungariam, ubi Scotland.  
 natus fuerat, conabatur reverti; sed, tempestate sub-  
 orta, coactus est in Scociam applicare. Hac igitur occa-  
 sione actum est, ut Margareta regi Malcolmo nuptui  
 traderetur; soror autem ejus Cristina sanctimonialis  
 facta, cœlesti Regi copulatur. Nati sunt igitur reginæ Kings of  
 Margaretæ sex filii et duæ filiæ, quorum tres, Edgarus Scotland  
 scilicet, Alexander et David, juxta generis sui nobili- descended  
 tatatem reges postea fuerunt. Ex tunc ergo regum from queen  
 Rog. Wend. ii. 3. Angliæ nobilitas, a propriis per Normannos expulsa Margaret.  
 finibus, ad reges Scotorum est infelici sidere devoluta,  
 et aurcis seculis successerunt luteis deteriora. Nec A.D. 1250.  
 usque ad tempora hæc scribentis, videlicet annum gra- The date  
 tiae M.CC.L., est<sup>4</sup> inventus rex Angliæ titulo sanctitatis when the  
 insignitus. present  
 work was compiled.

*Cœnobium, quod Bellum dicitur, fundatur.*

. Rex itaque Willelmus, cum abbatiam de Bello in Founda-  
 . honorem sancti Martini, pro animabus occisorum in tion of  
 . bello fundasset, et castrum de Hastingo festinanter, Battle  
 Abbey.

<sup>1</sup> Mercherus] Metherus, MS.

<sup>2</sup> Weltherus] Weltheofus, W.;  
Weltherfus, A. C. F.; Welterfus, D.

<sup>3</sup> Agatha] Agathe, MS.

<sup>4</sup> est] At first written *non est*, but  
*non* afterwards erased.

A.D. 1067. quod et sic ideo appellavit, firmasset, versus Oxoniam<sup>1</sup>. R. Wend.  
 Siege of sibi rebellem iter et vexilla direxit, et ipsam obsi-. ii. 4.  
 Exeter. dione vallavit, et eam sibi subjugavit. Deinde Ebora-.  
 cum properavit, et urbem et cives ferro flammaque .  
 miserabili exterminio devastavit. Deinde partes An-.  
 Northern gliae aquilonares hostiliter adiens, terras Scociæ con- .  
 expedition terminas suis incolis in ore gladii viduavit; iraque .  
 of William. succensus vehementi, eo videlicet quod nobiles Angliæ .  
 profugos receptasset, adversus regem Malcolmum ipsum .  
 hostiliter impetere proposuit. Sed Malcolinus impetus .  
 ejus vehementer formidans, ei dextram dedit, et ejus .  
 ferocitatem muneribus mitigavit.

*De contentione duorum de papatu.*

Struggle Hoc etiam tempore, Romæ Alexandro et Cadelo de Rog. Wend.  
 for the papacy. papatu contendentibus, Mantuæ synodus congregatur ; ii. 5.  
 et, mediante Annone,<sup>2</sup> Coloniensi archiepiscopo, Alex-  
 andro de symonia se purgante, in sede apostolica sta-  
 tuitur,<sup>3</sup> et Cadelo<sup>4</sup> expellitur symoniacus. Eodem  
 Slaughter tempore ad vii. milia hominum, orandi gratia Jero-  
 of pilgrims solimam petentes, ab Arabibus in Parasceve obsessi in  
 by the Arabs. quodam castro, cæsi sunt, et totidem letaliter vulnerati.<sup>5</sup>.

<sup>1</sup> *Oxoniam*] So also A. D. F. and Edd. In C. we have *Exoniam* in the rubric and *Oxoniam* in the text. The variation would seem to be due entirely to MS. A., and the genuine reading is certainly *Exoniam*, as appears from the Sax. Chron. Ord. Vitalis, Flor. Wore., Malmesbury, and other authorities, as well as Wendover.

<sup>2</sup> *Annone*] Amone, MS.

<sup>3</sup> Alexander II. was elected pope, 1 Oct. 1061, and confirmed at the Council of Mantua, 31 May 1064.

See Jaffé, "Regesta Pont.", pp. 390, 392.

<sup>4</sup> *Cadelo*] So also W. and A. C. D. F. I. and Sigebert, *ad ann. 1067*, but corrected *Cadelus* in Edd. and ed. Wend.

<sup>5</sup> *cæsi . . . vulnerati*] The text is here faulty, as is evident from W. and A. C. D. F., which read, "et tot ex eis vulnerati vel oceisi, ut de omnibus vix duo milia sunt [sint, W. I.] elapsi." Cf. Sigebert, *loc. cit.*

fol. 10b. *Natus est regi Willelmo Primo Henricus Primus.*

Rog.Wend. Anno Domini M<sup>o</sup>.LX<sup>o</sup>VIII<sup>o</sup>. natus est regi Willelmo A.D. 1068.  
ii. 5. filius in Anglia, et vocatus est Henricus. Nam primo- Birth of  
Rog.Wend. genitus<sup>1</sup> Willelmus Rufus et Robertus<sup>2</sup> in Normannia prince Henry.  
ii. 6. nati fuerunt, antequam pater eorum Angliam sibi sub-  
jugaret. Eodemque anno rex Willelmus Roberto<sup>3</sup> The county  
comiti dedit Northumbriæ<sup>4</sup> comitatum; in quem ho-  
mines illius regionis hostiliter insurgentes, ipsum cum given to  
nongentis viris in ore gladii peremerunt. Rex autem earl Robert.  
. Willelmus, qui hæc audivit, superveniens, omnes hujus  
rei auctores usque ad unum delevit. Diebus quoque  
. sub eisdem Angli, qui more Trojanorum et aliorum  
. orientalium barbas nutrierunt, exemplo Normannorum  
. eas raserunt. Nam antea<sup>5</sup> qui cæsariem in cincinnos The Eng-  
. crescere permittebant, jam ipsam ad humeros totonde- lish adopt  
. bant; et sic antiqua hominum consuetudo diatim expi- the Norman  
. ravit, et sanctitas et honestas<sup>6</sup> custom of approbata. shaving  
their hair.

*Willelmus I. rex de multis hostibus suis triumphavit.*

Rog.Wend. Anno Domini M<sup>o</sup>.LX<sup>o</sup>IX<sup>o</sup>. venerunt quidam ad regem A.D. 1069.  
ii. 6. Willelmum, Dunelmensem episcopum Agelricum de Complaints  
ejus proditione<sup>7</sup> accusantes<sup>8</sup>. Qui in villa, quæ Bur- against  
gum dicitur, a regis W[illelmi] ministris captus, ad Ægelric,  
bishop of Durham.

<sup>1</sup> *primogenitus*] Om. E.

<sup>2</sup> *Willelmus . . . Robertus*] The names, apparently, should be transposed. The error is Wendover's, who is followed by A. C. D. E. F.; but see the note of Matthew Paris at fol. 13a, in which he attempts to vindicate the claim of William to the right of primogeniture.

<sup>3</sup> *Roberto*] The following note is here added in the margin: "Iste R.

ampliavit ecclesiam Sanctæ Mariæ de Thinemue, sicut dicetur post, et monachis Sancti Albani instauravit."

<sup>4</sup> *Northumbriæ*] Northanhumbriae, W. and A. C. D. E. F.

<sup>5</sup> *antea*] añtea, MS.

<sup>6</sup> *et honestas*] Added in the margin.

<sup>7</sup> *proditione*] promocione, MS. Corr. from W. and A. C. D. E. F.

<sup>8</sup> *accusantes*] acusantes, MS.

A.D. 1069. Westmonasterium ductus est, sub carcerali custodia  
 Exile of detrudendus. Et postea, mense Augusto,<sup>1</sup> frater ejus  
 Egelwine, Egeluuinus, ejusdem loci factus episcopus, fuit in  
 bishop of exterminium relegatus. Eodem vero anno, inter duo  
 Durham. festa beatæ Mariæ in autumpno, venerunt duo filii  
 Arrival of Suani et frater ejus Osbernus de regno Danorum cum  
 the Danes, cognibus trecentis in Angliam, ut regem Willelmum  
 to aid in ab Anglia exturbarent. Quorum adventus cum divulgatus  
 expelling William. fuisset, exierunt eis obviam in pace Edgarius  
 Etheling, filius Edwardi, et Waltheofus comes, cum  
 multis milibus armatorum, cupientes eorum auxilio  
 regem Willelmum capere, vel carceri perpetuo mancipare. Tunc, foedere confirmato, junctis viribus ad  
 Eboracum venientes, urbem cum castello quantocius  
 occuparunt, et multa ibidem hominum milia perem-  
 rent; maioresque urbis et provinciæ vinculis constrin-  
 gentes torquebant, et ab eis omnem eorum substantiam .  
 abstulerunt. Tandem ibi inter duo flumina Vasam<sup>2</sup> Rog.Wend.  
 et Trente hiemantes, omnes regionis incolas immiseri-  
 corditer trucidarunt, vel ad ditionem coegerunt. .  
 Sed Willelmus, hieme transcura, cum maxima arma-  
 torum copia superveniens, fortiores hostium fugavit  
 Defeat of aut cepit, minores autem trucidavit. Tunc Edgarius,  
 the Danes licet ipse cum comite Walteofo innumerabiles Nor-  
 and English by William. mannos peremissa, ad regem Willelmum veniens, .  
 et ei humiliatus pacem impetravit et eidem fecit fide-  
 litatem. Erat enim rex Willelmus deprecabilis post  
 victoriam. .

*De nova servitute ecclesiae Anglicanæ.*

A.D. 1070. Anno Domini M<sup>0</sup>.LXX<sup>0</sup>. rex W[illelmus], diabolico Rog.Wend.  
 Spoliation excitatus spiritu, vel malorum hominum consilio fascin- .  
 of the mon- ii. 7.

<sup>1</sup> *mense Augusto*] At first written *Augusto mense*, as in W. A. C. D., but marked to be transposed.

<sup>2</sup> *Vasam*] Vasan, MS.; Usam, W.

- natus, omnia Anglorum monasteria, quæ sub tempori- A.D. 1070.  
 - bus regum Angliæ piissimorum pace et libertate nasteries,  
 - gratulabantur, auro spoliens et argento insatiabiliter  
 - apporriavit,<sup>1</sup> sanctorum patrum non deferens sancti-  
 - onibus, cartis aut statutis; immo etiam nec feretris  
 - pepercit aut calicibus. Episcopatus autem et abbatias  
 - omnes, quæ baronias tenebant, et eatenus ab omni  
 - servitio seculari libertatem habuerant, sub servitute  
 - statuit militari; inrotulans episcopatus et abbatias pro  
 - voluntate sua, quot milites sibi et successoribus suis,  
 - hostilitatis tempore, voluit a singulis exhiberi. Et  
 - rotulos hujusmodi servitutis ponens in thesauris, mul-  
 - totos viros ecclesiasticos huie constitutioni pessimæ  
 - rebelles et contradicentes a regno fugavit. Qui exules  
 - et pauperes morituri, ipsi tiranno præcordialiter male-  
 - dicebant. Unde timemus, ne tanti fuerit talis im-  
 - precatio, ut in ipsum et in multos suæ posteritatis  
 - descenderit propagata. Sub hac vero tempestate Sti-  
 - gandus, Cantuariensis archiepiscopus, et Alexander  
 - Lincolniensis,<sup>2</sup> facto ad Scotos refugio, moram ibidem  
 - fecerunt, ad tempus latitantes. Solus vero inter omnes

Rog. Wend. Angliæ prælatos Egelwinus, Dunelmensis episcopus, exul  
 ii. 8. zelum Dei retinens, excommunicavit universos ecclesiæ  
 invasores. Eodem anno, deposito apostata archiepi- Depositio  
of arch-  
bishop  
 scopo Stigando, qui prius simoniace fuerat episcopus  
 Helmhamensis, ac deinceps Wintoniensis, et novissime Stigand.  
 . Cantuariensis, necnon et regis W[illelmi] fautor sub-  
 . dolus, turpiter cessit et turpius decessit.<sup>3</sup> Cui subro-  
 . gatur Lamfrancus literatissimus, qui ex monacho Lanfranc  
made arch-

<sup>1</sup> *apporriavit*] appropriavit, D. *sec. man. F. and Edd.*

<sup>2</sup> *Alexander Lincolniensis*] This, again, is an error committed by Wendover, and copied carelessly by Matthew Paris. There was no see of Lincoln at this period, and no bishop of the name of Alexander.

Perhaps we should substitute the name of Ægelmar, bishop of the East Angles (Elmham), brother of Stigand, deposed in 1070. See Flor. Wigorn. ii. 5, ed. Thorpe.

<sup>3</sup> *cessit et turpius decessit*] Partly on an erasure, and partly added beyond the line of text.

A.D. 1070. Beccensi abbas factus Cadomensis, ad dictum archi-bishop of Canterbury promulatum rite promovetur. Isto vero procurante, promotus est in abbatem Sancti Albani, Anglorum pro-Paul, abbot of St. Albans. thomartiris, Paulus, monachus ordinatissimus, rite ac-feliciter. Qui ibidem et ordinem monasticum<sup>1</sup> reparavit, et ecclesiam miro tabulatu ex ruina antiquæ civitatis. latericio reparavit. Hic Lamfrancus memoratus in. archiepiscopatu annis xviii. laudabiliter conversatus, successoribus suis exemplum præbuit piæ conversationis. Flight and submission of Eadgar Etheling. Eodem tempore Edgarus Etheling, regis Willelmi dedi-cius,<sup>2</sup> facto ad Scotos transfugio, suum jusjurandum ma-culavit. Sed tandem poenitens, ejusdem regis miseri-cordiam voluit experiri, et ad ipsum in Normanniam navigavit.<sup>3</sup> A rege autem satis honorifice susceptus et donativis honoratus, libram argenti pro stipendio suscepit cotidiano.

fol. 11a.

*Multi nobiles Angliae loca deserta petierunt.*

A.D. 1071. Anno Domini M<sup>o</sup>.LXX<sup>o</sup>I<sup>o</sup>. Mercherus et Sywardus co-Rog. Wend. Retreat of the English nobles to Ely. mites, cum Egelwino, Dunelmensi episcopo, et multis milibus clericorum et laicorum, deserta regionis loca et nemorosa petierunt, regis indignationem et superbiam ferre non valentes nec volentes; unde usus inolevit, ut in domibus comprovincialium gesa, clavæ, secures pari-etibus et postibus appendenterentur, ut sic a profugis, Archbishop Lanfranc despises the English prelates. quasi a prædonibus, excubantes defenderentur. Quin-immo Lamfrancus, regis compatriota et specialis consiliarius, jam cœpit prælatos Angliae, licet sanctos et Deo acceptos, pro simplicitate contempnere et ydiotas. vocare, et aliquos de literaturæ ignorantia accusare. Confirmabatur namque<sup>4</sup> nuper in excellentiam Cantua-

ii. 8.

<sup>1</sup> *monasticum*] monastichum, MS.<sup>2</sup> *dediclus*] So read W. and A. C.D.; but in Edd. and ed. Wend. *de-diticius*, and so F. Above this word is written in the MS. *vel adoptivus*.<sup>3</sup> *navigavit*] In the text *negavit*, but corr. in marg.<sup>4</sup> *namque*] nanque, MS., and so throughout.

. riensis archipræsulatus, et licet sanctum, sua tamen A.D. 1071.  
. inflavit scientia et erexit dignitas secularis. Cumque  
. memorati exules, adjunctis sibi quamplurimis injuriam  
. passis, in compatriotas desævissent et dampna irrestau-  
. rabilia Normannis irrogassent, ad Elyensem insulam  
tandem venientes, locum mansionis et refugii illic sibi  
elegerunt. Qui sæpius illinc hostiliter exeentes, duce Proceed-  
Herewardo, viro nobilissimo et in armis strenuissimo, <sup>ings of</sup>  
*R. Wend.* <sup>Hereward.</sup>

ii. 9. totum regis regnum non mediocriter affligebant. Cas-  
trum quoque ligneum, quod usque hodie Castellum Here-  
wardi nuncupatur, in sui defensionem construxerunt.  
Jam jamque cum cruentis suspiriis pœnituerunt, prius  
Normannorum superbiæ, antequam urbes et castra occu-  
passent, taliter non restitisse, omnes profecto de sub-  
cælo delevissent. Sed eorum promissiones subdolæ, et  
verba super oleum mollita et super lac mellita, Anglo-  
rum credulorum constantiam enervaverunt.<sup>1</sup> Divulgato  
autem hujusmodi rumore, rex Willelmus, bellator cau- William  
tissimus, antequam hujus conspirationis numerus robur attacks the  
et radices in altum germinando mitteret, nullas moras English at  
annectens, convocata totius fortitudinis suæ nobilitate, Ely, and  
ad insulam pervenit memoratam, et ipsam navali, subdues  
pedestri et equestri exercitu<sup>2</sup> circumcinxit; magnisque them.  
trabibus et ramis concreticulatis, in marisco et harun-  
dineto vias prius invias pervias reddidit et transmea-  
biles. Omnesque sibi adversantes multis præliis et  
assultibus, quorum varios casus longum esset describere,  
tandem edomuit. Herewardus tamen comperiens hostes  
suos diatim sibi nocivum incrementum suscipere, as-  
sumptis secum sociorum suorum præelectis, cuneos in-  
imicorum suorum pertranseundo potenter penetravit, et  
ceciderunt ab eo dissipati vel cæsi a dextris et sinistris, Hereward  
et ad Scociam quantocius avolavit; unde adhuc Scocia, escapes to  
Scotland.

<sup>1</sup> *enervaverunt*] enervavit, MS.

<sup>2</sup> *exercitu*] excercitu, MS., and the same orthography occurs through-

out in all the other cases of this word.

A.D. 1071. cum terris sibi conterminis, primitivo nobilium Anglorum sanguine purpuratur. Residui vero, qui in insula morabantur, tandem capti vel sponte sese regi praesertaverunt, quodlibet supplicium ad arbitrium ejus subituri. Herewardus vero cum suis complicibus regi, quamdiu vixit, dampnose nimis et efficaciter adversabatur.

*Rex Willelmus regis Scotorum homagium cepit.*

A.D. 1072. Anno Domini M<sup>o</sup>.LXX<sup>o</sup>II<sup>o</sup>. rex Willelmus Scociam, eo Rog.<sup>Wond.</sup> William invades Scotland, and receives homage from the king. quod nobiles Angliæ indomitos receptaverat, hostiliter impetens, speravit ibidem aliquos de hostibus suis invenire; sed ipsis in locorum desertis latitantibus et quandoque impetum in Normannos raptim facientibus, cum non posset ipsos patenter convenire, licet omnia perlustrasset, in regem irruere proposuit hostiliter. Sed idem Scotorum rex regis Willelmi ferocitatem timens,<sup>1</sup> quia jam innumeris tam Anglorum quam Normanorum agminibus stipabatur, quæ pacis erant rogitabat; cui providus rex Willelmus, malens pacem quam Martis ambigua fata<sup>2</sup> in locis ignotis et palustribus experiri, laetus adquievit ad horam.<sup>3</sup> Accepto igitur regis Scotorum<sup>4</sup> cum obsidibus homagio,<sup>5</sup> prudens triumphator.

*Nota  
homagium  
regis  
Scotorum.*

<sup>1</sup> *timens]* Added in marg.

<sup>2</sup> *fata]* Before this word there are marks of caret and reference to the margin, but no other word has been supplied.

<sup>3</sup> *adquievit ad horam]* Written on an erasure.

<sup>4</sup> A small bearded head wearing a tall pointed hood of mail, intended for king Malcolm, is here drawn in the margin, with a crown or coronet at the side, falling over.

<sup>5</sup> In the margin, opposite to these words, is added by Matthew Paris:

"Anno gratiae M.XC. Revolve iiiii. folia sequentia, ad hoc signum →, et invenies quod itidem fecit rex Scociæ M[alcolmus] regi W[illelmo] II. Item, anno M.C.LXIII. fecit rex Scociæ homagium regi H[enrico] II. et filio suo Henriculo. Item, anno M.C.XXXV. postulavit rex Stephanus, ut idem rex faceret ei homagium, et respondit quod hoc pri[us] fecerat homagium Matildi, filiæ regis H[enrici], nepti suæ."

ad Angliam remeavit. Hoc etiam anno Eilricus, Dunel- A.D. 1072.  
 mensis episcopus, apud Westmonasterium sub custodia Death of  
 regis, qui, arridente sibi fortuna, in arrogantiam, Deo Ægilric,  
 sic permittente,<sup>1</sup> ergebatur, detentus obiit, et ibidem bishop of  
 in porticu sancti Nicholai sepultus est Durham.

*De ventilatione causæ inter Cantuariensem ecclesiam  
 et Eboracensem.*

Rog. Wend. Eodem quoque anno apud Windeleshores, ex præcepto Dispute  
 ii. 12. Alexandri papæ, rege etiam Willelmo annuente, in præ- between  
 sentia Huberti, Romanæ ecclesiæ legati, ventilata est the sees of  
 causa de primatu ecclesiæ Cantuariensis super ecclesiam Canterbury  
 Eboracensem.<sup>2</sup> Ubi tandem antiquarum auctoritatibus and York  
 scripturarum probatum est et ostensum, quod Eboracensis for the  
 [ecclesia]<sup>3</sup> debeat subjacere ecclesiæ Cantuariensi, primacy.  
 et ipsius archiepiscopi, ut primatis totius Britanniæ,  
 dispositionibus, in omnibus quæ ad Christianam per-  
 tinent religionem fideliter obedire; ita quod, si archiepi-  
 scopus Cantuariensis concilium celebret ubicumque sibi  
 viderit expedire, Eboracensis, cum omnibus suis suffra-  
 ganeis et sibi subjectis clericis, intersit personaliter,  
 ejusque obediat sanctionibus. Benedictionem etiam  
 episcopalem ab ipso recipiat, et eidem canonicam pro-  
 fessionem addito faciat juramento. Huic autem pro-  
 visioni consenserunt unanimiter rex W[illelmus],  
 Lamfrancus Cantuariensis, Thomas Eboracensis archi-  
 episcopus, legatus memoratus cardinalis, cum omnibus  
 regni episcopis et abbatibus. Inde autem confecta est  
 . carta sollempnis, quam qui videre desiderat, librum  
 fol. 11 b. . de Historia Britonum confectum inter illius anni acta  
 . intueatur.<sup>4</sup>

<sup>1</sup> permittente] In the text permitte,  
 but corr. in marg.

<sup>2</sup> Eboracensem] Eboȝ, MS., and  
 so elsewhere.

<sup>3</sup> ecclesia] Supplied from W. A.  
 C. D. E. F.

<sup>4</sup> Inde autem . . . intueatur] This  
 passage is also in A. marg., C. D.

*Rex Willelmus Cenomanniam sibi subjugavit.*

A.D. 1073. Anno Domini M<sup>o</sup>.LXX<sup>o</sup>III<sup>o</sup>. rex Willelmus in Norman- Rog. Wend.  
 Conquest niam transiens in manu potenti, jam sibi<sup>1</sup> factam ii. 13.  
 of Maine. rebellem potenter sibi subjugavit. Angli vero invic-  
 tissimi in hac expeditione urbes, vicos, lucos, vineas et  
 pomœria cum frugibus depopulantes, Normannis vicissi-  
 tudinem, nacto tempore, non immerito reddiderunt..  
 Rex igitur, omnibus subactis, in Angliam prospere  
 The monks remeavit. Monachi autem Sancti Audoeni invaserunt .  
 of St. Ouen eodem anno Johannem, archiepiscopum Rothomagen..  
 attack the sem, missam celebrantem in festo ejusdem sancti, cum .  
 archbishop of Rouen. armata satis crudeli manu; unde judicatum est in con-.  
 cilio in eadem civitate congregato, præsente rege Anglo-.  
 rum W[illelmo], ipsos monachos per abbatias diversas .  
 perpetuis carceribus mancipari. Eodemque tempore, rege .  
 William deprives the abbey of St. Alban's of its pos- Willelmo non ratione sed voluntario fascinatus impetu, .  
 sessions in favour of West- abbatiae Sancti Albani infestus, multis eam privavit .  
 minster. possessionibus et thesauris, ut sic Westmonasterium .  
 ditaret ex alieno. Amavit enim domum Westmonasterii, .  
 quia ibidem Londoniensium favorem et regni suscepit .  
 diadema.

*De scandalo in ecclesia exorto.*

A.D. 1074. Anno Domini M<sup>o</sup>.LXX<sup>o</sup>IIII<sup>o</sup>. Gregorius sedit in cathe- Rog. Wend.  
 Gregory VII. pope. dra Romana<sup>2</sup> annis xii., mense uno, et tribus diebus. ii. 13.  
 General Synod Iste papa in sinodo generali symoniacos excommunicavit,  
 held. uxoratos sacerdotes a divino amovit officio, et laicis  
 missas eorum audire interdixit.

F., although omitted in W. and Edd.  
 The work referred to is probably  
 Malmesbury's "Gesta Regum Anglo-  
 rum," vol. i. p. 474, ed. Hardy.

<sup>1</sup> *sibi]* After this word Wendover  
 has *Cenomanniam* (in accordance  
 with the Sax. Chron. and other early

authorities, and the rubric); but the  
 scribe of A. having carelessly re-  
 peated the word *Normanniam*, the  
 error was copied into C. D. F. and  
 Edd., and is here also followed.

<sup>2</sup> Gregory VII. was elected 22  
 April 1073. Jaffé, p. 405.

*Conspiratio facta est contra Willelmum regem.*

Rog.Wend. Eodem anno comes Radulphus, cui rex Willelmus A.D. 1074.  
 ii. 14. dederat Estangliæ consulatum, consilio Weltheofi<sup>1</sup> et Conspiracy  
 Rogeri comitum, regem Willelmum a regno expellere of earl  
 moliebatur.<sup>2</sup> Duxit enim Radulphus sororem præfati Ralph and  
 Rogeri comitis, et in nuptiis hanc proditionem others against  
 facere William.

Rog.Wend. conspirabant. Erat autem Radulphus ex matre Walensi  
 ii. 15. et patre Anglo generatus; et, sicut diximus, instante  
 die nuptiarum, utriusque partis amici in villa Norwicensi  
 cum congregati fuissent, et post refectionem lautissi-  
 mam vino inebriarentur, cœperunt unanimiter in regis  
 necem clamosa voce conspirare, asserentes hominem in  
 adulterio natum, ut tanto [regno]<sup>3</sup> talibusque viris  
 præesset, minime rationi convenire. Erant autem  
 hujusmodi<sup>4</sup> factionis complices Rogerus, Weltheofus,  
 et Radulphus comites, plures quoque episcopi et abbates,  
 cum baronibus necnon et viris quampluribus inclitis  
 bellatoribus. Qui communiter ad regem Danorum The con-  
 nuncios dirigentes, auxilium ejus instantius flagitabant. spirators  
 Deinde, Walensibus sibi confoederatis, unusquisque in send to the  
 sua potestate, igne accumulato in villis regiis, rapinis aid.  
 et incendiis intendebant; sed regis castellani eorum  
 conatus potenter irritabant. Tunc rex Willelmus, ad William  
 instar fulminis, de Normannia subito rediens, Rogerum defeats  
 comitem, cognatum suum, et Weltheofum cepit, et them, and  
 captos incarceravit. Quod comes Radulphus cum cog- earl Roger  
 novisset, ab Anglia meticulosus recessit illico. Deinde and Wel-  
 rex Willelmus ad Noricum exercitum mittens, uxorem theofare  
 comitis Radulphi obsedit, donec humiliaretur;<sup>5</sup> deficien- taken  
 tibus alimentis, præstata tunc<sup>6</sup> cautione juratoria, quod prisoners.  
 Norwich is besieged.

<sup>1</sup> *Weltheofi*] *Weltheoni*, MS.

<sup>2</sup> *moliebatur*] At first written *moliebantur*, but *n* afterwards erased. In W. A. C. D. F. *moliuntur*.

<sup>3</sup> *regno*] Supplied from W. A. C. D. F.

<sup>4</sup> *hujusmodi*] *hujus*, W. A. C. F.

<sup>5</sup> *humiliaretur*] Added on to the text in marg.

<sup>6</sup> *tunc*] Added between the lines.

- A.D. 1074. ab Anglia obsessi recederent<sup>1</sup> irredituri. Walenses vero, qui præfatis interfuerunt nuptiis, rex Willelmus diversis interire fecit suppliciis. Et, hiis gestis, venerunt ex Dacia Cnuto, filius Suani, et Haco comes, cum navibus ducentis armata manu repletis. Et in portu expectantes per aliquod tempus, cum audissent de fautoribus suis quod factum fuerat, obliquatis velis ad Flandriam navigarunt, cum Willelmo rege congregati non Rog. Wend. audentes; et ab ipsa prædam non modicam extorserunt. ii. 16.
- Arrival of the Danes, who afterwards land in Flanders.**
- Death of queen Edith. 18 Dec.

*Weltheofus comes decapitatur.*

- A.D. 1075. Anno Domini M<sup>o</sup>.LXX<sup>o</sup>VO. rex W[illelmus] præcepit Rog. Wend. Earl Weltheofum comitem in Wintonia decollari, et extra ciuitatem in bivio sepeliri; sed processu temporis corpus ejus de terra levatur, et sepeliendum honorifice Croilandiam deportatur. Rex deinde ad Armoricanam<sup>2</sup> ii. 16.
- William goes to Britanny.**
- His daughter Cecily becomes a nun at Féeamp.
- Robert, son of William, solicits aid

<sup>1</sup> *obsessi recederent*] On an era- | <sup>2</sup> *Armoricanam*] Armonieam, MS. sure.

unde ejusdem regis auxilio terras patris hostiliter in- A.D. 1075.  
 vadendo pro magna parte vastavit. Rex igitur from the  
 W[illelmus] contra filium suum R[obertum] bellum king of  
 conseruit cruentissimum apud Archenbrai,<sup>1</sup> ubi rex Battle at  
 Rog.Wend. equo pulsus vulneratus est, et Willelmus filius ejus Auehy en  
 ii. 17. graviter læsus, et multi de regis familia interfici- Bray (?).  
 Quapropter rex in mentis amaritudine maledixit Ro- Curse of  
 berto filio suo; unde ipse R[obertus] multipliciter William on  
 maledictionem paternam ante mortem, quam turpem his son  
 subiit, in multis agendis evidenter est expertus. Et Robert.  
 tunc pater abstulit ei Normanniam, sed moriturus, ad  
 instantiam circumstantium, quia cruce signabatur vel  
 fol. 12 a. in proximo pro patre signandus erat, eam ei restituit.<sup>2</sup>  
 Sed<sup>3</sup> hæc in sequentibus evenisse intelligantur.

*Qualiter Dunelmensis episcopus imperfectus est.*

Rog.Wend. Eodem tempore<sup>4</sup> Walcherus, Dunelmensis episcopus, Murder of  
 ii. 17. contra religionem pontificalem curis se admiscens secu- Waleher,  
 laribus, a Willelmo emit comitatum Northanbriæ;<sup>5</sup> et Durham.  
 vicecomitis agens vices, pauperum substantiam immise-  
 ricorditer emunxit.<sup>6</sup> Unde comprovinciales, inito se-  
 cretissimo consilio, convenientes decreverunt unaniimiter,  
 ut ad placita comitatus occulte armati accedentes, sibi

<sup>1</sup> *Archenbrai*] Gerberai, W. and A. C. D. F., and all the early historians, who place the occurrence under the year 1079. It is difficult to account for the variation, unless on the supposition that Matthew Paris had obtained more precise information on the subject. The spot here indicated appears to be *Auchy en Bray*, situated about six miles south-west of Gerberai.

<sup>2</sup> *in multis . . . restituit*] This passage has been added by Matthew

Paris to the text at the bottom of fol. 11 b, and the words which follow, *Sed . . . intelligantur*, are written over an erasure.

<sup>3</sup> *Sed*] Set, MS. throughout.

<sup>4</sup> He was killed 14 May 1080. Sax. Chron., p. 351, and Flor. Wore. ii. 13.

<sup>5</sup> *Northanbriæ*] Northumbriæ, W. B. C. D. F. In the upper margin of the MS. is written, "Nota obprobrium Northanhimbrorum."

<sup>6</sup> *emunxit*] emunesit, MS.

A.D. 1075. constanter de multis illatis injuriis justitiam exhiberi postularent. Quod si nollet episcopus, ad ultionem convolarent, non episcopum sed vicecomitem ac tiranum invasuri. Cumque queruli coram episcopo cito post convenissent,<sup>1</sup> mitigationem huiniliter deprecantes, episcopus torvo vultu respondit, quod nullam eis justitiam exhiberet, antequam quadringentas<sup>2</sup> libras probatae monetæ sibi numerassent. Optenta igitur licentia Rog.Wend. ut possent super hoc habere tractatum, unus eorum, cuius arbitrium omnes expectabant, patria lingua insibilans dixit, "Sort red, god red; slea we þe bissop!"  
ii. 18.  
Non enim concessum fuit diffusum eis tractare consilium. Irruerunt omnes ideo unanimiter in episcopum et ipsum interemerunt, et cum ipso homines circiter centum, eductos pecuniam argumentose a similibus extorquere. Hoc actum est juxta flumen Thyne, ubi dicta placita cruenta præsente episcopo tenebantur.

### *Terra-motus evenit.<sup>3</sup>*

A.D. 1076. Anno Domini M<sup>o</sup>.LXX<sup>o</sup>VI<sup>o</sup>. rex Willelmus coepit. Oppression multiformiter nobiles Anglorum opprimere, pecuniam. of the English by extorquendo, terris et possessionibus antiquis spoliando, Normannos et Francos et alios alienigenas ex spoliis eorum saginando; unde quadam die laqueos occultos, in quos episcopus decidit Dumelmensis, sibi paratos vix<sup>4</sup> evasit. Eodem quoque anno, ut elementorum commotio hominum perturbationi concordaret, vi<sup>o</sup>. kalendas Aprilis terra tremuit, gelu quoque durissimum.

<sup>1</sup> *convenissent*] convenient, MS.

agree with the text, but only for this year.

<sup>2</sup> *quadringentas*] quadringintas, MS.

<sup>4</sup> *sibi paratos vix*] On an erasure.

<sup>3</sup> The MS. F. here first begins to

- eam a kalendis Novembris usque ad medium Quadra- A.D. 1076.
- gesimæ<sup>1</sup> perdurans constrinxit, adeo ut glacies mola- Earth-
- rem<sup>2</sup> excederet spissitudinem. quake.  
27 March.

*Paulus creatur in abbatem Sancti Albani.*

Cf. Rog. Anno Domini M<sup>o</sup>.LXX<sup>o</sup>VII<sup>o</sup>. Paulus, monachus Cado- A.D. 1077.  
 Wend. ii. 18. mensis, archiepiscopi Cantuariensis Lamfranci nepos, Paul, monk  
 of Caen,  
 immo aliquorum relationibus consanguinitate propin- chosen  
 quior, ex quo a conventu Sancti Albani comperta fuisset abbat of St.  
 ejus religio et peritia, creatus est<sup>3</sup> in ejusdem domus Alban's.  
 abbatem. Cujus promotio multum placuit archiepiscopo,  
 quam et ipse, ut prætactum<sup>4</sup> est, creditur procurasse.  
 Iste igitur Paulus Neuster natione, prudens, facundus,  
 et dapsilis, regi et archiepiscopo L[anfranco] et omni-  
 bus Angliæ magnatibus, ratione sanguinis et patriæ,  
 extitit amicissimus et conformis. Iste, renovata ec-  
 clesia et officinis quamplurimis eleganter constructis,  
 librisque nobilibus conscriptis, ordinem monasticum<sup>5</sup>  
 feliciter reformavit, et consuetudines approbatas ceno-  
 biorum ultramarinorum in claustro Sancti Albani in-  
 violabiliter observari constituit, necnon et multis pos-  
 sessionibus nobilibus ampliavit; unde usque hodie tam  
 in spiritualibus quam temporalibus honoribus ampliatur  
 et prosperatur ecclesia memorata. Hujus autem gesta  
 si quis desiderat perscrutari, librum de Gestis Abba-

R. Wend. . tum Sancti Albani intueatur. Eodemque anno Herle- Death of  
 ii. 19. winus, abbas Becci primus, felicem animam suo red- Herlewin,  
 didit Creatori. Quo etiam anno, die Palmarum, circa abbat of  
 horam sextam, cœlo existente sereno, stella ingens Bec.  
 apparuit prope solem. 9 April. A large star appears  
 near the sun.

<sup>1</sup> *Quadragesimæ*] xl<sup>e</sup>, MS., here and elsewhere.

the text. The phrase is repeated  
sub anno 1093, p. 44.

<sup>3</sup> *est*] Interlined.

<sup>2</sup> *molarem*] In the margin is added  
vel [mola]rum, but E. agrees with

<sup>4</sup> *prætactum*] protactum, MS.

<sup>5</sup> *monasticum*] monastichum, MS.

*De scismate<sup>1</sup> gravi inter papam et imperatorem.*

A.D. 1077. Eodemque anno Henricus imperator, collecto War- Rog.Wend.  
 Schism maciae xxiiii<sup>or</sup>. episcoporum et multorum concilio prin- ii. 19.  
 between the pope and emperor. cipum, decerni jubet, omnia decreta et facta Gregorii  
 papæ, qui prius Hildebrandus dicebatur, debere irritari. Ibique omne concilium, præter paucos, Hildebrandum  
 abjuravit. Hildebrandus e contra excommunicavit imperatorem, sub hoc optentu, ut primates regni imperatori excommunicato contradicant. A sententia igitur excommunicationis relaxatis principibus, ipsuni imperatorem sub falsa pace absolvit. Quo facto, omnes qui prius Hildebrandum abjuraverant, imperatorem abjurarunt, et Radulphum, Burgundiæ ducem, super se regem statuerunt; missa ei corona a papa, cui erat inscriptum, "Petrica dedit Petro, Petrus diadema Radulpho." Hunc igitur Sigefridus, Maguntiæ archiepiscopus, in regem benedixit; et, facta a Maguntiniis Rog.Wend.  
 Radulph, duke of Burgundy, elected king of Germany. contra eos seditione, Radulphus cum archiepiscopo noctu ii. 20.  
 aufugit. Hildebrandus omnes imperatori adversantes absolvit. Imperator tamen, Alpium aditibus contra se inunitis, ubique omnibus eorum frustratis insidiis, per Aquileiam Radulphum hostiliter aggressus, in fugam compulit, et, iterata expeditione, Suaviam devastavit.

*Ecclesia Becci dedicatur.*

A.D. 1078. Anno Domini m<sup>o</sup>.lxx<sup>o</sup>viii<sup>io</sup>. ecclesia Becci cum max- Rog.Wend.  
 Dedication ima sollempnitate dedicata est in honorem beatæ Mariæ ii. 20.  
 of the church of Bee. Virginis ab archiepiscopo Cantuariensi Lamfranco; cuius operis ipse post abbatem Herlewinum primum in fundamento lapidem projicit, et per Gunzonem mo- nachum resuscitatum fundamentum est ampliatum.<sup>2</sup>.

<sup>1</sup> *scismate*] cismate, MS.<sup>2</sup> *et per . . . ampliatum*] Added in marg.

Hujus quoque autenticae ecclesiæ consuetudines claus- A.D. 1078.  
 trales prosequitur claustrum ecclesiæ Beati Albani,  
 martiris Angliæ primitivi.<sup>1</sup>

*Walenses subjugantur.*

Rog.Wend. Anno Domini M<sup>o</sup>.LXXX<sup>o</sup>IX. rex Willelmus in Walliam A.D. 1079.  
 ii. 20. duxit exercitum, et eam sibi potenter subjugavit ; et a Subjection  
 regulis illarum partium homagia<sup>2</sup> et fidelitates accepit. of Wales.  
 Odonem quoque, fratrem suum, de proditione accu- Imprison-  
 fol. 12 b. satum<sup>3</sup> cepit, et incarcерari praeccepit. Eodem anno<sup>4</sup> ment of  
 Turstinus, abbas Glastoniensis, tres suos monachos sub bishop  
 altari occidi fecit, et xviii. viros ita vulnerari, ut san- Cruelty of  
 guis eorum ab altari super gradus, et a gradibus pro- the abbat  
 fluxit in ecclesiæ pavimentum ; propter quod perpetuo of Glaston-  
 carceri mancipatus, obiit in eodem.<sup>5</sup> Eodemque anno Wibert of  
 imperator Henricus in Pentecosten,<sup>6</sup> in concilio Ma- Ravenna  
 guntiæ habito, Wibertum, Ravennæ urbis episcopum, pope.  
 papam fore designavit. Eodemque anno Antiochia, Antioch  
 caput Syriæ, capitur a paganis, cum tota provincia captured.  
 adjacenti, et aliis regionibus quamplurimis.

*Imperator Henricus multos hostium prostravit.*

Rog.Wend. Anno Domini M<sup>o</sup>.LXXX<sup>o</sup>. Hildebrandus papa, qui et A.D. 1080.  
 ii. 21. Gregorius, quasi sibi divinitus esset revelatum, praedixit False pro-  
 falsum regem hoc anno moriturum. Et verum quidem phecy of  
 dixit,<sup>7</sup> sed fefellit eum de falso rege conjectura, secun- pope  
 dum velle suum interpretata super imperatore Gregory  
 Henrico. VII.

<sup>1</sup> *primitivi*] Added on to the text.

in the margin, but is inserted in the text of F.

<sup>2</sup> *homagia*] homogia, MS.

<sup>6</sup> *Pentecosten*] So all the MSS. ; die Pentecostes, Edd., without authority.

<sup>3</sup> *acusatum*] acusatum, MS.

<sup>7</sup> *dixit*] So also E. ; but *praedixit*, W. and A. C. D. F.

<sup>1</sup> *Eodem anno*] Placed by the Sax. Chron. and Flor. Worc. in 1083.

<sup>5</sup> *propter quod... in eodem*] Added

A.D. 1080. Imperator enim Henricus contra Saxones gravi prælio. congreditur, ubi regem falsum, scilicet Radulphum, cum multis Saxoniæ principibus interfecit.

*Factus est terræ-motus.*

A.D. 1081. Anno Domini M<sup>o</sup>.LXXX<sup>o</sup>I<sup>o</sup>. Willelmus, Rothomagensis Rog. Wend. Council archiepiscopus, tenuit concilium apud Lissebonam,<sup>1</sup> ii. 21. held at Lillebonne. præsente rege Willelmo, cum principibus et episcopis multis. Eodemque anno factus est terræ-motus magnus, cum horribili terræ mugitu, prima noctis hora, vi<sup>o</sup>. Earthquake. kalendas Aprilis.

*Marianus Scotus hucusque Cronica sua digessit.*

A.D. 1082. Anno Domini M<sup>o</sup>.LXXX<sup>o</sup>II<sup>o</sup>. Marianus Scotus a Nati- Rog. Wend. vitate Christi Cronica sua [hucusque]<sup>2</sup> ii. 21. Scotus ends his Chronicle. digessit, multarum scripturarum diligentissima facta inspectione, multum laborans, ut errorem de annis Domini corrigeret, qui in ciclo Dionisii invenitur, sicut visu clarum est ; hinc positis annis Domini ab eo secundum ciclum Dionisii altrinsecus, juxta veritatem evangelii.<sup>3</sup>

*Matildis regina obiit.*

A.D. 1083. Anno Domini M<sup>o</sup>.LXXX<sup>o</sup>III<sup>o</sup>. Matildis regina, Baldewini Rog. Wend. Death of queen Matilda. comitis Flandrensis filia, et uxor Willelmi regis An- ii. 21. glorum, diem clausit supremum. Et apud Cadomum in monasterio sanctimonialium, quod et ipsa construxit, honorifice traditur sepulturæ ; matrona admodum nobilis Rog. Wend. ac religiosa, de cuius largiflua liberalitate sancta lætatur ii. 22.

<sup>1</sup> *Lissebonam*] So also in W. A.

C. D. E. F. ; but we should read

*Lillebonam* or *Illebonam*. See Ord.

Vital., vol. ii. p. 315, ed. 8vo, 1840.

<sup>2</sup> Supplied from E. In W. A. C.

D. F., "usque ad hunc annum."

<sup>3</sup> *evangelii*] ewangelii, MS.

ecclesia.<sup>1</sup> Eodemque tempore rex Willelmus misit jus- A.D. 1083.  
 ticiarios per omnes Angliæ comitatus, et inquirere fecit Survey of  
 quot acræ vel jugera terræ uni aratro sufficerent<sup>2</sup> per made, and  
 annum in singulis villis, et quot animalia possent suf- recorded.  
 ficere ad unius hydæ culturam. Fecit etiam inquiri de  
 urbibus, castellis, villis, viciis,<sup>3</sup> fluminibus, paludibus, et  
 silvis, quem censum redderent per annum, et quot  
 milites essent in unoquoque regni comitatu. Quæ  
 omnia in scriptum redacta et Westmonasterium delata,  
 in thesauris regum usque hodie reservantur. Deinde  
 de unoquoque aratro, id est, hyda terræ, totius regni  
 vi. solidos cepit argenti;<sup>4</sup> unde diatim postea cœpit,  
 maledictionibus super caput suum congestis, corpore  
 manifeste deteriorari.

*De scismate<sup>4</sup> inter Romanam ecclesiam et impera-  
 torem.*

Rog. Wend. Anno Domini M<sup>o</sup>.LXXX<sup>o</sup>III<sup>o</sup>. Romani imperatorem Hen- A.D. 1084  
 ii. 22. ricum receperunt,<sup>5</sup> et a papatu abjudicatur eorum judi- Wibert  
 cio Hildebrandus. Cujus loco Wibertus, Ravennensis inthroned  
 urbis archiepiscopus,<sup>6</sup> in sedem apostolicam inthroniza- as pope  
 tur; qui Clemens nominatur.<sup>7</sup> Ac deinde juste omnes Clement  
 Hildebrandum fuisse depositum conclamant, tanquam III.

<sup>1</sup> In the margin is the following addition: “*Nota quod tunc factus est magnus liber qui habitus in thesauro Westmonasterii dicitur Domesdai; et dicitur sic, quia nulli pareit, sicut nec magnus dies iudicii.*” In MS. F. this addition is inserted in the text, with the alteration of *vocatus* for *dicitur*.

<sup>2</sup> *sufficerent*] sufficienter, MS.; and so A. C. D. *pr. m.* E. F. Corrected from W. and D. *sec. m.*

<sup>3</sup> A note is here added in the mar-

gin, “*Hic incœpit manifesta oppres-  
 sio Angliæ.*” In E. similar words  
 are inserted in the text.

<sup>4</sup> *scismate*] cismate, MS.

<sup>5</sup> *recepérunt*] Repeated, and afterwards expuncted.

<sup>6</sup> *archiepiscopus*] episcopus, MS. and F. Corrected from W. and A C. D.

<sup>7</sup> Wibert, antipope, was elected 25 June 1080, and inthroned at Rome, 3 June 1083. Jaffé, pp. 443, 444.

A.D. 1084. læsæ majestatis reum, qui contra imperatorem alium ordinavit. Illis autem, qui contra sentiebant, reclamantibus, asserunt paucorum et laicorum judicio papam amoveri non posse, et, quod gravius est, in loco viventis episcopi non debere alium ordinari. Henricus tamen in imperio constitutus est, et a papa Clemente benedicitur Patricius Romanorum. Eodem quoque anno Cassinensium abbas Desiderius contra Clementem papa Rog. Wend. efficitur,<sup>1</sup> sed cito post moritur dissinteria resolutus. ii. 23.

Desiderius made pope. [Victor III.]

Prince Henry receives knighthood.

William goes to Normandy.

Eodem insuper anno rex Willelmus, in Pentecoste,<sup>2</sup> apud Westmonasterium, Henricum, filium suum juniorum, cingulo donavit militari. Deinde cepit homagia hominum totius Angliæ, et juramentum fidelitatis, cuiuscunque essent feudi vel tenementi. Instillatum<sup>3</sup>, enim erat auribus ejus, quod propter injustas et frequentes exactiones et oppressiones ejus, universitas<sup>4</sup> regni contra ipsum conspiraverat. Extorta igitur maximæ pecuniæ summa de quibus aliquam sophisticè causam poterat invenire, in Normanniam innimeris maledictionibus laqueatus transfretavit.

### *De misera afflictione gentis Anglicanæ.<sup>5</sup>*

A.D. 1085. Anno Domini M<sup>o</sup>.LXXX<sup>o</sup>VO., cum jam voluntatem Do- Rog. Wend. mini super Anglorum gentem Normanni complevissent, ii. 23. nec jam vix aliquis princeps de genere Anglorum superesset in regno, omnesque in mœrem et servitutem redacti fuissent, reboantibus et detestabiliter jurantibus ipsis elatis Normannis, et jam Anglicum.

State of England under the Normans.

<sup>1</sup> Elected in May 1086, and died 16 Sept. 1087. Jaffé, p. 447.

<sup>2</sup> *Pentecoste*] Written at first *Pentecosten*, as in W. A.C. D., but the mark of contraction for *n* afterwards erased. In Edd. *Pentecostes festo*.

<sup>3</sup> In the margin opposite is added, “Eece læsionem sequitur suspicio!”

<sup>4</sup> *universitas*] At first written *universas*, but corrected by the author; and there are similar corrections throughout.

<sup>5</sup> F. agrees with the text throughout this chapter.

vocatum fuisse in obprobrio, cœperunt pullulare<sup>1</sup> in A.D. 1085.  
fol. 13 a. Anglia, Dei indignatione adhuc non quiescente, the-  
lonea iniqua et consuetudines pessimæ, contra regis  
sollempne sacramentum,<sup>2</sup> et quanto magis principes  
obloquebantur de oppressionibus, tanto magis, more  
Egiptiacæ servitutis, opprimebantur. Qui justiciarii  
vocabantur, justitiam persequebantur. Qui cervum ca-  
peret vel capreolum, exoculabatur; nec erat qui patro-  
cinaretur.<sup>3</sup> Amabat enim rex ferus feras, ac si esset  
pater ferarum, humanam postponens caritatem. Unde  
asseritur, quod per triginta et amplius miliaria, ubi  
erat hominum mansio, terra culta et frugifera, ex-  
stirpatis domibus cum pomœriis et hortis,<sup>4</sup> et etiam  
ecclesiis cum cimiteriis, in forestam, vel potius in  
deserta et ferarum lustra, rege jubente, sit redacta.  
Ad castra vero construenda, omnes suos superabat  
antecessores. Armorum et militiae amator fuit in- Character  
comparabilis. Verumtamen pacis amator extitit sin- of William.  
gularis, sitiens sanguinem homicidarum<sup>5</sup> et latronum.  
et ulti scelerum inexorabilis. Acierum dispositor et  
rector prudentissimus, et bellator, quasi esset Marti  
confederatus, fortunatissimus et invictissimus. Unde  
qui diu prudenter Normanniam tanquam jure here-  
ditario suam rexerat, Cenomanniam armis sibi adqui-  
sivit, Britanniam Armoricam<sup>6</sup> subjugavit; in Anglia  
quoque solus regnavit, Scociam et Walliam subegit.  
Omnis sibi rebelles etiam conterminos potenter ac  
prudenter edomuit. Tantaque pax suis regnavit tem-  
poribus, quod puella virguncula auro onusta, indemnis  
et intacta Angliam potuit peragrare.

<sup>1</sup> *pullulare*] Written at first *pul-*  
*lare*, but corr.

<sup>2</sup> *contra . . . sacramentum*] Added  
in marg. Om. F.

<sup>3</sup> *patrocinaretur*] At first written  
*patrocinatur*.

<sup>4</sup> *hortis*] ortis, MS.

<sup>5</sup> *homicidarum*] Written at first  
*homidarum*.

<sup>6</sup> *Armorianam*] Armonicam, MS.,  
and so F.

*Rex Willelmus morti appropinquans debilitatur.*

A.D. 1086. Anno Domini M<sup>o</sup>.LXXX<sup>o</sup>VI<sup>o</sup>. rex Willelmus, quem arma confregerant et curæ arduæ sollicitaverant, jam, ut-pote qui jam senuit, cœpit nimis debilitari et mortis arram cum infirmitatibus præsentire. Et quia<sup>1</sup> mun-

danas ejus ferocitates descriptsimus, ejusdem pia opera non prætereamus. Dapsilis erat, et elemosinarum

mores regis Willelmi Primi. largus distributor. Duo coenobia nobilia fundavit, Rog.Wend. ii. 25.

¶ Nota ejusdem generatiōnem. dotavit, et ditavit; unum in Anglia, in honorem beati Martini, quod Bellum vocavit, pro animabus occisorum in bello conquestus Angliæ, ut prætactum est; aliud in Normannia, apud Cadomum, in honorem sancti Stephani; postea, in Anglia, Selebi.<sup>2</sup> Regina Matildis, ejus uxor, plures ei liberos procreavit, Robertum, Ricardum, Willelmum, et Henricum. Quorum primogenitus<sup>3</sup> Robertus, homo ferus et indomitus, Normanniæ ducatum diu sibi negari moleste ferens, in Ytaliā iratus abiit, ut filia Bonefacii marchionis matrimonialiter sibi copulata, patri fortius adversaretur. Sed hac petitione<sup>4</sup> frustratus, ut prælibatum est, Philippum, Francorum regem, contra patrem suum excitavit. Quare ipsius benedictione et hereditate cassatus, regno Angliæ, Deo justo judge, caruit; immo morte turpi puniri meruit, tam, ut creditur, colesti quam corporali lumine spoliatus.<sup>5</sup> Ricardus, magnificus et bonæ indolis adolescens, primævæ florem juventutis acerba morte<sup>6</sup> prævenit.

Nota quater mortuus est  
Robertus Curtheuse,  
dux scilicet Norman-niæ.

<sup>1</sup> *quia*] qui, MS.

<sup>2</sup> *postea . . . Selebi*] Added in the margin.

<sup>3</sup> The following note occurs on the lower margin: "Pater concesserat primogenita Willelmo Rufo, tum quia cum dux esset genuit ipsum, tum quia justus et fidelis patri. Maledixit autem Roberto, et abstulit primogenita; unde in pluribus locis pro minore nato ae-

cipitur, quia torvus erat et patrem crebro ad iram provocaveret, ita ut alter Esau videretur."

<sup>4</sup> *petitione*] petione, MS.

<sup>5</sup> In the margin is added, "¶ Iste R[obertus] sepultus jacet Gloverniæ, in ecclesia conventuali, in parte australi."

<sup>6</sup> *morte*] So also A. C. D. F., but in W. I. *mors.*

. Tradunt autem in Nova Foresta venantem, letali A.D. 1086.  
 . morbo percussum, ubi redacta fuit patria cum suis ec- *Nota de*  
 . clesiis et incolis in locum venationis, ipsum subito, Deo *alio, scilicet*  
 . irato et ultore, expirasse. Willelmus, qui cæsarie et *Ricardo.*  
 . cognomento<sup>1</sup> Rufus, armorum amore et militiae strenui-  
 . tate, et animi ferocitate inexorabili patrissavit. Hen-  
 . ricus, providus, sed astutus et avarus, patre sic jubente,  
 . quia imbellis, officio clericali est addictus, et in eo bene  
 . ac expedienter profecit; et jam legisperitus effectus est,  
 . diadema Angliae, ut subsequenter dicetur, suscepturus,  
 . Jacob resuscitatus, supplantator redivivus, occupator Daughters  
 Rog. Wend. ambitiosus. Filiæ autem ipsius regis Willelmi quinque of William.  
 ii. 26. erant. Quarum Cecilia Cadomi abbatissa fuit sanctissima. Constantia vero comiti Britanniæ dabatur in conjugium. Adala Stephano, Blesentium comiti, nupta, mulier erat piissima; quæ, viro defuncto, habitum et mores suscepit sanctimonialis, sororis suæ exemplo feliciter et admonitione informata. Quartæ vero filiæ, Haraldo post<sup>2</sup> Anglorum regi promissæ et frustratæ; et quintæ, quæ Andefulso, Galiciæ<sup>3</sup> regi, jurata extitit, nominum prolis<sup>4</sup> non memini.<sup>5</sup> Non enim fructum propagationis fecerunt vel religionis, ut earum nomina præsenti paginæ ad memoriam scribebentur. Rex itaque Willelmus subjectis socialis fuit et humilis; Disposition indomitis et rebellibus inexorabilis et crudelissimus. Diebus singulis missam et horas canonicas cum pertinetiis, et de noctibus matutinas sedulus et devotus, verbaque prædicatorum libenter audivit.

<sup>1</sup> cognomento] Written on an era-  
sure.

W. A. C. D. F. penitus. They all  
read *nomina*.

<sup>2</sup> post] postea, W. E.

<sup>5</sup> non memini] Cf. Ord. Vit. ii.

<sup>3</sup> Galicie] Galacie, MS. and E.

189.

<sup>4</sup> prolis] Added in marg. In

*De statu Romanae ecclesiae.*

- A.D. 1086. Eodemque anno<sup>1</sup> Gregorius papa, qui et Hildebrandus, Rog. Wend. Death of pope Gregory VII. apud Salernum moritur; et moriturus convocatis<sup>2</sup> confessus est se nimis peccasse in occupatione primo, et postea in negligentia<sup>3</sup> curæ pastoralis. Successit ei Clemens,<sup>4</sup> paucis secedens diebus. Et, eo defuncto, Cas- Rog. Wend. Victor III. sinensium abbas Desiderius successit, et Victor nomi- ii. 27. electo pope natur.

*Rex Willelmus, morte imminentे,<sup>5</sup> tres dedit episcopatus.*

- A.D. 1087. Anno Domini M<sup>o</sup>.LXXX<sup>o</sup>VII<sup>o</sup>. rex Willelmus mortis. fol. 13 b. William confers bishopries on his chaplains. infirmitate<sup>6</sup> prægravatus, multorum precibus se,<sup>7</sup> quos religiosos noverat, commendans<sup>8</sup> suis cœpit pie pro- videre. Tribus autem capellanis suis, apud Gloverniam. R. Wend. ii. 27. existens, tres contulit episcopatus; Mauricio Londoniensem, Willelmo Norwicensem, Roberto vero Cestrensem. Eodemque anno obiit dux Apuliae,<sup>9</sup> et successe- Death of the duke of Apulia. runt ei duo filii ejus, Rogerus et Boemundus.

*De Berengario hæretico.*

- Heresy of Berenga- rins. Eodemque tempore Berengarius,<sup>10</sup> Turonensis archi- Rog. Wend. episcopus,<sup>11</sup> prolabitur in hæreticam pravitatem, quæ ii. 27.

<sup>1</sup> Gregory VII. died 25 May 1085. Jaffé, p. 443.

<sup>2</sup> *convocatis*] cardinalibus advocatis, W. A. C. D. F.

<sup>3</sup> *negligentia*] neegligentia, MS.

<sup>4</sup> *Clemens*] This is a mistake, copied from Wendover; but the antipope Clement III. is probably alluded to.

<sup>5</sup> *imminente*] iminente, MS.

<sup>6</sup> *infirmitate*] infirmitate, MS.

<sup>7</sup> *precibus se*] Added in marg.

<sup>8</sup> *commendans*] comendans, MS.

<sup>9</sup> Robert Guiscard. He died 17 July 1085.

<sup>10</sup> *Berengarius*] Berengerus, MS.

<sup>11</sup> *Turonensis archiepiscopus*] Another error, taken from Wendover, and copied into A. C. D. E. F. He was never archbishop of Tours, but archdeacon of Angers. In all probability we should read, with Malmesbury, *Turonensis heresiarcha*, ii. 462.

Rog. Wend. magnam Galliae partem maculavit. Papa vero Leo,<sup>1</sup> qui A.D. 1087.

ii. 28. Victor successit, soliditati ecclesiæ providens, Vercellis concilium statuit contra ipsum B[erengarium], ubi erroris ejus tenebras extersit.

*Inventum est corpus Walwani.*

Rog. Wend. Hoc etiam tempore corpus Walwani, militis præ- Discovery  
ii. 28. . clarissimi, cuius gesta inclita tractatus exigunt diffusos<sup>2</sup> of the body  
. et speciales, in provincia Walliarum in sepulchro inven- of Wal-  
wain.  
tum est. Hic nepos fuit Arthuri, magni Britonum  
. regis, bellator invictissimus, facetus et irreprehensibilis,  
ex ipsius regis sorore. Erat autem sepulchrum ejus  
longitudinem habens xiii. pedum. Regnavit autem in  
. illa parte Britanniæ, largiente eidem principatum rege  
. A[rthuro], avunculo suo, quæ hucusque Galweia nun-  
cupatur; et dicitur ab ipso Galeweia, quasi Walweia,  
. corrupto nomine per antiquitatem.

*De morte Willelmi, Anglorum regis Primi.*

Cf. Rog. Eodem anno rex Anglorum in Normannia moram  
Wend. faciens, per aliquod tempus, ut respiraret, moram paci-  
ii. 28. . fice continuavit. De cuius quiete rex Francorum deri-  
. sorie dixit et satirice, "Rex Anglorum jacet Rothomagi William is  
. more mulierum in puerperio. O quot candelæ, credo derided by  
. centum milia, oblaturus sum pro eo, quando ad the king of  
. ecclesiam perget purificandus!" Quod cum regi  
. Willelmo nunciatum fuisset, iratus respondit, "Juvabo  
. eum de candelis aliquot inveniendis." Et, repentina  
. impetu facto et occulto, multas civitates et vicos Fran-

<sup>1</sup> *Leo*] This is also from Wenvdover, but a grave error, arising from a careless interpretation of the text of Malmesbury. Urban II. succeeded to Victor 12 March 1088. The Council held at Vercelli against

the errors of Berengarius, under pope Leo IX., took place in 1050. See Jaffé, p. 372.

<sup>2</sup> *diffusos*] *disfusos*, MS., after which *tractatus* is repeated again in the margin.

A.D. 1087. corum, spreto corporis periculo, succedit, et multas .  
 He ravages eorum terras ferali exterminio devastavit. Ira igitur .  
 the French territory. corpus suum totum admixta labori et mortis tempus .  
 anticipavit.<sup>1</sup> Auxit etiam ægritudinis molestiam, et . R. Wend.  
 ejus casum acceleravit, quod ejus equus<sup>2</sup> amplam fossam  
 transiliens, interiora ejus dirupit.<sup>3</sup> Resumpto tamen  
 spiritu et assumpto salutis viatico, Normanniam Ro-  
 He disposes berto<sup>4</sup> filio suo, non tamen benivolo corde vel sereno .  
 of his vultu,<sup>5</sup> delegavit, indignum eum reputans regali digni-  
 states and treasure to his sons. tate. Sed nec ipse Robertus ipsum ducatum gratarter .  
 suscepit; verumtamen ut patrem pacaret moriturum, .  
 et solvens maledictionem eidem daret benedictionem,<sup>6</sup> .  
 promisit ei Jerosolimitanam peregrinationem pro ejus .  
 anima magnifice consummare; quod et in posterum .  
 complevit. Willelmo autem Rufo filio suo Angliam, .  
 scilicet conquestum suum, assignavit; supplicans ut .  
 Anglos, quos crudeliter et veluti ingratus male tracta- .  
 verat, mitius confoveret. Possessiones vero maternas .

<sup>1</sup> In the margin opposite is added the following note: "Iste Willelmus, conqueror Angliæ, rex Christianissimus, fundavit ii. cœnobia nobilia, videlicet de Bello, in partibus Angliæ orientalibus, et Selebi, oœ[c]identalibus;" beneath which is written, "Nota peritiam confessoris. Primum fundavit pro victoria optenta, secundum pro eo, quod quendam sibi consanguinitate propinquum veneno occiderit, timens ne ipsum de regno Angliæ supplantaret, vel ducatu, vel utroque, quia strenuissimus fuit. De quo peccato cum se confessus fuisset nullo modo pœnitere vel posse pœnitere, sciscitabatur sanctus episcopus confessor ejus, si doluisset quod hoc non potuit, et si placeret ei pœnitere posse? Respondit, quod multum doluit quod non potuit dolere et dolendo pœnitere, quod ipsum peremit. Episcopus igitur super hoc

exhilaratus,\* confortavit eum, et erexit eum in spem bonam qui desperatus fuerat, et desperans multa mala perpetraverat; et sic in extremis communionem in Christi bonitate confidens accepit." Lower down is added as follows: "Super hunc locum, 'Curremus in odore nnguentorum tuorum' [Cant. i. 3], dicit sanctus, 'Qui se petit trahi, jamjam trahitur.' Hic recitavit episcopus."

<sup>2</sup> *equus*] *equus*, MS.

<sup>3</sup> *dirupit*] *dirrupit*, MS.

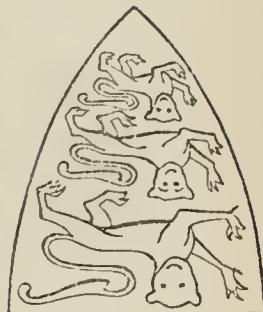
<sup>4</sup> *Roberto*] From this word F. again agrees with the text, but only as far as *obligavit*, p. 36.

<sup>5</sup> *vultu*] After this word, *Normaniam* is repeated in the margin.

<sup>6</sup> *benedictionem*] Before this word *et* has been interlined, and afterwards erased.

\* *exhilaratus*, MS.

. cum thesauris suis impregnabilibus Henrico, quem plus A.D. 1087.  
 . dilexit, relinquens, obnoxius deprecabatur,<sup>1</sup> ut de parte  
 . ejusdem thesauri sufficiente nobile construeret cœnobium  
 . pro animæ suæ redempzione. Multum enim se confite-  
 . batur peccasse in Anglorum nobilitatem,<sup>2</sup> quos falsis  
 . decepit pollicitis. Et hoc satis competenter complevit His death  
 Rog. Wend. Henricus apud Radingum. Rite igitur ordinatis rebus and burial.  
 ii. 30. universis, viii<sup>o</sup>. idus Septembris viam universæ carnis 6 Sept.  
 est ingressus, anno regni sui xxii<sup>o</sup>, ducatus vero quin-  
 quagesimo secundo, vitæ suæ lix<sup>o</sup>.<sup>3</sup> Corpus autem Ca-  
 domum deportabatur tumulandum. Robertus statim  
 recessit, insidias fratri primogenito paratus. Willel-  
 mus vero Rufus, antequam pater sepeliretur, in Ang-  
 liam transfretavit, utilius<sup>4</sup> reputans regnum sibi firmare  
 vivorum, quam mortui cujuscunque exequiis interesse.  
 Solus Henricus ex omnibus liberis regis sepulturæ in-  
 terfuit,<sup>5</sup> centum offerens libras argenti.



*Willelmus Rufus de facili sibi Angliam inclinavit.*

Cf. Rog. . Willelmus vero, cognomento Rufus,<sup>6</sup> filius regis Wil- William  
 Wend. . lemi Primi, veniens in Angliam, consilio et auxilio Rufus  
 ii. 30, 31. Lamfranci, Cantuariensis archiepiscopi, qui ipsum a comes to  
 . primis annis nutriverat et militem fecerat, sine moroso England,  
 . dispendio Angliam sibi conciliatam inclinavit; nec and is  
 . tamen totam. Sed ut negotium regis optatum cito crowned.  
 . sortiretur effectum, ipsum die sanctorum Cosmæ et  
 . Damiani, etsi cum sollempnitate mutilata, coronavit;  
 . veraciter promittentem ut Angliam cum modestia gu-  
 . bernaret, leges sancti regis Edwardi servaturus,<sup>7</sup> et

<sup>1</sup> *depreceabatur*] At first written *deprecatur*.

written after this word, and then underscored for omission.

<sup>2</sup> *nobilitatem*] nobilitate, MS., and so F.

<sup>5</sup> *interfuit*] Added in marg.

<sup>3</sup> In the margin is drawn the shield of William, reversed, with a sceptre and crown also reversed.

<sup>6</sup> In the lower margin the same royal shield is depicted, with a crown below.

<sup>4</sup> *utilius*] By error *si repu* is

<sup>7</sup> *leges . . . servaturus*] Added in marg., but is in the text of F.

A.D. 1087. Anglos præcipue tractaret reverenter. Veruntamen .  
 27 Sept. quamplures Anglorum nobiles formidantes, et augu- .  
 Many nobles are rantes ipsum velle patrissare, noluerunt ei obsecundare, .  
 opposed to him, in sed elegerunt potius Roberto, militi strenuissimo, mili- . fol. 14 a.  
 favour of tare, et tanquam primogenito ipsi in regem creato fa- .  
 Robert. mulari, quam fallacibus promissis Rufi fidem adhibere. .  
 Sed Lamfrancus hæc sedavit, bona promittens.<sup>1</sup> .

*Rex Willelmus Secundus in suos desertores desævit.*

[A.D. Videns igitur novus rex Willelmus Rufus infinitos Rog. Wend.  
 1088.] regni proceres contra se conspirantes, usus Lamfranci .  
 Efforts of archiepiscopi consilio, Anglorum nobiliores ac fortiores .  
 William II. to invitando secretius convocavit; quibus bonas leges et .  
 conciliate the pristinæ libertatis consuetudines in districto veritatis .  
 nobles. examine jurans, super evangelia<sup>2</sup> pollicens, omnes ipsos .  
 nimis credulos ad fidele ejus servitium obligavit. Nec .  
 minori astutia Rogerum de Monte-Gomerico, ut sibi .  
 equitaret adulando circumvenit; dicens libenter<sup>3</sup> regno .  
 cessurum, si sibi et aliis, quos tutores sui pater [reli- .  
 querat],<sup>4</sup> utile complaceret.<sup>5</sup> Quid plura? Lamfranci .  
 archiepiscopi edoctus prudentia, omnes Anglos, quos .  
 insuperabiles, si fuissent inseparabiles, cognoverat,<sup>6</sup> .  
 talibus sermocinationibus et promissis dissipatos et .  
 enervatos sibi conciliavit. Unde in constanter ob- .  
 stantes, qui pauci remanserunt, lora dirigens hostiliter .  
 et vexilla, eorum conamina, universitatis adjutus .  
 viribus, quantocius annullavit; quos omnibus bonis .  
 spoliavit.

<sup>1</sup> *Sed Lamfrancus . . . promittens]*  
Added in marg., and is in text of F.

<sup>2</sup> *evangelia]* euangelia, MS.  
<sup>3</sup> *libenter]* se libenter, W. A. C. D. F.

<sup>4</sup> *reliquerat]* Supplied from W. A. C. D. F.

<sup>5</sup> *complaceret]* The text reads *judicarent*, after which is a mark of caret, and *complaceret* added in the margin; but both verbs cannot remain. The MSS. A. C. D. F. read with W., *utile videretur*. Cf. Malmesb. ii. 488.

<sup>6</sup> *cognoverat]* congnoverat. MS.

*Urbanus in papam creatur.*

Rog. Wend. Anno Domini M<sup>o</sup>.LXXX<sup>o</sup>IX<sup>o</sup>. Odo ex monacho Cluni- A.D. 1089.  
 ii. 35. acensi episcopus Hostiensis effectus, contra Clementem Election  
 papam et Henricum imperatorem fit papa, et Urbanus of pope  
 vocatur.<sup>1</sup> Cujus temporibus quidam Alemanniæ comes Urban II.  
 facinorosus, et indefessus Henrici imperatoris persecutor, Legend of  
 mira Dei ultione a muribus,<sup>2</sup> a quibus nullo modo a German  
 potuit defendi, corrosus interiit. Verumtamen tradunt count eaten  
 naturales, quod qui a<sup>3</sup> bestia, quæ uncea dicitur, by rats.  
 mordetur,<sup>4</sup> quæ est lea notha, ab omnibus muribus,  
 quæ ratones vulgariter dicuntur, qui in vicinia sunt,  
 impetratur, mordetur, et perimitur. Qui casus forte  
 accidit comiti memorato.

*De morte Lanfranci archiepiscopi.*

Rog. Wend. Eodem anno obiit Lamfrancus, Cantuariensis archi- Death of  
 ii. 36. episcopus, qui, inter cetera pietatis opera magnifica, archbishop  
 ecclesiam Christi Cantuariensem renovavit, officinasque Lanfranc.  
 monachorum fabricavit; dignitates quoque ecclesiæ suæ,  
 antecessorum suorum negligentia deciduas, reformavit; ¶ *Nota*  
 terras quamplures alienatas et redditus strenue revo- *Lamfranci*  
 cavit, unde xxv. maneria monasterio suo restituit. *mores et*  
 Xenodochia duo extra civitatem, quæ vulgariter *actus.*  
 hospitalia vocamus, construxit, et de suo conquestu  
 eisdem redditus sufficienter assignavit. Abbatiam  
 Sancti Albani, mediante Paulo abate, et in ordine  
 monastico reformavit et aedificiis renovavit. Unde  
 usque nunc in ejusdem ecclesiæ claustro et conventu  
 tam Lamfranci quam Anselmi vigent indelebiliter  
 statuta et consuetudines approbatæ, adjectæ regulæ  
 beati Benedicti. Angliam quoque, quotienscumque rex

<sup>1</sup> Urban II. was elected 12 March 1088. Jaffé, p. 449.

<sup>2</sup> *muribus*] In the margin is added, “quos ratos dicimus.”

<sup>3</sup> *a*] ab, MS.

<sup>4</sup> *dicitur, mordetur*] At first written *mordetur dicitur*, but marked to be transposed.

A.D. 1089. absens fuerat, adeo strenue, adeo pacifice custodivit et .  
 rexit, ut inter milites pax floreret<sup>1</sup> et justitia, et .  
 inter prælatos et clericos honestas et religio felix sus- .  
 ciperent incrementum. Lectioni vigilanter et orationi .  
 intendebat, unde libros nonnullos tam Veteris quam .  
 Novi Testamenti, scriptorum ignorantia corruptos, cor- .  
 rectit; cujus emendationis luce Anglorum et Francorum .  
 ecclesia se gaudet illustrari. Mores, habitum, aut .  
 gestum monasticum, propter pontificalem dignitatem, .  
 nec in minimo permutavit. Nunquam humilitatis .  
 metas propter literaturæ eminentiam manifeste trans- .  
 gressus est, nisi in depositione beati Wlstani,<sup>2</sup> episcopi .  
 Wigorniensis. Quod tamen Dei providentia sic fieri .  
 permisit, ut sic scilicet sancti viri simplicis sanctitas .  
 patesceret serenata, sicut in Historia de ipso sancto .  
 S. Wulstan. scripta declarat<sup>3</sup> manifeste.

*Willelmus Secundus jam de rege factus est tirannus.<sup>4</sup>*

Tyranny of William II. Defuncto igitur piæ memoriae archiepiscopo Lam- Cf. Rog. Wend. ii. 37.  
 franco, rex Willelmus II. jam sibi visus est<sup>5</sup> solus in .  
 Anglia regnare, ex quo Lanfrancus<sup>6</sup> impetus sui lora .  
 non retraxit. Monasteria igitur fere totius Angliae in  
 manu sua pastoribus suis viduata cepit, et perverse hoc .  
 nomine *manu*, id est, protectione et defensione abutens, .  
 omnia gravi depopulatione vastabat, et ad firmam .  
 duris conditionibus commendabat. Ut quod rex omisit .  
 abradere, alii excoriarent; et quos rex omisit excoriare, .  
 alii immisericorditer eviscerarent; non recolens scriptum, .  
 “*Omnia sunt principis tuitio, non depopulatione.*”<sup>7</sup> .

<sup>1</sup> *floreret*] At first written *floreſt*, but corr.

tamen gravem postea peregit Lan- francus pœnitentiam.” Om. F.

<sup>2</sup> *Wlstanī*] Wlstanū, MS.

<sup>4</sup> *tirannus*] tiranis, MS.

<sup>3</sup> *declarat*] We should read *decla-*  
*ratur*, or omit *in* before *Historia*.  
 In the margin is here added: “*Iude*

<sup>5</sup> *est*] Interlined.

<sup>6</sup> *quo Lanfrancus*] On an erasure.

<sup>7</sup> *non . . . depopulatione*] Added in marg. Om. F.

*Rex Uuillelmus II. et dux concordati sunt.*

Rog.Wend. Anno Domini M<sup>o</sup>.XCO. rex Willelmus II. contra Ro- A.D. 1090.  
 ii. 37. bertum fratrem suum arma movens et vexilla, castella War in  
 Sancti Walerici et Albemarliae cepit violenter; milites Normandy,  
 quoque suos intromittens, terram fraternam cœpit de- and recon-  
 vastare. Tandem amicorum intermeantium solertia<sup>1</sup> and Robert.  
 diligentissima, qui ipsis dixerunt, "Absit, ne Franci  
 fraternalis acies, alternaque regna profanis<sup>2</sup> decertata  
 odiis, derideant subsannantes," elaboratum est,<sup>3</sup> ut  
 in talem concordiam convenirent, anno tamen illo  
 fere elapso: resignatis castris et quiete clamatis, quæ  
 rex ceperat et dux obsederat, iterato redderentur<sup>4</sup> ipsi  
 regi, idemque<sup>5</sup> rex efficaciter juvaret fraterno affectu  
 ipsum ducem ad omnia quæ pater ejus habuerat, præter  
 Angliam, conquirenda. Franci enim eo tempore multa  
 fol. 14 b. super ducem occupaverant. Statuerunt etiam, ut si  
 quis eorum prius obiret absque herede, superstes fieret  
 heres illius. Quod pactum juraverunt xii. principes  
 vice regis, et xii. barones vice ducis.

*Rex Scotorum Malcolmus homagium fecit regi Wil-  
 lelmo II.<sup>6</sup>*

Rex autem Scotorum Malcolmus, auditio quod pax Submission  
 inter fratres reformaretur, cœpit vehementer improbos of Malcolm,  
 impetus Willelmi regis, immo jam tiranni, formidare. king of  
 Festinavit igitur eidem Willelmo antequam extermini Scots, and  
 exterminio homage to William.

<sup>1</sup> *solertia*] *sollertia*, MS.

<sup>4</sup> *redderentur*] Added on to the text.

<sup>2</sup> *profanis*] *prophanis*, MS.

<sup>5</sup> *idemque*] At first written *idem*.

<sup>3</sup> *est*] After this word is interlined *igitur*, and the paragraph marked to begin with *Elaboratum*; but this is evidently an error.

<sup>6</sup> In the margin opposite is added: "Item super hoc respice acta anni M<sup>o</sup>.C<sup>o</sup>LXXV<sup>i</sup>. in sequentibus." This chapter is copied into F., but inserted under 1092.

A.D. 1090. nium in Scocia inchoaret, quæ pacis erant suppliciter postulare. Erat enim idem rex M[alcolmus], licet armis strenuissimus, vir circumspectus et modestus, et omni præditus sanctitate. Veniens igitur ad regem Angliæ Willelmum, humilitate sua regis flexit ferocitatem; asserens se nullum hostium suorum receptasse<sup>1</sup> vel recepturum fore, nisi tali intentione, ut ipsos dominum suum recognoscentes, regi, persuasionibus suis medianibus, redderet pacificatos et fideliores. Mitigato igitur regi Willelmo rex Scotorum M[alcolmus] fecit homagium et fidelitatem; et sic magnis honoratus donativis, ad propria cum prosperitate remeavit.

*Nota regis Scotorum Malcolmi magnificentiam.*

Magna-nimity of Malcolm. Quoniam de rege Scotorum Malcolmo tractatum est, Cf. Rog. non arbitror alienum a materia ejus quandam enucleare. Wend. ii. 37. magnificantiam. Contigit ut quidam nobiles contra ipsum in regno suo conspirassent, ita ut in necem suam occulte conjurassent, quodam proditore, qui omnibus videretur major ac fortior, machinante; qui se etiam jactabat regem perempturum. Hæc autem omnia, cum per fideles suos regi innotuissent, convocatis cum ipso proditore sociis et venatoribus, it venatum. Et cum ad quendam saltum venissent, omnibus semotis ex industria sociis et venatoribus, excepto solo proditore, rex ait, "Ecce, ego et tu mecum, solus cum solo,<sup>2</sup> similibus equis et armis vecti et communiti. Nullius nostrum melior conditio. Si igitur velis, audes et vales, ensibus eductis fortunam duelli experiamur; et redde hostibus meis, complicibus tuis,<sup>3</sup> me quem promisisti detruncatum. Si enim me occidendum speras, quando melius? quando secretius? quando virilius?

<sup>1</sup> *receptasse*] At first written *se* | <sup>2</sup> *solo*] Added in marg.  
*receptasse*, but *se* erased. | <sup>3</sup> *tuis*] Interlined.

Si venenum paras, hoc muliercularum ; si dormientem A.D. 1090.  
invadere proponis, hoc sicariorum et jugulatorum est.  
Age, igitur,<sup>1</sup> quod viri est et militis, et solus cum  
solo dimica, dum soli sumus, confidenter.” Miles igitur  
confusus hiis verbis, quasi fulmine repercussus, ex equo  
in terram corruit, projectoque gladio ad pedes regis  
cadens, cum mœrore veniam de concepta temeritate et  
proditione postulans, quod petiit, impetravit.

*De monachis Sancti Albani apud Thinemue primo  
introductis.*

Rog. Wend. Circa dies illos Robertus de Molbraio, Northambren- Grant of  
ii. 39. sis comes, vir quidem Deo devotus, volens, divina Tyne-  
inspiratione tactus, ecclesiam Beati Oswini, regis et mouth priory to  
martiris, de Thynemue, jamdudum [desolatam]<sup>2</sup> in the abbey of  
temporalibus et spiritualibus restaurare, atque ibidem St. Alban's.  
Deo et sancto martiri Oswino monachos servituros  
ponere, consilio amicorum suorum Paulum, abbatem<sup>3</sup>  
Sancti Albani, super hoc convenit, petens obnoxius ut  
illuc de domo sua, quam de omnibus Angliae quasi  
ordinatissimam præelegit, aliquos de monachis desti-  
naret; promisitque omnia victui et vestitui eorum  
necessaria se ipsis abundantanter<sup>4</sup> et honorifice minis-  
traturum. Cujus petitioni memoratus abbas adquies-  
cens, quosdam illuc de fratribus destinavit. Quibus  
comes in maneriis, ecclesiis, redditibus, piscariis, mo-  
lendinis et rebus aliis cum sufficienter providisset, et  
cartis prædicta omnia ab omni seculari servitio soluta  
et penitus libera confirmasset, dedit prædicto abbati  
Paulo ejusque successoribus, et ecclesiæ Beati Albani,  
Angliae prothomartiris, ecclesiam de Thynemue, cum  
omnibus pertinentiis suis, pro salute sua et antecesso-

<sup>1</sup> igitur] Repeated, but expuncted.

<sup>2</sup> desolatam] Supplied from W.A.

C. D. F.

<sup>3</sup> abbatem] Added in marg.

<sup>4</sup> abundantanter] habundanter, MS.

A.D. 1090. rum suorum æternaliter possidendam; ita quidem, ut abbates Sancti Albani, qui pro tempore fuerint, cum consilio ejusdem loci conventus, liberam habeant dispositionem priorum et monachorum, tam in illis ponendis quam removendis, sicut viderint expedire.

*De morte Remigii, Lincolniensis episcopi.*

A.D. 1091. Anno Domini M<sup>o</sup>.XC<sup>o</sup>I<sup>o</sup>. Remigius, Lincolniensis an- Rog.Wend.  
Death of tistes, cum ecclesiam suam jam perfectam dedicare ii. 40.  
Remigius, bishop of disposeret, rege præsente et episcopis multis, Thomas,  
Lincoln, and con- Eboracensis archiepiscopus, resistendo contradixit, affir-  
seeration of his mans eam in parrochia sua esse constructam. Unde  
church. pro appellatione ab archiepiscopo interposita, necnon  
pro morte Remigii continuo subsecuta,<sup>1</sup> est solemnitas  
illa dilata. Postea vero rex Willelmus, cuius consilio  
et auxilio ecclesia illa fuit a primo loco suo remota, et  
quam pro anima patris sui multis ditaverat possessio-  
nibus, procuravit ut ea magnifice consummaretur.<sup>2</sup>

*Rex Willelmus II. infirmatus<sup>3</sup> emendationem  
promittit.*

A.D. 1092. Anno Domini M<sup>o</sup>.XC<sup>o</sup>II<sup>o</sup>. rex Willelmus] apud Glo- Rog.Wend.  
Illness of verniam jacebat in Quadragesima graviter infirmatus. ii. 41.  
William II. and promise of Unde secundum illud Psalmographi,<sup>4</sup> “ Imple facies  
reform. ignominia, et quærerent nomen tuum, Domine,”<sup>5</sup> corde<sup>6</sup>.  
ad horam contritus præ mortis timore, se pravas regni  
leges amoturum et bonas, prout ante promiserat, sub-  
rogaturum, vovit et firmiter promisit. Qua de causa  
dedit archipræsulatum Cantuariensem Anselmo Bec-

<sup>1</sup> He died 7 May 1092. See Flor. Worc. ii. p. 30.

<sup>2</sup> Here is added in the margin,  
“ Nota quod hoc bonum fecit rex  
Willelmus II.”

<sup>3</sup> *infirmatus*] infirmatus, MS.

<sup>4</sup> Ps. lxxxii. 17.

<sup>5</sup> *et . . . Domine*] Added in marg.

<sup>6</sup> *corde*] Repeated superfluously  
after *contritus*.

fol. 15 a. censi,<sup>1</sup> viro sancto ac venerabili, et eleganter literato ; A.D. 1092.  
 atque Roberto, cognomento<sup>2</sup> Bloet, cancellario suo, epi- Anselm,  
 scopatum contulit Lincolniensem. Rex tamen Deo in- abbat of  
 gratus, postquam convaluit, solito se exhibuit tam no- Bec, made  
 bilibus regni quam praelatis deteriorem. Et sic iram archbishop  
 Dei diatim super caput ejus, prout in ejus morte pa- of Canterbury  
 tenter claruit, coacervavit. Rob. Bloet,  
 bishop of Lincoln.

*Moritur rex Scotorum Malcolmus.<sup>3</sup>*

Cf. Rog. Eodem anno pius rex Scotorum Malcolmus, cuius Deaths of  
 Wend. actus in benedictione vivunt immortales, cum non Malcolm,  
 ii. 42. immerito contra tirannum Willelmum II.<sup>4</sup> regem sibi king of  
 injuriantem guerram movisset, interceptus est subito, Scots, and  
 et, positis insidiis, interemptus. Quod ut audivit queen  
 regina ejus Margareta, quæ tunc forte infirmabatur, Margaret.  
 dupli contritione sauciata, ait orans ad Dominum,  
 " Domine mi, satis est quod vixi, tolle animam meam." Et faciens sacerdoti de omnibus plene confessionem,  
 accepto salutis viatico, animam felicem Deo statim  
 destinavit. Interfectus est autem cum memorato rege  
 Malcolmo ejusdem regis M[alcolm] filius, et<sup>5</sup> heres  
 si supervixisset, et hominum numerosa multitudo, quæ  
 omnia sanctæ reginæ letalem dolorem adauxerunt. Tunc  
 Scotorum nobiles elegerunt Duncanum,<sup>6</sup> Malcolmi regis Election of  
 fratrem, in regem. Sed Duncanus, filius Malcolmi, qui Donald as  
 obses erat in curia regis Willelmi II., auxilio ejus fre- king, who  
 tus superveniens, patruum suum aufugavit, et post pa- is driven  
 Duncan.

<sup>1</sup> *Beccensi*] abbati Beccensi, W. A. C. D. F.

<sup>2</sup> *cognomento*] cognomento, MS.

<sup>3</sup> *Scotorum Malcolmus*] At first, *Malcolmus Scotorum*, but marked to be transposed. From this chapter MS. F. begins to agree closely with the text here printed.

<sup>4</sup> *II.*] Rufus, F., here and elsewhere.

<sup>5</sup> *et*] Written at first *ejus*.

<sup>6</sup> *Duncanum*] This is an error, but repeated in E. and F. We should read *Duvenal*, with W. A. C. D., as confirmed by the Sax. Chron., Flor. Worc., and Simeon of Durham.

A.D. 1092. trem suum regnavit.<sup>1</sup> Eodemque anno Johannes, præsul  
 The see Wellensis, natione Turonicus, assensu Willelmi regis,  
 of Wells transferred muneribus intervenientibus, transtulit in Bathoniam sui  
 to Bath. cathedralm præsulatus.

*De restauracione civitatis Karleolensis.*

A.D. 1093 Anno Domini M<sup>o</sup>.XC<sup>o</sup>III<sup>o</sup>. rex Anglorum Willelmus II. Rog. Wend.  
 Carlisle is reædificavit civitatem Karleoli, jam per annos trecentos  
 rebuilt. desolatione Danica desolatam ; et ex australibus Angliae  
 Inundations and great frost. finibus illuc habitatores transmisit. Eodem anno tanta Rog. Wend.  
 erat pluviarum inundatio, quantam nemo se meminit  
 prævidisse ; deinde terra cum fluminibus maximis adeo  
 induruit congelata, ut bigis et plaustris flumina trans- .  
 euntibus pontes præbuerunt glaciales, qui spissitudinem .  
 molarem sunt transgressi.<sup>2</sup> Resoluto tandem gelu, aqua- .  
 rum crustæ superficiales conglomeratæ molendina, cum .  
 pontibus et vivariis et domibus conterminis, dampnose<sup>3</sup> .  
 Meteor in the sky, 1 Aug., and subsequent famine. nimis confregerunt. Eodemque anno baculus igneus a  
 meridie usque ad aquilonem extensus in cœlo visus est,  
 kalendis Augusti ; et subsecuta est famæ validissima,  
 et hominum tam generalis tabes et mortalitas, ut vivi  
 tædio afficerentur ut mortuos sepelirent. Per idem  
 tempus rex Willelmus II. a fratre suo Roberto provo-  
 William II. catus, quod jusjurandum non observasset quod ipsi  
 goes to Normandy. fecerat, in Normanniam iratus transfractavit. Et eum  
 fratres ad colloquium convenirent, juratores utrorumque,  
 a quorum arbitrio totum negotium ex omnium consensu .  
 dependebat, totam culpam et discordiæ causam in regem  
 refuderunt,<sup>4</sup> dicentes inter cetera, quod absurdum fuit .  
 et injustum, quod aliquam haberet potestatem junior .  
 super primogenitum. Rex vero eos negligens, et iratus .

<sup>1</sup> In the extreme margin Matthew Paris has noted : "Reges Scociæ post conquestum Angliae, Malcolmus, qui peremptus est, deinde Duncanus, filius ejus."

<sup>2</sup> transgressi] trangressi, MS.

<sup>3</sup> dampnose] dapnose, MS.

<sup>4</sup> refuderunt] rufuderunt, MS.

discedens, castellum Burensse obsedit et cepit. E contra A.D. 1093.  
 dux castrum Argentomii, et in eo consulem regis Ro-War  
 gerum Pictavensem, et cum eo milites septingentos, William  
 et Hulmense castrum cepit consequenter. Indignantes and Robert.  
 enim multi, eo quod rex arbitrium juratorum perjurus  
 spreverat, ad juvamen ducis convolarunt. Rex interea  
 summoneri<sup>1</sup> cœpit xx<sup>ti</sup>. milia peditum, ut in Normannia  
 coram eo convenirent. Et cum dux simulata humili-  
 tate ea quæ pacis erant rogitasset,<sup>2</sup> rex jam securus  
 ipsos Anglos accersitos, cum ad mare venissent, a  
 singulis x. solidos extorquens, ad propria remeare præ-  
 cepit. Sed dux adhuc recalcitrans, in Normanniam  
 Philippum, Francorum regem, cum exercitu copioso, ut  
 obsideret et obsessum caperet regem Willelmum apud  
 castrum de Auco, sollicitavit.<sup>3</sup> Sed rex Francorum,  
 pecuniæ tenebris obcæcatus, rediit in Franciam cum  
 Rog.Wend. suo exercitu universo. Quo viso, dux tandem volens  
 ii. 44. nolens se fratri suo humiliavit, cui pepercit regis mag-  
 nificentia; et in Angliam remeavit. Et ilico Deo in- William  
 gratus de conservata incolumitate et prosperitate, rex returns to  
 Anglorum W[illelmus] monasteria totius regni gravi England,  
 depopulatione, ut munera<sup>4</sup> regi Francorum largita re- and op-  
 stauraret, affixit deprædando. presses the monas-  
 teries.

### *Moritur Paulus, abbas Sancti Albani.<sup>5</sup>*

Rog.Wend. Eodemque anno Paulus, primus post conquestum Death of  
 ii. 44. Angliæ Sancti Albani abbas, facta apud Thinemuam Paul, abbat  
 visitatione pastorali, dum rediret ad ecclesiam suam, in of St.  
 villa quæ Colewich dicitur gravi correptus ægritudine,  
 viam universæ carnis est ingressus, iii<sup>o</sup>. idus Novem. 11 Nov.

<sup>1</sup> *summoneri*] submoneri, MS., and so F.

<sup>2</sup> In the margin a much later hand has written, "Nota fallaciam Wil- lielmi Rufi."

<sup>3</sup> *sollicitavit*] Added in marg.

<sup>4</sup> *munera*] After this word is an erasure, apparently, of *quæ*.

<sup>5</sup> This chapter is omitted in F.

A.D. 1093. bris. Corpus autem ipsius ad Sanctum Albanum delatum est, et honorifice tumulatum. Remansit autem ecclesia Beati Albani in manu Willelmi regis rapacissimi iiior. annis, pastore destituta. In quibus nemora explanavit, compatriotas depauperavit, et nonnullos ecclesiæ thesauros fecit asportari.

*Consecratur Anselmus in archiepiscopum  
Cantuariensem.*

Consecration of  
Anselm,  
archbishop  
of Canterbury.  
4 Dec.

The church  
of Canterbury  
declared to be  
primatial,  
and that  
of York  
metropolitan.

Anno quoque sub eodem, convenientibus totius An- Rog. Wend. gliæ episcopis, Thomas, Eboracensis archiepiscopus, ii. 44. Anselmum, Cantuariensem electum, pridie nonas Decembris consecravit antistitem. Verum cum ante ordinandi pontificis examinationem Walkelinus,<sup>1</sup> Windtoniensis episcopus, ut moris est, electionem scriptam legeret, mox Thomas, archiepiscopus Eboracensis, con- fol. 15 b. questus est scriptum rite non esse factum. Nam cum diceretur, "Fratres et coepiscopi mei, vestræ fraternitati cognitum<sup>2</sup> est, quantum temporis est ex quo sancta Dorobornensis ecclesia, totius Britanniæ metropolitana, sit pastore viduata," respondit Thomas et dixit, "Si totius Britanniæ ecclesia Dorobornensis metropolitana est, ecclesia Eboracensis, quæ metropolitana<sup>3</sup> esse<sup>4</sup> Rog. Wend. scitur, metropolitana non est. Et quidem ecclesiam ii. 45. Cantuariensem primatem esse scimus, non metropolitana." Quod verbum cum fuisse auditum, rationale esse subnixum est intellectum. Tunc, mutato scripto, pro "totius Britanniæ ecclesia metropolitana," "totius Britanniæ primas" scriptum est. Et sic controversia tota quievit. Itaque consecravit illum, ut primatem totius Britanniæ.

<sup>1</sup> *Walkelinus*] At first written *Walkenus*.

<sup>2</sup> *cognitum*] Originally *cōgnitum*, but the mark of contraction erased.

<sup>3</sup> *metropolitana*] metropolinata, MS.

<sup>4</sup> *esse*] On an erasure.

*Transfertur sedes episcopal is de Teodford ad Norvicum.*

Rog.Wend. Anno Domini m<sup>o</sup>.xc<sup>iiii</sup>o. Herbertus Losinga ex abbat<sup>e</sup> A.D. 1094.  
ii. 45. Ramesiensi, empto præsulatu, factus est episcopus <sup>The see of</sup> Thetford ecclesiæ Theodfortensis. Sed postmodum pœnitentia transferred ductus, Romam profectus est, symoniacum baculum <sup>to Norwich.</sup> papæ resignans et anulum; verumtamen Romanæ sedis indulgentia iterum eidem restituit resignata. Qui domum reversus, sedem episcopalem transtulit ad Northwicum, atque ibidem congregationem monachorum, utpote religionis<sup>1</sup> et religiosorum amator, instituit; domumque illam beneficiis quamplurimis, tam in spiritualibus quam temporalibus, feliciter ampliavit.

*Robertus, comes Northanhumbriæ, capitur, et sui omnes confunduntur.*

Rog.Wend. Eodemque anno rex Willelmus jussit Henricum, Robert,  
ii. 45. fratrem suum, Northambriam<sup>2</sup> hostiliter cum pecunia earl of multa loco sui impetere. Robertus enim, comes Northambriæ,<sup>3</sup> in superbiam elatus, eo quod regem Scotorum Malcolmum cum suis, licet proditiose, vicerat, curiam regis factus rebellis adire repudiavit. Promovit igitur exercitum Henricus, quem illico subsecutus quebatur rex, in Northambriam<sup>4</sup> contra Robertum memoratum; ubi in Novo Castello omnes potentiores de familia comitis cepit, et vinculis ac carceri man-

<sup>1</sup> *religionis*] *relegionis*, MS.

<sup>2</sup> *Northambriam*] So F. Northanhumbrum ire, A., *sup. ras.*, D.; Northanhumbrorum ire, C., but *ire* afterwards struck out; Northanhumbriam, E. In Wendover we read, “misit Henrieum, fratrem suum, in Normanniam,” which is contradicted by what follows. He had

evidently confounded the expedition against earl Robert in Normandy with that against Robert, earl of Northumberland.

<sup>3</sup> *Northambriæ*] Northanhumborum, W. A. C.; Northanhumbriæ, D. E. F.

<sup>4</sup> *Northambriam*] Northanhumbriam, W. A. C. D. F.

A.D. 1094. cipavit. Et inde ad castellum de Thinemue profectus, fratrem consulis Roberti cepit in eodem. Et inde ad castrum de Bamburc rex, secum ipsum comitis fratrem captivum dicens, illico properavit, et ipsum comitem in eodem obsedit. Sed cum castrum inexpugnabile<sup>1</sup> advertit, ante castellum illud aliud sed ligneum construxit, ad præcludendum illis exitum, quod patria lingua *Maleveisine* appellavit. In quo partem exercitus sui qui numerosus extitit relinquens, rex inde recessit. Cumque una nocte comes fame arctatus, clam recedere proposuisset, secutus est eum regis exercitus, excubitoribus excitatus, usque ad Thinemue, equo raptum velocissimo. Ubi cum se defendere conaretur, sine vulnere captus est et integer; regique præsentatus, jussus est apud Windeleshore custodiæ carcerali mancipari. Reddito igitur continuo castro de Bamburgo, omnes comitis fautores male tractati sunt. Nam Willemus de Auco exoculatus, et Odo, consul Campanensis, et ceteri omnes vel squalore carceris diuturni, vel morte, vel exheredatione sunt puniti.

### *Walenses invaduntur.*

Invasion of Anno quoque sub eodem, impiger rex<sup>2</sup> Willemus in Rog. Wend.  
Wales. Walliam exercitum duxit, et ipsam hostiliter impugnavit; eo quod anno præterito ipsi Walenses multos Normannorum occiderant, castellum quoque Montis Gomerici<sup>3</sup> prostraverant, et, necatis inclusis, finitimos<sup>4</sup> igne ferroque dederant exterminio. Rex igitur Willemus omnes fines Walliae hostiliter et potenter perlustrans, ipsos maleficos in ore gladii persequebatur; sed cum fugitivos in loca palustria et nemorosa insequi non valeret, firmatis in Walliae confinio castris,

ii. 46.

<sup>1</sup> *inexpugnabile*] inexpungnabile, MS.

<sup>2</sup> *rex*] Gomerici, W. A. C. D.

Repeated, but expuncted.

<sup>3</sup> *finitimos*] fugitivos, F.

· quæ<sup>1</sup> Wallensibus erant spina in oculo, ad propria A.D. 1094.  
remeavit.

*Stellæ cadere de cœlo videbantur.*

Rog.Wend. Eodem anno stellæ visæ sunt cadere de cœlo. Inter Falling  
ii. 46. quas cum in Gallia<sup>2</sup> una maxima cadere, quasi facula,<sup>3</sup> stars.  
videbatur, cumque locus notaretur, in aqua stridorem  
horribilem cum fumo teterimum generavit.

*Rex Willelmus ab Anselmo, Cantuariensi archi-  
episcopo, extorsit pecuniam.*

Rog.Wend. Hoc quoque tempore, rex Willelmus Anselmum, William  
ii. 47. Cantuariensem archiepiscopum, circumvenire affectans, extorts  
mille libras argenti sibi dari ab eo instantius postula- money  
bat, eo quod in promotione sua promptius<sup>4</sup> sibi præ- from  
buisset assensum. Archiepiscopus vero pro indifferenti Anselm,  
habens, utrum ante vel post promotionem suam archbishop  
tiranno taliter satisfaceret, pari poena anticipantem et of Canterbury.  
subsequentem censuit puniendum, et pari labo symoniae  
inquinatum. Elegit igitur potius ipse sanctus regis  
quam Dei incurrire indignationem. Propositorum igitur  
habens prudenter recedendi, postulavit licentiam a rege,  
ut Urbanum papam adiret, percepturus ab eodem pal-  
lium, quod nondum optimuerat, ad exsequendum<sup>5</sup> plenius  
officium suum. Tunc enim temporis non licebat alicui The king  
magno<sup>6</sup> viro de regno Angliæ exire, nisi de regis licen- forbids the  
archbishop  
tia. Et erat castrum Doveriæ, quasi una sed tamen to leave the  
maxima valvarum Angliæ, arctissime custodita. Rex kingdom.

<sup>1</sup> quæ] qui, MS. and F.

<sup>2</sup> in Gallia] Repeated erroneously after *maxima*, but underscored for omission.

<sup>3</sup> quasi facula] Added in marg. and in text of F.

<sup>4</sup> promptius] At first written *promptum*, and then corr. *promtus*; but

afterwards underscored, and replaced in marg. by *prompcius*, and so F. In W. A. C. D. *promptum*.

<sup>5</sup> exsequendum] The first three letters of this word are added outside the column of text.

<sup>6</sup> magno] mangno, MS.

A.D. 1094. autem, Urbano papa nominato, ira excanduit vehementi. Inceperant<sup>1</sup> enim jam solito impudentius munera, non sine avaritiae immo et symoniae scrupulo, postulare. Tunc etiam temporis ecclesia Romana<sup>2</sup> in scismate<sup>3</sup> laborabat, Wiberto, Ravennensi archiepiscopo,<sup>4</sup> per violentiam imperatoris Henrici in papatum intruso. Dixit fol. 16 a. enim imperator, suum esse quem vellet papam eligere. Rex igitur Angliae Willelmus concipiens indignationem erga papam contradicentem, allegavit a simili, quod nullus archiepiscopus vel episcopus de regno suo ad curiam Romanam vel ad papam haberet<sup>5</sup> respectum; præsertim cum jam a vestigiis beati Petri videantur. Romani pontifices præmiis inhiantes exorbitare, nec ejus potestatem ligando et solvendo retinere, cujus sanctitatem probantur non imitari. Asseruit etiam rex. W[illelmus] constanter, quod post conversionem ad fidem Christianam, tot et tantas in regno suo Angliae<sup>6</sup> optinuit libertates, quot imperator in imperio. “Quid papæ de vel imperii vel regni laicis libertatibus, cui pertinet tantum<sup>7</sup> de animarum salute sollicitari? De pullulantibus in Christianitate hæresibus, ubi non sufficiunt prælati incolæ resistere, studeat papa per se vel legatos adhibere remedia.” Cum igitur rex hæc verba nimis irreverenter prosequendo, ad scismaticorum<sup>8</sup> fere proterviam pertransiret, restitit ei in facie contradicendo modestus præsul Anselmus. Nec erat de episcopis suis suffraganeis qui solatii juvamen præstarent patri suo paene circumvento, immo potius tiranno favebant desipienti. Sed hæc omnia jam papam, fama nunciante, non latebant, qui prudenter moderamen.

He asserts  
that the  
pope  
should  
confine  
himself to  
spiritual  
affairs.

Anselm  
resists.

<sup>1</sup> *Inceperant*] So also F.; but the sense would seem to require *inceperat*.

<sup>2</sup> *Romana*] Romane, MS.

<sup>3</sup> *scismate*] eismate, MS.

<sup>4</sup> *Ravennensi archiepiscopo*] Ravennensi episcopo, MS. and F. Corr. from W. A. C. D.

<sup>5</sup> *haberet*] haberent, MS.; A. pr. m.; C. pr. m.; and F.

<sup>6</sup> *suo Angliae*] On an erasure.

<sup>7</sup> *tantum*] Repeated before *pertinet*, but expuncted.

<sup>8</sup> *scismaticorum*] cismaticorum, MS.

. adhibendo, subtraxit austeritatem, secretius fratribus A.D. 1094.  
 . dicens,

“Dum furor in cursu est, currenti cede furori.”<sup>1</sup>

. Inimiciis vero a rege pro pecuniæ quantitate,  
 . usque ad inanitionem ecclesiæ Cantuariensis, exacta et  
 . non concessa et tandem extorta, palam contractis

R. Wend. . et denunciatis, Anselmus quasi læsæ majestatis reus  
 ii. 48.

adjudicatur.<sup>2</sup> Sed, paucis postmodum elapsis diebus, He receives  
 Walterus, Albanensis episcopus, archiepiscopo pallium his pall.  
 afferens, papam Urbanum regi commoto prudenter re-  
 conciliavit. Anselmus autem fascinanti oculo adhuc a  
 . rege respectus et despectus, pallians tamen dolorem  
 . vulto sereno, velut oblitus injuriæ, a rege licentiam He asks  
 postulavit papam visitandi, et cum episcopo Albanensi leave to go  
 Romam redeunte<sup>3</sup> transalpinandi. Qui tale responsum to Rome,  
 reportavit, quod si cœptis<sup>4</sup> desisteret, et si propositis which the  
 evangeliis<sup>5</sup> jurando promitteret, se nec apostolorum king re-  
 limina visitaturum, nec pro quovis negotio Romanæ fuses.  
 sedis audientiam appellaturum,<sup>6</sup> sibi et suis cum omni  
 indemnitate et tranquillitate poterat præcavere, et regni  
 majoribus cum omni præesse dominatione;<sup>7</sup> sin autem,  
 poterat transfretare sed inconsulte, et recedere sine spe  
 revertendi.

*Anselmus archiepiscopus injuriam passus exulat.*

Rog. Wend. Recedens igitur Anselmus a conspectu regis et con- Flight of  
 ii. 48. cilii, venit Cantuariam, quid a curia reportaret publice the arch-  
 manifestans. Arripiens igitur<sup>8</sup> fugam clandestinam,<sup>9</sup> bishop.

<sup>1</sup> Ovid. Remed. Amor., l. 119.

<sup>5</sup> *evangeliis*] euuangeliis, MS.

<sup>2</sup> *adjudicatur*] In the margin is written *vel ab*, that is, we may also read *abjudicatur*, and so it appears in F.

<sup>6</sup> *appellaturum*] *appellaturum*, MS.

<sup>3</sup> *redeunte*] *rediunte*, MS.

<sup>7</sup> *dominatione*] donatione, C. D. and Edd.

<sup>4</sup> *cœptis*] *ceptis*, MS. ; *captis*, F.

<sup>8</sup> *igitur*] Added above the line.

<sup>9</sup> *clandestinam*] *clamdestinam*, MS.

A.D. 1094. nocturnam et subitam, portum repetit, ut ibi navem .  
ascenderet Doveralem. Quod cum per exploratores .  
sciretur, et accusaretur, Willelmus de Warewast, regis .  
familiaris, proterve occurrit transfretaturo ; et ex præ- .  
cepto ejusdem regis pecuniam non solum in ore sac- .  
corum, immo etiam in manicis et sinu archiepiscopi .  
irreverenter improbus perscrutator quæsivit, sed quæ- .  
sitam non invenit, et verbis incompositis<sup>1</sup> laccessivit. .  
Sed nec sic archipræsul patientissimus verbum re- .  
tulit amaritudinis, factus sicut homo non audiens, et .  
non habens in ore<sup>2</sup> suo redargutiones ; unde vacuus .  
permissus est transfretare, secundum formam decreti .  
regii, exul et irrediturus. Sed illico cum transfretasset,  
publicæ potestatis apparitores omnia ecclesiæ ejus bona  
fiscalibus commodis<sup>3</sup> addixerunt, in irritum revocantes  
quicquid utilitatis et honestatis in ecclesia statuerat  
præsul circumspectus ; multa quoque irrestituibiliter  
dissiparunt.

R.Wend.  
ii. 49.

*Nota quam honorifice susceptus a papa beatus  
Anselmus fuerit.*

Honour-  
able recep-  
tion of  
Anselm  
by the  
pope.

Council at  
Bari.

¶ Nota  
magnificen-  
tiam archi-  
episcopi  
A[nselmi].

Anselmus autem has passus injurias, limina adiit Rog. Wend.  
apostolorum oraturus. Qui a papa Urbano reverenter  
et gaudenter est susceptus Laterani. Cum quo post-  
modum in Barensi concilio,<sup>4</sup> Græcorum a fide catho-  
lica tunc dissidentium confutavit errorem, ejusdem  
Anselmi prudentia roboratus. Habito deinde<sup>5</sup> con-  
cilio Romæ, cui idem papa præsedid Urbanus, Ansel-  
mus interfuit consiliorum moderator ; in quo, Anselmi  
consilio, laicos investituras ecclesiarum more pristino

ii. 49.

<sup>1</sup> *incompositis*] *imcompositis*, MS.

<sup>2</sup> *ore*] *corde*, F.

<sup>3</sup> *commodis*] *comodis*, MS.

<sup>4</sup> This Council was held in Oct.  
1098. See Jaffé, Reg. Pont., p. 472.

<sup>5</sup> *deinde*] *denique*, F.

<sup>6</sup> *laicos*] The MS. reads *papa*  
*laicos*, and so does F. ; but in that  
case we ought to read afterwards  
*synodali auctoritate*. I have, there-  
fore, omitted *papa*, on the authority  
of W. A. C. D.

conferentes, et eas a laicis accipientes, et taliter post A.D. 1094. adeptum honorem munus consecrationis impendere COUNCIL AT præsumentes, a communione fidelium synodalis auctoritas decrevit exsortes.<sup>1</sup> Multis quoque salubribus ruitatis papam Urbanum et aliquos fratrum beatus Anselmus, utpote vir profundi pectoris et eximiæ sanctitatis, informavit. Recedens igitur illinc a papa ANSELM CONFORTATUS ET HONORATUS, apud Lugdunum moram contiuans, et pro statu regni Anglicani continue orans, æquanimiter subiit exilium usque ad finem vitæ Willelmi II. regis. Ubi Deus certificavit eum per visionem nocturnam de vili morte regis W[illelmi], qui jam Nero poterat appellari.<sup>2</sup>

*De morte Sancti Wlstani episcopi.*

Rog. Wend. Anno Domini M<sup>o</sup>.XC<sup>o</sup>V<sup>o</sup>. vir vitæ venerabilis Wlstanus, A.D. 1095.  
ii. 49. Wigorniensis episcopus, quem rex persequebatur,<sup>3</sup> mi- DEATH OF  
gravit ad Dominum; qui patre Estano et matre Wlgeva Wulstan,  
ii. 50. editus, sanctitate floruerat singulari. Cujus parentes BISHOP OF  
Christianissimi, religionis amore ab invicem licite sepa- WORCESTER,  
rati, sanctæ conversationis habitum et vitam elegerunt;  
particulars of  
quorum exemplo et ipse adolescens incitatus, seculum his life.  
et secularia reliquit, et in Wigorniensi monasterio, in  
quo pater servierat, habitum monasticum ab ejusdem  
ecclesiæ episcopo Brithego suscepit. Inde omni sanc-  
fol. 16 b. titate præditus, ad præsulatus dignitatem Wigorniensis,  
. invitum valde sed compellente Christianissimo rege  
. Edwardo, est promotus. Unde postea cum archiepi-  
. scopus Lamfrancus ipsum deponere pro simplicitate sua  
. proposuisset, idem episcopus Wlstanus infixit baculum  
. pastoralem in sarcophago marmoreo beati Edwardi. Qui  
. adhæsit lapidi tanquam arbor plantata, vel columpna

<sup>1</sup> *exsortes*] exortes, MS.

<sup>2</sup> *Ubi . . . appellari*] Added in  
marg., but in text of F.

<sup>3</sup> *quem rex persequebatur*] Added

| in marg., and in text of F.

A.D. 1095. potius cementata, quem nullus potuit avellere præter ipsum episcopum Wlstanum, cui præceptum fuit in virtute obedientiæ, ut ipsum reacciperet; quod et factum est.<sup>1</sup> Hanc et alias<sup>2</sup> virtutes præclaras operatus est ad laudem uominis sui Dominus noster Jesus Christus, ad declarandam beati Wlstani sanctitatem; quas qui audire desiderat, librum inquirat de vita et morte ejus pretiosa et miraculis ejus confectum,<sup>3</sup> ut plenius certificetur.

Book of  
the life of  
St. Wul-  
stan.

### *Concilium Urbani papa.*

Council  
held at  
Clermont,  
and  
Statutes.

Eodem anno papa Urbanus, Anselmi admonitus pro- Rog. Wend. videntia, apud Clarum-montem, civitatem Alverniæ,<sup>4</sup> ii. 56. concilium tenens, hæc quæ sequuntur<sup>5</sup> capitula consti- Rog. Wend. tuit, et universali ecclesiæ constituit<sup>6</sup> observanda. Quod ii. 57. ecclesia catholica sit in fide casta, et ab omni seculari servitute libera. Ut episcopi, vel abbates, vel aliquis de clero, aliquam ecclesiasticam dignitatem de manu principum non recipiant, vel a quolibet laicorum. Quod clerici in duabus ecclesiis vel civitatibus præbendas non habeant. Quod aliquis simul episcopus et abbas esse non possit. Quod ecclesiastice dignitates a nullo emantur vel vendantur. Quod nullus eujuslibet sacri ordinis carnali commercio utatur. Quod eis, qui ignorantes canonum prohibitionem beneficia emerunt, ignoscatur. Quod eis, qui scienter emptas a se, vel a parentibus suis, præbendas possiderunt,<sup>7</sup> auferantur.

<sup>1</sup> *ut ipsum . . . factum est]* Added in marg., and inserted in text of F.

<sup>2</sup> *alias]* Interlined.

<sup>3</sup> The legend of Wulstan is given at length in Wendover, ii. pp. 49–56, and in A. C. D.

<sup>4</sup> *Alverniæ]* In the text, *Arverniæ* (as in W. C.); but corr. *Alverniæ* in marg., which is followed by F. So also in Ord. Vitalis, iii. 463, ed. 1845.

<sup>5</sup> *sequuntur]* sequntur, MS.

<sup>6</sup> *constituit]* So in MS. and F.; but in W. and A. C. D. *tradidit*. In the marg. a later hand has written, “Statuta concilii Alverniæ edita per Urbanum papam;” and has added numbers opposite to the several statutes.

<sup>7</sup> *possiderunt]* possederunt, MS.

Quod nemo laicorum a capite jejunii, nemo clericorum A.D. 1095.  
a Quinquagesima usque ad Pascha, carnes comedat.  
Quod omni tempore, primum jejunium <sup>iv<sup>or</sup></sup> temporum  
prima ebdomada Quadragesimæ fiat. Quod omni tem-  
pore, ordines vel vespere Sabbati, perseveranteve  
jejunio, in Dōminica celebrentur. Ut in Sabbato  
Paschæ, nisi<sup>1</sup> post horam nonam, officium celebretur.  
Ut jejunium [secundum]<sup>2</sup> in ebdomada Pentecostes  
celebretur. [Quod]<sup>3</sup> ab Adventu Domini usque ad oc-  
tabas Epiphaniæ, et a Quadragesima<sup>4</sup> usque ad octabas  
Paschæ, et a prima die Rogationum usque ad octabas  
Pentecostes, et a <sup>iiii<sup>a</sup></sup> feria, occidente sole, omni tem-  
pore, usque ad ii. feriam, oriente sole, treugæ custodi-  
antur.<sup>5</sup> Quod qui ceperit episcopum, omnino exlex fiat.  
Quod qui sacri ordinis viros, vel eorum famulos ceperit,

Rog. Wend. anathema sit. Quod qui episcoporum vel clericorum  
ii. 58.

morientium bona rapuerit, anathema sit. Quod qui  
usque ad septimam generationem consanguinitati se  
copulaverit, anathema sit. Quod nemo in episcopum  
eligatur, nisi presbiter, vel diaconus, vel subdiaconus, et  
cui natalium dignitas suffragatur, nisi in maxima ne-  
cessitate et de licentia papæ. Quod filii presbiterorum  
vel concubinarum ad presbiteratum non promoveantur,  
nisi prius ad vitam transierint religiosam. Quod qui  
ad ecclesiam vel ad crucem confugerint, data mem-  
brorum impunitate, justitiæ tradantur, vel innocentes

<sup>1</sup> *nisi*] nonnisi, Will. Malmes. ii. 525, and Ord. Vit. iii. 464.

<sup>2</sup> *secundum*] Inserted from W. A. C. D., and confirmed by Malm. and Ord. Vit.

<sup>3</sup> *Quod*] Inserted from Malm. and W., but omitted in Ord. Vit. and A. C. D. F.

<sup>4</sup> *Quadragesima*] Septuagesima, Malm. and Ord. Vit.

<sup>5</sup> *treugæ custodiantur*] Malm. and Ord. Vit. read *trevia Dei custodia-*

*tur.* In the text, after *treugæ*, are inserted the words *et f<sup>a</sup>*, which may, perhaps, be read *et festa*, but in the margin is written *d*, that is to say, *dubium*; and as these words are not found in F., and receive no authority from Wendover or the other MSS., I have omitted them. The reading of *induciaæ* for *treugæ* in Edd. is one of the many unwarrantable changes made by Parker or his printer.

A.D. 1095. liberentur. Quod unaquæque ecclesia decimas suas habeat, nec ad aliam transferantur. Quod laicus decimas non emat vel vendat. Quod pro sepultura mortuorum pretium non recipiatur. Item, in hoc concilio Urbanus Philip, king of France, is excommunicated. Hildebrandi decreta renovavit; Philippum quoque, regem Francorum, qui, vivente regina sua, superduxerat alterius viventis, Fulconis scilicet, Andegavensium comitis, uxorem, excommunicavit.

*Papa Urbanus sermonem fecit populo, super negotio Terræ Sanctæ.*

In fine autem concilii, quod mense Novembrio actum est, papa memoratus de negotio crucis sermonem ad populum faciens,<sup>1</sup> multos nobiles cruce signavit, et ad bellum contra infideles Terram Sanctam vastantes animavit. Quorum primus fuit Athelmærus, episcopus Podiensis, qui, crucis signaculo de manibus papæ accepto, Willelmum, Aurasiensem præsulem, habuit ilico sectatorem, cum aliis fidelibus innumeris diversæ conditionis et ætatis. Finito igitur sermone et concilio, a singulis episcopis in sua diocesi negotium. Terræ Sanctæ efficaciter est expeditum. Cujus facti fama totum perlustrans orbem, non solum mediterraneas provincias ad hanc peregrinationem commovit, sed et omnes, qui in penultimis insulis et terras Christianorum remotissimas inhabitabant. Suscepérunt namque crucis signaculum Hugo Magnus, Philippi Francorum regis frater, dux Lotharingiae Godefridus, comes Tholosanus Reimundus, dux Normannorum Robertus, Boamundus, loco Apulus et gente Normanus, comes Flandrensis Robertus, Carnotensis comes Stephanus, fratres ducis Godefridi Baldewinus et Eus-

Names of the chief leaders of the expedition.

Comites.

<sup>1</sup> This discourse is inserted in Wendover at length, ii. 58–61, and in A. C. D. and F., the latter of which only partially agrees with the text till p. 63.

tachius, item de Burgo alias Baldewinus, item de A.D. 1095.  
 Gres comes Garnerius, comes Hamaucorum Baldewinus,  
 comes Diensis Hysoardus, comes de Foreis Willelmus,  
 comes de Albemarlia Stephanus, comes Perticensis  
 Rotoldus,<sup>1</sup> comes Hugo de Sancto Paulo, Henricus de *Barones.*  
 Asca, Radulphus de Baugenciacio, Hebraudus de Pu-  
 saco, Willelmus Amanen, Gentonius de Bar, Gastus de  
 Beders, Willelmus de Monte-Pessulano, Girardus de  
 Russelun, Geraldus de Ceresiaco, Rogerus de Barne-  
 villa, Guido de Possessa, Guido de Garlanda, Thomas  
 de Sprea, Gualo de Calvo-Monte. De regno quoque  
 Angliae quamplures nobiles et in armis strenui; max-  
 imi illi, qui de Bello-Campo non immerito cognomen  
 . habent<sup>2</sup> ab effectu. Omnes hii potentes armis et consilio  
 . pollentes, et præclari ad ultionem injuriarum Salva-  
 . toris Domini nostri Jhesu in sua secundum carnem  
 . patria natali irrogatarum, cum aliis infinitis Deo ama-  
 bilibus, accinguntur.

*Incepit est negotium crucis per Petrum Heremitam.*

Animabat nempe ipsos Petri Heremitæ prædicatio, Preaching  
 . qui sacerdos religiosus extiterat, cognomento<sup>3</sup> et pro- of Peter the  
 fessione Heremita, genere præclarus, moribus eximius, Hermit.  
 . sponte fluens habens eloquium, literis eleganter eru-  
 ditus. Hic de regno Francorum paululum ante hos  
 dies, peregrinationis voto tractus, Jerosolimam pervenit. His pre-  
 Hic, juxta legem peregrinis Christianis ab infidelibus vious pil-  
 datam, loca sancta, dato gravi tributo, in urbem oratus His pil-  
 adiit devotissimus; et in hospitio cuiusdam Christiani grimage to  
 vespere est susceptus, qui sub misera conditione in ipsa Jerusalem.  
 morabatur. A quo de misera afflictione credentium  
 plenius edoctus, Simeonem civitatis affatur patri-

<sup>1</sup> *Rotoldus*] Rotrodus, W. A. C. D.  
 F.

<sup>2</sup> *habent*] Added on to the text.  
<sup>3</sup> *cognomento*] cognomento, MS.

A.D. 1095. archam,<sup>1</sup> qui<sup>2</sup> colloquiis mutuis sese recreabant. At patriarcha, vir quidem sanctus et Deo acceptus, ex verbis Petri colligens, quod vir esset circumspectus et eloquens, familiariter cœpit exponere ei universa, quæ populum Dei acerius affligebant in civitate ipsa sub Rog. Wend. tributo commorantem. Petrus autem fraternis compatiens miseriis, patriarchæ respondit, "Noveris, pater sancte, quod ecclesia Romana, hiis auditis, compatietur, cum principibus occidentis. Et ego pro remedio animæ meæ, auctore Deo, remotas partes peragrande paratus ero ærumpnarum vestrarum coram eis immensitate in protestari, et ad succursum procurandum universos et singulos efficaciter invitare." Placuit sermo in oculis tam patriarchæ quam populorum circumstantium; et, impensis gratiarum actionibus, viro Dei scriptum super hiis confectum porrigunt postulatum.

Conversation with the patriarch.  
Arch.

ii. 64.

*De visione Petro facta.*

Vision seen by Peter the Hermit.

Accidit autem die quadam, cum prædictus Dei famulus de reditu ad propria, pro implenda legatione humeris suis assumpta, amplius solito sollicitaretur, ecclesiam Dominicæ resurrectionis ingressus, ad fontem misericordiæ tota cordis intentione oraturus recurrit. Ubi cum pernoctans vigiliis et orationibus in pavimento decubuisse, ut sompno satisfaceret irruenti, vidit sibi astare Dominum nostrum Jhesum Christum. Et injungens ei legationem præmissam, dixit, "Surge, Petre, et propera, et intrepidus perage quæ tibi sunt injuncta. Ego enim Jhesus Christus, qui tibi loquor, tecum ero. Tempus est enim ut purgantur sancta, et meis servis potenter subveniatur." Expergefactus Petrus et de visione manifesta confortatus, atque admonitionem divinam grataiter amplectens, salutato

Rog. Wend.  
ii. 64.

<sup>1</sup> patriarcham] In the text written civitatis, but corr. in marg. | <sup>2</sup> qui] Added in marg.

patriarcha et super dictis certificato, impiger et intrepidus moras rumpit, et ad mare festinus viator descendens, prospera navigatione ad Barum usque pervenit. Et inde Romanum profectus, papae Urbano patriarchales literas et fidelium in Terra Sancta afflictorum mandata

A.D. 1095.  
He takes  
leave of the  
patriarch.  
His visit to  
the pope at  
Rome.

Rog. Wend. porrigens, ad plenum eorum calamitates toti Romanæ  
ii. 65. curiae fideliter exposuit. Quem papa benigne suscipiens,  
se fidelem cooperatorem futurum repromisit. At Petrus,  
. papali fretus solatio, omnem perlustrans Ytaliam, Apu- He preaches  
. liam, Calabriam et Siciliam, innumeros ad prædictam the Cru-  
. peregrinationem animabat et accedit, Domino coope-  
. rante; pro quo etiam negotio expediendo cœlitus signa  
. sequebantur. Tandem cisalpinans, principes occidentales  
maxima sollicitabat instantia, ne loca sancta, quæ Do-  
minus propria dignabatur illustrare corporali præsentia,  
infidelium permitterent spurciis amplius profanari.<sup>1</sup>  
Sed et plebes<sup>2</sup> innumerabiles ad idem opus efficaciter  
accendens, omnes literis suis et testimonio de afflictione  
fidelium et revelatione sibi cœlitus facta plenius certifi-  
cavit. Sicque Petrus Heremita, cum ingenti armatorum  
multitudine, quam tam in<sup>3</sup> imperio quam Francorum  
regno conflaverat, et factus prædicator et dux exer-  
citus, Christi tanquam legatus nominatissimus, memo-  
ratæ militiae se conjungens, opus Crucis instantissime  
studuit promovere.

### *De Gualtero, qui primus iter peregrinationis arripuit.*

Rog. Wend. Anno Domini M<sup>o</sup>.XC<sup>o</sup>VII<sup>o</sup>, mense Martio, Gualterus, A.D. 1096.  
ii. 65. cognomento<sup>4</sup> Sansavoir, vir nobilis et strenuus, cum Proceed-  
ing of  
ingenti multitudine pedestrium armatorum, ut qui Walter  
paucos habebat equites, primus omnium crucesignatorum Sansavoir,  
and his  
forces.

<sup>1</sup> profanari] prophanari, MS.

<sup>3</sup> in] Interlined.

<sup>2</sup> plebes] plebeos, MS. and F.,  
but corr. from W. A. C. D. Cf. Will.  
Tyr., p. 639.

<sup>4</sup> cognomento] congnomento, MS.

A.D. 1096. iter peregrinationis arripiens, regna pertransiens Theutonicorum et Hungarorum, ad fluvium usque Maroch pervenit; quo transito, et Bulgarorum fines ingrediens, ad locum pervenit qui Bellegravia nuncupatur. Ubi quidam de comitatu ejus apud Malam-villam, ipso ignorantे, ut cibos emerent remanentes, a Bulgaris comprehensi, nudati, verberati, laccessiti, ablatisque omnibus, ad socios sunt remissi. Walterus igitur a duce<sup>1</sup> Bulgarorum emendi victualia<sup>2</sup> licentiam postulans Rog. Wend. ii. 66. humiliiter, et<sup>3</sup> impetrare non valens, grave populi sui sustinuit detrimentum. Nam cum nihil a gente nefanda<sup>4</sup> venale optinere potuisset gens ejus, in greges Bulgarorum et armenta irruens, ipsa in castra sua abigebat mactanda. Quod Bulgari audientes, arreptis armis, prædam excutere decreverunt; et bellum raptoribus conserentes, et victores existentes, centum et quadraginta ex eis, a præcedentium comitatu separatos, in oratorio quodam, quo se gratia consequendæ pacis intulerant, igne apposito combusserunt, ceteris in fugam coactis. At vero Gualterus cum reliquis agminibus fol. 17 b. suis Straliciam,<sup>5</sup> Daciæ mediterraneæ<sup>6</sup> metropolim, perveniens, præsidi civitatis de injuria plebi Dei a Bulgaris illata conquestus, plenam est justitiam consecutus. Inde igitur ad urbem Constantinopolitanam profectus, Alexii imperatoris ad præsentiam introductus postulavit, ut usque ad adventum Petri Heremitæ, de cuius mandato iter arripuerat, exercitum suum in locis urbi vicinis indultam sibi emendi vendendique licentiam permitterentur habere. Quod ei imperator benigne concessit.

<sup>1</sup> a duce] Repeated again after licentiam, but underscored for omission.

<sup>2</sup> victualia] Added in marg.

<sup>3</sup> humiliiter, et] Added to the text on an erasure; F. agrees.

<sup>4</sup> nefanda] nephanda, MS.

<sup>5</sup> Straliciam] Stralie, MS. and F.

<sup>6</sup> mediterraneæ] meditaranee, MS.

*De peregrinatione Petri Heremite.*

Rog. Wend. Post Gualterum Petrus Heremita primus viam pere- A.D. 1096.  
ii. 66. grinationis arripuit. Transcursa igitur Lothoringia, Franconia, Bavaria et Austria, cum xl<sup>a</sup>. milibus bellatorum fines attigit Hungarorum. Qui tandem ad Malam-villam pervenientes, audierunt Christianos, qui Gualterum secuti præcesserant,<sup>1</sup> stragem ibi non modicam pertulisse. Et videntes spolia et arma eorum in muro civitatis, quasi pro trophæo pendentia, justa succensi  
Rog. Wend. ira ad arma prosiliunt, et urbem violenter confringentes,  
ii. 67. incolas pæne omnes aut gladio interemerunt, aut in flumine vicino demerserunt. Sicque, urbe subacta, v. diebus manserunt in ea. Petrus vero audiens quod rex Hungariæ ad vindictam suorum militares copias convocaret, legiones suas sub omni celeritate ultra flumen, quod vicinum erat, transferri præcepit, cum armentis et manubiis civitatis. Exinde viii<sup>o</sup>. dierum itinere transcurso, ante urbem Niz turribus et muro fortissimam pervenit; et, ponte fluminis transito violenter ac viriliter, castra fixit ibidem. Indeque iter expediens, cum pars major exercitus præterisset, quidam turbati capitis de regionibus Theutonicorum, aliquantulum ab agminibus præcedentium remoti, vii. molendina juxta pontem memoratum igne<sup>2</sup> combusserunt. Erant autem viri quasi c., qui, ut suo furori satisfacerent, adjecerunt ad propriam miseriam; et quorumdam domicilia in suburbio posita concremantes, commisso scelere, exercitui præcedenti sese jungere properabant. At vero regionis illius dominus,<sup>3</sup> quod factum fuerat indigne, nec mirum, ferens, cives evocat, arma arripere sub edicto persuadet; et ipse prævius cum ingenti tumultu hostes insecutus, antequam ad præcedentem exercitum attigissent, atrociter illos in-

<sup>1</sup> *secuti præcesserant*] præcesserant secuti, MS., but marked to be transposed.

<sup>2</sup> igne] igni, MS. and F.  
<sup>3</sup> dominus] incole dominus, MS.  
and F.

A.D. 1096. vadens, omnes morte peremit dignissima. At Petrus  
 ¶ *Nota stragem peregrinorum, propter eorum inobedientiam.* hæc omnia penitus ignorans, ut qui præeuntem ducebat exercitum, dum per quendam raptum equo velocissimo casum cognovisset,<sup>1</sup> de consilio suorum ilico reversus, fratrum interemptorum funera non sine lacrimis conspexit, scire cupiens quæ esset causa tantæ infelicitatis.

Missis igitur legatis ad majores civitatis, cognoverunt<sup>2</sup> qui fuerant missi, justa indignatione factam fuisse seditionem; sed quorundam peregrinorum ausu temerario legio tota concitata est, ut injuriam quam pertulerant vindicarent. Erant antem viri quasi mille, qui ad hanc proruperant temeritatem, propter quos quidam ex urbanis egressi, bellum ingens cum nostratibus commiserunt. Deinde cives patefactis valvis erumpentes, quingentos ex nostris super pontem trucidarunt, reliquis pæne omnibus, vada ignorantibus, miserabiliter submersis. Exercitus autem Petri, tantam suorum non fecens injuriam, ad arma generaliter convolant; et, confligentibus inter se agminibus, ceciderunt ex peregrinis quasi decem milia virorum. Et Petri Heremita pecunia tota a Bulgaris capta est, retento ejus curru, cum omnibus quæ habebat. Die autem quarta, recollectis viris<sup>3</sup> per fugam elapsis, quasi ad xxx. milia, rursus ad iter sese accingentes, viam, licet cum magna difficultate, continuant; et, maturato itinere, Constantine reach tinopolim pervenerunt. Ubi Petrus imperatoris Constantinople, and quio fretus, cum per dies aliquot exercitum ibidem cross the recreasset, ex ejusdem imperatoris mandato, transito Hellespont. Hellesponto, in Bithiniam, quæ prima est Asiae provincia, descenderunt. Deinde ad locum supra idem mare situm, cui nomen Cinitoth, venientes, castra metati sunt ibidem.

Rog. Wend.  
ii. 68.

<sup>1</sup> *cognovisset*] connovisset, MS. | is added, in the margin; but this

<sup>2</sup> *cognoverunt*] congnoverunt, MS. | addition only disturbs the sense.

<sup>3</sup> *viris*] After this word *ac viribus*

*De interitu lamentabili xxx<sup>ta.</sup> milium crucesignatorum.*

Rog.Wend. Erat autem locus memoratus in confinio Turcorum A.D. 1096.  
ii. 68.

positus, rerum omnium et præcipue victualium opulentus. Cumque ibidem quasi duobus mensibus conse- March  
disset exercitus, cœperunt Latini ad x. milia virorum towards Nicc. regionem perlustrare, greges et armenta contrahere, atque versus Nicæam, urbem nobilissimam, ordinatis agminibus profecti, cum præda maxima sine suorum dispendio sunt reversi. Porro Theutonici, videntes The German troops  
quod in illo negotio Latinis prospere accidisset, ad- capture a jecerunt et ipsi simile aliquid attemptare. Unde ad town in the neighbourhood.

Rog.Wend. x. milia peditum cum equitibus ducentis versus Nicæam  
ii. 69.

tendentes, ad oppidum<sup>1</sup> quoddam iiii<sup>or.</sup> miliariis a Nicæa distans pervenerunt. Et, facto impetu vehementissimo, repugnantibus<sup>2</sup> acriter oppidanis<sup>3</sup> sed nihil proficientibus, ipsi Theutonici oppidum occupant violenter. Tandem, habitatoribus<sup>4</sup> omnibus interemptis, et manubiis cunctis occupatis, castrum muniunt, et loci opulentia simul et amoenitate delectati, usque ad principum adventum ibidem commanere proponunt. Solimannus autem, re- They are gionis illius dominus, vir quidem præpotens, astutus attacked by fol. 18a. et bellicosus, sed incredulus, audiens quod Theutonicorum gens oppidum suum expugnasset, et expugnatum præsumerent detinere, cum omni festinatione illuc accelerat, secum trahens innumerabilem Turcorum multitudinem. Et castrum obsidens, violenter expugnat, omnibus quos intus reperit gladio trucidatis. Venit interea rumor in castris Theutonicorum, cohortes suos in manibus Solimanni incidisse; unde veritate comperta, reluctantibus majoribus de exercitu, ad arma prosiliunt universi, et pedites<sup>5</sup> xxx<sup>ta.</sup> et v. milia, cum

<sup>1</sup> *oppidum*] opidum, MS., and so elsewhere.

<sup>2</sup> *repugnantibus*] repugnantibus, MS.

<sup>3</sup> *oppidanis*] opidanis, MS.

<sup>4</sup> *habitatoribus*] habitoribus, MS.

<sup>5</sup> *pedites*] So also in W. A. C. D. F. In Edd. and ed. Wend. *peditum*.

A.D. 1096. equitibus quingentis, ordinatis agminibus, ad partes Nicæas contendunt; et in quandam campum Solimanum cum Turcorum suorum numerosa multitudine invenientes, irruunt potenter in hostes. Sed Turci scientes, quod res pro capitibus ageretur, gravissimum peregrinis reddidere conflictum; et, ipsis tandem oppressis, dum pondus proelii ferre diutius præ multitudine hostium maxime adventantium non valerent, fugam ineunt, agminibus dissipatis. Quos Turci in ore gladii in sequentes, stragem non modicam nostratibus intule-  
Great  
slaughter  
of the  
Christians. runt. Ceciderunt ibi de exercitu Petri nobiles multi, scilicet Gualterus Sanzsavur, de quo prælocutum est, miles eximius, Reginaldus quoque de Breis, cum Fulchero Aurelianensi; et de xxx<sup>ta</sup>. milibus peditum, qui de castris egressi fuerant, simul et equitibus quingentis, vix vel unus superfuit, qui carcerem vel mortem evasisset. Ecce prœlium inobedientiae, quem finem habuit, dum contra præceptum imperatoris populus cervicosus Rog. Wend.  
ii. 70.

### *Augmentum<sup>1</sup> tyrannidis.*

Cruelty of Solimanno<sup>2</sup> vero non sufficiente quod factum fuerat, Rog. Wend.  
Soliman. in castra irruit violentus, et senes, valitudinarios, ii. 70.  
 monachos et ordinatos, matronas, puellas et pueros, in ore gladii interemit truculenter. Quosdam tamen, quorum ætas pro eis intercedebat, ad hoc reservabat illæsos, ut perpetuae servituti subjicerentur.<sup>3</sup> Erat Peter seeks autem prope castrum fidelium, secus litus maris, vetus aid from

<sup>1</sup> *Augmentum*] *Aumentum*, MS. | D. F., but corr. *Solimannus* in Edd.

<sup>2</sup> *Solimanno*] So in W. and A. C. | and ed. Wend.

<sup>3</sup> *subjicerentur*] *subieerentur*, MS.

quoddam præsidium habitatoribus vacuum, in quo A.D. 1096. necessitate compulsi ad tria milia peregrinorum se the em- contulerunt, salutem se sibi ibi posse consequi arbit- peror of Constan- trantes. Cumque in eo a Solimanno fuissent obsessi, tinople. sese viriliter defendantes, Petrus ad imperatorem veniens, fusis humiliter precibus, optinuit, ut, missa illuc militia, reliquias populi liberaret. Quod cum factum fuisset, remansit Petrus apud Constantinopolim cum reliquiis exercitus, principum adventum præstolando.

*De quibusdam peregrinis dolo imperfectis.*

Rog. Wend. Secutus est autem eos cruce signatos in peregrinatio- March of  
ii. 70. nis voto sacerdos quidam, nomine Godescallus, natione Godescal into Hun- Theutonicus. Qui gratiam habens exhortationis, utpote gary.  
. vir literatus et generosus atque magnanimus, ad x. milia<sup>1</sup> de regno Theutonicorum in opus Crucis in Hungariae fines impune conduxit. Ubi cum exercitu suo venalia, de mandato regis, bonis conditionibus ab Hungaris accepissent, alimentorum opulentia abutentes, et ebrie- Excesses committed tati atque commissationibus vacantes, ad enormes pro- by the  
Rog. Wend. ruperunt injurias; prædas agentes et stragem in populo troops.  
ii. 71. committentes, uxores filiasque incolarum violantes. Unde rex ira succensus dignissima, populum ad arma excitat in ultionem tantæ transgressionis. Tandem apud Bellegraviam Hungari prædictorum multitudinem reperientes, cum se præpararent ad resistendum, erant quippe viri fortes et usum armorum habentes, temptant dolo vincere, quos viribus nequierunt. Missa The Hun- igitur legatione ad Godescallum et primates exercitus, garians practise a convenerunt eos, et circumvenerunt verbis pacificis in stratagem dolo, dicentes, "Pervenit ad dominum nostrum regem on the cru- gravis querimonia, quod populo suo enormes nimis saders, injurias irrogaveris, pro bonis nequierter mala repen- dendo. Novit autem dominus rex, quod sunt inter

<sup>1</sup> x. milia] A mistake for xv. milia, as in Will. Tyr. p. 648, and W.A.C.D.

A.D. 1096. vos viri prudentes et timentes Deum, ut decet peregrinantes, quibus invitis et renitentibus talia perpetrantur; unde ipsorum crimen infrunitorum in omnes refundere verens, decrevit insontibus parcere in praesenti. Unde vobis denunciat, ut ejus omnino quiescat indignatio, ut et personas vestras et substantiam cum armis omnibus in manibus ejus sine conditione confidenter tradatis; alioquin nec unus ex vobis mortem evadet, cum potestatem non habeat populus fugiendi." Godescallus [igitur]<sup>1</sup> et primates legionum, de regia benignitate nimis præsumentes, populum totis viribus renitentem induxerunt, ut cum armis et substantia eorum tota in regis potentia se traderent, et sic satisfacerent conquerenti. Quod cum factum fuisse, dum misericordiam expectant, mortem incurruunt. Irruunt enim in populum proditores illi armorum solatio destitutum, non distinguentes justum ab impio, stragemque immanissimam inferentes, locum polluerunt spatiolum ex cruento interemptorum et corporibus occisorum. Evaserunt tamen aliqui hoc commune periculum, et ad propria reversi, suorum stragem peregrinaturis referentes, de præteritis reddiderunt<sup>2</sup> prudentiores.

Rog. Wend.  
ii. 72.

### *De quibusdam peregrinis Judæos consequentibus.*

Massacre of the Jews by another body of crusaders. Per idem tempus convenerunt ex finibus occidentis ad ducenta peditum milia expeditorum, et equitum quasi tria milia. Inter quos erant viri nobiles et famosi, Thomas de Feria, Clarenbaldus de Vendolio, comes Hermannus, et Willelmus dictus Carpentarius. Hii obiter se ad insanias convertentes, et populum Judæorum in civitatibus et oppidis,<sup>3</sup> per quæ eis transitus erat, impetentes, milia multa ex eis detrun-

Rog. Wend.  
ii. 72.  
fol. 18 b.

<sup>1</sup> *igitur*] Supplied from W. A. C. D. | <sup>3</sup> *oppidis*] opidis, MS.  
<sup>2</sup> *reddiderunt*] rediderunt, MS.

. cabant. Dicebant enim, “Nos fluvia transmeamus et A.D. 1096.  
. maria, ut aquam queramus. Ecce ad manum quod  
. quærimus. Et qui infideliores<sup>1</sup> vili vulgo Judæo-  
. rum ?” Et hoc præcipue factum est in Maguntia et  
Colonia civitatibus; ubi etiam Emico nomine, comes  
in ipsis partibus præpotens, eorum cœtibus conjunctus,  
maleficiorum erat ipsorum particeps et incensor flagi-  
tiorum. Qui omnes, transcura Franconia et Bavaria,  
cum fines Hungariæ attigerunt, arbitrati sunt quod  
liceret eis regnum illud libere introire; sed apud They  
Meezeburg clausum reperientes aditum, circa pontem march on-  
substiterunt. Porro rex terræ ingressum transire vo-wards to  
lentibus mandaverat prohiberi, verens ne injuriarum,  
quas Godescallus perpassus fuerat, memores, in ulti-  
onem arma moverent introducti. Unde, petita a rege  
Rog.Wend. licentia pacifice transeundi, cum sibi penitus denegata  
ii. 73. esset,<sup>2</sup> proponunt terras, quas circa fluvios et paludes  
rex possederat, depopulari, suburbana succendere, et in  
rebus ejus hostiliter desævire. Accidit igitur die qua-  
dam, quod septingenti ex regis militia navigio trans-  
euntes occulto,<sup>3</sup> ut a peregrinorum injuriis regionem  
tuerentur, casu tamen hostibus subito obviabant; a  
quibus pæne omnes imperfecti sunt, exceptis paucis,  
qui in carecto et paludibus salvabantur. Et hac freti which they  
victoria peregrini adjiciunt<sup>4</sup> etiam, ut, pontibus fabri-attack, but  
catis, præsidium expugnant,<sup>5</sup> et iter gladiis præpa-are de-  
rantes, regnum intrent violenter. Deinde pontes, quos  
construxerant, mœnibus applicant, et per eorum instan-  
tiā ad id perventum est, ut jam pateret introitus  
peregrinis. Sed ecce subito cœlitus incusso victoribus  
timore, versi sunt in fugam, causam penitus igno-

<sup>1</sup> *infideliores*] At first, *infedili-ores*.

<sup>2</sup> *esset*] Added in marg., and inserted in the text of F., but as this is nearly always the case, such in-

sertions will not again be noticed, except in special instances.

<sup>3</sup> *occulto*] *oculto*, MS.

<sup>4</sup> *adjiciunt*] *adiciunt*, MS.

<sup>5</sup> *expugnant*] *expungent*, MS.

A.D. 1096. rantes; sique, peccatis exigentibus, terga hostibus ostendentes, contulerunt audaciam civibus desperatis, qui fugientes fugantes viriliter, mortem eis inevitabilem intulerunt. Ex quibus comes Emico, cum legionibus fugiens dissolutis, in suam vix patriam est reversus. Alii vero nobiles vix exitium declinantes, ad Ytaliam pervenerunt. Quidam vero de principibus<sup>1</sup> idem iter agentes, qui Durachium navigare proposuerant, se in Græciam non sine multo discrimine contulerunt.

*De progressu ducis Godefridi sociorumque ejus.*

Progress of Godfrey, duke of Lorraine, and his army. Anno quoque sub eodem, mense Augusto, Lotharin- Rog.Wend. ii. 73. giæ dux Godefridus, vir illustris, post Petri Heremitæ et Godescalli aliorumque progressum male fortunatum, ut prædictum est, convocatis viæ consortibus, iter Rog.Wend. ii. 74. magnifice aggressus est, virorum terræ suæ precibus se commendans. Erant autem qui se illi conjunxerunt viri nobiles, Baldwinus, prædicti ducis frater uterinus, Baldwinus, comes Hamacorum, comes Hugo de Sancto Paulo, et Engelramus filius ejus, comes de Gres Garnerius, Reginaldus, comes Tullensis, et frater ejus Petrus, Baldwinus de Burgo, Henricus de Hascha, Godefridus frater ejus, Dodo de Cons, Conanus de Monte-acuto. Quos sequebantur Frisones et Lotharingi, et quicquid gentium jacet inter fluvios Renum et Garunnam et Elpham, et loca quæ sunt usque fere Danubium. Hii omnes individuo comitatu incedentes per Austriæ provinciam et Hungariam, regi modeste datis obsidibus, ad Bellegraviam, Bulgariae oppidum,<sup>2</sup> et inde ad Niz et Straliciam pervenerunt. Inde ad Daciam mediterraneam,<sup>3</sup> quæ alio nomine

<sup>1</sup> *principibus*] Partly interlined.

<sup>2</sup> *oppidum*] opidum, MS.

<sup>3</sup> *mediterraneam*] mediteraneam,  
MS.

Mœsia dicitur, et ad claustra Sancti Basillii descendentes, Philipolim, urbem nobilem et copiosam, attigerunt. Ubi, cognito<sup>1</sup> quod Hugo Magnus, Philippi Francorum regis frater, cum aliis quibusdam ab imperatore Alexio in vinculis teneretur, dux magnificus Godefridus, missis legatis, rogat ut viros prædictos et crucesignatos alios solutos abire permittat. Prædictus enim Hugo, vir illustris, quasi inter primos iter aggressus, Alpibus transensis, in Apuliam per Ytaliam descenderat, et cum exiguo comitatu apud Durachium mare transiens substiterat, peregrinos qui sequebantur expectans. Ubi a præside regionis vinctus, et imperatori traditus, tanquam prædo et homicidii reus tenebatur, sine causa carceri mancipatus. Sed cum nunciis ducis præcise negaretur, de communi consilio per viii<sup>o</sup>. Rog. Wend. dies regionem totam cum legionibus suis depopulantes, ii. 75. affligunt potenter. Hoc audiens imperator, nuncios ad ducem dirigit, rogans ut a præda se cohibens, nobiles recipiat expeditos, quos rogaverat compeditos. Dux Godfrey igitur, pacatis legionibus, Constantinopolim pervenit; ubi etiam prædictos nobiles incolumes suscepit. Erant nople. enim cum Hugone Magno, Drogo de Ncella, Clarebaldus de Vendolio, Willelmus dictus Carpentarius; qui omnes duci de sua liberatione gratias exsolverunt.<sup>2</sup>

Release of  
Hugh the  
Great, im-  
prisoned by  
the Greek  
emperor.

*Quod stellæ videbantur de cœlo cadere.*

Eodem anno stellæ cadere videbantur sub numerosa Falling multitudine simul, in partibus mundi occidentalibus; stars, and in signum forte stragis memoratæ. Solent tamen nature. talia frequenter secundum magis et minus naturaliter accidere. Generantur enim in aeris media regione, ubi grandines, fulgura, choruscationes et tonitrua generantur, quidam igniculi, qui se ocios per longos aeris

<sup>1</sup> *cognito*] congnito, MS.

<sup>2</sup> *exsolverunt*] exolverunt, MS.

A.D. 1096. tractus jaculantur, et apparent, maxime de nocte, stellæ cadentes. Verumtamen quando solito magis apparent, prodigiosum est et signiferum, ut in cometis. Sed haec in libro Metheorum Aristotelis<sup>1</sup> plenius determinantur. .

*De nequissimo imperatore Constantinopolitano Alexio.*

Deceitful character of Alexius, emperor of Constanti-nople. Alexius autem, imperator Græcorum, vir nequam et subdolus, cum esset in palatio Nichofordi,<sup>2</sup> præde-cessoris sui, summus princeps militiæ, contra dominum suum malitiose recalcitrans, v<sup>o</sup>. vel vi<sup>o</sup>. ante<sup>3</sup> hanc expeditionem anno, domino depulso, imperium invaserat et invasum nequiter detinebat. Hic semper propositum habens fallendi, sæpe cum peregrinis verba pacifica loquebatur in dolo, suspectam jugiter habens multitudinem crucesignatorum et militiæ probitatem; His conduct towards duke Godfrey. unde, si quandoque nocere cessavit, non hoc virtutis extitit, sed timoris. Nam dux Godefridus, cum ante urbem Constantinopolitanam tentoria fixisset, assunt nuncii imperiales, ipsum ducem invitantes, ut ad imperatorem cum paucis introire festinaret. Dux vero, habito consilio, illuc ire distulit; unde indignans imperator, forum rerum venalium ducis legionibus interdixit. Porro principes alimentorum metuentes defectum, per suburbana longe lateque hostiliter discurrentes, greges undique trahunt<sup>4</sup> et armenta; et tantam in castra alimentorum deferunt opulentiam, ut usque ad satietatem ctiam minores abundarent.<sup>5</sup> Unde imperator compulsus commercium iterato restitui præcepit.

<sup>1</sup> Aristotelis] Aristotilis, MS. See Meteor. lib. i. capp. 3-7.

<sup>2</sup> Nichofordi] So also W. A. D. F.; Nichofrodi, C.; but Nichofori, I. and ed. Wend.

<sup>3</sup> ante] Before this word is written

*idus*, on an erasure, and afterwards expuncted.

<sup>4</sup> trahunt] So also F.; contrahunt, W. A. C. D.

<sup>5</sup> abundarent] habundarent, MS.

fol. 19 a.  
Rog. Wend.  
ii. 75.

*De motione Boamundi principis in opus Crucis.*

Rog. Wend. Dum hæc autem apud Constantinopolim agerentur, A.D. 1096.  
 ii. 76. dominus Boamundus, Roberti Guiscardi filius et vere March of  
 patrissans, princeps Tarentinus, qui ante hyemem cum Boamund  
 suo exercitu Adriaticum mare transiens, Durachium and his fol-  
 usque pervenerat, per deserta Bulgariæ ad suos, qui  
 eum sequebantur, pedetentim appropians accedebat. Adhæserant namque ei viri quidam nobiles ac potentes,  
 quorum hic in parte nomina supponemus, Tancredus,  
 Willelmi marchionis filius, Ricardus de Principatu, et  
 Ranulphus frater ejus, Robertus de Anxa, Hermannus  
 de Karin, Robertus de Surda-valla<sup>1</sup> vel valle, Robertus,  
 Thurstani filius, Humfridus filius Radulphi, Richardus,  
 filius comitis Ranulphi, comes de Russillun et fratres  
 ejus, Boeleisius Carnotensis, Alberedus de Cangnano,  
 Humfridus filius ejus. Hos autem sequebantur populi  
 Ytalici, et quicunque a Tyreno mari in Adriaticum  
 usque sinum conversabantur. Hii omnes usque ad  
 urbem Castoream Boamundi vexilla sequentes, cum a  
 civibus venalia populo non exhibebantur, contrahere  
 greges et armenta compulsi sunt violenter. Indeque  
 progressi, in regione Pelagonia castra statuerunt; ubi  
 audientes quod in vicino erat municipium solis hære-  
 ticas habitatoribus refertum, illuc sub celeritate conten-  
 dunt, et castrum violenter occupantes et ædificia igne  
 conflagrantes, prædam immensam et optima inde spolia  
 retulerunt.

*De peregrinatione comitis Tholosani.*

Rog. Wend. Subsecuti sunt autem peregrinos comes Tholosanus March of  
 ii. 77. Raimundus et episcopus Podiensis Athelmerus. Erant Raimund,  
 autem cum eis viri generis præclari, Willelmus, Au- count of  
 Toulouse.

---

<sup>1</sup> *valla*] At first written *valle*.

A.D. 1096. rasiensis episcopus, et comes Rainbaldus,<sup>1</sup> Guastus de The bishop Beders, Girardus de Russelun, Willelmus de Monte-  
of Puy taken pri- Pessulano, Willelmus, comes Forensis, Raimundus Pelez,  
soner, but Gentonius de Bar, Willelmus Amanen. Hos vero  
rescued. secuti sunt Provinciales, Gothi, Hyspani et Wascones,  
et quicunque crucesignati, tam nobiles quam plebei,  
inter Pireneum et Alpes diffunduntur. Hii omnes per  
Ytaliam et Lombardiam, et per regionem quæ Forum  
Julii dicitur, in Hystriam et tandem in Dalmatiam  
descenderunt. Cumque per dies quasi xl<sup>a</sup>. omnem  
Dalmatiam multo pertransissent periculo, demum  
Durachium pervenerunt; ubi expectantibus conjuncti  
literis imperatoris corroborati, iter communiter arri-  
piunt. Transcursisque montibus et silvis, et universa  
Epyrotarum regione, demum in pagum, cui Pelagonia  
nomen est, copiis omnibus redundantem, ubi et tentoria  
fixerunt, prospere pervenerunt. Ubi cum Podiensis  
episcopus longius a castris tentoria fixisset, hospitandi  
ductus commoditate,<sup>2</sup> a Bulgaris clanculo et subito ir-  
ruentibus captus est. Sed dum unus ex prædonibus  
morosius [aurum]<sup>3</sup> quæreret et inveniret, et oriretur  
contentio inter ipsos quisnam illud asportaret, elapsus.  
ex manibus eorum unus de episcopi familia, exercitum.  
commovit universum. Et exclamato “Ad arma! Ad  
arma!” omnes citius armati, maleficos insequuntur,<sup>4</sup>  
et, aliquibus eorum trucidatis, episcopum potenter libe-  
rarunt. Denique resumpto itinere, Thessalonicam <sup>Rog. Wend.</sup>  
transeuntes et omnem Macedoniam, continuatis labori-  
bus apud Rodestum, urbem maritimam super Helles-  
pontum sitam, itinere dierum iii<sup>or</sup>. distantem a  
Constantinopoli, respiraturi pervenerunt. Ubi legati  
principum, qui præcesserant, comiti occurrentes con-  
gaudebant, et per aliquod tempus quieverunt post  
ii. 78.

Bosforus.  
Idem  
Hellespontus.  
Braehium  
Sancti Georgii.

<sup>1</sup> *Rainbaldus*] Baiubaldus, MS.; <sup>2</sup> *commoditate*] eomoditate, MS. <sup>3</sup> *aurum*] Supplied from Will. <sup>4</sup> *insequuntur*] insequntur, MS.

Tyr., p. 661, and W., with which agree A. C. D.

laborem. Habito igitur tractatu, omnes comitem instanter postulabant, ut prævius, imperatore pacato, vias pacificas præpararet. Adquievit comes, precum victus instantia. Relicto igitur exercitu sub custodia episcoporum et virorum nobilium, qui in castris erant, ipse cum paucis Constantinopolim properans, ad imperatorem ingressus est;<sup>1</sup> a quo cum omni reverentia Fraudulent behaviour of the suspectus, multa instantia persuasus est, ut imperatori fidelitatis juramentum, secundum formam aliorum principum, qui eum præcesserant, exhiberet. Comes negavit count plane. Unde indignatus imperator insidiabatur illi et Raimund. ejus exercitui, præcipiens militibus suis, ut repente in legionibus suis spreta fide irruentes, usque ad mortem ipsum etiam comitem persequi attemptarent. Centuriones igitur imperatoris agminibus militaribus cum suis Græculis expediti, domini sui jussionem exequentes, clam et de nocte in comitis irruunt expeditiones, et quos immunitos invenerunt, plurimos peregerunt. Comes autem hæc audiens, imperatori proditionis objecit infamiam; unde imperator erubescens et facti pœnitens, Boamundum, qui adhuc in ulteriori maris litore cum Boamundis suis residebat, ad se facit evocari, ut per ejus et principum suorum interventum comitis sibi animum possit reconciliare. Qui ad ejus vocationem venientes, licet multum displiceret quod factum fuerat, cum viderent Rog. Wend. quod non esset ultionis locus, cum ad majora properarent, ad exhortationem eorum comes et imperator reconciliantur. Et, juxta formam fidelitatis ab aliis factam, juramentum comes adquiescens et deprecabilis exhibendo, in imperiale gratiam plene receptus, donis ingentibus honoratur. Forma autem fidelitatis hæc est, in quam omnes consenserunt totius principes occidentis: Quod videlicet, civitates et castella, cum possessionibus aliis, quæ ad jus imperatoris spectare videbantur, si ea possent subjugare, sibi redderent incontinenti, salvis

summoned,  
for the pur-  
pose of re-  
concilia-  
tion.

fealty ex-  
acted by  
the emperor.

<sup>1</sup> est] Interlined.

A.D. 1096. principibus manubiis omnibus in eisdem inventis. Quod quibusdam tamen ex nobilibus nimis videbatur iniquum, ut scilicet sui sanguinis effusione mercarentur commodum<sup>1</sup> alienum. Imperator autem, ut satisfaceret peregrinis, juravit quod ipsis auxilium fidele impenderet et consilium, quibus possent inimicos fidei debellare. In hoc tandem omnium pacifice et grataanter resedit sententia. Venit interea Constantinopolim comitis exercitus, qui statim de mandato ipsius ad eos qui praecesserant transiens, ceteris legionibus est conjunctus.

*Dux Normannorum Robertus venit in Angliam,  
valedicturus<sup>2</sup> fratribus suis.*

Robert,  
duke of  
Normandy,  
comes to  
England, to  
solicit pe-  
cuniary aid.  
Hiis denique temporibus dux Normannorum Rober-  
tus, sanguine et strenuitate magnanimus, venit in  
Angliam, fratribus suis antequam peregrinaretur vale-  
dicturus, simul et ab eis consilium et auxilium cum  
favore fraterno postulaturus. Quem rex Angliae Wil-  
lelmus et Henricus frater ejus cum omni reverentia sus-  
ceperunt. Dux autem dulci colloquio affatur utrumque,  
dicens, "Nostis, fratres carissimi, quid pater noster  
Willelmus, rex Anglorum magnificus, nobis dixerit.  
moriturus, videlicet quod Angliam sibi<sup>3</sup> subjugasset,  
multos hujus regni nobiles multiplicitate affixit, veri-  
tatem in promissis transgrediendo. Gravi igitur ductus.  
pœnitentia, in extremis mihi coram vobis dixit, 'Fili.  
mi, Roberte, novi quod vir strenuus et, bellicosus sis,  
ad transfretandum et fidei hostes debellandum ydo-  
neus; supplico et supplicando impero, quatinus, naeta.  
temporis opportunitate,<sup>4</sup> onus peregrinationis crucesig-  
natus pro salute tua, mea, fratrumque tuorum, hume-.

<sup>1</sup> *commodum*] comodum, MS.

<sup>2</sup> *valedicturus*] valedicturus, MS.

<sup>3</sup> *quod Angliam sibi*] So also in

F. ; but we should probably read

*quod postea sibi Angliam.*

<sup>4</sup> *opportunitate*] oportunitate, MS.

.ris tuis assume.<sup>1</sup> Ecce nunc tempus ydoneum.<sup>2</sup> Ego A.D. 1096.  
 .igitur paternæ exhortationis non immemor, cruce, ut  
 .nostis, pro ipso et nobis consignor, ut cum aliis prin-  
 .cipibus Deo militem in terra, quam Dominus noster  
 .Jhesus Christus consecravit; unde, sicut nobis commune  
 .est negotium, commune sit et suffragium. Unde atten-  
 .tius supplico, quatinus mihi de thesaurorum vestrorum  
 .copiis peregrinaturo velitis impertire." Cui rex Wil-  
 .lelmus, tam fratris primogeniti quam patris oblitus  
 .beneficiorum, torvo vultu respondit, "Thesauris multis  
 .multum indigeo; amicus enim tuus rex Francorum  
 .mihi, ut noceat, insidiatur. Nolo pro te thesauro de-  
 .stitui, vel in aliquo decrescere vel depauperari." Cui  
 .dux iratus, "O fratum medie sed degener! tu, me  
 .primogenito supplantato, regnum Angliæ opulentissi-  
 .mum nequier invasisti, quo et nequier abuteris; et  
 .si non mihi succurrere dignareris, animæ patris nostri,  
 .qui te in regem creavit, teneremini patrocinari." Et  
 .cum jam ad jurgia erigerentur, compescuit eos Henri-  
 .cus intumentes. Ad quem versa facie dux ait, "Et  
 .tu, frater, de subsidio postulato quid dicis? Memorare,  
 .quæso, quantum thesaurum et qualem de ærario tibi  
 .delegavit pater noster<sup>2</sup> patefacto; vere plus tibi soli  
 .quam toti generi suo." Cui Henricus, "Nosti, frater,  
 .quod mihi injunxit pro redemptione animæ suæ ex-  
 .inde unum nobile fundare cœnobium, ad quod necesse  
 .habeo auri et argenti copiis abundare.<sup>3</sup> Verumtamen  
 .quia, ut asseris, commune nobis est negotium istud,  
 .non possum tibi penitus deesse"—commota namque  
 .fuerunt viscera ejus affectu fraterno;—"commodabo<sup>4</sup>  
 .tibi mille libras argenti." Et rex Willelmus eru-  
 .bescens ex quo vidit fratris misericordiam Henrici,  
 .mitigato animo, ipsi duci decem milia librarum argenti

<sup>1</sup> *assume*] So in F.; but the sense requires *assumeris*.

<sup>2</sup> *pater noster*] Added in marg.

<sup>3</sup> *abundare*] habundare, MS.

<sup>4</sup> *commodabo*] comodabo, MS.

A.D. 1096. commodavit,<sup>1</sup> interposito ducatu Normanniæ pro pig-  
 The duchy nore.<sup>2</sup> Cui dux gratias agendo adquiescens, supplicat  
 of Nor- ut tutor Normanniæ incolas non depauperaret, lucos non  
 mandy is left in pawn explanaret, terminos non abbreviaret. Quod benigne  
 by Robert. concessit uterque fratum. Et sic valedicto ipsis, re-  
 cessit dux magnificus Normannorum R[obertus].

*De peregrinatione Roberti, ducis Normannorum.*

March of Robert, duke of Normandy, and his allies. *Peractis igitur provide quæ ad iter suum fuerant . R. Wend. ii. 79.* necessaria, se principibus adjungere præcedentibus dux omnium peregrinorum novissimus elaborat. Cui sese . fol. 20 a. peregrinanti peregrinaturi adjunxerunt, Robertus, comes Flandrensis, Eustachius, comes Boloniensis,<sup>3</sup> Stephanus, comes Blesencis, comes Carnotensis,<sup>4</sup> comes Stephanus Rog. Wend. Albemarlensis, Rothrodus,<sup>5</sup> comes Perticensis, Rogerus de Barnevilla; de Britannia viri magni Fernanus<sup>6</sup> et Conanus. Sequebantur insuper Angli, Flandenses, Brebancii, Britones, Andegavenses, Pictavienses, Galli occidentales cum Normannis,<sup>7</sup> et omnes populi, qui ab oceano<sup>8</sup> Britannico usque ad Alpes mediterraneo<sup>9</sup> tractu regiones incoluerunt. Isti omnes in negotium Crucifixi profecti, in Apuliam et Calabriam, circa hiemis in gruentis initium, nivium et glacierum vitantes incomoda,<sup>10</sup> ibidem expectantes, donec aura suavior arrideret, respirarunt.

They winter in Apulia and Calabria.

<sup>1</sup> *commodavit*] comodavit, MS.

<sup>2</sup> *pignore*] pingnore, MS.

<sup>3</sup> *Boloniensis*] Partly on erasure.

<sup>4</sup> This is an error, copied from Wendover, since Stephen was not only earl of Blois, but of Chartres also.

<sup>5</sup> *Rothrodus*] Bothrodus, MS.

<sup>6</sup> *Fernanus*] So also F.; Fergan-dus, W. A. C. D.

<sup>7</sup> *Galli . . . Normannis*] In the MS. these words are inserted after *Perticensis*, and so in F.; but I have removed them here on the authority of W. and A. C. D., all of which, however, omit *cum Normannis*.

<sup>8</sup> *oceano*] oceano, MS.

<sup>9</sup> *mediterraneo*] mediteraneo, MS.

<sup>10</sup> *incomoda*] incomoda, MS.

*De perfectione ecclesiae Norwicensis.*

Rog.Wend. Circa idem tempus fabricata est et perfecta ecclesia A.D. 1096.  
 ii. 80. Norwicensis; et pro clericis, monachi feliciter subro- The church  
 gati. of Norwich completed.

*De obsidione Nicææ, civitatis nobilissimæ.*

Rog.Wend. Anno Domini M<sup>o</sup>.XC<sup>o</sup>.VII<sup>o</sup>., dux Godefridus cum suis A.D. 1097.  
 ii. 80. legionibus apud Constantinopolim, dux Boamundus cum Law made  
 suis apud urbem Castoream, comes Tholosanus cum suis by the cru-  
 apud Pelagoniam, celebres Dominicæ Nativitatis dies saders to  
 transigentes, decreverunt unusquisque in loco suo, in- repress  
 tuitu religionis, manus licet avidas a præda qualibet rapine.  
 cohibere. Hii omnes in sequenti vere, compositis sardinis,  
 vehiculis et clitellis, iter aggredientes, versus Nicæam civitatem nobilissimam lora diridunt et vexilla.  
 Qui tandem ad Nichomediam, quæ Bithyniæ metro- Advance to  
 polis est, venientes, habuerunt obviam<sup>1</sup> venerabilem Niconedia.  
 sacerdotem Petrum Heremitam ibidem, cum paucis sibi  
 superstitibus, reliquisque legionibus salutatis, principi-  
 bus est conjunctus. Ubi ab omnibus benigne sus-  
 ceptus, de suorum amissione meruit compassionem et  
 consolationem, et donativa suscipere in restaurationem.  
 . Multiplicatis igitur cotidie, ad instar torrentis, qui  
 . de nivibus resolutis suscipit incrementum, armatorum  
 Rog.Wend. copiis, et moderamine congruo iter expedientes, Nicæam Siege of  
 ii. 81. Dei gratia pervenerunt. Ubi, castris in girum dispo- Nice.  
 sitis, loca tamen venturis [reservantes],<sup>2</sup> urbem mensc  
 Maio, xv<sup>a</sup>. die mensis, die videlicet Dominicæ Ascensio-  
 nis, obsederunt. Comes vero Tholosanus, negotiis per-

<sup>1</sup> *obviam*] So also W. A. C. D. F. Corr. *obvium* in Edd. and ed. Wend.

<sup>2</sup> *reservantes*] In the margin is noted *dub.* (that is to say, *dubium*,

to indicate an error in the text), and the word wanting is supplied from W. A. C. D.

A.D. 1097. tractatis, sumpta ab imperatore licentia, ad urbem prædictam pervenit velox et expeditus; et ceteris se principibus obsidionem agentibus est conjunctus.

*Qualiter dux Robertus venit ad obsidionem Nicææ.*

Robert,  
duke of  
Normandy,  
advances  
to Constan-  
tinople.  
  
Gifts re-  
ceived from  
the em-  
peror.  
  
He crosses  
the Helles-  
pont, and  
marches to  
Nice.  
  
Nota nu-  
merum ob-  
sidentium  
Nicæam.

Audiens ergo dux Normannorum Robertus, Nicæam Rog.Wend. ii. 81. urbem a principibus, qui ipsum præcesserant, jam esse obsidione vallatam, convocatis viæ suæ consortibus, sarcinis compositis, ad mare descendit. Et moram,

quam fecerat in Apulia, redimere cupiens, cum omni tranquillitate Ylyrico, Macedonia, et utraque Tracia transcursis, Constantinopolim pervenit. Ubi ab imperatore Alexio<sup>1</sup> honorifice vocatus, more aliorum principum fidelitatem, tam ipse quam comites qui cum ipso venerant, sub forma fecerunt prætaxata. Venerat autem dux cum majori et nobiliori comitatu, et elegantius armatis, quam aliquis ceterorum. Unde in ampliorem gratiam receptus, in auro, vestibus pretiosis, vasis tam artificio quam materia admiratione dignis, olosericis et gemmis, dona suscepit ab imperiali munificentia protinus uberiora; quæ merito occidentalibus admirationem generarunt. Deinde, sumpta ab imperatore licentia, transito Hellesponto, id est, Brachio Sancti Georgii,<sup>2</sup> cum suis legionibus Nicæam pervenit; quem principes ipsum expectantes cum magna devotione et gaudio amplexantur. Ipse igitur dux, et qui cum eo erant, locum sibi deputatum ac reservatum optinentes, castra magnifice statuerunt. Hic igitur primum ex Rog.Wend. ii. 82.

diversis regionibus, linguis et nationibus exercitus Dei viventis congregatus, sub certa computatione est inventus habens peditum secenta milia, equitum vero loricatorum centum milia. Qui omnes in girum præ-

---

<sup>1</sup> *Alexio]* A. in the text; but <sup>2</sup> *id est . . . Georgii]* Added in *Alexio* in marg. | *marg., but inserted in text of F.*

dictæ urbis considentes, laborum suorum Domino Deo A.D. 1097.  
 exercituum primitias consecrarunt. Nec mihi videtur  
 a materia cronicorum et historiarum super eventibus  
 Angliæ confectarum alienum, si inceptum opus hoc  
 prosequar subarratum, et bellum hoc inclitum sub  
 brevitate describam castigata; præsertim cum ex hoc  
 totius ecclesiæ universalis status et conditio, immo  
 etiam fidei Catholice ipso tempore dependeret. Et  
 tam generali Christiano exercitui, frater regis Anglo-  
 rum, scilicet dux Robertus, vel summus fuisse, vel Duke Ro-  
 bert one of  
 unus ex summis venerabilis moderator. Hæc namque the chief  
 inter ingenuos principes pia fuit contentio, quod qui-  
 leaders.  
 libet alium sibi præficere cupiebat superiorem.

*Incipit historia de obsidione et captione Nicææ,  
 civitatis nobilissimæ.*

R. Wend. . Nicæa urbs magna, nobilis et formosa, in qua quon- Account of  
 ii. 82. dam celebrata fuit sinodus generalis, rerum omnium Nice.  
 opulentissima, una est de civitatibus Bithiniæ; cuius  
 dominus erat quidam Turcorum potentissimus, et totius  
 regionis princeps, nomine Solimannus. Hujus autem Power of  
 antecessores ab imperatore Constantinopolitano, Romano Soliman.  
 nomine, qui ante hunc Alexium erat tertius, has occu-  
 paverant regiones, et easdem huic tradiderant Soli-  
 fol. 20 b. manno, cognomento<sup>1</sup> de Halapia. Possidebat autem  
 provincias universas a Tharso Ciliciæ usque ad Helles-  
 pontum, ita ut in confinio Constantinopolitanæ civita-  
 tis procurationes suas haberet et procuratores, qui tri-  
 buta et vectigalia totius regionis ad commodum<sup>2</sup> domini  
 sui colligerent, et collecta confiscarent. Ipse autem  
 cum multitudine copiosa armatorum montibus vicinis,  
 vix ab obsidione decem miliaribus distans, opportu-  
 nitatem<sup>3</sup> quærebat, quo ordine urbem posset a cruce-

---

<sup>1</sup> cognomento] cognomento, MS. | <sup>3</sup> opportunitatem] oportunitatem, MS.  
<sup>2</sup> commodum] comodum, MS.

A.D. 1097. signatorum inquietudine liberare. Tunc idem Solimannus, ut cives ibidem<sup>1</sup> obsessos consolaretur, duos messengers ad illos direxit nuncios, qui navigio per lacum ad urbem descenderent, et mandata sibi imposita ad cives obsessos occulte perferrent. Sed unus ex illis missis Rog. Wend.

ii. 83.

[autem]<sup>2</sup> nuncium, qui vivus captus fuerat, in arcto ponentes, didicerunt ab eo, quod Solimannus in crastino venturus erat, ut obsidionem solveret et obsessos liberaret potentissime; et quod ipsi duo mitterentur, ut cives præmuniti, obsessores invaderent glomeratim ex eundo. Solimannus igitur in crastino circa horam tertiam, juxta dicta nunciorum, cum quingentis armatorum milibus de montibus ad plana descendens, præmisit decem milia equitum ad portam meridianam, quæ comiti Tholosano commissa fuerat; et cum impetu multo in ejus irruunt legiones. A quibus accepti, et hostilibus conatibus mirabiliter conftractis et aciebus dissolutis, jam erant in fugam versi, cum ecce Solimannus cum majoribus superveniens copiis, illos disolutos redarguens formidolositatis, reducensque in nos-tros, redire compellit et invitox. At dux Godefridus et dominus Boamundus, comesque Flandrensis, cum suis ad unguem armatis, videntes comitis exercitum supra vires jam fatigari, ad instar fulguris irruunt constanter in hostium legiones; et, imperfectis ex illis ad <sup>iii</sup>i<sup>or</sup>. milia et nonnullis captivatis, in fugam illos compulerunt.

Nostrates autem hac prima felici sidere potiti victoria, obsidionem continuant, dispositis in girum catervis militibus, secundum militarem disciplinam, in hunc modum: Ad portam orientalem, sedit dux Godefridus, cum Tancredo et aliis principibus suis.<sup>3</sup> Ad portam

<sup>1</sup> *ibidem*] Added in marg.<sup>2</sup> *autem*] Supplied from W.A.C.D.<sup>3</sup> *cum Tancredo . . . suis*] There is a manifest error here (copiedalso in F.), and we should read *cum duobus fratribus suis et eorum catervis*, as in W. A. C. D., and so Will. Tyr., p. 668.

austalem, comes Raimundus et episcopus Podiensis. A.D. 1097.  
 Ad portam septentrionalem, dominus Boamundus, cum Tancredo et aliis principibus suis. Ad portam occidentalem, dux Normannorum Robertus [et]<sup>1</sup> comes Flandrensis, cum Anglorum optimatibus et nobilibus innumerabilibus, in quibus major confidentia habebatur, utpote in loco suspecto, et qui majori discrimini patere videbatur. Sic ergo undique urbs vallata est<sup>2</sup> militia spectabili, ita quidem, quod antea non perlustrarunt radii solares tam præclararam. Deinde principes nostri, ad terrorem civium inclusorum, capitibus occisorum amputatis, fundis machinarum<sup>3</sup> immissis,<sup>4</sup> in urbem projecerunt mille capita, præter illa, quæ<sup>5</sup> cum quibusdam captivis ad imperatorem dirigebantur.<sup>6</sup>

*De suffossione et ruina cuiusdam maximæ turris.*

Rog. Wend. *Hiis ita gestis, placuit principibus ut petrarias aliasque machinas ad muros urbis applicantes, non segniter ipsos impeterent. Dumque in hoc attentius artifices laborarent, et urbem frequentibus impugnarent congressionibus, curriculo vii. ebdomadarum, quadam die condicto de more assultu, duos nobiles, Baldewinum videlicet Calderun, et Baldwinum de Gant,*

<sup>1</sup> *et]* Supplied from W. A. C. D.

<sup>2</sup> *est]* Interlined.

<sup>3</sup> *fundis machinarum]* et machinis, W. A. C. D.

<sup>4</sup> *immissis]* immensis, F.

<sup>5</sup> *quæ]* Interlined, and the stop originally after *projecerunt* erased, and placed after *capita*.

<sup>6</sup> *in urbem . . . dirigebantur]* The sense of the original text is here singularly altered. In W. and A. C. D. we read, “in urbem projecerunt ; mille capita, cum quibusdam

captivis, ad imperatorem dirigen-  
tes.” In the Edd. the text is (as  
usual) altered arbitrarily by archbp.  
Parker, or his editor, thus : “ad  
terrorem civium *obsessorum*, capi-  
tibus occisorum amputatis, *ex iis*  
*mille capita* machinis *immensis* in  
urbem projecerunt, *quosdam autem*  
*captivorum* ad imperatorem miser-  
runt,” which is founded on a pas-  
sage in Will. Tyr., p. 668.

<sup>7</sup> *segniter]* signiter, MS.

<sup>8</sup> *impugnarent]* impugnarent,  
MS.

A.D. 1097. dum animosius in expugnatione<sup>1</sup> decertarent, nostri casu misero amiserunt. In alio similiter conflictu, de principum consilio iterato, comes Willelmus de Foreis et Gualo de Insula, sicut alii, prædicto<sup>2</sup> jactu lapidis et iactu sagittæ ceciderunt. Guido præterea de Possessa, vir nobilis, ibidein carne solutus est, infirmitate corruptus. Quadam autem die, dum principes universi machinas suas certatim ad murum applicarent, comes Hermannus et Henricus de Ascha, Theutonici, instrumentum quoddam satis artificiose composuerunt machinale, in qua inquam<sup>3</sup> machina equites xx. collocantes, ad murum applicuerunt; quæ tamen, instantibus ad defensionem viriliter<sup>4</sup> civibus, magnorum impulsu lapidum ita contrita est, ut ipsa sui mole comprimeret contentos cadens universos. Fervebant tamen alii nihilominus ad opus inceptum, et assiduis assaultibus requiem civibus denegabant. Verum lacus civitati adjacens nostrorum præcipue opus et operam præpediebat. Nam cives perinde Rog. Wend.  
ii. 85. liberius navigantes, victum et alimentorum copiam in urbem intulerunt in duplex nocumentum, dum nostris subtraheretur et in urbem apportaretur. At principes, adhibitis ad lacum navibus et armatis impositis, victualia civibus subtraxerunt. Ad turrim quoque quandam, quæ erat in parte urbis australi, ceteris omnibus eminentior ac fortior, cum omnia deficerent argumenta, tandem fossores adhibuerunt, qui eam cum multo labore suffodientes, et ligneis appodiis ad horam sustentantes, demum quo consumerentur igne supposito, cum materies sustentativa in cineres foret redacta, turris cum lignorum fragore et lapidum collisione cecidit, ut mugitu et terræ-motu horribili audientium corda perturbans,

One of  
the chief  
towers is  
under-  
mined.

<sup>1</sup> *expugnatione*] expungnacione, MS.

after *Gant*, namely, “unum jaetu lapidum, alterum jaetu sagittæ.”

<sup>2</sup> *prædicto*] This word refers to a sentence not found in the present text, but is inserted in W. A. C. D.

<sup>3</sup> *inquam*] Om. F.

<sup>4</sup> *viriliter*] On an erasure.

non modicum ingereret sua ruina terrorem. Ad soni- A.D. 1097.  
tum tanti præcipitii<sup>1</sup> excitatæ legiones nostræ, clamorem  
insultationis ad sidera levantes, ad arma convolant,  
animos excitant, quasi urbem protinus ingressuri.

*De captione Nicææ civitatis famosissimæ.*

Rog. Wend. Solimanni vero uxor, ex turris ruina in desperationem The wife  
ii. 85. versa, navibus cum suis sibi carioribus devecta, ab urbe <sup>of Soliman</sup> is taken  
clam egreditur. Sed galeati, qui in galeis lacum nocte prisoner.  
dieque perambulantes transitus custodiebant, fugientem  
capiunt, et captam principibus præsentant. Captis  
igitur cum illa duobus filiis suis adhuc tenellis, sub  
arcta custodia deputatur<sup>2</sup>. Tunc etiam temporis dux  
magnificus Godefridus Turcum quendam, qui multos  
ex nostris telis confederat venenatis, et insuper prin-  
cipes verbis probrosis affecerat, considerata subtiliter  
opportunitate, sagitta cerebro perforato, extra murum  
in fossatum dedit præcipitem. Tunc undique omnes Assault  
nostrates ad insultum animati, lituis perstrepentibus et <sup>and capture</sup>  
tubis clangentibus, urbem rapido insultu aggrediuntur. <sup>of Nice.</sup>  
Repletur aer clamoribus, non prosunt inclusis sagittæ in-  
R. Wend. . fectæ, non tela ignita, non molares rotantes, non ligna  
ii. 86. . caduca, non missilia formidabilia, non alia excogitata ar-  
gumenta defensionis. Tunc cives ad ditionem compulsi;  
resignaverunt urbem Tatino, cuidam imperatoris ministro,  
quod quidem nostris satis placuit principibus ad majora  
properantibus, juxta quod fuerat imperatori compromis-  
sum. Recepérunt autem peregrini sclavos suos omnes, Release of  
tam illos qui in obsidione capti erant a civibus et incolis, <sup>the Chris-</sup>  
quam illos, qui de<sup>3</sup> exercitu Petri et aliorum a<sup>4</sup> Soli- <sup>tian pri-</sup>  
manno captivi detinebantur, ut prius dictum est. Prin-  
cipes igitur nuncios ad imperatorem dirigentes, hortati

<sup>1</sup> *præcipitii*] *precipucii*, MS.

<sup>2</sup> *deputatur*] So also F.; *deputan-*  
*tur*, W. A. C. D.

<sup>3</sup> *de*] On an erasure.

<sup>4</sup> *a*] *qui a*, MS. and F.

A.D. 1097. sunt instantius, ut ad partes illas tot de suis principibus transmittat, qui sufficient ad custodiam civitatis; præsentaveruntque ei uxorem Solimanni cum filiis ejus, quod gratanter super omnia acceptavit.<sup>1</sup> Imperator igitur lætabundus de familiaribus suis quosdam direxit, qui urbem cum omni captivorum substantia in auro et argento et omni genere suppelletilis susciperent, per quos etiam singulis peregrinis donaria transmittens ingentia, tam literis quam viva voce benivolentiam captabat singulorum. Et pro tam laborioso servitio et imperii sui tanto incremento, gratias refert copiosas.

*Cronica.* Capta est autem urbs Nicæa anno Domini M<sup>o</sup>. XC<sup>o</sup>. VII<sup>o</sup>. mense Julii,<sup>2</sup> xx<sup>a</sup>. die mensis.

### *De progressione crucesignatorum.*

Advance of the crusaders. Soluta igitur obsidione, iterum de mandato principum crucesignatorum ad proficiscendum invitatur Dei exercitus triumphantis. Unde, compositis sarcinis, iii<sup>o</sup>. kalendas Julii iter arripiunt prosperatum; et pontem quandam transeuntes, in duo exercitum divisorunt. Dominus autem Boamundus et dux Normannorum Robertus, comes quoque Blesensis, Hugo de Sancto Paulo et Tancredus, cum suis cohortibus lœvam seuti, in vallem, cui nomen est Georgii,<sup>3</sup> prospere per venerunt. Reliqui vero omnes dextram tenentes, vix castris predictorum duobus distantes miliaribus, dietam compleverunt. Solimannus vero illatae non immemor injuriæ, in crastino circa horam diei secundam, adest cum Turcorum agminibus infinitis, quorum numerus ducentorum milium æstimationem excedere dicebatur.

29 June. They are attacked by Soliman. Rog. Wend. ii. 86.

Rog. Wend. ii. 87.

<sup>1</sup> *præsentaveruntque . . . acceptavit]* Added in the margin, and inserted in text of F.

<sup>2</sup> *Julii]* This is an error copied from Wendover, and so in A. C. D.

F. We should read *Junii*. Cf. Will. Tyr., p. 672.

<sup>3</sup> *Georgii]* Gorgoni, W. A. C. D., and so Will. Tyr., *ibid.*

Nostri autem, per exploratores corum adventu præ- A.D. 1097.  
cognito, sarcinas et currus cum debilibus suis secus  
harundinetum prope ibidem locaverunt, et ad arma  
convolantes, equos præparant, vexilla explicant, sese  
consolantur, sese invicem cohortantur<sup>1</sup> dicentes, “ No-  
biscum Deus est, quis contra nos ; simus inseparabiles,  
et erimus insuperabiles ! ” Et, missis nunciis festinis  
ad alium exercitum, a quo temere recesserant, hortantur  
instantius, ut auxilium conferant desperatis. Sed in-  
terim, nostris invitatis, bellum infertur horribile et cru-  
entissimum ; in quo ancipiti certamine et dampnoso  
Christiana contrita sunt agmina vehementer. Nam  
eorum equi insolitus non ferentes Turcorum buccinarum  
et pellium extendarum, quas tabercula vocamus, tu- The eru-  
multum horribilem, calcaribus non parebant, appropin- saders give  
quare hostibus formidantes. Dum igitur Christiani way, but  
fugam inire cogerentur, supervenit feliciter magnificus are rein-  
Normannorum dux Robertus, Normannis suis et Anglis forced by  
comitantibus, voce magna clamans et dicens, “ Quo the duke of  
fugitis, milites, quo fugitis ? equi Turcorum nostris  
sunt velociores, unde fuga præsidio non est ; melius  
est bene mori, quam turpiter vivere.” Hæc cum dix- Personal  
isset, in quandam Turcorum, qui maximus inter alios valour of  
esse videbatur, dux miles illustris nulli secundus lan- Robert.  
ceam vibratam direxit, acieque<sup>2</sup> ipsorum Turcorum  
hinc inde dissipata, scutum ipsius, loricam quoque cum  
præpectore,<sup>3</sup> necnon et corpus ipsius libere perforavit.  
Erat autem ipse prostratus quidam Turcorum multorum  
rex celeberrimus. Nec adhuc quievit dux fremens ac  
frendens dentibus ; secundum quoque sed et tertium, in  
furore iræ et indignationis suæ, accenso sanguine regali,  
confosso, quasi in momento ad Tartara destinavit. Et  
exclamans<sup>4</sup> ait, “ Regales, regales, Deus adjuva ; contriti

<sup>1</sup> cohortantur] choortantur, MS.<sup>2</sup> acieque] que is interlined.<sup>3</sup> præpectore] prepector, MS. and<sup>4</sup> exclamans] Written *exclans* in

the text, but expuned, and corr.

in marg.

A.D. 1097. sunt inimici tui, Deus !” Et ad instar<sup>1</sup> leænæ catulis. orbatæ in alios fulminando, Turcorum cruce micantem. sine ictu nugatorio gladium inebriavit. Et socios exhortans ait, “Ne parcatis, ne parcatis canibus et canis;” et prævium agmina militum sequebantur confiden- . fol. 21 b. ter, animum et actus ipsius imitantes. Tunc animus rediit . R. Wend. Christianis, pugnaque<sup>2</sup> committitur gravissima et horrenda, in qua dux memoratus cum suis titulum meruit . ii. 88. immortalem. Cæsi sunt autem in illo conflictu de nostris duo principes. Nam Willelmus, Tancredi frater, dum regem quendam Turcorum lancea transfixisset, ejusdem regis lancea perforatur. Godefridus quoque de Monte, dum caput cujusdam pagani amputaret, spiculo transverberatur. Tertius quoque Robertus, scilicet Parisiensis, eodem mortis genere vitam terminavit. Ceciderunt insuper in hoc certamine formidabile ad duo milia peregrinorum. Et cum supra modum multiplicarentur<sup>3</sup> inimici de locis finitimiis advenientes, Christiani . iterum, deficientibus agminibus, in fugam sunt compulsi. Et cum sic affligeretur populus, nec poterat eos dux . Normannorum<sup>4</sup> R[obertus] innuens ense cruentato re- vocare,<sup>5</sup> ecce alias exercitus, quem ducebat dux Godefridus, qui ducem Robertum admodum diligebat, cum . xl<sup>a</sup>. milibus armatorum ; qui omnes acriter in acies irruunt<sup>6</sup> perversorum, et acriter<sup>7</sup> satis et animose decertantes. Et dum Turci tot hostes supervenire conspiciunt, quasi cœlum super se ruiturum conspiciunt, et cum duce suo Solimanno præsidium fugæ capessunt. Quos fugientes Christiani fugantes, cum tanta instantia persequuntur,<sup>8</sup> ut per iiii<sup>or</sup>. miliaria ultra eorum castra, continuam ex eis stragem usque ad

William,  
brother of  
Tancred,  
and two  
other  
chiefs  
slain.

The Chris-  
tians again  
retreat, but  
by the aid  
of duke  
Godfrey  
gain the  
victory.

<sup>1</sup> *instar*] In the text *inter*, but corr. in marg.

<sup>2</sup> *pugnaque*] *pungnaque*, MS.

<sup>3</sup> *multiplicarentur*] *multiplarentur*, MS.

<sup>4</sup> *Normannorum*] *Normanorum*, MS.

<sup>5</sup> *revocare*] Added in marg.

<sup>6</sup> *irruunt*] Altered to *irruentes*, and the alteration afterwards erased.

<sup>7</sup> *acriter*] An error of transcription for *atrociter*, as in W. A. C. D. F.

<sup>8</sup> *persequuntur*] *persequuntur*, MS.

. brachiorum fatigationem continuando operarentur. Et A.D. 1097.  
 captivos omnes, quos Turci ceperant, reducentes, ad  
 castra eorum sunt reversi; ubi reperientes copiam auri  
 et argenti, jumentorum cum gregibus, armentis et vic-  
 tualibus, tentoriis, equis pariter et camelis, in castra  
 propria victores Christiani sunt reversi.<sup>1</sup> Cecidisse au- Number of  
 tem dicuntur in ea die de numero hostium et apud the slain.

Rog.Wend. suos virorum potentum ad tria milia. Actum est itaque  
 ii. 89. hoc prælium die kalendarum Julianum, pugna<sup>2</sup> mul-  
 tum dispari, Turcorum scilicet cl. milibus contra  
 Christianorum l. milia decertantibus.

*De progressu Christianorum a Nicæa subjugata usque  
 ad Antiochiam.*

Rog.Wend. Postquam autem per triduum moram, sibi et equis Onward  
 ii. 90. necessariam,<sup>3</sup> in loco certaminis protraxissent, lituis march of  
 monentibus, se iterum ad iter accingunt inchoatum; the cru-  
 et, transcursa Bithinia universa, Pissidiā sunt ingressi. saders to-  
 Ubi casu in provinciam arentem et in aquosam descendentes, towards  
 ibidem positis importunitate ardoris molestia<sup>4</sup> cœpit Antioch.  
 populus ita deficere, ut plusquam quingenti spiritum exhalarent.<sup>5</sup> Tandem hiis erepti periculis, descenderunt in regionem uberrimam juxta Antiochiam minorem, quæ merito Pissidiæ metropolis est. Ex hinc quoque turmas suas dividentes, dispersi sunt per provincias, ut eas explorarent, quo possent ad principes earum notitiam pervenire.<sup>6</sup> Qui a castris divisi, Heracleam, Lichaoniæ urbem prætereuntes, ad Yconium, ejusdem

<sup>1</sup> *reversi*] recepti, C.D.

*sitis* in A. sec. m. C. D., and so

<sup>2</sup> *pugna*] *pungna*, MS.

ed. Wend. We should, no doubt,

<sup>3</sup> *necessariam*] *necessaria*, MS.

read, *præ sitis importunitate et*

<sup>4</sup> *positis . . . molestia*] So also in F. In the Edd. the passage is thus printed: "Ibidem fixis castris, importunitate ardoris et molestia;" but without any authority. W. A. pr. m. and I. have *p<sup>2</sup>sitis*, but po-

*ardoris molestia*, as confirmed by

the original passage in Will. Tyr.,

p. 674.

<sup>5</sup> *exhalarent*] *exalarent*, MS.

<sup>6</sup> *pervenire*] *perferre*, W. A. C. D.

A.D. 1097 regionis metropolim, pervenerunt; quam omni habitatore vacuam invenerunt. Turci enim civitates et castella deserentes, cognito peregrinorum adventu, fiduciam resistendi non habebant. Indeque Marasiam urbem transeuntes, Ciliciam sunt ingressi. Habet autem Cilicia ab oriente Cœlessyriam, ab occidente Ysauriam, a septentrione juga montis Tauri, ab austro Cypricum mare. Habet etiam duas urbes metropolitanas, Anavarzan et Tharsum, doctoris gentium Pauli solum natale. Hæc civitas jam subdita est Baldewino, fratri comitis Godefridi. Robertus quoque, dux Normannorum martius, quandam cepit urbem Azena vocatam, et dedit eam ilico, quia sicut erat magnificus fuit et munificus, cui-dam militi suo Symeoni. Dux vero Boamundus et comes Reimundus cuperunt aliam urbem, quam Petro de Alpibus contulerunt. Inde quoque ad Oxan profecti, urbem optinuerunt; et Petrus de Russelun cepit Rufam, et plurima castella subegit. Guelfus quidam, natione Burgundus, Adama urbem sibi subjugavit, qui Tancrenum in ea supervenientem benigne suscepit. Tancredus autem<sup>1</sup> inde profectus, Mamistram pervenit, et, Turcis ibidem interfectis, urbem illam sibi subjugavit. Indeque ad minorem Alexandriam descendens, urbem optinuit, et provinciam sibi totam subjugavit.

Cities captured by various chiefs.

Edessa submits to Baldwin, brother of duke Godfrey.

Baldewinus autem, frater ducis Godefredi, ad majorem reversus exercitum, assumpta militia, in partes septentrionales descendit, et regionem totam usque ad Eufraten in sua jura recepit. Exiit ergo fama ejus ad cives Edessanos, qui trans flumen habitant,<sup>2</sup> quod tantus princeps de gente occidentis advenerat. Qui vocantes eum, humiliter rogabant, ut sibi et suæ civitati præesse dignaretur.

Rog. Wend.  
ii. 90.

<sup>1</sup> *autem*] an, MS.

<sup>2</sup> *habitant*] habitabant, W. A. C. D.

*Nota quid Edessa<sup>1</sup> civitas.*

Rog.Wend. Est autem Edessa nobilis Mesopotamiæ civitas, quæ A.D. 1097.  
 ii. 90. alio nomine Rages appellatur; ad quam Tobias<sup>2</sup> senior City of  
 Tobiam filium suum misit, ut a Gabelo cognato re- Edessa the  
 posceret decem talenta. Ad hanc igitur veniens Bal- Rages.  
 deuuinus, a duce urbis et populo universo cum gloria Further  
 suscipitur et honore. Indeque urbem Samosatum ad- successes  
 veniens, cum vidisset eam quasi inexpugnabilem, datis<sup>3</sup> of Baldwin.  
 fol. 22 a. aureorum decem milibus, emit eam a duce civitatis, et  
 in sua jura recepit. Et inde ad Serorgiam transiens,  
 Rog.Wend. obsedit eam et cepit. Quod cum factum fuerat, liber  
 ii. 91. commeatus ab Edessa usque ad Antiochiam transire  
 volentibus patebat. Major interea exercitus ad urbem Progress  
 Maresiam profectus, quam Turci præ timore vacuam of the larger  
 reliquerant, Christianos in ea solummodo invenerunt. body of the  
 Inde miserunt Robertum, Normannorum ducem, ad  
 urbem Artasiam,<sup>4</sup> cum comite Flandrensi; quorum ad- crusaders.  
 ventum cum Christiani<sup>5</sup> cives cognovissent,<sup>6</sup> Turcos  
 omnes, qui multo jam elapso tempore eos<sup>7</sup> oppresse-  
 rant, necaverunt, et extra urbem omnium capita pro-  
 jecerunt. Distat autem hæc civitas ab Antiochia mili-  
 aribus xv., quæ etiam Calquis alio nomine nuncupatur.

*De transitu cuiusdam pontis, et obsidione Antiochiae.*

Rog.Wend. Hiis ita gestis, revocatae sunt omnes legiones dis- The forces  
 ii. 91. persæ per diversas provincias, et, exercitu redintegrato, are re- assembled.  
 generale fit interdictum inter eos, ut nullus de cetero,  
 nisi jussus, præsumat ab exercitu separari. Mane  
 autem facto, acies versus Antiochiam dirigunt et vexilla;  
 sed quoniam fluvius Orontes, qui et vulgari appella-

<sup>1</sup> *Edessa*] Edissa, MS.<sup>2</sup> *Tobias*] Tobia, MS.<sup>3</sup> *datis*] dans, MS.<sup>4</sup> *Artasiam*] On an erasure.<sup>5</sup> *Christiani*] Added in marg.<sup>6</sup> *cognovissent*] congnovissent, MS.<sup>7</sup> *eos*] Interlined.

A.D. 1097. tione Fær dicitur, in via medius erat, super quem ponte in audierunt fortissimum esse obstaculum et munimen hostium, miserunt Robertum, ducem Normannicum, quasi fulgur qui tonitrum prævenit, cum sociis. Duke Robert is sent to force a passage over the river Orontes. expeditissimis, qui sequentibus iter præparerent; et si quid difficultatis emerget, principes sequentes super eo redderent certiores. Præcedebat autem dux majores legiones, donec ad prædictum pontem pervenirent. Erat quidem pons lapideus et magnus, in utraque fronte turres habens fortissimas, in quibus centum viri Rog. Wend. ii. 92. armis strenui, balistarum usum habentes, fuerant deputati, qui pontem vel fluminis vadum volentes transire violenter rearcerent. Advenerant præterea ab Antiochia equites septingenti, qui in ulteriori fluminis ripa constituti, transitum nostris denegare pro viribus decerabant. Ad hunc quoque pontem, cum transire non poterat dux Robertus, ab hostibus prædictis impeditus, fit utrobique<sup>1</sup> conflictus asperrimus, qui usque ad adventum majoris exercitus non cessabat. Postquam ergo universæ convenerunt legiones, lituis perstrepentibus et tubis clangentibus, pontem invadunt, viribus totis hostes repellunt; et alii interim, vado reperto, flumen potenter transeunt, et ripam, hostibus fugatis, attingunt ulteriore. Deinde, translato exercitu universo, castra statuerunt, et<sup>2</sup> die sequenti inter montes et fluvium, viam regiam sequentes, ante urbem infra<sup>3</sup> miliare unum castra locaverunt.

### *De commendatione civitatis Antiochiae.*

Account of Antioch. Est autem Antiochia civitas præclara, ab Antiocho, filio Alexandri Macedonis, dicta, eo quod ipsam caput regni sui constituerit. In hac postmodum apostolorum

<sup>1</sup> *utrobique*] At first written *ibi-que*. F. follows the correction. In W. A. C. D. <sup>2</sup> *et*] in, MS. and F. Corrected from W. A. C. D.

<sup>3</sup> *infra*] *infra*, MS., throughout.

princeps cathedram tenuit pontificalem sub Theofilo, viro A.D. 1097. venerabili, qui erat in civitate potentissimus; a quo etiam fuit Theofilis nuncupata. Hæc quoque priscis temporibus dicta est Reblata, ad quam Sedeclias, rex Judæ,<sup>1</sup> ante Nabugodonosor regem ductus est et oculis privatus. Sita est autem in provincia Syriacœles, quæ majoris Syriæ pars est, agros habens uberrimos, rivis ac fontibus delectabilis, et amoenitate singularis. Erat Anxianus, autem dominus civitatis quidam, Anxianus nomine, <sup>governor of the city.</sup>

Rog. Wend. natione Thurcus; qui de familia fuerat magni Soldani

ii. 93. Persarum, nomine Belfecho, qui provincias illas omnes

suo, expulsis Christianis, imperio subjugarat. Principibus igitur occidentis complacuit, ut ad urbem accedentes, eam obsidione vallarent; unde urbi appropinquantes xv<sup>o</sup>. kalendas Novembris, acies in girum in hunc modum disponunt. Porro cum quinque essent

<sup>18 Oct.</sup>

portæ civitatis, quarum duæ propter fluminis vicinitatem non poterant obsideri, dimisit illas exercitus inob sessas, reliquis tribus obsidione repagulatis. Superiorem igitur portam obsedit Boamundus, cum hiis qui ab initio ejus castra fuerant secuti. Juxta eum vero sed sit magnificus dux Normannorum Robertus, et comes Flandrensis cum sociis suis; qui a castris Boamundi usque ad portam Canis agmina conjunxerunt. Juxta illos autem continuarunt obsidionem comes Tholosanus et episcopus Podiensis Aimerus sive Athelmarus, cum aliis nobilibus, qui eorum fuerant vexilla secuti. Juxta illos itaque sederunt aliis copulati dux spectabilis Godefridus, cum fratribus suis Eustachio et Baldewino, et aliae legiones multæ, quæ ipsum quasi rectorem fuerant subsecutæ.

Siege of the  
city, and  
position of  
the Chris-  
tian army.

<sup>1</sup> *Judæ]* *Juda*, MS.

*Boamundus victalia quærens, multos Turcorum interfecit.*

A.D. 1097. Civitate itaque in hunc modum obsessa, locaverunt <sup>Rog. Wend.</sup> Progress of machinas suas in locis opportunis,<sup>1</sup> petrarias scilicet, <sup>ii. 93.</sup> the siege. trubulos et mangonellos, ex quibus crebros lapides emittebant, et dampna quæ civibus inclusis terrorem non minimum incusserunt, irrogabant. Castellum quo- <sup>Rog. Wend.</sup> que ligneum latum componentes et altum, balistarios <sup>ii. 94.</sup> cum speculatoribus in eo caute locaverunt, qui in insidiis civium constituti, telis ignitis et venenatis multos neci ex hostibus tradiderunt. Turci e contrario machinas pro machinis constituentes, tela pro telis, et lapides pro lapidibus, in peregrinorum perniciem non segniter remiserunt. Tandem, innumeris hinc inde interfectis, et maxime ex illis qui victalia quærebant, deficientibus alimentis, dominus Boamundus et comes Flandrensis Robertus, de communi consilio, ut pabula quærerent, exierunt. Audientes autem Turchos esse in quodam castello et villa magna, in regione hostium, bonis omnibus referta, profecti sunt illuc cum legionibus suis; ubi multis, Deo volente, a paucis trucidatis, spolia multa in suos usus reportarunt. Cognoverunt autem prædicti principes per exploratores suos, Turchorum multitudinem in proximo constitutam, contra quam comitem Flandrensem direxit Boamundus cum viris communis; ipse majoribus copiis stipatus illico secuturus. Comes vero, in opere vir strenuus et probatus, in hostes acriter irruens, centum ex eis gladio peremit. Dumque victor ad socios rediret, ecce alii exploratores multo fortiores nunciant adventarc, ex alio latere emergentes. Contra quos adveniente Boamundo, multiplicatis viribus incedentes, prævia Dei gratia, omnes in fugam compulerunt; et quasi per duo miliaria insequentes eos, stragem non modicam hostibus intulerunt. Indeque cum triumpho

Defeat of  
the Turks  
by the  
count of  
Flanders,  
and Boa-  
mund.

<sup>1</sup> *opportunis*] oportunis, MS.

ad castra revertentes, cum equis, mulis, camelis, asinis, A.D. 1097. armentis et spoliis, quæ contraxerant, agros repleverunt circumpositos, et principes, in victus penuria laborantes, immensa lætitia perfuderunt. Sed quoniam tantæ multitudini vix per dies paucos<sup>1</sup> prædicta licet magna præda sufficere potuit, prævaluit in brevi adeo famæ A famine arises. Rog.Wend. in populo, quod innumera hominum multitudo ab ob-  
ii. 95. sidione recedens, juramentorum et votivæ professionis immemores, clam ad patriam repedarunt. Inter quos etiam et Tatinus, imperatoris procurator Alexii, qui in naso simo mentis proditionem satis indicabat; homo quidem<sup>2</sup> formidolosius, ut quocunque modo fraudem palliaret, relecta in obsidione familia cum tentoriis, recessit irrediturus.

*Filius regis Danorum veniens peregrinis in subsidium, interficitur a Turcis.*

Rog.Wend. Hoc quoque tempore Suanus, Danorum regis filius, Sweyn, son ii. 95. crucesignatus, cum viris mille quingentis optime armatis, of the king of Den- ad obsidionem properans Antiochenam, non longe ab mark, urbe Nicæa Turcorum perpessus insidias, cum suis killed by the Turks. omnibus perfectus est. Sed tamen diu et viriliter ipse et sui hostibus resistentes, ne inulti animas effundere viderentur, cruentam post se proditoribus victoriæ reliquerunt.

*Fames in exercitu invalescit; Deus complacatus succurrit.*

Rog.Wend. Per idem tempus, cum in obsidione famæ de die in Increase of ii. 95. diem invalesceret, et ex fame lues sequeretur, de man- famine in the camp. dato domini Podiensis, qui legatione sedis apostolicae A fast or- in exercitu fungebatur, statutum est, ut triduanum in- dained, and diceretur jejunium in populo. Videbatur enim pru- other regu- lations made.

<sup>1</sup> *paucos*] Added in marg.

| <sup>2</sup> *quidem*] quidam, MS. and F.

A.D. 1097. dentibus viris et literatis, quod, peccatis exigentibus, prædicta incommoda<sup>1</sup> acciderunt. Decreverunt igitur pariter, meretrices omnes, quæ se lotrices appellari fecerunt, ab exercitu sequestrari; adulteria, fornicationes, ebrietates, commissationes, aleas, et horribiles jurationes, simul et omnes fraudes, interdicere universis; ut, omni spurcitia eliminata, adesse sibi divinam misericordiam humiliter implorarent. Factum est autem, ut per gratiam Dei superabundantem,<sup>2</sup> populo ad frugem vitæ melioris revocato, ex parte quiesceret ira Dei, qui cum iratus extiterit, misericordiæ recordatur.

*Jocosa subtilitas Boamundi exploratores abegit.*

Fear occasioned by spies in the camp. Movebantur autem supra modum ex hoc peregrini, quod sciebant exploratores esse in exercitu ex omnibus orientis nationibus, inter quos<sup>3</sup> conversabantur increduli; dum unusquisque eorum de proprio statu sollicitus, scire volebat qualiter se contra tantam expeditionem defendere valuisse. Et cum hujusmodi exploratores multiplicarentur, surrepsit in populo scisma et confusio. Nec enim erat difficile exploratoribus inter nostros latere, cum mercatores in exercitu victualium, alii Græcos, alii Surianos, alii Armenios se esse affirmarent. Et cum hujusmodi exploratores famem invalescere simul et mortalitatem consiperent in exercitu, timuerunt peregrini valde, ne, si tanta calamitas inter gentiles disseminaretur, ipsi, collectis militaribus copiis, supervenientes, peregrinos obruerent universos. Cumque principes contra hoc nullum potuissent remedium invenire, vir perspicacis ingenii Boamundus, circa primum noctis sequentis crepusculum, cum alii sodales per castra Stratagem practised by order of Boamund. de apparatu cœnæ de more essent solliciti, adduci præ-

<sup>1</sup> *incommoda*] incomoda, MS.

<sup>2</sup> *superabundantem*] superhabundantem, MS.

<sup>3</sup> *quos*] quas, MS.

cepit Turcos aliquot, quos habebat in vinculis ; et A.D. 1097.  
 tradens eos carnificibus, mandat jugulari, et, copioso  
 igne supposito, quasi ad opus coenæ assari. Jussit etiam  
 Rog.Wend. suis, quod si ab aliquibus essent interrogati,<sup>1</sup> quid sibi  
 ii. 97. vellet talis coenæ apparatus, affirmarent sic esse decre-  
 tum, ut quotquot ex hostibus deinceps aut exploratori-  
 bus eorum caperentur, omnes in prandiis principum et  
 populi modo simili consumerentur. Audientes autem  
 qui in expeditione erant tam admirabile factum, accur-  
 runt universi, et rei novitatem admirantes, qui affuerunt  
 exploratores totum serio fuisse factum et absque simu-  
 latione crediderunt. Timentes itaque, ne quid sibi The spies  
 simile accideret, de castris furtim egressi, ad propria withdraw,  
 sunt reversi ; illis, qui eos miserant, dicentes, quoniam and spread  
 populus iste omnem ferarum silvestrium excedat feri- reports of  
 fol. 23 a. tatem, cum non sufficiat sibi urbes et castella subjugare, what had  
 omnimodam hostium superbiam<sup>2</sup> diripere, nisi insuper taken place  
 et de carnis eorum saturentur. Exiit ergo sermo iste  
 ad partes orientis remotiores, et longe positas perter-  
 ruit nationes. Civitas quoque Antiochena tota pertre-  
 muit, hujus facti perterrita novitate. Hæc contulit  
 Deus populo suo per studium et operam domini Boa-  
 mundi, et sic per hoc exploratorum pestis in parte  
 maxima conquievit.

*De convalescentia Godefridi ab infirmitate sua, et de  
 causa ægritudinis.*

Rog.Wend. Surrexit præterea in exercitu ingens lætitia de con- Recovery  
 ii. 97. valescentia ducis Godefridi, qui de valida ægritudinis to health of  
 molestia plene restitutus est sanitati. Recepérat nam- duke God-  
 frey.

Rog.Wend. que apud Antiochiam minorem vulnus fere letiferum, His pre-  
 ii. 98. ab ursu quodam sibi inflictum, dum ibidem constitutus, vious con-  
 ob gratiam recreationis silvam quandam ingressus, flict with a bear.

<sup>1</sup> *interrogati*] interrogati, MS.

<sup>2</sup> *superbiam*] So also F. ; substantiam, W. A. C. D.

A.D. 1097. pauperem peregrinum invenit ramalia comportantem ; quem ursus ingens et horrendi corporis fugientem inse- quens ut devoraret, periculum imminens<sup>1</sup> pauper clamore protestatur. Dux autem pauperem clamantem conspi- ciens et rapido cursu fugientem, compatitur peregrino jam a belua devorando ; quo<sup>2</sup> velociter accurrit, educto gladio, ut opem ferret periclitanti. Videns ergo ursus ducem gladio instantem, spreto peregrino, dentibus armatus et unguibus, in hostem se contulit fortiorem. Tandem dux, qui tunc omine ancipiti solus erat, equo . crudeliter vulnerato et prædicto paupere non compa- rente, cum inermis fuisse, letifero patuit discrimini. Pedes igitur effectus, gladio rem agebat magnanimus. Ursus autem, patulo oris rictu et murmure occurrens horribili, ducis constantiam parvipendens, contempto gladio, nititur se cominus ingerere repugnanti.<sup>3</sup> Porro dux irruentem a se beluam propellere gladio totis nisi- bus instans, mucrone eam perfodere nitebatur ; verum ursus gladium declinans, et ducem brachiis amplexum<sup>4</sup> constringens, in solum dejicere<sup>5</sup> conabatur, ut sub se positum dentibus posset et unguibus laniare. Verum miles strenuus et viribus integris solidatus, læva beluam complexus, dextra gladium<sup>6</sup> immergit, et impingit immersum capulo tenus, et, eliquato copioso sanguine, mortem ingerit reluctanti. Saucus tamen dux et cruento respersus, periculosissime quoque vulneratus, cruentam nimis ac fortuitam victoram reportavit ; unde nimia sanguinis effusione debilitatus, ad sodales non potuit remeare. Tandem vero, prædicto paupere, qui ejus bene- ficio mortem evaserat, proclaimante et casum indicante, accurrunt legiones universæ, et lectica impositum detulerunt ad castra semivivum. Aspecta autem belua . etiam mortua, horrorem intuentibus incussit et timo- .

<sup>1</sup> *imminens*] *iminens*, MS.

<sup>2</sup> *quo*] *et*, W. A. C. D.

<sup>3</sup> *repugnanti*] *repungnanti*, MS.

<sup>4</sup> *amplexum*] *amplexu*, MS. and F. Corr. from W. A. C. D.

<sup>5</sup> *dejicere*] *deicere*, MS.

<sup>6</sup> *gladium*] Added in marg.

. rem. Sollicita autem cirurgicorum peritia dux, ut præ- A.D. 1097.  
 . libatum est, curatus, totum exercitum jam feliciter  
 . exhilaravit.

*Rex Anglie Willermus in res ecclesiæ debacchatur,<sup>1</sup> nec  
 per Anselmum subito advenientem compescitur.*

. Eodem vero anno rex Willermus,<sup>2</sup> qui a multis Ru- William II.,  
 . beus Draco cognominabatur, ecclesias Anglicanas et surnamed  
 . præcipue vacantes multiformiter depauperavit; archi- the Red Dragon,  
 . episcopatus quoque Cantuariensis pauperes homines et oppresses  
 . cœnobii Sancti Albani contrivit. Nemora autem succi- the church  
 . dit, et thesauros ecclesiæ suis ærariis accumulavit, et grievously.  
 . incolas ad constructionem aulæ Westmonasterialis et  
 . castrorum suorum injuriose nimis angariavit. Quod Fruitless  
 . audiens archiepiscopus Cantuariensis Anselmus exul, intercess-  
 . non æquo animo talia toleravit. Sciens igitur ipsum Anselm.  
 . regem esse in partibus mari orientali Angliæ contermi-  
 . nis, eum adiit, sperans ipsum ad frugem melioris vitæ  
 . revocare. Prius destinavit ad ipsum pios intercessores,  
 . sed ipsi, spe frustrati, probris et minis reversi sunt  
 . laccessiti. Archiepiscopus igitur Londoniis latitando ex-  
 . pectans, interim Samsonem in episcopum Wigornien- Consecra-  
 . sem, in ecclesia Beati Pauli consecravit, die Dominica, tion of  
 . xvii<sup>o</sup>. kalendas Julii.<sup>3</sup> Quo facto, cum non proficeret Sampson,  
 . in proposito,<sup>4</sup> sicut clam et repente venit, ita, infecto bp. of Wor-  
 . negotio, clanculo remeavit. Unde super hoc quidam cester.  
 . versificator scribens ait,  
 . “Anselmus veniens illuc clam, clamque recedens,” etc.  
 . Unde ille adventus cassus et pro<sup>5</sup> nullo reputatur.

<sup>1</sup> *debacchatur*] *debacatur*, MS.

<sup>2</sup> *rex Willermus*] rege Willermo, MS., and so in F.

<sup>3</sup> On the 15 June 1096. See “Fasti Ecclesiæ Anglicanæ,” iii. 49, ed. Hardy.

<sup>4</sup> *cum non . . . proposito*] Added in marg., and is in the text of F.

<sup>5</sup> *cassus et pro*] Partly on an erasure. In the margin a word has also been erased, apparently *est*.

*Ricardus de Exaquo creatur abbas Sancti Albani.*

A.D. 1097. Anno quoque sub eodem Ricardus de Exaquo abbas <sup>Rog. Wend.</sup>  
 Richard de creatur Sancti Albani; quam<sup>1</sup> et ipse magnifice rexit <sup>ii. 99.</sup>  
Lessai made abbat annis xx<sup>ti</sup>. et duobus, religionem reformando, et cellis<sup>2</sup> of St. Alban's. ampliando, et possessionibus, thesauris, et ornamenti, licet ipsum cœnobium nimis reperisset per tirannidem regis Willelmi dissipatum, restaurando.

*De duorum milium strage Turcorum.*

A.D. 1098. Anno Domini M<sup>o</sup>.XCVIII<sup>o</sup>. peregrini, qui erant in <sup>Rog. Wend.</sup>  
Continuation of the siege of Antioch, and great slaughter of the Turks at Hareng. obsidione Antiochiæ, dies Natalios in obsequiis divinis <sup>ii. 99.</sup> et elemosinarum exhibitionibus magnifice celebrarunt. Inter quos etiam cives Antiocheni, de suo statu satis in sui subsidium evocarunt. Factum est igitur per eorum instantiam diligentem, quod a Damasco, Jerusalem, Cæsarea, Alapia, Haman, Emissa, Ierapoli, et conterminis regionibus multis congregati referuntur circa castrum, cui nomen est Hareg,<sup>3</sup> quod ab Antiochia vix xiii. miliaribus distat, ad xx<sup>ti</sup>. milia bellatorum. Qui <sup>Rog. Wend.</sup> omnes habuerunt propositum ex improviso irruere in <sup>ii. 100.</sup> peregrinos, dum circa assultum occuparentur, exeuntibus civibus super ipsos ex adverso. Sed principes nostri, quos insidiæ eorum non latebant, pedites omnes <sup>fol. 23 b.</sup> de exercitu in obsidione relinquentes, qui equites erant in primo noctis crepusculo, armis instructi, sine tumultu et quasi sub silentio de castris egressi, inter lacum quendam et Orontem fluvium, qui parum a se distant, nocte illa quieverunt. Mane autem facto, cum festina-

<sup>1</sup> *quam*] In reference to *ecclesia* understood. W.A.C.D. read, "abbas *ecclesiæ* Sancti Albani."

<sup>2</sup> *cellis*] in *cellis*, W. A. C. D.; *cellas*, E.

<sup>3</sup> *Hareg*] So all the MSS.; but elsewhere *Hareng*. In Will. Tyr., *Hareng*, pp. 698, 916.

tione ad arma convolantes, in sex aciebus suum disponunt exercitum, singulis earum certis ducibus assignatis. Turci vero non longe constituti, scientes jam quod nostri in vicino essent, de suis copiis duas acies praemiserunt, reliqua turba cominus subsequente. Factum est autem, ut nostri, qui vix septingenti erant, suscepto de supernis incremento, infinita milia viderentur. Procedentibus igitur paulatim ad invicem legionibus, cœperunt primæ acies eorum in nostros cum magno impetu irruere, et, immissa sagittarum grandine, ad suos confidunt habere recursum. Nostri autem cominus accedentes, vibratis more solito lanceis et gladiis incumbentes, eos omnes<sup>1</sup> in unam turbam solidari compellunt. Comprimentibus<sup>2</sup> autem illos hinc lacu, illinc fluvio, eis evagandi licentiam auferebant; unde Turci Christianorum ferre non valentes instantiam, in sola fuga constituunt spem salutis. Dantibus ergo terga infidelibus, nostrates eos certatim insequuntur<sup>3</sup> usque ad castrum memoratum, quod a loco certaminis generalis miliaribus x. distabat. Videntes autem oppidani<sup>4</sup> suorum fugam, et gladiis Christianorum fere omnes cecidisse, succenso Hareg castro, ipsi fugam capessunt. At vero Armenii et alii fideles regionis illius prædictum Rog. Wend. occupantes municipium, illud nostris postea principibus  
ii. 101. reddiderunt. Ceciderunt autem die illa ex hostibus ad duo milia, ex quibus quingenta capita reportantes, cum mille equis optimis et manubiis copiosis, ad castra sunt reversi. Cives quoque interea per portam civitatis certatim egredientes, fere tota die nostris gravissima, absentibus principibus, gravamina intulerunt, donec nostrorum audientes adventum jocundum Christianis, sese retrorsum retrahentes, cum confusione in civitatem sese longius receperunt. Principes itaque victores ad obsidionem reversi, ducenta Turchorum capita, in sig-

<sup>1</sup> *omnes*] Repeated, but expuncted.<sup>2</sup> *Comprimentibus*] Comprime-  
mentibus, MS., but *me* expuncted.<sup>3</sup> *insequuntur*] insequuntur, MS.<sup>4</sup> *oppidani*] opidani, MS.

A.D. 1098. num triumphi et doloris eorum incrementum, machinis jaculatoriis in urbem projecerunt; cetera autem ante urbem palis confixa, ut essent civibus quasi spina in oculo, confixerunt.

*Peregrini trecenti a Turcis prosternuntur.*

Siege continued. Cumque principes omnes ad obsidionem reversi fuis- Rog. Wend. tinent, invadunt acriter moenia universi; contra quos ii. 101.

Arrival of the Genoese with pilgrims and provisions. cives acerrime rebellantes, signiferum Podiensis episcopi et multos alios peremerunt. Tandem, cum in mensem quintum obsidio protraheretur,<sup>1</sup> venerunt naves Janu- ensium, peregrinos et victualia afferentes, et frequenti- bus nunciis exigentes, ut, missis aliquot de principibus, secure eos ad castra conducerent. Quod audientes peregrini, qui in obsidione<sup>2</sup> erant et victus penuria vexabantur, infinitus eorum numerus ad mare descent- dit, ubi peractis negotiis, ad castra redire proponunt. Eliguntur itaque de principibus dominus Boamundus, comes Tholosanus, Everardus de Pusato, et comes Gar- nerius de Gres, ut peregrinos, qui in portu erant, tam Rog. Wend. eos qui nuper advenerant, quam alios qui ad mare de- scenderant, sub salvo conductu ad castra perducerent. Audientes autem Antiocheni, quod prædicti principes ad mare descenderant, missis iiii<sup>or.</sup> milibus expeditorum militum, illis obviam perrexerunt, ut parantes peregrinis insidias, eos interficere laborarent. Factum est autem, cum<sup>3</sup> quidam plebei peregrini cum victualibus<sup>4</sup> et ju- mentis onustis inermes redirent ad castra, Turci ab

Massacre of 300 pilgrims by the Turks.

<sup>1</sup> *protraheretur*] protraherentur, MS., but *n* expuncted.

at first *ut cum*, but *cum* has been erased, and *quidam* written over it.

<sup>2</sup> *obsidione*] Partly on an erasure.

<sup>4</sup> *plebei . . . victualibus*] These

<sup>3</sup> *cum*] *ut*, MS.; but corr. from W. A. C. D., all of which omit *qui- dam*. It is probable that the MS. read

words are written in the margin as a correction, and then inserted in the text over an erasure. F. agrees.



insidiis erumpentes, in ipsos non segniter irruerunt. A.D. 1098.  
 Contra quos cum principes præfati diu decertassent,  
 videntes tandem imparem nimis conflictum contra tan-  
 tam Turcorum multitudinem, cum illis qui eos sequi  
 poterant recedentes, ad castra de loco certaminis redie-  
 runt. Ceciderunt autem ibi ex pauperibus peregrinis  
 quasi trecenti, promiscui sexus et ætatis.

*De strage Turcorum gravissima, et prælio eatus inaudito.*

Rog. Wend. Venit interea<sup>1</sup> rumor in castra, quod peregrini, qui Return of  
 ii. 102. de mari advenerant, hostium in via perpessi insidias, Boamund and the  
 oinnes repentina impetu corruissent. Sed dum hæc count of  
 inter se principes nimis condolentes ruminarent, ecce Toulouse to the  
 Boamundus, et post paululum comes Tholosanus, ad camp.  
 castra revertuntur, easumque qui acciderat principibus  
 nunciarunt. Anxianus<sup>2</sup> itaque, dominus civitatis, cog- Superbia  
 noscens<sup>3</sup> quod sui victores erant, præcepit portas civi- Anxianus.  
 tatis aperiri, ut cives revertentes liberum haberent Anxianus orders the  
 ingressum. Sed principes nostri, confratrum suorum gates to be  
 sanguinem ulcisci cogitantes, ad arma convolarunt, et, opened.  
 dispositis aciebus, hostibus uno spiritu occurrebant, et  
 solita gladiis incumbentes constantia in Turcos irruunt;  
 qui præ timore, agminibus dissolutis, pontem urbis  
 certatim optinere contendunt. Sed dux Godefridus  
 Lotharingiae magnanimus, cum suis pontem præoccu- Conflict on  
 Rog. Wend. pans,<sup>4</sup> aut intrare volentes aut exire gladio detruncat, the bridge,  
 ii. 103. aut [in]<sup>5</sup> principes illos insequentes redire perituros and de-  
 compellit. Sic ergo, cum nec hic nec alibi principum feat of  
 impetus, armorum instantiam, ictusque importabiles the Turks.

<sup>1</sup> *interea*] interrea, MS.

one, as in W. A. C. D. F., and in accordance with the last rubrie.

<sup>2</sup> In the MS. a separate chapter is here commenced, but it undoubtedly should be joined to the preceding

<sup>3</sup> *cognoscens*] cognoseens, MS.

<sup>4</sup> *præoccupans*] preoccupans, MS.

<sup>5</sup> *in*] Supplied from W. A. C. D.

A.D. 1098. sustinere diutius valerent,<sup>1</sup> salutis initium ac<sup>2</sup> reme-

dium fuga erat; quo frustrati penitus, gladiis peri-  
muntur. Anxianus autem populum suum deficere  
videns, portas præcipit sub omni celeritate aperiri, ut  
eorum saltem reliquias sub tuto permetteret collocari.  
Reserato igitur aditu, tanta super pontem fugientium  
turba conglobata est, tantusque factus tumultus, ut se  
invicem comprimentes in fluvium præcipites submer-  
gerentur<sup>3</sup> infiniti. Dux quoque Godefridus, postquam  
in hoc conflictu multorum capita loricatorum, sine  
ictus repetitione solita fultus virtute amputaverat,  
unum ex Turcis in nostros protervius instantem, licet  
lorica indutum, per medium cum gladio divisit, ita ut  
pars ab umbilico superior<sup>4</sup> ad terram caderet, reliqua  
parte super equum, cui insederat, infra urbem cursu  
rapido introducta. Equus autem hinniendo inter Tur-  
cos huc illueque, ac si diabolica furia veheretur, dis-  
currens, sessoris corpus gerens ab umbilico deorsum,  
omnes qui viderunt tali terruit novitate. Dux insuper  
Normannorum Robertus alium sibi nimis infestum in  
capite percutiens, galeam et clipeum, caput, dentes et  
collum, ut solet ovicula a carnifice truncari,<sup>5</sup> usque in  
pectus deorsum diffidit. Quo in terram ruente, ait  
Robertus, "Omnibus Tartareis ministris animam tuam  
cruentam commendo." Ceciderunt utique die illa ex  
hostibus quasi ad duo milia Turcorum, et, nisi nox  
superveniens bellum dirimisset, finem<sup>6</sup> procul dubio  
die illa negotium Antiochenum sortitum fuisse adop-  
tatum. Compertum est fideliter a nostris per captivos  
Turcos, quod xii. de majoribus eorum cum aliis cor- Rog. Wend.  
ii. 104.

Slaughter  
of the  
Turks.

Prowess of  
dnke God-  
frey and  
duke Ro-  
bert.

<sup>1</sup> *valerent*] non valerent, MS. and F.

<sup>2</sup> *initium ac*] So also F. In the MS. *ac* is added above the line, and the reading *unicum* in W. A. C. D. (omitting *ac*) is doubtless the true one.

<sup>3</sup> *submergerentur*] submergerun-  
tur, MS.

<sup>4</sup> *superior*] Added in marg.

<sup>5</sup> *truncari*] Added in marg. Om. W. A. C. D. F.

<sup>6</sup> *finem*] Repeated superfluously before *sortitum*, and so in F.

ruerunt. Cives vero de nocte clam suorum corpora A.D. 1098. defunctorum lugubri sepulturæ tradiderunt; sed de nostris pauperibus quidam nebulones, quos vulgus ribaldo vocat, funera eorum effodientes, aurum et vestes pretiosas ex sepultis canibus extraxerunt.<sup>1</sup>

*De duobus milibus equorum u peregrinis caute lucratis.*

Rog. Wend. Post hanc autem victoriam divinitus peregrinis con- Two thou-  
ii. 104. cessam, cum castra nova quædam et machinas ad sand horses  
urbis expugnationem construxissent, audierunt quod captured  
civis, pro defectu pabuli, ad locum quendam pascua- by the  
lem equos suos consueverant destinare, qui vix ab Christians.  
urbe <sup>iii</sup> or. miliaribus distare videbatur. Quod nostri cognoscentes, et ad locum memoratum properantes, occisis qui armentis et equitiis præerant, exceptis mulis et mulabus, duo milia equorum nobilium ad castra deduxerunt. Per idem tempus quoque Baldwin to  
Balde-  
uuinus, ducis Godefridi frater, qui, ut dictum est, presents  
Edessam civitatem sibi subjugaverat, audiens quod sent by  
peregrini magna rerum laborarent inopia, missis donis the army.  
ingentibus in auro, argento, gemmis, olosericis, et equis  
pretiosis, rem principum reddidit ampliorem. Insuper ¶ *De qui-*  
autem et duci, fratri suo, de<sup>2</sup> terra quam<sup>3</sup> circa *busdam*  
Eufraten possidebat, omnes redditus in frumento, vino, *pretiosis*  
hordeo<sup>4</sup> et oleo, necnon et aureorum, quæ l.m. aureo-  
rum<sup>5</sup> numerum excederat, destinavit.

<sup>1</sup> *extraxerunt*] extraxerunt, MS.

<sup>2</sup> *de*] quæ de, MS., and so W. F. The MSS. A. C. D. omit *quæ*, and the printed text of Wendover reads *qui de*, which is evidently wrong.

<sup>3</sup> *quam*] quæ, MS. and F. Corr.

from Will. Tyr., p. 703. There is no repetition of the pronoun in W. A. C. D.

<sup>4</sup> *hordeo*] ordeo, MS.

<sup>5</sup> *aureorum*] Repeated also in F.

*Rumor de adventu Persarum.*

A.D. 1098. Eodem quoque tempore nunciatum est principibus, Rog. Wend. Rumour of quod Soldanus, Persarum dominus, ad Antiochenorum ii. 104. the ap- instantiam urgentissimam et suorum postulationes pro- the Per- sadias, innumerabiles armatorum copias in Syriam sians. transmiserat, qui jam quasi imminere<sup>1</sup> dicebantur. Hæc quoque famæ disseminatio adeo principes nostros Rog. Wend. perterrituit, ut Stephanus, Carnotensium comes, ægri- ii. 105. tudine simulata et sumpta a fratribus licentia, cum iiii<sup>or.</sup> armatorum milibus ab obsidione recederet irre- diturus. Quo facto tam notabili tamque funesto prin- cipes, qui in castris erant, consternati, cœperunt anxie deliberare quomodo huic morbo occurrerent, ne hoc Decree that exemplo perniciose alii simile quid attemptarent. Pla- no one should cuit ergo omnibus decretum voce præconia edici, ut withdraw from the quicunque se a castris sine principum licentia subtra- heret, tanquam sacrilegus aut homicida in exercitu camp, with- haberetur et puniretur; unde factum est, ut omnes pariter, tanquam viri claustrales, principibus suis obe- dientiam voluntate spontanea fideliter exhiberent.

*De Emyfero, per quem tradita est Antiochia.*

Solet autem divina clementia servorum deficientibus Rog. Wend. argumentis propitius subvenire, nec suos ultra quam ii. 105. sustinere possint temptari permittit. Erat nempe in civitate,<sup>2</sup> in urbe Antiochena, inter alias tributarios et oppressos, vir quidam genere præclarus et Christiana professione insignitus, Emyfer vel Emyferus nuncupatus; homo potens nimis, et Anxiano, urbis domino, multa

Emyfer, a Christian,

<sup>1</sup> *iminere*] *iminere*, MS. Written at first *iminere quasi*, but marked to be transposed.

<sup>2</sup> *in civitate*] So in F.; but these words are superfluous, and are not in W. A. C. D.

. conjunctus familiaritate. Erat enim in loricis faciendis A.D. 1098.  
 . magister præpollens et singularis, habens sub se hujus-  
 modi artifices. Insuper in palatio Anxiani notarii  
 . officio fungebatur, unde omnia civium secreta cogno-  
 verat. Hic autem vir prudens, audiens quod Boa- corre-  
 mundus princeps esset illustris et magnificus, statim sponds se-  
 post obsidionem urbis, per internuncios archanos et Boamund.  
 fideles ejus sibi gratiam reconcilians, civium et urbis  
 statum diebus singulis denudaverat, et in omnibus  
 Reg. Wend. agendis fideliter instruxerat. Boamundus quoque, vice  
 ii. 106. versa, hoc misterium prudenter occultabat, ita scilicet,  
 ut nullus internunciorum alterutrae partis aliquod se-  
 cretorum ipsorum posset colligere argumentum. Cumque  
 jam quasi mensibus vii. hæc se inter eos occulta con-  
 tinuasset amicitia, plerumque habitus est sermo inter  
 eos, quomodo Christianæ religioni civitas redderetur.  
 Et cum super hoc a Boamundo Emyfer sæpius esset  
 fol. 24 b. conventus, semel ei per filium suum, qui secretorum  
 erat interbajulus, dicitur respondisse, "Si patriam pris- Offer made  
 tinæ restituere libertati, et, exclusis canibus, quorum by him to  
 violenta dominatione premimur, populum betray the  
 Dei culto- city.  
 rem possem inducere, certus sum, quod cum sanctis  
 animabus æternæ beatitudinis præmia possidebo; si  
 vero rem inceptam consummare nequivero, deprehensus  
 procul dubio domus mea et præclaræ nomen familiæ  
 meæ delebitur ita, ut non memoretur nomen illius ultra.  
 Sed si hoc posses apud tuos consortes optinere, quod  
 civitatem meo tibi studio traditam appropriare, et in  
 tuos usus convertere valuisses et voluisses, ego tui  
 gratia ad opus prædictum me accingam, et turrim  
 meam munitissimam hanc, ut vides, tibi tradam; unde  
 principibus vestris liber in civitatem patere poterit  
 ingressus. At hoc<sup>1</sup> noveris, quod nisi hoc in proximo  
 fiat, in perpetuum differetur. Veniunt enim in sub-  
 sidium civitatis ex toto oriente equitum ducenta milia,

<sup>1</sup> *At hoc]* Ad hæc, W. A. C. D.

A.D. 1098. qui jam circa Eufraten castra statuerunt." Hæc au-  
 Boamund diens Boamundus, venit in castra, et majores principes  
 discloses  
 the plot to  
 a turba seorsum advocans, ita ipsos alloquitur, dicens,  
 the prænceps. " Video vos, fratres dilectissimi, de adventu illius mul-  
 titudinis nimia sollicitudine macerari, et illius ducis  
 Corbaranni formidine molestari, qui jam obsidionem<sup>1</sup>  
 Edessæ civitatis, ubi per tres septimanas conserderant,  
 ad hoc reliquerunt, ut civibus Antiochenis ferant sub-  
 sidium. Videtur mihi, quod ad hoc deberet omissis Rog.Wend.  
 nostra festinare intentio, ut ante hujus adventum mul-  
 titudinis civitas in nostram descenderet potestatem.  
 Quod si modum quæritis, quo id effectui valeat manci-  
 pari, in promptu<sup>2</sup> est nobis via, qua facile ad finem  
 perveniamus adoptatum. Habeo enim in civitate amic-  
 um fidelem, qui turrem habet in sua potestate fir-  
 missimam, quam certis promissionibus, si illam ab eo  
 He offers to  
 gain pos-  
 session of  
 the city, on  
 the condition it  
 should be  
 bestowed  
 on himself  
 and suc-  
 cessors.  
 exegero, fide mediante, resignare tenetur. Si ergo  
 vobis id utile videtur, ut scilicet civitas mea sollicitu-  
 dine subjugata in meam perpetualiter et successorum  
 meorum transeat potestate, paratus sum pacta illico<sup>3</sup>  
 complere; sin autem, elaboret aliquis vestrum peritus<sup>4</sup>  
 id ipsum facere, ego illi meam concedo partem, et  
 renuncio juri meo."

### *De captione Antiochiae, et spoliis civitatis.*

The princes  
 consent,  
 with the  
 exception  
 of the  
 count of  
 Toulouse.

Hiis ita dictis, gavisi sunt principes universi gaudio Rog.Wend.  
 magno valde, et petitioni factæ omnes, præter comitem ii. 107.  
 Tholosanum, grato concurrentes assensu, datis dextris,  
 compromiserunt, quod sibi creditum nemini revelarent  
 sacramentum secretissimum. Boamundum autem atten-  
 tius monent, quatinus ad rei consummationem viribus  
 attendat universis. Soluto igitur conventu, Boamundus  
 stabilis propositum urgens subarratum, amico signifiea-

<sup>1</sup> *obsidionem*] obsidione, MS.

<sup>2</sup> *promptu*] promptu, MS.

<sup>3</sup> *illico*] Added in marg.

<sup>4</sup> *peritus*] On an erasure.

vit, quod apud principes pro voto cuneta impetraverat; A.D. 1098.  
 unde per fidem amicum invitat, ut nocte proxima  
 sequente res effectui mancipetur. Emyfer e contra Time fixed  
 Boamundo denunciat, ut circa horam nonain principes by Emyfer  
 omnes egrediantur, tanquam hostibus obviam profec- to betray  
 turi, de castris, et circa primam noctis vigiliam in the city.  
 silentio revertentes, parati sint hora noctis media  
 juxta ejus monita se habere. Quod cum ita factum  
 Rog. Wend. fuissest, jam noctis medio adveniente, cum se civitas  
 ii. 108. universa quieti dedisset, interpretem domesticum ad  
 amicum dirigit memoratum, ut ab ipso inquirat, utrum  
 sibi adhuc domini sui familiam adesse judicet oppor-  
 tunum.<sup>1</sup> Adveniens autem nuncius ille, cum ei do-  
 mini sui exposuisset voluntatem,<sup>2</sup> respondit ei, "Sede  
 hic quietus et tace, donec revertar ad te." Ille vero  
 paululum expectans, quoisque magister vigilum, qui  
 ter vel quater in nocte muros cum laternis circuire<sup>3</sup>  
 consueverat, si quos ex ministris in excubiis<sup>4</sup> inveniret  
 sompnolentos, pertransiret, protinus vir ille, visa op-  
 portunitate,<sup>5</sup> ad nuncium reversus ait, "Vade cito, et  
 dic domino tuo, ut festinus adveniat cum viris præ-  
 electis, et nullo formidoloso." Qui citius ad dominum  
 recurrens, invenit eum<sup>6</sup> cum principibus promptum<sup>7</sup>  
 et paratum; et illico, sieut instructi erant, subito ante  
 turrim prædictam, quasi vir unus, in maximo silentio  
 astiterunt. Emyfer interea turrim ingressus, fratrem Emyfer  
 suum reperit sompno prægravatum. Cujus mentem a kills his  
 suo proposito sciens alienam, timens ne per eum in- brother,  
 ceptæ impeditum rei<sup>8</sup> eveniret, ipsum gladio trans- and lowers  
 verberavit, facto pius et sceleratus eodem existendo. a cord,  
 Post hæc autem rediens, et principes paratos conspi-

<sup>1</sup> *opportunum*] oportum, MS.

runt to this word has been written

<sup>2</sup> *voluntatem*] Added in marg. F. by Matthew Paris on a piece of  
reads *verba*, as W. A. C. D. vellum pasted over a space origi-  
nally left blank.

<sup>3</sup> *circuire*] circuere, MS.

<sup>7</sup> *promptum*] At first written *prom- tum.*

<sup>4</sup> *in excubiis*] On an erasure.

<sup>8</sup> *rei*] Interlined.

<sup>5</sup> *opportunitate*] oportunitate, MS.

<sup>6</sup> *eum*] The text from *compromise-*

A.D. 1098. ciens, funem demittit inferius,<sup>1</sup> quo scalam ad se pertrahat sullevatam. Erecta igitur scala, nemo repertus est, qui ad vocem superioris vel ad vocem Boamundi præsummat ascendere, inter optimates universos, proditionem metuentes. Quod videns Boamundus, ascendit ilico scalam intrepidus. At Emifer tenens ejus manum, deoseculatus eam ait, ducens eum in turrin, . “Vivat hæc manus!” Et ducens eum interius, ostendit ei fratrem, quem pro opere tam sancto necaverat, fol. 25 a. amico causam exponendo. Ruit igitur Boamundus in oscula viri, constantiam ejus admirans; et reversus Rog. Wend. ii. 109. ad scalam, hortatur suos ut ascendant. Sed nullus ascendere ausus est, donec Boamundus per scalam ad suos rediens, suæ incolumitatis dederat evidens argumentum. Deinde certatim ascendentes, in momento unam, quæ adulterina erat, docente duce, aperientes, principes de foris expectantes introduxerunt. Crevit igitur statim eorum numerus ita, qui jam intus erant,<sup>2</sup> ut ad portam quæ Pontis dicitur concurrentes, cæsis custodibus, eam aperiunt violenter. Cognoscentes<sup>3</sup> igitur, quia jam aurora rutilaret, cornibus et lituis cœperunt perstrepere, ad urbis ingressum<sup>4</sup> exercitum invocando, omnes<sup>5</sup> alacriter animando. Vexillum igitur ilico domini Boamundi in unam turrim eminentiorem ejus ministri collocantes, voce clara in edito captam pronunciant civitatem. Cives autem ex tanto tumultu expergefacti, dubitant quid sibi velit<sup>6</sup> clamor ille subitus et insolitus. Qui tandem videntes armorum splendorem et armatorum discursus per plateas, quas scatere

<sup>1</sup> *inferius*] imferius, MS.<sup>2</sup> *erant*] erat, MS. Corr. from W. A. C. D. F.<sup>3</sup> *Cognoscentes*] Congnoscentes, MS.<sup>4</sup> *ingressum*] ingresum, MS.<sup>5</sup> *omnes*] At first written *omnesque*, but *que* erased.<sup>6</sup> *velit*] Added on to the text.

cernunt funeribus, domibus relictis, cum uxoribus et A.D. 1098.  
 liberis effugere satagebant; sed incaute fugientes, stra-  
 gem undique repererunt. Qui autem in urbe habita- Massacre  
 bant servuli Christiani, arreptis [armis],<sup>1</sup> nostrorum of the inhab-  
 coetibus adjunguntur, et stragam civibus eorum op- bitants, and  
 pressoribus non minimam intulerunt, secretorum ipso- pillage.  
 rum non ignari. Aedificiis igitur omnibus cum pene-  
 tralibus et apotecis confractis et occupatis, aurum,  
 argentum, vestes pretiosas et gemmas, cum vasis im-  
 pretiabilibus, olosericis, cum omni suppellectili nobilis-  
 sima, inter se æqua sorte distribuentes, super admiratio-  
 nem ditabantur. Et qui prius esurientes in exercitu  
 mendicaverant, bonis jam omnibus<sup>2</sup> usque ad fastidium  
 abundabant.<sup>3</sup> Cæsi referuntur in civitate plusquam  
 decem milia Turcorum, quorum corpora per plateas  
 miserabiliter inseulta jacuerunt. Equi inventi sunt,  
 Rog. Wend. ii. 110. qui ad arma facerent, quingenti, omnes tamen macie  
 confecti et inedia tabescentes; quia nec equis vel etiam  
 hominibus aliquid alimenti in civitate est repertum.

*De interitu Anxiani, Antiochice principis.*

R. Wend. . Anxianus autem, vere jam Anxianus et anxius, videns Anxianus,  
 ii. 110. urbem suam tam præclaram Christianis jam fuisse sub- prince of  
 jugatam, solus absque comite per posticum egressus, et slain.  
 Antioch, is  
 præ doloris immanitate non se capiens, amens effectus,  
 errabundus aufugit. Qui casu Armenios quosdam ob-  
 viam habens, cum cognitus esset ab eis, illum in terra  
 dejicientes<sup>4</sup> ipsum decollaverunt, et caput in urbem  
 afferentes, illud coram populo palam principibus optu-  
 lerunt. Alii vero de civitate nobiles, in tanto rerum The nobles  
 discrimine extra se rapti quid agerent ignorantes, in in the city  
 perish.

<sup>1</sup> *armis*] Supplied from W. A. C.

D.

<sup>2</sup> *omnibus*] On an erasure.

<sup>3</sup> *abundabant*] habundabant, MS.

<sup>4</sup> *dejicientes*] deicientes, MS.

A.D. 1098. præsidium superius se recipere decreverunt. Dumque illuc tota properarent intentione, casu contigit, quod nostros a parte superiori habentes obviam, et inter locorum intercepti angustias, ut neque ascendere neque propter montis devexitatem descendere valuissent, nostris desuper astantibus, dum fugere nituntur, præcipitati sunt equis et armis, confractis cervicibus, numero trecenti. Alii autem ad montana melius fugere<sup>1</sup> decreverunt, quos nostri cominus insequentes, partim ceperunt, vinculis eos mancipantes; pars autem eorum, equorum beneficio ad montana inaccessibilia præ timore evadentes, vitæ consulunt et saluti. Capta est itaque Date of the capture of Antioch. Antiochia anno ex quo subacta fuit<sup>2</sup> a paganis xiiii<sup>o</sup>, ab incarnatione Domini anno M<sup>o</sup>.XC<sup>o</sup>VIII<sup>o</sup>, mense Junio, tertia die mensis.

*De Sensabolo, et quomodo castellum suum tradidit, Corbaranno.*

Proceedings of the Christian princes.

Sensabolus, son of Auxianus, seeks the aid of Corbaran.

Post captam autem Antiochiam, cum civitatis tu- Rog. Wend. multus, sedatis omnibus, quievisset, convenerunt prim- ii. 111. cipes in unum, communi decreto statuentes, ut montem, qui urbi imminebat,<sup>3</sup> ascenderent, et situm in eo præ- sidium expugnarent. Quo pervenientes, cum de munici- pio<sup>4</sup> constaret quod omnino esset inexpugnabile, nisi fame premeretur, ad alia argumenta se convertunt. Erat autem in illo præsidio dominus et<sup>5</sup> magister Sansabulus, Anxiani sive Garsitherii<sup>6</sup> supradicti filius, cum copiis Turcorum multis; qui in Corbaranni et Persarum multitudinis adventu confidens, cum ipsum in partes Antiochenas advenisse cognovisset,<sup>7</sup> configuit ad ipsius alas cum lacrimis, de morte patris et Antiochiae

<sup>1</sup> *fugere*] Added in marg.

<sup>2</sup> *fuit*] Added in marg.

<sup>3</sup> *imminebat*] iminebat, MS.

<sup>4</sup> *municipio*] Partly on an erasure.

<sup>5</sup> *et*] On an erasure.

<sup>6</sup> *Garsitherii*] Partly on an era- sure. W. A. D. F. read *Garsiani*; C. *Grassiani*.

<sup>7</sup> *cognovisset*] congnovisset, MS.

desolatione lugubrem deponens querimoniam. Cui Cor- A.D. 1098.  
 barannus, "Si volueris," inquit, "ut totis viribus pro  
 te contendam, castellum tuum in manu mea com-  
 mitte. Et cum de te certus fuero, plebeculam illam  
 expugnabo." Sensabolus in arco positus, Corbaranni  
 petitionibus adquiescens, municipium tradidit sub po-  
 testate defensoris. Corbarannus itaque, accepto castello,<sup>1</sup>  
 suos imposuit, et Sensabolo auxilium efficax et fidele  
 repromisit. Audientes itaque principes nostri, quod  
 Corbarannus finibus appropinquasset Antiochenis, die  
 altera post captami urbem, cum circa ejus custodiam  
 et pro alimentis inferendis nimis sollicitarentur, ecce  
 fol. 25 b. equitus trecenti de exercitu Corbaranni venientes ante  
 urbem satis lascive, ut nostros ad exitum provocarent,  
 Rog.Wend. sese procaciter ostentarunt.<sup>2</sup> Quod videns Rogerus de Roger de  
 ii. 112. Barnevilla, miles in armis strenuissimus, de gente Barneville  
 Roberti ducis Normannici, quindecim sumptis consor- attacks a  
 tibus, in prædictos irruit animosius. Sed illi dolose body of  
 fugientes usque ad socios, quos habebant in insidiis horse, and  
 constitutos, dum Rogerus illos acrius insequeretur, con- is slain.  
 surgentibus aliis, qui in insidiis latuerant, et in nostros  
 ardenter irruentibus, eos compulerunt in fugam. Nostri  
 quoque numero impares et viribus, dum ad urbem fu-  
 gere contendissent, equorum hostilium velocitate præ-  
 venti sunt; ubi Rogerus sagitta confossus interiit,  
 ceteris in urbem reversis. At pagani, viri memorabilis  
 caput amputatum reportantes, indempnes ad socios  
 remearunt.

*De nova obsidione Antiochena a Corbaranno facta  
 potentissimo.*

Rog.Wend. Die autem tertia ex quo capta est Antiochia, Cor- Corboran,  
 ii. 112. barannus, princeps Persarum, vir bellicosus et vafer, the Per- prince of

<sup>1</sup> *castello*] castallo, MS.

<sup>2</sup> *sese . . . ostentarunt*] Added in marg., but is in text of F.

A.D. 1098. cum militaribus copiis infinitis ante urbem castra mes-  
tatis, a porta orientali usque ad occidentalem univer-  
sum australe latus obsidione vallavit. Erat autem  
secus portam orientalem præsidium quoddam, quod Bo-

amundo commissum fuerat ad custodiendum.<sup>1</sup> Circa  
quod cum hostes castra locassent, et assultus creberri-

Boamund  
makes a  
sally, but  
is driven  
back. mos ibidem facerent, Boamundus non ferens corum  
insolentiam egressus est contra eos. Sed egredienti duci  
occurrit Turchorum multitudo, quorum impetum dux

perferre non valens, inita fuga, se recepit in urbem;

ubi hostibus proterve instantibus, dum plebs in in-  
troitu præsidii compriimeretur, ducenti ex eis cecide-  
runt. Altera vero vice Turci quoddam præsidium de

Rog. Wend.  
ii. 113.

nova constructum acriter invadentes, nisi ab hiis, qui

in urbe erant, citius subveniretur, illud quantocius ex-

Robert,  
duke of  
Normandy,  
and Tan-  
cered re-  
pulse the  
enemy. pugnassent.<sup>2</sup> Sed adveniente Roberto, Normannorum  
duce, ad instar draconis ignem jaculantis, cum suis  
agninibus, pluribus ex hostibus interemptis et capti-  
vatis, residuos terga dare coegit. Alia quoque die, cum  
Turci quidam nostros ad conflictum provocarent, con-  
tigit ut ex equis descendentes, iis qui in muro stabant  
aerius instantes, ad vindictam alios excitarunt. At  
Tanceredus per portam orientalem egressus, antequam  
hostes ad equos possent habere recursum, sex ex eis  
interemit, ceteris per fugam elapsis.

*De flagellis Dei, quæ peregrinis acciderunt, peccatis  
exigentibus.*

Increase of  
famine in  
the city. Crevit interea in civitate fumes miserabilis, et populus Rog. Wend.  
gravi supra modum inedia fatigabatur. Factum est ii. 113.  
autem hoc, exigentibus peccatis aliquorum, qui in des-

<sup>1</sup> *custodiendum*] At first written *ad custoditum*, but this is afterwards expuncted.

<sup>2</sup> *expugnassent*] expungnassent, MS.

operationem lapsi, juramentorum suorum et voti imme- A.D. 1098.  
 mores, clam funibus et in sportis per murum demissi, Many  
 relictis in periculo fratribus, ad mare confugerunt. Christians  
 Erant autem qui sic aufugerunt desperati ac meticulosi, make their  
 de Dei bonitate diffidentes, non solum plebei et pauperes, escape, and  
 apostatize.  
 sed etiam viri nobiles et multa generositate insignes,  
 Willelmus videlicet de Grantemenil, Appulus, et Albe-  
 ricus frater ejus, Willelmus dictus Carpentarius, et  
 Rog.Wend. Guido frater ejus, Lambertus, et alii multi ipsis asso-  
 ii. 114. ciati. Alii quoque de subventione desperantes, ad hostes  
 Crucis se apostataentes, quod est memoratu horribile,  
 contulerunt. Quorum aliqui, ultiore Deo, in duris<sup>1</sup>  
 manibus hostium inciderunt. Erant et alii multi, qui  
 fugam sollicite meditabantur, sed per episcopum Podi-  
 ensem et ducem Boamundum fuerunt revocati; et quod  
 de negotio Christi non recederent, per juramentum  
 constricti, quousque bellum, quod futurum in proximo  
 dicebatur,<sup>2</sup> Deo beneplacitum<sup>3</sup> finem sortiretur.

*De fame miserrima et hactenus inaudita.*

Rog.Wend. Fames interea adeo in civitate omnes affixit, ut Progress of  
 ii. 114. pro alimentorum defectu plebs ad turpia nimis incom- the famine.  
 moda<sup>4</sup> declinaret. Gallina enim solidos xv. vende-  
 batur, ovum, solidis duobus, nux pro denario; arborum  
 vero folia, carduos, equorum et asinorum coria devora-  
 bant. Morticina quoque et carnes mulorum, equorum,  
 asinorum, canum, et immunda absorbentes, ea pro  
 deliciis reputabant. Erat autem miserabile videre  
 viros prius robustos, et generis nobilitate praeclaros,  
 praenimia nunc debilitate baculis innixos, et arma  
 movere non valentes. Willelmus interea de Grantes- Sinister  
 meisnil, et alii, qui vix manus hostium effugerant, ab rumours  
 exercitu turpiter recedentes, scilicet Stephanus, Carno- spread con-  
 cerning the army.

<sup>1</sup> in duris] On an erasure.

<sup>2</sup> dicebatur] Partly on an erasure.

<sup>3</sup> beneplacitum] beneplatum, MS.

<sup>4</sup> incomoda] incomoda, MS.

A.D. 1098. tensum comes, et ejus comites innominabiles,<sup>1</sup> miseras, .  
 quas peregrini inclusi patiebantur apud Antiochiam,  
 omnibus Christianis, per quos transierunt, exponunt  
 cum incremento. Et ne ipsi ob levem causam et tan-  
 quam timidi socios deseruisse viderentur, cum magnis .  
 juramentis affirmant obsessos necessario cito perituros ; .  
 unde multos ad iter procinctos, ut obsessos juvarent, .  
 revocarunt, ne similibus calamitatibus<sup>2</sup> involverentur. .  
 Venientes tandem ad imperatorem, qui cum xl<sup>a</sup>. mili-  
 bus Latinorum, exceptis copiis quas ex nationibus  
 universis contraxerat, Antiochiam proficiscens nostris  
 subsidium collaturus, dissuaserunt ne procederet, per  
 hæc verba, "Fideles tui, imperator potentissime, Rog. Wend.  
 cum, capta Antiochia, rem crederent consummatam,  
 urbe jam recepta, factus est error novissimus priore  
 deterior. Vix enim ab urbe capta tertia dies elapsa  
 fuerat, cum ecce Corbarannus, Persarum princeps  
 potentissimus, cum orientalium copiis infinitis, quarum  
 multitudo numerum<sup>3</sup> videtur excedere, eandem urbem  
 obsidione vallavit. Noster igitur populus circumseptus  
 fame, frigore, siti, cædibus et clade, in tantum mace-  
 ratur, ut nec in civitate dicitur tantum superesse  
 alimentum, ut unius diei necessitati valeant subvenire.  
 Unde videntes fratrum propositum finem adoptatum .  
 sortiri non posse, potius abire quam obire maluimus .  
 et elegimus ; præsertim cum ipsos obstinatos non po-  
 tuimus a temerario eorum ausu revocare. Testis est .  
 horum quæ loquimur vir prudens Tatinus, tuæ celsi-  
 tudinis fidelis procurator, quem nobiscum direxisti.  
 Qui nostrorum cognoscens defectum, ab eorum se sub-  
 traxit cautius conventiculis, ut hæc tuæ<sup>4</sup> nota faceret  
 majestati."

The emperor  
is dissuaded  
from any  
further  
advance.

Rog. Wend.  
ii. 115.

fol. 26 a.

<sup>1</sup> *innominabiles*] innumerabiles, F.

<sup>3</sup> *numerum*] omnem numerum, W.

<sup>2</sup> *calamatibus*] At first, *calami-*  
*tatis.*

A. C. D.

<sup>4</sup> *tuæ*] Interlined.

*Auxilium imperatoris et spes tollitur.*

Rog.Wend. *ii. 115.* Hiis auditis, imperator de consilio suorum; legioni- A.D. 1098.  
bus præparatis,<sup>1</sup> quasi repercussis umbonibus, licentiam He dis-  
dedit repatriandi. Rumor autem iste cum ad nostros bands his  
pervenisset, spes et lætitia accrevit paganis, et despe- forces.  
ratio Christianis. Erat autem duplex in populo Christi  
afflictio, desperatio scilicet et famis pestilentia.

*De consolatione peregrinis divinitus collata.*

Rog.Wend. *ii. 116.* Cum ergo sic contereretur plebs Christiana, respexit ipsum Dominus, et gemitus ejus propitius exaudivit, Promise of  
mittens eis de sede suæ majestatis consolationem. miraculous  
Venit enim sacerdos quidam peregrinus et pauper de assistance  
exercitu ad principes, ita dicens, "Audite, fratres mei, revealed to  
audite et amici carissimi,<sup>2</sup> visionem quam vidi. Cum a priest.  
in ecclesia Dei genitricis pernoctassem, pro nostris cala-  
mitatibus Deum orans, vigilans aut semisopitus nescio,  
Deus scit, vidi Dominum nostrum Jhesum Christum,  
nec tamen agnovi eum. Aderat etiam sanctissima ejus<sup>3</sup>  
genitrix, et princeps apostolorum Petrus, quos aspicie-  
bam, nec tamen eosdem<sup>4</sup> cognoscebam. Dixit autem  
mihi Dominus, 'Agnovisti me?' Cui ego, 'Nequaquam,  
Domine.' Interim crux splendida super caput ejus eni-  
tuit apposita. Iterum interrogavit<sup>5</sup> me ut prius, et  
ego, 'Domine mi, si bene percipio, ex signo crucis  
capiti tuo imposito, crucifixum Redemptorem nostrum  
te esse intelligo.' Qui respondit, 'Ita est plane, ut  
dicis.' Et ego, perfusus genas lacrimis, ad pedes ejus Rog.Wend.  
singultiens cecidi, et adjeci, 'Domine, Domine, miserere *ii. 117.*  
nostri; Domine, memor esto populi tui; Domine, ad-

<sup>1</sup> *præparatis*] preparatis licentia, MS.

<sup>4</sup> *eosdem*] The letter *m* is on an erasure.

<sup>2</sup> *carissimi*] kīmī, MS.

<sup>5</sup> *interrogavit*] interrogavit, MS.

<sup>3</sup> *ejus*] On an erasure.

A.D. 1098. juva nos.' Et Dominus, 'Ego hucusque juvi vos. Nam et Nicæam vos optinere permisi; me duce in multis articulis vicistis, et hanc urbem optimuistis; hactenus prævaluistis, triumphastis, contritis inimicis. Sed beneficiis meis ingrati, contra me intumuistis, dum cum mulierculis etiam alienis et infidelibus admixti, fornicati estis.' Tunc Mater Misericordiae et Petrus ad pedes ceciderunt Redemptoris, et hiis supplicationibus iram mitigarunt impropenantis et minitantis, 'Domine, tot annis gens pagana domum istam tuam, quæ prompto favore monitis<sup>1</sup> apostolicis post passionem tuam citius conversa feliciter obedivit, optinuit, suisque spureciis,<sup>2</sup> proh dolor! maculavit; et ecce, aliquorum exigentibus culpis, populo toti irasceris? Parce, Domine, parce populo tuo, et ne des hereditatem in perditionem, ut dominantur<sup>3</sup> eis nationes.' Adquievit igitur sanctus sanctorum misericors Deus, jamque vultu factus sere-nior, dixit mihi, 'Vade, et dic populo, Lupanar et omnem abusum removete; aleas et juramenta detestabilia, quasi virus, evitate, et vestra fletibus abluite facinora; et ad me revertimini, et ego revertar ad vos. Nec ascribatis vestræ fortitudini gloriantes et jactantes triumphos inopinatos, sed nomini Domini gloriam exhibete, et infra v. dies auxilium vobis providebo, quod optatis opportunum.<sup>4</sup> Decantent interim cotidie, 'Congregati sunt inimici nostri, et gloriantur in virtute sua; contere fortitudinem eorum, Domine, et disperge illos, ut cognoscant,<sup>5</sup> quia non est aliud qui pugnet<sup>6</sup> pro nobis, nisi tu, Deus noster.'"

R. Wend. ii. 118.

### *Contritio et pœnitentia.*

Hæc et alia cum sacerdos, homo integræ famæ et . R. Wend.  
and repen-tance of the  
people. fidedignus, et pro tali certissime cognitus,<sup>7</sup> seriatim . ii. 118.

<sup>1</sup> *monitis*] Added in marg.

<sup>2</sup> *spureciis*] spureiis, MS.

<sup>3</sup> *dominentur*] dominientur, MS.

<sup>4</sup> *opportunum*] oportunum, MS.

<sup>5</sup> *cognoscant*] congnoscant, MS.

<sup>6</sup> *pugnet*] pungnet, MS.

<sup>7</sup> *cognitus*] congnitus, MS.

. prosequeretur, populus ad pœnitentiæ lamenta con- A.D. 1098.  
 vertitur, et de reatus confessione alias alium cohortatur.  
 . Eliminantur ab exercitu lotrices fatuæ, aleatores et  
 . nebulones cum joculatoribus. Videres profusas [lacri-  
 mis]<sup>1</sup> virorum poenitentium genas, capitibusque cineratis,  
 in laneis et nudis pedibus processionaliter ecclesiam  
 . beati Petri, in qua, dum in mundo quandoque extitit,  
 . sederat, petunt oraturi.

*Conjuratio de stabilitate propositi.*

Rog. Wend. Dixit ergo Boamundus, in arcto consilii vir quasi They swear  
 ii. 118. singularis, "Optimates incliti, votum facientes juremus to perse-  
 universi corde alacri et devoto, quod nullus nostrum vere until  
 . ab hac terra recedet repatriaturus, quoad vixerit, vel they reah  
 subterfugium querat, donec sepulchro Domini, pro quo the Sepul-  
 viam hanc initia vimus,<sup>2</sup> deosculato, vestigia ejus et  
 . Terram Sanctam,<sup>3</sup> quam benedictis pedibus calcavit,  
 . inhabitavit, perambulavit, et tandem sanctissimo suo  
 . sanguine<sup>4</sup> consecravit, attigerimus; et ibidem ipsum  
 . sincero corde et mera devotione cum oblationibus ado-  
 . raverimus. Et quia secus fecimus, videlicet per devia  
 . evagando, et<sup>5</sup> principale propositum suspendendo, venit  
 . super nos<sup>6</sup> indignatio, nec mirum, immo merito dura  
 . toleramus, et duriora promeruimus." Placuit sermo  
 fol. 26 b. universis, et, expleto juramento, et voto solemniter  
 peracto, animata est universa fidelium multitudo, et  
 adeo magnifice corroborata, ut sitienter jam cuperent  
 contra Christi hostes, non considerato numero, usque  
 ad mortem dimicare.

<sup>1</sup> lacrimis] Supplied from W.A. C. D.

<sup>2</sup> initia vimus] inniciavimus, MS.

<sup>3</sup> Terram Sanctam] In the text terram terram, but corr. in marg.

<sup>4</sup> sanguine] Added on to the text.

<sup>5</sup> et] At first *venerunt* was written before *et*, but afterwards underscored and partially erased.

<sup>6</sup> nos] Interlined.

A.D. 1098.

*Animatio ad exeundum.*

Revelation of the holy lance. Eadem quoque hora clericus quidam, nomine Petrus, <sup>Rog. Wend.</sup> de regione quæ Provincia dicitur oriundus, accedens<sup>1</sup> <sup>ii. 118.</sup>

ad episcopum Podiensem et comitem Tholosanum, asserens quod beatus apostolus Andreas sibi in somnis apparuerat, et eum ter vel quater attentius commo-  
 nuerat, quatinus ad principes occidentis loquens nun-  
<sup>¶ Nota de lancea Domini.</sup> claret, ut lanceam, qua Domini nostri Jhesu Christi corpus<sup>2</sup> fuerat perforatum, in ecclesia principis aposto-  
 lorū, juxta aram, super quam idem apostolus in carne ex-  
 istens missam primitus celebraverat, repositam in  
 terra, ipsius terræ<sup>3</sup> effosa superficie bipedali, perquire-  
 rent; locum certissimis indiciis manifestans. Accedens ergo ad viros prædictos, verbum, sicut ei injunctum fuerat, ex ordine revelavit; asserens se ab eodem apostolo multis terroribus ad hoc fuisse compulsum, quia renitebatur, ne ypocritari videretur. Addidit quoque, quod absque mortis periculo, præcepto nequi-  
<sup>Rog. Wend.</sup> verat obaudiendo obviare; adjecitque tanquam cer-<sup>ii. 119.</sup>  
 tissimus, "Finis testimonium veritati perhibebit." Hii autem, cum id ceteris principibus communicassent, secum ipsum clericum adducentes, qui adhuc constanter asserebat consilium ejusdem apostoli et voluntatem Dei fuisse, ut memorata lancea foret exercitui Domini proximo vexillo triumphali, ad locum, quem eis in ecclesia designaverat,<sup>4</sup> convenerunt; et, effosa aliquantulum terra, lanceam, sicut prædicebatur, repererunt. Quod audiens populus, ad ecclesiam devotus accurrit, oblationibusque et osculis tam pretiosum inventum thesau- rum venerantes, cœperunt a suis angustiis respirare, scientes jam confidentius Deum propitius eos in proximo subventurum. Jam jamque<sup>5</sup> Emifer, multis antea.

<sup>1</sup> *accedens*] So W. A. C. D., but in Will. Tyr., p. 721, *accessit*, more grammatically.

<sup>2</sup> *corpus*] Interlined by a later

hand, but is also in F. In W. *latus*, with which agree A. C. D.

<sup>3</sup> *ipsius terræ*] On an erasure.

<sup>4</sup> *designaverat*] *desingnaverat*, MS.

<sup>5</sup> *jamque*] *que* is interlined.

. lacessitus<sup>1</sup> probris, caput extulit, persuadens pusilla- A.D. 1098.  
 . nimes, ne de misericordia Dei proxima, velut alter  
 . Achior,<sup>2</sup> desperarent.

*Consilium exeundi communiter.*

Rog.Wend. Convenientes itaque in unum principes et populi, The  
 ii. 119. cum sibi cognovissent<sup>3</sup> immissum divinitus fervorem princes re-  
 et favorem, de communi decreverunt consilio bellum solve to  
 indicere Corbaranno in crastino profuturum.<sup>4</sup> give battle  
 Instil- to Corba-  
 lavit autem alter in alterius auriculis, "Sicut fuerit ran.  
 voluntas in cœlo, sic fiat. Melius est nobis mori in  
 bello feliciter, quam fame contabescentes vitam infelicem  
 protrahere, et tandem ad arbitrium hostium nostrorum  
 probrose nimis exanimari. Sed bene nobis Dominus,  
 ut<sup>5</sup> multis indicis certificamur,<sup>6</sup> providebit et suffra-  
 gabitur." Quod, inquam, magnificum edictum cum They send  
 eidem Corbaranno per ministerium Petri Heremitæ him notice  
 fuisset propalatum, summo diluculo omnes peregrini by Peter  
 the Hermit.  
 divinis interfuerunt obsequiis. Quibus cum summa  
 devotione peractis, confessione pura præcedente, Do-  
 minici corporis communione roborantur; omnem iræ  
 cuiuslibet rancorem ad invicem condonantes, mutuis  
 osculis et amplexibus, datis dextris in vinculo caritatis,  
 fraterno affectu confederantur, quasi vale ultimum  
 communicantes. Et sic audacter contra hostes Crucis  
 ad pugnam<sup>7</sup> procedere non formidant. Quarto igitur  
 kalendas Julii, invocato de superius, ut dictum est, 28 June.  
 auxilio, acies instruunt, et procedendi ordinem instruc-

<sup>1</sup> *lacessitus*] *lascessitus*, MS.

<sup>2</sup> *velut alter Achior*] Added on to the text.

<sup>3</sup> *cognovissent*] *congnovissent*, MS.

<sup>4</sup> In the margin is the following note : "Et tunc fecit Corbarannus decapitari Emedelisium, scilicet quendam provincialem exploratorem apostatam, eo quod dixerat, quod

omnes Christiani turpiter fame con- tabuerant. Iste sæpe in civitatē venerat inter Christianos, ut omnia insidiando statum hostibus nuncia- ret." This addition is not in F.

<sup>5</sup> *ut*] Interlined.

<sup>6</sup> *certificamur*] The last syllable is on an erasure.

<sup>7</sup> *pugnam*] *pungnam*, MS.

A.D. 1098. tis assignant. In prima igitur acie Hugonem Mag-  
 Order of num ducem constituunt, et eidem Anselmum de Ribur-  
 battle of gis-[monte],<sup>1</sup> cum aliis nobilibus multis, quorum nec  
 the Chris- tian forces. nomina nec numerum tenemus, conjungunt. Secundam  
 vero moderabantur comes Flandrensis et Robertus  
 Friso, cum aliis, qui ab initio eorum vexilla seque- Rog. Wend.  
 bantur. Tertiam itaque dux Normannorum Robertus,<sup>ii. 120.</sup>  
 cum Stephano, comite Albamarlensi, et alii potentes,  
 qui in eorum advenerant comitatu. Quartæ siquidem  
 præerant Aimerus, episcopus Podiensis, et comes Tho-  
 losanus, cum suis familiis; Dominicam secum lanceam  
 pro vexillo hostibus Christi formidabili deferentes.  
 Quintam vero duxit Reinardus, comes Tullensis, cum  
 Petro de Stadeneis, Garnerio de Gres, Henrico de  
 Ascha, Galterio de Domedaet,<sup>2</sup> et aliis multis, qui a  
 principio sua fuerant vestigia subsecuti. Sextæ vero  
 aciei præfuerunt Reinbaldus, comes de Oringis, Lodo-  
 wicus de Mascuns, Lambertus, filius Cononis de Monte-  
 acuto. Septimam nempe minavit dux Godefridus,  
 cum fratre suo Eustachio, cum ceteris Deo dilectis.  
 optimatibus et militaribus suo insigni pertinentibus.  
 Octavæ siquidem præfuit miles insignis Tancredus,  
 cum viris quamplurimis suis ducatibus intendentibus.  
 [Nonam duxit comes Hugo de Sancto Paulo, cum Engel-  
 ranno filio suo, et Thoma de Feria, Baldewino de Burgo,  
 Roberto filio-Gerardi, Reginaldo Belvacensi, et Galone  
 de Calvo-Monte.]<sup>3</sup> Decimæ profecto præfuerunt Rothro-  
 dus, comes Perticensis, Everardus de Pusato, Drogo de  
 Moncy, Radulphus filius-Godefridi, et Conanus Brito.  
 Undecimam nempe gubernaverunt Hysoardus,<sup>4</sup> comes  
 Diensis, Reymundus Piletus, Gastus Bedernensis, Gy-  
 rardus de Ruisselone, Willelmus de Monte-Pessulano, et

<sup>1</sup> monte] Supplied from W. A. C. D.

<sup>3</sup> Nonam . . . Calvo-Monte] Sup- plied from W. A. C. D. F.

<sup>2</sup> Domedaet] Domedart, W. A. C. D. F.

<sup>4</sup> Hysoardus] Hyseardus, MS. and C.D.F., but erroneously. See before, p. 57.

Willelmus de Avinione,<sup>1</sup> cum quamplurimis tractuum A.D. 1098.  
eorumdem. In acie vero duodecima, quæ novissima  
erat et ceteris fortior, moderator fuit dominus Boa-  
mundus, cum suis sequelis, ut hiis, qui fortius ab  
hostibus gravarentur, auxilium impenderet opportunum.<sup>2</sup>

Comitem utique Tholosanum, qui valida ægritudine The count  
gravabatur, in urbe dimiserunt ad ejus custodiam, ut off Toulouse  
hiis,<sup>3</sup> qui erant in præsidio superiori adhuc rebelles, in left to  
absentia principum, urbe vacua, reprimeret idem comes,  
cum iis qui ejus<sup>4</sup> nutui subjacebant. Erant autem

Rog. Wend. permixti præcedentibus turmis sacerdotes et levitæ,  
ii. 121. amicti stolis albis, signum Crucis mirabile bajulantes.

fol. 27 a. Qui autem in urbe remanserant, in lacrimis et ora-  
tionibus devotissimis perseverantes, tam mulieres quam  
. viri, qui imbelles vel imbecilles erant, muros urbis  
ascenderunt, pro salute populi spiritu indefesso sup-  
plicantes, ut pro nostris dimicarent orationibus, manibus  
. ad Deum elevatis, efficacius, quibus minus fuerat usus  
. armorum materialium.

*De rore cœlesti Christianis collato desuper.*

Rog. Wend. Accidit autem, quod nequaquam arbitror prætere- A mira-  
ii. 121. undum, quod quidam ros suavissimus de supernis super culous dew  
ipsum nostrum exercitum incomparabiliter placidus de- descends  
scendit, ut quasi in eo benedictionem suam et gratiam  
cœlitus elapsam videretur Dominus nostratibus infudisse.  
Nec solum hominibus sed et equis vigor insolitus ita  
infusus est, ut qui antea per multos dies non nisi folia  
et cortices arborum comedenter pro pabulo, tota die  
illa equos hostium et celeritate vincerent et labore.

<sup>1</sup> *Avinione*] So also F.; but *Amane*, W. A. C. D.

<sup>2</sup> *opportunum*] *oportunum*, MS.

<sup>3</sup> *hiis*] We should probably here read *illos* or *hos*; but *hiis* is borrowed from W., and so in A. C. D. F.

They all, however, have a differently constructed sentence, requiring *ne* in the place of *ut*, and so corrected in Edd. and edit. Wend.

<sup>4</sup> *ejus*] Added on to the text.

A.D. 1098. Si hostibus id contigisset,<sup>1</sup> Deus scit, nescio; sed quod nec roris refrigerium nec cœlitus eis afflaverit bne-dictio, subsequentia declarabant.

*De prælio gravissimo et victoria Christianis desuper collata gloriosissima.*

Names of Corbarannus interea, intellecto nostrorum egressu, Rog.Wend.  
the Turkish utpote vir bellicosus et a primis annis edoctus, disponit. ii. 121.  
kings and admirals. acies, agmina instruit, præficiens eis admirarios et reges  
xx<sup>ti</sup>. et ix. Quorum noniua hæc fuerunt, Meleduchac,  
Amirsoliman, Amirsolendaïs, Amirhegyble, Amirmatoanc,  
Amirmahumeth, Camirach, Cotholoseniar, Magalgotelon,  
Batulius, Boessac, Amirbaïach, Anxian, Sansodole, Amigoian,  
Boldagis, Amirilias, Gelissassan, Gyremis, Amigoëus,  
Arabeth, Amirdalis, Amirtakaor, Amirmosse,  
Ginahadole, Amirdungin, Amirtaph, Sogueman, Myracleus.

*Reversio ad matrem.*

Soliman, prince of Nicæa.

Hos omnes reges vel admirarios Corbarannus animans, districte præcepit sub optentu gratiæ suæ, quatinus solitæ virtutis memores, frivolum reputent quicquid inermis popellus, plebs vulgaris, turba famelica conatur machinari. Solimannus præterea, Nicænorum princeps, studiose disponit agmina; et qui præcedere debeant vel subsequi, diligenter distinguit.

*Congressio anceps nimis et incomparabilis.*

The armies engage in battle.

Occupaverunt interea principes nostri universa ante urbem, montes quoque et campestria, quæ a civitate distare videbantur, quasi miliaribus duobus; et, monentibus tubis atque lituis, gradatim in hostes procedunt, secundum ordinem militarem sese collaterantes. Et, facto impetu, tres primæ acies in eos potenter

<sup>1</sup> *id contigisset]* These words are | erased and partly underscored for repeated, but are afterwards partly | omission.

. irruunt ac proterve, lanceis et gladiis cominus instantes, A.D. 1098.  
. contempnentes<sup>1</sup> Sarracenorum argumentosa tela aut  
. strepitus artificiosos. Nostri quoque pedites, qui arcubus  
utebantur et balistis, equitum manipulos præcedentes,  
votis ardentibus hostes arcere desudabant. Quos se-  
quentes equitum turmæ, viriliter in agone desudant.  
Tandem cum omnes legiones, excepta novissima, cui  
præerat Boamundus, cum hostibus fortiter decertarent,  
ita ut jam, pluribus interfectis, pæne agminibus disso-  
lutis Turci in fugam verterentur, ecce Solimannus, cum  
duobus milibus ex locis maritimis adveniens, in aciem  
Boamundi cum multo impetu a tergo irruit truculenter,  
et tantam<sup>2</sup> sagittarum grandinem immisit, ut totam  
. fere aciem, velut irruente tempestate pluviali, cooperiret.  
Moxque, arcubus relictis, malleis instant, sicas et gladiis  
ita ardenter, ut cum Boamundus eorum vix impetum  
sustineret, dux Godefridus et cum eo Tancredus avolant  
aura rapida velocius; <sup>3</sup> quorum adventu<sup>4</sup> et admiranda  
constantia et instantia, vulnera letifera et necem multis  
hostibus intulerunt. Tunc Solimannus, vir versutus ac Stratagem  
martius, ad alia se convertens argumenta, foenum mul-  
tum et stipulam, quæ ad artem nocendi<sup>5</sup> ex adverso  
congregaverat, jussit succendi, vento tunc contra nos-  
trates et cum eis flante; et, licet flammarum darent mo-  
dicam, favillas tamen, tetrasque scintillas<sup>6</sup> atque fumi  
caliginem ministrarunt. In hac vero fumi caligine hostes  
de peditibus nostris nonnullos telis occiderunt. Insuper  
ignem suum Græcum cum alio projecerant, ut sic dupli-  
incendio nostri consumerentur. Cum ecce moderator et

<sup>1</sup> *contempnentes*] *contepnentes*, MS.<sup>2</sup> *tantam*] *tantum*, MS. and F.<sup>3</sup> *velocius*] *volocius*, MS.<sup>4</sup> *adventu*] Corrected *adventus* in Edd. and ed. Wend., but unneces-  
sarily.<sup>5</sup> *nocendi*] The last syllable is on an erasure.<sup>6</sup> *scintillas*] Added to the text on an erasure, as also the letters *sque* of the preceding word, and no doubt originally written *tetram tamen*, as in W. A. C. D. The correction is followed by F.

A.D. 1098. ventorum imperator Dominus Jhesus, qui sicut mari ita et ventis imperat, ventum cum ignibus in paganos retoquens, excæcavit eosdem; et per proprias muscipulas illaqueati, ceciderunt in foveam quam aliis eruderaverant. Unde in fugam præcipites conversi seipsoes conglomerantes, vitæ propriae raptim consulunt et saluti. Quos militiae principes Christianæ acriter insequentes, ad sua agmina prius dissoluta violenter recurrere compulerunt; cædentes eos absque pietate usque ad eorum tentoria, ubi suorum majorem fortitudinem esse cognoscabant. Obstabant igitur ibidem Turci omni qua poterant virtute urgentissima. Unde hinc indeque resumpto spiritu redivivo audaciæ, scientes quod præcise res pro capite agebatur, congressum ineunt cruentissimum. Incipit igitur jam conflictus, extrahuntur gladii sanguine. hinc indeque ineibriandi, resonabant æneæ cassides mal. leis ferreis et mucronibus repercussæ, et, ut malleis solent incudes, emicantibus scintillis<sup>1</sup> resonabant. Eragor hastarum, tinnitus gladiorum, gemitus percussorum, equorum tumultus compressorum, vociferatio sese ad invicem<sup>2</sup> cohortantium,<sup>3</sup> fumus anhelantium,<sup>4</sup> moti pul. veris ascensus turbulentus, aera usque ad nubes com. moverunt;<sup>5</sup> imino etiam ad memoriam redacta, nedum visa, hominis constantissimi cor impellere ad timorem. poterant<sup>6</sup> vel horrorem. Hinc enim aliqui mucronibus transverberantur, hinc alii, quasi verubus<sup>7</sup> altilia, lanceis perforantur; hinc illi decollantur, hinc alii eviscerantur; hinc illi excerebrantur, hinc alii exoculantur. Nonnulli quoque, manibus aut pedibus detruncati et sellis expulsi, sub equorum pedibus conculcantur; umbo umbone repellitur, enses ensibus reperiuntur, clamor clamore retunditur. Nec recolitur post tempora diluvii gene.

<sup>1</sup> *scintillis*] cintillis, MS.<sup>2</sup> *invicem*] Partly on an erasure.<sup>3</sup> *colortantium*] chohortantium, MS.<sup>4</sup> *anhelantium*] hanelantium, MS.<sup>5</sup> *commoverunt*] At first written *commovere*, but *re* expuncted, and *vel runt* interlined.<sup>6</sup> *poterant*] Added in marg.<sup>7</sup> *verubns*] veribus, MS.

. ralis tam cruentum, tam horribile bellum genus huma- A.D. 1098.  
. num concussisse, aut terræ superficiem sanguine per-  
. fudisse copiosiori.

*Auxilium de cœlo manifestum.*

Rog. Wend. Tandem cum victoria utrinque diu fluctuasset incerta, Miraculous  
ii. 123. ecce ab ipsis montibus visus est exercitus descendere aid is sent  
. invincibilis; cuius bellatores equis albis insidentes, to the  
. vexilla in manibus candida præferebant. Cognoverunt<sup>1</sup>  
. igitur, divina revelante gratia tali,<sup>2</sup> ex inspectione<sup>3</sup>  
. vexillorum, divinum adesse præsidium, sanctosque Geor-  
. gium, Demetrium et Mercurium præcedere, et prædicta  
. vexilla mirifica, exercitum innumerabilem cœlestis mi-  
. litiae<sup>4</sup> ipsos subsequentem. Sed, sicut non est datum  
. omnibus intelligere hoc misterium, sic non omnibus  
. concessum est intueri; sed, sicut nobis postea conversi  
. et captivi paganorum retulerunt, omnes hostes ipsos  
. ad eorum confusionem martires adeo terribiles, adeo  
. formidabiles, ac si essent ignivomi dracones vel leones  
. rugientes, aspicere potuerunt. Nec etiam omnes Chris-  
. tiani eos videre potuerunt, sed quibus Deus suum ar-  
. chanum voluit revelare. Et qui videbant Christiani,  
. ipsos amicabiles et favorabiles in spiritu cognoscebant,<sup>5</sup>  
. sicut pagani hostiles et horribiles, et sibi adversaturos,<sup>6</sup>  
. indubitanter perpendebant eosdem. Cognito<sup>7</sup> igitur, ut  
. dictum est, signo triumphali, Turci tremuli certatim  
aufugerunt, omnem suppellectilem pretiosam, cum ten-  
. toriis mirabilibus et thesauris concupiscibilis et vic-

<sup>1</sup> *Cognoverunt*] Congnoverunt, MS.

<sup>2</sup> *tali*] Added on to the text.

<sup>3</sup> *ex inspectione*] The text is faulty  
(as also in F.) and reads *expectione*,  
with *vel ins* interlined; and the  
word *inspectione* occurs again after  
*vexillorum*. I have restored the ob-  
vious reading from W. A. C. D.

<sup>4</sup> *militiae*] milice, MS.

<sup>5</sup> *cognoscebant*] congnoscebant,  
MS.

<sup>6</sup> *adversaturos*] Written at first  
*adversatur*, and *os* afterwards inter-  
lined.

<sup>7</sup> *Cognito*] Congnito, MS.

A.D. 1098. tualibus delectabilibus, Christianis vacuis et fame confectis relinquentes; insequentibus et prosternentibus ipsos cœlesti exercitu ac terrestri.<sup>1</sup> Visi sunt insuper a nonnullis angeli in aere volitantes, et super Turcos fugientes, ignem fulmineum jaculantes. Quæ visio, sicut Sarracenis incussit timorem, ita Christianis lætitiam contulit ampliorem.

*Jocunda Christianorum victoria, et<sup>2</sup> paganorum lugubris confusio.*

Flight of Corboran. Corbarannus autem ab initio certaminis turbam Rog.Wend. declinans, in colle quodam constitutus, cum repente dissipatas per discrimen memoratum conspicit legiones, relictis castris, trans Eufraten aufugit.<sup>3</sup> Et, ut sibi consuleret et liberius possit, ne præda fieret inimicis, avolare, equos fatigatos deserens, recentes alternatim obiter mutuavit. Nostri quoque principes defectum<sup>4</sup> equorum macilentorum et multum vexatorum metuentes, non multum sunt, licet in hostes<sup>5</sup> acres et accensi, prosecuti, excepto Tancredo, qui cruentis calcaribus et equinis lateribus minime parcens, ipsos ex ardentissimis spiritus acerbitate, cum aliis paucis sodalibus, usque ad solis occasum hostes prosternendo instantius prosequebatur. Tantum enim infidelibus<sup>6</sup> pavorem eis virtus divina immiserat et diffidentiam, ut nec resistere, nec a se insectantium possent injurias propulsare. Decem enim ex nostris ipsis decem milia videbantur.

*De spoliis impreiabilibus Turcorum fugientium.*

Spoils captured from the Turks. Consummato itaque glorioso tanto certamine, reversi Rog.Wend. sunt principes nostri ad castra hostium, ubi tantam

<sup>1</sup> *terrestri*] teresti, MS.

ously in the margin after *vexatorum*.

<sup>2</sup> *et*] Interlined.

F. repeats the word in the text.

<sup>3</sup> *aufugit*] At first written *effugit*.

<sup>5</sup> *hostes*] hostres, MS.

<sup>4</sup> *defectum*] Repeated superflu-

<sup>6</sup> *infidelibus*] Added in marg.

. rerum omnium in auro, argento, gemmis, olosericis, A.D. 1098.  
 . vestibus pretiosis et vasis impreiabilibus, et, quod tunc  
 . omnibus erat præstantius, tantam victualium invene-  
 runt opulentiam, ut neque inde numerus esset vel  
 mensura. Equorum insuper, armentorum et gregum,  
 servorum, ancillarum et puerorum, cum tentoriis et  
 papilionibus, nimiam invenerunt abundantiam;<sup>1</sup> quæ  
 omnia secum in urbem contulerunt. Inter cetera vero  
 unum admirabile tabernaculum invenerunt, in modum  
 civitatis turribus, cameris, diverticulis et propugnaculis  
 . communitum, ex optimo serico variis coloribus con-  
 textum et distinctum. A cujus medio, quasi a triclinio,  
 . in partes diversas distincta,<sup>2</sup> velut claustralium, deflue-  
 bant arcuata<sup>3</sup> diversoria superius concamerata; in  
 quibus spatiose possent duo hominum milia considere,  
 . et illud per aliquod tempus a discursoribus defendere.  
 Turci autem qui in eo quasi in præsidio, erant, illud  
 principibus nostris tali resignarunt conditione, ut libere  
 liceret eis recedere cum salute. Tunc exultavit Emifer,<sup>4</sup>  
 primus civitatis Antiochenæ introductor, et totius ne-  
 gotii supradicti moderator et instructor; qui et donis  
 amplioribus et honoribus locupletatur. Acta autem sunt Date of  
 hæc, ad honorem Christi et ecclesiæ universalis, anno the battle.  
 Domini M<sup>o</sup>.XCVIII<sup>o</sup>. mense Junio, vicesima<sup>5</sup> die mensis.

### *De ecclesiarum reparatione.*

Rog. Wend. Principibus itaque de prælio reversis, et urbe in The  
 ii. 125. omni tranquillitate composita, placuit omnibus, et præ- churches  
 fol. 28 a. cipue episcopo Podiensi, ut majorem ecclesiam,<sup>6</sup> olim in of Antioch  
 are re-  
 paired;

<sup>1</sup> abundantiam] habundantiam, MS.

<sup>2</sup> distineta] distieta, MS., on an erasure.

<sup>3</sup> arcuata] Added on to the text.

<sup>4</sup> Emifer] In the margin opposite is the following note: "Eece Emifer factus est secundus Achior, de quo legitur in Judith."

<sup>5</sup> vicesima] So in W. A. C. D. F., but in Will. Tyr., p. 727, *vicesima octava*, and with him agree Baldric, p. 122; Guibert. Abbas, p. 523; Will. Malm. ii. 559; Ord. Vit. iii. 563.

<sup>6</sup> placuit . . . ecclesiam] Written over an erasure.

A.D. 1098. honorem principis apostolorum Petri consecratam, cum  
 and a  
 patriarch appointed. aliis civitatis ipsius ecclesiis, in pristinum decorem re-  
 formarent,<sup>1</sup> et ut in eis prælati et ministri instituantur,  
 Domino militaturi. Dominum quoque patriarcham,  
 nomine Johannem, in sede pristina cum honore condigno  
 locaverunt. Per urbes quoque finitimas, quæ cathedral-  
 lem habere consueverant dignitatem, episcopos consti-  
 tuunt. Urbis autem dominium Boamundo omnes be-  
 given to  
 Boamund, nigne concesserunt; qui, quoniam apud suos nomine  
 henceforth styled et dignitate princeps dicebatur, meruit in posterum  
 Prince of Antiochiae Princeps nominari.  
 Antioch.

*De dignitate et eminentia Antiochiae.*

Description of  
Antioch.

Est autem civitas pulcherrima<sup>2</sup> et antiqua Antiochia Rog. Wend.  
 et munitissima, habens intra se iiiior. montes satis altos;  
 in quorum uno castellum est, quod toti præeminet civi-  
 tati. Deorsum vero civitas est decenter aedificata, et muro  
 duplice circumdata. Murus autem interior amplius et  
 in aera porrectus est; in quo turres sunt cccc<sup>tae</sup>. quinquaginta,  
 formosis mœniis et propugnaculis defensæ. Murus  
 exterior non tantæ utique est celsitudinis, sed tamen  
 admirandæ venustatis. Continet autem in se ccc<sup>tas</sup>.  
 et xl<sup>a</sup>. ecclesias, cujus patriarcha centum quinquaginta  
 tres episcopos habet sibi subjectos. Quatuor montibus  
 ab oriente clauditur; ab occidente autem habet flumen,  
 quod quidam Farfar, quidam Orontem esse contendunt.  
 Octoginta et quinque reges eam construxerunt, quorum  
 primus Antiochus fuit, ex quo extat Antiochia nomi-  
 nata. Obsederant autem eam Christiani, antequam  
 comprehenderent eam, per viii<sup>o</sup>. menses et diem unum;  
 qua capta, obsederant eam iterum gentiles per tres  
 septimanas, priusquam exirent ex ea ad proelium  
 Christiani.

ii. 125.

Rog. Wend.  
ii. 126.

<sup>1</sup> reformarent] reformare, MS. | <sup>2</sup> pulcherrima] pulcherima, MS.

*De quadam peste suborta in urbe Antiochiae.* A.D. 1098.

Rog.Wend. Requiererunt igitur in illa Christiani mensibus v. et A pesti-  
ii. 126. ix. diebus. Quo tempore ex causis occultis, sed cre-  
ditur quod post penuriam præteritam, subsequentem  
repentinam victualium abundantiam,<sup>1</sup> tanta clades popu-  
lum afflixit, quod infra dies paucos ad quinquaginta  
milia hominum utriusque sexus deperierunt. Inter quos Death of  
et dominus Aimerus, Podiensis antistes, qui quasi pater the bishop  
plebis erat et moderator, defunctus, cum lacrimis om- of Puy,  
nium in basilica principis apostolorum, in loco quo  
inventa fuit lancea Christi, sepultus<sup>2</sup> est, anima merito  
ad cœlos avolante. Ceciderunt autem in illius cladi  
acerbitate Henricus de Ascha, Reginaldus de Armesbach,  
qui pro probitate<sup>3</sup> notabili,<sup>4</sup> quam in prælio nuper com-  
misso exercuerant, et eorum generis præclara nobilitate,  
meruerunt<sup>5</sup> ab omnibus inconsolabiliter deplorari. Prin- The  
cipes autem nostri, ut instantis cladi pericula decli- princes  
narent, ab invicem ea conditione sunt divisi, ut in<sup>6</sup> agree to  
kalendis Octobris iterum convenientes, hominibus re- separate  
vocatis et equis, votum peregrinationis communiter until 1 Oct.  
expedirent, quam jam feliciter, Deo propitio, subarra-  
runt.

*De quadam strage fidelium particulari.*

Rog.Wend. Reimundus interea, cognomento<sup>7</sup> Piletus, major sibi Raimund  
ii. 126. . se,<sup>8</sup> dicens otium esse inertium nimis execrandum, contra Pilet takes  
the castle

<sup>1</sup> abundantiam] habundanciam, MS. The construction is faulty here and in F., and we should probably read, *subsequente repentina victualium abundantia*.

<sup>2</sup> sepultus] sepeltus, MS.

<sup>3</sup> probitate] at first written *probate*.

<sup>4</sup> notabili] In the text *nota*, but corr. in marg.

<sup>5</sup> meruerunt] merueruunt, MS.

<sup>6</sup> in] So also W. A. C. D., but in

the text *o* has been interlined, to read *iiiº. (tertio)*, and this is followed by F. It must be remarked, that the author of the "Gesta Francorum," ap. Bongars, p. 22, reads, "ad kalend. Novembris," which appears to be right.

<sup>7</sup> cognomento] cognomento, MS.

<sup>8</sup> major sibi se] The same expression occurs under the year 1200. See ed. Wats., p. 206.

A.D. 1008. majorum consilium cum suis legionibus equitationem .  
of Thala- faciens, cepit castrum quod Thalamania est vocatum.  
mania. Indeque Marram veniens, urbem Sarracenis repletam,  
He is de- pugnavit contra cives, qui obviam ei cum impetu per-  
feated at rexerunt. Qui primo a nostris in fugam compulsi, in  
Marrah. fine animati vicerunt, et magnam stragem dederunt ex  
fidelibus.

*Qualiter Hugo Magnus ad imperatorem missus, non  
redit.*

Hugh the Cum hæc ibidem agerentur, Hugo Magnus a princi- Rog. Wend.  
Great is pibus ad imperatorem Alexium missus, non mediocriter ii. 126.  
sent to the famam præteritam denigravit, dum, expleto negotio, ad Rog. Wend.  
emperor, and does eos qui eum miserant nec responsa detulit, nec redire ii. 127.  
not return. curavit; illud ad memoriam Juvenalis non reducens,

“ Omne animi vitium tanto conspectius in se  
Crimen habet, quanto qui peccat major habetur.”<sup>1</sup>

The count Comes autem Tholosanus interea, qui jam plene con- .  
of Toulouse valuerat, cupiens otia infirmitatis redimere,<sup>2</sup> Albaram, .  
takes Al- urbem ditissimam, obsedit et cepit; atque in ea Pe-  
bara. trum quendam, genere Narbonensem, fecit episcopum<sup>3</sup>  
1 Nov. ordinari. Deinde kalendis Novembris, cum jam omnes  
principes ex condicto essent congregati, accingunt se ad  
28 Nov. iter Jerosolitanum; et iiiio. kalendas Octobris<sup>4</sup> ad  
[as corr.] Marram venientes, obsederunt eam. Distabat autem ab  
Marrah is Antiochia quasi trium dierum itinere, habens cives præ  
besieged multitudine divitiarum suarum nimis arrogantes. Nam  
and cap- cruces super turres et moenia civitatis figentes, sputis  
tured. et alapis et aliis modis probrosis, in contumeliam  
Christi et nostratuum, afficiebant; unde nostri majorem

<sup>1</sup> From Juv. Sat. viii. 140, and quoted thus by Will. Tyr., p. 729.

<sup>2</sup> *qui jam . . . redimere*] Added in marg. Om. F.

<sup>3</sup> *episcopum*] Added in marg.

<sup>4</sup> *Octobris*] So Will. Tyr., p. 734,

with whom agree Wendover and A. C. D. F.; but we should certainly read *Dcccembbris*, as appears from Rob. Monach., p. 68; Baldric., p. 124; Guib. Abb., p. 526. Marrah was taken on 11th December.

indignationem concipientes, urbem acrius aggrediuntur. A.D. 1098.  
 Et post aliquot dierum infestationes, applicatis ad murum scalis, moenia violenter ascendunt, urbemque sine omni obstaculo ingressi, eam vacuam invenerunt. Cives namque ad speluncas<sup>1</sup> subterraneas<sup>2</sup> sese conferentes, suae saluti, ad tempus saltem, providerunt; sed mane facto nostri, ad speluncas ignibus applicatis, eos ad deditioinem compulerunt, et partim capitibus amputatis, multos vinculis manciparunt. Undecimo vero die Decembris moritur ibidem Willelmus, Aurasiensis antistes, vir religiosus et justus, ac timens Deum. Manserunt autem in urbe illa peregrini per mensem unum et dies *iiii<sup>or.</sup>*

*Quomodo rex Anglorum Willelmus regnum in tributis  
et exactionibus gravaverit.*

Rog. Wend. Eodemque anno rex Anglorum Willelmus, cognomeno, <sup>ii. 128.</sup> capite, et mente Rufus et vulpinus, fuit in Normannia, curis martiis mancipatus, populum regni tributis et variis exactionibus affligens, omnibus molestus et infestus, omnia abradens, omnia auferens; maledictiones omnium et imprecaciones nequaquam abhorruit. Inter quas injurias, tam a Normannia quam Anglia et aliis terris pecuniam non minimam extorsit, sub optentu justitiae suam pallians avaritiam, et asserens se eam Roberto fratri suo, Deo in Terra Sancta militanti, per Templarios transmissurum fideliter, ad precum suarum instantiam urgentissimam. Cui indgenti, ut dicebat, fraterno affectu compatiebatur, qui nihil penitus transmittebat, sed potius terram suam depauperabat.

<sup>1</sup> *speluncas*] An erasure of two letters occurs in the middle of this word.

<sup>2</sup> *subterraneas*] subteraneas, MS.

<sup>3</sup> *cognomento*] cognomento, MS.  
<sup>4</sup> *qui*] On an erasure, and originally written *cui*.

A.D. 1098. *Obierunt in Anglia quidam episcopi.<sup>1</sup>*

Deaths of Eodemque tempore obiit Walkelinus,<sup>2</sup> episcopus Win- Rog. Wend.  
certain per-toniensis, et Hugo Salopesbiriensis ab Hiberniensibus ii. 128.  
sonages.

The king occisus est, cui frater ejus Robertus de Beleasco suc-  
seizes the cessit. Rex autem Willelmus illico manus rapaces.  
bishopric episcopatui Wintoniensi injiciens,<sup>3</sup> quantam potuit.  
of Win- emunxit<sup>4</sup> pecuniam.  
chester.

*Principes nostri populo obmurmuranti satisfacientes,  
procedunt.*

A.D. 1099. Anno Domino M<sup>o</sup>.XCOIX<sup>o</sup>. principes occidentis et pere- Rog. Wend.  
grini Christiani dies Natalios apud Marram sollemp- ii. 128.

Quarrel between Boaimund and the count of Toulouse. niter celebrarunt, ubi inter Boamundum et comitem Tholosanum orta est dissensio; sed quia non multum ad præsens negotium hoc<sup>5</sup> pertinet, ad cetera transeamus, ostendentes qualiter populus nimis moleste tulit, quod principes moras fecerunt inutiles, et obiter pro singulis civitatibus captis inter se jurgia suscitarent, unde iram Dei merito formidarent, quibus principale. propositum quasi neglectum<sup>6</sup> suspendebatur. Comes igitur Tholosanus, ut populo satisfaceret, assumptis x. milibus armatorum et equitibus trecentis quinquaginta, Rog. Wend. ii. 129. arripuit iter Jerosolimitanum, sequentibus eum duce Normannorum Roberto et Tancredo, cum quater xx. equitibus et peditum multitudine numerosa. Post dies autem aliquot, media regione transcursa, in campestria urbis, non longe a mari sita,<sup>7</sup> Archis nuncupatae, descendederunt; juxta eandem, licet populo displiceret, castra statuentes. Est autem illa urbs una ex urbibus Fenicis regionis, ad radices Libani sita; quam, ut

<sup>1</sup> *episcopi*] So in MS. We should read *magnates*.

<sup>2</sup> *Walkelinus*] Willelmus, MS. Corr. from W. A. C. D. F.

<sup>3</sup> *injiciens*] iniciens, MS.

<sup>4</sup> *emunxit*] emunesit, MS.

<sup>5</sup> *hoc*] On an erasure.

<sup>6</sup> *neglectum*] neegleetum, MS.

<sup>7</sup> *sita*] So read W. and all the MSS., but corr. *sitæ* in Edd. and ed. Wend.

habent veterum traditiones, Aracheus, septimus filiorum A.D. 1099. Canaan, fundasse perhibetur, et eam de suo nomine Archeam<sup>1</sup> appellasse, et postmodum, per corruptionem nominis, Archis dictam fuisse. Hanc nostrates longa Siege of obsidione prementes, nihil omnino profecerunt. Ibidem Archis. orto jurgio et diversis sententiis de lancea Domini inter quosdam in fide vacillantes, per copiosum ignis incendium vera fuisse comprobata est, tam in ligno quam mucrone.

*Procedunt et alii principes.*

Rog. Wend. Per idem tempus dux Godefridus et alii principes, Godfrey  
ii. 129. qui apud Antiochiam remanserant, ad instantiam populi and the other  
Rog. Wend. se ad iter expedientes, kalendis Martii ad Laodiciam prinees  
ii. 130. Syriae cum xxv. milibus armatorum fortium perve- follow.  
nerunt; ubi dux Godefridus a praeside civitatis, quae  
Christianos aliquos<sup>2</sup> habuit habitatores, Guenemerum<sup>3</sup> Guenemer  
Bolonensem, quem tenebat in vinculis, sibi restitui, of Bologne  
postulavit. Praeses vero, qui infidelis extitit et fraudu- is liberated  
lentus, non amore sed timore ductus, reddidit eum duci, from pri-  
cum sociis suis et classe universa. Nam idem Guine-  
merus<sup>4</sup> crucesignatus cum armatorum classe valida  
illuc applicans, imprudenter captus ibidem fuerat a ci-  
vibus, et vinculis mancipatus; et sic liberatum dux suae  
classi praeficiens, eundem ducem alios sequi praecepit per  
terram gradientes.

*De victoria Ricardi de Calvo-Monte.*

Tempore quoque sub eodem facta est lamentatio Lamenta-  
magna, et dolor inauditus per multa climata totius tion of the  
fere orientis et civitates Saracenorum cum<sup>5</sup> confu- Saracens  
for their losses.

<sup>1</sup> *Archeam*] At first written *Archis*, as in A. C. D., but corr. in marg. In I. and Will. Tyr. *Arachis*, but in W. *Aracheum*.

<sup>2</sup> *quæ Christianos aliquos*] On an erasure.

<sup>3</sup> *Guenemerum*] *Gnenemerum*, MS.

<sup>4</sup> *Guinemerus*] *Gninemerus*, MS.

<sup>5</sup> *cum*] On an erasure.

A.D. 1099 sione personuit inaudita, super tanta strage suorum .  
 Flight of apud Antiochiam perpetrata. Fugiens enim Corba- .  
 Corbaran, rannus, contritionem, omnes<sup>1</sup> nobilium orientalium per .  
 who is ac- partes, per quas fugerat, et tandem Soldani<sup>2</sup> om- .  
 cused of . nium orientalium, plenius certificavit.<sup>3</sup> A quo idem .  
 treason. Corbarannus graviter de proditione accusatus est, .  
 gentem, macie<sup>4</sup> confectam, deperiret contrita. Qui .  
 cum se purgando asseruisset, quod unus Christianus .  
 duobus paganis æquipolleret vel præcelleret, rapuit .  
 verbum ab incircumspecti ore Soldanus iratus, dicens, .  
 “Nisi invenias unum Christianum, qui duos paganos, .  
 quos elegero, in bello vicerit, ut proditor convictus .  
 condempnaberis. Os enim tuum locutum est contra te, .  
 ut in tuum caput tua redundet iniquitas.” Unde .  
 Combat Corbarannus sollicitus, Ricardum de Calvo-Monte, nati- .  
 between one Normannum, quem captivum tenebat, produxit .  
 Richard in medium. Et contra ipsum duo Turci, videlicet .  
 de Cau- Murgalus de Valle-griseo, sagittarius incomparabilis, .  
 mont and et Golias de Mecha, pugnator egregius, ad pugnan- .  
 two Turks. dum<sup>5</sup> parabantur, ut illius, non duelli sed potius .  
 trielli, finalis eventus assertionis Corbaranni verita- .  
 tem comprobaret. Quos ipse Ricardus, in conspectu .  
 ipsius Soldani et omnium principum orientis, vicit<sup>6</sup> .  
 et peremit. Unde Corbarannus de infamia purgatus, .  
 ipsum Ricardum, multis honoratum donativis, cum .  
 sociis<sup>7</sup> liberum abire permisit.

<sup>1</sup> *omnes*] Added in marg., but in text of F.

<sup>2</sup> *Soldani*] Written *Soldañ* on an erasure and afterwards altered. In F., *Soldanum*.

<sup>3</sup> *plenius certificavit*] On an erasure.

<sup>4</sup> *macie*] On an erasure.

<sup>5</sup> *pugnandum*] *pungnandum*, MS.

<sup>6</sup> *vicit*] Added in marg.

<sup>7</sup> *sociis*] Repeated in the text, but afterwards struck out.

*Quomodo principes, multis regionibus transcursis, ad Tripolim pervenerunt.*

Rog.Wend. Principes autem nostri interea maritima transeuntes, A.D. 1099.  
 ii. 130. ad urbem Gabulensem, quæ alio nomine Gibelum The  
 fol. 29 a. dicitur, pervenerunt. Distabat a Laodicia miliaribus princes ad-  
 quasi xii., ubi cum, castris in girum locatis, urbem vance to  
 aliquandiu obsedissent, is qui urbi præerat, Soldani  
 Egiptiorum domini procurator, aureorum sex milia  
 duci optulit, cum aliis donativis pretiosis, ita ut obsi-  
 dionem amoveret. Quem cum flectere nequivisset, ad Nota pro-  
 comitem Tholosanum dirigens<sup>1</sup> prædictam pecuniam dampno-  
 pollicens per internuncios, si eum posset a ducis mani-  
 bus liberare. Ipse igitur, clam suscepta pecunia, misit Treachery  
 ad ducem Albariensem episcopum, anxie sollicitans of the  
 eum, ut, dimissa obsidione, ad se non differat prope. count of  
 rare; significans quod hostium multitudo a tractu  
 adveniret Persico, ut injurias<sup>2</sup> ultum iret, quas apud  
 Rog.Wend. Antiochiam perpessa fuerat sub præside Corbaranno.  
 ii. 131. Et super hiis omnibus dicebat se recepisse nuncios  
 fidedignos. Ille igitur et ceteri principes, dictis ejus They  
 fidem adhibentes, soluta protinus obsidione, et urbem march on-  
 Valentiam transeuntes, Maracleam, quæ prima est ex Archis.  
 urbibus Fenicis provinciæ, sinistrantes, Tortosam usque  
 pervenerunt. Et inde ad urbem Archensem<sup>3</sup> per-  
 venientes, castra ibidem locaverunt. Quibus occurrens  
 Tancredus, fraudem comitis Tholosani detunicavit;  
 unde et ipsi longe a tentoriis ejus seorsum sua taber- The count  
 nacula statuerunt. Videns autem comes animos prin- of Tou-  
 cipum a se alienatos, missis muniberis, omnes præter louse is re-  
 Tancrenum sibi reconciliavit. Deinde principes, relicto conciled to  
 all the other  
 except  
 Tancred.

<sup>1</sup> *dirigens*] So also A. C. D. F. I., but the construction would seem to require us to read *direxit internuncios, prædictam pecuniam pollicens,*

*si.* Cf. Will. Tyr., p. 738. In W. the word is omitted.

<sup>2</sup> *injurias*] *injuriam*, MS.

<sup>3</sup> *Archensem*] *Arthensem*, MS.

- A.D. 1099. in obsidione Archensi Albariensi<sup>1</sup> episcopo, aliisque They ad- viris nonnullis, versus<sup>2</sup> Tripolim agmina direxerunt. advance to Quo pervenientes, præsidem loci illius cum universa Tripoli. multitudine civitatis, ordinatis agminibus, rebellaturos repererunt; <sup>3</sup> unde nostrates indignantes, acriter in eosdem irruerunt, et in primo impetu, dissolutis ceteris, eos ad urbem redire compellunt, septingentis ex eis in ore gladii trucidatis. Ibique ante Tripolim peregrini Pascha Domini sollempniter celebrarunt, iiiior.
- 10 April. idus Aprilis. Tunc præses Tripolitanus cognoscens quod non potuit cum nostris contendere a pari, missa legatione, a principibus optinuit, ut, datis xv. aureorum milibus, cum equis, mulis, sericis et vasis pretiosis, cum gregibus et armentis, fines<sup>4</sup> illos pacifice pertransirent. Tunc nostri recedentes et maritima sequentes, juga montis Libani sinistrantes, Bibliumque percurrentes, supra ripam maris, in loco cui nomen est Emaus, castra statuerunt. Inde vero die tertia ante urbem Britensium<sup>5</sup> castra metati, sequenti die Sydonem attigerunt. Et in crastino, percursa Sarepta, Rog.Wend. Elyæ prophetæ mansione,<sup>6</sup> ad illius regionis metropolim Tyrum pervenerunt. Et dehinc profecti Achon, ii. 132. et ab Achon progressi Galileam a lœva deserentes, inter Carmelum et mare Cæsaream, Palestinæ metropolim, quæ et Turris Stratonis alio nomine nuncupatur, attigerunt. Quidam autem principum per castrum Bethelon transeuntes, applicuerunt ad urbem Baruth, 19 May. die Dominicæ Ascensionis. Inde quoque per Sagittam<sup>7</sup> ad Arram et Caypham transeuntes, diem Pentecostes 29 May omnes pariter congregati apud Cæsaream iiiio. kalendas [as corr.] Julii<sup>8</sup> solempniter celebrarunt.

<sup>1</sup> *Albariensi*] Abariensi, MS.<sup>2</sup> *versus*] Added in marg.<sup>3</sup> *repererunt*] reppererunt, MS.<sup>4</sup> *fines*] ut fines, MS., and so W. A. C. D. F.<sup>5</sup> *Britensium*] Bricensium, MS.<sup>6</sup> *mansione*] mansionem, MS.<sup>7</sup> *Sagittam*] In the margin is this note: "id est, Sydonem; Saete, Gallice."<sup>8</sup> *Julii*] So also W. A. C. D. F., but we ought to read *Junii*, with Will. Tyr., p. 742.

*De desolatione ecclesiae Sancti Georgii.*

Rog.Wend. Peracta itaque ibidem trium dierum mora, relictis A.D. 1099.  
 ii. 132. a dextra locis maritimis Antipatrida et Jope, Eleu- The cru-  
 cheriam<sup>1</sup> transeuntes, Liddam, quæ et Elyopolis dicitur, march on  
 ubi Georgii martiris egregii corpus requiescit, pervene- to Lidda.  
 runt. Cujus ecclesiam hostes fidei, quia ipsum habent  
 exosum, paulo ante adventum peregrinorum dejecerant,  
 metuentes ne trabes basilicæ, quæ multæ erant proce-  
 ritatis, in machinas voluissent convertere, et inde incœnia  
 urbis expugnare.<sup>2</sup> Profectus autem inde comes Flan- Thence to  
 dreensis Robertus, Ramulam pervenit, et portas ipse et Ramula,  
 sui, quas patentes inveniunt, ingredientes, urbem va- where a  
 cuam repererunt. Nocte sane præterita Turci, nostro- bishop is  
 rum cognoscentes<sup>3</sup> adventum, recedentes sibi consulcre appointed,  
 procurabant. Principes vero alii in crastino illuc ve-  
 nientes, sicut et primi, omnem abundantiam<sup>4</sup> frumenti,  
 vini et olei invenerunt in eadem. Atque per triduum  
 ibidem moram facientes, Robertum quendam, genere  
 Rog.Wend. Normannicum, episcopum constituerunt; et ei Liddam  
 ii. 133. Ramulamque urbes cum suburbanis adjacentibus possi-  
 dendas jure perpetuo contulerunt. Indeque iter prose- and thence  
 quentes nostri, Nicopolim<sup>5</sup> pervenerunt. Est autem to Nico-  
 Nichopolis civitas Palestinæ, quæ olim, dum vicus esset, polis, or  
 Emaus dicebatur. Ante hanc vero urbem, ubi Christus  
 cum Cleopha ambulasse post suam resurrectionem cog-  
 noscitur,<sup>6</sup> fons quidam est salutaris, in quo homines Nota de  
 infirmi simul et jumenta ablutione aquæ sanantur, et fonte.  
 a diversis languoris maculis emundantur. Nam Christus  
 tempore quodam cum discipulis suis per fontem illum,  
 ut adhuc incolæ Terræ Sanctæ recolunt, transiens, in

<sup>1</sup> *Eleucheriam*] So all the MSS.<sup>2</sup> *expugnare*] expungnare, MS.<sup>3</sup> *cognoscentes*] cognoscentes, MS.<sup>4</sup> *abundantiam*] labundantiam, MS.<sup>5</sup> *Nicopolim*] In the text *Neopo-*  
lim, but corr. in marg. thus :“ *vel Nicopolim;* } *idem.* ”  
Emaus }<sup>6</sup> *cognoscitur*] congnoscitur, MS.

A.D. 1099. eo pedes suos lavit pulverulentos;<sup>1</sup> ex quo aqua illa diversarum medicamen passionum est effecta.<sup>2</sup>

*Turci sanctam civitatem præmunientes, Christianos,  
qui in civitate erant, spoliant.*

The Turks fortify Jerusalem. Turci interim, qui Jerusalem inhabitabant, peregrini cognoscentes<sup>3</sup> adventum, urbem communire cun omni satagunt sollicitudine. A fidelibus quoque cunctis, qui in urbe habitaverant sub tributo et gravi servitutis jugo, universam quam habebant extorserunt pecuniam; et quicquid habere videbantur, tam a patriarcha, qui fol. 29b. tunc urbi præerat, quam a populo toto, xiiii<sup>o</sup>. aureorum milia abstulerunt. Quibus bonis omnibus spoliatis, universos ab urbe, exceptis senibus et infirmis,<sup>4</sup> mulieribus et parvulis, depulerunt. Peregrini interea, quibus mora procedendi periculosa videbatur, summo diluculo cum fervore devotionis iter aggredientes,<sup>5</sup> et e vicino urbem sanctam Jerusalem contemplantes, cum gemitu præ<sup>6</sup> gaudio et<sup>7</sup> lacrimis fusis, nudis vestigiis cœpto itineri ferventius institerunt; atque subito ante urbem convenientes, viii<sup>o</sup>. idus Junii eam obsidione vallarunt. Dicitur autem fuisse numerus obsidentium quasi milia quadraginta peditum, equitum vero mille quingenti, præter senes et valitudinarios et inerme vulgus, quorum erat<sup>8</sup> in expeditione orationibus incumbere indefessis. In urbe autem dicebantur esse Turcorum fortium et optime armatorum quadraginta milia, tam ut urbem regiam ab instantibus tuerentur periculis, quam ut propriæ consulerent et suorum saluti. Principes itaque perspicue considerantes, quod neque ab oriente, neque ab occidente,

The crusaders arrive at the Holy City, and besiege it.

6 June.

Rog. Wend. ii. 133.

Rog. Wend. ii. 134.

<sup>1</sup> *pulverulentos*] pelverilentes, MS.

<sup>2</sup> *effecta*] After this word is added *est medicinalis*, and so in F.; but these words are superfluous.

<sup>3</sup> *cognoscentes*] cognoscentes, MS.

<sup>4</sup> *infirmis*] infirmis, MS.

<sup>5</sup> *aggredientes*] agredientes, MS.

<sup>6</sup> *præ*] On an erasure.

<sup>7</sup> *et*] On an erasure.

<sup>8</sup> *erat*] On an erasure.

neque ab austro, propter quarundam vallium profunditatem proficerent, a septentrione eam obsidere decernunt. Ab ea ergo porta, quæ Sancti Stephani dicitur, et ad aquilonem respicit, usque ad illam, quæ Turris David dicitur, et in parte civitatis occidentali sita est, castra principes nostri locaverunt. In quorum ordine dux A.D. 1099.  
 Godefridus<sup>1</sup> primus sedit, et juxta eum dux Normanorum Robertus et consul Flandrensis. Circa turrim vero, quæ ab angulo quodam Angularis dicitur, dominus Tancredus<sup>2</sup> et alii quidam cum eo nobiles consederunt. Ab illa autem turri usque ad portam occidentalem, comes Tholosanus cum suis legionibus urbem obsedit. Partem suorum agminum super montem, super quem civitas aedificata est, inter urbem et ecclesiam, quæ dicitur Syon, et ab urbe distat quantum arcus semel jacere potest, in plaga septentrionali locavit. Is enim locus erat, in quo Salvator cum discipulis suis cœnasse asseritur, et eorum pedes lavasse. Ibi etiam Spiritus Sanctus super discipulos descendit in linguis igneis; ibique Dei Genitrix humanæ naturæ debitum persolvit. Ibidem quoque beati Stephani prothomartiris sepulchrum veneratur.

Disposition of the forces.

*De prima et impetuosa urbis invasione.*

Rog.Wend. Locatis igitur in girum castris, die quinta post ad- The first  
 ii. 135. ventum eorum, lituis, buccinis, cum tubis et voce præ- assault of  
 conia perstrepentibus, omnes, ut urbis invadant mœnia, Jerusalem.  
 alacriter invitantur. Qui armis ornimodis communiti et artibus instructi, a majore usque ad minimum ad murum convolantes, et ex præteritis spem bonam concipientes, tanta instantia et virtute continuabant congressum et congressionis assultum, ut, civibus invitatis, antemuralibus conftractis, cogerent defensores retroire, et intra muros interiores sese recipere trepidantes et de resistendo desperantes. Et si illo pugnandi fervore

<sup>1</sup> *Godefridus*] Godofridus, MS. | <sup>2</sup> *Tancredus*] Tantancrus, MS.

A.D. 1099. scalas aut machinas habuissent, procul dubio die illa negotium consummassent. Videntes tandem, cum per vii. diei horas in ipso ardore perstitissent, et<sup>1</sup> quod absque machinis non multum proficere potuissent, distulerunt opus ad tempus, et cum immenso labore ligna ad hoc idonea et artifices invenerunt. Quibus cum sumptu gravissimo ad urbem delatis, ex subjecta materie castella, petrarias, trebunculos et arietes, cum scrofis ad murum suffodiendum, construxerunt. Pro nihilo<sup>2</sup> enim reputabant quicquid antea actum fuerat, si in hoc negotio, pro quo tam laboriosam assumpserant peregrinationem, deficere cogerentur. Cum igitur circa machinas construendas, crates et scalas connectendas, totus noster desudaret exercitus, protrahitur obsidio.

*Nota pestem inter Christianos et sitim.* Et cum locus civitati adjacens aridus esset et inaquosus, rivos, fontes aut puteos<sup>3</sup> non habens nisi remotos, ab urbe v. vel vi. miliaribus distantes, siti intolerabili [populus]<sup>4</sup> fatigatur. Turci enim Christianorum audi-

*Scarcity of water.* entes adventum, si quæ fuerunt aquæ, jactu pulvris et aliis modis eas opilaverant, vel, quod formidabilius. fuit, intoxicaverant, ut obsidentium conditio ineptior. redderetur. Sed et cisternas et pluvialium aquarum receptacula aut dissipaverant, ut aquas nequirent continere, aut occultaverant, ut remedium subtraherent populo sitienti. Dispersus igitur populus per loca diversa, ut aquas quærerent tabescentes, dum exirent cum paucis, ut latices reportarent, alii idem habentes propositum multo plures supervenerunt; et, inventis fontibus, lites adeo contestati sunt, ut nonnunquam inter eos seditio oriretur. Equi præterea, muli et asini, greges et arminta, siti ariditateque consumpta moriebantur interius liquefacta; unde in castris fœtor exhalavit<sup>5</sup> intolerabilis, et pestilens nimis aeris corruptela.

<sup>1</sup> *et*] So also W. A. C. D. Om. ed. Wend. In Edd. it is retained, but the *cum* preceding altered to *quod*.

<sup>2</sup> *nihilo*] nichilo, MS.

<sup>3</sup> *puteos*] putuos, MS.

<sup>4</sup> *populus*] Supplied from W. A. C. D. F.

<sup>5</sup> *exhalavit*] exalavit, MS.

Preparation of warlike machines.

*Nota pestem inter Christianos et sitim.*

*Scarcity of water.*

Rog. Wend.

ii. 136.

*Auxilium in tribulatione, in adventu Januensium. A.D. 1099.*

Rog.Wend. Venit interea nuncius ad obsidionem, qui classem Arrival  
 ii. 136. Januensium in portu Jopensi applicuisse nuncians, petiit of the  
 a principibus, ut militia dirigeretur ad eos, sub cuius Genoese at  
 conductu ad urbem accedere valuissent. Mittitur<sup>1</sup> igitur Joppa.  
 a domino Tholosano Gualdemarus quidam, in armis An armed  
 strenuus, cum xxx. equitibus et peditibus l. Qui veni- force is  
 entes<sup>2</sup> ad campestria Liddæ et Ramulæ civitatum, sent to  
 fol. 30 a. habuerunt obviam Turchos secentos; verumtamen their aid,  
 sequenter de nostris advenerunt in adjutorium which de-  
 rum, ne forte deficerent, Reimundus Piletus et feats the  
 Willelmus de Sabulo, cum equitibus l. Turci vero protinus  
 in nostros irruentes, iiiior. equites et pedites plures  
 emerunt; sed nostri demum prævalentes, cæsis ducentis  
 ex numero Turchorum, ceteros in fugam compulerunt,  
Rog.Wend. Ceciderunt tamen ex nostris viri nobiles, Gilebertus de  
ii. 137. Trena et Aicardus de Monte-Merla; alii autem apud  
Jopen incolumes pervenerunt. Et sic inde cum omni  
substantia sua Jerosolimam sunt conducti, ubi a legi-  
onibus gaudenter excepti, consolationem castris non  
modicam attulerunt.

*Machinis constructis, civitas iterum impugnatur.<sup>3</sup>*

Rog.Wend. Cumque per mensem unum circa machinas laborantes Second  
ii. 137. ad negotii consummationem pervenerunt,<sup>4</sup> placuit ergo assault of  
ad negotii consummationem pervenerunt,<sup>4</sup> placuit ergo assault of  
episcopis, principibus et sapientibus de exercitu, ut, the city.  
inter omnes pace reformata, jejunia indicerentur, pro-  
cessiones fierent cum devotis orationibus. Et sic die  
statuto, orationibus<sup>5</sup> rite peractis, affuit peregrinorum  
armis instructa ad urbem impugnandam copiosa mul-

<sup>1</sup> *Mittitur*] Mittuntur, MS.;  
*Mittatur*, A. C. D. *pr. m.*, F.; but

*Mittitur* in W. D. sec. m., and I.

<sup>2</sup> *venientes*] veniens, MS.

<sup>3</sup> *impugnatur*] impungnatur, MS.

<sup>4</sup> *pervenerunt*] So all the MSS.  
*Corr. in Edd. pervenissent.*

<sup>5</sup> *orationibus*] his omnibus, W. A.

C. D.

A.D. 1099. titudo, unum habentium commune propositum, aut animas pro Christo ponere, aut urbem Christianæ restituere libertati. Accedentes igitur ad pugnam universi, muro nitebantur machinas applicare. At cives viriliter resistentes, telorum jactu, sagittarum imbre, lapidum contorsione, ignium immissione, conamina impugnantium . horrendo impetu retorquebant. Nostri e contra, protecti clipeis, targiis et cratibus, tam arcubus quam balistis tela frequentia remittebant ; et fundis pugillares . lapides, et trubunculis petrariisque saxa molaria trans- . mittentes, ad murum accedere conabantur, hiis, qui in turribus erant, requiem subtrahentes et audaciam resistendi. Vix enim manus vel caput, etiam hora . brevissima, in propugnaculis, quin telo vel telis illico . impeteretur, potuit apparere.<sup>1</sup> Alii vero infra constituti machinas et castella lignea, nostrates multifariam defen- . dentes dum protertos assultus facerent, omni nisu . satagunt moenia crebris impulsibus incutere et debili- . tare, vel prosternere ; sed nec multum proficere com- Rog.Wend. probantur. Nam Turci, qui intus erant, a propugnaculis ii. 138. saccos stramine et palea repletos, restes et crates, tapecia, cum trabibus, culcitrae bombice refertas, a turribus et muro aliquantulum demiserant, ut per eorum mollitiem et mobilitatem contortorum molarium ictus eluderent, et nostrorum laborem inanirent ; lapides etiam damp- nosos ex suis machinis cum telis non segniter<sup>2</sup> remit- tentes ; et sic nostros ab opere repellebant inchoato. Nostris insuper, ut vallum jactu ruderum, cespitem, lapidum, fruticum et terræ implerent, et ad moenia pararent accessum, cura fuit propensior. Sed inclusi e converso argumenta argumentis opponentes, ut eorum propositum irritarent,<sup>3</sup> in ipsas machinas torres incensos, tela ignita oleo et sulphure pasta et illita, ut eas exure- rent, certatim jaculabantur. Erat quidem nostris impar . labor et periculum, dum nostri ab imis, alii ab eminen-

<sup>1</sup> potuit apparere] Added in marg.<sup>2</sup> segniter] signiter, MS.<sup>3</sup> irritarent] irritarent, MS.

. tibus locis assultus facerent indefessos. In hoc cer- A.D. 1099.  
 . tamine dux Godefridus, dux Normannorum Robertus,  
 . comes Tholosanus, titulum meruerunt immortalem.

*De tertio impetu in captionem civitatis.*

R.Wend. . Mane autem facto, quia sola nox non fatigatio cer- Third as-  
 ii. 138. . tamen præcidit, redeunt in id ipsum, aurora rutilante, sault of  
     cum omni aviditate excitus populus ad conflictum,  
 Rog.Wend. revertuntur ad officium singulis deputatum. Fiebat  
 ii. 139. igitur ex utroque populo strages non modica, dum alii  
     . lapidum asiniorum ac molarum impulsu, alii spicu-  
     . lorum grandine, alii ignium fulminatione miserabiliter  
     deperirent; nec erat facile discernere, uter populus  
     studiosius aut laboriosius decertaret. Erat autem una  
     ex machinis nostris, quæ saxa miri ponderis in urbem  
     procul transmitteret, nunquam frustra. Contra quam,  
     cum Turci nulla possent se arte contueri, duas addux-  
     erunt Arabes maleficas, ut eam fascinnarent, et magicis Two Arab  
     artibus redderent impotentem. Quæ dum suis instarent  
     præstigiis intuentes eam, quia sic ars earum deposcebat,  
     super murum incantantes, ex eadem machina molaris  
     emissus utramque illarum cum tribus ancillis suis<sup>1</sup> Two Arab  
     repente contrivit, et ex muro inferius dejecit in fossa- sorceresses  
     tum; unde in castris plausus et exultatio, in urbe  
     ululatio resonabat. Cum igitur usque in horam diei  
     septimam sine certa victoria protraheretur certaminis  
     negotium cruentissimi, desperantes et supra modum<sup>2</sup> Miraculous  
     fatigati, propositum habuerunt castella et machinas  
     alias, jam igne recepto fumantes, longius a muris sub- appearance  
     trahere, et conflictum procrastinare; cum ecce virtus  
     divina affuit, et desperatis attulit consolamen. Nam of a knight  
     de monte Oliveti miles quidam, splendidum et satis  
     refulgentem ventilando<sup>3</sup> clipeum, signum dedit nostra- on Mount  
     Olivet.

<sup>1</sup> *suis*] On an erasure.

<sup>2</sup> *modum*] Added in marg.

<sup>3</sup> *ventilando*] ventilantem, MS. and  
F. Corr. from W. A. C. D.

A.D. 1099. tibus, ut redirent ad conflictum, et congressum iterando Rog.Wend.  
continuarent. Hoc quoque signo dux Godefridus ex-  
ii. 140.  
hilaratus, magnis clamoribus alacriter ac confidenter  
populum<sup>1</sup> revocavit universum;<sup>2</sup> qui tanto fervore ad  
pugnam est reversus, ut de novo incipere prælium  
recenter videretur.

*Iterum consolatio de supernis.*

The Chris- Auxit præterea vires omnium et lætitiam solitarius Rog.Wend.  
tians are quidam, qui in monte Oliveti habitabat, qui confidenter ii. 140.  
eneou- promiserat peregrinis illa die urbem fore capiendam,  
raged by divinitus<sup>3</sup> certificatus. Erat autem idem solitarius  
the pro- heremita sanctus, signa faciens in populo, omni<sup>4</sup> fide. fol. 30 b.  
mises of a dignus et acceptance. Hæc quoque signa omnes accen-  
hermit. derant fideles vehementer, et securiores reddiderant de  
victoria optinenda.

*Impetus redivivus.*

Renewed Ducis igitur Godefridi et comitum ejus legiones, Rog.Wend.  
attack on ii. 140.  
the city. prævia Dei gratia, eosque profecerant, ut, vallo repente  
complanato, ad murum haberent, civibus defatigatis,  
accessum. Hortante itaque duce, in culcitras bombice  
plenas et saccos stramine refertos, qui in castello erant,  
ignem injecerunt; qui, flante Borea, accensus, fumum  
infra urbem caliginosum retorsit. Quo protervius in-  
stante, qui murum intus tenebantur defendere, ora vel  
oculos non valentes aperire, muri custodiam reliquerunt.  
Quo comperto, dux sub omni celeritate trabes, quas  
hostes in muris ad nostrum appenderant<sup>5</sup> nocumentum,  
assumpsit; et caput unum in machina positum et fir-  
miter clavatum aptavit, et aliud super murum in uno

<sup>1</sup> *populum*] At first written after  
*clamoribus*, but subsequently under-  
scored to be omitted. F. retains the  
word in both places.

<sup>2</sup> *universum*] Added on to the text.

<sup>3</sup> *divinitus*] At first written *divi-*  
*nus.*

<sup>4</sup> *omni*] On an erasure.

<sup>5</sup> *appenderant*] *appenderunt*, MS.

propugnaculorum collocavit. Deinde pontem, qui in A.D. 1099. machina erat, super ipsas trabes demittens, ipse dux primus omnium, ut miles strenuissimus, urbem audacter introivit. Quem frater ejus Eustachius, duxque Normannorum Robertus, et comes Flandrensis, cum Litolfo et Gileberto fratribus ejus, sunt secuti, et consequenter infinita multitudo tam equitum quam peditum; ita ut pons ipsos glomeratim compressos sustinere non possit.

Rog. Wend. Videntes autem Turci, quod nostri jam murum occu-  
ii. 141. paverant, et dux etiam suum vexillum introduxerat,

turres deserunt et mœnia, ad vicorum angustias sese conferentes. Porro alii cognoscentes,<sup>1</sup> quod maxima pars nobilium turres occupaverant civitatis, scalas ad murum certatim applicant civitatis jam occupatae, ne viderentur desides et nihil fecisse, per quas ascendentes murum, ceteris se conjungunt. Tunc dux Godefridus quosdam ad portam septentrionalem, quæ hodie Sancti Pauli<sup>2</sup> dicitur, dirigens, ut eam aperientes populum introducant deforis expectantem, vexillum et insigne suum palam facit in urbe acclamari, cum nomine Christi triumphali. Qua sub omni celeritate reserata, ingressus est exercitus universus, sexta feria, hora nona, mense Julio, decima<sup>3</sup> die mensis, anno Domini M<sup>o</sup>.XC<sup>o</sup>.IX<sup>o</sup>., anno<sup>4</sup> ex quo fideles Christi peregrini votum et viam tantæ peregrinationis assumpserant quarto, sedente in cathedra Romana papa Urbano II<sup>o</sup>., Romanorum imperium administrante Henrico, Græcorum vero imperatore Alexio; in Francia regnante Philippo, in Anglia Willelmo Rufo, regnante in perpetuum Domino Jhesu Christo.

Duke Godfrey and other nobles secure an entrance.

Capture of Jerusalem.

<sup>1</sup> cognoscentes] congnoscentes, MS.

Fulch. Carnot., p. 399. In W. the text is here imperfect, but may be supplied from I.

<sup>2</sup> Sancti Pauli] So also in W. and A. C. D. F., but Sancti Stephani, Will. Tyr., p. 758.

<sup>4</sup> anno] nono anno, MS., which places also a stop erroneously after assumpserant, and so in F.

<sup>3</sup> decima] So A. C. D. F. I., but incorrectly, for quinta decima, as in Will. Tyr., l. c.; Baldric, p. 134; and

*De occisione Turcorum et mundificatione Jerusalem.*

A.D. 1099. Capta igitur civitate sanctissima, dux Godefridus et Rog. Wend.  
 Massacre fideles omnes, qui cum eo erant, per plateas strictis  
 of the gladiis discurrentes, quotquot de hostibus repererunt,  
 Turks. in ore gladii indifferenter trucidarunt. Tanta quoque  
 interemporum strages erat, et præcisorum acervus  
 capitum, ut jam nemini via pateret aut transitus, nisi  
 in sanguinum rivulis et super corpora peremptorum.  
 Latebant autem adhuc hæc omnia comitem Tholosa-  
 num et principes alios, qui circa montem Syon viriliter  
 decertabant; sed, audito nostrorum et Turcorum claque  
 The count of Tou-  
 louse and the rest of  
 the army enter the  
 city. et civium strage, cognoverunt<sup>1</sup> urbem violenter  
 effractam et nostrarum victoriam legionum. Qui statim  
 scalas ad murum applicantes, nemine obstante, urbis  
 mœnia transierunt, stragam non modicam in illa parte  
 operantes. Portam itaque austrialem, quæ illis erat  
 contermina, aperientes cum impetu, populum universum  
 quantocius introducunt. Factum est autem, quod  
 Turci, qui a duce et suis agminibus aufugerant,<sup>2</sup> ad  
 partes illas declinantes, hos obviam habuerunt, qui  
 Scillam evitantes inciderunt in Caribdim. Tanta igitur  
 exinde per urbem strages facta est, ut etiam ipsis  
 victoribus tam horrenda sanguis effusio tedium inge-  
 reret et horrorem. Audiens autem Tancredus, quod  
 The temple is forced,  
 and the  
 Turks within it  
 slaughtered. infra septa templi Turcorum se incluserat multitudo,  
 contulit se illuc ingenti cum armatorum multitudine;  
 et templum violenter ingressus, post stragam multam,  
 infinitas auri et argenti copias inde secum dicitur as-  
 portasse. Hoc autem reliqui milites audientes, intro-  
 missa equitum et peditum multitudine, quotquot<sup>3</sup> ibi  
 repererunt<sup>4</sup> gladiis trucidantes, universa sanguine re-  
 pleverunt, ut, justo Dei judicio, eorum qui locum illum.

<sup>1</sup> cognoverunt] conguoverunt, MS.<sup>2</sup> aufugerant] Written auferant

in the text, but corr. in marg.

<sup>3</sup> quotquot] quot, MS. and F.

Corr. from W. A. C. D.

<sup>4</sup> repererunt] reppererunt, MS.

. et alia sancta polluerant, proprio sanguine demum A.D. 1099.  
. cruentarent. Cecidisse autem referuntur infra templi ambitum ad decem milia Turcorum, exceptis aliis, qui passim per urbem truncabantur, quorum minor non fuisse numerus ferébatur. Nostri nempe per vicos et diverticula discurrentes, et occulta perlustrantes universa, patresfamilias<sup>1</sup> cum uxoribus<sup>2</sup> et liberis, cum Rog. Wend. familia tota ex secretis domiciliis extrahentes in publicum, aut gladiis transverberabant, aut a muris præcipites<sup>3</sup> dabant, ita ut fractis cervicibus expirarent. Et quicunque domum vel palatum confringere vel prius intrare poterat, ea sibi cum universa substantia jure perpetuo vendicabat. Sic enim inter principes convenerat, et acclamatum fuerat, ut, urbe expugnata,<sup>4</sup> id quod quilibet adquireret, jure hereditario possideret. Unde quicunque prius domum vel ædificium quocunque occupavit, vexillum vel clipeum, vel quodlibet fol. 31 a. armorum genus in introitu configebat, ut esset signum, ne quis alias aggredi præoccupata<sup>5</sup> præsumeret.

*Principes nostri loca sancta petunt.*

Rog. Wend. Civitate itaque subjugata, et spoliis a peregrinis The  
ii. 143. collectis et colligatis, cœperunt, depositis armis, in spiritu humilitatis cum gemitu et lacrimis, nudis pedibus, loca venerabilia, quæ Salvator propria dignatus est sanctificare præsentia, cum omni devotione circuire, et specialiter ecclesiam sanctæ resurrectionis et Dominicæ passionis. Erat autem intueri jocundissimum, quanta devotione fideles populi utriusque sexus, quanta mentis exultatione et dulcedine spirituali, suspiriis et lacrimis ubertim profusis, ad loca sancta accederent; quantas gratias Deo agerent, qui tantæ eis peregri-

<sup>1</sup> patresfamilias] At first written patremfamilias, as in W. A. C. D. F.

<sup>2</sup> uxoribus] At first, uxore, as W. C. D.

<sup>3</sup> præcipites] Originally præcipico.

<sup>4</sup> expugnata] expungnata, MS.

<sup>5</sup> præoccupata] preoccupata, MS.

A.D. 1099. nationis consummationem ad effectum perducere concessit. Fuit autem omnibus una in arram<sup>1</sup> futuræ retributionis fiducia, quod per collationem donorum præsentium, firma sit eis expectatio futurorum ; et per eam, quæ hic peregrinatur Jerusalēm, ad eam perveni- Rog. Wend.  
ii. 144.

The churches are cleansed and consecrated.

Aimer, bishop of Puy, appears to many.

Peter the Hermit is also seen.

ant, cuius extat in id ipsum participatio. Porro episcopi et sacerdotes ecclesias, præcipue templi ambitum, a cadaveribus occisorum et sordibus universis mundantes, et loca venerabilia Domino consecrantes, et sacra missarum sollempnia populo celebrantes, pro collato sibi beneficio omnibus gratias exhibebant. Visus est autem ea die vir in omnibus commendabilis,<sup>2</sup> Aimerus, Podiensis episcopus, qui apud Antiochiam, ut prælibavimus, in fata concesserat, in sancta civitate a multis, ita quod viri plurimi de exercitu fidei digni eum super murum primum omnium viderunt ascendisse civitatis, et ceteros ad ingressum animasse. Qui etiam oculis corporeis se ipsum vidisse asserentes, et cum principibus loca sancta circumeuntem manifestissime conspexerunt. Alii autem<sup>3</sup> quamplures, qui in peregrinatione piam in Christo dormitionem acceperant, quasi Christo sic jubente, ut desiderium suum non mutilatum feliciter adimpleretur, in eadem sancta civitate, sicut quondam in passione ejusdem Domini nostri, id est, Christi, apparuerunt multis, loca sancta cum aliis devotissime requirentes. Petrus quoque, Heremita<sup>4</sup> venerabilis, qui quinto antea anno obierat,<sup>5</sup> a patriarcha civitatis, clero, populoque fidei visus fuerat ; et per cuius sollicitudinem principes occidentis ad hanc venerant<sup>6</sup> peregrinationem, ab eisdem et a prædicto patriarcha cognitus<sup>7</sup> est. Cui et ipsi gratias exhibuerunt, quod rei consummationem diu desideratam videre meruerunt.

<sup>1</sup> arram] arra, MS. and F.<sup>2</sup> commendabilis] eomendabilis, MS.<sup>3</sup> autem] Partly on an erasure.<sup>4</sup> Heremita] herema, MS.<sup>5</sup> obierat] So also in W. and F.,

but the word is an interpolation, and omitted in A. C. D. See Will. Tyr., p. 761.

<sup>6</sup> venerant] Added in marg.<sup>7</sup> cognitus] congnitus, MS.

*Spolia pretiosissima reperiuntur.*

A.D. 1099.

Rog.Wend. Hiis igitur omnibus rite peractis, principes ad domos *Spoils*  
 ii. 144. et hospitia, quæ interim eis sua familia *found in* præparaverat, *the city.*

Rog.Wend. reversi, urbem repererunt<sup>1</sup> bonis omnibus redundantem;  
 ii. 145. unde a majore usque ad minimum cœperunt copiosius  
 abundare.<sup>2</sup> Reperiebantur<sup>3</sup> enim in ædificiis et domibus  
 confractis auri et argenti, gemmarum pretiosarum et  
 vestium, et omnis supellectilis, frumenti, vini et olei,  
 sed et aquarum in cisternis, unde in obsidione maxi-  
 mam fuerant perpessi penuriam, ingentes copiæ; unde  
 indigentibus mensura bona referta, coagitata et super-  
 effluens<sup>4</sup> omnibus erogabatur sine improperio. Factum  
 est autem, ut secunda post victoriam die et deinceps,  
 in foro publico rerum victualium optimis conditionibus  
 exhiberentur commercia, ita quidem ut plebs inferior<sup>5</sup>  
 necessariis omnibus abundaret,<sup>6</sup> secundum illud prophe-  
 ticum, “Fortitudinem gentium comedetis, et in gloria  
 eorum superbietis.”<sup>7</sup>

*Tractatur de electione regis in Jerusalem, et patri-  
 archæ.*

Rog.Wend. Cumque per dies septem principes in sancta civitate Meeting of  
 ii. 145. in quiete et lætitia spirituali<sup>8</sup> quievissent, convenerunt the princes  
 in unum octava die, tractaturi per gratiam Spiritus to elect a  
 Sancti, ut aliquem de suo eligerent collegio, qui præsit king of Je-  
 civitati regiæ ac regioni, regiam rite optinens dignita-  
 tem. Et cum, diligenter fusis orationibus et accensis  
 super altaria cereis, commissisque eorum singulis can-  
 delis extinctis, ut per accensionem indicium voluntatis

<sup>1</sup> *repererunt*] reppererunt, MS.<sup>5</sup> *inferior*] imferior, MS.<sup>2</sup> *abundare*] habundare, MS.<sup>6</sup> *abundaret*] habundaret, MS.<sup>3</sup> *Reperiebantur*] Repperiebantur, MS.<sup>7</sup> Is. Ixi. 6.<sup>4</sup> *supereffluens*] superefluens, MS.<sup>8</sup> *spirituali*] spūli, MS.

A D. 1099. divinæ panderetur, dux Normannorum Robertus suam. Robert, candalem clam aliquotiens extinxisset; et dum diu . duke of Normandy, oravissent, iterumque et iterum de electione communis miraculously designated, but refuses. ter<sup>1</sup> tractavissent, tandem omnes unanimiter, relicto . Duke Godfrey is unanimously elected. duce Roberto, constanter immo obstinate contradicente,<sup>2</sup> ducem Godefridum consonantes gaudenter elegerunt, et electum sepulchro Domini cum laudibus et hymnis<sup>3</sup> sollempniter, erubescente duce Roberto, præsentaverunt. Et hoc merito, ut primus ad capturam . qui intravit, primus et dignissimus in dominatu accla- . Election of maretur. Et cum ejusdem civitatis patriarcha noviter . the patri- obiisset,<sup>4</sup> de alio ipsius loco constituendo tractatum arch of Jerusalem. habentes, favore ducis Normannorum Roberti,<sup>5</sup> quendam Maturanensem<sup>6</sup> de Calabria, Arnulphum nomine, sibi familiarem, quendam scilicet<sup>7</sup> sacerdotis filium, et inter peregrinos de incontinentia et nimia levitate notatum, in sede contradunt<sup>8</sup> patriarchali. Sed idem Arnulphus citæ morte, Deo ultore, præventus, temere susceptam coactus est deponere dignitatem. Post illum autem, vacante sede per menses quinque, qui præsentes fuerunt, post multam deliberationem, venerabilem virum Dai- bertum in throno patriarchali et in cura collocant pas- torali. Fuit autem antea episcopus Pisanae ecclesiæ,

<sup>1</sup> *de electione communiter*] Added in marg.

<sup>2</sup> *contradicente*] So written at first, but afterwards altered improperly to *contradicentes*, which is followed by F.

<sup>3</sup> *hymnis*] ymnis, MS.

<sup>4</sup> *obiisset*] obisset, MS.

<sup>5</sup> *Robertii*] The last syllable is on an erasure.

<sup>6</sup> *quendam Maturanensem*] The text was, no doubt, originally written *episcopus quidam Maturanensis* (as in W. A. C. D. I.), but has been subsequently erased and altered, so as to make it appear that Arnulphus

was a native of Martorano in Calabria, whereas his real name was Arnulphus de Rohes, a Fleming, who is said by Will. Tyr., pp. 763, 764 (who is followed by Wendover and A. C. D.), to have been made patriarch of Jerusalem through the intrigues of the bishop of Martorano. See Albert Aquens, p. 285; Ord. Vital., iii. 612; Ughelli, "Ital. Sacra," ix. 270; and Le Quien, "Oriens. Christ.," iii. 1243.

<sup>7</sup> *scilicet*] Interlined.

<sup>8</sup> *contradunt*] Partly on an erasure. In W. A. C. D. *contrusit*.

vir eleganter instructus,<sup>1</sup> et in agendis ecclesiasticis a A.D. 1099.  
puero eruditus.

*Exercitus Soldani Ægyptiorum et Damascenorum  
vincitur.<sup>2</sup>*

Rog. Wend. Urbe autem sancta recenter adhuc a fidelibus subju-  
gata, Soldanus Ægyptiorum et Damascenorum, princeps  
inter omnes orientales potentissimus, cum civitatem  
sanctam Jerusalem a fidelibus captam cognovisset,<sup>3</sup> vo-  
cato ad se principe militiae suæ Elafdalio, præcepit ut  
universum robur Ægypti, et omnes imperii sui vires  
colligens, in Syriam ascendat, et populum temerarium  
illum, Crucifixum adorantem, de superficie terræ deleat,  
ut non memoretur nomen illius ultra. Erat quidem  
Elafdalius iste natione Armenius, a Christianis parenti-  
bus originem habens, sed præ immensitate divitiarum  
apostataverat a fide; et qui in fonte regenerationis  
Emyreius dicebatur, factus apostata Elafdalius nuncu-  
pabatur. Assumptis igitur hic Crucis inimicis, universis-  
que viribus Ægypti cum partibus adjacentibus, Arabiæ  
quoque et Damasci, venit Ascalonem; et ibidem cum  
copiis suis universis castra locavit, inde Jerosolimam  
profecturus. Proposuit enim, ut fideles in Jerusalem  
irremediabiliter obsideret, et post victoriam Dominicum  
sepulchrum funditus dilapidaret.

*Deliberatio quid in illo articulo agendum.*

Rog. Wend. Tunc peregrini haec audientes, qui super omnia ob-  
sidionis ærumpnas formidabant, exclamabant in propa-  
tions pray  
for aid.  
ii. 147. tulo, dicentes, "Hucusque auxiliatus est<sup>4</sup> Dominus, qui

<sup>1</sup> *instructus*] Originally written *erud.* in the text, and *eruditus* in the margin, but both afterwards erased, and *instructus* substituted.

<sup>2</sup> This rubric is copied from Wen-

dover, and applies to the three chapters following, which in Wendover form only one.

<sup>3</sup> *cognovisset*] *cognovisset*, MS.

<sup>4</sup> *est*] Interlined.

A.D. 1099. usque ad consummationem nos non derelinquet. Absit, .  
 absit a nobis obsidio, cuius miserias experti sumus .  
 frequentius ! ” Convenerunt igitur in unum clerus et .  
 populus universus, et arma spiritualia prius bajulantes,  
 ad sepulchrum Domini corde contrito et cum fletibus  
 humiliato profecti, et orantes in terram prostrati, a  
 Domino instantissime et urgentissime postulabant, ut  
 populum suum misericorditer ab imminentibus<sup>1</sup> peri-  
 culis liberaret, vincatque Dominus exercituum, qui æque .  
 dimicat in paucis ut multis, invictæ virtutis ac magni- .  
 ficus triumphator.

*Contra hostes audacter procedunt.*

They  
march  
against  
the enemy  
under duke  
Godfrey.

Deinde, sumpta ex Dei parte audacia, ab urbe <sup>Rog. Wend.</sup> Ascalonem procedunt, audacter hostibus occur-  
<sup>ii. 147.</sup>  
rentes. Portabant autem secum partem ligni Dominicæ  
Crucis, quam civis quidam<sup>2</sup> Jerosolimitanus, nomine <sup>Rog. Wend.</sup> Syrus, principibus nuper propalaverat, ab antiquis a  
<sup>ii. 148.</sup>  
se temporibus custoditam. Dux vero, qui rex etiam  
erat Jerosolimitanus, cum ceteris principibus<sup>3</sup> pere-  
grinis Ramulam perveniens, edoctus est ibi plenius,  
quod prædictus Emyreius apud Ascalonem<sup>4</sup> cum suis  
copiis consedisset. Præmisit itaque dux equites du-  
centos, qui viam et statum hostium prudenter explora-  
rent; sed cum aliquantulum processissent, invenerunt  
armenta boum, equorum et camelorum cum pastoribus  
eorumdem. Ad quos cum noster exercitus pervenisset,  
fugerunt tam pastores quam qui pastoribus præerant  
equites, gregibus et armentis sine custode derelictis.

<sup>1</sup> *imminentibus*] imminentibus, MS.

<sup>2</sup> *quidam*] In the text *qui*, but corr. in marg.

<sup>3</sup> *rex etiam ... principibus*] These words have been erased, and are almost illegible ; but W. and A. C. D. F. agree, except that they read

*qui et rex erat.* In the lower margin

are the words *præcipiūs eorum erat,* *cum ceteris*, written with a plummet, which, no doubt, were intended to partly supply the place of those erased.

<sup>4</sup> *Ascalonem*] *Asealonam*, MS.

Capti sunt tamen quidam ex eisdem, quorum relatione A.D. 1099.  
de hostium proposito edocti nostrates cognoverunt,<sup>1</sup>  
quod princeps memoratus, qui juxta eos ad vii. mili-  
aria castra statuerat, post biduum accedere et nostrum  
de sub coelo delere exercitum cogitabat. Erant autem  
nostri numero quasi mille equites et ducenti, pedites  
vero quasi sex milia numerati. Qui omnes de prælio  
jam certi, novem acies instruunt, quarum tres præpon-  
nunt, tres locant in medio, et tres subsequi præcipiunt,  
ut, undecumque ad eos hostium fiat accessus, tripli-  
cem reperiant<sup>2</sup> ordinem objectum acierum. Sic itaque,  
optenta sine contradictione præda memorata, quæ præ-  
nimia multitudine numerum excedebat, noctem illam  
transegerunt, subarrata Dei misericordia, gratulantes.

### *Miraculum de pecoribus.*

Rog.Wend. Mane autem facto, tubis et lituis clangentibus Miracu-  
llous ap-  
ii. 148.<sup>3</sup> bellum indicitur, et instructis ordinibus procedunt, pearance  
Domino rei exitum commendantes; et quasi vir unus of herds of  
. exercitus totus in Domino sese confortabat et anima-  
bat. Procedentibus igitur legionibus juxta militaris  
ordinis disciplinam lento gradu ad pugnam, visa sunt  
superno armenta infinita,<sup>3</sup> ut creditur, instinctu, corni-  
bus erectis et caudis, acierum lateribus a dextris et  
Reg.Wend. sinistris comitari, nec ulla posse violentia præpediri.  
ii. 149. Quod hostes eminus intuentes, solaribus radiis hebe-  
tatis<sup>4</sup> luminibus, ante prælium animis conciderunt,  
credentes innumeram esse multitudinem armatorum,  
quamvis et ipsis multo major militaris copia non dees-  
set. Invictissimus autem et imperterritus<sup>5</sup> dux Nor-  
mannorum Robertus, [qui]<sup>6</sup> moderator erat et signifer

<sup>1</sup> *cognoverunt*] congnovverunt, MS.

<sup>2</sup> *reperiant*] repperiant, MS.

<sup>3</sup> *armenta infinita*] Added in marg.  
after *superno*, and so in text of F.

<sup>4</sup> *hebetatis*] ebetatis, MS.

<sup>5</sup> *imperterritus*] imperteritus, MS.

<sup>6</sup> *qui*] Supplied from W. A. C.D.

A.D. 1099. acierum, pro re bene gesta frequenter a me memoratus . et memorandus, admiravisii standardum a longe considerans, quod in summitate hastæ tolu<sup>1</sup> habebat aureum, hasta vero argento cooperta albicabat, ipsum deprehendit ibidem esse. Et audacter per medias acies, hinc inde fulgurante gladio,<sup>2</sup> Turcis corruentibus, super eum truculenter irruens, ad mortem usque graviter ipsum<sup>3</sup> vulneravit. Quod factum non mediocrem gentilibus incussit formidinem cum diffidentia ; dux enim ad suos indempnis reineavit.

The  
Turkish  
admiral is  
wounded.

*Lamentatio admiravisii vulnerati et jam victi.*

Lamentation of the admirals.

Admiravisius autem vix palpitans, letaliter enim Rog. Wend. ii. 149. vulneratus, alto pectore ingemuit, et hujusmodi planc- tum prorumpentibus singultibus emisit, “O omnium Creator, quid hoc est ? Quid accidit ? Quod fatum<sup>4</sup> nobis infestum nocuit ? Heu mihi, quam<sup>5</sup> ineffabile dedecus, quam diuturnum improperium genti nostræ contigit ! Gens misera et misella, modica et mendica genti nostræ prevaluit ! Unde hoc ? Conventione, proh dolor ! facta, adduxi huc militum ducenta milia, et peditum quorum numerum excedit multitudo, quos toti mundo credidi prævalituros. Nunc autem, ut non mentiar, a minus quam mille militibus et paucis peditum milibus tam indecenter, tam inopinabiliter sunt superati ! Aut. procul dubio illorum Deus omnipotens est, et pro Rog. Wend. ii. 150. eis pugnat,<sup>6</sup> aut noster nobis iratus est, et nos nimis austero furore redarguit et castigat. Quicquid contingat, hoc erit, quod in eos denuo non erigar, sed ad patriam meam ignominiosus et confusus, mortuus .

<sup>1</sup> *tolum*] pomum, W. A. C. D. ; pomum vel *tolum*, F.

<sup>2</sup> *gladio*] On an erasure.

<sup>3</sup> *ipsum*] Added in marg.

<sup>4</sup> *fatum*] factum, MS. and D. F., but erroneously, as appears from

Baldrie, IIist. Illicros., p. 138 ; Ord. Vit. iii. 619 ; with whom agree W. A. C. I., all of which have *fatum*.

<sup>5</sup> *quam*] quod, MS. and F. Corr. from W. A. C. D.

<sup>6</sup> *pugnat*] pungnat, MS.

. revehar, aut revertar semivivus." Turcis igitur fugam A.D. 1099. meditantibus, eques quidam Lotharingus, qui in agmine extremo cum duce erat Godefrido, a lateribus equitans, libertatem fugae fugitivis denegavit. Unde ipsi a duce The Turks Normannorum, qui in prima acie erat cum equitibus are put to flight. et sagittariis, penetrati et dissipati, et ab extremis inclusi, et sic quasi inter molas contriti, caesi sunt ad fidelium voluntatem. Admiravisius<sup>1</sup> autem saucius et cruentus super dromedarium positus, rapido cursu elapsus est, ne ad voluntatem hostium suorum penitus detruncaretur.

*De spoliis hostium a Christianis adquisitis.*

Rog. Wend. Collata igitur sic fidelibus de supernis victoria in- Spoils  
ii. 150. credibili, in hostium tabernacula<sup>2</sup> noster devenit ex- found in the ene-  
ercitus laetabundus; ubi tantam auri, argenti, variae my's camp. suppellectilis, gemmarum, divitarumque peregrinarum copiam<sup>3</sup> invenit, ut usque ad nauseam satiati, mella fastidirent et placenta, ita ut minimus dicere possit, "Inopem me copia fecit."<sup>4</sup> Dux autem Robertus Duke Ro- emit standardum<sup>5</sup> ab hiis qui illud retinuerunt, dum bert pur-  
ille, emolumentis nequaquam inhians, hostes acrius admirals insequeretur, viginti marcis argenti. Et duxit illud standard, in sepulchrum Domini et optulit,<sup>6</sup> ad monumentum et memoriam talis triumphi tamque gloriosi. Alius quoque ensem ejusdem admiravisi<sup>7</sup> bisanciis xl. com- paratum, ad ostentationem<sup>8</sup> ibidem posteris dereliquit. Omnia enim Deo, non hominibus ascribebant. Sic igitur, fugientibus adversariis, palma nostratibus cœlitus concessa, cum ingenti gaudio reversi sunt in Jerusalem, diversis manubiis<sup>9</sup> onerati. Ubi aliquot

<sup>1</sup> *Admiravisius*] Admirasius, MS.

<sup>2</sup> *tabernacula*] Added in marg.

<sup>3</sup> *copiam*] tantam copiam, MS.

<sup>4</sup> Ovid. Metam. lib. iii. v. 466.

<sup>5</sup> *standardum*] standarium, MS.

<sup>6</sup> *et optulit*] Added in marg.

<sup>7</sup> *admiravisi*] admirasii, MS.

<sup>8</sup> *ostentationem*] At first written *ostentionem*.

<sup>9</sup> *manubiis*] In Edd. and ed. Wend. printed incorrectly *manibus*.

A.D. 1099. diebus quiescentes post labores, Dominum merito col-.  
laudabant.

*Manifestior ostensio causa redditus<sup>1</sup> Ducis Norman-.  
norum Roberti<sup>2</sup>*

Cause of Non prætereundum censeo, quod, sicut prælibatum .  
the return est, peregrinorum universitas hoc decretum inter se .  
of Robert sanxerunt, quod, invocata Dei gratia, cum de eligendo .  
duke of rege in Jerusalem contractarent, singuli principum .  
Normandy. candelas suas sine igne manibus suis, dum fieret oratio, .  
tenebant, ut, igne cœlesti indice, voluntas Dei populum .  
certificaret dubitantem, quem vellet Dominus habere .  
populi sui regem et gubernatorem. Dux autem Ro-.  
bertus suum quem tenebat cereum, qui cœlitus est .  
accensus ter, quod sine lacrimis nequeo recitare, clam .  
extinxit, electioni de se divinitus factæ nullatenus .  
consentiens, immo penitus rebellis et imbellis<sup>3</sup> bella .  
Dei refutavit; multum in hoc redarguendus, secundum .  
illud Ysaiæ, “Væ qui spernis, nonne et tu sperneris?”<sup>4</sup> .  
Unde piæ ac gloriosæ recordationis dux Godefridus, .  
post electionem de se factam, et iterum post memo-.  
ratam victoriam, regnum optulit sponte ac gratanter .  
Roberto; asserens ipsum Robertum se dignorem ac .  
præstantiorem, ac Deo, ut credebat, acceptabiliorem..  
Sed adhuc dux Robertus oblata refutavit impudenter, .  
inhians regno Angliæ, in quo se credebat desidem ct. .  
illecebrosum quietius regnaturum. Jactitabat enim .  
majus jus habere in regno illo fratre suo W[ilhelmo], .  
qui illud ex sorte primogenito<sup>5</sup> injuste occupaverat..

<sup>1</sup> *redditus*] redditus, MS.

<sup>2</sup> On the edge of the lower mar-.  
gin is written by Matthew Paris :—

“Majes- {Orbe brevibrevior modico  
tas      conclusus in orbe  
          Orbem transgredior totus  
              diffusus in orbe.”

<sup>3</sup> *et imbellis*] Added to the text,  
and the two next words are on an  
erasure.

<sup>4</sup> Is. xxxiii. 1.

<sup>5</sup> See pp. 11, 30, ante.

. Insuper erectus est in superbiam, eo quod in multis A.D. 1099.  
 . periculis, ut prædictum est, tam gloriose triumpharat,  
 . reputans omnes Anglos strenuitate et viribus infe-  
 . riores. Sed Deo, ultionum Domino, qui de se præsu-  
 . mentes conterit, omnes postea actus suos<sup>1</sup> merito, proh  
 . dolor ! reprobavit, ut sequens sermo plenius declarabit.

*Repatriant duces Normannorum et Flandrensi.*

Rog. Wend. Hiis ita gestis, dux Normannorum Robertus, robur The duke  
 ii. 151. militiae Christianæ, nullo potuit hortatu retardari, quin of Nor-  
 ipse et Robertus, comes Flandrensis, consummato, ut mandy and  
 asserebant, peregrinationis voto, ad propria reverte- count of  
 rentur. Unde valefacientes fratribus suis principibus, Flanders  
 versus occidentem, non sine dolore regis Jerosolimi- return  
 tani Godefredi et omnium peregrinorum, iter direxerunt.  
 Sequebatur autem eos potissima pars exercitus Chris-  
 tiani. Rex igitur Godefridus consolationem a Deo Godfrey  
 accipiens, detento secum viro nobili Tancredo,<sup>2</sup> et de adminis-  
 Gres comite Garnero,<sup>3</sup> et aliis quibusdam viris occi- ters the  
 dentis, commissum sibi a Deo regnum strenue affairs of  
 nistrabat et prudenter. Deus enim omnia ejus opera the king-  
 dirigebat. Concessit autem jure hereditario possiden- dom of  
 dam urbem Tyberiadensem, super lacum Genesir sitam, Jerusalem.  
 cum comitatu toto Gibelet,<sup>4</sup> et Caypham, quæ alio He grants  
 nomine Porphiria dicitur, urbem maritimam, domino Tiberias  
 Tancredo ; in quo principatu ita Deo placere studuit, and other  
 quod usque in præsentem diem ecclesiæ regionis illius cities to  
 de ejus patrimonio<sup>5</sup> gloriantur. Qui infra biennium  
 post, meritis exigentibus, ad principatum vocatus Tancred,  
 comes prince of Antioch.

<sup>1</sup> *suos*] Repeated, but underscored for omission.

<sup>2</sup> *Tancredo*] Tancreto, MS.

<sup>3</sup> *Garnero*] Gautero, MS. and F.; Garero, W. A. C. D. ; Garcero, I.

Corr. from Will. Tyr., p. 770. See p. 57, *ante*.

<sup>4</sup> *Gibelet*] So also F.; but *Galileæ*, Will. Tyr., p. 770, and W. A. C. D.

<sup>5</sup> *patrimonio*] So also F. In W. A. C. D. *patrocinio*.

A.D. 1099. tiochenum, illam nobilitavit ecclesiam a temporibus gloriosam, plurima largiendo beneficia et insignia. Sed et principatum, pluribus subjugatis urbibus et castellis necnon et provinciis, longe lateque finibus<sup>1</sup> ampliavit.

*De situ sanctæ civitatis, et locis circumpositis.<sup>2</sup>*

Site of  
Jerusalem  
and adja-  
cent terri-  
tories.

Civitatem sanctam Jerusalem in sullimibus esse mon- Rog. Wend.  
tibus sitam, et in sortem Benjamin novimus constitu- ii. 151.  
tam. Ad cuius dignitatem pertinet, quod natalis patria fol. 32b.  
est Redemptoris; in medio scilicet nostræ habitabilis.  
posita, ut illud adimpleatur Davidicum,<sup>4</sup> “Operatus es.  
salutem in medio terræ;”<sup>5</sup> et hoc ad passionem di-  
noscitur pertinere. Ibidem insuper magis prædicavit.  
Dominus, et Judæorum duritiam reprehendit, secundum.  
illud Ysaiæ, “De Syon exibit lex, et verbum Domini  
de Jerusalem.”<sup>6</sup> Hæc autem ab occidente tribum habet Rog. Wend.  
Symeon, Philistinorum,<sup>7</sup> [et mare Mediterraneum],<sup>8</sup> a ii. 152.  
quo prope<sup>9</sup> Jopen oppidum<sup>10</sup> xxiiii<sup>or.</sup> miliaribus distat,  
inter se et prædictum mare habens castellum Emaus;  
Modin etiam, sanctorum Machabæorum præsidium, et  
Noben, viculum sacerdotum, et Diospolim,<sup>11</sup> quæ est  
Lydda, ubi Petrus Eneam paraliticum restituit sani-  
tati, et ubi apud Symonem coriarium hospitatus, Cor-  
nelii nuncium suscepit, sicut apud Jopen discipulam,  
Thabitam nomine, suscitavit. Ab oriente vero Jord-

<sup>1</sup> *finibus*] sinibus, MS.

<sup>2</sup> In the margin, opposite to this chapter, is written vertically, in red letters, “*Notandum de situ Terræ Sanctæ.*”

<sup>3</sup> *nostræ*] scil. *terræ.*

<sup>4</sup> *Davidicum*] Daviticum, MS.

<sup>5</sup> Ps. lxxiii. 12

<sup>6</sup> Is. ii. 3.

<sup>7</sup> *Philistinorum*] So W. and all the MSS. The Edd. insert *terram* before this word, but without authority.

In Will. Tyr., p. 46 (from whom this chapter is chiefly borrowed) we read, “et Philistiim *regionem.*”

<sup>8</sup> *et mare Mediterraneum*] Supplied from W. A. C. D. and Will. Tyr., p. 746.

<sup>9</sup> *prope*] prope est, W. A. C. D. In Will. Tyr., “ubi propius est.”

<sup>10</sup> *oppidum*] opidum, MS.

<sup>11</sup> *Diospolim*] In the margin is added *vel Neapolim*, and in F. *Neapolim* is substituted in the text.

nis habet fluenta, et solitudinem filiorum prophetarum, A.D. 1099. quasi ad miliaria xiiii., et vallem silvestrem, et Mare Mortuum. Citra Jordanem vero habet et Galgala, Helisæi domicilium; ultra vero Jordanem, Galaad, Basan, Amon et Moab, quæ postmodum Ruben, Gad et dimidia tribus Manasse suscepérunt in sortem, quæ hodie regio generali appellatione Arabia nuncupatur. Ab austro vero habet sortem Judæ, in qua est Bethleem,<sup>1</sup> felix Dominicæ nativitatis locus, et Thecua, urbs prophetarum Abacuc et Amos, et Ebron, quæ est Cariatarbe, sanctorum sepulchrum patriarcharum. A septentrione quoque habet Gabaon, Josue filii Nun victoriam<sup>2</sup> insignem, et tribum Effraim, et Sylo, Sichar quoque et Samariæ regionem, et Bethel, peccati Jero-boam testem; sed et Sebasteam, Helisei<sup>3</sup> et Abdiæ sepulchrum, et Baptistæ Johannis martirium. Hæc olim a monte Somer dicta est Samaria, sicut et regio tota, quæ et thronus fuit regum Israhel. Habet etiam et Neopolim, ubi filii Jacob, Symeon<sup>4</sup> et Levy, in ultionem stupri, quod Sichem, filius Emor, sorori eorum Dinæ intulerat, ipsum et filios ejus in ore gladii percusserunt, urbem eorum igne succendentes.

### *De ratione nominis Jerusalem.*

Rog. Wend.  
ii. 153. Est autem Jerusalem Judææ metropolis, quæ juxta Origin of  
veteres hystorias primum dicta est Salem, a Sem, filio the name  
Noe primogenito, qui eam fundavit, et in ea regnavit. Jerusalem.  
Hic postmodum dictus est Melchisedech, qui revertenti  
Abrahæ a cæde iiiior. regum optulit panem et vinum;  
Melchisedech autem rex justitiae interpretatur, quem  
Deus a diluvio reservavit, ut ex ejus semine post-

<sup>1</sup> *Bethleem*] Beethleem, MS., but but we ought to read *victoria*, with the first *e* expuncted. Will. Tyr., p. 746.

<sup>2</sup> *victoriam*] So W. A. C. F. D., <sup>3</sup> *Helisæi*] Halesei, MS.  
<sup>4</sup> *Symeon*] Symeo, MS.

A.D. 1099. modum Christus nasceretur. Erat quidem eo tempore alia civitas, secundum Ieronimum, Salem appellata, in qua idem Melchisedech sicut et alias<sup>1</sup> regnavit. Quod et verum comprobatur; ejus enim ruinæ usque hodie juxta fluenta Jordanis discernuntur. Deinceps, regnante in ea Jebusæo, dicta est Jebus, et sic ex Jebus et Salem dicta est Jebusalem; unde inde post, dempta B et addita R, dicta est Jerusalem. Postea autem, expulso Jebus a David, dicta est Civitas David. Deinde vero, regnante Salomone, filio ejus, vocata est Jerosolima,<sup>2</sup> quasi Jerusalem Salomonis. Hanc postea xl<sup>o</sup>.ii<sup>o</sup>. anno post passionem Domini, Judæorum exgentibus peccatis, Titus, Vespasiani filius, Romanorum princeps magnificus, obsedit et expugnatam<sup>3</sup> dejecit, ita ut, juxta verbum Domini, non remaneret in ea lapis super lapidem. Illam vero postea Ælius Adrianus, quartus ab ipso Romanorum Augustus, reparavit, et de suo nomine Eliam nuncupavit. Et cum prius in clivo præcipiti montis esset sita, ita ut partim in orientem et in austrum tota devixa despiceret, in latere tam montis Syon quam Moriae montis constituta, et solum templum et castellum, cui nomen erat Antonia, in sui haberet fastigio, ab eodem imperatore Rog.Wend. ii. 154. in montis verticem tota translata est, ita ut Dominicæ passionis et resurrectionis locus, qui extra urbem fuerat, urbe reædificata, infra murorum ambitum clauderetur.

*De locis venerabilibus infra sanctam civitatem.*

Of the holy places within Je- Hæc autem sancta et Deo dilecta ac inter omnes Rog.Wend. ii. 154. rusalem. mundi præelecta civitas, et minor maximis est et mediocribus major; forma quidem oblonga, et parte altera longiore tetragona, vallibus profundis in tribus

<sup>1</sup> alias] Written at first *alia*, and so W. A. C. D. added, *vel Jeru[solima]*, which is followed by F.

<sup>2</sup> Jerosolima] In the margin is <sup>3</sup> expugnatam] expungnatam, MS.

partibus circumsepta. Nam ab oriente vallem habet A.D. 1099. Josaphat, in cuius imo sita est ecclesia Dei Genitricis, ubi sepulta fuit, et gloriosum ejus monstratur sepulchrum; sub qua est torrens Cedron, ex aquis ortus pluvialibus, de quo dicitur, "Egressus Jhesus<sup>1</sup> trans torrentem Cedron,"<sup>2</sup> etc. Ab austro autem habet vallem Ennon, prædictæ valli contiguam, quæ sortis Benjamin et Juda fuit in funiculo distributionis. Et inde se erigens ad verticem montis, qui est contra Beannon ad occidentem, in qua est Acheldemach, hoc est, ager sanguinis, emptus de pretio Domini in sepulturam peregrinorum. Ab occidente vero ejusdem vallis habet partem, in qua sita est vetus piscina, quæ celebris fuit temporibus regum Juda; et inde protenditur ad piscinam superiorem, quæ Patriarchæ dicitur, juxta cimiterium quod est in spelunca, quæ cognominatur Leonis. A septentrione vero plano itinere ad urbem acceditur, in quo locus est, ubi prothomartir Stephanus lapidatus est.

*De dignitate patriarchæ Jerosolimitani, et suis sibi subjectis prælatis.*

Rog.Wend. Patriarcha quoque hujus sanctæ civitatis habet Of the  
ii. 154. iii or. archiepiscopos, unum Cæsariensem, alium Tyren- patriarch  
sem, tertium Nazarensem, quartum vero Petracensem, of Jeru-  
fol. 33 a. id est, Montis Regalis. Primus est in regione Palestinæ, salem, and  
Rog.Wend. alius in regione Phœnicis, tertius Galileæ, quartus autem the pre-  
ii. 155. in regione Moabitarum. Cæsariensis suffraganeum sub-  
habet episcopum Sebastenum; Tirensis suffraganeos habet ject to him.  
episcopos Achonensem, Sydonensem, Beritensem, et Belinacensem, quæ est Cæsarea Philippi; Nazarenus habet suffraganeum, Tyberiadensem; Petracensis vero unum habet suffraganeum, Græcum scilicet, in monte

<sup>1</sup> *Jhesus]* So also, rightly, W. F. I.; but in ed. Wend. *eius*, as in A. C. D.

<sup>2</sup> *Joh. xviii. 1.*

A.D. 1099. Synai. Habet præterea patriarcha, nullo mediante, episcopos suffraganeos Bethleemitanum, Liddensem, et illum de Ebron, ubi sepulti fuerunt Adam et Eva, cum Abraham,<sup>1</sup> Isaac et Jacob. Sunt autem in urbe loca venerabilia, ut ecclesia Dominicæ resurrectionis in Calvaria sive Golgatha, ubi sunt canonici nigri sub priore; Templum Domini, in quo sunt milites; aliud quoque templum, in quo sunt clerici. In ecclesia montis Syon sunt canonici regulares sub abbatे. In ecclesia montis Oliveti sunt canonici regulares sub abbatе. In ecclesia vallis Josaphat, monachi nigri sunt sub abbatе. Isti omnes mitrati sunt, et cum episcopis prædictis in ministerio patriarchæ assistunt. Sunt præterea aliae civitates, quæ non habent episcopos, ut Aschalona, quæ est sub episcopo Bethleemitano; Joppe, quæ est sub canonicis Dominicis sepulchri; Neapolis, quæ est sub clericis Templi; Cayfas, quæ est sub archiepiscopo Cæsariensi. Nazareth locus est, in quo Maria, Mater Domini, nata est, et in quo Filius Altissimi in uterum Virginis descendit. Bethleem, in qua natus est panis cœlestis. Jordanis locus est, in cuius flumine Christus baptizatus apparuit. Locus alius est,<sup>2</sup> in quo Christus jejunavit, et a diabolo temptatus est. Stagnum Genesareth, ubi Christus discipulos vocavit, et multa fecit miracula. Mons Thabor, in quo Christus transfiguratus apparuit. Infra sanctam civitatem templum est, in quo Christus extitit præsentatus; mons Syon, in quo Salvator cum discipulis cœnavit, et Spiritus Sanctus super discipulos venit, Materque Domini ex hoc mundo migravit; Calvaria, ubi mortem in cruce sustinuit; sepulchrum, in quo quievit, et unde tertia die surrexit; mons Oliveti, ubi in asinam sedens, a pueris honorabatur, et unde in cœlum ascendit; Bethania, ubi Lazarum resuscitavit; Syloe, ubi cœco nato visum restituit; Gethsemani, id est, vallis

Religious  
establis-  
ments in  
Jerusalem.

Cities  
which have  
no bishops.

Notable  
localities in  
Palestine,  
and Jeru-  
salem.

Rog. Wend.  
ii. 156.

<sup>1</sup> Abraham] Written at first *Ha-*  
*braham*, but *H* erased. | <sup>2</sup> est] Added on to the text.

Josaphat, ubi Christus a Judæis captus, et beata A.D. 1099  
 Maria sepulta fuit; ecclesia Sancti Stephani, ubi  
 lapidatus occubuit; Sebastea, ubi Johannes Baptista  
 sepultus fuit, cum prophetis Elysæo et Abdia. Hæc The above  
 autem ex libro venerabilis viri Willelmi, Tyrensis information de-  
 archiepiscopi, excerpta, de captionibus Antiochiae et rived from  
 Jerusalem, ubi dux Normannorum Robertus cum suis the work  
 Normannis et Anglis locum tenuit potiorem, et sine archbishop  
 quibus nihil memoria dignum peractum est, sufficient.  
 Si quis residuum libri illius, necnon et alterius libri,  
 in quo mirabilia orientis et lex Machometi pseudo-  
 prophetæ continentur, quem idem Willelmus de Arabi-  
 cis fideliter ac luculenter<sup>1</sup> exemplaribus transtulit, et  
 scripsit in Latinis, inspicere desiderat,<sup>2</sup> apud Sanctum  
 Albanum<sup>3</sup> sedulus inveniet explorator.<sup>4</sup>

. *Henricus, frater regis Anglorum Willelmi, corda*  
 . *magnatum blandis pollicitis sibi inclinavit.*

. Temporibus vero sub eisdem, videlicet dum dux Henry,  
 . Normannorum Robertus tam per mare quam per brother of  
 . terram versus partes tenderet occidentis, Henricus, king Wil-  
 . frater ejus junior, vir videlicet literis addictus et jam liam, al-  
 . eleganter in grammatica<sup>5</sup> et jure eruditus, mente sagax, lures the  
 . corpore decorus, viribus integer, perpendens quod rex nobility to  
 . Anglorum frater ejus liberis careret, et tunc temporis him.  
 . solus heres in regno appareret, donativis pretiosis  
 . quamplurimis,<sup>6</sup> quibus ex dono patris abundavit,<sup>7</sup>  
 . affatuque blando et pollicitis amplissimis magnatum  
 . Angliae corda sibi studuit inclinare; talibus utens

<sup>1</sup> *fideliter et luculenter*] These words, with part of the next, are on an erasure.

<sup>2</sup> *desiderat*] Before this word has been added *qui*, and so in F.; but it only disturbs the sense.

<sup>3</sup> *Albanum*] Added in marg.

<sup>4</sup> *explorator*] In the margin op-

posite is added the following note:

“¶ Hunc librum tulit episcopus Wintoniensis P[etrus] de Terra Saneta, quem vix, qui hæc scripsi, ab eodem impetravi.” Om. F

<sup>5</sup> *grammatica*] grammatica, MS.

<sup>6</sup> *plurimis*] On an erasure.

<sup>7</sup> *abundavit*] habundavit, MS.

A.D. 1099. sermocinationibus, "Pater meus Willelmus, hujus regni . conquestor, mihi nil terræ in testamento reliquit ; auxilietur mihi nunc Deus, non enim habeo ubi reclinem caput meum. Verumtamen quasi propheticō spiritu, multis circumstantibus, ut nostis, condens testamentum moriturus mili dixit, 'Fili mi carissime,<sup>1</sup> ne solliciteris tanquam exsors, et inter fratres tuos extorris, nam tu denique omnia heres universorum possidebis.' Propicio Deo et vobis consentientibus, hoc prænósticum verificetur. Adjecit adhuc, quod omnes antecessores meos gloria et honore et pacis abundantia<sup>2</sup> superarem, regnans in Anglia diu ac feliciter. Re- posita est hæc spes mea in sinu meo.<sup>3</sup> Hoc toto spiritu desidero, non propter personam meam,<sup>4</sup> novit ille qui nihil ignorat, sed propter vos, diu oppressos, ut sub rege pacifico possitis aliquando respirare. Frater meus Robertus, ut toti mundo patet, vir bellacosus, indomitus et pacis impatiens, et nunc post orientalia prælia plus solito. Fama vero publica rese- rente, in regem Jerosolimitanum pompose nimis est electus et creatus. Nec invideo, immo potius fraternis congaudeo successibus. Expedit vobis, ne unquam Angliæ fines<sup>5</sup> ingrediatur, vos conculcaturus, expolia- turus, et variis angariis exacturus, atque de spoliis vestris Normanos ditaturus. Me<sup>6</sup> vero, pacis ac tran- quillitatis<sup>7</sup> et legum Angliæ antiquarum piarum et justarum amatorem et zelatorem, si contingat super . fol. 33 b. vos regnare, vos in caritatis vinculis et brachiis specia- lis dilectionis strictius ac dulcius amplexabor, et summæ pacis deliciis cōfovebo, possessionibus ampliabo, omnes . avitas<sup>8</sup> vobis libertates favorabiliter concedendo et .

<sup>1</sup> *carissime*] karissime, MS.<sup>2</sup> *abundantia*] habundaneia, MS.<sup>3</sup> *meo*] Interlined.<sup>4</sup> *meam*] Interlined.<sup>5</sup> *fines*] Added in marg.<sup>6</sup> *Me*] On an erasure.<sup>7</sup> *tranquillitatis*] transquaillitatis, MS.<sup>8</sup> *avitas*] A late hand has noted in the margin, " *avitas male hic ponitur.*"

. irrefragabiliter confirmando, et vestrum consilium in A.D. 1099.  
 . omnibus exaudiendo." Talibus igitur blanditiis et pro-  
 . missis omnium fere nobilium Angliae corda sibi incli-  
 . navit et enervavit, et a Roberti Ducis amore<sup>1</sup> alienavit.  
 . Dux interim, post multa maris discrimina et morosa  
 . viarum dispendia, iter versus Normanniam,<sup>2</sup> quod  
 . tamen Angli vel etiam Normanni penitus ignorabant,  
 . maturavit.

*Quomodo rex Willelmus in nova aula apud Westmonasterium curiam suam tenuit.*

Rog. Wend. Eodem quoque anno, rex Anglorum Willelmus a William II. holds his court in Westminister Hall.  
 ii. 156. Normannia in Angliam rediens, apud Westmonasterium in nova aula sua curiam suam primo pompose nimis tenuit. Quam cum ipsam inspecturus cum multa militia introisset, et<sup>3</sup> alii eam dicerent nimis magnam esse et aequo majorem, dixit eam rex debitae magnitudinis dimidia parte carere, nec eam esse nisi thalamum<sup>4</sup> ad palatium, quod erat facturus. Adhuc posset The foundations of the hall proposuerat facere, scilicet a Tamensi<sup>5</sup> usque ad publicam stratum; tanta enim debuit esse longitudo.<sup>6</sup> still remained.

*Nota magnificentiam regis.<sup>7</sup>*

. Deinde infra paucos dies<sup>8</sup> venit ad eum, cum pranderet una die festiva, nuncius, nec voluit differre nuncium propter prandium; et anhelo<sup>9</sup> spiritu affir-

News is brought to the king of the siege of Mans.

<sup>1</sup> amore] Added in marg.

<sup>7</sup> From the beginning of this chapter to the end of the reign of Will. II., MS. F. ceases to follow the text, but agrees with the larger Chronicle in A. C. D.

<sup>2</sup> Normanniam] Normannia, MS.

<sup>8</sup> dies] On an erasure.

<sup>3</sup> et] On an erasure.

<sup>9</sup> anhelo] hanelo, MS.

<sup>4</sup> thalamum] talamum, MS.

<sup>5</sup> Thamensi] seal. fluvio. This ellipsis occurs frequently.

<sup>6</sup> Adhuc . . . longitudo] Added in the margin, and is inserted in the text of F.

A.D. 1099. mavit familiam suam in urbe Cenomannica arctissime .  
obsideri,<sup>1</sup> et solam expectare, nisi citius liberarentur, .  
miserabilem captionem. Rex autem hæc audiens, cum .  
intinctam buccellam ori applicuisset, volens eam come- .  
dere, redarguit eum nuncius graviter, jurando affirmans, .  
quod tepide motus fuit super tali suorum periculo et .  
propria jactura, insuper de succursu morosus conferendo. .  
Rex autem dictum nuncii commendans,<sup>2</sup> illico jussit .  
cementarios vocari, murum palatii collateralem effrac- .  
tuos, ut, facto ibidem patulo hiatu, exiret, ne tantum .  
deviaret a recto itinere, ut per ostium exiret. In quo .  
facto ab omnibus meruit commendari;<sup>3</sup> dixit enim, quod .  
decuit tam festinanter obsessos liberare. Et cum fes- .  
tinans nec secuturos expectans ad mare pervenisset, .  
et mare ventis tam contrariis quam procellosis turba- .  
batur, navem illico ascendit. Cui cum nauclerus dixis- .  
set, "Cur, hominum audacissime, nec hostium impetus .  
ad quos properas, nec maris commoti formidas peri- .  
culum; nunquid tu ventis et mari poteris imperare?".  
Cui rex, "Non frequenter auditum est, reges Christianos .  
Deum invocantes fluctibus fuisse submersos. Aliqui .  
de oppressis et obsessis apud Cenomannem orant pro .  
me, quos Deus, etsi non me, clementer exaudiet." Et .  
illico sedata tempestate, ventus prosper, velis sinuatis, .  
ipsum regem cum exercitu suo, quem tunc propter suam .  
festinationem modicum habuit, impulit indempnem ad .  
ulteriore portum adoptatum. Et statim ad liberati- .  
onem suorum properans,<sup>4</sup> venit ad tria miliaria prope .  
Cenomanniam, ubi in obsidione extra urbem in castris .  
tota Galliae concederat fortitudo, die noctuque urbem .  
infatigabiliter infestando. Cum igitur jussisset rex .  
Baldewino cuidam, principi ac duci exercitus sui, ut .  
inimicorum numerum et fortitudinem præcedens caute .

Cf. Rog.  
Wend.  
ii.156,157.

He em-  
barks  
forthwith,  
in defiance  
of a storm,

and lands  
in safety ;  
then ad-  
vances to  
Mans.

<sup>1</sup> *obsideri*] At first written *obsi-*  
*dere.*

<sup>2</sup> *commendans*] *comendans*, MS.

<sup>3</sup> *commendari*] *comendari*, MS.

<sup>4</sup> *properans*] Interlined is *dum*, as  
if to read *properandum*.

consideraret et aestimaret, atque festinus renunciaret, A.D. 1099. ipse praeivit, et, facta aestimatione, certificatus rediit ad regem, dicens, "Revertere festinus; hostes enim praemuniti assunt legionibus ordinatis, qui parantur ad bellum, qui plures sunt nobis in duplo." Cui rex, The king's forces engage the enemy, who are put to flight.  
 "Ergo pares sumus; praesentia mea valet dimidium exercitus eorum; procedamus intrepidi." Et jussit exercitum ad proeliandum, explicatis vexillis, progressu- rum ordinari. Quorum accessus intrepidus cum hosti- bus innotuisset, dicebant, "Nullatenus credendum est, quod rex Willelmus, draco rubeus—sic enim eum appellabant, propter ejus tirannidem—cum tam parvo exercitu, ut apparet, veniat, sine multorum subsecu- tione." Et cum appropinquasset rex, ita ut uterque exercitus sese jam eminus intuerentur, fugit exercitus adversariorum glomeratim. Quos rex rapido cursu in- sequebatur; et, misso nuncio expeditissimo, obsessis insinuavit, ut contra fugientes exirent. Quod et factum est. Unde, confuso exercitu, fugit consul<sup>1</sup> graviter sau- cius, et vix elapsus. Interfectis igitur quampluribus et captis nonnullis, inter alios capti sunt tres eorum potentissimi, et compedibus et manicis ferreis mancipati. Quos cum rex ante ipsum adductos intueretur, dixit Generosity of the king to some prisoners.  
 eis, "Sic Deus et sanctus Leonardus vos liberet, si vos me sic teneretis compeditum et captum ad vestrum arbitrium, quid de me faceretis?" Ipsi autem sese ad invicem respicientes primo siluerunt, sed postea unus eorum a rege stimulatus, palam protestatus est cum juramento dicens, "Si ruptis vinculis liberi distaremus a te per unum miliare, revocatis sociis, in te acriter irruentes, te tuosque indubitanter occuparemus, et occupatum te vel perpetuo carceri traderemus, vel potius in frustra trucidaremus. Sed decipiebamur, credentes vos in decuplo plures fuisse quam eratis, et siccirco, heu! heu! Deo nobis adverso, terga dedimus

<sup>1</sup> consul] scil. Helias. Cf. Ord. Vit. iv. 59.

A.D. 1099. fugitivi." Hæc autem cum audisset rex, statim advocato fabro, fecit captivos ipsos solvi, et, vinculis eliminatis,<sup>1</sup> ponit in equis bonis. Et dixit eis cum autentico jure, " Melior fuit conditio vestra ligatis quam solutis. Ite liberi quocunque volueritis." Unde, obtenta civitate,<sup>2</sup> ad Angliam transfretavit. Eodem anno rex *Wilhelmus dedit episcopatum Dunelmensem pacitatori<sup>3</sup> Ranulpho, viro pessimo; et Osmundus, Sarisberiensis antistes, diem clausit extremum.<sup>4</sup> Hoc quoque anno visus<sup>5</sup> est sanguis ebullire de terra apud Fiscamstede,<sup>6</sup> in pago Bercensi; et post hæc apparuit cælum tota nocte rubeum, tanquam arderet.*

R. Wend.  
ii. 157.  
fol. 34 a.

He returns  
to Eng-  
land.

Ralph  
[Flambard]  
made bp.  
of Durham.  
Death of  
Osmund,  
bishop of  
Salisbury.

Bloody  
spring at  
at Finch-  
amstead,  
in Berk-  
shire.

A.D. 1100.  
Death of  
William  
Rufus.

*De morte regis Willelmi Rufi, et quibusdam signis  
prævenientibus mortem.<sup>7</sup>*

*Anno Domini millesimo centesimo rex Anglorum Rog. Wend.  
Willelmus, cognomento Rufus, cum gloriose curiam*

ii. 157.

<sup>1</sup> *eliminatis*] *elimatis*, MS.

<sup>2</sup> *Unde obtenta civitate*] Instead of these words the text originally read, *Unum pro vero sci[tote]*, as appears by a transcript of this MS. made for abp. Parker in 1567, preserved in MS. C. C. C., Cambr. No. lvi. Subsequently to this date these words have been partially erased, and others substituted by the same hand, of the 16th century, which has supplied in the MS. the two leaves which follow, the text of which is distinguished above by *italics*. On the lower margin of fol. 33 b, the bishop of Lincoln [about 1490] has noted, "Male abscissa sunt dua folia quæ sequebantur. *Jo. Lincoln.*" Some words have also been originally written with a plummet on the margin, which, with difficulty, may be deciphered thus: "Nota, quod hic est magnus (?) defectus, videlicet de fine Willelmi Rufi." As it is uncertain from what source the text has been

copied or compiled in the two leaves thus supplied, I have collated it throughout with Wendover, the three MSS. of the larger Chronicle of Matthew Paris, A. C. D., and the Cecil MS. at Paris, F.

<sup>3</sup> *pacitatori*] So also read W. A. C. D. F. I.; but in ed. Wend. it is altered to *placitatori*, which is more correct, as appears from Flor. Wig., ii. 46, and Sim. Dunelm., col. 225.

<sup>4</sup> *extremum*] After this word is inserted in W. A. C. D. the following passage: "Sigisbertus, Gemblacensis monachus, cronica sua hue [hæc, A. C. D.; hie, I.] usque digessit."

<sup>5</sup> *visus*] in æstate visus, W. A. C. D. F.

<sup>6</sup> *Fiscamstede*] So W. A. C. D. F.; but we should read *Finchamstede* with the Sax. Chron., p. 364, and Domesday Book, i. 57.

<sup>7</sup> *prævenientibus mortem*] ejus mortem prævenientibus, W. A. C. D. F.

*suam ad Natale apud Gloveriam, ad Pasca apud A.D. 1100.  
Wintoniam, et apud Londonias in<sup>1</sup> Pentecoste<sup>2</sup> tenu-*

*isset, in crastino sancti Petri ad Vincula perrexit* <sup>2 Aug.</sup>

Rog. Wend. *venatum in Nova Foresta; ubi Walterus Tirell cum*  
<sup>ii. 158.</sup>

*sagitta, cervo intendens, inscius<sup>3</sup> regem percussit. Rex  
autem in corde percussus corruit in terram, nec ver-  
bum edidit, sed vitam crudelem fine misero terminavit.  
Ejus quoque mortem signa plurima prævenerunt. Nam Portents  
idem rex, pridie ante necem suam, vidit per somp- which pre-  
nium<sup>4</sup> sese fleubotomæ ictu sanguinem emittere, et death.  
radium cruentum ad<sup>5</sup> cœlum usque extentum lucem  
obnubilare, et diei<sup>6</sup> interpolare<sup>7</sup> claritatem. Rex  
autem, sancta Maria invocata, et sonno excessus,  
lumen inferri præcepit, et cubicularios a se recedere<sup>8</sup>  
non permittens, residuum noctis insompne<sup>9</sup> peregit.  
Mane vero, cum aurora illuxisset, monachus quidam  
transmarinus, qui pro ecclesiæ sue negotiis regis cu-  
riam sequebatur, Roberto filio-Hamonis, viro potenti  
et regi familiari, somnium retulit, quod nocte eadem  
viderat mirificum et horrendum. Vedit enim per  
somnium regem in quandam venire ecclesiam, gestu-  
que superbo et insolenti, ut solebat, cœpit despicere  
circumstantes; ubi Crucifixum dentibus apprehendens,  
brachia illius corrosit et crura pæne detruncavit;  
quod Crucifixus, cum diu tolerasset, regem demum  
dextero pede ita depulit, ut caderet in pavimentum<sup>10</sup>  
supinus, et ex ore jacentis tantam exire flamمام con-  
spexit et ita diffusam, ut fumorum nebula, quasi chaos  
magnum, usque ad sidera volitaret.<sup>11</sup> Hanc visionem  
cum Robertus regi retulisset, cachinnos<sup>12</sup> ingeminans*

<sup>1</sup> *in*] ad, C. D. and ed. Wend.

<sup>2</sup> *Pentecoste*] Pentecosten, W. C.

D. F.

<sup>3</sup> *inscius*] justius, MS.

<sup>4</sup> *sompnum*] sompnum, W.A.C.D.

<sup>5</sup> *ad*] in, W. A. C. D.

<sup>6</sup> *diei*] Dei, A. C. pr. m., D. F. I.

<sup>7</sup> *interpolare*] So all the MSS.; but

altered to *interpellare* in Edd. and  
ed. Wend.

<sup>8</sup> *recedere*] discedere, W.A.C.D.F.

<sup>9</sup> *insompne*] insomnis, W.

<sup>10</sup> *pavimentum*] pavementum, MS.

<sup>11</sup> *volitaret*] In W. is added *et ob-  
fuscaret*.

<sup>12</sup> *cachinnos*] chachinnos, MS.

A.D. 1100. ait, “*Monachus est*,” inquit, “*et lucri causa monachiliter somniavit. Da ei centum solidos, ne videatur inaniter somniasse.*” Item,<sup>1</sup> videbatur regi per somnium nocte proxima ante diem mortis suæ, quod vidit unum infantem pulcherrimum super altare quoddam, et cupiens et esuriens supra modum adiit, et corrosit de carne infantis, et videbatur ei prædulce quod gustaverat; et volens plus avidius [sumere],<sup>2</sup> infans torvo aspectu et voce minaci ait, “*Desiste, nimis accepisti.*” Expergefactus a somno, rex consuluit mane super hoc quendam episcopum. Episcopus autem suspicans<sup>3</sup>. fol. 34 b. judicium vindictæ, ait, “*Desiste, rex bone, a persecutione ecclesiæ; præmunitio enim haec<sup>4</sup> Dei est, et benigna castigatio. Nec, ut proposuisti, venatum eas.*” Rex contemnens salutaria monita, in silvas venatum ivit. Et ecce, casu cervus magnus, cum per<sup>5</sup> eum transiret, ait rex cuidam mili, scilicet Waltero Tirel, “*Trahe, diabole!*” Exiit ergo telum volatile, de quo bene et vere potuit dici et raticino denotari,

“*Et semel emissum volat irrevocabile telum.*”<sup>6</sup>

*Et, obstante arbore, in obliquum reflexum faciens, per medium cordis regem<sup>7</sup> sauciavit, qui subito mortuus corruit. Sui autem, et præcipue miles ille,<sup>8</sup> in partes fugerunt; aliqui tamen redeuntes, corpus in sanguine suo circumvolutum et tabefactum supra<sup>9</sup> bigam cuiusdam carbonatoris imposuerunt fragilem, et macilentissimo jumento uno tractam.<sup>10</sup> Rusticulus igitur coactus corpus ad civitatem Wintoniam<sup>11</sup> trans-*

<sup>1</sup> Item] From this word to *fide expertus* is not found in Wendover, but is added by Matth. Paris on the margin of A. and inserted in the text of C. D. F.

<sup>2</sup> sumere] Supplied from A. C. D. F.

<sup>3</sup> suspicans] Altered to *suspirans* by a second hand.

<sup>4</sup> haec] *hoc*, MS. and F.

<sup>5</sup> per] *ante*, Edd.

<sup>6</sup> Altered from Hor., Ep. i. xviii. 71.

<sup>7</sup> *cordis regem*] On an erasure.

<sup>8</sup> *ille*] Added in marg.

<sup>9</sup> *supra*] *super*, MS. and F.

<sup>10</sup> *tractam*] *tractum*, MS.

<sup>11</sup> *Wintoniam*] Omitted in A. C. D.

. portare, dum transiret per quandam profundam et A.D. 1100.  
 . lutosam viam, fracta biga sua debili, corpus, imo  
 . cadaver, rigidum et fætens in luto circumvolutum  
 . volentibus asportare dereliquit. Eadem hora comes  
 . Cornubie in silva, ab illa qua hoc<sup>1</sup> acciderat per  
 . duas dictas distante, dum venatum iret, et solus casu  
 . a suis derelinqueretur sodalibus,<sup>2</sup> obvium habuit unum  
 . magnum pilosum et nigrum hircum, ferentem unum  
 . regem nigrum et nudum, per medium pectoris sau-  
 . ciatum. Et adjuratus hircus per Deum trinum et  
 . unum, quid hoc<sup>3</sup> esset, respondit, "Fero ad judicium  
 . suum regem vestrum, imo tyrannum, Willelmum  
 . Rufum. Malignus enim spiritus sum, et ulti[m]or ma-  
 . litiae suæ, qua deservit in ecclesiam Christi; et hanc  
 . necem suam<sup>4</sup> procuravi, imperante prothomartire  
 . Angliae beato Albano, qui conquestus est Domino,  
 . quod in<sup>5</sup> insulam Britanniæ, cuius ipse fuit primus  
 . sacrator, supra modum grassaretur." Comes igitur  
 . hæc statim sociis<sup>6</sup> enarravit. Infra triduum autem  
 . hæc omnia vera reperit; permediata igitur res<sup>7</sup> est

R.Wend. . oculata<sup>8</sup> fide expertus. Cujus<sup>9</sup> præterea mortem  
 ii. 158. miseram, ut prædictum est, sanguis de terra ebul-

Rog.Wend. liens præsignavit.<sup>10</sup> Nam Anselmus,<sup>11</sup> Cantuariensis  
 ii. 159. archiepiscopus, ob illius tyrannidem per triennium  
 trans mare pulsus, a Roma Marceniacum venit, ka-

1 Aug. lendis<sup>12</sup> Augusti, ut sancti Hugonis, Cluniacensis<sup>13</sup>  
 abbatis, colloquio frueretur. Ubi cum de rege Wil-

<sup>1</sup> *hoc*] hec, MS. and F.

<sup>2</sup> *derelinqueretur sodalibus*] sodali-  
bus linqueretur, A. C. D. F.

<sup>3</sup> *hoc*] hec, MS. and F.

<sup>4</sup> *necem suam*] suam necem, A. C.  
D. F.

<sup>5</sup> *in*] Interlined.

<sup>6</sup> *statim sociis*] sociis statim, A.  
C. D. F.

<sup>7</sup> *permediata igitur res*] per media-  
tores, A. C. D. ; permediata res, F.

<sup>8</sup> *oculata*] oculæ, MS. ; and so A.  
C. D. F.

<sup>9</sup> *Cujus*] Ejus, W. A. C. D.

<sup>10</sup> *præsignavit*] presaginavit, MS.  
After this word is inserted in W. A.  
C. D., "licet experimenta alia non  
deessent."

<sup>11</sup> *Anselmus*] Ancelmus, MS. and F.

<sup>12</sup> *kalendis*] circa kalendas, W. A.  
C. D.

<sup>13</sup> *Cluniacensis*] Clunacensis, MS.

A.D. 1100. *ielmo inter eos sermo haberetur, abbas ille venerabilis archiepiscopo respondens, sub testimonio intulit veritatis, "Proxima nocte intempesta<sup>1</sup> præterita vidi regem illum ante thronum Dei adductum et accusatum, et a justo judice damnationis in illum sententiam promulgatam."* Sed quomodo illud sciret, nec ipse tunc exposuit, nec archiepiscopus, propter illius eminentiam sanctitatis, nec illius audientium quilibet. Item, sequente die, cum archiepiscopus inde progressus Lugdunum venisset, et nocte sequenti monachi, qui cum Anselmo erant, matutinas,<sup>2</sup> ipso praesente, decan- fol. 35 a. tassent, ecce juvenis quidam ornatu serenus et<sup>3</sup> vultu, clericu cuiusdam ipsius archiepiscopi, qui prope hostium thalami jacebat in lecto,<sup>4</sup> et nequam dormiens oculos tamen clausos habebat,<sup>5</sup> astitit, et vocans eum nomine suo, dixit, "Adam," inquit, "dormis?" Cui cum clericus responderet, "Non," ait, "Vis audire nova?" "Libenter," respondit. Et ille, "Pro certo," inquit, "noveris, quod totum dissidium inter archiepiscopum et regem Willielmum exortum jam penitus est sopitum." Ad hoc clericus alacrior factus, caput erexit, sed oculis apertis, neminem vidit. Item, cum nocte proxime<sup>6</sup> sequente unus ex monachis ejusdem archiepiscopi ad matutinas<sup>7</sup> staret, et cantaret, ecce [quidam illi] cartulam admodum parram exhibuit ad legendum. Quam intuens monachus,<sup>8</sup> "Obiit rex Willielmus," in ea<sup>9</sup> scriptum invenit. Qui confestim oculos aperiens, præter socios nullum vidit. Nec multo post elapsò

<sup>1</sup> *intempesta*] On an erasure. Om.  
W. A. C. D. F.

<sup>2</sup> *matutinas*] matutinos, W. A. C.  
D. F.

<sup>3</sup> *et*] ac, W. A. C. D. F.

<sup>4</sup> *jacebat in lecto*] in lecto jacebat,  
W. A. C. D. F.

<sup>5</sup> *habebat*] tenebat, W. A. C. D.  
F.

<sup>6</sup> *proxime*] proxima, MS., and C.  
sec. m., D. sec. m.

<sup>7</sup> *matutinas*] matutinos, W. A. C.  
D. F.

<sup>8</sup> *quidam . . . monachus*] Supplied  
from W. A. C. D. F.

<sup>9</sup> *ea*] So written at first (as in all  
the MSS.), but afterwards altered  
to *carta*, in consequence, probably,  
of the omission after *ecce*.

Rog. Wend. termino, duo ex monachis ejus ad ipsum venientes, et A.D. 1100.  
ii. 160. regis mortem nunciantes, hortati sunt attentius ut  
ilico sedem suam repetere dignaretur. Jure<sup>1</sup> autem rex in medio totius injustitiae suæ præceptus est;<sup>2</sup> occu-  
buit, qui supra hominem erat, et consilio perversorum  
quicquid mali poterat, id semper agebat; et suis  
nequam, alienis nequior, sibi nequissimus, subjectos  
omnes continuis geldis et talagiis vexabat, vicinos  
werris et exactionibus assiduis provocavit;<sup>3</sup> nec respi-  
rare potuit<sup>4</sup> Anglia sub ipso miserabiliter suffocata.  
Ipse namque, et qui ei famulabantur, omnia rapie-  
bant, omnia conterebant et subvertebant, adulteria  
violenter et impune committebant. Quicquid fraudis  
et nequitiae antea non erat, his temporibus pullulavit.  
Invisus namque rex nequissimus Deo et populo, die  
qua obiit in proprio tenebat archiepiscopatum Cantu-  
ariensem, episcopatus Wintoniensem et Saresberiensem,  
cum duodecim abbatiis, quas aut vendebat, aut ad  
firmam dabat, aut in manu sua tenebat. Nec luxuriæ  
scelus exercebat occulte, sed ex impudentia coram sole.  
Quid plura? Quicquid Deo Deumque diligentibus  
placebat, hoc regi regemque diligentibus displicebat.  
Sepultus est autem in crastino perditionis suæ apud He is  
Wintoniam, in ecclesia cathedrali, in choro;<sup>5</sup> in cuius burried at  
sepultura lacrimæ locum præ gaudio non habebant, ter.  
Eadmer, Hist. Nov., p. 54.

<sup>1</sup> *Jure*] This word commences a new chapter in W. A. C. D. F., with the rubric, *De vitiis regis Willelmi.*

<sup>2</sup> *est*] Omitted in W. A. C. D. F.

<sup>3</sup> *provocavit*] provocabat, W. A. C. D. F.

<sup>4</sup> *poterat*] poterat, W. A. C. D. F.

<sup>5</sup> *in . . . choro*] Omitted in W. A. C. D. F. agrees with the text.

<sup>6</sup> *cum . . . xiii.*] Om. W. and D.

Here the text, supplied by the hand of the 16th century, ceases to agree with Wendover and the MSS. of the larger Chronicle, but to the end of fol. 35 b is derived from other sources.

<sup>7</sup> From the words *quæ utrum to vitæ substraxit*, is borrowed almost verbally from Eadmer, Hist. Nov., p. 54.

The evil  
deeds of  
William II.

A.D. 1100. *affirmant, illum pedibus offendentem superque ruentem occiderit, disquirere otiosum putamus, cum scire sufficiat eum iudicio Dei prostratum atque necatum. Hic occurrit animo quid rex iste quondam Roffensi epi-* fol. 35 b.  
*scopo dixerit, videlicet, quod “Deus nunquam<sup>1</sup> eum bonum habiturus esset pro malo quod sibi inferret;” et perpendo quid postmodum erga illum egerit, donec vitæ præsentí superfuit. Scitur enim quia ex quo illa verba protulit, depulso languore, quo notum est illum fuisse gravatum, tantum in deprimendo et subjugando inimicos, in adquirendo terras, in exercendo<sup>2</sup> voluptates suas prosperatus est, ut omnia sibi arridere putares. Ventus insuper et ipsum mare videbantur ei obtemperare. Verum dico, non mentior, quia cum de Anglia in Normanniam transire, vel inde cursum,<sup>3</sup> prout ipsum voluntas sua ferebat, redire volebat, mox, illo<sup>4</sup> mari appropinquante, omnis tempestas, quæ nonnunquam in fluctibus<sup>5</sup> immane sæviebat, sedabatur, et transeunti mira tranquillitate famulabatur. Quid amplius? Ita fateor in cunctis erat fortunatus, ac si verbis eis<sup>6</sup> responderit Deus, “Si te pro malo, ut dicis, nunquam bonum habebo, probabo an saltem pro bono possim te bonum habere; et ideo in omni quod tu bonum cestimas, velle tuum adimplebo.” Sed quid? In tantum ex successibus<sup>7</sup> suis proficit, ut, sicut ii qui in<sup>8</sup> factis illius<sup>9</sup> die noctuque præsentes extiterunt, attestantur, nunquam vel de lecto surgeret vel in lecto se collocaret, quin seipso<sup>10</sup> aut collocante aut surgente semper deterior esset. Quapropter dum nec malo corrigi voluit, nec bono ad bene agendum attrahi potuit, ne in perniciem*

<sup>1</sup> *nunquam*] numquam, MS.<sup>6</sup> *eis*] ejus, Eadm.<sup>2</sup> *exercendo*] excereendo, MS.<sup>7</sup> *successibus*] sucessibus, MS.<sup>3</sup> *cursum*] cursim, MS.<sup>8</sup> *in*] Om. Eadm.<sup>4</sup> *illo*] illo adveniente et, Eadm.<sup>9</sup> *illius*] ejus, Eadm.<sup>5</sup> *in fluctibus*] On an erasure.  
These words are not in Eadmer.<sup>10</sup> *seipso*] seipsum, Eadm.

Higden  
Polychron. lib. vi.  
c. 11.

bonorum diutino furore sœviret, compendiosa illum A.D. 1100. æquus Arbiter et momentanea cæde huic vitæ subtraxit. In<sup>1</sup> operibus<sup>2</sup> fuit<sup>3</sup> levis, in verbis tam<sup>4</sup> stabilis fuit<sup>5</sup> adeo, ut si cui bonum vel malum promitteret, inde securus esse posset. Et cum esset pecuniae avidissimus, quoddam<sup>6</sup> tamen semel gessit memoria dignum. Defuncto enim<sup>7</sup> quodam abbatे semel in Anglia, duo monachi, collecta magna pecuniae summa,<sup>8</sup> ut abbatis officium alter alterum supplantando obtineret, cum quibus quidam<sup>9</sup> tertius ea intentione perrexit, ut abbatem constitutum domum<sup>10</sup> reduceret. Cumque<sup>11</sup> coram rege illi duo starent, et unus altero plura promitteret, rex a tertio monacho, tunc tacente, quid dare vellet, inquisivit. At ille, se nihil promittere aut dare velle, respondit. "Accede," inquit rex, "tu solus dignus es tam sacrum onus subire." Sed erat rex ille magna pecuniarum cupiditate flagrans. Nam, eo regnante, fiebant in Anglia deprædationes, proscriptiones et confiscationes. Quamvis tolerabilius fuisset unius imperium ingemiscere, quam novis dominis subjacere.<sup>12</sup>

<sup>1</sup> From the words *In operibus* to *onus subire*, is taken, nearly *verbātim*, from the Polychronicon of Higden, lib. vi. cap. 11. I have collated the text with MS. Harl. 4875, fol. 170.

<sup>2</sup> *In operibus*] At quamvis in operibus, Higd.

<sup>3</sup> *fuit*] fuisset, Higd.

<sup>4</sup> *tam*] tamen, Higd.

<sup>5</sup> *fuit*] fuerat, Higd.

<sup>6</sup> *quoddam*] quiddam, Higd.

<sup>7</sup> *enim*] nempe, Higd.

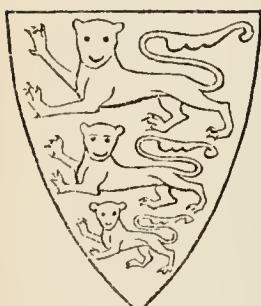
<sup>8</sup> *summa*] Higd. adds, "regem adeunt."

<sup>9</sup> *quidam*] Om. Higd.

<sup>10</sup> *domum*] humiliter domum, Higd.

<sup>11</sup> *Cumque*] Cum quibus, MS., but corrected from Higden.

<sup>12</sup> Here end the two leaves inserted by the recent hand.

A.D. 1100. *De coronatione Henrici Primi, Anglorum regis.*<sup>1</sup> fol. 36 a.

Henry I.  
promises to  
reform the  
laws.

Defuncto itaque rege Willelmo, cognomento Rufo, Rog. Wend. cum magnates ignorarent quid actum esset de Roberto, Normannorum duce, regis defuncti fratre primogenito, Rog. Wend. qui jam per quinquennium in expeditione Jerosolimitana moram protraxerat Christo militando, timuerunt diu sine regimine vacillare. Quod Henricus, fratrum ultimus et juvenis sapientissimus, cum callide cognovisset,<sup>2</sup> congregato Londoniis clero Angliae et populo universo, multis et solito<sup>3</sup> pluribus emollivit<sup>4</sup> omnes. pollicitis amplioribus, et blandis sermocinationibus omnium procerum constantiam enervavit, Robertum ducem depravando et se ipsum collaudando. Promisit insuper legum emendationem, quibus oppressa fuit injuste Anglia, tempore W[illelmi], patris sui, similiter et W[illelmi], fratris sui; et hoc juramentorum firmissima assertione confirmabat. Et sic animos omnium in sui promotionem et amorem illaqueavit,<sup>5</sup> ita vide- licet, ut nullum praeter illum in regem susciperent et patronum. Respondit igitur regni universitas, asserens quod, si animo volenti ipsis concederet et carta sua communiret illas libertates et consuetudines antiquas, quæ floruerunt in regno tempore sancti Edwardi regis, in ipsum consentirent, et in regem unanimiter sullimarent; præsertim cum absens fuisset Robertus, heres legitimus, nec possent sine<sup>6</sup> maximo periculi discrimine diutius expectare. Henrico autem hæc ommnia vultu serenissimo cum multiplici juramento concedente, et se

<sup>1</sup> The royal shield of arms is repeated in the margin, with a crown and sceptre by the side.

<sup>2</sup> cognovisset] congnovisset, MS.

<sup>3</sup> solito] Interlined.

<sup>4</sup> emollivit] Added to the text, and partly on an erasure.

<sup>5</sup> illaqueavit] Added to the text.

<sup>6</sup> nec possent sine] On an erasure.

ii. 160.

ii. 161.

id ilico facturum indubitanter affirmante, consecratus A.D. 1100. est in regem apud Westmonasterium, in die Assump- He is  
tionis beatæ Mariæ, favente clero et populo universo. crowned at  
Westmin-  
ster.

- . *Contra objectionem detrahentium Normannorum.*
- . Nec poterant ulla tenus Angli in hoc facto redargui Reply to  
. proditionis, quasi consentientes iniquæ supplantationi, the objec-  
. cum disseminata fuisse, Henrico procurante, fama, by the  
. quod dux Normannorum Robertus regnum Jerosolimi-  
. tanum suscepisset gubernandum. Praeterea rex Willel-  
. mus, pater ejusdem Roberti, erga ipsum R[obertum]  
. iratus nimis, cum in extremis ageret, et merito, ut  
. prædictum est, maledixit illi in amaritudine animi,  
. exsortem<sup>1</sup> faciens regni Angliæ, conquestus scilicet  
. sui, quod habiturus fuisse, quia primogenitus, si pie  
. et juste sese habuisset. Unde pater illud Willelmo  
. Rufo contulit, et Roberto Normanniam,<sup>2</sup> quæ ipsum  
. W[illelmum] patrem tanquam ducem contingebat.  
. Ipso igitur Henrico, ut prælibatum est, regio diade-  
. mate sollempniter insignito, convenerunt omnes regni  
. magnates cum gaudio, promissa consecuturi. Has  
. igitur libertates subscriptas in regno, ad exaltationem  
. sanctæ ecclesiæ et pacem populi, tenendas concessit.

*Nota de libertatibus, quas rex Henricus I. in regno  
concessit.<sup>3</sup>*

Rog. Wend. Henricus I<sup>us</sup>,<sup>4</sup> Dei gratia<sup>5</sup> rex Angliæ,<sup>6</sup> Hugoni de Boclande Charter of  
ii. 161. vicecomiti et omnibus fidelibus suis, tam Francis quam liberties  
Anglis,<sup>7</sup> in Herefordsire, salutem. Seiatis me Dei misericor- granted by  
Henry I.

<sup>1</sup> *exsortem*] exortem, MS.

Exchequer," marked R. 1 and R. 2.

<sup>2</sup> *Normanniam*] Normaniam, MS.

I have noted the principal variations  
in addition to those in W. A. C. D.

<sup>3</sup> This important charter is printed  
in the "Statutes of the Realm," vol. i.,  
p. 1, ed. 1810, from the "Textus  
Roffensis" (in which it is assigned  
to the year 1101), collated with two  
copies in the "Red Book of the

<sup>4</sup> *Ius*. Om. R. 1, R. 2, and W. A.  
C.D.

<sup>5</sup> *gratia*] Added above the line.

<sup>6</sup> *Angliae*] Anglorum, R. 1, 2.

<sup>7</sup> *Anglis*] Anglicis, A. C. D.

A.D. 1100. dia et communi consilio baronum regni<sup>1</sup> Angliæ regem<sup>2</sup> esse Rog.Wend. coronatum. Et quia regnum oppressum erat injustis exacti- ii. 162.  
 onibus, ego respectu Dei, et amore quem erga vos omnes<sup>3</sup> habeo, sanctam Dei ecclesiam liberam<sup>4</sup> facio, ita quod nec eam<sup>5</sup> vendam, vel<sup>6</sup> ad firmam ponam, nec, mortuo archiepiscopo vel<sup>7</sup> episcopo sive<sup>8</sup> abbate, quicquam<sup>9</sup> accipiam de domi-  
 nio ecclesiæ, vel de hominibus,<sup>10</sup> donec successor in eam ingrediatur. Et omnes malas consuetudines, quibus regnum Angliæ opprimebatur,<sup>11</sup> inde aufero; quas malas consuetudines in parte hic pono.<sup>12</sup> Si quis baronum meorum, comitum vel<sup>13</sup> aliorum, qui de me tenent, mortuus fuerit, heres suus non redimet terram suam, sicut facere consueverat<sup>14</sup> tempore patris<sup>15</sup> mei, sed justa et legitima relevatione [relevabit eam. Similiter et homines baronum meorum justa et legitima relevatione]<sup>16</sup> relevabunt terras suas de dominis suis. Et si quis baronum vel aliorum hominum meorum filiam suam voluerit tradere,<sup>17</sup> sive sororem, sive neptem, sive cognatam<sup>18</sup> nuptui,<sup>19</sup> mecum inde loquatur; sed neque ego aliquid de suo pro hac licentia accipiam, neque defendam ei, quin eam det, excepto si eam dare voluerit<sup>20</sup> inimico meo. Et si, mortuo barone vel<sup>21</sup> alio homine meo, filia heres remanserit, dabo illam cum<sup>22</sup> consilio baronum meorum, cum terra sua. Et si, mortuo marito,<sup>23</sup> uxor ejus remanserit, et sine liberis fuerit, dotem suam et maritagium<sup>24</sup> habebit; et eam non dabo marito, nisi secundum velle suum. Si vero uxor cum liberis remanserit,

<sup>1</sup> regni] totius regni, Text. Roff.<sup>2</sup> regem] ejusdem regem, T.R. ;

eiusdem regni regem, R. 1, 2.

<sup>3</sup> omnes] om. T.R. and R. 2.<sup>4</sup> liberam] imprimis liberam, T.R. and R. 1, 2.<sup>5</sup> eam] Om. T.R. and R. 1, 2.<sup>6</sup> vel] nec, T.R., R. 1, 2, and W. A. C. D.<sup>7</sup> vel] sive, T.R. ; seu, R. 2.<sup>8</sup> sive] vel, R. 1 and W. A. C. D.<sup>9</sup> quicquam] aliquid, T.R., R. 1, 2, and W. A. C. D.<sup>10</sup> hominibus] hominibus ejus, T.R. and R. 1, 2.<sup>11</sup> opprimebatur] injuste opprime- batur, T. R., R. 2, and W. A. C. D.<sup>12</sup> hic pono] suppono, R. 1.<sup>13</sup> vel] sive, T.R. and R. 1, 2.<sup>14</sup> facere consueverat] faciebat, T. R. and R. 1, 2.<sup>15</sup> patris] fratris, T.R. and R. 1, 2.<sup>16</sup> relevabit . . . relevatione] Supplied from T.R., R. 1, 2, and W. A. C. D.<sup>17</sup> tradere] nuptum tradere, T.R. and R. 2 ; nubitum, R. 2.<sup>18</sup> cognatam] cognatam, MS.<sup>19</sup> nuptui] Om. T.R., R. 1, 2, and A. C. D.<sup>20</sup> dare voluerit] vellet jungere, T.R. and R. 1, 2.<sup>21</sup> vel] sive, T.R.<sup>22</sup> cum] Om. T.R. and R. 1, 2.<sup>23</sup> marito] viro, T.R.<sup>24</sup> maritagium] maritatem, T.R. and R. 1, 2.

dotem<sup>1</sup> suam et maritagium habebit, dum corpus suum legi- A.D. 1100.  
time servaverit,<sup>2</sup> et eam non dabo, nisi secundum velle suum;

Rog. Wend. et terræ<sup>3</sup> liberorum custos erit sive uxor, sive aliis propin-  
ii. 163. quior,<sup>4</sup> qui justius<sup>5</sup> esse debet.<sup>6</sup> Et præcipio, ut homines<sup>7</sup>  
mei similiter se contineant erga filios et filias et<sup>8</sup> uxores  
hominum suorum. Monetagium commune, quod capiatur<sup>9</sup> per  
civitates vel<sup>10</sup> comitatus, quod non fuit tempore Edwardi regis,  
hoc ne amodo fiat,<sup>11</sup> omnino defendo. Si quis captus fuerit,  
sive monetarius sive aliis, cum falsa moneta, justitia recta  
inde fiat. Omnia placita et omnia debita, quæ regi<sup>12</sup> fratri  
meo debebantur, condono, exceptis firmis<sup>13</sup> meis, et exceptis  
illis, quæ pacta erant pro aliorum hereditatibus, vel pro illis<sup>14</sup>  
rebus, quæ justius alios<sup>15</sup> contingebant. Et si quis aliquid  
pro hereditate sua pepigerit,<sup>16</sup> illud condono, et omnes rele-  
vationes, quæ pro rectis hereditatibus pactæ erant.<sup>17</sup> Et si  
quis baronum vel hominum meorum infirmabitur, sicut ipse  
fol. 36 b. dabit vel dare disposuerit<sup>18</sup> pecuniam suam, ita datam esse  
concedo. Quod si ipse præventus vel armis, vel infirmitate,  
pecuniam suam nec<sup>19</sup> dederit nec dare disposuerit, uxor sua,  
sive liberi, aut parentes, et legitimi homines sui<sup>20</sup> pro anima  
eius eam dividant, sicut eis melius visum fuerit. Si quis  
baronum vel hominum meorum forisfecerit, non dabit vadium  
in misericordia pecuniæ suæ, sicut faciebat tempore patris<sup>21</sup>  
vel fratri mei, sed secundum forisfacturæ<sup>22</sup> modum. Nec<sup>23</sup>  
ita emendabit, sicut emendasset retro, tempore patris mei vel

<sup>1</sup> *dotem*] dotem quidem, T.R. and R. 1, 2.

<sup>2</sup> *servaverit*] servabit, R. 1 and W. A. C. D.

<sup>3</sup> *terræ*] terræ et, T.R. and R. 1, 2.

<sup>4</sup> *propinquior*] propinquarius, T. R.; propinquorum, R. 1, 2.

<sup>5</sup> *justius*] justus, R. 1 and A. C. D.

<sup>6</sup> *debet*] debeat, T.R.; debebit, R. 1, 2.

<sup>7</sup> *homines*] barones, T.R. and R. 1, 2.

<sup>8</sup> *et*] vel, T. R. and R. 1, 2.

<sup>9</sup> *capiatur*] capiebatur, T.R. and R. 1, 2.

<sup>10</sup> *vel*] et, T.R.; et per, R. 1, 2.

<sup>11</sup> *fiat*] sit, T.R. and R. 2.

<sup>12</sup> *regi*] Om. T.R. and R. 1, 2.

<sup>13</sup> *firmis*] rectis firmis, T.R. and R. 1, 2.

<sup>14</sup> *illis*] eis, T.R. and R. 1, 2.

<sup>15</sup> *alios*] alii, T.R. and R. 1, 2.

<sup>16</sup> *pepigerit*] pepigerat, T.R. and R. 1, 2.

<sup>17</sup> *erant*] fuerant, T.R.

<sup>18</sup> *disposuerit*] disponet, T.R. and R. 1, 2.

<sup>19</sup> *nec*] non, T.R., R. 1, 2, and W.

<sup>20</sup> *sui*] ejus, T.R. and R. 1, 2.

<sup>21</sup> *patris*] patris mei, T.R. and R. 1.

<sup>22</sup> *forisfacturæ*] forissaeti, T.R. and R. 1, 2.

<sup>23</sup> *Nec*] Om. T.R. and R. 1, 2.

A.D. 1100, fratris.<sup>1</sup> Quod si perfidiae vel sceleris convictus fuerit, sicut erit culpa,<sup>2</sup> sic emendabit.<sup>3</sup> Murdra etiam retro ab illa die, qua in regem coronatus fui, omnia condono, sed<sup>4</sup> ea, quæ amodo facta fuerint, juste emendentur, secundum<sup>5</sup> lagam regis Edwardi. Forestas communi consilio<sup>6</sup> baronum meorum in Rog.Wend. manu mea ita<sup>7</sup> retinui,<sup>8</sup> sicut pater meus eas habuit. Militibus, qui per lorias terras suas defendunt,<sup>9</sup> terras dominicarum carucarum suarum quietas ab omnibus geldis et<sup>10</sup> omni tempore<sup>11</sup> condono,<sup>12</sup> et<sup>13</sup> proprio dono meo concedo, ut sicut<sup>14</sup> tam magno gravamine alleviati sunt, in<sup>15</sup> equis et armis bene se instruant, ut apti et parati sint<sup>16</sup> ad servitium meum et ad defensionem regni mei. Pacem firmam pono in toto regno meo, et teneri amodo præcipio. Lagam regis Edwardi vobis redbo, cum illis emendationibus, quibus pater meus eam emendavit consilio baronum suorum.<sup>17</sup> Si quis aliquid de meo,<sup>18</sup> vcl de rebus alicujus, post obitum regis Willelmi fratris mei cepit, totum cito reddatur absque<sup>19</sup> emendatione. Et si quis inde aliquid retinuerit, ille super quem inventum fuerit, graviter mihi emendabit. Hiis testibus, Mauricio, Londonensi episcopo, Willelmo, Wintoniensi electo, Girardo, Herefordensi episcopo, Henrico, comite, Simone, comite, Waltero Giffard, comite, Roberto de Monte-forti, Rogero Bigod, et aliis multis.<sup>20</sup>

Copies of this charter sent to Factæ autem sunt hujus tenoris tot cartæ, quot sunt comitatus in Anglia; et expedienter fabricato sigillo.

<sup>1</sup> *vel fratris*] Om. T.R. and R. 2; et fratris mei, R. 1. After these words is added in all three, "in tempore aliorum antecessorum meorum."

<sup>2</sup> *erit culpa*] justum fuerit, T.R. and R. 2; justum erit, R. 1.

<sup>3</sup> *emendabit*] emendet, T.R., R. 1, 2, and W. A. C. D.

<sup>4</sup> *sed*] et, T.R., R. 1, 2, and W. A. C. D.

<sup>5</sup> *secundum*] sed'an, MS.

<sup>6</sup> *consilio*] consensu, T.R. and R. 1, 2.

<sup>7</sup> *ita*] Om. T.R.; sic, R. 1.

<sup>8</sup> *retinui*] Over this word is written *vel o*, meaning that we might also read *retineo*; but the other MSS. do not sanction any such change.

<sup>9</sup> *defendunt*] deserviunt, R. 1, 2.

<sup>10</sup> *et*] et ab, R. 1, 2.

<sup>11</sup> *tempore*] opere, T.R. and R. 1,

2. Om. W. A. C. D. F.

<sup>12</sup> *condono*] Om. W. A. C. D. F.

<sup>13</sup> *et*] Interlined. Om. W. A. C. D. F.

<sup>14</sup> *dono . . . sicut*] On an erasure.

<sup>15</sup> *in*] ita, T.R. and R. 1, 2; et, A. C. D.

<sup>16</sup> *ut . . . sint*] Om. T.R.

<sup>17</sup> *suorum*] meorum, MS. and F.

<sup>18</sup> *meo*] rebus meis, T.R.

<sup>19</sup> *absque*] sine, T.R.

<sup>20</sup> *multis*] T.R. and R. 1, 2 add: "apud Londoniam (or Westmonasterium) quando fui coronatus."

. consignatæ, rege sic jubente, transmissæ et positæ sunt A.D. 1100.  
 in abbatiis singulorum comitatum, ad memoriam hujus <sup>the abbeys</sup> in each  
 . rei roborandam et perpetuandam. Successu vero tem- county.  
 . poris, quando, maligno spiritu instigante, pœnituit regem  
 . hæc fecisse, sublatæ sunt hæ<sup>1</sup> cartæ diversis viribus vel  
 . fallaciis, vix tribus remanentibus, videlicet apud Can-  
 . tuariam, apud Sanctum Albanum, et apud Eboracum.

*De reditu Anselmi, Cantuariensis archiepiscopi, in Angliam.*

Rog.Wend. Rex itaque Henricus in regem, ut dictum est, William  
 ii. 164. coronatus, dedit episcopatum Wintoniensem Willelmo Giffard made  
 Giffard,<sup>2</sup> et continuo de possessionibus cunctis ad epi- bishop of  
 scopatum pertinentibus illum, contra novi statuta con- Winches-  
 cilii, de quo superius mentionem fecimus, tam fratrissans ter.  
 quam patrissans investivit, remuneratus.<sup>3</sup> Deinde, de concilio totius ecclesiæ Anglicanæ, misit ad partes  
 Rog.Wend. transmarinas nuncios sollempnes ad Anselmum, Can- Anselm,  
 ii. 165. tuariensem archiepiscopum, summopere illum sollicitans, archbishop of Canterbury, is  
 ut cum festinatione ab exilio rediens, sedem suam of Canter-  
 repitere non pigritaret.

*Repatrians redit dux Normannorum R[obertus].*

Rog.Wend. Rediit interea Normannorum dux Robertus, expleta, Return of  
 ii. 165. ut sufficienter præscriptum est, magnifice peregrinatione Robert,  
 Jerosolimitana, in Normanniam; in qua peregrina- duke of  
 tione<sup>4</sup> jam per quinquennium fere fuerat demoratus. Normandy.  
 Ubi cum lætitia et honore susceptus est ab universo  
 populo regionis.

<sup>1</sup> *hæ*] hee, MS.

<sup>2</sup> He was not consecrated till 11th Aug. 1107. Fasti, iii. 7.

<sup>3</sup> *remuneratus*] Added on to the text.

<sup>4</sup> *peregrinatione*] Added in marg.

*De malitia Ranulphi, episcopi Dunelmensis.*

A.D. 1100. Tenuit autem eo tempore rex in custodia Ranulphum, Rog. Wend.

Imprison-  
ment of  
Ralph,  
bishop of  
Durham.

episcopum Dunelmensem, hominem perversum et ad  
omne scelus pronum et paratum; quem frater ejus rex

ii. 165.

Willelmus episcopum fecerat Dunelmensem, et regni.  
Angliæ apporriatorem et potius subversorem, nam<sup>1</sup> vir.  
fuit cavillosus. Qui cum regi jam dicto nimis fuisse  
familiaris, constituerat eum rex W[illelmus],<sup>2</sup> quia qui.  
libet sibi similes quærit questores, procuratorem suum.  
in regno, ut evelleret, destrueret, raperet et disperderet,  
et omnia omnium bona ad fisci commodum<sup>3</sup> coimpor.  
taret.<sup>4</sup> Sed, mortuo rege iniquo, et Henrico coronato,

*Præambu-  
lus A[de]  
de Marisco,  
episcopi  
Duncl-  
mensis.*

de communi consilio gentis Anglorum posuit eum rex  
in vinculis. Sed una dierum cum,<sup>5</sup> custodibus carceris  
per eundem multiformem proditorem inebriatis, et pe.  
cunia data et uberiori promissa, evasisset, illico clam in

He escapes  
to Nor-  
mandy,  
and incites  
duke  
Robert  
against his  
brother.

Normanniam transfretavit.<sup>6</sup> Ubi sua detestabili per.  
suasione ducem Robertum commovit, incitavit et exacuit.  
in fratrem suum debellandum, animans eum, et domi.  
nium regni indubitanter pollicendo; ad quod dux nimis.  
credules factus est<sup>7</sup> et proclivus. Elevatum enim erat.  
cor ejus de gratia triumphali, quam ei Dominus conces.  
serat in terra Jerosolimitana. Præterea literas occultas.

The duke  
lays claim  
to Eng-  
land.

ad Angliæ magnates transmittens, allegavit quod esset  
primogenitus filiorum regis Willelmi, qui Angliam sibi  
subjugaverat, et hac ratione de jure sibi competere  
regnum Angliæ affirmabat, et ipsum nequiter supplan.  
tatum fuisse, dum Deo in Terra Sancta fructuose mili.  
taret, protestando quod nulli debet sua fraus patro.  
cinari.

<sup>1</sup> *subversorem, num?* There is an  
erasure in the text, but the reading  
is supplied in marg., and confirmed  
by F.

<sup>2</sup> *W[illelmus]* Interlined.

<sup>3</sup> *commodum*] comodum, MS.

<sup>4</sup> *comportaret*] comportaret, MS.

<sup>5</sup> *cum*] Interlined.

<sup>6</sup> *transfretavit*] transfretavit, MS.

<sup>7</sup> *factus est*] Added in marg.

*Multi nobiles Angliae mandatis ducis Roberti  
enervantur.* A.D. 1100.

Rog.Wend. *Hiis igitur auditis, multi nobiles de regno Angliae* Many of  
ii. 165. *causæ illius favorem præbentes, colorem justitiæ præ-* the Eng-  
*tendenti, fidele consilium ei pariter et auxilium indu-* lish nobles  
*bitatum promiserunt.* Robertus vero interim paravit espouse his cause.

Rog.Wend. *viam, ut jus suum prosequeretur.* Sed quia nuper de  
ii. 166. *peregrinatione pauper rediit, distulit ad tempus nego-* Death of  
*tium mente conceptum, ut illud tempore congruo effica-* Thomas,  
*cious effectui manciparet.* Quod et secretis amicis, ne *vacillarent,* nunciavit, et eosdem, ut sese roborarent, archbishop  
fol. 37 a. *animavit.* Eodem tempore, defuncto Thoma, Eboracensi of York.  
archiepiscopo, Girardus succeeds. Girard

*Urbano papa defuncto, succedit Paschalis.*

Rog.Wend. *Anno quoque sub eodem, defuncto papa Urbano,* Death of  
ii. 166. *viro pio et justo, creatur Paschalis.<sup>1</sup>* Qui sedit post pope Urban II.  
eum in cathedra Romana annis xviii<sup>o</sup>. Pasehal II. succeeds.

*De virtute regis Godefridi, et morte immatura apud  
Jerusalem.*

Rog.Wend. *Diebus autem sub eisdem, rex Jerosolimorum claræ* Acts of  
ii. 166. *memoriæ Godefridus, de cuius præstantia multa præ-* Godfrey,  
*scribuntur et bonitate, ad instantiam quorundam baro-* king of Je-  
*num suorum, Jordanis flumine transito,<sup>2</sup> in regionem* rusalem.  
*Amonitarum, quam tunc Arabes inhabitabant, ingentem*  
*gregum et armentorum necnon et captivorum contra-*  
*hens prædam, cum manubiis infinitis feliciter remeavit.*

<sup>1</sup> Pope Urban II. died 29 July 1099, and Paschal II. was elected 13 Aug. following. | but corr. in marg. *vel transito*; and the latter reading is confirmed by W. A. C. D. F.

<sup>2</sup> *transito*] In the text *transacto*,

A.D. 1100. Quo audito, princeps quidam de gente Arabum præclarus et potens, atque in disciplina militari ferventissimus, per internuncios pace impetrata, ad regem Godefridum cum ejusdem gentis nobili comitatu accessit. Audierat enim multorum relatione de regis et populi occidentis viribus et magnificentia, qui per tot terrarum spatia, marium tractus et pericula, montium peragrationes laboriosas, advenientes in Dei sui famulatum, universum sibi<sup>1</sup>. subjugare nitebantur orientem. Unde studio ipsum famosum regem G[odefridum] ferventissimo videre gestiens, ad regis præsentiam adductus, reverenter illum salutavit. Et cum diu regem intuitus corporis ejus dispositionem admiraretur, cœpit cum multa precum instantia rogitare, ut in conspectu ejus gladio suo Rog.Wend. camelum maximum, quem ad hoc adduxerat, decollando ii. 167. percutere dignaretur, ut virtutem suæ fortitudinis fide. videret oculata, et visa veraciter nunciaret. Rex vero, non ad jactantiam, erat enim vir humillimus<sup>2</sup> et pius, sed ut barbaris nationibus timorem incuteret, evaginato gladio suo, camelum percussit, et leviter sereno vultu, tanquam esset res perfragilis, decollavit. Est autem collum cameli longum, flexibile, et cartilaginosum ac. nervosum, atque talis scematis et substantiæ, ut vix sit. amputabile. Quo viso, Arabs obstupuit, et qui cum eo. erant; sed in mente sua id ensis acumini ascribebat, intuitus enim ensem, laudavit. Unde, impetrata licen-. tia ut confidentius loqueretur, quæsivit propensius, si id posset cum alterius gladio operari. At rex subridens ait, "Si bonus est gladius, pro munere caro accipe et<sup>3</sup>. accepta; sed tuum mihi<sup>4</sup> paulisper accommoda."<sup>5</sup> Quo. arrepto, alium camelum priori parem sibi jussit præ-. sentari, quem simili decollavit alieno gladio facilitate, et sibi suum ensem Arabi resignavit, et ipsi jocose.

<sup>1</sup> *sibi*] Repeated after *subjugare*, but expuncted in the second instance.

<sup>2</sup> *humillimus*] *humilimus*, MS.

<sup>3</sup> *accipe, et*] Added in marg.

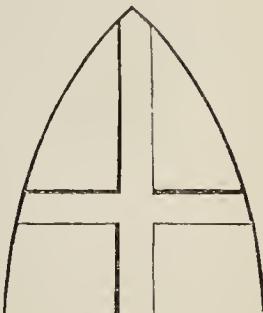
<sup>4</sup> *mihi*] *michi*, MS.

<sup>5</sup> *accommoda*] *aemoda*, MS.

. dixit, "Caute meum gladium adquisisti." Cui Arabs, A.D. 1100.  
 . "Carior est mihi<sup>1</sup> omni thesauro." Sicque potentissimus ille Arabum princeps, quod de regis G[odefridi] virtute audierat verum esse comperiens, multis regi in auro et argento, equis ac rebus pretiosis, muneribus collatis, ejus sibi gratiam comparavit, et reversus ad propria omnibus regis strenuitatem prædicavit. Deinde quoque non longo tempore, idem rex G[odefridus] Jerosolimorum magnificus, mense Julio incurabili morbo correptus, ægrotare cœpit irremediabiliter. Assumpto igitur humanæ salutis viatico, dictoque Vale Christi commilitonibus, et diligenter, ut Christo militarent constanter, ac pro hereditatis suæ starent [et]<sup>2</sup> usque ad mortem defensione dimicarent, admonens,<sup>3</sup> confessor Christi fidelissimus diem clausit extremum, cum beatis Christi athletis præmia æterna possessurus.<sup>4</sup> Obiit autem xv<sup>o</sup>. kalendas Augusti, et sepultus est in ecclesia Dominici Sepulchri, sub loco Calvariæ; ubi, sicut ei, successoribus usque in præsentem diem ad sepulturam deputatus est locus specialis.

Death of Godfrey.

18 July.

*Advocatur Baldewinus regnaturus.*

Rog.Wend. Tandem vero, cum per tres menses regnum vacasset <sup>Acession</sup>  
 ii. 167. Jerosoliitanum, judicio principum universorum et <sup>of Baldwin</sup>  
 cleri citatus est Baldewinus, frater ejus ex utroque <sup>to the</sup> parente, ut post fratrem suum jam defunctum et liberis <sup>throne of</sup> carentem, sicut jus dictabat, coronaretur. <sup>Jerusalem.</sup>

<sup>1</sup> *mihi*] michi, MS.<sup>2</sup> *et*] Supplied to complete the sense.<sup>3</sup> *admonens*] Added in marg.<sup>4</sup> In the margin is drawn the shield of arms of Jerusalem, reversed, viz., or, a cross argent, with a small crown beneath.

*De coronatione regis Jerosolimitani Baldeuuini, et ejusdem potestate.<sup>1</sup>*

A.D. 1101. Anno Domini M<sup>o</sup>.C<sup>o</sup>.I<sup>o</sup>. Baldewinus, comes Edessanus Rog.Wend. Coronation et frater regis G[odefridi], Jerosolimam veniens, in die of Baldwin. ii. 168. Nativitatis Dominicæ per manum patriarchæ Daiberti in regem Jerosolimorum inunctus est, et regio diademate laureatus. Tancredus autem, vir nobilis et omni laude dignissimus, veteris injuriæ prætactæ a Baldeuuino jam in regem coronato sibi illatæ non immemor, sumpta ab eo recedendi licentia, reddidit ei urbes Tyberiadensem et Caypham, quas ex dono regis suscepserat Godefridi; et Antiochiam veniens, a populo civitatis benigne susceptus est. Fuerat autem paulo ante Boamundus, princeps civitatis, apud Meletemiam,<sup>2</sup> Mesopotamiae urbem, a Danisma Turco quodam captus, et nondum a vinculis liberatus. Unde et Tancredus a principibus Antiochenis sæpe vocatus, ut præcesset eis, donec Boamundus a vinculis solveretur, adquievit petitionibus eorum, et tam urbis quam regionis administrationem suscepit.

Tancred  
retires to  
Antioch.

*De quodam facto regis Baldeuuini valde laudabili.*

Humanity of Baldwin to the wife of an Arab prince. Contigit autem tempore sub eodem, regem Baldeuuinum Jordanem transire, et, ut regionum finitimarum exploraret infirmiora, in Arabiam descendere, ejusdemque provinciæ hostiliter intima perlustrare. Ubi de nocte subito super Turcos ruens non præmeditatos, in ipsis eorumque tabernaculis de viris multos trucidavit, mulieres quoque cum parvulis universas et omnem eorum substantiam sibi fecit in prædam. Rex autem rediens cum spoliis, feminam quandam, uxorem cuiusdam principis Turcorum velocitate equi Arabiæ.

Cf. Rog.  
Wend.  
ii. 169.

<sup>1</sup> In the margin is repeated the shield of Jerusalem, but erect, with a crown above.

<sup>2</sup> *Meletemiam*] Meleremiam, MS.; Meleremiam, F. Corr. from W.A. C. D.

. optimi vix elapsi, invenit in partu laborantem, et A.D. 1101.  
. mortis discrimini jam expositam. Quod videns B[alde-  
. uuinus] piissimus, misericordia motus, fecit illico<sup>1</sup> de  
. cooperturis equi sui et equorum sociorum suorum  
. trium vel quatuor lectum parari pro tempore idoneum,  
. mantello quoque suo, aperta clitellario mantica, ipse  
. eam delicate involvit. Extentoque super eam taberna-  
. culo, fugitiva enim fuit mulier paritura et inventa sub  
. divo, assignavit ei obstetricum,<sup>2</sup> quas e vicino cum  
. summa festinatione ad hoc convocavit, securam<sup>3</sup> custo-  
. diam, cum cibariis delicatis et utribus aqua plenis,  
. lactis quoque et mellis copia. Sicque jussit exercitum  
. pertransire, ipsamque post partum cum suo infante viro  
. suo<sup>4</sup> indempnem præsentari. Rex igitur camelorum,  
. mulorum, equorum, omnibus bonis onustorum præda-  
. ditatus, ad propria victor<sup>5</sup> rediit lætabundus. Die vero  
. sequenti magnus ille Arabum princeps, dictæ sponsus  
. mulieris, credens ipsam mortuam fuisse cum prole vel  
. captam, plus de ipsius casu doluit quam de omni quod  
. ei accideret adversitate. Erat namque mulier elegans  
. et ortu præclara, et sponso gratissima, et talis ac tanta,  
. quod si captivaretur, multis milibus talentorum redi-  
. menda fuisset, ad regii thesauri augmentationem.<sup>6</sup> Quod  
. cum prædiceretur, noluit rex cupidorum consentire  
. sibilis, quin eidem officium præscriptum humanitatis  
. impenderet. Rediens igitur princeps memoratus post  
. nostrorum recessum, in uxorem casu incidit in puer-  
. perio sic jacentem, et de adventu sponsi et de propria  
. et prolis sospitate jam plenius gratulantem. Quæ cum  
. rei gestæ marito seriatim ordinem retulisset, annexens  
. cum testimonio ancillarum, etiam regem ipsum lectum  
. mulieris inter crepundia stravisse, et ipsam gementem

<sup>1</sup> *illico*] Repeated in the text, but expuncted.

<sup>2</sup> *obstetricum*] *obstitricum*, MS.  
*securam*] On an erasure.

<sup>3</sup> *viro suo*] Added to the text, on an erasure.

<sup>5</sup> *victor*] Added to the text.

<sup>6</sup> *augmentationem*] *auamentatio-*  
*nem*, MS.

A.D. 1101. in molli ac duplice clamide cum dulci consolatione involvisse, ille princeps stupens de humanitate et misericordia, quam rex pius hosti fecerat, cœpit cum maximo clamore nomen regis ad sidera junctis manibus extollere, dicens, "Etsi non valeam, reddat ei hanc vicissitudinem Deus naturæ! Et ego ei de cetero in omnibus necessitatis articulis fideliter adhærebo." Quod et effectui, prout dicetur, mancipavit.

*Rex Henricus Matildam duxit, filiam regis Scotorum.*

The author returns to the acts of Henry I. Redeuntes autem ad Anglorum historiam, de regis Henrici I. gestis referamus, in omnibus ad votum, nisi quod tantummodo impetus fratris sui R[oberti] formidavit, prosperantis. Habuit autem rex Scotorum Malcolmus ex regina sua sanctissima filiam elegantissimæ speciei, et, quod pluris erat, vitæ sanctissimæ. Quæ vere regis piissimi M[alcolmii] et reginæ Deo placitæ Margaretæ filia, in omnibus studuit tam patrissare in moribus quam matrissare.<sup>1</sup> Erat itaque puella in sacerdotalium clauistro propter honestatem educata, et, ut dicitur, velo sacro Deo dicato ac jam<sup>2</sup> professa. Rex autem Henricus I. ipsam propter ipsius mores et faciem venustatem sitienter adoptavit, et instanter petiit in uxorem. Quod audientes pater puellæ ac mater, non sunt ausi tam potentis viri instantiam propellere; accedentes autem ad puellam, de consensu tantæ copulæ seiscitabantur. At ipsa præcise abnegans, asserebat se ab alio amatore, scilicet Christo, præveniri, increpans patrem et matrem<sup>3</sup> de zelotipiæ<sup>4</sup> præsumptione, nec ipsos debere de corpore suo fructum mortalitatis exposcere, vel fructum posteritatis infructuosum. Et sic.

<sup>1</sup> matrissare] On an erasure.

<sup>2</sup> jam] Interlined.

<sup>3</sup> patrem et matrem] A hand of the 16th century has here noted in the margin: "Errat hic auctor,

nam parentes puellæ mortui erant, ut ipse superius in vita Rufi est testatus."

<sup>4</sup> zelotipiæ] zelotopie, MS.

. pater tristis recessit, sed matri propositum puellare A.D. 1101.  
. complacuit. Quod cum regi Henrico nunciaretur, ex  
. repulsa cœpit flagrantius, spiritu luxuriæ stimulante,<sup>1</sup>  
. exardescere in virginalium amplexuum illicitam<sup>2</sup> con-  
. cupiscentiam. Missis igitur sollempnioribus nunciis, ur- Henry  
. gentius adolescentulam in reginam expostulans, “impe- sends again  
. rium, promissa, preces, confudit in unum.”<sup>3</sup> Rex igitur to urge the  
. Malcolmus, nesciente regina sua<sup>4</sup> uxore, quam noverat marriage.  
. tali matrimonio nullatenus consentire, abbatissam, quæ  
. beatæ virginis M[atildæ] præerat in cura pastorali, fas-  
. cinnavit, ut cor virginis suis sermocinationibus ad con-  
. sensum matrimonii prætaxati cautius inclinaret, pro-  
. ponens utilitatem inde proventuram, scilicet regnorum  
. fœdera, regum mutuam dilectionem, pacis tranquillitatem,  
. propagationis posteritatem,<sup>5</sup> reginalem dignitatem, hono-  
. ris magnificentiam, divitiarum affluentiam, amoris de-  
. siderium, amatoris pulchritudinem. Cum autem undique She con-  
. virgo circumveniretur, tandem patris sui et abbatissæ et sents, but  
. aliorum consensit persuasionibus, maledicens fructui sui<sup>6</sup> unwilling- ly.

Rog. Wend. ventris affuturo. Archiepiscopus igitur Anselmus, qui  
ii. 169.

jam vocatus advenerat, sollempnia desponsationis inter  
. regem H[enricum] I. et reginam Matildam memoratam  
. celebravit. Et sic, nuptiis sollempniter, ut decuit, cele- The mar-  
. bratis,<sup>7</sup> facta est commotio magna in regno, quasi Deo riage is  
. irato, quoniam rex H[enricus] zelotipaverat; et sicut celebrated.  
. fratrem Robertum de regno supplantando<sup>8</sup> alienaverat,  
. sic Christum de sponsa sua rex H[enricus] defrauda-  
. verat. Dux enim, ut rumor asseruit, ad hoc venit cum  
fol. 38 a. exercitu copioso, ut sibi<sup>9</sup> Angliam subjugaret. Quo  
cognito,<sup>10</sup> misit rex Henricus navalem expeditionem

<sup>1</sup> *stimulante*] stumulante, MS.

with a plummet, coeval with the text, “Nota nuptias illicitas.”

<sup>2</sup> *illicitam*] On an erasure.

<sup>8</sup> *supplantando*] At first written *supplando*, and the letters *nt* afterwards added.

<sup>3</sup> Ovid. Met. iv. 471.

<sup>9</sup> *sibi*] At first, *si*.

<sup>4</sup> *sua*] Interlined.

<sup>10</sup> *cognito*] eongnito, MS.

<sup>5</sup> *propagationis posteritatem*] So

also in F.

<sup>6</sup> *sui*] Interlined.

<sup>7</sup> On the lower margin is written

A.D. 1101. contra fratrem hostiliter supervenientem ; sed pars major Rog.Wend.  
 Duke Robert of exercitus se Roberto subdidit venienti. Cum ergo apud ii. 170.  
 Normandy lands at Portesmuam ante kalendas Augusti applicuisset, et rex  
 Portsmouth. tenderet contra eum cum exercitu copioso, principes utrimque constituti fraternum non ferentes discidium, concordiae fœdus inter eos tali pacto statuerunt, quod rex Roberto annis singulis tria milia marcas argenti daret ab Anglia. Et quis eorum diutius viveret, heres esset alterius, si absque filio moreretur. Hoc autem cum per duodecim magnates juratum esset utrimque, dux Robertus perendinavit<sup>1</sup> cum fratre suo rege usque ad festum sancti Michaelis, et postea ad propria transfretando remeavit.

*Henricus jam imperat.*

Henry V., emperor of Germany. Eodem vero anno Henricus, Romanum adeptus imperium, annis xxxv. imperavit. Eodemque tempore rex Anglorum Henricus dedit episcopatum Herefordensem Reinelmo<sup>2</sup> cuidam sine electione, et contra nova<sup>3</sup> decreta concilii ; quia jam de regno secure possidendo. sibi cor erectum fuerat, ipsum publice, non curans de. prædictis, investivit.

*De concilio apud Londonias habito, et de degradatione quorumdam abbatum.<sup>4</sup>*

A.D. 1102. Anno Domini M<sup>o</sup>.C<sup>o</sup>.II<sup>o</sup>. rex Anglorum Henricus obsedit castellum Harundelle, quod erat juris Roberti de Beleastro, contra regem illud tenentis. Sed<sup>5</sup> cum grave

<sup>1</sup> *perendinavit*] *perhendinavit*, MS.<sup>2</sup> *Reinelmo*] *Reinelido*, MS. and F. Corrected from W. A. C. D.<sup>3</sup> *nova*] So also F. ; but W. A. C. D. have *novi*, as at p. 181.<sup>4</sup> This rubric has been crossed out by a late hand, but is found also in W. A. C. D. F. In A., however, it

is transferred by a mark in the margin to the paragraph commencing "Eodemque anno Anselmns," and in its place Matthew Paris has himself written, "Obsidetur castrum de Harundelle."

<sup>5</sup> *Sed*] *Set*, MS., *passim*.

asset ad expugnandum, castellum aliud ligneum contra A.D. 1102. illud construxit, et interim castellum de Bruges obsedit et cepit. Nec cessavit, donec redditum fuisset ei castellum memoratum de Harundel. Et, capto municipio, Robert de Belesme is rex Robertum ab Anglia exilio relegavit.<sup>1</sup> Eodemque exiled.

Rog. Wend. anno Anselmus, Cantuariensis archiepiscopus, concilium Council  
ii. 171. tenuit Londoniis, in ecclesia Sancti Pauli, præsente rege held in  
et suffraganeis episcopis, circa festum sancti Michaelis. 29 Sept.

In hoc concilio sacerdotes concubinarios excommunicavit, nisi eas ex tunc amoverent. Deinde regi, quæ Romæ decreta in concilio generali acceperit de investituris ecclesiarum, plano sermone descriptsit, quod, videlicet, nullus ecclesiarum prælatus, episcopus, vel abbas, vel clericus, investitures alicujus ecclesiasticæ dignitatis de manu suscipiant laicorum. Unde idem archiepiscopus degradavit abbates quosdam, qui de manu laicorum, et data pecunia, abbatias suas optinuerant. Qui hii fuerunt, Ricardus Elyensis, Aldwinus Rameseiensis, Burgensis, Tavistokensis,<sup>2</sup> Cernelensis, et Middeltunensis, et quidam alii,<sup>3</sup> quorum nomina non tenemus. Et quoniam ad jussionem regis quosdam episcopos, qui institutiones a rege susceperant, consecrare noluit vel eisdem communicare, rex vehementer iratus præcepit Girardo, Eboracensi archiepiscopo,<sup>4</sup> ut ipsos consecraret. Sed Willelmus Giffardus, Wintoniensis electus, quem consecrare debuit, Girardi sprevit consecrationem, quare regis judicio eliminatur exul a regno. Reinelmus vero, Herefordensis antistes, eo quod a rege institutionem acceperat, ei suum reddidit præsulatum.

<sup>1</sup> *relegavit*] After this word is inserted in the MS. another rubric, “*De consilio apud Londonias, et de dissensione et perturbatione rediviva,*” but this is omitted in Wendover and the other MSS., in all of which the text is continued without any break.

<sup>2</sup> *Tavistokensis*] Tamstokensis, MS., but the first syllable on an erasure; and so W. A. C. D. F. Cf. Eadmer, p. 67.

<sup>3</sup> *quidam alii*] Added in marg.

<sup>4</sup> *archiepiscopo*] In the text *episcopo*, but corr. in marg.

*Anselmus Romam profectus, abbates degradatos secum duxit.*

A.D. 1103. Anno Domini M<sup>o</sup>.C<sup>o</sup>.III<sup>o</sup>. Anselmus, Cantuariensis Rog. Wend.

Anselm archiepiscopus, post multas tribulationes et injurias, goes to ii. 172.  
Rome with quas a rege perpessus fuerat, Romam perrexit, sicut the degraded  
the de- inter ipsum et regem convenerat, ducens secum abbates gradated  
abbats. degradatos et Willelmum, Wintoniensem electum. Quo Romam veniente, a papa Paschali susceptus est reverenter. Deinde, die pro regiis constituto negotiis,

William de Willelmus de Warevast, clericus et procurator regis Warewast Anglorum, causam ipsius in medium protulit, ac inter alia constanter allegavit, quod nec ipse pro regni amissione investituras ecclesiarum amittere vellet, et hoc verbis minatoriis<sup>1</sup> cum juramento affirmavit. Ad hæc papa, "Si, quemadmodum dicis, rex tuus nec pro regni amissione donationes ecclesiarum amittere patetur, scias præcise, coram Deo dico, quia nec pro capitis redemptione eas ei impune permitterem optinere." In hiis ergo regis negotio terminato, Anselmus archiepiscopus pro episcopis et abbatibus degradatis multa precum instantia papam rogare cœpit, ut cum illis misericorditer dispensaret, ut possent amissas recipere dignitates.

The de- Tunc sedes clementissima, quæ nulli deesse graded pre- consuevit, dum modo albi aliquid vel rubei intercedat, reinstated. præscriptos pontifices et abbates ad pristinas dignitates revocavit, et ad sedes proprias destinavit. Eodemque anno dux Normannorum Robertus, regis procurante.

Duke Robert relin- cavillosa versutia, tria milia marcarum, quas rex illi. quishes the annual payment due to him. singulis annis reddere debuerat, condonavit eidem.

---

<sup>1</sup> *minatoriis*] Partly on an erasure, | in W. A. C. D. F. follows the and originally written *minacibus*, as | correction, as usual.

*Quomodo multi nobiles Jerosolimam projecti, imperatoris Constantinopolitani dolo perierunt.* A.D. 1103.

Rog. Wend. Circa dies illos multi nobiles de finibus occidentis Many  
ii. 173. crucesignati, ad iter sue peregrinationis se<sup>1</sup> accingentes, nobles, who  
duces habuerunt Hugonem Magnum, comitem Viromant- had taken  
densem, qui nuper ab eadem peregrinatione redierat, the cross,  
Stephanum, Carnotensem et Blesensem<sup>2</sup> comitem, cum go to Con-  
Stephano, comite Burgundensi. Hii omnes uno eodem- stantinople.  
que desiderio accensi, cum turba non modica Constan-  
tinopolim pervenerunt. Ubi ab imperatore Alexio  
reverenter sed dolose suscepti, invenerunt ibi comitem  
Tholosanum, qui, semel<sup>3</sup> peregrinatione incepta, perse- They elect  
verare et nunquam ad propria proposuerat remeare. the count  
Qui omnes, sumpta ab imperatore licentia, comitem of Toulouse  
fol. 38 b. Tholosanum tunc pro duce summo constituentes, transitus as leader,  
Hellesponto, Nicæam<sup>4</sup> Bithiniae urbem attigerunt. Tunc pont.  
imperator Alexius, proditor nequissimus, nostrorum in- Treache-  
videns successibus, principibus Turcorum, per quos rous con-  
peregrini transituri erant, crebras transmisit epistolas, duct of the  
exhortans attentius, ne tantum Christianorum populum emperor  
libere transire in suam perniciem paterentur. Nostri Alexius.  
autem nimis inconsulte agentes, et nil sinistrum sus- Great  
picantes, divisis agminibus incedebant, vinculumque slaughter  
. caritatis non habentes, facti sunt quasi arena<sup>5</sup> sine calce of the  
. ad constructionem divinæ mansionis. Unde dati sunt crusaders  
in manus, heu ! heu ! insidiantium hostium, ita quod ex by the  
eis una die in ore gladii plusquam quingenta milia  
peremptorum, quod relatu lugubre est, ceciderunt.  
Rog. Wend. Quibus autem datum est hostium manus effugere, amis-  
ii. 174. sis omnibus, apud Tharsum Ciliciae convenerunt. Et,

<sup>1</sup> *se*] Interlined.

<sup>2</sup> *Blesensem*] The MS. reads, erroneously, *Carnotensem*. *Et Ble-*  
*sensem*, as if there were two persons.

<sup>3</sup> *semel*] At first written *simel*, and

then altered to *simul*, and so in F.

The correct reading is in W. A.  
C. D.

<sup>4</sup> *Nicæam*] Nicæam, MS.

<sup>5</sup> *arena*] harena, MS.

A.D. 1103. defuncto ibidem Hugone Magno, præ dolore ut creditur. Death of Hugh the Great. in ecclesia doctoris gentium sepulchoque, Antiochiam sunt profecti. Indeque Jerosolimam festinantes, Tortosam pervenerunt, urbemque obsidione vallantes, infra dies paucos ipsam optinuerunt, civibus interemptis aut Capture of Tortosa. servituti perpetuae mancipatis.

*Rex Jerusalem tres civitates subegit.*

Assur and  
Cæsarea  
are taken  
by king  
Baldwin.

Smarag-  
dine vessel  
obtained  
by the  
Genoese.

Baldwin  
made arch-  
bishop of  
Cæsarea.

Diebus autem sub eisdem, in portu Jopensi magna<sup>1</sup> Rog.Wend. navium Januensium classe appulsa, in Paschali sollemnitate<sup>2</sup> Jerosolimam ascenderunt. Horum rex Balde- uinus fultus auxilio, Assur oppidum<sup>3</sup> maritimum obsedit, et illud potenter subjugavit; et, in eo custodibus relictis, Cæsarcam usque pervenit. Quam cum rex effractam cum maximo labore victoriosus intrasset, interfectis civibus, spolia impregabilia reportavit, quæ distribuit commilitonibus affluenter. Erat autem in una parte hujus civitatis templum deorum, ad quod populus causa optinendæ salutis confugerat; sed illo confracto, tanta ibi strages facta est, ut horror esset occisorum multitudinem intueri. In illo autem vas viridissimi coloris repertum est, ad modum parapsidis figuratum; quod Januenses smaragdinum reputantes, pro magna pecuniae summa receperunt, et pro ornatu pretioso suæ illud ecclesiae optulerunt. Adducti sunt autem coram rege civitatis procurator, qui lingua eorum Emrys dicitur, et juridicus, qui Cadmys<sup>4</sup> appellatur, qui sub<sup>5</sup> spe magnæ<sup>6</sup> redemptionis sunt compedibus mancipati. Rex vero constituit ibi archiepiscopum Baldewinum Rog.Wend. quendam, qui cum duce Godefrido illuc advenerat; et,<sup>ii. 175.</sup>

<sup>1</sup> magna] magna, MS.

More correctly, *Cadius*, in Will.

<sup>2</sup> sollemnitate] At first written *sollempni*.

Tyr., p. 785.

<sup>3</sup> oppidum] opidum, MS.

<sup>5</sup> sub] Interlined.

<sup>4</sup> Cadmys] Cadmis, W. A. C. D.

<sup>6</sup> magnæ] mangnæ, MS.

relicto ad custodiam civitatis præsidio militari, ad A.D. 1103, Ramulam festinavit.

*Prælrium inopinatum et victoria Christianorum.*

Rog.Wend. Misit eo tempore Caliphus Ægipti principem militiæ Victory  
ii. 175. contra regem Baldewinum, cum xi<sup>cim</sup>. milibus equi- obtained over the  
tum et xx<sup>ti</sup>. milibus peditum, præcipiens, ut populum Caliph of  
inopem et mendicum a finibus terræ collectum a suis, Egypt.  
ut dicebat, finibus propulsarent. Quos cum rex ad-  
venire cognovisset,<sup>1</sup> obviavit illis intrepidus cum equiti-  
bus ducentis et sexaginta, et peditibus nongentis. Et,  
. invocato de supernis Ejus auxilio, qui æque in paucis  
. dimicat sicut in multis, tam viriliter quam audacter  
irruerunt in hostes. Quibus post cruentissimum con-  
flictum in fugam compulsi, insecuri sunt eos nostrates  
usque Ascalonam, stragem non modicam operantes per  
. viii<sup>o</sup>. miliaria; et nocte illa victores læti sed admodum  
fatigati, in campestribus quieverunt. Céciderunt autem  
in illo certamine ex hostibus quinque milia, et ex  
nostris equites septuaginta; peditum vero certus  
numerus hinc vel inde non habetur. Principibus in-  
terim occidentis, de quibus supra retulimus, Jerosolimam  
festinantibus, rex Jerusalem obviam eis adveniens, in  
sanctam civitatem cum gaudio retrduxit.

*Rex Henricus I. terras Roberti fratris sui  
depopulatur.*

Rog.Wend. Anno Domini M<sup>o</sup>.C<sup>o</sup>III<sup>o</sup>. surrexit inter regem Henri- A.D. 1104.  
ii. 175. cum et Robertum, Normannorum ducem, fratres, causis War in  
intercedentibus,<sup>2</sup> discordia. Unde rex, missa in Nor- Normandy  
manniam expeditione militari, a quibusdam prodito- between  
ribus ducis recepti, prædis et combustionibus non mo- king  
dicum dampnum rebus ducis subito intulerunt. Sed Henry and  
his brother.

<sup>1</sup> cognovisset] cognovisset, MS.

<sup>2</sup> intercedentibus] intercedentibus, MS.

A.D. 1104. Willelmus, comes Moretonii, causa perfidiæ nuper a rege proscriptus ab Anglia, animo perfecto, ut vir strenuus, Rog.Wend. regalibus turmis audacter bellum indixit. Sed dux ii. 176.  
 Robertus fratri sui divitias metuens, castella sua et terræ infirmiora in quantum potuit, etsi occulte, communivit. Eodem anno apparuerunt circa solem iiiij. circuli mirabiliter picti, in meridie. Cometa quoque apparuit, mense Februarii. Anno quoque ante hunc transacto proximo, electus est [Rogerus]<sup>1</sup> ad episcopatum Saresbiriensem, sed in principio hujus consecratus. Et in æstate proximi anni præteriti et in principio hujus, hominum et animalium pestifera mortalitas fuit. Mortality of men and animals. et generalis.<sup>2</sup>

Solar circles and comet.  
 Roger elected bishop of Salisbury.  
 Mortality of men and animals.

*Anselmo interdictum est, ne rediret in Angliam.*

Return of archbishop Anselm forbidden by the king. The king seizes the see of Canterbury into his hands.

Hac quoque tempore Anselmus, Cantuariensis archi- Rog.Wend. ii. 176.  
 episcopus, a Roma rediens cum Lugduno appropinquasset, Willelmus Warevast, regis Anglorum procurator, de quo superius mentionem fecimus, interdixit ei ex parte domini sui, ne rediret in Angliam, nisi omnes patris ac fratri ipsius consuetudines se ei fideliter promitteret servaturum. Quod ille audiens admiratus est, sciens se alia conditione ab Anglia recessisse. Perveniens autem Lugdunum, resedit cum Hugone, archiepiscopo civitatis, omnibus quæ Dei sunt diligenter intendens. Rex autem Henricus, ut comperit tam papam quam archiepiscopum in sua perstare sententia, mox archiepiscopum bonis omnibus spoliens, archiepiscopatum Cantuariensem, jam patrissans et fratrissans, fol. 39 a. in suum redegit dominium, qui nec silvis pepereit vel hominibus.

<sup>1</sup> *Rogerus*] Supplied from C. D., but there placed at the close of 1102. He was elected 13 April 1103, but not consecrated till 11 August 1107. Fasti, ii. 594.

<sup>2</sup> *et generalis*] Added on to the text.

*De quodam Turcorum principe, qui regem Jerosolimorum curiuliter liberavit.* A.D. 1104.

Rog. Wend. Circa dies quoque istos Arabes sive Arabitae cum Defeat of  
ii. 176. Aegiptiis fines Christianorum apud Liddam, Sauronam Baldwin by  
et Ramulam ingressi, ad numerum viginti milium, prædis ibidem instabant et rapinis. Quid ut regi Jerusalem the Arabs.  
Baldewino nunciaretur, præter morem nimis inconsulte agens, non convocatis ex urbibus finitimis militaribus  
Rog. Wend. copiis, sed de sua præsumens virtute, vix ducentos ii. 177. secum habens equites contra hostes prorupit. Sed nos- trorum paucitas a tanta infidelium multitudine oppressa, cæsis plurimis, in fugam est compulsa.<sup>1</sup> Qui autem evadere potuerunt, ad Ramulam oppidum<sup>2</sup> confugerunt. Ceciderunt autem ibidem uterque comes Stephanus, qui nuper advenerant,<sup>3</sup> et alii nobiles multi, quorum nomina, etsi non retinemus, scripta profecto sunt in libro vitæ. Rex vero, licet de oppidi<sup>4</sup> securitate non multum consideret, tamen, ut mortis dispendium declinaret, illud ingreditur, spem non habens aliam evadendi. Cumque de vita desperans, metueret<sup>5</sup> ab hostibus ob- sideri, ecce intempeste noctis silentio affuit supradictus ille princeps nobilis de Arabia, cuius uxori, ut præmisimus, rex tantam exhibuerat humanitatem dum in partu laboraret; et voce suppressa hiis, qui in muro erant, siccine loquebatur, "Verba habeo," inquit, "ad regem secretiora, quæ perfero; facite,<sup>6</sup> ut introducar ad ipsum." Qui coram rege adductus, instruit eum ut de oppido<sup>7</sup> egrediatur, promittens secure quod ipsum sub tuto constituet, si sine tumultu exeat et cum paucis. Consilium enim inierant Arabes, ut testabatur, quod

<sup>1</sup> compulsa] compulsa, MS.

<sup>2</sup> oppidum] opidum, MS.

<sup>3</sup> advenerant] advenerat, MS. and F.

<sup>4</sup> oppidi] opidi, MS.

<sup>5</sup> metueret] At first written mutu- cret.

<sup>6</sup> facite] facito, MS. and F. Cf. Will. Tyr., p. 788.

<sup>7</sup> oppido] opido, MS.

A.D. 1104. summo diluculo castrum debeant obsidere. Tandemque egressus rex cum paucis, amicum sequens, ad montana concendit. At vir nobilis ille ab eo digrediens, opportunum regi qui tempore congruo promisit obsequium, sic dictis facta compensavit. Rex vero duobus sociis. He arrives safely at Assur. comitatus, per medias hostium insidias Assur usque pervenit, ubi a suis gaudenter exceptus est, et sumpto Capture of cibario confortatus. Hostes autem in crastino Ramulam Ramla by the Arabs. obsederunt, quam violenter subjugantes, fideles, qui in præsidio erant, partim neci partim perpetuae servituti subdiderunt.

### *Succursus advenit tempestivus.*

Hugh de St. Omer joins the king. Venit interea Hugo de Sancto Audemaro, cui rex dederat urbem Tyberiadensem, apud Assur ad regem, cum equitibus octoginta. Quorum rex fretus auxilio, assumptis secum civibus<sup>1</sup> Jopitis cum equitibus nonaginta, in spem bonam erectus decrevit hostibus occurrere, et injurias eis refundere cum usuris. Erant autem prope quasi ad tria miliaria. Et ecce rex cum suis, infusa de supernis virtute et divina gratia præeunte, in hostes potenter irruens, eorum agmina dissipavit, et, imperfectis ex eis non paucis, ceteros compulit fugam imire. Deinde in castra hostium reversi fideles, spolia eum asinis, camelis, papilionibus, utensilibus et alimentorum copiis colligentes, per menses vii. imbellies quieti indulserunt. Eodemque tempore Capture of dominus Taneredus Appamiam, Cœlessiriæ metropoli Apamea and Laodicea by Tanered. lim, obsedit et cepit. Inde Laodiciam transiens, illam recepit in suam. Hiis autem urbibus ampla nimis cum oppidis et suburbanis multis territoria<sup>2</sup> adjacebant. Eodem etiam tempore dominus Boamundus, princeps of Antioch, is ransomed. Antiochenorum princeps, post annos iiior. sue captiōnis, pretio interveniente redemptus, Antiochiam cum gaudio est reversus.

<sup>1</sup> *civibus*] On an erasure.

| <sup>2</sup> *territoria*] *territoria*, MS.

*Achon,<sup>1</sup> quæ et Tholomaïda, regi redditur Baldewino. A.D. 1104.*

Rog. Wend. Eodem quoque anno rex Jerusalem Baldewinus Ptho- Siege and  
ii. 178. lomaidam, civitatem maritimam provinciæ Fenicis, obsi- capture of  
dione vallavit. Hæc autem urbs portum habens infra Acre by  
moenia et extra, tranquillam præbere potest navigan- Baldwin.  
tibus receptionem ac stationem. Hæc etiam vulga-  
riter Achon appellatur, Terræ Sanctæ porta, et portus  
patens et famosus. Hanc gemini fratres fundasse  
Ptholomæus et Achon perhibentur; quam inter se  
dividentes, et muris eam per girum vallantes, a Ptho-  
lomæo Ptholomaïdam, et ab Achone Achon sive Acha-  
ron vocabulum indiderunt. Obsessa igitur civitate per  
Rog. Wend. terram a rege suisque principibus, et a classe Januensi  
ii. 179. navibusque rostratis, quas galeias appellant, per mare, introitum civibus et exitum auferebant. Machinis  
igitur circumpositis, crebris assaultibus, tam a rege per  
terram quam a classe per oram<sup>2</sup> maritimam, multos  
ex civibus variis eventibus peremerunt. Cumque per  
dies xx<sup>ti</sup>. continuos nostri oppugnando, illique injurias  
argumentose satis a se propulsando desudassent, hac  
conditione regi civitatem tradiderunt, ut, qui egredi  
vellent, cum uxoribus et liberis et rebus omnibus, Conditions  
the city  
liberum haberent exitum cum conductu ad ulteriora; given up.  
et qui in domibus remanere eligerent, data regi sin-  
gulis annis bonis conditionibus pecunia, sub illius  
protectione manerent securi. Hic primum per mare  
accedentibus ad Terram Sanctam patuit secura tran-  
quillitas, nam civium oblationi regis prudentia obse-  
cundavit.

<sup>1</sup> *Achon*] Originally *Acchon*, but | <sup>2</sup> *oram*] horam, MS.  
the first c expuncted.

A.D. 1104. *Avaritia et invidia nostratum successus<sup>1</sup> enormiter nimis impedivit.*

Siege of  
Haran.

Annoque sub eodem Boamundus et Baldewinus <sup>Rog. Wend.</sup>  
comes, cum Tancredo et Jocelino, eorumque legionibus  
universis, Eufratem transeuntes, Carram civitatem, de  
qua in gestis Abrahæ legitur, obsederunt. Cives  
autem post multa certamina, de subventione, quam  
sæpe vocaverant, diffidentes, nostratibus civitatem  
optulerunt. Sed, stimulante invidia cum ambitione,  
effusa est contentio inter Boamundum et Baldeuuinum,  
quis eorum urbem optineret in suam; et differentes  
usque mane urbem oblatam occupare, donec de illa  
quæstione frivola plenius discuteretur, antequam dies  
illucesceret tanta hostium affuit multitudo, ut nostri  
etiam de vita desperarent. Patriarchæ autem, qui  
affuerunt nostratum, qui demulcendo animos dissiden-  
tium pacificasse desudaverant, prævalente humani-  
generis inimico, minime valuerant hiatibus corum satis-  
facere. Aurora igitur rutilante, in primo conflictu,

Defeat of  
the Chris-  
tians.

Deo adversante et merito, nostri ignominiose terga  
ostendentes, castra cum sarcinis deserentes universis,  
fuga salutem quærebant, quam tamen non poterant  
invenire. Infelici igitur in semetipsis deficientes, dis-

Baldwin,  
count of  
Edessa,  
taken  
prisoner.

sipati sunt et confusi, plurimis trucidatis. Capti sunt. <sup>R. Wend.</sup>  
ibi comes Edessanus<sup>2</sup> Baldewinus et consanguineus  
ejus Jocelinus, fugientibus turpiter Boamundo et Tan-  
credo, cum duobus patriarchis, donec ad urbem Edes-

Edessa is  
ruled by  
Tancred, in  
the place  
of Bald-  
win.

sam illæsis<sup>3</sup> corporibus sed non cordibus pervenissent.  
Tunc vero tradita est civitas Edessana et provincia  
tota sub custodia domini Tancredi, donec Baldeuuinus  
a carcere solveretur.

ii. 179.

fol. 39 b.

ii. 180.

<sup>1</sup> *successus*] *successus*, MS.

<sup>2</sup> *Edessanus*] At first written *Edissanus*.

<sup>3</sup> *illæsis*] Interlined.

*Rex Anglorum Henricus guerram movet contra  
fratrem suum R[obertum].*

Rog. Wend.  
ii. 180. Anno Domini M<sup>o</sup>.C<sup>o</sup>.V<sup>o</sup>. rex Anglorum Henricus A.D. 1105. transfretavit in Normanniam, contra fratrem suum ducem certaturus. Conquisivit igitur Cadomum et Baiocum, consulis auxilio Andegavensis, cum aliis castellis multis. Et omnes fere sese regi principes Normanniae cum populo subdiderunt, juxta illud poetum,  
“Mobile versatur semper cum principe vulgus.”<sup>1</sup>

*Probatio sanctitatis regine Matildis.*

Rog. Wend.  
ii. 180. Eodemque tempore David, frater reginae Anglorum Matildis, venit in Angliam, ut dilectam sororem suam fraterna ductus dilectione visitaret. Qui cum nocte quadam in thalamum ejus supervenisset, domum invicit leprosis plenam. Regina vero, dominarum elegantissima, in medio stans, deposito pallio suo, lintheo se præcinctit, et, aqua pelvi imposita, cœpit lavare pedes singulorum et lintheo extergere, genibus devote flexis, et utrisque manibus strictos<sup>2</sup> ore et oculis amicabiliter etiam deformes deosculari. Cui frater admirans, ait, “Quid est quod agis, domina ac soror mea nobilissima? Certe, si rex sciret ista, nunquam dignaretur os tuum leprosorum pedum sanie pollutum regiis labiis deosculari.” At illa subridens respondit, “Pedes regis æterni quis nescit labiis regis morituri esse præferandas? In paupere Illi ministro, qui ait, ‘Quod uni ex meis minimis fecisti, mihi profecto contulisti.’<sup>3</sup> Exemplo mei, frater carissime,<sup>4</sup> disce similia operari, ut mecum præmia recipere merearis.” Quod cum frater corrugans nares præcise renuisset, ipsa devotius usque ad consummationem cœptis insistebat.

<sup>1</sup> Founded on Ovid. Trist. ix. 13.

<sup>2</sup> *strictos*] *constrictos*, W. A. C. D.

<sup>3</sup> Matth. xxv. 40.

<sup>4</sup> *carissime*] *karissime*, MS.

A.D. 1105.

*Redit<sup>1</sup> rex in Angliam.*

The king returns to England. Eodemque anno rex Henricus, dispositis in Normannia Rog.Wend. rebus necessariis, ad Angliam post multa fratri illata <sup>ii. 181.</sup> dampna remeando transfretavit, ut, multiplicatis viribus et thesauris coacervatis, fortior ac formidabilior resur- geret<sup>2</sup> in rebelles.

*Rex Henricus fratrem suum Robertum, et Willelmum, comitem Moretonii,<sup>3</sup> et multos alios<sup>4</sup> sub ficta pace suscepit.*

A.D. 1106. Anno Domini M<sup>o</sup>.C<sup>o</sup>.VI<sup>o</sup>. dux Normannorum sentiens Rog.Wend. Interview of duke Robert with his brother. se minime posse contendere a pari contra regem fratrem <sup>ii. 181.</sup> suum,<sup>5</sup> venit sub pace petita in Angliam in secreto, cum humilitate. Et apud Norhamtonam accedens ad regem, reverenter, ut apparuit, receptus est, sed non, ut decuit, vultu tam sereno et more fraterno, aut corde sincero. Dux itaque primo amicabiliter postulavit, ut sibi ablata necnon et retenta fraterna restitueret caritate, ipsumque regem in sermonis calculo, levitatis et infidelitatis graviter redarguit; unde regem non mediocriter exasperavit. Et sic ab invicem cum minaci murmure recesserunt, nec consensit Deus<sup>6</sup> corum concordiae. Dux igitur iratus valde in Normanniam, rege averso ac dissimulante, remeavit. Rex siquidem sentiens conscientiam suam, ut optentu regni et aliis multis<sup>7</sup> primogenito fratri suo illatis injuriis, cauteriatam, insurgentium impetus et præcipue Anglorum cœpit veherenter formidare,<sup>8</sup> præsertim cum leges optimas et consuetudines, quas per cartam suam et promissiones certissimas pollicitus erat, tepide observasset, iunno po-

<sup>1</sup> *Redit*] Redit, MS.<sup>2</sup> *resurgeret*] At first written *resurget*.<sup>3</sup> *Meretonii*, MS.<sup>4</sup> *alios*] Written at first *alios cepit*,but *cepit* underscored to be omitted.<sup>5</sup> *suum*] Added in marg.<sup>6</sup> *Deus*] Added in marg.<sup>7</sup> *multis*] On an erasure.<sup>8</sup> *formidare*] Added in marg.

. tius enormiter infirmasset.<sup>1</sup> Plus igitur homines timens, A.D. 1106.  
. scilicet<sup>2</sup> magnates Angliæ, quam Deum,<sup>3</sup> Londoniis ob Henry ad-  
. hoc convocatos talibus sermocinationibus super favum <sup>addresses his nobles.</sup>  
. et oleum mellitis et mollitis circumvenit, “ Amici et  
. fideles mei indigenæ ac naturales, nostis, veraci fama  
. referente, qualiter frater meus R[obertus], Normannorum  
. dux, per Deum vocatus fuerat ad regnum Jerosolimi-  
tanum feliciter gubernandum, et quam frontose illud  
. refutaverit, merito propterea a Deo reprobandus. Nostis *Blanda*  
. etiam in multis aliis superbiam et ferocitatem illius, <sup>pro-ser-</sup>  
. quia vir bellicosus pacisque impatiens est, vosque quasi <sup>mocinatio</sup>  
. contemptibiles, et quos desides vocat et glutones, <sup>et promissio</sup>  
*Anglis*  
. culcare desiderat. Ego vero rex humilis et pacificus  
. vos in pace et antiquis libertatibus vestris, prout cre-  
. brius jurando promisi, gestio confovere; et siquid omis-  
. sum est, supplebo<sup>4</sup> libentius. Vos igitur Angli, si con-  
. stanter stetis tecum, neque suorum Normannorum neque  
fol. 40 a. . Francorum, quibus a multo tempore confederatus est,  
. minas ampulosas aliqualiter<sup>5</sup> pertimesco. Iterato igitur  
. sancio<sup>6</sup> omnes leges sancti Edwardi ubique in regno  
. meo inviolabiliter observari.” Talibus igitur promissis,  
. quæ tamen in fine impudenter violavit, omnium nobi-  
. lium Angliæ, in quibus robur regni credebat consistere,  
. sibi enervando inclinavit, ut pro eo<sup>7</sup> contra quemlibet  
. usque ad capitis expositionem infatigabiliter dimicarent.

*Insequitur rex H[enricus] I. fratrem suum R[obertum]  
in Normanniam.*

R.Wend. . Rex igitur, pacificato populo et bene sibi confœderato, The king  
ii. 181. . trahens secum infinitum populum, insecutus est fratrem <sup>goes to</sup> Normandy,  
. suum Robertum ultra mare hostiliter usque Tenher- and defeats

<sup>1</sup> *infirmasset*] infirmasset, MS.

<sup>2</sup> *timens scilicet*] Partly on an erasure.

<sup>3</sup> *quam Deum*] Added in marg.

<sup>4</sup> *supplebo*] supplebo, MS.

<sup>5</sup> *aliqualiter*] On an erasure.

<sup>6</sup> *sancio*] sancio, MS.

<sup>7</sup> *eo*] Interlined.

A.D. 106. chenbrai. Habuit autem rex secum omne robur Angliae,  
 Robert at Andegaviæ et Britanniæ, et multos de ducatu Nor-  
 Tenehe- manniæ nobiles et potentes, ut fratrem suum potentius  
 brai. debellaret. Fautores autem ducis, cum adventum regis.  
 cognovissent,<sup>1</sup> in quoddam castellum munitissimum sese .  
 receperunt. Duce vero declinante, milites ipsius obsi-  
 dionem imperterriti<sup>2</sup> expectarunt, sese viriliter.  
 defendantes. Venit itaque dux R[obertus], et cum eo  
 Robertus de Beleasco et consul Moretonii<sup>3</sup> et alii  
 fautores ejus, ut obsidionem solverent inchoatam ; et,  
 buccinis perstrepentibus, cum paucis multos audacter  
 invasit. Erat enim expertus in Jerosolimitanis con-  
 gressionibus, unde regales aggressus acies, fortiter eas  
 repulit<sup>4</sup> et horrende. Willelmus nihilominus, comes  
 Moretonii,<sup>5</sup> aciem Anglorum de loco in locum perturbans  
 promovit, et fere in fugam compulit ignominiosam.  
 Sed rex Henricus obviam veniens fugitivis, cum suis .  
 quas sibi reservavit Anglorum, tam peditibus quam .  
 equestribus aciebus, omnes ad pugnam<sup>6</sup> animavit et .  
 exemplo solidavit. Dux interim adversantium sanguine .  
 gladium choruscantem impiger inebriavit. Tandem .  
 acies equestris Britonum in aciem ducis ex adverso Rog. Wend.  
 irruens, eam potenter dissipavit; unde mole magnitu-  
 dinis oppressa, gens ducis dissoluta est et contrita.  
 Ceciderunt autem utrobique in illo conflictu cruentis-  
 simo multi nobiles et præclari, nec est visum tam damp-  
 nosum bellum nostris temporibus in partibus Cisalpinis.  
 Bravery of In hoc vero martio opere potissimum laudandus fuit ex  
 William de parte regis Willelmus de Albeneto, qui quasi leo vul-  
 Albeni. neratus gladio cruentato discurrens, belli negotium  
 Robert and consummavit. Capti sunt itaque ibidem dux Norman-  
 the count norum Robertus fortissimus, et consul Moretonii Willel-  
 of Mortain taken pri- mus ; Robertus vero de Beleasco fuga sibi consuluit, cum  
 soners.

<sup>1</sup> cognovissent] congnovissent, MS.<sup>2</sup> imperterriti] imperteriti, MS.<sup>3</sup> Morctonii] Meretonii, MS.<sup>4</sup> repulit] reppulit, MS.<sup>5</sup> Moretonii] Merotonii, MS.<sup>6</sup> pugnam] pungnam, MS.

**Bellum  
eruentis-  
simum in-  
ter fratres  
Henricum  
regem et  
R[ober-  
tum].**

**Bravery of  
William de  
Albeni.**

**Robert and  
the count  
of Mortain  
taken pri-  
soners.**

ii. 182.

complices captos respexit et compedibus mancipandos, A.D. 1106.  
. viii<sup>o</sup>. kalendas Maii.<sup>1</sup>

24 April.

*Reprobatio.*

Rog.Wend. In hoc vero casu reddidit Deus vicem Roberto, quem Reproof of  
ii. 182. cum in actibus Jerosolimitanis reddidisset gloriosum, duke Ro-  
bert.  
tum<sup>2</sup> oblatum sibi respuit regnum Jerusalem contra  
infideles defendendum, magis eligens quieti, immo potius  
desidiae, indulgere, quam Regi regum in Terra Sancta  
strenue militare.

*Signum terribile. Signum terribilius.*

Rog.Wend. In hujus rei signum eodem anno cometa apparuerat, Prognos-  
ii. 182. a sole distans quasi cubito uno, ab hora tertia usque ad ties seen  
in the  
horam nonam, radium ex se longum emitens. Visae heavens.  
sunt etiam in Cœna Domini lunæ binæ et plenæ, una  
in oriente, et altera in occidente.

*Dictum patris prænósticum.<sup>3</sup>*

Sieque impletum est, quod rex Willelmus I. Henrico Propheti-  
filio suo moriens dixit. Nam cum Roberto Norman- cal speech  
niam et Willelmo II. Angliam legaverat, cum lacrimis I. to his  
patri dixit Henricus, "Et mihi, pater, quid tribuis?" son Henry.  
Cui pater, "Quinque milia libras argenti, absque supel-  
lectili et jocalibus pretiosis, tibi do, fili mi, cum paterna  
benedictione, quam tamen Roberto fratri tuo, licet  
primogenito, denegavi,<sup>4</sup> qui quandoque regi Francorum  
contra me confœderatus est." Ad hæc Henricus, "Quid

<sup>1</sup> This date is an addition by Matthew Paris, and is erroneous, since all the older authorities agree that the battle was fought on the vigil of St. Michael, 28th September.

See Sax. Chron., p. 368; Will. Malm. i. 625.

<sup>2</sup> *tum]* Added in marg.

<sup>3</sup> *prænósticum]* So also in p. 164.

<sup>4</sup> *denegavi]* Added on to the text.

A.D. 1106. faciam de thesauro, si locum habitationis, quo illum exponam, non habuero?" Cui pater, "Æquanimis esto, fili, et confortare in Domino; pacifice sustine, ut fratres tui majores te præcedant. Tu autem alter Jacob, benedictione mea munitus, tempore opportuno<sup>1</sup> honorem totum quem adquisivi possidebis feliciter, et fratres tuos, immo omnes antecessores patres tuos, gloria, divitiis et honore superabis."

*Ordo Saresbiriensis.*

Order of Hoc quoque anno canonicorum Saresbiriensium Ordo<sup>2</sup>.  
cauons founded at constitutus est.  
Salisbury.

*Paci et securitati rex datus, addidit fratrem suum  
carceri artiori.<sup>3</sup>*

Henry returns to England, and commits duke Robert to prison.

Rex autem Henricus victoria, ut prælibatum est, potitus, laetus in Angliam remeavit, et fratrem suum. Robertum omni spoliatum honore in castro de Devisis,<sup>4</sup> deputata ei tutissima custodia, sub libero carcere jussit. reservari. Cujus custodiae xii. viros probatissimos deputavit, ut sex quiescentibus, alii sex circa eum diligenter excubarent. Ipse tamen dux, sanguine regio ebulliente, in verba prorupit ampulosa et comminacia,<sup>5</sup> quamvis careci mancipatus. Alios autem captivos misit alibi custodiendos.

*Pacificatur regi Anselmus.*

A.D. 1107. Anno Domini M<sup>o</sup>.C<sup>o</sup>.VII<sup>o</sup>, cum rex Henricus, deletis Cf. Rog.  
Archbi- vel subactis hostibus, in<sup>6</sup> Angliam venerat, quieti . Wend.  
shop An- ii. 183.

<sup>1</sup> *opportuno*] oportuno, MS.

<sup>2</sup> *Ordo*] On an erasure.

<sup>3</sup> *carceri artiori*] Omitted in F., and these words seem rather to apply to the following year. See ed. Wats., p. 63.

<sup>1</sup> *Devisis*] Written at first *Derisi*.

<sup>5</sup> *communia*] At first written  
*minacia.*

<sup>6</sup> in] cum in, MS.

. indulserat<sup>1</sup> ac lætitiae. Duxerat autem secum archi- A.D. 1107.  
 . episcopum Anselmum, quem apud Beccum invenerat, selm is  
 . ut post victoriam cum rege pacificatus plenius gratu- reconciled  
 . laretur; qui, serenato rege, pristinam recepit cum jac- to the  
 . turarum restitutionibus dignitatem. Rex autem com- king.  
 . motus valde contra Willelmum, Moretonii consulem, William,  
 . sancivit<sup>2</sup> ipsum, sicut et fratrem suum R[obertum] et count of  
 fol. 40 b. . quosdam alios nobiles, perpetuis carceribus Mortain,  
 . pañdos. Floruit igitur rex Henricus in omnipoten- and others  
 . tatu<sup>3</sup> regni sui, fortuna sibi in omnibus arridente. are impris-  
 Dedit autem Deus, rex<sup>4</sup> regum omnipotens, regi Hen- soned.  
 rico I. tria munera, sapientiam, victoriam, et divitias, The king proves  
 quibus prosperans omnes antecessores suos jam, juxta ungrateful  
 paternum vaticinium, superavit. Sed in hiis omnibus to God.  
 factus est Deo ingratissimus, et suis fidelibus<sup>5</sup> promis-  
 sionis suæ transgressor manifestus, dilationes quærens  
 cum cavillationibus; unde nobiles regni, quos delude-  
 bat, Deo conquesti sunt Domino ultionum. Subjugatis  
 enim omnibus inimicis, securus erat, nec aliquem, ut  
 primitus, formidabat, praeter papam, et hoc non prop-  
 ter spiritualem sed temporalem auctoritatem et potes-  
 tatem.

*Libertas ecclesiae restituitur.*

Rog. Wend. Eodem quoque anno factus est conventus episcopo- Council  
 ii. 183. rum et abbatum pariter et magnatum Londoniis, in held at  
 palatio regis, præsidente archiepiscopo Anselmo. Cui, London.  
 juxta promissionem suam factam ei apud Beccum,<sup>6</sup>  
 annuit rex Henricus et statuit,<sup>7</sup> ut ab eo tempore in Conces-  
 reliquum, nunquam per donationem baculi pastoralis sions made  
 vel anuli quisquam de episcopatu vel abbatia per relative to  
 investitures.

<sup>1</sup> *indulserat*] We ought, perhaps, to read *indulsit*.

<sup>5</sup> *fidelibus*] The last syllable is on an erasure.

<sup>2</sup> *sancivit*] *sanxcivit*, MS.

<sup>6</sup> *Beccum*] The last letter is on an erasure.

<sup>3</sup> *omnipotentatu*] At first written *omnipotentu*.

<sup>7</sup> A hand of the 15th century has written in the margin, "Nota, de confirmatione libertatum ecclesiæ."

<sup>4</sup> *rex*] Interlined.

A.D. 1107. regem vel quamlibet laicam manum investiretur in Anglia ; concedente archiepiscopo, ut nullus ad prælationem electus, pro homagio, quod regi faceret, consecratione suscepti honoris privaretur.

*Consecrantur quidam episcopi.*

Conseera-  
tion of  
several  
bishops.  
11 Aug.

Annoque sub eodem consecrati sunt episcopi, Willel- Rog.Wend.  
mus Wintoniensis, Rogerus Saresbiriensis, Reinelmus ii. 183.  
Herefordensis, Willelmus Exoniensis, et Urbanus Cla-  
morganensis, ab Anselmo, Cantuariensi archiepiscopo,  
apud Doroberniam, die Dominica, iii<sup>o</sup>. idus Augusti.

*Obiit M[auricius] episcopus, fundator ecclesiae Sancti  
Pauli.*

Death of  
Maurice,  
bishop of  
London.  
Founda-  
tion of  
Christ-  
church at  
London.

Obiit autem eodem tempore Mauricius, episcopus Rog.Wend.  
Londoniensis, ecclesiae Sancti Pauli fundator magnifi- ii. 184.  
cus. Normannus quoque prior fundavit ecclesiam .  
Christi, Sanctæ scilicet Trinitatis,<sup>1</sup> Londoniis, ibique .  
constituit canonicos regulares. .

Death of  
Edgar,  
king of  
Scots,  
Alexander  
succedes.

*Edgarus, rex Scotorum obiit, succedit Alexander.<sup>2</sup>*

Eodemque anno obiit rex Scotorum Edgarus, cui Rog.Wend.  
successit frater ejus Alexander. ii. 184.

A.D. 1108. *Girardo Eboracensi successit Thomas.*

Death of  
Girard,  
archbishop  
of York.  
Thomas,  
the king's

Anno Domini M<sup>o</sup>.C<sup>o</sup>.VIII<sup>o</sup>., defuncto Girardo, Eboracensi archiepiscopo, Thomas, regis capellanus, ad illius censi ecclesiæ eligitur præsulatum ; sed continuo, facta elec- Rog.Wend.  
tione, Anselmus, Cantuariensis archiepiscopus, inter- ii. 184.

<sup>1</sup> *Sanctæ . . . Trinitatis]* Added in marg., but inserted in the text of F.

in the text, but is written (as in some other instances) on the edge of the lower margin, as a memorandum for the rubrie.

<sup>2</sup> This heading has been omitted

dixit ei, ne curam pastoralem in aliquo exerceceret,<sup>1</sup> A.D. 1108. donec sibi et ecclesiæ Cantuariensi subjectionem faceret chaplain, elected, but et obedientiam canonicam, quam sibi fecerant ejus is refused prædecessores, Thomas et Girardus, ex consuetudine consecra- debita et antiqua. “Quod si hoc,” inquit, “facere tion. nolueris, omnibus Britanniæ episcopis sub anathemate interdicimus, ne ullus eorum tibi manus ad promotionem imponat. Nec, si ab exteris promotus fueris, pro episcopo te suscipiant aliqui,<sup>2</sup> vel pro episcopo tibi communicando te habeant.”

*Consecratur R[icardus] in Londoniensem episcopum.*

Consecration of Richard de Beumais, bishop of London.

Rog.Wend. Eodemque anno Ricardus de Beumais, Londoniensis  
ii. 184. electus, ab Anselmo consecratur apud Pagaham.

*Obiit rex Francorum.<sup>3</sup>*

Death of Philip, k. of France ; Louis[VI.] succeeds.

Rog.Wend. Eodemque tempore regi Francorum Philippo suc-  
ii. 184. cessit Lodouicuſ.

*De morte Anselmi, Cantuariensis archiepiscopi.<sup>4</sup>*

Rog.Wend. Anno Domini M<sup>o</sup>.C<sup>o</sup>.IX<sup>o</sup>. Anselmus, Cantuariensis A.D. 1109.  
ii. 184. archiepiscopus, et Christi philosophus doctorque ex- Death of imius, in Quadragesima diem clausit extremum, post Anselm, multa quæ sustinuit pro ecclesiæ libertate certamina; archbishop of Canterbury. cuius vitam et mortem laudabilem crebra miracula protestantur.

<sup>1</sup> *exerceceret*] excerceceret, MS.

<sup>2</sup> *aliqui*] Added on to the text.

<sup>3</sup> In the margin is drawn Philip's shield of arms, reversed, viz., azure

semée of fleurs-de-lis, or, 4, 3, 3, 2, 1, with a crown beneath, also reversed.

<sup>4</sup> In the margin is drawn a mitre reversed.

A.D. 1109. *Postulatur ab imperatore H[enrico] Matildis, filia regis Henrici.*

Marriage of the king's daughter Matilda to the emperor. Eodemque anno missi sunt nuncii sollempnes ab Rog. Wend. ii. 185. Romanorum imperatore Henrico in Angliam, filiam regis Matildem in domini sui conjugium postulantes. Tenuit itaque rex apud Westmonasterium in Pentecoste curiam suam, qua nunquam tenuerat splendidiorem; et sacramenta de conjugio filiae suae ab imperatoris legatis petiit et accepit. Data est igitur filia regis imperatori sicut decuit, ut breviter dicatur; et rex cepit ab unaquaque lida terræ totius Angliae iii. solidos, sicut mos erat regibus Anglorum.

Hidage taken on that account. *Ihidage*

*Consecratur Thomas in archiepiscopum Eboracensem.*

Conseeration of Thomas, archbishop of York. Eodem anno convenerunt, rege jubente, Londoniis, in ecclesia Sancti Pauli, Ricardus Londoniensis, Willemus Wintoniensis, Radulfus Rofensis, Herbertus Norwicensis, Radulfus Cicestrensis, Ranulphus Dunelmensis, et Herveus Bangornensis episcopi, v<sup>o</sup>. kalendas Julii, die Dominica, ad consecrationem Thomæ, Eboracensis electi. Ubi, ecclesiæ Cantuariensi et episcopis ejus catholice ordinatis facta canonica obedientia, consecratus est a Ricardo, Londoniensi episcopo.

27 June.

*Elyensis abbatia in episcopalem sedem transfertur.*

Foundation of the see of Ely, and Hervey appointed bishop. Anno quoque sub eodem rex Henricus Helyensem Rog. Wend. ii. 185. abbatiam ad sedem transtulit episcopalem, et Herveum, quandoque Bangornensem,<sup>1</sup> ibidem episcopum fecit ordinari. Nam, defuncto Ricardo, qui ultimus abbas fuit in insula, et comitatu de Cantebrugge episcopo Rog. Wend. ii. 186. Lincolniensi subtracto, huic novo pontifici lege dio- cesana subjicitur<sup>2</sup> comitatus.

---

<sup>1</sup> quandoque Bangornensem] Added in marg., but is in text of F. | <sup>2</sup> subjicitur] subicitur, MS.

*Boamundus terram Alexii, imperatoris Constantino- A.D. 1109.  
politani, depopulatur.*

Rog.Wend. Circa hos denique dies Boamundus, Antiochenorum Boamund  
ii. 186. princeps, memor injuriarum quas Alexius imperator con- leads a  
stanter, vir maliciosus et nequam, peregrinis transme- hostile  
antibus sine intermissione irrogaverat, communem volens force into  
ulcisci querimoniam, equitum v. milia et peditum xl<sup>a</sup>. Epirus.  
milia virorum fortium congregavit;<sup>1</sup> et terram dicti  
imperatoris hostiliter ingressus, universas pæne mariti-  
mas urbes in direptionem dedit, omnemque Epyrum  
depopulatus est, tam Primam quam Secundam. Et Siege of  
tandem Durachium obsidens, Epyri Primæ metropolim,  
Durazzo.  
regionem undique incendiis consumpsit et rapinis.  
Quod audiens imperator, cum ingenti militia in suc-  
cursum venit; sed, intervenientibus amicis, imperator Treaty  
foedus iniit cum eo, interpositis juramentis, quod ultra with the  
Christi fidelibus in orientem per ditionem suam transire emperor  
volentibus sine fraude consilium ad iter peragendum Alexius.  
. et auxilium ministraret; formidolosus enim extitit ipse  
. Alexius, ut quem conscientia propria sauciavit. Et sic,  
födore confirmato, idem Boamundus in Apuliam de-  
scendit, familiaribus negotiis evocatus. Sequentे vero  
æstate, dum Antiochiam redire disposeret cum copiis  
militaribus undique collectis, valida ægritudine corre- ¶ Moritur  
tus, in fata concessit;<sup>2</sup> relicto filio suo nomine Boamundo, Boamun-  
dus.  
Rog.Wend. quem ex Constantia genuerat, filia regis Francorum  
ii. 187. Philippi, nuper defuncti. Incepit vero tunc regnare, Louis VI.  
pacifata tota Francia, vir illustris, ut prætactum est,<sup>3</sup> reigns in  
Lodowicus, qui xx<sup>ti</sup>.viii<sup>ij</sup><sup>o</sup>. annis regnavit. France.

<sup>1</sup> *congregavit*] congregavit, MS. | <sup>3</sup> *est*] Interlined.

<sup>2</sup> He died in February 1111. See  
“L’Art de Vérifier les Dates,” i. 441.

A.D. 1109.

*Tripolis subjugatur.*

Baldwin, count of Edessa, and Jocelin escape from the Turks. Per idem tempus Baldeuuinus, comes Edessanus, et Rog. Wend. ii. 187. Jocelinus consanguineus ejus, datis pro redemptione sua obsidibus, a Turcorum vinculis liberantur; et post dies paucos, iidem obsides, custodibus interfectis, ad propria libere sunt reversi. Eodemque anno Bertran-nus, comes Tholosanus, comitis Reimundi filius, apud urbem Tripolitanam cum classe Januensium applicans, Biblum, urbem maritimam Fœnicis regionis, obsedit et cepit, et Christianæ restituit unitati. Deinde post dies paucos, rex Jerusalem Baldewinus, auxilio ejusdem comitis et classis prædictæ, Tripolim subjugavit, et eam comiti Bertranno donavit.

Capture of Byblus.

Tripoli is subdued.

*Robertus, quandoque dux Normannorum, propter suam<sup>1</sup> contumaciam pejus tractatur, tandem ex- cœcatur.*

Robert, duke of Normandy, is released from prison.

Tempore quoque sub eodem,<sup>2</sup> multiplicatis interces- soribus viris gravibus, qui dicebant probrosum esse per totum mundum regi et regno Angliæ,<sup>3</sup> ut frater fratrem teneret incarcерatum, liberatus est a carcere Robertus, quandoque dux Normannorum, ita tamen ut Angliam . perpetuo abjuraret et Normanniam; et concessæ sunt ei induciæ xl<sup>a</sup>. dierum et unius ascensus maris et re- fluxus. Quæ lex omnibus Angliam abjurantibus usque in hodiernum diem custoditur. Robertus autem solu- tus, immemor illius salubris consilii, "Humiliamini sub manu potentioris,"<sup>4</sup> elatus est in superbiam, et in minas . resolutus, abusus est misericordia vix illi impetrata..

<sup>1</sup> suam] Repeated after *contuma- ciam*, but struck out by a recent hand.

<sup>2</sup> In A. C. D. and Edd. this event is placed under 1107, and related very briefly.

<sup>3</sup> Angliæ] Repeated, but ex- punceted.

<sup>4</sup> From 1 Ep. Pet. v. 6, which reads *potenti* with A. C. D.

. Infra igitur eosdem xl<sup>a</sup>. dies memoratos, comitem Ces- A.D. 1109.  
. triæ et alios suæ factionis complices adiit clandestinus,<sup>1</sup> He at-  
. quasi valedicturus, cujus occulta intentio fuit, ut, in <sup>tempts to</sup> raise a  
. regno seditione mota, cum exercitu collecto regem in- <sup>rebellion.</sup>  
. festaret, et tandem a regni fastigio præcipitaret. Quod  
. cum regi nunciaretur, vocavit ipsum ad colloquium.  
. Qui, si sponte nollet venire, cogeretur. Cum autem <sup>Capitur</sup> dux Nor-  
. vidisset Robertus regios nuncios in manu valida veni- <sup>mannerum</sup>  
. entes, timuit sibi, ne propositum regi suum panderetur, <sup>Robertus,</sup>  
. et palefridi quem insidebat non parcens lateribus, ilico <sup>fugiens a</sup> facie fra-  
. fugit; quem raptim nuncii insequebantur, donec, im- <sup>tris regis.</sup>  
. merso Roberti palefrido in quodam luto bituminoso, ipse  
. R[obertus] est<sup>2</sup> captus, et regi præsentatus. Cum autem  
. rex de Roberti proposito et fuga plenius certificaretur,  
. jussit eum iterato irremediabiliter et sine spe redemp- Is again  
. tionis perpetuo carceri mancipari, et, cum nec humilia- <sup>impri-</sup>  
. retur, oculorum luce privari. Verumtamen jussit eum <sup>sioned, and</sup> deprived of  
. omnibus diebus vitae suæ epulis refici cotidie deliciosis,  
. et vestibus regalibus, quas robas regis dicimus, redi-  
. miri, et sex militum custodia et famulatu diligent  
. horis omnibus excubari.

. Rex Henricus quosdam inimicos suos exilio  
. dampnavit.<sup>3</sup>

. Anno Domini M<sup>o</sup>.C<sup>o</sup>X<sup>o</sup>. rex Anglorum Henricus grave in A.D. 1110.  
. contra comitem<sup>4</sup> Cestriæ movit quæstionem, arguens The earl of  
. ipsum de crimine læsæ majestatis; imponens<sup>5</sup> ei, quod Chester  
. regnum perturbare proposuit, et, rege deposito, Rober- accused of  
. tum, quandoque Normannorum ducem, subrogare. Hæc  
. autem omnia, comite constanter inficiante et se volente  
. per duellum purgare, licet, ut inquit, Robertus ad hæc  
. eum sæpe instigasset, rex aliquantulum mitigatus est,

<sup>1</sup> *clandestinus*] clamdestinus, MS.

<sup>2</sup> *est*] Added on to the text.

<sup>3</sup> *dampnavit*] dapnavit, MS.

<sup>4</sup> *comitem*] Added in marg.

<sup>5</sup> *imponens*] Written at first *impo-*  
*nensque*, but *que* erased.

A.D. 1110. et sic, intermeantibus amicis, in gratiam regis comes.  
 Philip de Brause and others are disinherited. sed vix est receptus. Rex autem exheredavit Philippum de Brausia, Willelmum Malet, et Willelmum [Binard],<sup>1</sup> et alios proditores suos et quosdam suspectos; Elyam quoque, Cenomanniæ comitem, qui comitatum illum de rege tenebat, vita privavit. Quod audiens comes Andegavensis Gaufridus, suscepit filiam ejusdem Elyæ cum comitatu illo, et tenuit illud contra regem Henricum.

Elyas, count of Maine, put to death.

Rog. Wend. ii. 187.

*Mirabile de luna.*

Marvellous appearance of the moon. Anno quoque sub eodem luna facta est velut extincta et luminis expers.

*De translatione Beati Oswini, regis et martiris.*

Translation of S. Oswin's relics to Tyne-mouth. Eodem quoque anno Ricardus, ecclesiæ Sancti Albani abbas venerabilis, pretiosas beatissimi regis et martiris Oswini reliquias, cum magno cleri et populi tripudio, in novam Dei Genitricis Mariæ transtulit basilicam apud Thinemuam, ab antiquo ejusdem Dei Genitricis oratorio, in quo corpus ejusdem sanctissimi regis et martiris fuerat prius inventum, et in novo feretro collocatum. Facta est autem hæc translatio in die passionis ejusdem<sup>2</sup> martiris, x<sup>o</sup>. kalendas Septembbris.<sup>3</sup>

Rog. Wend. ii. 187.

Rog. Wend. ii. 188.

*De Sancto Godrico, heremiticam vitam inchoante.*

St. Godric, the hermit. Eodem etiam anno sanctus Godricus apud Finchale, non procul a Dunelmo, vitam heremiticam inchoavit. Quam per annos Ix. laudabiliter continuans, carne tandem solutus, cœli concendit palatium, æternis deliciis fol. 41 b. cum sanctis ibidein fruiturus.

<sup>1</sup> *Binard*] Supplied from W. A. C. D.

<sup>2</sup> *ejusdem*] In the text *ejus*, but corr. in marg.

<sup>3</sup> *Septembbris*] After this word is added, in A. C. D., "secundum rotulum Cancellarii."

*Cometa.*

A.D. 1110.

Rog.Wend. Hoc etiam anno cometa apparuit more insolito, nam Unusual  
ii. 188. cum ab oriente surgens in firmamentum ascendisset, appearance of a comet.  
non progredi sed regredi videbatur.

*Berithum adquiritur.*

Rog.Wend. Eodem vero tempore rex Jerusalem Baldewinus Be- Capture of  
ii. 188. ritum, civitatem Foenicis<sup>1</sup> regionis maritimam, sibi Beirut by king Bald-  
. potenter subjugavit, et, ibidem constituto episcopo, eam win.  
Christianæ restituit unitati. Est autem sita inter  
. Biblum et Sydonem civitates. Ibique legitur mansisse  
. maximus medicorum naturæ indagator Ypocras, et  
. pineti silvam vicinam ad emendandum aera plantasse.

*Rex Henricus terram comitis Andegavensis depopu-  
latur.*

Rog.Wend. Anno Domini M<sup>o</sup>.C<sup>o</sup>.XI<sup>o</sup>., rex Anglorum Henricus per- A.D. 1111.  
ii. 188. gens in Normanniam contra comitem Andegavensem, Henry makes war  
qui Cenomanniam eo tenebat invito, werræ leges, quæ on the  
sunt exleges, contra eum ferro simul et incendio con- count of  
stanter exercuit, ipsumque et terram ejus totam gravi Anjou.  
depopulatione contrivit.

*Pestis et mortalitas.*

Tunc quoque temporis mortalitas, tabes et famæ fuit Pestilence  
hominum et animalium, quam forte cometa, quæ præ- and mor-  
apparuit,<sup>2</sup> prænunciavit. tality.

*De sancta Frethesuitha.*

Rog.Wend. Eodem quoque tempore Rogerus, Saresbiriensis epi- Foundation of the  
ii. 188. scopus, dedit locum in Oxonia, in quo corpus beatæ canons of

---

<sup>1</sup> *Fœnicis*] Feñis, MS., but corr. in marg. | <sup>2</sup> *præapparuit*] preaparuit, MS.

A.D. 1111. Frethesuithæ virginis requiescit, cuidam canonico non St. Frides- mine Wimundo; qui multos ibidem canonicos congre-  
with at Oxford. gavit, super eos vices gerens prioris.

*Dissensio orta est inter papam et imperatorem.*

A.D. 1112. Anno Domini M<sup>o</sup>.C<sup>o</sup>.XII<sup>o</sup>.<sup>1</sup> facta est contentio Romæ Rog.Wend.  
Contention inter papam Paschalem et Henricum imperatorem,  
between the pope and emperor, re-  
specting in- vestitures. hac de causa. Imperator uti voluit privilegio anteces-  
sorum suorum habito annis trecentis sub Romanis  
pontificibus sexaginta, qui licite dederant episcopatus  
et abbatias per anulum et baculum pastoralem. E  
contra censebant Romani pontifices, scilicet, nec posse  
debere dari per virgam vel anulum episcopatum, vel  
aliquam institutionem ecclesiasticam a manu recipere  
laicali. Facta est autem pax inter imperatorem Hen-  
ricum et papam Paschalem, ita ut episcopi deinceps et  
abbates institutionem accipient ab imperatore et suis  
successoribus per virgam et anulum, et post<sup>2</sup> faciant ad  
episcopum, ad quem pertinuerit, canonicam obedientiam,  
et consecrationem accipient assuetam. Acta vero sunt  
haec ante altare apostolorum Petri et Pauli, in oculis  
omnium. Et sic papa corpus Christi absoluto contulit  
imperatori.

*Obiit Tancredus.*

Death of Tancred, and succession of RogerFitz-Richard. Obiit autem Tancredus, vir illustris, de quo multa Rog.Wend.  
præscribuntur in actibus Jerosolimitanis, magnificus  
princeps Antiochiæ et comes Edessanus. Cui successit<sup>3</sup>  
Rogerus filius-Ricardi, vir nobilis, ea conditione, ut

<sup>1</sup> This controversy should be more correctly placed under the year 1111. See Jaffé, "Reg. Pont.", p. 501.

<sup>2</sup> *post*] This reading is confirmed by W. A. C. D. E. F. The Edd. of M. Paris and ed. Wend. read *prius*,

which is erroneous, and contrary to the words of the bull of Paschal II. See Flor. Wig. ii. 63, and Jaffé, p. 502. The error arose from the contraction *p<sup>o</sup>* in the MSS.

<sup>3</sup> *successit*] *sucessit*, MS.

quandocunque Boamundus junior Antiochiam reposceret, eam ipsi sine contradictionis repagulo sponte recognaret.

*De discordia<sup>1</sup> inter archiepiscopos Cantuariensem et Eboracensem.*

Rog. Wend. Anno Domini M.<sup>o</sup>C<sup>o</sup>.XIII<sup>o</sup>. rex Henricus I. dedit archi- A.D. 1113.  
ii. 191. episcopatum Cantuariensem Radulpho, Londonensi<sup>2</sup> Ralph,  
episcopo, et illum per anulum et pastoralem baculum Rochester,  
. investivit.<sup>3</sup> Assumpserat enim cornua audaciae, tam translated  
. contra ecclesiam quam contra regni sui universitatem, bury.  
. Roberto fratre suo et multis aliis, quos timuerat, ad- The king  
. versariis edomitis. Unde sigillum suum primitivum, ut acts openly  
. cartam suam totiens juratam totiensque promissam, against the  
. annullaret, confregit;<sup>4</sup> et quod hactenus sub vulpina church.  
. versutia palliaverat,<sup>5</sup> jam manifeste contradicens, in solio Death of  
. potestatis confirmatus infirmavit.<sup>6</sup> Obiit eodem anno Thomas,  
Thomas, Eboracensis archiepiscopus, cui Thurstanus suc- archbishop  
cessit. Orta est autem inter Radulphum Cantuariensem of York.  
et Thurstanum Eboracensem archiepiscopos magna Dispute  
dissensio, eo quod Eboracensis subjici<sup>7</sup> noluit Cantuariensi between  
de more, sicut ejus antecessores facere solebant. Causa the arch-  
autem coram rege et domino papa ventilata est, sed bishops of  
non fine debito terminata. Canterbury and  
York.

*Subjugata est Wallia regi Henrico.*

Rog. Wend. Eodemque anno rex Henricus exercitum ducens in The Welsh  
ii. 191. Walliam, sibi subdidit, licet cum difficultate, Walenses, are sub-  
. et pro arbitrio regiae voluntatis legibus informavit.<sup>8</sup> dued.

<sup>1</sup> *discordia*] disordia, MS.

<sup>2</sup> *Londonensi*] A mistake for Roffensi, copied from Wendover, and so in A. C. D. F. He is rightly named, and the date given more correctly under the year 1114.

<sup>3</sup> *investivit*] investitivit, MS.

<sup>4</sup> *confregit*] Added in marg.

<sup>5</sup> *palliaverat*] pallaverat, MS.

<sup>6</sup> *infirmitavit*] infirmavit, MS.

<sup>7</sup> *subjici*] subici, MS.

<sup>8</sup> *informavit*] informavit, MS.

A.D. 1113.

*Cometa et terræ-motus.*Comet  
and earth-  
quake.

Anno quoque sub eodem, mense Maio, cometa ingens Rog.Wend.  
apparuit. Et post paululum terræ-motus partem urbis <sup>ii. 191.</sup>  
Mamistræ <sup>1</sup> prostravit, non longe ab Antiochia, cum duo-  
bus castellis, Triphaleg scilicet et Mariscum. Quod in  
triste auspicium evenit, ut testatur poeta Claudianus,  
qui de cometæ dicit apparitione,

“Quæ crine minaci  
Nunciat aut ratibus ventos, aut urbibus hostes.”<sup>2</sup>

*Menduc, Persarum princeps, in finibus Christianorum  
debaechatur<sup>3</sup>*Mendue,  
prince of  
Persia, in-  
vades the  
Christian  
territories.Baldwin  
attacks  
him, but is  
defeated.Ravages of  
the Turks.

Sub ipso quoque anno Menduc, Persarum princeps, Rog.Wend.  
fines Christianorum ingressus, tantam secum traxit <sup>ii. 191.</sup>  
armatorum copiam, ut nequirent sub numero compre-  
hendi. Qui, regionibus multis transcursis, circa pontem,  
sub quo Jordanis effluit, castra composuit. Quod au-  
diens rex Jerusalem Baldeuuinus, Rogerum, principem  
Antiochenum, in suum subsidium evocavit; sed rex  
temerarius, antequam ejus auxilia convenissent, ut sci-  
licet gloriösius triumpharet, impetuose nimis et de sua  
virtute presumptuose confidens, hostibus obviam cum  
paucis processit. Nam in insidiis, quas ei paraverant, Rog.Wend.  
nescienter intrusus, ex hostium multitudine repente <sup>ii. 192.</sup>  
oppressus in fugam compellitur, necessitate compulsus,  
in loco certaminis vexillo derelicto. Arnulphus quoque  
patriarcha et alii principes, qui cum illo erant, relicts  
castris et rebus omnibus, turpiter aufugerunt. Ceci-  
derunt autem ex nostris [equites]<sup>4</sup> xxx<sup>ta</sup>. et pedites fol. 42 a.  
mille quingenti. Turci vero scientes reliquas regni partes  
militia destitutas, missis de suis copiis, cœperunt in

<sup>1</sup> Mamistræ] manifeste, MS. and  
F. Corr. from W. A. C. D.

<sup>2</sup> De raptu Pros. v. 235.

<sup>3</sup> debaechatur] debacatur, MS.  
<sup>4</sup> equites] Supplied from W. A. C.  
D.

variis partibus universam terram<sup>1</sup> perlustrare, cædes A.D. 1113.  
 passim et incendia operari, effringere suburbia, captivare  
 colonos, in villis et oppidis<sup>2</sup> prædas secum et manubia  
 contrahentes. Rex autem Baldeuuinus castellum quod- Escape of  
 dam, quod sui juris erat, fugiens ingressus, tam diu ab Baldwin.  
 hostibus obsidione vallatus est, quoisque eo pacto red-  
 deret illud eis, ut cum suis ad propria liber abire  
 sineretur.

*Rex Henricus fecit jurari fidelitatem filio suo  
 W[illelmo].*

A.D. 1114.

Oath of  
fealty to  
the king's  
son Wil-  
liam.

Rog.Wend. Anno Domini M<sup>o</sup>.C<sup>o</sup>.XIII<sup>o</sup>., rex Anglorum Henricus ii. 192. fecit omnes suæ potestatis magnates fidelitatem jurare Eclipse of  
 filio suo Willelmo, quem pepererat ei Matildis regina sua. The  
 Eodemque anno, mense Decembris, cœlum repente rubens Thames  
 apparuit, ac si arderet, et luna eclipsim passa est. partly dried  
 Quartoque kalendas Aprilis Tamisia exsiccata<sup>3</sup> est, ut up.  
 posset leviter transvadari Londoniis in refluxu. Simi- Ralph, bp. of  
 liter et mare per xii. miliaria in plano litore se retraxit Rochester,  
 per duos dies. Rofensis episcopus Radulfus eligitur<sup>4</sup> 26 April.  
 in archiepiscopum Cantuariensem, vi<sup>o</sup>. kalendas Maii. Tempests  
 Eodem quoque anno diversæ tempestates mortales ex- and comet.  
 terruerunt, menseque Maii cometa apparuit. Annoque Dedication  
 sub eodem dedicata est ecclesia Cantuariæ. church of  
 Canterbury.

*De consecratione Radulfi, Cantuariensis archiepiscopi.*

Rog.Wend. Anno Domini M<sup>o</sup>.C<sup>o</sup>.XV<sup>o</sup>., consecratus est Radulfus, ii. 192. Cantuariensis archiepiscopus, ab Anselmo, domini papæ A.D. 1115. Consecra-  
 legato, v<sup>o</sup>. kalendas Julii, et pallium suscepit ab eodem.<sup>5</sup> tion of pre-  
 lates. 27 June.

<sup>1</sup> *terram*] partem, MS. and F. Corr. from W. A. C. D.

<sup>2</sup> *oppidis*] opidis, MS.

<sup>3</sup> *exsiccata*] exiccata, MS.

<sup>4</sup> *eligitur*] In the margin is added, vel postulatur.

<sup>5</sup> *suscepit ab eodem*] On an erasure.

A.D. 1115. Et eodem die idem archiepiscopus<sup>1</sup> Theophilum<sup>2</sup> Wigornensem et Bernardum Menevensem antistites consecravit.  
 Thurstan, archbishop of York, refuses to make profession to the archbishop of Canterbury.  
 Deinde post dies paucos, cum Turstanus, Eboracensis Rog. Wend. clectus, ab archiepiscopo Cantuariensi moneretur, ut ii. 193. more solito benedictionem ab eo acciperet, et sibi obedientiam<sup>3</sup> ficeret, respondit, se benedictionem ab ipso suscepturum libenter, sed professionem, quam exigebat, se nullo modo facturum. Quod audiens rex Henricus, protestatus est manifeste, quod nisi ecclesiæ Cantuariensi, juxta morem antecessorum suorum, ficeret quod debebat, ipsum Eboracensi episcopatu cum benedictione penitus cariturum. Sicque ab archiepiscopo Cantuariensi interposita appellatione, ne ab alio quam a se consecrationem acciperet, ab invicem recesserunt.

### *De dedicatione ecclesiæ Sancti Albani.*

A.D. 1116. Anno Domini m°.c°.xvi°., in contermeno scilicet præ- . Cf. Rog. Dedication teriti et anni subsequentis, quia die Innocentium, rex . Wend. ii. of the church of Henricus cum regina sua et multis magnatibus et præ- 193. St. Alban's. latis intersuit dedicationi ecclesiæ Sancti Albani, quam 28 Dee. dedicavit archiepiscopus Rothomagensis Gaufridus ; sed, . cum præ magnitudine ecclesiæ ante consummationem . sollempnis officii fatigaretur, subiit onus episcopus . Lincolniensis, ab abbe postulatus.<sup>4</sup> Missam tamen . non celebravit, neque sermonem fecit. Haec autem sol- . lempnitas consummata<sup>5</sup> fuit sub abbe Ricardo ; cui, . inquam, solempnitati<sup>6</sup> assistebant Londoniensis episcopus Ricardus, Saresbiriensis Rogerus, Dunelmensis Ranulfus,<sup>7</sup>

<sup>1</sup> *idem archiepiscopus*] At first, *archiepiscopus idem*, but marked for transposition.

<sup>2</sup> *Theophilum*] So E. F., Edd., and ed. Wend., but *Theophum*, W. A. C. D. His real name appears to have been *Theoulfus*. See Hardy's note in *Fasti*, iii. 49.

<sup>3</sup> *obedientiam*] *ebedieniam*, MS.

<sup>4</sup> *ab abbe postulatus*] On an erasure. In the lower margin is written, *ab abbe requisitus*, as in W. A. C.D.

<sup>5</sup> *consummata*] *consumpata*, MS.

<sup>6</sup> *solempnitate*] *solepnitate*, MS.

<sup>7</sup> *Ranulfus*] *Rogerus*, MS. Om. F.

[cum]<sup>1</sup> multis quoque abbatibus, prioribus et ecclesiæ A.D. 1116. prælatis, ipso abbe omnibus eodem die necessaria procurante.<sup>2</sup> Et rex Henricus dedit ecclesiæ præfatæ Bis- Bishopscote sopescote, in dotem perpetuam, et carta sua sollempniter given to the abbey. confirmavit.

*Discordia mota est inter reges Francorum et Anglorum.*

Rog.Wend. Eodem anno surrexit discordia inter reges Anglorum Quarrel between the kings of England and France. et Francorum, hac de causa. Theobaldus, comes Ble- sencis, nepos Henrici regis, contra regem Francorum arma promoverat; in cuius auxilium rex Henricus militiam suam [misit],<sup>3</sup> et regem Lodowicum non mediocriter affixit. Turbatus ergo rex Francorum, con- vocavit in suum auxilium comites Andegavensem et Flandrensem, qui pariter juraverunt se regi Henrico Normanniam ablatus, et eam Willelmo, filio ducis Roberti, fratris Henrici regis, collatus, cui justius competere videbatur. Rex autem Anglorum Henricus, ut vir sapiens et circumspectus, ascivit in suum præ- sidium comitem Britanniæ et Theobaldum prædictum, cum Anglis, Normannis et Britannis; et sic adventantes, tutus minas expectabat et adventum adversariorum. Rex vero Francorum cum præfatis procuratoribus et exercitu copioso Normanniam ingressus, cum in ea vix pernoctasset, regis Anglorum formidans adventum Normandy. et proditorum suorum muscipulas, imbellis remeavit. Eodemque anno, pro necessitate regia, fuit Anglia variis Taxes imposed in England. exactionibus depressa.<sup>4</sup>

*De commotione elementorum.*

Rog.Wend. Anno Domini M<sup>0</sup>.C<sup>0</sup>.XVII<sup>0</sup>, tonitrua, grandines et ven- Tempests ii. 194. torum impetus dampnosissimi, et, in Longobardia et and earth- quakes.

<sup>1</sup> *cum*] Supplied from W. A. C. D.

<sup>2</sup> *procurante*] Partly on an era- sure.

<sup>3</sup> *misit*] Supplied from W. A. C. D.

<sup>4</sup> *Eodemque ... depressa*] Omitted in F.

A.D. 1117. tractibus orientalibus, terræ-motus, ecclesias, turres, mœnia, ædificia, arbores et homines contriverunt. Luna.

11 Sept. quoque facta est quasi sanguinea, iii<sup>o</sup>. idus Septembris.  
 The priory Anno etiam sub eodem Robertus prior cum paucis  
 of Merton fratribus Meretonam primo inhabitavit, et regulam  
 first inha- sancti Augustini inviolabiliter cœpit ibidem custodire.  
 bited. Death of Anno quoque sub eodem venerabilis vir vitæ, et in  
 Ivo, bishop of Char- sacris scripturis ad plenum eruditus et doctor egregius,  
 tres. Yvo, Carnotensis antistes, diem clausit extremum.

A.D. 1118. *Suscitatur scisma<sup>1</sup> pro antipapa. Obiit regina Ma[tildis].*

Anno Domini M<sup>o</sup>.C<sup>o</sup>.XVIII<sup>o</sup>., defuncto papa Paschali, Rog.Wend.  
 Death of Gelasius II. Gelasius antipapa anno uno successit. Obiit etiam ii. 194.  
 Pope Pas- eodem anno Matildis, Anglorum regina, cuius corpus Rog.Wend.  
 chal II. apud Westmonasterium quietem suscepit sepulturæ, et ii. 195.  
 Gelasius II. succeeds. anima se cœlum possidere evidentibus signis et crebris  
 Death of queen Matilda. miraculis palam ostendit. Hæc autem regina beatissima, inter alia pietatis opera, versus occidentalem<sup>2</sup>.  
 Nota de Hospitali Sancti Egidii, Londoniis. Londoniarum plagam, unam domum ad leprosorum sustentationem, cum oratorio et officinis, ædificavit, quæ usque hodie Hospitale reginæ Matildis nuncupatur. Eodem anno obiit Petrus, primus prior Bere-  
 Death of Peter, prior of Ber- mundsey. mundeshei<sup>3</sup>.

### *De origine Ordinis Templariorum.*

Founda- Circa dies istos<sup>4</sup> viri quidam nobiles de equestri Rog.Wend.  
 tion of the ordine, religiosi ac Dominum timentes, in manus patri- ii. 195.  
 Order of archæ Jerosolimitani, Christi servitio sese mancipantes,  
 Templars. more canonicorum regularium in castitate et obedientia,  
 propriaeque voluntati renuntiantes, perpetuo vivere  
 sunt professi. Quorum primi fuerunt Hugo de Paganis

<sup>1</sup> *scisma*] cisma, MS.

<sup>2</sup> *opera, versusoccidentalem*] Partly on an erasure.

<sup>3</sup> *Eodem . . . Beremundeshei*]

Om. F.

<sup>4</sup> *istos*] Added in marg.

. et Godefridus de Sancto Aedemaro. Qui primo adeo A.D. 1118.  
. pauperes licet strenui fuerunt, quod unum solum dex-  
. trarium illi duo habuerunt; unde propter primitivæ  
. paupertatis memoriam, et ad humilitatis observantiam,  
. in sigillo eorum insculpti sunt duo unum equum equi- Seal of the  
. tantes.<sup>1</sup> Isti vero duo milites memorati, cum certum Order.  
non haberent domicilium, et sibi habitaculum quærent,  
rex Baldewinus misertus et miseratus, in palatio Grant of  
suo, quod secus Templum Domini ad australem habet land to  
plagam, eis concessit mansionem. Canonici vero Templi king  
Domini plateam, quam circa prædictum habebant Baldwin.  
palatium, ad officinas construendas eis<sup>2</sup> concesserunt.  
Patriarcha quoque et rex, cum suis proceribus et aliis  
ecclesiarum prælatis, de propriis dominicis suis pro  
victu et vestitu certa eis beneficia contulerunt, pro-  
pitius comparando. Prima vero eorum professio erat, Profession  
ut, in remissionem peccatorum suorum, vias, itinera et of the  
passus suspectos, peregrinantibus nocivos, ad salutem Order.  
fidelium transmeantium contra latronum insidias pro  
viribus conservarent. Tandem vero, post ix. annos, in  
concilio Trecas<sup>3</sup> celebrato, instituta est eis regula, et  
habitus albus a papa Honorio assignatus. Et, jam A white  
decursis fere novem annis, fratres qui prius tantum- habit as-  
modo novem fuerunt, cœperunt multiplicari, et pos- signed to  
Rog. Wend. sessiones in immensum dilatari. Postmodum vero, them by  
ii. 196. tempore Eugenii papæ, crucis de panno rubeo suis Red crosses  
assuerunt mantellis a parte sinistra, ut esset eis tam sewn on  
triumphale signum pro clipeo, ne fugerent pro aliquo their  
infideli, tanta talique protectione communiti, utque  
sic signati, a ceteris religiosis viris valerent discerni.  
Numerus igitur eorum in brevi ita ditatus et multi- Increase of  
plicatus est, ut hodie in conventu plusquam trecentos the Order.

<sup>1</sup> In the lower margin is a drawing of two Templars riding on one horse, a coarse engraving of which is given in edit. Wats. In front of the

horse is fixed a banner, party per fess, sa. and arg.

<sup>2</sup> eis] Interlined.

<sup>3</sup> Trecas] Tecras, MS. See Har- duin, Concilia, vi. 2. col. 1134.

A.D. 1118. habeant equites, exceptis fratribus aliis, quorum numerus fere discernitur infinitus. Florente igitur Ordine. et in humilitate prosperante, invidit humanæ prospexitatis inimicus, et quæ huic virtuti videntur adversantia superseminavit, videlicet superbiæ genimina,. quæ solent inobedientiam cum scismatibus et multis. aliis malis generare. Possessiones vero, tam citra quam. ultra mare, adeo immensas habere dicuntur, ut jam non sit in orbe Christiano provincia, quæ eis bonorum suorum non contulerit portionem, ita ut regiis excellentiis præstantiores existant. Qui, quoniam juxta Templum Domini mansionem habuerunt primitivam, Fratres Militiae Templi nuncupantur. Et cum diu, ut prætactum est, in honesto starent proposito, rerum affluentia insolentiam generante, jam suæ professionis obliiti,<sup>1</sup> humilitate neglecta, a<sup>2</sup> domini patriarchæ, a quo et Ordinis institutionem, mansionem, protectionem, et omnia prima beneficia susceperant, se subtraxerunt obedientia; interveniente opima retributione versus. papam exempti,<sup>3</sup> ut magis gloriarentur libertini. Unde, hoc cognito, patriarcha conquestus est, dicens, “Filios enutrivi et exaltavi, ipsi autem spreverunt me.”<sup>4</sup>. Unde ecclesiis Dei decimas, privilegiis adquisitis, armati subtrahentes, facti sunt multis valde molesti.

They refuse obedience to the patriarch of Jerusalem.

### *Obiit rex Jerusalem Baldewinus.*

Death of Baldwin I., king of Jerusalem. Eodemque anno obiit rex Jerusalem Baldeuuinus Rog. Wend. ii. 196. primus, vir magnificus, qui urbes Aehon, Cæsaream, Berithum, Sydonem, Tripolim, Arbath,<sup>5</sup> cum terris Arabum usque ad Mare Rubeum, suo imperio potenter adjecit. Successit autem ei alius Baldeuuinus, comes Edessanus, et coronatus est in regem mense Aprilis, secunda die mensis.

Baldwin II. succeeds.

<sup>1</sup> *obliti*] Added in marg.

<sup>2</sup> *a*] Interlined.

<sup>3</sup> *exempti*] *exempti*, MS.

<sup>4</sup> Is. i. 2.

<sup>5</sup> *Arbath*] So also F.; but more correctly, *Arsuth*, A. C. D., as Will. Tyr., p. 783. In W., *Arluth*.

*Defuncto papa Gelasio, Calixtus successit.*

Rog. Wend. Anno Domini M<sup>o</sup>.C<sup>o</sup>.XIX<sup>o</sup>, defuncto papa Gelasio, A.D. 1119  
ii. 196. successit Calixtus, annis x., mensibus totidem, et diebus Death of  
Rog. Wend. xiii.; <sup>1</sup> fuerat autem episcopus Viennensis, Wido prius pope  
ii. 197. vocatus, et in papam consecratus, vocatus est Calixtus. Gelasius.  
Hic Remis concilium tenuit, ad quod rex Angliae Hen- Calixtus II.  
ricus quosdam Angliae et Normanniae episcopos desti- Council  
navit. Turstanus quoque, Eboracensis electus, illuc held at  
veniendi a rege licentiam impetravit, interposita <sup>2</sup> fide, Thurstan,  
quod benedictionem ab eo non reciperet. Qui ad con- archbishop  
cilium veniens, Romanos, sicut eis mos est, in suum of York,  
. favorem retributionis beneficio muscipulando per peram consecra-  
. inclinavit, et per eosdem infidelis infideles, ut a papa ted by the  
consecraretur, impetravit. Quod ut regi innotuit, om- pope.  
nem ei locum suae dominationis interdixit.

*De concilio Remensi, in quo condemnatur error  
Gileberti Porretæ.*

Rog. Wend. In hoc vero concilio <sup>3</sup> idem papa errorem magistri Errors of  
ii. 197. Gileberti Porretæ, qui in capitulis quatuor errasse Gilbert  
dicitur, condemnavit. In quorum primo dixit, "Quod Porrée con-  
divina natura, quæ divinitas dicitur, Deus non sit, sed demned.  
fol. 43 a. forma qua Deus est; sicut humanitas non est homo,  
sed forma qua homo est." Concilium: "Credimus sim-  
plicem naturam divinitatis esse Deum, nec aliquo  
sensu catholico posse negari, quin divinitas [sit Deus].<sup>4</sup>  
Sic vero, ubi dicitur, Deum sapientia sapientem, mag-  
nitudine magnum, æternitate æternum, unitate unum,  
divinitate esse Deum, credimus non nisi ea sapientia,  
quæ est [ipse]<sup>5</sup> Deus, sapientem <sup>6</sup> esse; non nisi ea

<sup>1</sup> Calixtus II. was pope only from Feb. 1119 to Dec. 1124. The error is copied from Wendover.

<sup>2</sup> *interposita*] On an erasure.

<sup>3</sup> Not in this council, but in another held at Rheims in 1148 by

Eugenius III. See Harduin, vi. 2, col. 1299.

<sup>4</sup> *sit Deus*] Supplied from W. A. C. D.

<sup>5</sup> *ipse*] Supplied from the same.

<sup>6</sup> *sapientem*] This word in MS. and F. is written after *sapientia*.

A.D. 1119. magnitudine, quæ est ipse Deus, magnum esse; non nisi ea æternitate, quæ est ipse Deus, æternum esse; non nisi ea unitate, quæ est ipse, esse unum; non nisi ea divinitate [Deum],<sup>1</sup> quæ in ipso est; id est, in seipso sapientem, magnum, æternum, unum Deum.” Secundo dixit, “Quod non unus Deus,<sup>2</sup> vel una substantia, aut unum aliquid sit tres<sup>3</sup> personæ, id est, Rog. Wend. Pater, et Filius, et Spiritus Sanctus; ipsæ vero tres ii. 198 personæ tria sunt differentia et numero, ac si tres homines humanitatem unam numero habere inveni- rentur.” Concilium: “Cum de tribus personis loqui- mur, Patre, Filio, et Spiritu Sancto, ipsas unum Deum, unam divinam substantiam esse fatemur, et e converso; cum enim de uno Deo, una divina substantia loquimur, ipsum unum Deum et unam divinam substantiam esse tres personas profitemur.” Tertio dixit memoratus Gile- bertus, “Quod proprietates<sup>4</sup> personarum relationes quæ- dam sunt<sup>5</sup> æternæ, quæ non sunt ipsæ<sup>6</sup> personæ, sed tres<sup>7</sup> divisæ numero, et divisa substantia, et habeant tres unitates; et sic multa æterna sint,<sup>8</sup> quorum nul- lum sit Deus.” Concilium: “Credimus solum Deum, Patrem, et Filium, et Spiritum Sanctum, æternum esse, nec aliquas omnino tres,<sup>9</sup> sive relationes, sive proprietates, vel unitates dicantur, adesse Deo, quæ sunt ab æterno, quæ non sint Deus.” Quarto dixit, “Quod divina natura non sit incarnata.” Concilium: “Credimus ipsam divinitatem, sive substantiam divinam, sive naturam divinam dicas, incarnatam esse, sed in Filio.”

*Campestre prælium inter reges Francorum et  
Anglorum.*

Battle be- Eodem anno actum est campestre prælium inter Rog. Wend.  
tween the Lodowicum, regem Francorum, et Henricum, regem ii. 198.  
kings of France and Anglorum, in hunc modum. Rex Francorum, duabus England.

<sup>1</sup> *Deum*] Supplied from W.A.C.D.

<sup>2</sup> *Deus*] est Deus, MS. and F.

<sup>3</sup> *tres*] Om. W. A. C. D.

<sup>4</sup> *proprietates*] propriætates, MS.  
In W. A. C. D. ad *proprietates*.

<sup>5</sup> *sunt*] sint, W. A. C. D.

<sup>6</sup> *ipsæ*] quod ipsæ, W. A. C. D.

<sup>7</sup> *tres*] Om. W. A. C. D.; res, I.

<sup>8</sup> *sint*] sunt, Edd. and ed. Wend.

<sup>9</sup> *tres*] res, W. A. C. D.

aciebus ordinatis, posuit in prima acie Willelmum, A.D. 1119.  
 Rog. Wend. filium Roberti, fratri regis Henrici; ipse vero rex  
 ii. 199. cum viribus maximis erat in sequenti agmine constitutus. Rex vero Anglorum Henricus, tribus aciebus dispositis, in prima Normanniæ proceres collocavit; in secunda, ipse rex cum propria residens familia, omnes animavit; in tertia, filios suos cum summis viribus peditum ordinavit. Concurrentibus igitur hinc inde catervis, prima Francorum acies proceres Normannorum penetrans, ab equis eos depellendo dissipavit. Deinde in aciem, cui rex Henricus praeerat, irrum-pens, ipsam etiam potenter dissolvit. Sed rex Anglorum, agminibus suis prudenter convocatis, feliciter respiravit, et ex læsione, more leonis, efficacius dimi-cavit. Fit conflictus hinc illinc, concurrentibus turmis regalibus, illico cruentissimus; fragor hastarum mutuo confractarum cum percussorum gemitibus resonabat; pulvis cum fumo ascendens, aera perturbabat; sanguis sauciorum terram rubricavit; gladiis res agitur cru-entatis, quorum tinnitus aures<sup>1</sup> equorum immutavit et galeatorum. Interea in condenso agmine decertantium Willelmus Crispinus, consul Ebroicensis, quem, William Crispin, count of condempnarat, caput ejusdem regis, gladio tota vi Evreux, wounds king galea et lorica essent impenetrabiles, ex ictuum tamen Henry. pondere lorica ipsa capiti regis adeo inserta est, ut fere corrueret excerebratus; inflicto tamen vulnere sanguis emanavit abundanter.<sup>3</sup> Rex vero læsum se sentiens, ad instar apri in percussorem dentibus infreduit, in ipsum se totum ingerendo; gladioque fulminante sub ipsa ira, qua incanduit, ita Willelmum percussit, quod equum et assessorem semineces in terram prostravit. Et mox ante pedes regios,<sup>4</sup> antequam

<sup>1</sup> aures] Added on to the text.<sup>2</sup> scintillis] cintillis, MS.<sup>3</sup> abundanter] habundanter, MS.<sup>4</sup> regios] Written at first regis.

A.D. 1119. spiritum resumere valeret, idem W[illelmus] captus  
 The count est, et illico vinculis mancipatus. Tunc Anglorum acies  
 is taken robustissima, aciesque<sup>1</sup> pedestris, in qua filii regis An-  
 glorum constituebantur, quæ quidem intacta fuerat,  
 lanceis inclinatis, ex adverso prorupit in hostes cum  
 impetu ponderoso et tam feroci, quod Galligenas acies  
 omnes coegit in fugam præcipitem. Ubique quoque  
 dissoluti penitus, terga turpiter dederunt fugitivi, regi  
 Henry gains the victoriam non ultro concedentes; qui potenter  
 victory. in campo perstitit, donec optimates hostium, rege Fran-  
 corum fugiente, capti ipsi regi H[enrico] præsentaren-  
 tur. Comes vero Flandrensis<sup>2</sup> letaliter vulneratus, ad  
 propria est in lectica deportatus. Rex vero Henricus,  
 non reminiscens capitalis læsionis præ gaudio victoriæ.  
 He returns to Rouen. sibi divinitus collatæ, Rothomagum reversus, in signo- R.Wend.  
 rum sonitu et cleri concentu et civium applausu ii. 200.  
 occurrentium alacriter receptus, Dominum exercituum  
 benedixit.

Death of Richard,  
 abbat of St.Alban's.  
 Geoffrey de Gorham succeeds.  
 Deaths of Herbert,  
 bishop of Norwich,  
 and of Baldwin,  
 count of Flanders.

*De morte Ricardi, abbatis Sancti Albani.<sup>3</sup>*

Eodem quoque anno Ricardus de Albeneto, abbas Rog.Wend.  
 Geoffrey de ecclesiæ Sancti Albani, diem clausit extreum; cuius ii. 200.  
 Gorham beneficia in libro de Gestis Abbatum, apud Sanctum .  
 Albanum habito, plenius describuntur. Huic vero suc- .  
 cessit Gaufridus de Gorham, prior ejusdem ecclesiæ,  
 abbas xvi<sup>us</sup>.<sup>4</sup> Eodemque anno obiit Herbertus, Norwi-  
 censis antistes, et comes Flandrensis Baldeuuinus, per  
 vulnus acceptum apud Aucum<sup>5</sup> in Normannia, ex

<sup>1</sup> *aciesque*] So also F., but seems superfluous.

<sup>2</sup> *Comes Flandrensis*] This is a mistake, copied from Wendover. The count of Flanders was not in this battle (fought 20 Aug. 1119), having died on the 17th June previously.

See "L'Art de Vérifier les Dates," iii. p. 8.

<sup>3</sup> In the margin are drawn a mitre and crozier reversed.

<sup>4</sup> *Eodem quoque . . . abbas xvius.*] Omitted in F.

<sup>5</sup> *Aucum*] Aueni, MS.

manu regis Anglorum Henrici, ut prædictum est.<sup>1</sup> A.D. 1119  
 Cui successit Karolus, Cnutoris filius, regis Danorum.  
 fol. 43 b. Tempore quoque sub eodem papa Calixtus venit in Normanniam ad regem Henricum, et collocuti sunt apud Gisorcium rex et summus sacerdos.<sup>2</sup>

Pope Calixtus meets king Henry at Gisors.

*Princeps Antiochenus interficitur.*

Rog. Wend. Per idem quoque tempus Rogerus, princeps Antiochenus, cum equitibus trecentis et peditibus tribus milibus, contra tres principes, Turcorum scilicet, Damascenorum et Arabum, qui secum trahebant innumeram copiam armatorum, videlicet sexaginta milia; unde princeps præceps et temerarius<sup>3</sup> inæquale nimis cum ipsis committens prælium, cum suis omnibus imperfectus est, ita quod nec unus evasit, qui casum fidelibus nunciaret. Indeque progradientes Turci, oppida<sup>4</sup> Cereptum et Sardonas potenter ceperunt. Hoc quoque factum cum fuisse a Baldeuuino, Jerosolimorum rege, compertum, hostibus obviam audacter processit, atque in loco qui Mons Dani dicitur, contra multos cum paucis decertans, ex hostibus *iiii<sup>or.</sup>* milia peremit. Et tres principes prædictos in fugam compellens, oppida Cereptum et Sardonas in suos usus revocavit; hostesque fugientes insecurus, usque ad noctis initium prosternere non cessavit.

Rog. Wend. ii. 201. Mons Dani dicitur, contra multos cum paucis decertans, ex hostibus *iiii<sup>or.</sup>* milia peremit. Et tres principes prædictos in fugam compellens, oppida Cereptum et Sardonas in suos usus revocavit; hostesque fugientes insecurus, usque ad noctis initium prosternere non cessavit.

Baldwin II. defeats the Turks.

<sup>1</sup> Matthew Paris seems here to have committed another error, in confounding the count of Flanders, wounded in 1118 at the siege of *Eu*, with the count of Evreux, wounded at the battle of *Brémule* (generally, but erroneously, called Brenneville). See Ord. Vit., iv. 356; Diceto, Abbrev. Chron., p. 502.

<sup>2</sup> In the margin, a hand of the

14th century has noted: "Nota, quod papa Calixtus venit in Normanniam, locuturus cum rege II."

<sup>3</sup> *unde . . . temerarius*] In consequence of the insertion of these words into the text of Weudover, a verb is required in the previous paragraph, which Matthew Paris has omitted to supply.

<sup>4</sup> *oppida*] *opida*, MS., and so below.

*Multi de speciali familia regis Henrici submersi in mari perierunt.*

A.D. 1120. Anno Domini M<sup>o</sup>.C<sup>o</sup>.XX<sup>o</sup>. rex Henricus, omnibus in Rog.Wend.  
 Henry re- Gallia pro voto edomitis et cunctis in Normannia <sup>ii. 201.</sup>  
 turns to England. pacificatis, cum gaudio ad Angliam transfretavit. Sed, .  
 Shipwreck ne mundus iste prospera sine adversis impermixta .  
 of the king's children. perferat, dolorem maximum ex alia parte cordi regio .  
 præsentavit. Nam divina, ut timetur, ultione, qui in .  
 alia quam rex navi velificabant filii ejusdem<sup>1</sup> regis, .  
 Willelmus et Ricardus, ac filia ejus et neptis, Ricardus  
 quoque, consul Cestrensis, dapiferi, camerarii, pincernæ  
 regis, ac multi proceres cum eisdem, in mari vii<sup>o</sup>.<sup>2</sup> ka-  
 25 Nov. lendas Decembri<sup>3</sup> naufragium pertulerunt.<sup>4</sup> Qui omnes,  
 vel fere omnes, si Francigenarum adversantium probris .  
 credendum est, sodomitana labo polluti dicebantur. Ita .  
 igitur miserabiliter cuncti perierunt, quod communi  
 fidelium, Deo irato, caruerunt<sup>5</sup> sepultura. Ideo, pro .  
 sequenti poena, culpa gravis prædicta vel alia creditur .  
 præcessisse. Quod enim admiratione dignum est, mare .  
 tunc temporis extitit pacatissimum, quando absorbe- .  
 bantur. Hoc etiam anno venit coeleste lumen super .  
 sepulchrum Domini bis, xiii<sup>o</sup>. kalendas Maii.<sup>6</sup> .

Miraculous light on the Holy Sepulchre.

18 April.

*Rex Henricus uxorem duxit.*

A.D. 1121. Anno Domini M<sup>o</sup>.C<sup>o</sup>.XX<sup>o</sup>.<sup>1</sup> rex Henricus duxit Ade- Rog.Wend.  
 Marriage of king Henry to liciam, ducis Lovaniæ filiam, causa pulchritudinis qua <sup>ii. 201.</sup>  
 singulariter choruscabat. Quæ a Radulpho, Cantuari-

<sup>1</sup> *ejusdem*] ejudem, MS.

<sup>2</sup> *vii<sup>o</sup>.*] *viii<sup>o</sup>.*, MS.

<sup>3</sup> *vii<sup>o</sup>. hal. Decembri*] Added in marg., and so in A., but inserted in the text of C. D. Omitted in W. and F.

<sup>4</sup> *pertulerunt*] Here F. inserts,  
 "Hos appellavit Merlinus calamit-

stratos, id est, effeminatos," which is copied from a marginal note in C.

<sup>5</sup> *caruerunt*] Added in marg.

<sup>6</sup> *Hoc etiam . . . Maii*] Added in marg., and, nearly in the same words, in marg. of A., but in text of C. D. Om. W. and F.

ensi archiepiscopo, in reginam consecrata, in Pentecoste A.D. 112  
 Londoniis cum rege ad mensam resedit magnifice co-  
 ronata. Inde autem, cum rex ad Walliam tenderet cum  
 exercitu copioso, Walenses eidem suppliciter obviantes,  
 Rog. Wend. concordati sunt cum ipso juxta suæ voluntatis magni-  
 ii. 202. fientiam. Eodem anno papa Calixtus Mauricium<sup>1</sup> the daughter of the  
 quendam, whom Henricus imperator antipapam consti- duke of  
 tuerat, cepit, et eum, licet non ultiro vel poscentem, Louvain.  
 monachum ordinavit. Luna obtenebrata est. Monachi Submis-  
 Redinggiæ, constructa<sup>2</sup> ecclesia, cœperunt colabitare. Monastery  
 Radulpho successit Willelmus de Curboil<sup>3</sup> at Reading.  
 scopatum Cantuariensem.<sup>4</sup>

*De morte quorundam episcoporum.*

Rog. Wend. Anno Domini M<sup>o</sup>.C<sup>o</sup>.XX<sup>o</sup>.II<sup>o</sup>. Radulphus, Cantuariensis A.D. 1122.  
 ii. 202. archiepiscopus, et Johannes, Bathoniensis antistes, hu- Deaths of  
 manæ naturæ debita persolverunt. Et eodem tempore prelates.  
 Balac<sup>5</sup> admiralius cepit Gocelinum, comitem Edessanum, Capture of  
 et ejus consanguineum Galerannum. the count of Edessa.

*Quidam regis cancellarius male mortuus est.*

Rog. Wend. Anno Domini M<sup>o</sup>.C<sup>o</sup>.XX<sup>o</sup>.III<sup>o</sup>. rex Anglorum Henricus, ad A.D. 1123.  
 ii. 202. Natale Domini apud Dunestapliam festo celebrato, ad  
 Berckamestudiam inde perrexit.<sup>6</sup> Erat autem ibi cum  
 rege quidam cancellarius ejus, nomine Ranulphus, per Violent  
 annos jam xx<sup>ti</sup>. gravi infirmitate<sup>7</sup> decoctus, sed tamen death of  
 ad omnia sclera perpetranda promptus et paratus. Cum cellor  
 igitur regem duceret ad secum hospitandum, in ipso the chan-  
 Ralph.

<sup>1</sup> *Mauricium*] Maurice Bourdier, abp. of Braga, known as Gregory VIII. Malm. ii. pp. 664, 667.

<sup>2</sup> *constructa*] construca, MS.

<sup>3</sup> William de Curboil was not elected till Feb. 1123. Fasti, i. 8.

<sup>4</sup> *Luna . . Cantuariensem*] Added

in marg., and a similar passage is in the margin of A., but in the text of C. D. F.

<sup>5</sup> *Balac*] Balay, MS. and F.

<sup>6</sup> *perrexit*] perexit, MS.

<sup>7</sup> *infirmitate*] imfirmitate, MS.

A.D. 1123. montis vertice, unde castellum regis prospiciebatur, eructans verba jactantiæ et elatus mente ex equo corruit, verba blasphemiae<sup>1</sup> in sanctos Dei, maxime in sanc- tum Albanum, Angliæ prothomartirem, jaculando.

*De obitu quorundam magnatum.<sup>2</sup>*

Death of Robert, bp. of Lincoln. Anno quoque sub eodem Robertus, Lincolniensis epi- Rog. Wend. ii. 203. scopus, obiit, et Alexander successit.<sup>3</sup> Eodemque anno William de Corboil made abp. of Canterbury, and Godfrey, bp. of Bath. rex Henricus dedit archiepiscopatum Cantuariensem Willelmo de Corolio, priori de Chicche, et episcopatum Bathoniensem Godefrido, reginæ capellano. Quo etiam tempore Robertus de Muthlent<sup>4</sup> comes recessit a rege, et rex obsedit et cepit castellum ejus, quod The king takes the castle of Pont-Audemer. Pundhaudemer appellatur. Tempore quoque sub eodem circa turrem Rothomagensem rex murum spissum et altum cum propugnaculis<sup>5</sup> construxit, turrem quoque castri Cadomensis<sup>6</sup> optime firmavit. Castra etiam de Archis, de Gisorcio, de Falesia, de Argentomio, de Danfronte,<sup>7</sup> de Oxomio, de Ambretas, de Veverei,<sup>8</sup> de Rouen and other towns in Normandy. Vira,<sup>9</sup> et turrim Vernonis inexpugnabiliter communivit.

*Rex Ierusalem B[aldewinus] capitur a Balac, principe Turcorum.*

Capture of Baldwin II. by the Turks. Anno vero sub eodem rex Jerosolimorum Baldenui- Rog. Wend. ii. 203. nus cum exercitu in terram comitis Edessani descendens, dum nocte quadam incanus et agmine incederet dissoluto, Balach, princeps Turcorum, in insidiis constitutus, in eum subito irruit et ipsum cepit, et in castro, cui Quartapi nomen est, vinculis mancipavit. Detinebantur etiam in eodem praesidio comes Jocelinus

<sup>1</sup> *blasphemie*] blasphemie, MS.

<sup>2</sup> So also in F., but the rubrie is at variance with the text.

<sup>3</sup> *successit*] sucessit, MS.

<sup>4</sup> *Muthlent*] Medlent, W. A. C. D.

<sup>5</sup> *propugnaculis*] propungnaculis, MS.

<sup>6</sup> *Cadomensis*] Cadamensis, MS.

<sup>7</sup> *Danfronte*] Darcfonte, MS. Corr. from W. A. C. D.

<sup>8</sup> *Veverei*] Waverei, W. A. C. D.

<sup>9</sup> *Vira*] Vim, MS. Corr. from W. A. C. D.

Edessæ, et ejus consanguineus Gualerannus, pro quorum A.D. 1123.  
liberatione ad partes illas rex pio ex affectu descendente-

<sup>fol. 44 a.</sup> rat. Principes autem regni Jerosolimitani, auditio casu Eustachius miserabili, constituerunt regni procuratorem quendam Grenet made go-  
Eustachium Grenet, virum providum et discretum, qui vornor of  
Rog. Wend. in regis absentia regni negotia ordinaret. Balach inter-  
ii. 204. ea, princeps memoratus, cum xvi. armatorum milibus,

Jopen obsidione vallavit. Quo auditio, patriarcha Jero-  
solimitanus et regni procurator Eustachius, cum aliis  
principibus, prævia Domini misericordia, cum septem  
milibus armatorum supervenientes, hostes omnes in  
fugam coegerunt, ex eis septem milia perientes. Unde  
spolia impreiabilia ibidem optinentes, inter se cum  
lætitia victores<sup>1</sup> diviserunt.

*Willelmus in [archiepiscopum]<sup>2</sup> Cantuariensem con-  
secratur.*

Rog. Wend. Tempore quoque sub eodem Willelmus, Cantuariensis Consecra-  
<sup>ii. 204.</sup> electus, Romam profectus, pallium suscepit. Et rever-  
sus in Angliam, consecratus Cantuariæ a Willelmo, archbishop  
of Canterbury. Wintoniensi episcopo, quia paulo ante obierat Ricardus,  
antistes Londoniensis, ad quem illa consecratio dinosci-  
tur pertinere.

*Quidam regis Henrici inimici capiuntur.*

Rog. Wend. Anno Domini M<sup>o</sup>.C<sup>o</sup>.XX<sup>o</sup>.III<sup>o</sup>. Robertus de Meblent<sup>3</sup> A.D. 1124.  
<sup>ii. 204.</sup> comes, associatis sibi Hugone de Muntfort, sororio suo, Robert,  
et Hugone Gervasii filio, hostiliter intravit Normanni- count of  
am. Willelmus vero de Tankerville, regis camerarius, Meulent,  
aciebus dispositis, contra illos decertans, cepit eosdem, and others  
taken pri-  
soners. soners.  
quos et regi Henrico et rex carceri præsentavit.

<sup>1</sup> *victores*] victore, MS.

<sup>2</sup> *archiepiscopum*] Omitted in MS.

<sup>3</sup> *Meblent*] So E. F.; *Medlent*,  
W. A. C. D. Elsewhere written  
*Meslent*.

A.D. 1124.

*Obierunt quidam episcopi.*Deaths of  
prelates.

Eodemque anno defuncti sunt Theophorus<sup>1</sup> Wigorniensis, et Ernulphus Rofensis episcopi.

Rog. Wend.  
ii. 204.*Tyrus a Christianis occupatur.*Tyre be-  
sieged and  
taken.

Eodem anno Tyrus, Syriæ metropolis, a Michaele, duce Venetiæ, obsidione vallata est per mare, et per terram a principibus regni Jerosolimitani, v<sup>o</sup>. kalendas Martii; et iii<sup>o</sup>. kalendas Julii capta est, et Christianitati feliciter restituta. Obiit Calixtus papa, successor Honorius. Sol novilunio similis factus est.<sup>2</sup>

Rog. Wend.  
ii. 204.

25 Feb.  
29 June.  
Death of  
pope Ca-  
lixtus II.  
Honori-  
II. suc-  
ceeds.

*Liberatur rex Baldewinus.*Baldwin is  
released  
from cap-  
tivity.

Anno quoque sub eodem rex Jerusalem Baldeuinus, datus obsidibus, a vinculis Turcorum liberatus est, et incolumis ad propria remeavit.

Rog. Wend.  
ii. 204.*Johannes legatus celebravit concilium Londoniis.*A.D. 1125.  
Cardinal  
John of  
Crema  
comes to  
England,  
and holds  
a council.  
8 Sept.Scandal  
occasioned  
by his con-  
duct.

Anno Domini M<sup>o</sup>.C<sup>o</sup>.XX<sup>o</sup>.v<sup>o</sup>. Johannes Cremonensis, apostolicæ sedis cardinalis, de licentia regis Anglorum veniens in Angliam, in episcopatibus et abbatiis<sup>3</sup> perendinans,<sup>4</sup> lucris et deliciis indulgebat. Et tandem, metens ubi non seminaverat, cum multis donariis saginaretur, ad Nativitatem beatæ Mariae<sup>5</sup> Londoniis sollempne concilium celebravit. In quo, inter cetera, concubinas sacerdotum et sacerdotes dampnavit concubinarios. Tandem vero in eodem vitio ipse legatus deliciis crapulatus ce-

Rog. Wend.  
ii. 21.

<sup>1</sup> *Theophorus*] Theophilus, W. sec.m.  
F. See previous note *ad annum 1115.*

Simeon of Durham, and Contin. Flor.  
Wig. place his death in Oct. 1123.

<sup>2</sup> *Obiit . . . est*] Added in marg.,  
and so in A., but in the text of C.D.F.

<sup>3</sup> *abbatiis*] The last two letters  
are on an erasure.

<sup>4</sup> *perendinans*] perlendinans, MS.

<sup>5</sup> The date of the Council in Si-  
meon of Durham, p. 254, is 9 Sept.  
1126.

cedit compeditus, et deprehensus scandalum in ecclesia A.D. 1125.  
non minimum suscitavit.

*Rex Henricus contulit quosdam episcopatus.*

Rog.Wend. Eodemque anno rex Henricus dedit Symoni, reginæ Nomina-  
ii. 205. clerico, Wigorniensem, Johanni, archidiacono Cantuari-<sup>tion of</sup>  
ensi, Rofensem, Sifredo, abbatii Glastoniensi, Cicestren-<sup>several</sup>  
sem præsulatus. Quo utique anno deceptaverunt<sup>1</sup> Dispute  
Willelmus Cantuariensis et Turstanus Eboracensis the pri-<sup>respecting</sup>  
achiepiscopi de primatu, quis eorum esse dignior<sup>macy.</sup>  
videretur.

*Obiit rex Scotorum Alexander.<sup>2</sup>*

Rog.Wend. Anni quoque sub illius curriculo obiit rex Scotorum Death of  
ii. 205. Alexander, et successit ei David, frater ejus, vir magnæ Alexander,  
sanctitatis et munificæ largitatis. king of  
Scotland.  
David suc-  
ceeds.

*Monetarii puniuntur.*

Rog.Wend. Illo etiam anno rex Henricus omnes Angliæ moneta- Punish-  
ii. 205. rios, eo quod monetam furtive corruperant, fecit turpiter ment of the  
ementulari et aliis modis mutilari,<sup>3</sup> pluribus autem debasers of  
dextras manus amputari. the coin.

*Rex Jerusalem de Turcis multis triumphavit.*

Rog.Wend. Circa eosdem profecto dies Borsequinus, princeps Victory  
ii. 206. quidam orientis potentissimus, adjuncto sibi Damasce- obtained<sup>1</sup>  
norum rege Doldequino, transito Eufrate fluvio, partes over the  
depopulans, Caphardan castrum obsedit et cepit; in- Turks.  
deque progressus, Harsad oppidum obsidione vallavit.

<sup>1</sup> *deceptaverunt*] The latter part of this word is on an erasure.

<sup>2</sup> On the edge of the lower margin is written, "Obiit rex Scotorum

Alexander; succedit ei David, frater ejus."

<sup>3</sup> *mutilari*] *mutilari*, MS.

A.D. 1125. Quo auditio, rex Baldeuuinus, qui tam Antiochiæ principatus quam regni Jerosolimitani curam gerebat, cum copiis militaribus illuc succineta sub festinatione descendit. Repertisque in obsidione præfata hostibus menoratis, dispositis sub martia disciplina suis aciebus, in ipsos irruit vehementer valde ac impetuose, lanceis incumbens ac gladiis fulminantibus. Et post certamen horribile ac cruentum, divina annuente clementia, patuit pars adversa diserimini; omnibusque in fugam compulsis, rex feliciter illæsus et indemnis triumphavit. Ceciderunt autem ibi ex hostibus ad duo milia Turcorum, et sepulti sunt in inferno. Rex autem de pecunia illic optenta filiam suam quinquennem, quam pro sua liberatione obsidem posuerat, a Turcorum vinculis caute liberavit. Et inde reversus, circa Aschalonam prædas egit non minimas; ubi etiam Turcos de dispersis, quos obviam habuit, interfecit, et sic vitor lætus ad propria remeavit.

He ransom-s his daughter with the booty gained.

*Mortuo H[enrico] imperatore, reversa [est]<sup>1</sup> M[atildis] imperatrix ad patrem suam, regem Anglorum Henricum.*

A.D. 1126. Anno Domini M<sup>0</sup>.C<sup>0</sup>.XX<sup>0</sup>.VI<sup>0</sup>. Henricus, Romanorum imperator,<sup>2</sup> præsulatum Ravennæ contulit Arnulpho, viro eleganti, hac de causa. Cum esset idem A[rnulphus]. diaconus et in capella imperatoris ministrans, quandam adamavit domicellam. Cujus cum quadam nocte ute- retur amplexibus, et hoc auribus imperatoris instilla- retur, jussit die sequenti imperator eidem A[rnulpho]. ut accedens ad altare legeret ei evangeliū.<sup>3</sup> At ipse A[rnulphus], quem propria momordit de nocturna culpa conscientia, se<sup>4</sup> fingens infirmum,<sup>5</sup> ait, “ Domine, parcite .

<sup>1</sup> *est]* Supplied from W. A. C. D.

<sup>2</sup> *imperator]* Interlined.

<sup>3</sup> *evangeliū]* eunangeliū, MS.

<sup>4</sup> *se]* Interlined.

<sup>5</sup> *infirmum]* infirmum, MS.

. mihi, quia graviter infirmor." At ipse<sup>1</sup> imperator<sup>2</sup> in A.D. 1126.  
. stabat imperiose, cum minis jubens ut legeret. Ipse  
. autem præcise contradicens ait, " Domine, decollari pos-  
. sum, antequam flectar præcepto vestro obsecundans."  
fol. 44 b. Et cum non profecisset imperator, ut constantiam ejus  
. enervaret comminando, blandiendo, præcipiendo, nec ut  
. saltem ad altare appropinquaret, mutato vultu in sere-  
. nitatem, ait, " Nunc cognovi<sup>3</sup> certissime quod Deum plus  
. quam me, ut justum est, diligas et formiles; tales digni-  
. sunt honore pastorali. Novi quæ causa te a lectione  
. evangeli<sup>4</sup> subtrahat, et ab altari." Ex tunc igitur im-  
. perator ipsum A[rnulphum] familiarem habuit, et ad  
. præsulatum promovit. Anno vero sub eodem pius ipse The-  
. imperator mundi pompam penitus relinquens, nocturnam emperor  
. et clandestinam fugam<sup>5</sup> arripiens, incognitus<sup>6</sup> ad loca throne,  
. se contulit incognita,<sup>7</sup> ut in paupertate spontanea re-  
. siduum vitæ suæ sub pœnitentia continuaret. Fertur  
. quod a quodam casu mortis, Deo sibi propitio, ereptus  
. fuerit, propter quod Deo gratus se ejus obsequio per-  
. petuo mancipaverit. Ipse vero eodem anno vocatus a  
. Deo ab hoc seculo, cum in<sup>8</sup> extremis ageret, seipsum  
. manifestavit, unde cum honore imperiali sepultus est.  
. Hoc autem nec tunc fecisset propter honorem sepulturæ, Sinister  
. sed ut potius famam purgaret imperatricis, quæ dice-  
. batur ipsum dormientem jugulasse, vel potionasse pran-  
. dentem; et ut edoceret omnibus, etiam præcellentibus,  
. mundum esse contemptibilem. Confestim autem post-  
. quam idem imperator, ut prædictum est, evanuerat,  
. imperatrix ejus Matildis,<sup>9</sup> pro objecto obprobrio de pro-  
. pinato veneno, clanculo recedens, ad alas protectionis  
. paternæ, regis videlicet Henrici, avolavit. Rex igitur,  
. cum in brevi tempore sequenti rei cognovisset<sup>10</sup> verita-

<sup>1</sup> *ipse*] Partly on an erasure.<sup>6</sup> *incognitus*] incongnitus, MS.<sup>2</sup> *imperator*] Added in marg.<sup>7</sup> *incognita*] incongnita, MS.<sup>3</sup> *cognovi*] congnovi, MS.<sup>8</sup> *in*] Interlined.<sup>4</sup> *evangelii*] euangelii, MS., on  
an erasure.<sup>9</sup> *Matildis*] Mitildis, MS.<sup>5</sup> *fugam*] Added on to the text.<sup>10</sup> *cognovisset*] congnovisset, MS.

A.D. 1126. tem, condolens insontis viduitati et diffamatione, vocavit eam ad se, et eam consolans, habitare fecit in <sup>Rog. Wead.</sup>  
thalamo suo cum regina. <sup>ii. 206.</sup>

*Henrico imperatori successit<sup>1</sup> Lotharius.*

Lotharius II. succeeds. Pio igitur Henrico imperatori successit Lotharius, <sup>Rog. Wend.</sup>  
<sup>ii. 206.</sup> qui xii. annis imperavit.

*Juratur fidelitas imperatrici Matildi.*

Henry returns to England with the empress Matilda. 29 Sept. The nobility swear fealty to her. Diligebat autem rex Henricus Matildam filiam suam <sup>Rog. Wend.</sup> præcordialiter ac specialiter valde, quia unicam illam <sup>ii. 206.</sup> habebat heredem. Circa festum igitur sancti Michaelis <sup>Rog. Wend.</sup> rediens rex in Angliam, duxit secum filiam suam, tanto <sup>ii. 207.</sup> viro, ut prænarratur, viduatam. Et continuo, jussu regis, omnes Angliæ et Normanniæ optimates jurantes fecerunt ei fidelitatem. Et primus omnium comes Bononiæ Stephanus, quia suspectus, ex Adala, sorore regis. Henrici, et Blesentiaæ comite generatus.

*Facta est contentio inter Cantuariensem et Eboracen-  
sem archiepiscopos.*

A.D. 1127. Henry keeps Christmas at Windsor. The archbishop of York is not permitted to crown the king. Anno Domini M<sup>0</sup>.C<sup>0</sup>.XX<sup>0</sup>.VII<sup>0</sup>. rex Henricus ad Natale <sup>Rog. Wend.</sup> tenuit curiam suam apud Windleshoram; ubi cum Turstanus, Eboracensis archiepiscopus, in præjudicium Wilhelmi, Cantuariensis archiepiscopi, regem vellet coronare, judicio omnium probrose repulsus est, et lator crucis ejus, quam in capellam regis ante se deferri fecerat, extra capellam cum ipsa cruce contemptibiliter ejectus<sup>2</sup> est.

<sup>1</sup> *successit*] *succedit*, MS.

<sup>2</sup> *ejectus*] *exjectus*, MS.

*Rex commovetur adversus nepotem suum.*

A.D. 1127.

Rog.Wend. Tempore quoque sub eodem venerunt ad regem legati, Death  
ii. 207. dicentes, "Karolus, comes Flandrensis tibi dilectissimus, count of Charles,  
a proceribus suis proditione nefanda<sup>1</sup> occisus est in Flanders.  
templo apud Breuges,<sup>2</sup> et rex Francorum dedit comitatum He is suc-  
Willelmo, filio fratris tui, nepoti tuo et inimico; in quo cceeded by  
jam valde roboratus, diversis cruciatibus Karoli prodi- William,  
tores interfecit." Super hiis itaque rex Henricus nimis nephew  
anxius turbabatur, eo quod esset juvenis ille strenuus and enemy  
et animosus, et comminaretur se regi Henrico tam  
Angliam quam Normanniam ablaturum, quae sibi, ut  
dicebat, jure hereditario debebantur. of Henry.

*Ricardo, Londoniensi episcopo, successit Gilebertus.*

Rog.Wend. Eodem tempore, defuncto Ricardo, Londoniensi epi- Gilbert  
ii. 207. scopo, Gilebertus Universalis successit, et a Willelmo, 'Univers-  
Cantuariensi archiepiscopo, munus suscepit consecrati- salis' con-  
onis. secrated  
bishop of  
London.

*Matildis imperatrix nupsit Galfrido, comiti Ande-  
gavice.*

Rog.Wend. Anno quoque sub eodem comes Andegavensis Fulco Fulk,  
ii. 208. Jerosolimam sine animo revertendi profecturus, dedit count of  
comitatum suum Galfrido filio suo, cognomento<sup>3</sup> Plan- Anjou,  
tegenest, adolescenti elegantissimo; et peregre profectus, gives up  
Jerosolimam prospere pervenit. De cuius adventu rex his territo-  
Jerusalem valde laetus, dedit ei filiam suam primoge- ries to his son, and  
nitam, cum spe regni post mortem suam. Quod cum a goes to  
rege Anglorum Henrico compertum fuisse, transfretavit Marriage  
of Matilda

<sup>1</sup> *nefunda*] nephanda, MS.

written *vel u*, i.e. *Bruges*; and so  
copied in F.

<sup>2</sup> *Breuges*] Above this word is

<sup>3</sup> *cognomento*] cognomento, MS.

A.D. 1127. in Normanniam, et filiam suam imperatricem præfato  
to Geoffrey Gaufrido, Andegavensium comiti, matrimonio copulavit.  
*of Anjou.*  
Death of Richard,  
bishop of Hereford.

Tunc utique temporis obiit Ricardus, episcopus Herefordensis.

*Boamundus accepit in uxorem filiam regis Jerosolimorum secundam.*

Boamund marries a daughter of Baldwin. Boamundus, magni Boamundi filius, in Rog. Wend. iii. 208. Syriam transiens, a rege Jerosolimorum Baldeuuino Antiochiam, paternam hereditatem, suscepit, et rex dedit ei filiam suam secundam matrimonio copulandam.

Capture of Caphar-dan. Deinde idem Boamundus Caphardan castrum obsedit et cepit, et Turcos omnes in eo inventos trueidavit.

*De nobili abbatia, quæ dicitur Fontes.*

27 Dec. Foundation of Fountains abbey. Circa eadem tempora, die sancti Johannis Evangelistæ,<sup>1</sup> exierunt de abbatia Sanctæ Mariæ Eboraci, de abbatis et conventus licentia, prior et supprior, cum plurimis obedienciariis et fratribus ejusdem domus, ita quod xii.<sup>2</sup> erant quærentes sibi mansionem idoneam. Voluerunt enim<sup>3</sup> vitam pristinam artare et habitum mutare, exemplo illorum nigrorum monachorum provocati, qui de licentia sui abbatis exeuntes, Cistercensium Ordinem<sup>4</sup> inchoaverunt. Qui dum vagarentur, quærentes stationem mansionis, et locum invenissent, ut eorum aliquibus videbatur competentem, vox de cœlis elapsa est audita, secundum patrum ydioma, “ Ci est à vus,” quod interpretatur, “ Hic state,” id est, “ Hic manete ;” sicut in principio Ordinis, unde Cisteus locus appellatur.<sup>4</sup> Similiter et isti, de quibus sermo .

<sup>1</sup> *Evangelistæ*] Euangeliste, MS.

<sup>2</sup> *xiiij.*] xiii., A. C. D., and so in Monasticon, v. 293.

<sup>3</sup> *enim*] Added in marg.

<sup>4</sup> *sicut . . . appellatur*] Added in

marg., and is in text of F., but *sicut* seems superfluous, and we should read, *unde, in principio Ordinis, Cisteus locus appellatur.*

. nobis, quærentes mansionem, invenerunt quandam con- A.D. 1127.  
 . vallem, a vico Ripun <sup>iii<sup>bus</sup></sup> miliaribus distantem, pro-  
 . fundam et opacam. Censentes igitur ipsum locum  
 . sibi competere, adquisiverunt illum sibi, et cœperunt  
 . ecclesiolam ædificare, et ibidem manere, qui, propter  
 . fontium copiam, Fontes dicitur ille.<sup>1</sup> Quorum primo  
 . tanta fuit paupertas, quod nisi Ripunenses ipsis in  
 . victualibus, vestimentis et calciamentis auxilium præ-  
 . stitissent, in penuria defecissent. In brevi autem<sup>2</sup>  
 . tantum, Deo favente, susceperunt in possessionibus et  
 . fratrum numero augmentum,<sup>3</sup> ut diebus præsentibus,  
 . nulli creditur illud cœnobium esse secundum.

*De transfretatione regis Henrici, et morte Willielmi,  
 comitis Flandrensis.*

Rog.Wend. Anno Domini M<sup>o</sup>.C<sup>o</sup>.XX<sup>o</sup>.VIII<sup>o</sup>., rex Anglorum Henricus A.D. 1128.  
 ii. 208. hostiliter perrexit in Franciam, eo quod rex Francorum King Henry Lodowicus tuebatur comitem Flandrensem, regis H[en- hostilely enters rici] nepotem et inimicum. Perendinansque<sup>4</sup> apud Hespardum<sup>5</sup> viii. diebus, tam secure ac si in regno proprio moraretur, regem Francorum comiti Flandrensi auxilia negare coegit. Ubi, cum a quodam clero ysto-

Rog.Wend. riographo et de gente Francorum peritissimo,<sup>6</sup> originem Descent of ii. 209. regis Lodowici quæreret, respondit, "Regum potentis- the French sime, sicut pleraque gentes Europæ, ita Franci a Tro- from the janis originem duxerunt." Et cum a gemino ovo omnem Trojans. regum Franciæ genealogiam retexendo explicasset, ad ultimum subjunxit, "Philippus, rex Francorum, genuit Lodouicuicum, regnante in præsenti, qui, si probitatis et audaciae antecessorum suorum teneret vestigia, tam

<sup>1</sup> qui . . . ille] Added in marg., and is in text of F.

<sup>2</sup> autem] Interlined.

<sup>3</sup> augmentum] auementum, MS.

<sup>4</sup> Perendinansque] Perhendinans- que, MS.

<sup>5</sup> Hespardum] So W. and A. C. D. E.; but we should read *Sparnum* (Épernon), as in Hen. Hunt., p. 383.

<sup>6</sup> peritissimo] Partly on an era- sure.

A.D. 1128. secure in regno ejus non quiesceres." Super quo dicto Henry returns to rex subridens, in Normanniam remeavit. Normandy.

*Willelmus, comes Flandrensis, triumphat.<sup>1</sup>*

Advenit autem eodem tempore a partibus Germaniæ dux quidam Theodoricus, rege Henrico procurante, hostiliter in Flandriam, quosdam etiam proceres Flandrenses secum trahens; sed comes Willelmus obviam illis intrepidus occurrit. Pugnatum est utrumque viriliter, et comes, licet paucos in suo comitatu haberet, infatigabiliter et insuperabiliter dimicans, hostium dissipavit legiones, et invincibili probitate paucitatem sui exercitus redemit. Cruentus enim in armis et fulmineus, ense choruscante hostiles cuneos victos aufugabat. Victoriosus igitur comes Willelmus, dum castrum Augi contra regem Henricum obsedisset, et in crastino reddi coactum fuisset, hostibus jam pæne subjugatis, parvo vulnere idem juvenis in manu percussus, telo, ut creditur, toxicato interiit; sed tamen mortuus famam inauditæ probitatis perpetuavit.

Deaths of  
prelates.  
Hugh de S.  
Vietor  
completes  
his Chro-  
nicle.

*Obierunt quidam episcopi.*

Eodemque anno Ranulphus Dunclensis et Willermus Wintoniensis episcopi obierunt. Magister quoque Hugo de Sancto Victore Cronica sua hucusque digessit.

*Rex Henricus tenuit concilium de concubinis sacerdotum.*

A.D. 1129. Anno Domini M<sup>0</sup>.C<sup>0</sup>.XX<sup>0</sup>IX<sup>0</sup>, Honorio, qui in Romana cathedra sederat annis v. et mensibus duobus, successit<sup>2</sup> Innocentius.<sup>3</sup> Eodemque anno rex Henricus tenuit concilium de concubinis sacerdotum.

<sup>1</sup> *trumphat*] trihnphat, MS.

<sup>2</sup> *successit*] sucessit, MS.

<sup>3</sup> Innocent II. was not elected till

14 Feb. 1130, the day of his predecessor's death, Jaffé, p. 560.

cilium magnum Londoniis, kalendis Augusti. Affuerunt A.D. 1129.  
 autem concilio illi Willelmus Cantuariensis et Turstanus Council  
 Eboracensis archiepiscopi, cum suis suffraganeis; inter held at  
 quos tractatum fuit de focariis sacerdotum prohiben- London.  
 dis, ne cohabitarent, quos omnes rex decepit. Accepit 1 Aug.  
 enim rex pecuniam multam de presbiteris pro suis Henry  
 focariis redimendis, in præjudicium et derisum præla- takes  
 torum. Eodem quoque anno Henricus, abbas Glasto- money from the  
 niensis, nepos regis Henrici, creatus est in episcopum priests, to  
 Wintoniensem, Robertus Porretanus<sup>1</sup> in Herefordensem,<sup>2</sup> redeem their  
 et Robertus Simplex<sup>3</sup> in Lincolnensem.<sup>4</sup> "focariæ."

Creation of some prelates.

*De morte Philippi, regis Francorum.<sup>5</sup>*

Death of Philip of France.

Rog. Wend. Eodem quoque anno Philippus, filius regis Francorum, ii. 210. qui nuper, patre defuncto,<sup>6</sup> diadematè fuerat insignitus, dum equum ludens ageret, obvium habuit porcum, qui cum pedes equi currentis offenderet, cecidit rex novus in terram, et, fractis cervicibus, expiravit.

*Pronosticum de avibus.*

Rog. Wend. Anno quoque sub eodem, venit in Normanniam, Marvellous  
 ii. 211. nescitur unde, avium innumerabilis multitudo, quæ presage of  
 gregatim volitantes et longissima aeris spatia occu- flocks of  
 pantes, horribiliter sese deplumando ac discerpendo ad birds in  
 invicem pugnabant; portendentes, ut creditur, scisma Normandy.  
 futurum inter duos paulo post apostolicos, de papatu contendentes.

<sup>1</sup> *Porretanus*] Added in marg.; in text of F.

Robert de Chesney did not succeed as bishop of Lincoln till Sept. 1147. See under that year.

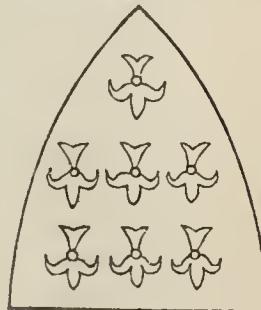
<sup>2</sup> Robert de Betun was not consecrated till 28 June 1131. Fasti, p. 457. I do not find this surname of *Porretanus* elsewhere.

<sup>5</sup> In the margin is drawn the shield of France, in trick, reversed, with a crown beneath.

<sup>3</sup> *Simplex*] Added in marg.; in text of F.

<sup>6</sup> Another error, also from Wendover. Louis VI. did not die till 1 Aug. 1137, and the death of his

<sup>4</sup> An error, copied from Wendover.



A.D. 1130.

*De scismate inter duos apostolicos.*

Schism at  
Rome for  
the papacy.

Innocent  
II. goes to  
France, and  
is acknowledged as  
pope.

Coronation  
of Louis le  
Jeune.

Matilda is  
sent to the  
count of  
Anjou.

8 Sept.

Dedication  
of Christ  
Church,  
Canter-  
bury.

Hugh,  
abbot of  
Reading,  
made abp.  
of Rouen.

Anno Domini M<sup>o</sup>.C<sup>o</sup>.XXX<sup>o</sup>,<sup>1</sup> defuncto papa Honorio, Rog.Wend. ii. 211. Romani in duo divisi, duos in papatus apicem elegerunt, quidam Innocentium, et alii Anacletum. Sed Anacletus, propter<sup>2</sup> fratres suos, qui erant viri potentes, et castri Crescencionis habebant principatum, remansit; Innocentius vero ad Cisalpinos transiit, expulsus a Romanis. Qui veniens in Galliam ad Carnotum, a rege Anglorum Henrico<sup>3</sup> honorifice susceptus est; et post Pascha iterum eodem modo recepit ipsum papam apud Rothomagum. Et sic, auxilio et favore ejus, per totam Galliam reverenter admissus est, et papa ab omnibus acclamatus. Et sic, diligenter Anglorum rege procurante, idem papa Lodouicium, fratrem Philippi, Francorum regis defuncti, Remis coronavit in regem<sup>4</sup> sollempniter. Deinde, in Nativitate beatæ Mariæ, rex H[enricus] filiam suam imperatricem viro suo, comiti scilicet Andegavensi, destinavit.<sup>5</sup> Eodemque anno dedicata est ecclesia Christi Cantnariensis. Hugo quoque, abbas Redingiae, in archiepiscopum elititur Rothomagensem.

*De morte Boamundi, principis Antiocheni.*

fol 45 b.

Boamund  
II., prince  
of Antioch,  
slain.

Eodemque anno Rodoam, Halapiæ princeps, fines Rog.Wend. ii. 211. Antiochenos hostiliter ingressus, Boamundum, Antiochiæ principem, sibi occurrentem ut ipsum reprimeret,

son Philip, associated with him and crowned in 1129, did not occur till 13 Oct. 1131. See "L'Art de Vérifier les Dates," i. 574.

<sup>1</sup> Anno . . . m.c.xxx<sup>o</sup>.] On an erasure.

<sup>2</sup> propter] Partly on an erasure.

<sup>3</sup> Henrico] Henrio, MS.

<sup>4</sup> Louis le Jeune was not crowned till 25 Oct. 1131. Jaffé, p. 566.

<sup>5</sup> In the margin there is an addition, which has been subsequently erased, but which, by the aid of a chemical agent, may be read thus: "¶ Quoddam archanum. Nota, quid accedit ipsi, quæ [quando?] erat in navi, et duei ejus, seilieet, Stephano regnatio." See under the years 1153, 1155.

gladio confossum peremisit. Rex autem Jerosolimitanus A.D. 1130.  
 ab Antiochenis instantia magna vocatus, ut tantæ  
 Rog.Wend. ferat auxilium calamitati, festinato itinere, illuc iter  
 ii. 212. dirigit et vexilla; et Rodoam potenter fugato, dedit  
 filiæ suæ pro dote Laodiciam et Gabulum civitates.  
 Filiæ vero Boamundi<sup>1</sup> parvulæ, post mortem suam  
 fecit jurare Antiochiae principatum, et sic Jerosolimam  
 remeavit.

*De morte Baldewini, regis Jerosolimorum.*

Rog.Wend. Anno Domini M<sup>o</sup>.C<sup>o</sup>.XXX<sup>o</sup>.I<sup>o</sup>. rex Jerusalem Baldeuui- A.D. 1131.  
 ii. 212. nus, miles egregius, in gravem ægritudinem prolapsus, Death of  
 cum sensisset sibi diem mortis imminere,<sup>2</sup> vocatis ad Baldwin  
 II. se genero suo et filia, cum filio eorum jam bimulo,  
 nomine Baldeuuino, regni curam et plenam tradidit  
 potestatem. Ipse vero, optentis omnibus quæ Chris-  
 tiani sunt, tradidit spiritum, cum piis prædecessoribus  
 suis æterna præmia percepturus. Coronatus est autem Coronation  
 in regem Fulco, gener ejus, miles magnificus, in die of Fulk, as  
 Exaltationis sanctæ Crucis regni suscipiens diadema. king of  
 . Annoque sub eodem obiit Innocentius I. papa; suc- Jerusalem.  
 . cessit<sup>3</sup> autem Innocentius II.<sup>4</sup> Dedicatur quoque ab 14 Sept.  
 . eodem ecclesia Cluniacensis. Dedication  
 of the church of Cluni.

*Rex novum fecit episcopatum apud Karleolum.*

Rog.Wend. Anno Domini M<sup>o</sup>.C<sup>o</sup>.XXX<sup>o</sup>.II<sup>o</sup>. rex Henricus novum A.D. 1132.  
 ii. 212. fecit episcopatum apud Karleolum, in limbo scilicet Episcopal  
 Angliae et Galwalliae. Et posuit ibi primum episcopum, see founded  
 nomine Athelulphum, Sancti Oswaldi priorem, cui and Athel-  
 peccata solitus fuerat confitere. Hic autem creatus ulph made  
 bishop.

<sup>1</sup> *Boamundi*] Boamdi, MS.

<sup>2</sup> *iminere*] iminere, MS.

<sup>3</sup> *successit*] successit, MS.

<sup>4</sup> *Anno . . . Innocentius II.*] This is another of the marginal additions made by Matth. Paris to the Chro-

nicle of Wendover in A., and subsequently inserted in the text of C. D., and repeated here and in F. For *Innocentius I.* we should read *Honorius II.*

A.D. 1132. antistes, in ecclesia sedis suæ canonicos posuit regulares, et eam multis honoribus ampliavit. Eodemque anno natus est Galfrido Plantagenest, comiti Andegavensi,<sup>1</sup> ex filia regis Henrici filius, et vocatus est Henricus. Quod cum rex cognovisset,<sup>2</sup> convocatis regni principibus, filiam suam et heredes ex ea nascituros sibi constituit successores. Eodem quoque anno, defunctus est Robertus, Cestrensis episcopus,<sup>3</sup> cognomento Peccatum. Qui, rege Henrico concedente, sedem cathedralem transtulit ad Coventreiam, et locum illum caput constituit Merciorum. Successit autem ei Rogerus, archidiaconus Lincolnensis. Habet autem ille episcopatus usque hodie tres sedes, Cestrensem, Lichfeldensem, et Coventrensem. Eodemque anno Londinia pro magna parte combusta<sup>4</sup> est.

Henry constitutes his daughter, and her heirs, his successors. Death of Robert, bp. of Chester. Robert, archdn. of Lincoln, succeeds. Changes of the see of Lincoln.

Great part of London burnt.

*Fulco, rex Jerusalem, de multis Turcis triumphavit.*

Fulk, king of Jerusalem, defeats the Turks near Antioch. Anno quoque sub eodem infinita Turcorum multitudine, transito Eufrate fluvio, castra statuit in partibus Antiochenis. Contra quos Fulco, rex Jerusalem, ab Antiochenis urgenter vocatus, exercitum ducens, subito impetu in hostes facto, tria ex eis milia interfecit; et qui vivi remanserant, in fugam turpem sunt compulsi. Nostrates igitur victores ex hostium spoliis usque ad Marriage of nauseam sunt onusti, Antiochiam remeantes. Per Reimund, idem vero tempus, Reimundus, Pictavensium comes, Poitou, to Constantiam, Boamundi junioris filiam ducens, effectus a daughter of Boamund II. est princeps Antiochenus. Et eodem tempore reædificabatur a rege Jerusalem Fulcone Bersabee, urbs

Rog. Wend.  
ii. 213.

<sup>1</sup> *Andegavensi*] Andegavie, E.

<sup>2</sup> *cognovisset*] eongnovisset, MS.

<sup>3</sup> An error, copied from Wenvover. Robert Peehē, or Pecceth, died 22 Aug. 1126, and his successor, Roger, was consecrated 22 Dec.

1129. The see of Chester was transferred to Coventry by Robert de Limesey in April 1102. Fasti, i. 343.

<sup>4</sup> *combusta*] combusta, MS.

antiqua, quæ ab Ascalone xii. miliaribus distare A.D. 1132. videtur.

A.D. 1133.

*Terræ-motus et tenebrae in Anglia, et sol, d.*

Earth-quake and unusual

- . Anno Domini M<sup>o</sup>.C<sup>o</sup>.XXX<sup>o</sup>.III<sup>o</sup>., tenebrae factæ sunt in darkness.
- . Anglia, et terra mota est; sol quoque similis factus est lunæ tertiae. Rex Henricus extremo transfretavit. Eodemque anno idem rex manum sancti Jacobi misit R. Wend. . Radingum. Anno quoque sub eodem, defuncto Her-  
ii. 214. veo,<sup>1</sup> Elyensi episcopo, rex episcopatum Nigello con-tulit, et Galfrido cancellario Dunelmensem.

Henry re-turns to England, and gives the hand of S. James to Reading abbey.

Promotion of prelates.

*Matildis imperatrix peperit filium, quem vocavit Gaufridum.*

- Rog. Wend. Anno Domini M<sup>o</sup>.C<sup>o</sup>.XXX<sup>o</sup>.IIII<sup>o</sup>. Matildis imperatrix A.D. 1134.  
ii. 214. peperit filium, quem vocavit Gaufridum; unde rex Birth of Geoffrey of Henricus, qui circa idem tempus transfretaverat, præ Anjou. gaudio concepto de nepotibus sibi a Deo datis, illuc<sup>2</sup> Henry accessit, et per aliquot dies morabatur ibidem. Eodem crosses to Normandy. tempore defuncti sunt in itinere Romano episcopus Deaths of Landavensis,<sup>3</sup> et Gilebertus cito post, Londoniensis. prelates.

*Qualiter Robertus Curtheuse obierit.*

- . Eodemque anno, cum Dominus noster Jesus Christus, Cause of
- . qui neminem perire desiderat, jam duci Roberto satis the death of duke
- . amplum pœnitentiæ spatium et humiliationis concessis- Robert of
- . set, videlicet jam fere XXX<sup>ta</sup>. annorum in orbitate vel Normandy.
- . carcere transactorum, abusus est illo Dei beneficio. In-
- . tumuit enim superbiā, minis, maledictionibus<sup>4</sup> et de-
- . tractationibus, cum potius divinis jugiter obsequiis et

<sup>1</sup> Herveus died 30 Aug. 1131. Fasti, i. 326.

<sup>2</sup> illuc] W. and A. C. D. have in Normanniam.

<sup>3</sup> scil. Urbanus. See Fasti, ii. 241.

<sup>4</sup> maledictionibus] melediceioni-bus, MS.

A.D. 1134. precibus assiduis incubuisse teneretur, utpote diu afflictus et jam senex. Contigit igitur una dierum festivorum, cum rex novam vestem, quam vulgariter robam appellamus, de scarleto sumens, assuetus de eodem semper panno robam fratri suo Roberto transmittere, capam conabatur induere, sed invenit introitum capucii, quod *gulerun* Gallice appellatur, nimis arctum; unde contigit, quod unam suturæ puncturam tantum confringens, eam depositit, et dixit, "Hæc capa deferatur danda fratri meo R[oberto], qui argutius me caput habet." Quæ cum ipsi delata fuisset induenda, invenit illam jam dictam puncturam, quæ per incuriam cæsoris,<sup>1</sup> quia minima, relinquebatur non resuta, ait dux; "Unde hæc. quam sentio fractura?" Et nuncius quæ contigerant seriatim jocando duci referebat. Et dux, quasi alto. fol. 46 a. vulnere saucius irruerat, dicens, "Heu, heu, nunc nimis. vivo! Quid adhuc vitam protraho infelicem? Ecce, frater meus, immo proditor meus et supplantator, me jam adeo spernit et vilem habet, ut mihi,<sup>2</sup> tanquam præbendario suo, pro elemosina suos veteres et dissutos. transmittit panniculos!" Flens igitur et ejulans devovit manducare ex tunc et deinceps, nec postea cibum vel potum sumere voluit, in semetipso desæviens et deficiens; et sic mortuus est,<sup>3</sup> maledicens diei nativitatis.

His burial at Gloucester

Sickness of the empress.

His burial at Gloucester

Sickness of the empress.

Et infortunio condolens, jussit eum in ecclesia conventuali. Gloverniae reverenter sepeliri. Jacuit autem eo tempore Rog. Wend. imperatrix filia regis graviter infirmata, propter difficultatem partus filii sui, quem nuper pepererat; sed matrona prudens thesauros suos viduis, orphanis, et aliis pauperibus larga manu distribuit, et sic mortis evasit periculum.

<sup>1</sup> *cæsoris*] So also A. F.; cessoris, C. D. The Edd. have *incisoris*, but without authority.

<sup>2</sup> *mihi*] michi, MS.

<sup>3</sup> *est*] Interlined.

*De morte Henrici I. regis.*

Rog. Wend. Anno M<sup>o</sup>.C<sup>o</sup>.XXX<sup>o</sup>.V<sup>o</sup>. rex moratus in Normannia,<sup>1</sup> cum A.D. 1135.  
ii. 215. die quadam a venatu rediisset,<sup>2</sup> apud Sanctum Dionisium in silva Leonum de murena comedit avidius, quam<sup>3</sup> amare præ ceteris consuevit; et, cum medici eam<sup>4</sup> ei prohibuissent, rex minime adquievit. Cum autem, natura succumbente, invaluissest infirmitas,<sup>5</sup> rex Henricus, regum terrenorum maximus, in fata concessit, cum regnasset xxxv. annis ac tribus mensibus.<sup>6</sup> Illius Violent wind. autem obitum ventus vehementissimus præsignavit, qui in vigilia Symonis et Judæ turres, ædificia et arbores 27 Oct. usquequa subvertit. Luna etiam eodem anno passa Eclipse of est eclipsim mirabiliter, iiii<sup>o</sup>. kalendas Augusti. Hic 29 July. rex magnificus ac piissimus pro animæ suæ redemptione. cœnobia fundavit de Radinges,<sup>7</sup> de Cirencestre;<sup>8</sup> de Prato Monasteries founded ante Rothomagum, et de Mortuo-Mari; municipia vero, ed by præter turres et castella, xxv. opere construxit sump- Henry. tuoso. Proli suæ vero et toti generi suo prudenter ac magnifice providit. Corpus autem regis apud Rotho- magum diu jacebat inhumatum, quia vivus desiderave- rat et præceperat, ut corpus ejus, ubique moreretur, apud Radingum intumularetur. Viscera tamen ejus, Rog. Wend. cerebrum et oculi apud Rothomagum sunt humata. ii. 216. Reliquum vero corpus cultello incisum, sale et mirra Putres- respersum, pro fœtore intolerabili quem cadaver exha- cent state of the labat et circumstantes inficiebat, in coriis insutum est royal taurinis, cum pannis ceratis. Unde et medicus ille, qui magno pretio conductus caput mortui securi diffidit, ut

<sup>1</sup> *Normannia*] Normanniam, MS. and A. C. pr. m., D. F.

<sup>2</sup> *rediisset*] redisset, MS.

<sup>3</sup> *quam*] At first written *quas*.

<sup>4</sup> *eam*] At first *eas*, as in W. A. C. D.

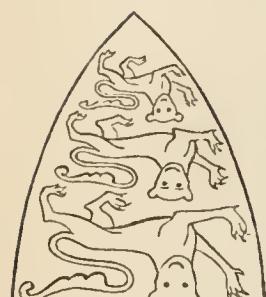
<sup>5</sup> *infirmitas*] imfirmitas, MS.

<sup>6</sup> In W. A. C. D. is added, " prima die Decembris;" but according to Flor. Wig., p. 75, and Gervase, col. 1339, he died 2 Dec.

<sup>7</sup> *Radinges*] Radingo, E.

<sup>8</sup> *Cirencestre*] Eueneestre, MS. and F.; Eueneestre, E.

A.D. 1135. cerebrum extraheret nimio jam fœtore corruptum, cecidit in extasim;<sup>1</sup> et quamvis lintheaminibus caput ejus involvisset, et species odoriferas prægustasset, ex fœtore tamen, licet ad talia assuetus, cirurgicus ille extinctus est, pretio sibi pacto male gavisus. Et ille fuit ultimus ex multis, quos rex Henricus interemit. Hoc quoque creditur divinitus evenisse, ut sic saltem cognoscant etiam gloriosi suæ carnis vilitatem.<sup>2</sup> Inde quoque corpus regium deportatum est Cadomum, ubi pater ejus requiescit. Et cum esset in ecclesia positum ante patris tumbam, cœpit humor continuo niger et horribilis coria taurina cum pannis eliquando, in ore olei penetrare; qui in vasis sub feretro susceptus, magnum intuentibus horrorem et olfacentibus periculum pestifer inculcavit. Et nisi hiemalis frigiditas fœtoris magnitudinem repressisset, tam aera vicinum quam homines letaliter infecisset approximantes.<sup>3</sup>

Obiit rex Henricus I<sup>us</sup>.

The king's body is carried to Caen.

*Nota vilitatem carnis humanae. Prodest enim ad humiliatem.*

### *De sepultura regis Henrici I.*

Burial of Henry I. at Reading.

Tandem cadaver memoratum in Angliam, sequente Rog. Wend. ii. 216. multa nobilium, prælatorum et religiosorum turba, est allatum, et apud Radingum in ecclesia conventuali, quam ipse rex a fundamentis construxerat, ante majus altare regaliter, ut decuit, præsentibus archiepiscopis. episcopis et abbatibus propter hoc convocatis, diebus Nataliciis est sepultum.

<sup>1</sup> *cecidit in extasim]* Added in marg.

<sup>2</sup> In the margin is drawn the shield of England reversed, with a crown beneath.

In the lower margin is added the following note: "Considera, homo, licet pulcher[r]ime, vilitatem corporis tui, quia propter hoc haec scribuntur." In F. this note is introduced into the text, after the word *extasim*.

<sup>3</sup> *Unde et medicus . . . approximantes]* The whole of this passage is marked in the margin with a red wavy line, and the words "Vucat, rucat, quia offendiculum," yet a similar passage appears in Wendover and in the larger Chronicle, A. C. D., and is evidently borrowed from Hen. Hunt., p. 386. See also Gerv. Cant., col. 1339, and Hoveden, col. 481.

*Stephanus, filius Theobaldi, comitis Blesencis,  
coronatur.<sup>1</sup>*

Rog.Wend Anno Domini M<sup>o</sup>.C<sup>o</sup>.XXXVI<sup>o</sup>.<sup>2</sup> Defuncto autem rege A.D. 1136.  
 ii. 216. Henrico I. antequam corpus ejus sepulturæ traderetur, Stephen,  
 Stephanus, nepos ejusdem regis ex sorore Adala, uxore count of  
 scilicet Theobaldi, comitis Bononiæ, et frater Theobaldi Blois,  
 junioris, comitis Blesencis, vir magnæ strenuitatis et usurps the  
 audaciæ, quamvis sacramentum fidelitatis imperatrici crown.  
 de regno Angliæ nunquam sibi usurpando præcipue  
 Rog.Wend. jurasset, diadema tamen regium, Deum temptans et  
 ii. 217. fidem violans, temere invasit. Unde, Deo judice et  
 ultore, parvo tempore inde in pace gaudebat, sicut  
 sequens sermo declarabit; sub gladio enim vivens, ætatis  
 suæ partem consumpsit potiorem. Congregatis igitur  
 Londoniis regni magnatibus, meliorationem legum pro-  
 misit certissime, juxta piam universitatis provisionem.  
 Willelmus quoque, Cantuariensis archiepiscopus, qui  
 primus sacramentum ex omnibus prælatis fecerat  
 imperatrici, de regno Angliæ contuendo sibi et con-  
 servando, Stephanum in regem consecravit, vicesima Coronatur  
 secunda die<sup>3</sup> post mortem regis avunculi sui. Quid rex Ste-  
 plura? Hiis visis, omnes, tam præsules quam comites phanus.  
 et barones, qui filiæ regis et heredibus suis juraverant The pre-  
 fidelitatem, consensum unanimem præbuerunt, dicentes lates and  
 fore nimis turpe, si tot nobiles, enervato tam nobili, swear  
 alicui feminæ subderentur. Hugo præterea Bigod, fealty to  
 Henrici regis senescallus, præstito juramento, probavit nobles  
 coram archiepiscopo Cantuariensi, quod, cum rex ageret  
 in extremis, imperatricem exheredavit, et Stephanum  
 sibi constituit successorem. Die igitur sancti Stephani, 26 Dec.

<sup>1</sup> The shield of England, erect, with a crown above, is drawn in the margin.

<sup>2</sup> Anno . . . m.c.xxxvi.] Written over an erasure of part of the rubric. It is copied in F. In W. and A. C.

D., much of what follows is entered under the year 1135.

<sup>3</sup> This date is taken from Malm., ii. 704. Hoveden and other authorities say 26 Dec., as, indeed, is stated further on.

A.D. 1136. omnium cum favore idem Stephanus, ut prætactum est, per ministerium Willelmi, Cantuarieusis archiepiscopi, diadematè suscepto, rex est ab omnibus acclamatus, et initiale festum regale splendide celebravit.

*Juramentum Stephani, novi regis.*

Stephen  
confirms  
the cove-  
nants  
sworn to  
at his coro-  
nation.

Coronatione itaque magnifice completa, homagiisque Rog. Wend. susceptis, perrexit rex novus Oxoniam, ibique confir- <sup>ii. 217.</sup> mavit pacta, quæ Deo, populo et ecclesiæ sanctæ in die coronationis suæ in districto fidei examine spo- pondit, quæ hæc fuerunt: Primo, cum juramento vovit firmissime, tactis cum Dominico corpore evan- geliis,<sup>1</sup> quod, defunctis episcopis vel abbatibus, non retineret ecclesias vacantes in manu sua, sed statim electioni canonicæ consentiret, et electos continuo investiret. Secundo, quod nullius clerici vel laici silvas in manu retineret, sicut rex Henricus fecerat, qui singulis annis eos implacitaverat, si vel venationem cepissent in silvis propriis, vel si eas ad proprias necessitates distraherent. Tertio vovit, quod Dane- Rog. Wend. geld,<sup>2</sup> id est, de qualibet hida terræ duos solidos, quod antecessores ejus accipere consueverant pro sustinenda guerra contra Danos, nec tempore pacis voluerunt remittere, ipse benigne in perpetuum condonaret. Hæc autem specialiter, et alia multa generaliter se juravit servaturum, sed, humani generis inimico procurante, fidem in omnibus enormiter violans, nihil horum, quæ Deo promiserat, observavit.

*De quibusdam malis pronosticis.*

Thunder-  
storm on  
the day of

Eodem vero anno, in triste præsagium futurorum, contra naturam hyemis, horribilia tonitrua cum damp-

---

<sup>1</sup> *evangeliiis*] euangeliiis, MS. | <sup>2</sup> *Danegeld*] Daneweld, MS. and F.

. noso fulgure et stupenda coruscatione,<sup>1</sup> adeo mundum A.D. 1136.  
.. perturbatione concussit<sup>2</sup> die qua Stephanus rex appli- Stephen's  
.. cuit, quod videretur mundialis machina in antiquum landing.  
.. chaos reversura.

*De victrici combustione Londoniis.*

. Ecclesia quoque Sancti Pauli Londoniensis eodem The church  
.. anno ab igne, qui accensus est ad pontem, est com- of St. Paul,  
.. busta;<sup>3</sup> qui debacchando<sup>4</sup> perrexit usque ad ecclesiam London,  
.. Danorum. Eodemque anno Stephanus rex<sup>5</sup> de se Stephen  
.. confisus et jam bene corroboratus, præsentibus archi- seizes the  
.. episcopis cum duobus episcopis Wintoniensi et Sares- treasures of  
.. biriensi, totum thesaurum, quem avunculus suus the late  
.. congesserat, occupavit, videlicet centum milia libras,<sup>6</sup> king.  
.. exceptis vasis et jocalibus. Tunc quoque<sup>7</sup> comes  
.. Gloverniæ venit in Angliam, Robertus nomine; cuius  
.. prudentia et fortitudine rex S[tephanus] sustentabatur,  
.. et episcopi ei inclinarunt.

*Concordia facta est inter regem S[tephanum] et regem  
Scotorum.*

Rog. Wend. Per idem tempus David, rex Scotorum, qui im- David,  
ii. 218. peratrici fidelitatem fecerat, in Angliam hostiliter king of  
veniens, Carleolum<sup>8</sup> et Novum-Castellum super Thy- Scotland,  
nam cepit, et suos imposuit. Promovit igitur rex takes  
Stephanus contra eum exercitum copiosum, et regi Carlisle  
Scotorum potenter occurrit apud Dunelmum. Sed cum and New-  
ipsius impetus nimis formidaretur, intermeantibus castle.  
amicis, concordatus est cum eodem, quia freno discre-  
tionis<sup>9</sup> cohibitus, rex David reddidit Novum-Castellum;  
Karleolum vero retinuit regis Stephani voluntate, pre-

<sup>1</sup> *coruscatione*] coruschaione, MS.

<sup>2</sup> *concussit*] So also in F.

<sup>3</sup> *combusta*] combusta, MS.

<sup>4</sup> *debacchando*] debacando, MS.

<sup>5</sup> *rex*] Added in marg.

<sup>6</sup> *libras*] Altered by a recent hand to *librarum*.

<sup>7</sup> *Tunc quoque*] On an erasure.

<sup>8</sup> *Carleolum*] Karlel', E.

<sup>9</sup> *discretionis*] disresconis, MS.

A.D. 1136. cibus amicorum emolliti. Rex tamen Scotorum homa- .  
 Stephen gives Huntingdon to the son of king David. gium regi Stephano non fecit, licet postulatus, quia .  
 homagium et fidelitatem filiae regis Henrici et nepti. suæ ante fecerat.<sup>1</sup> Filius autem regis David homo regis Stephani effectus est, et dedit ei rex jure per-  
 petuo Huntendonam de se tenendam. Rediens vero rex ad propria, tenuit curiam Londoniis ad Pascha, qua nunquam in Anglia splendidior tenebatur, non tantum . in esculentis vel poculentis, sed in auro et argento, . R.Wend. ii. 219.  
 Splendid court held at London.

30 April. Rumours of Stephen's death. Hugh Bigot seizes the castle of Norwiche. Stephen takes the castle of Batinton. Siege of Exeter. Clemene of Stephen blamed. The king occupies the isle of Wight, and banishes

minicæ Ascensionis, nescitur quo semine susurrorum . initiali, divulgatum fuit per Angliam regem esse mor- tuum; unde maxima in regno surrexit perturbatio. Nam Hugo Bigot castellam Norwici ingressus, noluit illud reddere, nisi regi; et attemptata sunt alibi multis locis facta temeraria, quæ deinceps vel non . sedabantur, vel difficultate, et cum dampno et scandalo . sunt pacificata. Et hoc fuit magni<sup>2</sup> mali pullulantis . seminarium, ut sermo sequens declarabit Cœpit ergo . ex hinc Normannoruim oriri proditio et apparere, sed rex viriliter resistens, actibus vividis se probavit non . defunctum. Nam primo cepit castellum de Batintona, cuiusdam scilicet Roberti, proditoris sui. Indeque Exoniam<sup>3</sup> obsidens, quam tenebat Baldewinus de Redvers contra eum, violenter, sed sero et cum difficultate, castrum sibi redditum optinuit cum civitate. Rex autem quorundam effeminatorum et pusillanimium . pravo usus consilio, debitam vindictam in captos suos non exercuit proditores, unde multa ei postea mala . machinabantur, secundum illud propheticum, “ Mise- reamur impio, et non discet facere justitiam.”<sup>2</sup> Per- exit igitur rex ad Vectam insulam, et abstulit eam Baldeuuino memorato; et jam magis provocatus, quia .

<sup>1</sup> *ante fecerat*] Added on to the text.

<sup>2</sup> *magni*] mangni, MS.

<sup>3</sup> *Exoniam*] Oxoniam, MS. and F.; but the reading adopted from

W. and A. D. is the right one, as

confirmed by the Sax. Chron., p. 382, and Hen. Hunt., p. 389.

<sup>4</sup> Is. xxvi. 10.

. minime humiliabatur, ipsum ab Anglia affugaus, exilio A.D. 1136.  
 . condempnavit. Rex itaque, hiis prospere gestis, venit Baldwin de  
 . venatum apud Brantonam, non longe ab Huntendona, Redvers.  
 . et ibi de forestis procerum suorum et venationibus et lates his  
 . fol. 47 a. quibusdam libertatibus, voluntarie et non judicialiter, He vio-  
 . multos<sup>1</sup> supplantavit, et votum, quod Deo et populo rights at  
 . fecerat, a justitia nequiter exorbitans, violavit. forest  
 Bramton.

*Gaufridus, comes Andegavensis, quædam castra  
 Normanniae sibi subjugavit.*

Rog.Wend. Eodem tempore Gaufridus, comes Andegaviæ, et uxor Geoffrey,  
 ii. 219. ejus Matildis sine difficultate aliqua castra Normanniae count of  
 optimuerunt, cum firmitatibus omnibus Willelmi Tale- Anjou,  
 vaz, quas habuerat in manu sua, exulato Willelmo. aquires some  
 Inde, mense Augusto, cum apud Rothomagum perve- castles in  
 nissent, peperit Matildis ibi comiti Gaufrido filium Normandy.  
 Rog.Wend. suum tertium, quem vocavit Willelmum. Et jam Birth of  
 ii. 220. comes ex successibus cœpit superbire, et in suos desæ- William,  
 vire. Proceres vero Normanniae super hoc indignantes,<sup>2</sup> The Nor-  
 miserunt propter Theobaldum, comitem Blesencem, man nobles  
 fratrem regis Stephani, ut ad eos venire non pigrita- invite  
 ret, Normanniam recepturus. Qui veniens Luxovias, Theobald,  
 in jejunio decimi mensis, audivit ibi Stephanum count of  
 trem suum in regem Angliæ sullimatum,<sup>3</sup> et in solio  
 regni jam bene roboratum. Comes vero Gloverniæ Falaise is  
 Robertus reddidit Theobaldo Falesiam, asportata prius given up  
 inde pecunia non modica de thesauro regis Henrici. to him.

*Obierunt Angliæ prælati.*

Rog.Wend. Anno quoque sub eodem Willelmus, Cantuariensis Deaths of  
 ii. 220. archiepiscopus, Willelmus Exoniensis, et Johannes Ro- prelates.  
 fensis<sup>4</sup> episcopi, obierunt.

<sup>1</sup> *multos*] Added in marg.

<sup>2</sup> *indignantes*] indingnantes, MS.

<sup>3</sup> *sullimatum*] Added in marg.

<sup>4</sup> John, bp. of Rochester, died

22 June 1137. Chron. Gerv., col.

1343.

*Rex Francorum cepit homagium Eustachii, de Normannia.*

A.D. 1137. Anno Domini M<sup>o</sup>.C<sup>o</sup>.XXX<sup>o</sup>.VII<sup>o</sup>. rex Anglorum Stephanus transfretavit in Normanniam, fugiente a facie ejus comite Andegavensi;<sup>1</sup> ubi, martiis actibus indulgens, omnia quæ incepit, potenter ac feliciter consummavit. Hostes enim dissipavit, hostilia castra subruit, et prosperatus est in actibus universis. Concordiam quoque cum Francorum rege prudenter composuit, et filius ejus Eustachius homagium ei de Normannia<sup>2</sup> fecit. Hæc autem videns consul Andegavensis Gaufridus, cuius uxori idem rex sacramentum fecerat, Angliam ab eo requirebat; sed tamen, cum vidisset se vires regias tunc temporis non posse superare, cepit inducias, acceptis ab ipso rege pro bono pacis v. milibus marcarum singulis annis percipiendis. Theobaldo etiam, fratri suo, comiti Blesenci, conquerenti quod injuste Angliam invaserat, cum esset [ætate]<sup>3</sup> minor, duo milia marcarum reddere<sup>4</sup> pepigit annuatim; et sic fratres pacificati, ab invicem recesserunt. Cunctis igitur ibidem prospere gestis, ad Angliam transfretavit.

Rog. Wend. ii. 220.

Stephen crosses to Normandy. He makes peace with the king of France, and his son Eustace does homage for Normandy.

Truee concluded with the count of Anjou.

Annual payment to Theobald, count of Blois.

Stephen returns to England.

*Obiit rex Francorum Lodowicus.*

Death of Louis VI. Eodemque anno obiit rex Francorum Lodowicus, et successit ei filius suus Lodowicus. Hic duxit uxorem Alienoram, filiam ducis Aquitanniæ, miræ speciei mulierem, ex qua duas filias generavit, quas duo filii magni comitis Theobaldi Flandrensis, Henricus et Theobaldus, duxerunt uxores, primogenitus primogenitam, et junior<sup>5</sup> natu juniores.<sup>6</sup>

Rog. Wend. ii. 221.

Louis VII. succeeds. Marriage of his daughters.

<sup>1</sup> *Andegavensi*] Andegvensi, MS.

<sup>2</sup> *Normania*] Normania, MS.

<sup>3</sup> *ætate*] Supplied from W. A. C. D.

<sup>4</sup> *reddere*] Added in marg.

<sup>5</sup> *junior*] minor, W. A. C. D.

<sup>6</sup> *juniorem*] minorem, W., but not I.

*De abominationibus, quas Scotti in Anglos exercebant.<sup>1</sup>*

Rog.Wend. Anno Domini M<sup>o</sup>.C<sup>o</sup>.XXX<sup>o</sup>.VIII<sup>o</sup>. Conradus Romanum A.D. 1138.  
ii.221. adeptus imperium, annis xv. imperavit. Eodemque Conrad III. elected emper. anno rex Anglorum Stephanus in diebus Nataliciis peror. Bedefordense castrum obsedit, dicens nulla hora pacem Siege of esse hostibus concedendam. Sed, antequam ei castrum Bedford castle. redderetur, rex Scotorum in Northanhumbriam exercitum ducens, tam ipse quam sui rem nimis execrabilis perpetrarunt. In ultionem enim et improperium The king of Scots invades imperatricis, cui etiam idem rex fidelitatem juraverat, mulieres gravidas findebant, et foetus anticipatos Cruelties . ab uteris, et lactentes nonnullos ab uberibus extra-committed . hebant, et corpuscula in altum projicientes,<sup>2</sup> super army. mucrones lancearum vel gladiorum recipiebant, ut viderentur Herodis tempora renovari; insuper presbiteros super altaria trucidabant, crucifixorum capita præcidebant. Quæcunque igitur Scotti contingebant, plena horroris et inhumanitatis<sup>3</sup> erant.

*Rex Stephanus] Scociam exterminando triumphavit.*

Rog.Wend. Rex igitur Stephanus exercitum grandem promovit Stephen  
ii. 221. in Scociam, sed, antequam illuc perveniret, rex Scoto- ravages the south of Rog.Wend. rum sese in sua recepit, loca petens inexpugnabilia. Scotland.  
ii. 222. Et rex Anglorum australes Scociæ partes igne et gladio devastavit, et hiis consummavit negotium Martis exterminiis. Et sic in Angliam victor remeavit.

<sup>1</sup> *exercebant*] exercebant, MS.

<sup>2</sup> *projicientes*] proicientes, MS.

<sup>3</sup> *inhumanitatis*] At first written

*humanitatis*, but corr. in marg.

A.D. 1138.

*Multiplicantur adversarii.*

The English nobles  
rise up  
against  
Stephen.

Shrews-  
bury castle  
is taken.  
Dover  
surrenders.

Exarsit interea tanta procerum contra eum indignatio,<sup>1</sup> ut fere ab omnibus hostiliter quæreretur.<sup>2</sup> Willelmus enim Taleboth Hertfordense castrum tenuit contra regem; Robertus, consul Gloverniæ, Ledes et Bristoldum. Hic erat filius nothus regis Henrici. Willelmus Luvel<sup>3</sup> tenuit contra eum castrum de Cari;<sup>4</sup> Paganellus, Ludehelawe; Willelmus de Moiun, castellum de Dunestor; Robertus de Lincolnia, castrum de Warham;<sup>5</sup> Eustachius filius Johannis, castellum de Meltona; Willelmus filius Alani, Salopesberi,<sup>6</sup> suum et quasi proprium; quod rex violenter cepit, et captorum in eo nonnullos suspendit. Quod audiens Walkelinus, qui castrum Doverense tenebat, illud reginæ reddidit<sup>7</sup> obsidenti.

Rog. Wend.  
ii. 222.

*Rex Scocice Northanhumbriam hostiliter ingreditur.*

The king  
of Scots  
again  
invades  
Northum-  
berland.  
He is  
opposed  
by the  
northern  
nobles at  
Alverton.

Occupato itaque rege Stephano circa partes australes Angliæ, David, rex Scotorum, innumerablem exercitum in Northanhumbriam promovit. Contra quem proceres regni borealis, jussu et ammonitione Turstani, Eboracensis archiepiscopi, fixo apud Alvertonam standardo, id est, regio insigni, viriliter restitcrunt. Hujus autem pugnæ<sup>8</sup> principes fuerunt, consul Willelmus Albemarliæ, Willelmus de Notingham, Walterus Espec, et Gilebertus de Lacey. Archiepiscopus vero, cum ægritudinis causa huic pugnæ interesse non posset,

Rog. Wend.  
ii. 222.

fol. 473

<sup>1</sup> *indignatio*] Added in marg.

<sup>2</sup> *quæreretur*] quateretur, W. A. C.

<sup>3</sup> *Luvel*] Bavel, MS. and F. This and other names are corrected from Hen. Hist., collated with W. A. C. D.

<sup>4</sup> *Cari*] Can, MS. and F.

<sup>5</sup> *Warham*] Watham, MS.; Walt-ham, F.

<sup>6</sup> *Salopesberi*] Salespesberi, MS.

<sup>7</sup> *reddidit*] reddit, MS. Corr. from W. A. C. D. F.

<sup>8</sup> *pugnæ*] pungne, MS.

Rog. Wend. misit loco suo Radulphum, Dunelmensem<sup>1</sup> episcopum, A.D. 1138.  
 ii. 223. ad populum exhortandum. Qui, stans in acie media, Speech of  
 in loco eminenti, usus est hujusmodi incentivo : "Pro- Ralph,  
 ceres Angliæ clarissimi, et Normannigenæ, contra quos of the  
 audax Francia contremiscit, quos Troja, flos Asiæ, hue  
 transmisit, erigite capita et pensate, quod populorum  
 quisquiliæ vos ad prœlia provocaverunt; qui in hac  
 patria templa Dei violarunt, presbiteros occiderunt,  
 qui nec pueris nec pregnantibus pepercerunt. Suos  
 procul dubio peccatum illaqueabit. Utquid inertes et  
 inermes vos strenui et armati timeretis? Sed jam  
 finem loquendi conferunt hostes inordinate prorum-  
 pentes et prouentes, atque dissute, quod satis animo  
 meo dinoscitur complacere. Siquis autem vestrum pro  
 Deo pugnans et patria succubuerit, et morte pia occu-  
 buerit, absolvimus eum<sup>2</sup> ab omni pœna peccati." Ad  
 Rog. Wend. hoc autem respondit omnis populus gentis Anglorum,  
 ii. 224. "Amen! Amen!" Et reboabant montes et colles ex  
 animoso clamore.

*De campestri prælio inter Anglos et Scotos.*

Rog. Wend. Hunc autem clamorem audientes Scotti, vociferati Battle of  
 ii. 224. sunt omnes in modum muliercularum, insigne patrium 'the Stan-  
 exaltando, "Albany! Albany!" Sed extinctus est dard.'  
 cito clamor gladiorum tinnitu, et hastarum vibratarum  
 fragore, et ictuum immanitate, sauciatorum quoque  
 gemitu et clamore morientium. Turma Loenensium,  
 qui gloriam primi ictus a rege vix impetrarunt, aug-  
 mentatis<sup>3</sup> missilibus et lanceis longissimis, super aciem  
 equitum Anglorum loricatorum potenter irruunt; ad

<sup>1</sup> *Dunelmensem*] Copied from Wendover; but this is an error, since Geoffrey was bishop of Durham at the time. In Hen. Hunt. he is called "episcopum *Orcadum*," p. 388, and in John of Hexham,

"Radulfum Novellum, episcopum suffraganeum," col. 262. Cf. Cont. Flor. Wig., p. 89.

<sup>2</sup> *eum*] Interlined.

<sup>3</sup> *augmentatis*] *aumentatis*, MS.

A.D. 1138. quos, quasi muro ferreo offendentes, impenetrabiles invenerunt. Viri autem architenentes et arcubalistarii gentis Anglorum, equitibus permixti, imbre sagittarum et spiculorum grandine letali Scotos, quos inermes repererunt, penetrabant, ad Tartara destinatos. Tota namque gens Anglorum et decus Normannorum circum standardum congregata, manebat immobilis, quasi in acie una, disciplina militari castigata. Percusso vero casu sagitta summo Loenensium duce, corrut ipse, et gens ejus tota, hoc viso, in fugam est conversa. Quod et intuens Scotorum acies, quæ ex parte altera acerrime confligebat, animo consternata condoluit, et fugæ incunctanter<sup>1</sup> indulxit. Regalis autem acies, ex diversis gentibus constituta, simul ut haec vidit, cœperunt primo sigillatim,<sup>2</sup> deinde vero fugere cœtervatim, rege solo adhuc persistente. Quod amici regis intuentes, coegerunt eum equo ascenso fugere velocissimo. Cujus filius in armis strenuissimus, aliorum fugam non attendens, sed soli gloriæ ac virtuti inhians, acies hostium impetu ardenti percussit, licet illius agmina contra equites loricatos resistere non valerent; sed tandem armatorum violentia potenter in Rog. Wend. fugam ipse et sui sunt compulsi. Et sic feliciter post. ii. 225. cœdem inauditam Angli triumpharunt. In quo certamine undecim Scotorum milia fama perhibet trucidata, exceptis illis, qui in segetibus et dumetis inventi sunt letaliter vulnerati. Ex Anglorum autem omnibus equitibus frater Gileberti de Lascy solus inventus est trucidatus, et peditum admodum paucissimi. Et cum turpiter vincerentur Scotti, suis sceleribus<sup>3</sup> maculati, nævum opprobrii exinde contraxerunt indelebilem; cum enim illis satirice dicitur lingua sua patria, “Yry, yry, standard,” quasi obice telo confunduntur. Date of the battle.

<sup>1</sup> *incunctanter*] incunctanter, MS. | <sup>3</sup> *sceleribus*] celeribus, MS.  
<sup>2</sup> *sigillatim*] singillatim, MS.

mum mense Augusto, ex comprovincialibus gentis A.D. 1138.  
Transhumbranae.

*Comes Gaufridus multos sibi subjugavit.*

Rog. Wend. Eodem anno, mense Octobris, Gaufridus, comes Ande-  
ii. 225. gavensis, Oximenses<sup>1</sup> sibi subjugavit et Baiocenses, necnon et Falesiam obsidione vallavit. Geoffrey,  
count of  
Anjou,  
subdues  
several  
towns in  
Normandy.

*Eligitur Theobaldus in Cantuariensem archiepisco-  
patum.*

Rog. Wend. Anno quoque sub eodem Albericus, Hostiensis epi- The legate  
ii. 225. scopus et ecclesiæ Romanæ legatus, in Angliam veniens, Alberic  
holds a  
in Adventu Domini<sup>2</sup> Londoniis concilium in ecclesia council at  
Sancti Pauli celebravit. Ubi, ipso jubente legato, Hen- London.  
richus, Wintoniensis episcopus, Ricardum de Beumeis Richard de  
diaconum ordinavit. Et ipsa die, dum ordines celebra- Beumeis  
rentur, Theobaldus, abbas Beccensis, in archiepiscopum ordained  
Cantuariensem ab episcopis electus est, priore ecclesiæ Theobald,  
Cantuariensis Jeremia præsente. Qui ab ipso conse- abbat of  
cratus<sup>3</sup> legato, Romam profectus est, ubi a papa Inno- Bec, conse-  
centio pallium suscepit. centio of Canterbury.

*Rex Stephanus Scocium hostiliter ingressus, cum filio  
regis obside recessit.*

Rog. Wend. Anno Domini M<sup>0</sup>.C<sup>0</sup>.XXX<sup>0</sup>.IX<sup>0</sup>. rex Anglorum Stephanus A.D. 1139.  
ii. 225. post Natale Domini, castello de Liedes capto, perrexit Stephen  
marches  
Rog. Wend. in Scociam; et cum rem ibi ageret, ducibus Marte et again into  
ii. 226. Wlcano, rex Scotorum coactus est concordari cum Scotland.  
eodem. Henricum igitur, filium regis, obsidem rex The king  
of Scots

<sup>1</sup> *Oximenses*] Oxomenses, MS. and F. Corr. from W. A. C. D.

<sup>2</sup> On the 13th Dec. Cont. Flor. Wig., p. 114; Gerv., col. 1346.

<sup>3</sup> He was not consecrated till 8 Jan. 1139. Fasti, i. 8.

A.D. 1139. S[tephanus] secum ducens in Angliam, Ludehlawe castellum obsedit. Ubi idem Henricus, ab inclusis unco ferreo equo abstractus, pæne intra muros projectus est, sed rex ipse ab hostibus eum, ut miles egregius, laudabiliter retraxit. Inde ad Oxoniam, subjugato castello, gives his son as a hostage. fol. 48a.  
 Siege of Ludlow castle. Seizure of the bishops of Salisbury and Lincoln. The castle of Devizes and town of Salisbury taken. Marriage of Eustace, son of Stephen, to the daughter of king Louis. The castles of Newark and Sleaford surrendered.

profectus, cepit ibi in curia sua nimis perniciose Rogerum, Saresbiriensem episcopum, et Alexandrum Lincolniensem, ipsius nepotem, violenter, viliter eos contrectans,<sup>1</sup> nihil rectitudinis recusantes. Ponens igitur in carcerem antistitem Alexandrum, Saresbiriensem secum duxit ad castellum ejus, quod Divises vocatur, quo non est<sup>2</sup> splendidius intra fines Europæ. Afflictus igitur fame, et collo filii ejus, qui cancellarius fuerat, laqueum annexens, ut suspenderetur,<sup>3</sup> hac arte castellum optimus<sup>4</sup> oppidum<sup>5</sup> in suam recepit potestatem. Accipiensque thesauros pontificis, comparavit inde Eustachio filio suo Constantiam, sororem Lodouici, regis Francorum, matrimonio copulandam. Inde quoque rex recedens, similiter egit de Alejandro, episcopo Lincolniensi, donec reddidisset eidem castella de Neuwerc et de Latforda.<sup>6</sup>

*Matildis imperatrix venit in Angliam.*

Arrival of the empress Matilda. She is received into Arundel castle.

Eodem vero tempore Matildis, filia regis Henrici, Rog. Wend. quæ fuerat imperatrix, cui etiam Anglia jurata erat, cum comite Roberto fratre suo in Anglia venit; et ad Rog. Wend. portum Harundel applicans, a Willelmo de Albineto, qui reginam Adelizam, quæ castellum de Arundel et comitatum a rego Henrico pro dote habebat, recepta est cum lætitia et summa alacritate. Comes autem

<sup>1</sup> *viliter eos contrectans*] Added in marg.

<sup>2</sup> *est*] Added in marg., and with a plummet is written *invenitur*.

<sup>3</sup> *suspenderetur*] Written *suspenderentur*, but *n* expuncted.

<sup>4</sup> *Saresbiriense*] An error for *Sire-*

*burnense*, as in W. A. C. D. I., and confirmed by Hen. Hunt., p. 389.

<sup>5</sup> *oppidum*] *opidum*, MS.

<sup>6</sup> *Latforda*] So also in W. A. C. D.; *Eslefford*, Malm. ii. 718; *Slaforde*, Hen. Hunt., p. 389.

Glovernæ Robertus, cum x. militibus et totidem sagit- A.D. 1139.  
tariis equestribus, per medium terram regis Stephani  
transiens, Walingefordiam pervenit, et inde Gloverniam,  
annuncians adventum imperatricis Brieno filio-Comitis Brian Fitz-  
et Miloni de Glovernia, et quod eam apud Arundel Count, and  
reliquerat cum uxore sua et aliis.<sup>1</sup> Qui lætati sunt Milo of  
valde de adventu illius, et sese sollerter ad prælia Gloucester,  
prepararunt. prepare to take her part.

*Surrexit murmur et rebellio contra regem Stephanum.*

Anno quoque sub eodem Wintoniensis episcopus, Council at  
frater regis Stephani et apostolice sedis legatus, pro Winches-  
eo quod rex invitatos ad prandium quosdam episcopos ter, to  
et alios nobiles proditiose nimis ac indecenter, ut præ- which  
dictum est, ad deditio[n]em castrorum coegerat, indig- Stephen is  
nans; <sup>2</sup> cum Theobaldo archiepiscopo et aliis episcopis et summoned.  
prælatis Angliæ concilium apud Wintoniam celebrarunt,  
iii<sup>o</sup>. kalendas Septemb[ris], ad quod fecerunt regem 30 Aug.  
evocari. Qui comitem Albericum de Ver, in causarum Alberic de  
varietatibus exercitatum,<sup>3</sup> misit ad concilium, de cap- Vere is  
tione dictorum episcoporum, super qua erat impetus, sent by the  
allegantem et factum regis defendantem, et dicentem, king as his  
tempus belli horrere, cuius lex exlex est, et multa  
exercere<sup>4</sup> esse inevitabile, quæ pacis tempore constat  
emendanda. Et sic, sub spe humilitatis et satisfacti- He loses  
onis super-filialiter promissæ sed nunquam solutæ, ab favour with  
concilio recesserunt. Fama vero regis non mediocriter ex tunc cœpit denigrari, et aversa sunt multorum corda, many.  
qui de fidei regiae læsione graviter sunt conquesti.

*Oriuntur dissensiones et mala in Anglia multa.*

Rog. Wend. Eodem quoque anno obiit Rogerus, antistes Death of  
ii. 227. Saresbiriensis,<sup>5</sup> tam senio confectus quam mœrore. Post cujus Roger,  
bishop of Salisbury.

<sup>1</sup> *aliis*] aliis impedimentis, W. A.  
C. D.

<sup>2</sup> *indignans*] indignantes, MS. and  
F. Corr. from A. C. D.

<sup>3</sup> *exercitatum*] excercitatum, MS.

<sup>4</sup> *exercere*] excercere, MS.

<sup>5</sup> *Saresbiriensis*] Saresbȝ, MS.

A.D. 1139. mortem rex Stephanus exilio dampnavit Nigellum,  
 Nigel, Elyensem episcopum, quia nepos erat Rogeri, Sares-  
 bishop of biriensis episcopi, a quo in ejus perniciem traxerat  
 Ely, exiled. incentivum. Cessaverunt igitur ab hoc tempore in  
 Miserable state of England. Anglia curiae regis et festivitates sollempnes; pax nus-  
 quam, cædibus et incendiis omnia vastabantur. Ve-  
 rumtamen, procurantibus episcopis, abbatibus et viris  
 Places of refuge respected. religiosis, non sine pretiosis munieribus, deferebatur.  
 confugientibus ad ecclesiam et cimiterium; similiter,  
 sed non adeo confidenter et secure, aratri et aratoribus  
 arantibus, et crucibus in compitis.

*Obiit Eboracensis.*

Death of Thurstan, archbishop of York. William, chancellor of York, succeeds.

Tunc quoque temporis, Turstano, Eboracensi<sup>1</sup> archi- Rog. Wend. ii. 227.  
 episcopo defuncto, Wiilelmus, ejusdem ecclesiæ cancel- .  
 larius et postea thesaurarius,<sup>2</sup> successit.<sup>3</sup>

*Rex Stephanus Lincolniam obsedit.*

A.D. 1140. Anno Domini M<sup>0</sup>.C<sup>0</sup>.XL<sup>0</sup>. rex Anglorum Stephanus Rog. Wend.  
 Siege of Lincoln. infra dies Natalicios urbem Lincolniæ obsedit, non de- ii. 227.  
 ferens tantæ sollempnitati. Cujus firmitates Ranulphus, R. Wend. ii. 228.  
 comes Cestrensis, receperat paulo ante, qui etiam regem Stephanum arcebat ab ingressu civitatis usque ad  
 2 Feb. Purificationem beatæ Mariæ. Tunc vero comes præ-  
 fatus, cum Roberto, filio regis Henrici et comite Glo-  
 verniæ, socero suo, et militia magna nimis, Lincolniam  
 venit, ut solveret obsidionem; atque paludem intrans-  
 meabilem audacter transivit, et ipsa die, aciebus dis-  
 positis, regi bellum indixit. Ipse autem cum suis, ut  
 Forces of the earl of Chester. vir admirandæ probitatis et audaciæ, aciem primam sus-  
 cepit gubernandam; secundam illi, quos rex Stephanus exilio condempnarat; tertiam comes Glovernensis Ro-

<sup>1</sup> *Eboracensi*] Eboȝ, MS.<sup>2</sup> *thesaurarius*] thesaurius, MS.<sup>3</sup> He was not consecrated till 26

Sept. 1144. Fasti, iii, 99.

bertus cum suis commilitonibus conducebat. Rex igitur A.D. 1140. super hiis certificatus, missam in ipsa sollempnitate Purificationis audivit ; ubi, cum de more cereum honori regio condignum accensum Deo offerens, manibus Alex- Prognos- andri episcopi imponeret, extinctus est et confactus, in ties pre- triste præsagium futurorum periculorum in foribus im- the battle. minentium.<sup>1</sup> Cecidit insuper super altare vas eucaristiae cum corpore Christi, rupto filo, præsente episcopo ; quod regiæ ruinæ pronosticum fuit manifestum. Porro rex The king's forces. magnificus talia non librans, summa sollicitudine acies disponit. Ipse quoque pedes omnem loricatorum mul- titudinem circa se, abductis equis, argumentose ac instructissime secundum militarem disciplinam collocavit, consules omnes cum suis commilitonibus in duabus aciebus equis instituit pugnaturos ; sed acies eorum admodum parvæ existentes, paucos secum factos et factiosos<sup>2</sup> comites habuerunt. Acies tamen regalis maxima erat, unico vexillo solummodo insignita.

*Belli congressio ; capitur rex Stephanus].*

Rog. Wend. In principio autem pugnæ,<sup>3</sup> acies exheredatorum, quæ Battle  
ii. 228. præibat, aciem percussit regalem, in qua erant<sup>4</sup> comes before Lincoln.  
Alanus, comesque Robertus de Meslent, Hugo vero  
Rog. Wend. Bigod, comes Estanglorum, comes Symon, cum illo de  
ii. 229. Waranna, tanto impetu, quod alii eorum occisi, alii  
capti, alii autem per fugam sunt elapsi. Acies quoque,  
cui præerat comes Albemarlensis, et Willelmus Ypres-  
sis, percussit Walenses, qui a latere procedebant, ipsos-  
que compulit in fugam ; sed et acies comitis Cestriæ  
in cohortem<sup>5</sup> irruit memoratam, et, sicut acies prior,  
dissipata est in momento. Quo viso, fugerunt omnes

<sup>1</sup> *imminentium*] imminentium, MS.

<sup>2</sup> *fictos et factiosos*] At first written *ficti et factosi*, as in W.A.C.D., and confirmed by Hen. Hunt., p. 391. F. follows the correction.

<sup>3</sup> *pugnæ*] pungne, MS.

<sup>4</sup> *erant*] erat, MS. and F.

<sup>5</sup> *cohortem*] choortem, MS.

A.D. 1140. equites regis, et Willelmus Yprensis, vir consularis, atque alii, qui fugæ non patuerunt,<sup>1</sup> omnes capti sunt vineulis mancipandi. Accidit autem res miranda, dum rex Stephanus, ut leo rugiens, solus in campo hinc illinc gladio fulminante desæviret, ita ut nullus ad eum accederet, mutato bellandi instrumento, cum gladius confractus deficeret, stridens dentibus spumantibus more apri silvestris, turmas in se irruentes bipenni, quam tenebat, repellens, laudem sibi perpetuam comparavit. O, si centum sibi similes associarentur, non captionis jacturam profecto rex bellipotens incurrisset, cum ipse solus vix potuit a tot hostibus capi vel superari! Captus est igitur rex Anglorum Stephanus in die Purificationis beat æ Mariæ, et ad imperatricem ducitur præsentandus; inque turri de Bristoldo tutæ custodiæ mancipatur.

Capture  
of king  
Stephen.  
2 Feb.

Eclipse of  
the sun.

### *Eclipsis solis.*

Eodemque anno eclipsis solis<sup>2</sup> facta est per totam Angliam horribilis et tenebrosa, ut imis<sup>3</sup> corpora cœlestia in suo defectu concordarent.

### *Imperatrix a multis suscipitur in Dominam.*

The em-  
press is  
generally  
acknow-  
ledged as  
'Lady.'

Quo completo bello, imperatrix pæne ab omni An- Rog.Wend.  
glorum gente suscipitur in Dominam reverenter, affir- ii. 229.  
mant quod justitiae propagator Deus jus rerum eventu declaravit; exceptis Kentensibus, ubi regina regis Stephanī et Willelmus Yprensis, qui contra eam pro viribus decertabant, morabantur.<sup>4</sup> Suscepta est autem ipsa imperatrix ab Alberico, legato Romano, et postea Rog.Wend.  
ii. 230.

<sup>1</sup> *fugæ non patuerunt]* So A. C. D.  
In W., *fugæ non paruerunt*; but in  
ed. Wend. and Edd., *fugere non po-  
tuerunt.*

<sup>2</sup> *solis]* Added in marg.

<sup>3</sup> *imis]* So also F.

<sup>4</sup> *morabantur]* Added in marg.

a Willelmo,<sup>1</sup> Wintoniensi episcopo, necnon a Londoni- A.D. 1140. ensium civitate. Sed mox, in eadem facta seditione, a She is Londoniensibus expulsa, regem Stephanum poni jussit <sup>expelled from</sup> in compedibus. Et sic post paucos dies, cum avunculo London. suo rege Scotorum, et fratre suo comite Roberto, et aliis armatorum copiis, turrem Wintoniensis episcopi Winchester obsedit, et civitatem gravi afflictione contrivit, et cives <sup>besieged.</sup> xii<sup>cim.</sup> captos xviii<sup>o.</sup> kalendas Octobris, ad gravem <sup>14 Sept.</sup> compulit redemptionem. Episcopus igitur condolens suorum miseriae, illico misit pro regina et Willelmo Ypensi, ac ceteris Angliae magnatibus regi Stephano faventibus, quos in suum auxilium evocatos anima- The em- vit. Et, facto gravi impetu in exercitum imperatricis, press's forces are omnes<sup>2</sup> qui in obsidione erant, in fugam compulerunt ; defeated. et fugientes viriliter insecuri, ceperunt inter ceteros Robert, earl of Robertum, comitem et fratrem imperatricis, in cuius Gloucester, custodia rex S[tephanus] tenebatur, cuius sola cap- is taken tione rex poterat a carcere liberari. Captus est autem prisoner and ex- in die Exaltationis sanctae Crucis, sed incontinenti changed datus est rex pro eo ; et sic ambo sunt a vinculis phen. absoluti.

14 Sept.

*Comes de Meslent pacificatur comiti Andegavensi.*

Rog. Wend. Per idem quoque tempus Walerannus, comes de Mes- The count ii. 230. lent, qui omnibus Normanniæ præerat proceribus, cum of Menlent makes comite concordiam init Andegavensi Gaufrido ; et dedit peace with ei castellum Montis-fortis et castellum Falesiæ. Et Geoffrey of Anjou, sic subdiderunt se ei omnes viri potentes citra flumen Sequanæ usque ad ripam Rislae, ei fidelitatem facientes.

<sup>1</sup> *Willelmo*] An error copied from Wendover; and so also in Wallingford, Matth. Westm., and other compilers. We should read *Henrico* here and below.

<sup>2</sup> *omnes*] Originally *compulerunt omnes*, as in W. A. C. D., but the former word is expuncted.

A.D. 1140.

*De morte quorundam magnatum.*

Robert de

**Sigillo**  
succeeds Eodem anno, Gileberto, Londoniensi episcopo, qui Rog. Wend.  
as bishop of Universalis dicebatur, defuncto, successit Robertus de  
London. <sup>ii. 230.</sup>

**15 May.** Deaths of Sigillo; idibus<sup>1</sup> quoque Maii Albericus de Ver Lon-.  
notable doniis occiditur, obiitque Aldewinus, fundator Malver-.  
personages. niae.

*Comes Robertus obsides quosdam duxit in Normani-  
um.*

A.D. 1141. Anno Domini M<sup>o</sup>.C<sup>o</sup>.XL<sup>o</sup>.1<sup>o</sup>. Robertus, comes Glovernien- Rog. Wend.

**Robert, earl** sis, transfretavit in Normanniam, ducens secum quosdam <sup>ii. 231.</sup>  
of Gloucester, goes obsides magnatum Angliæ, qui imperatrici favebant,  
to Nor- ut comes Andegavensis eos salvo custodiret; suadens ut  
mandy. ad sibi subjugandam Angliam, ad ipsam incunctanter  
transfretaret. Quod tamen comes ad tempus facere re-

**Successful** nuit, propter Andegavensem rebellionem, et aliorum  
proceed- honinum suorum ipsum infestantium. Ipse vero, præ-  
ings of the sente adhuc comite Roberto, cepit Alnei et Moritonium,  
count of Tenerchebray et Cerenches,<sup>2</sup> castella comitis Moretonii;  
Anjou. et Abrincacenses et Constantinienses eidem sese subdi-

**Geoffrey de** derunt. Eisdemque diebus annoque præterito, Galfridus.  
Mandeville de Mandevilla firmare non cessavit turrim Londoniarum.

**tower of** Eodemque anno, cum rex Anglorum Stephanus apud  
London. Wintoniam<sup>3</sup> castellum quoddam firmaret, supervenit  
King Ste- hostium suorum innumerabilis multitudo, ipsumque fu-  
phen is gam inire, impetum faciens repentinum, coegerunt;  
defeated at quosdam ante fugam capientes, quosdam vero truci-  
Wilton, and Wil- dantes. In hac autem pugna<sup>4</sup> captus est Willelmus  
William Martel Martel, vir martius et illustris, regis Stephani dapifer;  
is captured. et apud Walingford adductus, custodiae Brieni filii-

<sup>1</sup> *idibus*] In the margin is added, *rel idus.*

has it from Hoveden, p. 488. See  
Hen. Hunt., p. 392; Gerv., col. 1358;

<sup>2</sup> *Cerenches*] Cereueches, MS.

the latter of whom assigns this event  
to 1143.

<sup>3</sup> *Wintoniam*] A mistake for *Wil-  
tonam*, copied from Wendover, who

<sup>4</sup> *pugna*] pungna, MS.

. Comitis fuit deputatus. Qui, in odium et opprobrium A.D. 1141.  
. ipsius, quia multum ei in expeditionibus nocuerat, fecit  
fol. 49 a. . ei carcerem in castro speciale, dicens ei satirice, "Quia His impri-  
. Willelmus diceris cognomento Martel, tibi speciale sonment  
. utrem, qui Cloera vulgariter dicitur, præparabo, ut by Brian  
. martellus includatur in cloera."<sup>1</sup> Et intrudens eum  
. inibi, miserabiliter eum artavit. Et antequam exiret, reddidit imperatrici He gives  
reddidit imperatrici Sireburniense castellum pro libera- up Sher-  
tione sua. burn castle to the empress.

*Matildis imperatrix obsessa regem Stephanum  
delusit.*

Rog. Wend. Audiente autem eodem tempore rege Stephano im- Stephen  
ii. 232. peratricem esse apud Oxoniam in castello, cum parvo lays siege  
comitatu, collegit exercitum copiosum, et post festum to Oxford  
sancti Michaelis illo profectus, ipsam usque ad Ad- 29 Sept.  
ventum Domini obsidione vallavit. In tanto autem 30 Nov.  
tempore, cum vidisset imperatrix ab amicis suis se  
esse neglectam et succursu destitutam, excubitores regis  
castrum obsidentis arte deludens feminea, nocte per Escape of  
Tamensem fluvium, glacie tunc constrictum ac nive the empress  
dealbatum, albis circumamicta vestibus, cum quibusdam by a stra-  
tagem.  
. sodalibus per posticum illac clam de nocte exivit de  
. castello; nec est visa a vigilibus vel exploratoribus,  
præ similitudine nivis et candidi muliebris vestimenti.  
Et sic fefellit oculos<sup>2</sup> intuentium. Abiit ergo nocte She goes  
illa ad castrum de Walingeford, ad Brienum filium- to Brian  
Comitis, ut se salvaret ab hostibus. Sic tamen castrum Fitz-Count  
Oxonense regi redditum est, ipsa caute liberata.

<sup>1</sup> *dicens . . . cloera]* et vocavit | <sup>2</sup> *oculos]* Added in marg.  
Cloere Brien, W. A. C. D.

*Concilium Londoniis salubriter celebratum.*

A.D. 1142. Anno Domini M<sup>o</sup>.C<sup>o</sup>.XL<sup>o</sup>.II<sup>o</sup>. Willelmus,<sup>1</sup> Wintoniensis Rog.Wend.  
 Council held at London. episcopus et sedis jam apostolicæ legatus, in media Quadragesima Londoniis concilium, rege præsente et nonnullis episcopis, celebravit. Nullus enim honor vel reverentia jam ferebatur, ingrassante odio et werra, : Dei ecclesiæ vel ejus ordinatis ; et quæ primo cœperat aliquantulum sustineri, jam, scintilla<sup>2</sup> penitus caritatis extincta, refrigeruit. Æque namque clerici et laici capiebantur, redimebantur, et vinculis tenebantur. Sancitum<sup>3</sup> est igitur ibi et generaliter constitutum, ne aliquis, qui ecclesiam cimiteriumve violaret, vel in clericum aut virum religiosum manus violentas apponneret, ab alio quam ab ipso papa posset absolvi. Statutum est insuper, ut aratores cum aratris, et confugientes ad cruces compitorum, pacem haberent cimieralem. Accensis igitur candelis et pulsatis campa- Rog.Wend.  
 Decrees sanctioned at it. nis, excommunicaverunt ipsi omnes prælati universos hujus saluberrimi statuti violatores, et hoc de consensu hinc inde guerram sustinentium, sicut erat a principio. Et sic pro magna parte milvorum rapacitas conquievit.

*Rex cepit Willelmum<sup>4</sup> de Mandevilla, unde plura castra lucratus est.*

Capture of Geoffrey de Mandeville at St. Alban's. Eodem tempore rex Stephanus cepit Willelmum Rog.Wend. de Mandevilla apud Sanctum Albanum, illuc veniens ii. 233. in manu potenti. Verumtamen antequam ipsum ce- pisset, certamen cruentum sustinuit ; unde comes de Harundel, miles licet egregius, in medio aquæ, quæ.

<sup>1</sup> *Willelmus*] An error for *Henricus*. See note above, p. 267.

<sup>2</sup> *scintilla*] .eintilla, MS.

<sup>3</sup> *Sancitum*] Sanecitum, MS.

<sup>4</sup> *Willelmum*] So also Wendover ; but this is a mistake for *Gaufridum*, as in Malm., p. 752, and Hen. Hunt., p. 393.

Haliwelle dicitur, a Walkelino de Oxeai,<sup>1</sup> milite stre- A.D. 1142.  
 . nuissimo, simul cum equo suo prostratus est,<sup>2</sup> totis  
 . membris attritus et fere submersus. Milites autem The  
 . beati Albani, qui tunc, ad ecclesiæ ejus custodiam et knights of  
 . villæ fossatis circumdatæ, ipsum vicum, qui juxta cœno- the abbey  
 . bium est, inhabitabant, ipsi regi in faciem viriliter resist the  
 . restiterunt, donec ecclesiæ, quam quidam ex regiis king's  
 . ædituis violaverant, satisfecisset ipse rex, et ejus teme- forces.  
 . rarii invasores. Reddidit igitur memoratus Willelmus Geoffrey  
 . regi turrem Londoniarum, quam meliorarat, cum cas- de Mandeville yields  
 . tellis de Waldene et de Pleiseto, antequam a vinculis up the  
 . solveretur. Et hoc fecit rex contra jusjurandum, quod tower of  
 . fecerat apud Sanctum Albanum, et contra statuta con- London.  
 . cilii nuper, eo consentiente, celebrati. Inde quoque Excesses  
 . magis induratus et obstinatus cœnobium adiit Rame- committed  
 . siæ,<sup>3</sup> et, expulsis monachis nonnullis, invasores suos by him at  
 . ibidem imposuit; rurales insuper ecclesiolas obiter Ramsey  
 . impudens invasit deprædando. abbey.

*Fulco, rex Jerosolimitanus, moritur.<sup>4</sup> Sanguinius  
 debacchatur.<sup>5</sup>*

Death of  
 Fulk, king  
 of Jerusa-  
 lem.

Rog. Wend. Tempore quoque sub eodem Fulco, rex Jerosolimitanus, campos pertransiens Achonenses, contigit ut leporum sedentem excitaret. Quem cum clamor omnium insequeretur fugientem, rex, arrepta lancea, ut leporum insectaret, equum calcaribus urgebat anxius inconsulte. Qui, offensis pedibus equinis, præceps corruens in ter-

<sup>1</sup> *Oxeai*] Oxehaie, E.

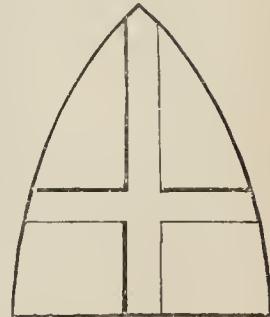
<sup>2</sup> *est*] On an erasure.

<sup>3</sup> In the margin is added the following note : “ *Hoc melius et plenius in sequentibus. Nota hic, qualiter invasores et violatores ecclesiæ Ramesiæ, scilicet, Willelmus [l. Gaufridus] de Mandeville et ejus complices, recedentes puniebantur; factamentes enim cantabat unusquisque Anglice,*

‘ I ne mai a-live,  
 For Benoit ne for Ive.’  
 Ita torquebantur ab hiis duobus, qui ibidem quiescere dinoscuntur. *Verte sequens folium.*” In F. this note is incorporated in the text, instead of the words *magis induratus . . . deprædando.*

<sup>4</sup> In the margin is drawn, in trick, the shield of Jerusalem, reversed, with a crown beneath.

<sup>5</sup> *debacchatur*] debacatur, MS.



A.D. 1142. ram, cerebrum tam per os quam aures et nares contritus effudit, ita ut nullus opem ferre posset moribundo.

13 Nov. Obiit itaque idus<sup>1</sup> Novembris, corpusque ejus Jerusalem delatum est, et sepultum in ecclesia Dominici sepulchri, cum lacrimis omnium astantium et lamentis, patriarcha Willelmo ministerium exequiarum sollempniter perficiente. Cum autem regis obitus inter infideles disseminaretur, Sanguinius, Turcorum vir potentissimus, cum

Capture of Edessa by the Turks.

innumera armatorum copia Edessam obsidens civitatem, diuturno eam labore subegit, atque Christianos omnes in ea inventos sine misericordia trucidavit, conditioni Rog. Wend.

ii. 234.

non parcens, sexui vel ætati. Sic itaque urbs antiquissima et Christiano nomini<sup>2</sup> insignita, ac Thadæi<sup>3</sup> apostoli prædicatione conversa, nunc, proh dolor! sub infidelium potestate<sup>4</sup> est redacta. In hac enim corpus beati Thomæ apostoli, una cum corporibus sancti Thadæi supradicti et beati regis Abgari, sepulchrum dicuntur<sup>5</sup> accepisse. Hic autem est Abgarus ille, topa-

Saints buried at Edessa.

Testimony of Ensebius concerning the epistle of king Abgarus.

cha illustris, cuius epistolam ad Dominum missam Eusebius Cæsariensis commemorat in Ecclesiastica Historia; quem et Domini<sup>6</sup> dignum rescripto docet, utriusque ponens epistolam, et in fine ita subjungens, "Hæc in archivis publicis Edessæ urbis, in qua tunc Abgarus fol. 49 b. regnavit, ita descripta reperimus in hiis cartis, quæ gesta regis Abgari servata<sup>7</sup> antiquitus continebant." Hæc præterea civitas sæpe legitur postmodum a Christianis subacta, et iterum, quasi fortunæ ludo, [a Saracenis]<sup>8</sup> possessa.

<sup>1</sup> *idus*] This form is used often in the MSS., but in the present instance W. A. C. D. have *idibus*.

<sup>2</sup> *nomini*] So also in all the MSS., but corr.  *nomine* in Edd. and ed. Wend.

<sup>3</sup> *Thadæi*] Tadei, MS.

<sup>4</sup> *potestate*] *potestatem*, MS.

<sup>5</sup> *dicuntur*] Added to the text.

<sup>6</sup> *Deum*, MS. and F. Corr. from W. A. C.

<sup>7</sup> *servata*] After this word, *sunt* has been added, and *continebant* corrected into *continebantur*; but these alterations (followed by F.) only disturb the original text, as it appears in W. A. C. D.

<sup>8</sup> *a Saracenis*] Supplied from W. A. C. D.

*Obitus<sup>1</sup> Innocentii papæ et quorumdam aliorum. A.D. 1142.*

Rog.Wend. Eodemque anno, defuncto papa Innocentio, Celestinus II. succeeds in. 234. tinus successit; <sup>2</sup> qui cum sedisset in cathedra Romana to pope In- mensibus v., diem clausit extremum. Cui succedens <sup>3</sup> nocent II. Lucius, Romanam rexit ecclesiam mensibus xi. et diebus xii. Eodemque anno obiit Willelmus,<sup>3</sup> episcopus Wintoniensis, cui Henricus successit. Huic vero Henrico Lucius papa pallium misit, volens apud Wintoniam archiepiscopum constituere, et vii. ei episcopos assignare; to the bp. . sed subortis multorum murmurantium contradictionibus, of Win- dissimulavit papa cum silentio propositum suum con- chester.

Rog.Wend. summare. Hoc quoque anno magister Willelmus, Mal- ii. 235. mesbiriensis<sup>4</sup> monachus, Anglorum Historiam scribendo William of terminavit. Malmes- bury finishes his history.

*Obiit Lucius papa; succedit Eugenius. Lincolnia obsidetur.*

Rog.Wend. Anno Domini M<sup>o</sup>.C<sup>o</sup>.XL<sup>o</sup>.III<sup>o</sup>., defuncto papa Lucio,<sup>5</sup> A.D. 1143. ii. 235. Eugenius sedit in cathedra Romana mensibus iiiior. et diebus xxi. Eodem anno rex Anglorum S[tephanus] Siege of Lincolniam obsedit, et cum construeret municipium Lincoln. contra castellum, quod tenebat comes Cestrensis Ranulphus, operarii ejus fere octoginta a comite præfato interficti sunt; et sic, re imperfecta, recessit. Eodem anno Robertus Marminn, vir bellicosus, qui monachos Death of Coventrenses a suo monasterio expulerat, et de ecclesia Robert Marminn. illa castellum fecerat, dum contra hostes decertaret,

<sup>1</sup> *Obitus*] Obitu, MS.

<sup>2</sup> Innocent II. died 24 Sept. 1143, and Celestine II. was elected 26 Sept. following. Lucius II. was not consecrated till 12 March 1144. Jaffé, pp. 598, 606, 610.

<sup>3</sup> *Willelmus*] An error again for *Henricus*, due to Wendover. William Giffard died in 1128, as rightly stated above, p. 242, and Henry of

Blois, who succeeded him in 1129, survived till 1171. Fasti, iii. 7.

<sup>4</sup> *Malmesbiriensis*] Malmebirien-sis, MS.

<sup>5</sup> This is also an error, taken from Wendover. Pope Lucius II. did not die till 15 Feb. 1145, under which year the event is again rightly entered. Eugenius III. was elected the same day. Jaffé, pp. 615, 617.

A.D. 1143. inter predones suos ante ipsum monasterium solus, nescitur quo casu, excommunicatus peremptus est. .

*Nota, quod puniuntur transgressores.*

Fate of Geoffrey de Mande- ville and other violators of the church. Eodem vero tempore Gaufridus, consul de Mandeville, qui consimile scelus in ecclesia Ramesiensi præcepto vel permissione regis Stephani commiserat, ulti- Rog.Wend. <sup>ii. 235.</sup> ore, ut creditur, beato Benedicto, ante ipsam ecclesiam inter consortas suorum acies a pedite quodam, nescitur qua causa, solus sagitta percussus,<sup>1</sup> oceubuit interfectus.<sup>2</sup> Et, quod mirabile relatu est, ecclesia illa, dum pro castello teneretur, a suis parietibus sanguinem ubertim emisit, indignationem divinam manifestans. Arnulphus etiam, ejusdem comitis filius, qui post mortem patris ecclesiam illam pro castello tenebat, a rege captus est et exilio condempnatus. Princeps etiam militiae suæ ab equo corruens, cerebro fuso expiravit. Magister insuper peditum Reinerus, monasteria solitus incendi- Rog.Wend. <sup>ii. 236.</sup> et confringere, cum exulans transfretaret, naufragio periit, igne Tartareo concremandus. Quid plura?. Omnes, quos non salvavit tabula pœnitentiae et satisfactionis, ecclesiæ violatores horribili ultione puniebantur.

*Gaufridus comes in Normanniam dominatur.*

Geoffrey of Anjou assumes the title of duke of Normandy. Eodemque anno Gaufridus, comes Andegavensis, a civibus Rothomagensibus sollempniter susceptus est, et exinde dux Normanniæ appellatus.<sup>3</sup> Rog.Wend. <sup>iii. 236.</sup>

<sup>1</sup> *percussus*] Originally *percussit* (and so in F.), but corrected by a later hand.

<sup>2</sup> *interfектus*] *Intestatus*, MS. and

F. ; but evidently an error, and corr. from W. A. C. D.

<sup>3</sup> *appellatus*] *appellatus*, MS.

*Rex Stephanus castellum de Farenduna cepit.*

Rog. Wend. Anno Domini M<sup>o</sup>.C<sup>o</sup>.XL<sup>o</sup>.III<sup>o</sup>. rex Anglorum Stephanus A.D. 1144.  
ii. 236. comitem Gloverniæ, cum multis aliis inimicorum suo- Capture of  
rum, a constructione castri Farundunensis<sup>1</sup> potenter Faringdon castle.  
fugavit, et municipium illud in suam suscepit potesta- Death of  
tem. Eodemque anno,<sup>2</sup> xviii<sup>o</sup>. kalendas Octobris, obiit Geoffrey  
. Gaufridus de Mandevilla. Gaufridus quoque, comes de Mandeville.  
. Andegavensis, potiorem Normanniæ partem sibi sub- 14 Sept.  
. jugavit. Eodemque anno obiit papa Celestinus; suc- Death of  
cessit autem Lucius. Qui plus æquo cum luceris in- pope Ce-  
hiaret<sup>3</sup> tantum temporalibus, a quodam nominatissimo<sup>4</sup> lestin II.  
. versificatore sic meruit reprehensione diffamari :—<sup>5</sup> Lucius II.  
. “Lucius est piscis, rex atque tirannus aquarum,  
. A quo discordat Lucius iste parum;  
. Devorat hic homines, hic piscibus insidiatur,  
. Esurit hic semper, hic aliquando satur.  
. Amborum sensus<sup>6</sup> si lanx<sup>7</sup> æquata probaret,<sup>8</sup>  
. Plus rationis habet, qui<sup>9</sup> ratione caret.” Satirical  
verses on  
his avarice.

*Rex Stephanus cepit comitem Cestriæ.*

Rog. Wend. Anno Domini M<sup>o</sup>.C<sup>o</sup>.XL<sup>o</sup>.V<sup>o</sup>. rex Anglorum Stephanus A.D. 1145.  
ii. 236. cepit Ranulphum, comitem Cestriæ, ad se pacifice veni- Ralph, earl  
entem, apud Norhamtonam, et eum in carcere tenuit, of Chester,  
quousque ei reddidit castellum Lincolniae, cum ceteris, taken pri- soner.  
. quæ suæ erant ditionis; unde rex notam incurrit pro- Stephen  
. ditionis indelebilem. Et sic idem rex, pudore seposito, wears the  
apud Lincolniam sollempniter coronam portavit. crown at Lincoln.

<sup>1</sup> *Farundunensis*] Farundunensi, MS.

intitled “Speculum Ecclesiæ” (MS. Cott. Tib. B. xiii. f. 26), but as referring to pope Lucius III.

<sup>2</sup> *anno*] Interlined.

<sup>6</sup> *sensus*] vitam, Girald.

<sup>3</sup> *inhiaret*] inhieret, MS.

<sup>7</sup> *lanx*] lanxs, MS.

<sup>4</sup> *nominatissimo*] nominatisso, MS.

<sup>8</sup> *probaret*] levaret, Girald.

<sup>5</sup> These verses are quoted also by Giraldus Cambrensis, in his work

<sup>9</sup> *qui*] quam, Girald.

*Obiit Lucius papa.*

A.D. 1145. Tempore quoque sub eodem Lucius, lucis expers et.  
 Death of pope Lucius II. honoris, ab hac luce migrans, papatus sui dies, licet. paucos, sine plangentium lamentatione terminavit.

*Henricus, rex futurus, in Normanniam transiit.*

A.D. 1146. Anno Domini m<sup>o</sup>.c<sup>o</sup>.XL<sup>o</sup>.VI<sup>o</sup>. Henricus, comitis Ande- Rog. Wend.  
 Henry of Anjou gaviae et jam ducis Normanniae Gaufridi et imperatricis ii. 236.  
 passes over to Normandy. Matildis filius, in Normanniam transiens, in die Domini Ascensionis apud Beccum honorifice susceptus est Rog. Wend.  
 9 May. a conventu. Dicebatur autem passim, quasi spiritu propheticō, et de aure ad aurem eum famae incremento, quod in Anglia diu et gloriose regnaturus erat, murmur personabat. Quo utique tempore Willelmus de William de S. Barbara made bp. of Dunelmensis.<sup>2</sup>  
 Rumours spread of his future reign.  
 Durham.

*De morte Gaufridi, abbatis Sancti Albani.<sup>3</sup>*

25 Feb. Eodem anno, v. kalendas Martii, obiit reverendæ Rog. Wend.  
 Death of Geoffrey, abbat of St. Alban's. memoriae Gaufridus, abbas ecclesiae Beati Albani, Anglo- ii. 237.  
 rum prothomartiris, postquam annis xxvi. laudabiliter monasterium rexerat memoratum. Cujus beneficia et. fol. 50 a.  
 pietatis opera si quis audire desiderat, librum relegat. de Gestis Abbatum in ecclesia prædicta confectum, et.  
 invenietur nomen ejus cum benedictione semipiterna. Vacavit autem ecclesia memorata, pio pastore viduata, a [quinto]<sup>4</sup> kalendis Martii usque ad Rogationes proximo sequentes. Quo tempore monachi elegerunt Radulphum Gubium, monachum de gremio ecclesiae  
 25 Feb. to 8 May. Election of Ralph Gubium as abbat.

<sup>1</sup> *decanus*] From this word the text is wanting in D. to *armaturæ*, p. 279.

<sup>2</sup> He was consecrated 20 Jun<sup>a</sup>, 1143. *Fasti*, iii. 283.

<sup>3</sup> This chapter is omitted in F.

<sup>4</sup> *quinto*] Supplied from W. A. C. and "Vit. Abbat." p. 64.

sue, virum utique bene literatum et bonis moribus A.D. 1146. informatum. Facta igitur rite electione, rex Stephanus Confirmed in die Dominicæ Ascensionis ad Sanctum Albanum by king Stephen. veniens, assensum præbuit et favorem, et gratanter <sup>9 May.</sup> dictum Radulphum suscepit in abbatem.

*De morte quorundam episcoporum Anglie.*

Rog.Wend. Eodemque anno<sup>1</sup> defuncti suunt pontifices, Ascelinus Deaths and  
ii. 237. Rofensis, Rogerus Cestrensis, et Robertus Herefordensis. succession  
Ascelino autem successit Walterus, archidiaconus Cantuariensis; Rogero Walterus, prior Dorobernensis; Roberto Gilebertus, abbas Glovernensis. Eodemque anno, post Turstanum, Eboracensem archiepiscopum, Henricus, monachus Cisterciensis, illum optinuit archipræsulatum.<sup>2</sup>

*Cometa.*

R. Wend. Circa idem tempus cometa, nunquam boni significa- Comet.  
ii. 237. tiva, diebus multis apparuit in occidente, circumquaque latissime coruscando.

*De discordia orta inter papam Eugenium et regem Francorum.*

Rog.Wend. Eodem anno papa Eugenius Parisius veniens, conse- Consecra-  
ii. 238. cravit Petrum quendam, Aimerici, ecclesiæ Romanæ tion of the cancellarii, nepotem, in archiepiscopum Bithuricensem, archbishop of Bourges contra Lodowici Francorum regis voluntatem. Quod by pope Eugenius III.

<sup>1</sup> The dates assigned to the deaths and succession of these bishops are erroneous. Aseelin, bishop of Rochester, died 24 Jan. 1147-8, and was succeeded by Walter, 14 March following. Roger of Chester died 16 April 1148, and was not succeeded by Walter till 2 Oct. 1149.

Robert de Betun, of Hereford, died 22 April 1148, and was succeeded by Gilbert Foliot, 5 Sept. following. Fasti, i. 457, 544; ii. 558.

<sup>2</sup> Henry Murdac was consecrated archbishop of York 7 Dec. 1147. Fasti, iii. 99.

A.D. 1146. in injuriam suam factam perpendens, indignatus est vehementer; appositisque publice sacrosanctis reliquiis, palam juravit, quod praefatus ille archiepiscopus, quamdiu ipse viveret, civitatem Bituricam non intraret.

Interdict laid on the Chapel of the king. Sicque per triennium regis capella<sup>1</sup> subjacuit interdicto, et in quancunque civitatem, vicum vel castellum intrabat, suspendebatur celebratio divinorum. Tandem,

Reconciliation with the pope, by mediation of S. Bernard. Bernardo, abbe Clarevallensi persuadente ad hoc, inclinatum est<sup>2</sup> cor regis, ut archiepiscopum reciperet memoratum, et pro transgressione perjurii omniumque peccatorum remissionem, Jerosolimam se promitteret profecturum. Per totam igitur Galliam fit exactio generalis, ita ut nec ordo nec sexus quempiam<sup>3</sup> excusaret, quin auxilium regi conferret pecuniare. Unde factum est, ut, multis imprecantibus et maledictiones in caput regium congerentibus, non est prosperatum sue iter peregrinationis, sicut apparuit, ut supradicetur, in rei consummatione.

*Fiunt apud Sanctam<sup>4</sup> Genovefam canonici regulares ex secularibus. Concilium celebratur Remis.*

25 April.  
The secular canons of St. Geneviève are expelled, and regulars introduced.

Eodem quoque anno,<sup>5</sup> in majore Letania, Eugenius<sup>Rog. Wend.</sup> papa apud Sanctam Genovefam sollemni cum fuisse<sup>ii. 238.</sup> processione receptus, servientes ecclesiæ, quos Margaritios vocant, clericos domini papæ inordinate se ingeren tes, fustigaverunt, et infra parietes ecclesiæ sanguinem effuderunt. In ejus transgressionis ultionem, aedificia servientium, quæ cirea ecclesiam erant, sunt subversa, necnon et canonicorum commutata; expulsisque eisdem canonicis secularibus, regulares sunt<sup>Rog. Wend.</sup> introducti. Papa vero inde Remis profectus, tenuit<sup>ii. 239.</sup> ibidem concilium,<sup>6</sup> in quo dampnata est hæresis<sup>7</sup>

<sup>1</sup> *capella*] So also F. In W. A. C. persona.

<sup>2</sup> *est*] Interlined.

<sup>3</sup> *quempiam*] *quampiam*, MS.

<sup>1</sup> *Sanctam*] Added in marg.

<sup>5</sup> In 1147. Jaffé, p. 626.

<sup>6</sup> On 21st March 1148. Jaffé, p. 631.

<sup>7</sup> *hæresis*] Added in marg.

Council held at Rheims.

Eudonis pseudoprophetae, de cuius incantationibus et A.D. 1146.  
fantasiis melius est silere quam loqui. In hoc etiam  
concilio constituit prædicatores de negotio Terræ Sanctæ,  
quæ eo tempore adeo erat a Sarracenis oppressa, quod  
liberis discursibus eam ubilibet pervagarentur.

*Imperator Conradus arripuit iter Jerosolimitanum.*

Rog. Wend. Ad prædicationem Bernardi, abbatis Clarevalensis, The emperor  
ii. 239. . viri nominatissimæ sanctitatis et scientiæ, Conradus, Conrad III. under-  
Romanorum imperator, crucesignatus est, et cum eo takes a  
innumera hominum multitudo. Mense igitur Maio crusade.  
proximo sequente dictus imperator iter peregrinationis  
arripiens, duxit secum ad septuaginta milia equitum  
loricatorum, exceptis peditibus, junioribus, mulieribus,  
insuper et equitibus levis armaturæ.

*Sequitur rex Francorum Lodowicus peregrinans.*

Rog.Wend. Secutus quoque est illum Lodowicus, rex Francorum, He is fol-  
ii. 239. voto astrictus memorato, cum non minori numero ar- lowed by  
matorum. Qui propositum habentes segregatim<sup>1</sup> in- Louis VII.  
cedere, ut commodius<sup>2</sup> vitæ necessaria et jumentis<sup>3</sup>  
tantæ multitudinis non deessent, alacriter sunt profecti.  
Transcursa igitur Bavaria et Danubio fluamine, [in Aus- Route  
triā]<sup>4</sup> Hungariam et utramque Pannoniam, Bulgariam taken by  
et<sup>5</sup> provincias Mœsiā et Daciā, tandem in Thraciam<sup>6</sup> army,  
descenderunt. Inde vero Constantinopolim p̄venientes,  
cum imperatore Manuele colloquium habuerunt. Inde,  
transito Hellesponto, Europæ termino, in Bithiniā,<sup>7</sup> quæ

<sup>1</sup> *segregatim*] In the margin is added *vel separatim*.

<sup>2</sup> *commodius*] *comodius*, MS.

<sup>3</sup> *vitæ . . . jumentis]* In W. A. C. D., this passage is made clearer, by inserting *sibi* before *vitæ*, and *pa-*  
*bula* after *jumentis*.

<sup>4</sup> in Austria] Supplied from Will. Tyr. p. 901 and W. A. C. D., but the MSS. all omit *in*, which is

required to complete the sense. In consequence of this omission, in Edd. and ed. Wend. the accusative cases are altered to the ablative, but *contra fid. codd.*

<sup>5</sup> *Bulgariam et]* Bulgarorum etiam, W. A. C. D., and confirmed by Will. Tyr.

<sup>6</sup> *Thraciam*] *Traciam*, MS.

<sup>7</sup> *Bithinium*] *Bithitinium*, MS.:

A.D. 1146. prima est ex Asianis provinciis, in pago Calcedonensi castra statuerunt.

*Prosecutio viae imperatoris.*

Progress  
of the  
emperor.  
Tunc Romanorum imperator Conradus, transvectis<sup>1</sup> Rog. Wend. Bosforum legionibus suis, relinquens a laeva Galatiam<sup>ii. 239.</sup> et Panagoniam,<sup>2</sup> et utrumque Pontum, a dextris autem Rog. Wend. Frigiam, Lidiam et Asiam Minorem, per medium Bithyniam<sup>ii. 240.</sup> iter agens, Nicæamque a dextris deserens, Lichaoniam pervenit.

*De proditione detestanda imperatoris Constantino- politani.*

Prepara-  
tions of the  
sultan of  
Iconium to  
resist the  
crusaders.  
Soldanus autem Yeonensis, auditio tantorum prin- Rog. Wend.  
cipum adventu, a multo retro tempore ex ultimis<sup>ii. 240.</sup> sultani finibus militaria convocarat auxilia; et quomodo ab imminentibus<sup>3</sup> hostium [periculis]<sup>4</sup> se posset exi- mere, curam gesserat propensiorem. Congregatis igitur copiis militaribus innumeris, in finibus Lichaoniæ ex- pectabat caute, ut, loco et tempore nacto opportuno,<sup>5</sup> hostibus suis impedimentum, ne procederent, procuraret.

Treachery  
of the  
Greek em-  
peror.  
Tradiderat quoque Constantinopolitanus imperator im- peratori Romano viæ duces, propter locorum abusum et fol. 50 b. itineris difficultatem, qui ipsum præcederent; sed illi consueta<sup>6</sup> Græcorum usi malitia, de mandato, ut dictum est, imperatoris Constantinopolitani, qui semper Latinorum successibus invidebat, cœperunt ex industria trahere legiones per salebras et invia, ut ab hostibus.

<sup>1</sup> *transvectis*] *transjectis*, W. A. C. D. In Will. Tyr., p. 901, *trans- jectis trans Bosphorum*.

<sup>2</sup> *Panagoniam*] So all the MSS.; but in Edd. and ed. Wend. corrected *Paphlagoniam*, as in Will. Tyr., p. 902.

<sup>3</sup> *imminentibus*] *iminentibus*, MS.

<sup>4</sup> *periculis*] Supplied from W. A. C. D.

<sup>5</sup> *opportuno*] *oportuno*, MS.

<sup>6</sup> *consueta*] *conconsueta*, MS.

de facili opprimerentur. Et ecce, dictus Soldanus, A.D. 1146. horum conscius, videns Christianos in angusta solitu- Defeat  
dinis loca demersos, irruit in eos non præmeditatos; of the  
et tam ipse quam sui armis instantes in equis velo- Christian  
cibus, quibus pabula non deerant, Romanos lertos and under  
armis onustos, equos habentes fatigatos et famelicos, Conrad.  
nec hostibus resistere nec cum eis congreedi valentes,  
dissiparunt et vicerunt, et stragem ex eis miserabilem  
confecerunt et inauditam. Factum est autem occulto  
Dei judicio, "cujus viæ investigabiles sunt et judicia  
R.Wend. abissus multa,"<sup>1</sup> ut de septuagiinta milibus equitum  
ii. 241. loricatorum, et de tanta peditum manu, quorum erat  
numerus quasi infinitus, vix decima pars evaderet, aliis  
fame, aliis gladio, nonnullis etiam vinculis mancipatis.  
Evasit tamen imperator cum paucis principibus suis, et The emperor  
cum difficultate nimia Nicæam usque pervenit ad ur- escapes,  
bem. Indeque Constantinopolim profectus, ibi usque ad at Constan- and remains  
sequentis veris initium perendinavit.<sup>2</sup> tinople.

*Imperator Conradus vix evadens venit Jerusalem.*

Reg.Wend. Anno Domini M<sup>o</sup>.C<sup>o</sup>.XI<sup>o</sup>.VII<sup>o</sup>. imperator Conradus, A.D. 1147.  
ii. 241. hieme transcura, navibus devectus cum suis ad portum He proceeds  
pervenit Achonensem. Et inde Jerosolinam profectus, to Jerusa-  
a rege Baldeuuino, cleroque civitatis ac<sup>3</sup> populo, cum lem.  
hymnis<sup>4</sup> et laudum canticis in sanctam perducitur civi-  
tatem.

*Rex Francorum Lodowicus sequitur, sed a Turcis  
confunditur.*

Reg.Wend. Quo utique tempore Lodowicus, Francorum rex, im- Progress of  
ii. 241. peratorem secutus, post longos viaruin labores, ad vada the French army.

<sup>1</sup> Ep. ad Rom. xi. 33. and Ps. xxxv. 7.

<sup>2</sup> perendinavit] perhendinavit, MS.

<sup>2</sup> ac] a, MS.

<sup>3</sup> hymnis] ymnis, MS.

A.D. 1147. Menandri<sup>1</sup> cum lxx. milibus loricatorum militum, praeter elassem quæ eum sequebatur, pervenit. Ubi, Francis ad aquas accedere volentibus, ex adversa fluminis ripa hostes inveniunt<sup>2</sup> infideles, qui aquæ usum cis et transitum interdicere satagebant; sed, vadis demum inventis, hostibus invitis et pluribus neci traditis, ac vinculis quibusdam mancipatis, omnes in fugam compellunt, et eorum spolia rapientes, facti sunt de victoria lætiores. Inde vero Laodiciam transeuntes, montem quendam arduum et ascensu difficilem ac descensu difficiliorem in itinere repererunt. Erat autem Francorum consuetudo, ut quosdam de illustribus viris assignarent,<sup>3</sup> qui agmina præirent et qui a tergo sequerentur, ad imbellis populi custodiam et sarcinarum, qui etiam cum principibus de modo viæ et dietæ Reg. Wend. quantitate contrectarent.<sup>4</sup> Præivit<sup>5</sup> autem illa die vir nobilis Gaufridus de Rancona, qui cum agminibus montem ascendens, ad ejus fastigium pervenit. Quod Turci cognoscentes,<sup>6</sup> qui exercitum illum a latere insidiantes sequebantur, in Francos potenter irruunt non præmeditatos, et eorum dissolvunt legiones. Cecidit autem dic illa, casu miserabili, gloria Francorum et virtus, qui forte peccatorum tenebris involuti, mistica secum Domino devotionis munera non serebant. Sed quæ audiebat creatura Creatori dicere, "Quare sic facis?". Rex tamen, licet mente non mediocriter consternatus, a principali proposito tamen, ne obprobrium in Francia disseminaretur, minime potuit revocari, quin peregrinationem suam ardenti desiderio cum exercitu mutilato, regina sua Alienora comitante, prosequeretur. Ad iter igitur se alacriter procingens,<sup>7</sup> post multos labores et.

Defeat of  
the French  
by the  
Turks.

Louis ar-  
rives with  
difficulty at  
Jerusalem.

<sup>1</sup> *Menandri*] So W. A. C. D. F. and Edd., yet it is an obvious error for *Macandri*, as in Will. Tyr., p. 905.

<sup>2</sup> *inveniunt*] *veniunt*, MS.

<sup>3</sup> *assignarent*] *assingnarent*, MS.

<sup>4</sup> *contrectarent*] This is the form

generally used, but W. A. C. read *tractarent*.

<sup>5</sup> *Præivit*] In the text *Præit*, but corr. in marg., and so in F.

<sup>6</sup> *cognoscentes*] *congnoscentes*, MS.

<sup>7</sup> *procingens*] *aceingens*, W.A.C.D.

ii. 242.

sollicitudines, Jerosolimam tandem pervenit. Ubi a rege A.D. 1147. honorifice susceptus, et ab universo clero et populo honoratus, de tristitia præterita aliquam suscepit consolationem ; verumtamen universi de casu sinistro, qui acciderat ei, non mediocriter condolebant.

*De obsidione Damasci a principibus prædictis, et de proditione orientalium magnatum.*

Rog.Wend. Completis autem de more orationibus, convenerunt Resolution  
ii. 242. ad colloquium imperator Romanus cum regibus Jeroso- taken to  
limorum et Francorum, ut de fructu tantæ peregrina- besiege  
tionis et Terræ Sanctæ agerent incremento. Tandem  
omnes communiter in hoc consenserunt, ut Damascum,  
urbem fidelibus nimis dampnosam, obsiderent ; et, sicut  
fuerat prælocutum, ad urbem accedentes, pomeria occu-  
pant suburbana, quibusdam ibi ex hostibus interfectis.  
Indeque ad flumen, quod urbem lambebat, accedentes,  
ut sitis angustias relevarent, invenerunt secus ripam  
tantam hostium multitudinem, qui eis aquæ usum  
Rog.Wend. auferre vacabant,<sup>1</sup> quod nec regem Jerosolimorum vel  
ii. 243. Francorum cum eorum legionibus accedere propius per-  
miserunt. Quo cognito, imperator Conradus ira vehe- Bravery of  
menti succensus, per medias Francorum acies<sup>2</sup> cum the empe-  
suis principibus ad certaminis locum indistanter usque  
peruenit, et cuidam ex Turcis, fidelibus instantius resis- ror Courad.  
tent et strenue nimis dimicanti, caput galeatum, collum  
et humerum loricatum, brachium quoque sinistrum cum  
subjecto latere, a reliquo corpore ensse fulminante separ-  
avit. Quod factum hostes ita deterruit, quod versus  
urbem, flumine relicto, fugere decertarent. Obtento ita-  
que flumine, fideles ad urbem liberius accedentes, eam  
fol. 51 a. obsidione cinxerunt. Unde cives post longam obsidio- Damaseus  
is besieged.

<sup>1</sup> *vaeabant*] So W. A. C. F. I. ; *voeabant*, D. The Edd. have *volebant*, but without authority.

<sup>2</sup> *acies*] Added in marg.

A.D. 1147. nem fidelium virtutem metuentes et numerum, compo-  
 Some of the  
 Christian  
 princes of  
 the East  
 are bribed  
 to raise the  
 siege.  
 The  
 crusaders  
 return  
 homewards.

sitis sarcinis, clam et de nocte fugere decreverunt. Sed prius nostrorum animos, quorum corpora vincere nequibant, corrumpere auro<sup>1</sup> attemptantes, dederunt quibusdam principibus ex nostris de partibus orientis<sup>2</sup> pecuniam infinitam, qui proinde, proditione intestina nequiter machinata, obsidionem solvere conarentur. Instantibus autem ad hoc proditoribus memoratis, loquentes cum imperatore et rege Francorum in dolo, inceptæ obsidionis difficultatem allegabant, et ob hoc aliis erant de proditione suspecti. Unde corundem malitiam manifestam attendentes, et fraudem orientalium principum detestantes, omnes quotquot erant de partibus occidentis, præviis imperatore et Francorum rege, ad regna sua, via<sup>3</sup> eadem qua venerant, confusi valde sunt reversi. Qui deinceps non solum illos, qui huic interfuerunt proditioni, sed et omnium orientalium principum abominabantur<sup>4</sup> consortia, et mendacia abhorrebant.<sup>5</sup> Falsis insuper cum fictis sermocinationibus<sup>6</sup> per exercitum Christi disseminaverant, insuperabilem succursum ad liberationem civium ab universis finibus orientis adventasse. Proh pudor! immo et proh dolor! ipsi infideles fidelium infidelitatem execrabantur. Ex tunc igitur diatim tepuit Christianorum circa liberationem hereditatis Christi devotio, et minus ferventes in amore peregrinationis efficiebantur.

*Robertus fit episcopus Lincolniensis.*

Robert de Chesney made bp. of Lincoln. Eodem anno Robertus de Cheisneto, archidiaconus Rog. Wend. Legcecestrensis, creatus est<sup>7</sup> in episcopum Lincolnensem, ii. 244.

<sup>1</sup> *auro*] Added in marg.

<sup>2</sup> *orientis*] At first written *orientibus*.

<sup>3</sup> *via*] Interlined.

<sup>4</sup> *abominabantur*] abhominabantur, MS.

<sup>5</sup> *aborrebant*] aborrebant, MS.

<sup>6</sup> *sermocinationibus*] Added in marg.

<sup>7</sup> *est*] Interlined.

per manum Theobaldi, archiepiscopi Cantuariensis, post A.D. 1147. jejunium mensis septimi episcopus consecratus.

*Reimundus, princeps Antiochiae, a Turcis interficitur.*

Rog.Wend. Anno Domini M<sup>o</sup>.C<sup>o</sup>.X<sup>l</sup><sup>o</sup>.VIII<sup>o</sup>., post recessum imperatoris et Francorum regis de partibus Terræ Sanctæ, Siege of Noradinus, Sanguinii filius, princeps Turcorum potentissimus, fines Antiochenos hostiliter ingressus, Nepam castrum obsidione vallavit. Qui enim Deum oderunt, ex casibus præteritis audaces facti extulerunt caput. Contra quem Reimundus, princeps Antiochenus, Death of exercitum ducens, inconsulte nimis et prælio inequali Reimund, prince of præsumens de sua strenuitate decertavit; unde contigit, quod ipse cum aliis quibusdam viris nobilissimis occubuit imperfectus. Noradinus igitur, jam cornua erigens superbiae ac audaciæ, nullo obstante progressus, Capture of Hareng castrum munitissimum obsidens, potenter occu- Hareng. pavit. Et sic libere in partibus illis universa depopu- Noradin is lando percursabat, donec rex Jerosolimitanorum super- defeated by the king of veniens ipsumque hostiliter impetens, retrocedere coegit Jerusalem. potentissime, et sua repetere receptacula cum confu- Transla- sione. Eodem vero anno facta est translatio sancti tion of St. Erkenwaldi<sup>1</sup> episcopi, xviii<sup>o</sup>. kalendas Decembris. 14 Nov. Anno quoque sub eodem, in sollemnitate Pentecostes, Knight- David, rex Scotorum, militaribus armis decoravit Hen- hood con ricum, filium primogenitum Gaufridi Plantagenest, jam duced on Henry, son ducem Normannorum, et neptis suæ olim imperatricis Geoffrey Plantagenet. Matildis.

30 May.

*Dux Normannorum Gaufridus dedit Normanniam  
Henrico,<sup>2</sup> filio suo.*

Rog.Wend. Anno Domino M<sup>o</sup>.C<sup>o</sup>.X<sup>l</sup><sup>o</sup>.IX<sup>o</sup>. Gaufridus, Normanniae A.D. 1149. ii. 214. dux,<sup>3</sup> reddidit Henrico filio suo Normanniam, heredi- Duke Geoffrey

<sup>1</sup> *Erkenwaldi*] Erkewaldi, MS.

<sup>2</sup> *Henrico*] Henrio, MS.

<sup>3</sup> *dux*] Interlined.

A.D. 1149. tatem suam ex parte matris sue, contra prohibitionem Rog.Wend.  
 makes over regis Francorum; unde discordia orta est inter ipsum  
 Normandy to his son, Gaufridum ducem et comitem et regem Francorum.  
 which occasions a quarrel with France. Et hoc evenit infra mensem quo reversus est rex Fran-  
 corum ab infesta peregrinatione sua. Tempore quoque sub eodem, reversus est et imperator ab infortunata eadem peregrinatione. Eodemque anno Lxebona capta est a Christianis. Gilebertus Folioth efficitur episcopus Herefordensis.<sup>1</sup> Cui non rite ingredienti in episcopatum made bp. of apparuit nocte sequenti quædam horribilis visio,<sup>2</sup> dum. Hereford. de multis frivolis meditaretur, præcipue de astronomia; erat enim vir optime literatus, licet vanus et secularis. ¶ Nota mirabilem visionem. Et erat sermo increpantibus personæ talis, "Gileberte Folioth, qui meditaris tot et tot, Deus tuus est Asta- roth." Cui episcopus expergefactus respondit, "Non, non, sed Dominus Deus Sabaoth." Hujus visionis pronostricum dicitur per æmulos fuisse<sup>3</sup> completum, non habito respectu ad responsionem episcopi,<sup>4</sup> in persecu- tione beati Thomæ, Cantuariensis archiepiscopi, sicut plenius dicetur in subsequentibus.

*Rex Francorum L[odowicus] cepit homagium ducis .  
Henrici.*

A.D. 1150. Anno Domini M<sup>o</sup>.C<sup>o</sup>.L<sup>o</sup>., rex Francorum Lodowicus et Louis, king Eustachius, filius regis Stephani, cum militia copiosa of Frane, meets the forces of ratam; ubi etiam affuit dux Normanniae Henricus, et the duke of Normandy pater ejus comes Andegaviae Gaufridus, cum ingenti and count exercitu Andegavensium, Britonum et Normannorum. of Anjou at Arques. Sed videntes utriusque partis principes, quod legiones

<sup>1</sup> Gilbert Folioth was consecrated bishop of Hereford 5 Sept. 1158. Jaffé, i. 457. The vision is placed under the year 1168 in Wendover, ii. 323, and so in A. C. D. F.

<sup>2</sup> visio] Added in marg.

<sup>3</sup> per . . . fuisse] Originally fuisse per æmulos, but marked to be transposed.

<sup>4</sup> episcopi] After this word, fuisse is superfluously repeated.

illæ nequibant sine magna sanguinis effusione congredi, A.D. 1150. cœperunt de pace tractare; et, intervenientibus utro- Peace con- rumque amicis cum viris religiosis, rex Francorum cepit Lonis re- homagium ducis Henrici de Normannia, et sic pacifice ceives the recesserunt. Dux igitur Henricus, dum tractaret cum homage of Henry. optinatibus suis de itinere suo in Angliam, pater ejus apud castrum Lery graviter infirmatus,<sup>1</sup> vii<sup>o</sup>. idus Sep- Death of tembris ab hac vita migravit.<sup>2</sup> Et sic Henricus, filius Geoffrey of Anjou. ejus, factus est comes Andegavensium, qui et dux fuerat 7 Sept. Normannorum.<sup>3</sup>

*Gelu valde diuturnum.*

fol. 51 b. . Hoc etiam anno gelu cœpit a iii<sup>o</sup>. idus Decembris, Great frost. durans usque ad xi. kalendas Martii, ita, ut crederetur 10 Dec. to 19 Feb. fere omne genus voluerum extinctum. Rivi quoque aquarum currentium molarem traxerunt spissitudinem, stagna quoque profunda, bipedalem; pecora vero siti et frigore perierunt, et pauperes. Tamisia quoque ita congelata est, ut ligis, summarisi oneratis et equitibus audacter, quasi per stratam Londoniarum<sup>4</sup> publicam, transiretur.

*Languente Radulpho, abbe Sancti Albani, substituitur Robertus.*

Rog. Wend. Eodemque anno Radulphus, abbas ecclesiæ Sancti Robert de ii. 245. Albani, decidens in languorem, Robertum de Gorham, Gorham priorem suæ ecclesiæ, per consilium conventus suum rector of constituit procuratorem, et totius abbatiae rectorem. St. Alban's.

<sup>1</sup> *infirmatus*] *imfirmatus*, MS.

<sup>2</sup> The death of Geoffrey, and the previous events of this war, really took place in 1151. See "L'Art de Vérifier les Dates," ii. 853.

<sup>3</sup> In the lower margin is written

with a plummet, "Obiit Gaufridus, comes Andegav. Henricus dux Normann. fit comes Andegav.," apparently intended as a memorandum for a rubric.

<sup>4</sup> *Londoniarum*] Added in marg.

A.D. 1150.

*De hæreticis<sup>1</sup> Assisinis.*

Reimund,  
count of Tripoli,  
murdered by the 'Assisini.'  
Anno quoque sub eodem Reimundus, comes Tripo- Rog. Wend.  
litanus, vir potens et in armis strenuus, ab Assesinis ii. 245.  
est interfectus. Si quis antem scire desiderat de As- .  
sesinorum mansione et ritu, et detestabili superstitione, .  
librum de Historiis quærat Orientalium.<sup>2</sup> .

*Divoitium celebratur inter regem Francorum L[odouicum] et Alienoram.<sup>3</sup>*

Divorce of Alienor,  
queen of Louis VII.  
Defamatory re- ports respecting her.  
Eodemque anno<sup>4</sup> celebratum est divoītium inter Rog. Wend.  
Lodouicum, regem Francorum, et Alienoram reginam ii. 247.  
suam, pluribus de causis. Diffamabatur de multipliū.  
adulterio, præcipue de quodam infideli infidelium<sup>5</sup>.  
principe in terra orientali, dum rex bellicis negotiis.  
indulxit, perpetrato. Item, improperatum ei fuit, quod.  
de eachodæmonis incubæ fuerit stirpe procreata; sed.  
propter honestatem, suppressis aliis causis, proposita<sup>6</sup>.  
fuit haec in propatulo. Erant consanguinei rex et ipsa  
Alienor, in quarto gradu.

*Andegarenses subduntur Eustachio.*

The nobles of Anjou(?) do homage to Eustace, son of king Stephen.  
Anno sub eodem comites et barones Andegaviae<sup>7</sup>.  
secerunt liganciam et fidelitatem Eustachio, filio regis.  
Stephani.

<sup>1</sup> *hæreticis*] heretis, MS.<sup>2</sup> *mansione... Orientalium*] Written on an erasure. The work alluded to is that of William of Tyre, p. 994.<sup>3</sup> In the margin, opposite to this chapter, is written in red letters, "vacat," as if to be expunged; but the whole is copied in F.<sup>4</sup> In the margin of A., and in text of C. (but inserted after *dilationem**acepit*), is this note: "Hoc in anno praeterito, secundum alios." This divorce really took place 18 March 1152. "L'Art de Vérifier les Dates," i. 576.<sup>5</sup> *infidelium*] imfidelium, MS.<sup>6</sup> *proposita*] Originally *propisita*, but corr. by a later hand.<sup>7</sup> *Andegaviae*] More correctly, *Angliae*, in A. C. D., and so in Ann. Waverl., p. 157.

*Dux Normanniae Henricus Alienoram dicit in uxorem.*

Rog. Wend. Anno Domini M<sup>o</sup>.C<sup>o</sup>.LI<sup>o</sup>. dux Normannorum Henricus A.D. 1151.  
ii. 248.

Alienoram,<sup>1</sup> quondam Francorum reginam, quam rex Lodouicuſ nuper dimiserat, plus propter singularem, qua<sup>2</sup> inter omnes dominas pollebat, pulchritudinem quam moralitatem, desponsavit<sup>3</sup> Et<sup>4</sup> factus est idem Henricus dux Aquitanniæ et comes Pictaviæ, qui prius fuerat dux Normannorum et consul Andegavensium. Et hoc procuravit muliebris, immo potius dæmoniaca, astutia Alienoræ, ut sic promoveretur æmulus regis Francorum futurus Henricus, qui ad regnum suspiravit Angliæ; et sic in ultionem dicti divertii Henricus efficacius regem Francorum, cum vellet, expugnaret,<sup>5</sup> et potentius. Quo audito, rex Francorum, hujus rei ignarus, commotus est vehementer contra ducem Henricum, maxime eo quod genuerat duas filias ex predicta Alienora; quapropter noluit ut illa ab aliquo filios susciperet, per quos exheredarentur filiæ memoratae. Post festum igitur<sup>6</sup> sancti Johannis, cum dux Henricus esset apud Barbefluvium, ut ad Angliam transfretaret, convenerunt in unum rex Francorum, Eustachius, filius regis Stephani, comes Robertus Per-ticensis, comes Henricus Campaniensis, et Gausfridus, frater ducis Henrici, cum ingenti copia armatorum, ut duci Henrico Normanniam, Andegaviam, cum ducatu Aquitanniæ, et omnem terram suæ dominationis potenter auferrent; quam etiam hii quinque magnates inter se præpropere diviserunt. Convenientes igitur omnes apud Novum-Mercatum, castrum illud obsidione ceperunt,<sup>7</sup>

<sup>1</sup> *Alienoram*] *Alinoram*, MS.

<sup>2</sup> *qua*] Originally *quas*, but s  
erased.

<sup>3</sup> *quam . . . desponsavit*] On an  
erasure.

<sup>4</sup> *Et*] Added in marg.

<sup>5</sup> *expugnaret*] *expungnaret*, MS.

<sup>6</sup> *festum igitur*] At first *igitur fes-*  
*tum*, but marked to be transposed.

<sup>7</sup> *ceperunt*] We should read *cinxe-*  
*runt*, as in W. A. C. D.

A.D. 1151. et fratrem ducis Gaufridum miserunt cum armata manu contra ducem Andegavensem expugnandum. Hæc autem audiens dux Henricus, recessit a Barbefluvio, obsesso castello pro viribus subventurus; sed antequam dux illuc veniret, redditum est castrum regi Francorum fraude illud observantium, ac si esset captum violenter. Tunc dux Henricus castrametatus juxta fluvium Andellæ, illas partes<sup>1</sup> cœpit devastare. Hæc provincia ad Rog. Wend. ducatum Normanniae pertinebat, sed Gaufridus, comes Andegaviæ, post mortem Henrici, regis Anglorum, ad tempus eam concesserat Lodowico. Tradidit etiam igni castella inimicorum suorum, Bascherville, Chitreum,<sup>2</sup> et Stirpineum,<sup>3</sup> cum castello Hugonis de Gurnaco, quod Feritatem appellant; denegabat enim idem Hugo debitum famulatum. Castellum insuper de Brueloles,<sup>4</sup> et aliud, quod Villa<sup>5</sup> nominatur, concremavit. Et inde [in]<sup>6</sup> Normanniam veniens, Richerum de Aquila graviter afflixit, qui suis subsidium contulerat inimicis, et municipum Bon-Mulins combussit. Circa finem vero Augusti, statutis militibus ad custodiam Normanniae, dux ad Andegaviam pergens, obsedit castrum Montis-Sorelli; ubi obsidione coartans inclusos, Willelmum, dominum castri, qui partes fratris sui fovebat, cum aliis quampluribus cepit militibus. Hoc quoque infortunio Gaufridus, frater ejus, compulsus est cum ipso concordari. Rex interea Francorum ducis absentia occasionem nactus, Normanniam intravit hostiliter, partemque burgi Regulariensis,<sup>7</sup> cum vico

Castles taken or destroyed by the duke.

Siege of Mont-Soreau.

Louis enters Normandy,

<sup>1</sup> *illas partes*] In Rob. de Monte, ap. Pertz, vi. 501, and Wendover, the text is rendered clearer by reading “partem illam Willesini” [Le Vexin].

<sup>2</sup> *Chitreum*] Chireium, MS. and F. Corr. from W. A. C. D.

<sup>3</sup> *Stirpineum*] Surpeneum, MS. and D. F.

<sup>4</sup> *Brueloles*] Brueboles, W. A. C.; Brieboles, D. In Rob. de Monte,

*Brueroles*. In all probability, we should read *Bresolles*.

<sup>5</sup> *Villa*] So in W. A. C. D., but in Rob. de Monte, “*Maculfi-villam* [Maconville], in Dorcassino pago.”

<sup>6</sup> *in*] Supplied from W. A. C. D.

<sup>7</sup> *Regulariensis*] So in W. A. C. D., but it is, apparently, an error for *Tegulariensis* [*Tillières*], as in Rob. de Monte, p. 501, and Chron. Norm. ap. Du Chesne, p. 987.

ii. 249.

quodam castri Vernolii, combussit; sed confestim, in A.D. 1151.  
tervenientibus viris religiosis, statuta sunt treugae inter  
regem et ducem.

but a truce  
is made  
with the  
duke.

*Robertus de Gorham creatur<sup>1</sup> abbas Sancti Albani.<sup>2</sup>*

Rog.Wend. Hoc quoque anno, rege Anglorum Stephano ad Sanc- Election of  
ii. 249. tum Albanum veniente, suggestum fuit ei de languore Robert de  
fol. 52 a. Radulphi abbatis; ubi, mediantibus episcopis ac ceteris Gorham,  
praelatis, concessit ut in eligendo abbate liceret mona- abbat of  
chis suis uti privilegiis. Robertum igitur de Gorham,  
priorem ecclesiae suae, unanimi assensu in abbatem St. Albans.  
Rog.Wend. elegerunt; qui postea, xiiii<sup>o</sup>. kalendas Julii, abbatis 18 June.  
ii. 250. suscepit benedictionem. Supervixit autem prædecessor Death of  
ejus [post]<sup>3</sup> promotionem ipsius diebus xix., et tunc his prede- cessor  
defunctus, sepultus est in capitulo, in abbatum ordine Ralph.  
reverenter. Quorum gesta laudabilia si quis audire  
desiderat, librum de Gestis Abbatum ecclesiae Sancti  
. Albani<sup>4</sup> repetat memorandæ.

*Obiit Matildis, uxor regis Stephani.*

Rog.Wend. Anno quoque sub eodem obiit Matildis, uxor regis Death of  
ii. 250. Stephani, die Inventionis sanctæ Crucis, apud Halin- Matilda,  
geham,<sup>5</sup> castellum comitis Alberici de Ver; et in ab- wife of king  
batia de Fevresham,<sup>6</sup> quam rex Stephanus vir suus Stephen.  
fundaverat, traditur sepulturæ. Eodem quoque anno 3 May.  
Johannes, monachus Sagiensis, factus est secundus an- John,  
tistes Moniæ insulæ, quæ est inter Angliam et Yber- monk of  
niam, Angliæ tamen propinquior; unde episcopus ille Séez, made  
Eboracensi archiepiscopo videtur debere subjacere. bp. of Man.

<sup>1</sup> *creatur*] On an erasure.

<sup>2</sup> This chapter is omitted in F.

<sup>3</sup> *post*] Supplied from W. A. C. D.

<sup>4</sup> *Sancti Albani*] Interlined.

<sup>5</sup> *Halingeham*] More correctly

*Haingeham* [Hengham or Havering-  
ham, co. Essex, now called Heding-  
ham] in W. A. C. D.

<sup>6</sup> *Fevresham*] Fevesham, MS.

A.D. 1151. Eodem quoque anno obiit Willelmus, episcopus Dunelmensis. Anno etiam sub eodem Gaufridus Arthurus factus est episcopus Sancti Asaf in Norwallia, qui Historiam Britonum de lingua Britannica transtulit in Latinam. Quo etiam anno Johannes de Papero, cardinalis, legatione fungens in Hybernia, quatuor<sup>1</sup> ibi constituit archiepiscopos, Archmacanum tamen principalem. Rog. Wend. ii. 251.

Death of William,  
bp. of  
Durham.  
Geoffrey  
Arthur,  
the histo-  
rian, made  
bp. of St.  
Asaph.  
Four arch-  
bishoprics  
created  
in Ireland.

Qui, dum per Angliam transitum faceret, regi Stephano Rog. Wend. fecit fidelitatem.

*Obiit pius imperator Conradus.*

Eodem anno Conradus imperator, vir prudens, pius Rog. Wend. et discretus, diem clausit extremum. Cujus pia gesta speciales tractatus exigent, præcipue de casu belli- ii. 251. coso, qui die accidit Pentecostes, qui in Cronicis Sancti Albani plenius poterit reperiri.<sup>2</sup> .

Death of  
the em-  
peror Con-  
rad III.

*Obiit papa Eugenius; successit Anastasius.*

A.D. 1152. Anno Domini M<sup>o</sup>.C<sup>o</sup>.LII<sup>o</sup>. Eugenius papa naturæ debita persolvit.<sup>3</sup> Cui succedens Anastasius, sedit in cathedra Romana anno uno, mensibus iiii<sup>or</sup>. et diebus xxiiii<sup>or</sup>. Eodem anno Ricardus de Beaumais, archidiaconus Middelsexiæ, consecratur in episcopum Londo- Rog. Wend. ii. 253. niensem. Anno quoque sub eodem Henricus Murdac, archiepiscopus Eboracensis,<sup>4</sup> et Bernardus, abbas Clarevallensis, viri vitae excellentis et præclaræ scientiæ, ab hoc seculo migraverunt. Eodemque anno Eustachius, filius regis Stephani, cum in die sancti Laurentii

Richard de  
Beumais,  
consecre-  
ted bp. of  
London.  
¶ Nota  
mortem  
multorum.

<sup>1</sup> *quatuor*] quinque, E.

<sup>2</sup> The work referred to under this title is, no doubt, the larger work of Matthew Paris, in A. C. D., in which the legend respecting Conrad (borrowed from Wendover) is found. at length. See ed. Wats, p. 85. MS

F. in this chapter deserts the text, and adopts the fuller narrative.

<sup>3</sup> Eugenius III. died 8 July 1153, and Anastasius IV. was consecrated 12 July following. Jaffé, pp. 652-3.

<sup>4</sup> Henry Murdac, archbishop of York, died 14 Oct. 1153. Fasti, iii. 99.

terram beati Edmundi martiris præ datum iret, subita A.D. 1152. morte præceptus est, et apud Fevresham, in abbatia 10 Aug. quam rex Stephanus pater suus fundaverat, sepultus est.

*De morte David, regis<sup>1</sup> Scotorum.<sup>2</sup>*

Rog.Wend. Obiit etiam eodem anno pius rex Scotorum David,  
ii. 254. cui successit Malcolmus, nepos ejus.

Death of  
David,  
king of  
Scots.  
Malcolm  
succeeds.

*Dux Henricus in Anglia potenter applicat.*

Rog.Wend. Eodemque anno dux Normannorum Henricus et Henry,  
ii. 254. Aquitanorum, comes Pictavensis et Andegavensis, cum duke of  
navibus xxxvii.<sup>3</sup> et militia magna nimis, ad Angliam Normandy,  
transfretavit, et infra octabas Epiphaniæ Malmesbiriaæ<sup>4</sup> comes to  
castellum obsedit et cepit. Indeque profectus, castrum England.  
de Craumerse obsidione vallavit; sed, intermeantibus<sup>5</sup> 6 Jan.  
viris, ita convenit inter regem et ducem, quod rex He besieges  
castrum illud propriis sumptibus complanaret; sicque  
soluta est obsidio, quæ circa castellum de Walinge-  
forde fuerat, rege Craumerse subvertente. Castella  
etiam de Radinges et de Bercewelle<sup>6</sup> dux Henricus in  
sua jura<sup>7</sup> recepit. Gundreda etiam, Warewikiae comi- Warwick  
tissa, regis Stephani militibus de castello ejusdem surrendered  
urbis ejectis, tradidit municipium Henrico duci; et sic  
diatim prosperatum est ejus negotium.

<sup>1</sup> *rege*, MS.

<sup>2</sup> On the edge of the lower margin is written by the author, "Obiit rex Scotorum David, succedit Malcolmus, nepos ejus."

<sup>3</sup> *xxxvii.*] xxxvi., W. I.; xxxii., D.

<sup>4</sup> *Malmesbiriaæ*] Malmebirie, MS.

<sup>5</sup> *intermeantibus*] At first written *inmeantibus*.

<sup>6</sup> *Bercewelle*] Bretewelle, W. A. C. D.; Barsewelle, F.

<sup>7</sup> *dux . . . jura*] On an erasure.

A.D. 1152. *Natus est Henrico duci filius, scilicet Willelmus.*

Birth of Eodem anno natus est duci Henrico filius ex Ali- Rog.Wend.  
William,  
son of duke enora uxore sua, et vocatus est Willelmus; quod est  
Henry. consuetum nomen ducibus Aquitannorum et comitibus  
Andegavorum.

*Concordia facta est inter regem Stephanum et ducem  
Henricum.*

A.D. 1153. Anno Domini M<sup>o</sup>.C<sup>o</sup>.LIII<sup>o</sup>., justitia de cœlo prospici- Rog.Wend.  
Peace con- ente, per diligentiam Theobaldi, Cantuariensis archi- ii. 255.  
cluded be- cludi episcopi, et episcoporum regni, hoc casu fortuito sed .  
tween king Stephen felici.<sup>1</sup> Indignati sunt magnates vehementer de guerræ .  
and duke Henry. tantæ ac talis diuturnitate dampnosa, dicentes, "Heu, .  
quamdiu sustinebimus hanc miseriam<sup>2</sup> pro impetuosa .  
duorum ira et regnandi libidine! Quilibet magnatum .  
alium corredit et destruit. Si hoc diutius durare per- .  
mittimus, regnum hoc, immo et alia, penitus irrestau- .  
rabiliter, ut vas figuli, destruentur. Experiatur igitur .  
The nobles proposed to decide the quarrel by one decisive battle. una dies Martis fortunam bellicosa; et cui sors inter .  
exercitum regis et ducis<sup>3</sup> exercitum hinc inde gene- .  
ralem victoriam contulerit,<sup>4</sup> regnet omnium in pace .  
dominator." Quod cum partibus complaceret, diem et .  
locum statuerunt.

### *Materna pietas.*

Matilda, the em- press, interposes. Cum igitur acies utrobique disponerentur, et galeæ .  
essent annectendæ, ut, vexillis explicatis et tubis per- .  
strepentibus, rex Stephanus cum suis et dux Henricus .  
cum suis generali congressione dimicarent, Matildis, .  
quondam imperatrix, quæ præsens aderat, considerans .

<sup>1</sup> A verb is wanting here to complete the sense, and so also in F. Perhaps we might supply *evenit*.

<sup>2</sup> *miseriam*] Added in marg.

<sup>3</sup> *ducis*] Added on to the text.

<sup>4</sup> *contulerit*] Partly on an erasure.

. tanti sanguinis imminere<sup>1</sup> effusionem,<sup>2</sup> abhorruit in A.D. 1153.  
. corde suo—mater enim Henrici sese jam morti exposi-  
. turi—et commota sunt viscera ejus commotione vehe- She invites  
. menti. Misso igitur festino nuncio sollempni ac fide- Stephen to  
fol. 52 b. digno, regi significavit, quod urgentissimum secretum a private conference.  
. ac festinum habuit auribus suis instillare, sub pacis  
. tuto conductu. Quod cum regi complacuisset, venit ad  
. eum, suspensa belli congressione. Et, vocato eo seor-  
. sum, dixit illi, “O fascinate et veritatis ignare, quid and asserts  
. facere disponis? Visne pater filium tuum occidere? duke  
. vel quod patricida sit filius tuus? Tu enim ipsum Henry to  
. generasti.” Et exorsa per ordinem, cum sola cum solo be his son,  
. loqueretur secretius, exposuit ei certissime quando et begotten  
. ubi ipse Stephanus ipsum Henricum generavit, nullo on herself.  
. conscio praeter ipsos vel præsente, ex ipsa Matildi.  
. Quæ statim impregnata ab eo, sponso suo<sup>3</sup> comiti,  
. Stephano duce<sup>4</sup> ducta est socianda.<sup>5</sup> Quod cum bene  
. recoleret Stephanus rex, mitigatus est rigor iræ suæ, Stephen  
. et statim advocari fecit Cantuariensem archiepiscopum confesses  
. Theobaldum; et veritatis jam dictæ conscius, confessus the fact to  
. est se ex dicta M[atildi] ipsum Henricum ducem genu- to the abp.  
. isse, et se diu super hac re deceptum et nescium of Canter-  
. fuisse. Acclamatum est igitur voce præconia ac gene- bury.  
. rali, ut cessaret exercituum indignatio, et vexilla, quæ A treaty of  
. jam explicabantur, convoluta absconderentur, quia de peace is  
. pace tractatus efficax habebatur.<sup>6</sup> Hæc autem omnia proclaimed.  
. cum vero relatu Henrico duci innotuissent, obstupuit  
. vehementer, et jani doluit tantum offendisse suum  
. genitorem; accepit tamen de ignorantia consolationem.<sup>7</sup>  
. Accepto igitur die collocutionis pacificæ, composuerunt  
. in hunc modum.

<sup>1</sup> *imminere*] iminere, MS.

<sup>2</sup> *effusionem*] Added in marg.

<sup>3</sup> *sponso suo*] On an erasure.

<sup>4</sup> *duce*] So written at first, but afterwards altered to *duci*.

<sup>5</sup> *socianda*] On an erasure.

<sup>6</sup> *habebatur*] The last two syllables are on an erasure.

<sup>7</sup> *tamen . . . consolationem*] Partly on an erasure.

A.D. 1153.

*Forma concordiae.*

Terms of the treaty. Rex Anglorum Stephanus<sup>1</sup> et dux Normannorum Rog.Wend. ii. 255.

Henricus apud Walingeford in talem concordiam conve-  
nerunt. Rex Stephanus, omni herede viduatus præter  
solummodo ducem Henricum, recognovit in conventu  
episcoporum et aliorum regni optimatum, quod dux  
Henricus jus hereditarium in regnum Angliæ habebat ;  
et dux benigne concessit, ut rex Stephanus tota vita  
sua, si vellet, regnum pacifice possideret. Ita tamen  
consummatum est pactum, quod ipse rex et episcopi  
tunc præsentes, cum ceteris optimatibus regni, jurarent,  
quod dux post mortem regis, si illum superviveret,  
regnum sine aliqua contradictione optineret. Et si nunc<sup>2</sup>  
illud Merlini propheticum attendatur, quod dicit, "No-  
cebit possidenti ex impiis pictas, donec sese genitore  
induerit,"<sup>3</sup> manifestum est, regem Stephanum Henricum  
induisse heredem, quem non eredit,<sup>4</sup> dum ipsum ha-  
buit<sup>5</sup> in filium, regni participem et postmodum succes-  
sorem. Juratum etiam fuit et compromissum, ut omnes  
in rege ducem et in duce omnes regem venerarentur. Rog.Wend.  
ii. 256.

Prophecy of Merlin partly fulfilled.

Love of Stephen for the duke.

<sup>1</sup> *Anglorum Stephanus*] Originally *Stephanus Anglorum*, but marked for transposition.

<sup>2</sup> *Et si nunc*] So W. F. ; Et sic hic, A. C. ; Et si nec, D. In ed. Wend. corrected *Et sic nunc.*

<sup>3</sup> Cf. "Merlini Vaticinia, eum interp. Alani de Insulis," p. 94, ed. Franc., 1608.

<sup>4</sup> *eredit*] gennit, W. A. C. D.  
<sup>5</sup> *habuit*] adoptavit, W. A. C. D.

- firmata pace, unus alii epistolam amicabilem valde cum A.D. 1153.  
 donativis concupiscibilibus transmisit, in cuius fine hii  
 versus totius tenori epistolæ adaptabantur,  
 "Qui, vel quæ, vel quod, Polinici Thidea pridem,<sup>1</sup>  
 Hic nos jungat amor, pax ea, fœdus idem."  
 A letter  
and gifts  
sent by one  
to the other.

*De milite Oeno, qui Purgatorium vivus intravit.*

Rog. Wend. Concordia itaque inter regem Stephanum et ducem Legend of  
 ii. 256. Henricum, ut dictum est, confirmata, miles quidam Owen and  
 Oenus nomine, qui multis annis sub rege S[tephano] the Purga-  
 militaverat, licentia a rege impetrata, profectus est in tory of St.  
 Patrik.

Rog. Wend. Hyberniā, quæ sibi fuerat solum natale, ut ibidem  
 ii. 257. suos parentes visitaret. Qui cum aliquandiu in regione  
 illa moram continuasset, cœpit ad mentem [reducere]<sup>2</sup> vitam suam adeo flagitiosam, quod ab ipsis cunabulis<sup>3</sup> semper incendiis vacaverat et rapinis; et, unde magis dolebat, se ecclesiarum fuisse violatorem et personarum ac rerum ecclesiasticarum invasorem, in tempore guerræ Anglicanæ, præter multa enormia plus tacenda quam narranda. Miles igitur memoratus, licet scelerosus, elegans fuit, audax et strenuus. Pœnitentia itaque ductus amarissima, ad episcopum quendam illius accessit regionis.<sup>4</sup> Cui cum peccata sua devotus per ordinem retulisset, increpavit eum graviter episcopus, asserens illum divinam clementiam nimis offendisse; unde miles valde contristatus, Deo condignam facere pœnitentiam repromisit. Episcopus igitur, ut justum sibi videbatur, volens ei infligere pœnitentiam, dum hæsitaret; miles respondit, "Ecce libens assumo pœnitentiam omnibus graviorem, dum modo sic saltem Deo merear reconciliari; Purgatorium enim sancti Patricii, te, pater, ju-

<sup>1</sup> The allusion here is to the Thebais of Statius.

<sup>2</sup> *reducere*] Supplied from W. A. C. D. F.

<sup>3</sup> *cunabulis*] cunabilis, MS.

<sup>4</sup> *regionis*] Added in marg.

A.D. 1153. bente, Deo duce, volo intrare, quod in regione hac esse dinoscitur." De hoc Purgatorio et ejus origine tradunt Hystoriæ Hybernienses : "Magnus Patricius," etc. Si quis subsequentia, quæ mirabilia sunt, et multum possunt auditores informare,<sup>1</sup> videre desiderat, in libris multorum Annalia de<sup>2</sup> gestis hujus anni perscrutetur.<sup>3</sup>.

*Willelmus, Eboracensis archiepiscopus, veneno perit.*

A.D. 1154. Anno Domini M<sup>o</sup>.C<sup>o</sup>.LIII<sup>o</sup>. Anastasius papa, defuncto, Rog.Wend. Death of ut supradictum est, Henrico, Eboracensi archiepiscopo, ii. 271. William, archbishop restituit in sedem eandem Willelum, quem prius papa fol. 53 a. of York. Eugenius degradaverat, donans ei pallium Romæ, et in Roger, archdeacon præsentia ipsius consecravit Hugonem de Pusat,<sup>4</sup> regis Rog.Wend. of Canterbury, succeeds. Stephani nepotem, episcopum Dunelmensem.<sup>5</sup> Sed paulo ii. 272. Hugh de post, cum idem archiepiscopus in sua reversus divina Pusat celebraret misteria, hausto in ipso calice, ut aiunt, consecrated veneno, obiit, et successit ei Rogerus, archidiaconus bishop of Cantuariensis. Durham.

*Dux Henricus transfretavit in Normanniam.*

Eodem anno dux Normannorum Henricus transfretavit in Normanniam, et revocavit paulatim in jus proprium dominica sua, quæ pater ejus ei dederat. Et inde profectus in Aquitanniam, rebellionem quorundam baronum suorum potenter repressit.

<sup>1</sup> *informare*] informare, MS.

<sup>2</sup> *in libris . . . de*] On an erasure.

<sup>3</sup> In the lower margin the following note has been written with a plummet, but is now almost illegible: "Narratio de milite ingrediente Purgatorium Patricii ; require ann. dni. 1000. 100. 54. in alio libro." The

legend is found in Wendorfer, ii. 257–271, and in A. C. D. F., somewhat abridged from the original work by Henry of Saltrey, in MS. Cott. Nero A. vii. f. 113.

<sup>4</sup> *Pusat*] Pusat, E.

<sup>5</sup> He was consecrated 20 Dec. 1153. Fasti, iii. 284.

*De papa Adriano, nato apud Sanctum Albanum. A.D. 1154.*

Rog.Wend. Anno quoque sub eodem, defuncto papa Anastasio, successit ei Nicholaus, Albanensis episcopus, et creatus in papam vocatus est Adrianus; vir quidem religiosus et natione Anglicus, de territorio<sup>1</sup> quidem Sancti Albani procreatus. Qui postea ecclesiae Sancti Albani, licet antea multis privilegiis insigniretur, multa contulit libertatum insignia<sup>2</sup> et exeniorum beneficia.

*Facta est concordia inter regem Francorum et ducem Normannorum.*

Rog.Wend. Eodem tempore facta est concordia inter regem Francorum Lodouicium et ducem Normannorum Henricum, hoc modo: Rex reddidit duci Vernolium et Novum Mercatum, et dux dedit ei duo milia marcas argenti, pro resarciendis dampnis, quae rex perpessus fuerat in capiendis ac tenendis et in eisdem firmitatibus munendis.

*De morte regis Stephani, et de coronatione regis Henrici II.<sup>3</sup>*

Rog.Wend. Eodem anno rex Anglorum Stephanus, miles egregius et mente piissimus, viii<sup>o</sup>. kalendas Novemboris diem clausit extremum. Cujus corpus in monasterio de Fevresham,<sup>4</sup> quod ipse a fundamentis construxerat,

Rog.Wend. ii. 273. traditur sepulturæ; ubi paulo ante Matildis, uxor ejus, et Eustachius, eorum filius, sunt sepulti. Dux vero Normannorum Henricus, auditio de morte regis certo nuncio, venit Barbefluvium, et ibidem per mensem

<sup>1</sup> *territorio*] territorio, MS.

<sup>2</sup> *insignia*] Added in marg.

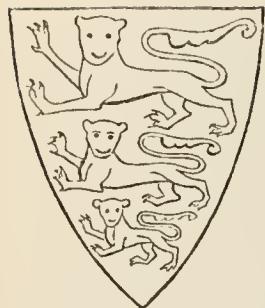
<sup>3</sup> In the space between the columns of text is drawn the shield of England reversed, with a crown be-

neath, and the words "Corona et clipeus regis Stephani."

<sup>4</sup> *Fevresham*] Feverham, MS. and E.

A.D. 1154. unum ad transfretandum ventum prosperum expectavit.

Erat interim, Deo post multa incommoda<sup>1</sup> miserante, pax<sup>2</sup> summa, quod raro contingit regibus defunctis, ob amorem et timorem ducis Henrici, quem omnes venturum et regem futurum sperabant et indubitanter expectabant. Dux igitur Henricus<sup>3</sup> vii<sup>o</sup>.<sup>4</sup> idus Decembris<sup>5</sup> in Angliam veniens, cum magno cleri et populi est tripudio exceptus, et xiiii<sup>o</sup>. kalendas Januarii, die Dominica ante Natale Domini, apud Westmonasterium ab omnibus rex acclamatus, per manum Theobaldi, Cantuariensis archiepiscopi, in regem est consecratus, præsentibus archiepiscopis, episcopis et regni magnatibus. Qui continuo in regem promotus, cœpit in jus proprium revocare urbes, castella et villas, quæ ad coronam spectabant, castra adulterina destruendo, alienigenas, maxime Flandrenses, quia, eo judice, inter omnes populos gens sunt detestabilis, expellendo, et a regno alienando et elongando, et quosdam pseudocomites, quibus rex Stephanus pæne omnia ad fiscum pertinentia minus caute contulerat, deponendo.



*Corona et clipeus  
regis Henrici II.*

He arrives  
in England,  
7 Dee.  
and is  
crowned  
at West-  
minster.

19 Dee.  
Measures  
taken by  
him after  
his acces-  
sion.

Capture of  
Ascalon.

### *Ascalona adquiritur.*

Eodem quoque anno rex Jerusalem Baldewinus, Rog. Wend. copioso nimis exercitu congregato, Ascalonam obsidione ii. 273. vallavit, et diuturna afflictione urbem opprimens, tali Rog. Wend. eam conditione optimuit, ut Turci, qui in ipsa erant, ii. 274. cum uxoribus, liberis et suis omnibus, liberum inde haberent recessum.

### *De sancto Wilfrico heremita.*

Death of  
Wilfrie, the  
hermit.

Eodem anno sanctus anchorita et solitarius Wil- Rog. Wend. fricus de Heselberga migravit ad Dominum, postquam ii. 274.

<sup>1</sup> *incommoda*] incomoda, MS.

<sup>2</sup> *pax*] In W. A. C. D. the words  
in *Anglia* are added before *pax*.

<sup>3</sup> In the lower margin the same

shield of England is repeated, erect,  
with a crown above.

<sup>4</sup> *vii<sup>o</sup>.*] viii<sup>o</sup>, W. and D.

<sup>5</sup> *Decembris*] Novembris, E.

xxix. annis contra hominum hostes triumpharat. De A.D. 1154.  
 . cuius vita et virtutibus memorabilibus si quis audire  
 . desiderat, actus repeatat hujus anni in rotulis veterum  
 . Annalium.<sup>1</sup>

*Nascitur Henricus III., qui Junior vocabatur. Genealogia II[enrici].*

- Rog. Wend. Anno Domini M<sup>o</sup>.C<sup>o</sup>.LV<sup>a</sup>. natus est Londoniis, pridie A.D. 1155.  
 ii. 279. kalendas Martii, Henrico, novo Anglorum regi, ex Alienora, regina sua, filius legitimus, et vocatum est<sup>2</sup> nomen ejus Henricus. Fuit autem magnificus rex Henricus II. filius Matildis, quæ prius fuerat Romanorum imperatrix, et postea comitissa Andegaviæ. Quæ, ut prædictum est,<sup>2</sup> clam concepit ab Stephano, qui eam duxerat ad comitem Andegaviæ Gaufridum maritandum, in nave, scilicet in quodam tristego navis ipsis pro thalamo præparato. Quæ, quia cito comiti sponso suo copulabatur, latuit ille conceptus omnem hominem, præter ipsam solam, sicut et ipsa confessa est, quando rex Stephanus parabatur ad proelium apud Egelawe planitem, quæ in partibus Angliæ est<sup>2</sup> occidentalibus.<sup>3</sup>
- Rog. Wend. Hujus Matildis mater fuit Matildis pia Anglorum regina, uxor scilicet Henrici I., et filia sanctæ Margaretæ, Scotorum reginæ. Margaretæ vero filia fuit Eadwardi, quam genuit ex Agatha, sorore Henrici, imperatoris Romani. Edwardus quidem filius fuit regis Ædmundi, qui Ferreum-latus dicebatur; cuius pater rex Etheldredus; cuius pater rex Eadgarus, rex pius et pacificus, cœnobiorum fundator et restaurator; cuius pater Ed-
- Birth of  
prince  
Henry.  
28 Feb.
- Henry II.  
was the son  
of Matilda  
by Stephen.
- His genea-  
logy up to  
the Anglo-  
Saxon  
kings and  
Noah.

<sup>1</sup> in rotulis veterum Annalium]  
 Written over an erasure. The legend is given at length in Wenvdover, ii. 274–279, and in A. C. D. F.

<sup>2</sup> est] Interlined three times.

<sup>3</sup> Opposite to the words *Fuit au-*

*tem . . . occidentalibus*, is written in the margin, in red letters, “*Vacat*,” to indicate that the passage should be omitted; but the scribe of F. has copied it. A note appears also to have been added in the margin, but is now entirely erased.

A.D. 1155. mundus ; ejus pater Edwardus senior ; ejus pater nobilissimus rex Alfredus ; qui fuit regis Adulphi, qui fuit regis<sup>1</sup> Egbrihti,<sup>2</sup> qui fuit Alemundi, qui fuit Eoffa, qui fuit Ragels,<sup>3</sup> cui frater Ine, rex Angliæ famosissimus, quorum pater fuit rex Kenredus ; qui fuit regis Ceolwaldi, qui fuit Cutha, qui fuit Cuthwini, qui fuit Ceaulini, qui fuit Cuthrici, qui fuit Creodda, qui fuit Certic, qui fuit Elesa, qui fuit Egla, qui fuit Wig, qui fuit Frewine, qui fuit Freothegar, qui fuit Broand, qui fuit Beldai, qui fuit Woden, qui fuit Frethewald, qui fuit Freolaf,<sup>4</sup> qui fuit Frethewlf, qui fuit Fringoldulf, qui fuit Gecha,<sup>5</sup> qui fuit Tharwa,<sup>6</sup> qui fuit Beau, qui fuit Seldwa, qui fuit Heremod, qui fuit Itermod, qui fuit Hathra, qui fuit Wala, qui fuit Bedwi, qui fuit Sem, qui fuit Noe.

*Willelmus Peverel exheredatur.*

William  
Peverel is  
disinherited  
by the  
king.

Eodem anno rex Anglorum Henricus exheredavit Rog. Wend.  
Willelmum Peverel, causa beneficii, quod Ranulpho, ii. 280.  
comiti Cestriæ, nequiter<sup>7</sup> propinaverat. In ejus pestis  
consortio plures consciit fuisse dicuntur.

Renewal of  
fealty to  
the sons of  
Henry II.  
Death of  
Robert, bp.  
of Exeter.  
Robert,  
dean of  
Salisbury,  
succedes.

*Juratur fidelitas filiis regis H[enrici] II.*

Eodemque tempore rex Henricus fecit jurare fide- Rog. Wend.  
litatem filiis suis de regno Angliæ, Willelmo scilicet et ii. 280.  
Henrico. Eodem tempore, defuncto Roberto, Exoniensi  
episcopo, Robertus, Saresbiriensis decanus, successit. Rog. Wend.  
Per idem quoque tempus Henricus, Wintoniensis an- ii. 281.  
tistes, præmisso thesauro suo per abbatem Cluniaeensem,  
succedes.

<sup>1</sup> regis] On an erasure.

<sup>2</sup> Egbrihti] Egbrihri, MS.

<sup>3</sup> Ragels] Ingels, W. A. C. D.

<sup>4</sup> Freolaf] Freolater, W. A. C. D.

<sup>5</sup> Gecha] Getha, W. A. C. D. F.

<sup>6</sup> Tharwa] Tatwa, W. A. C. D.

<sup>7</sup> nequiter] On an erasure, and originally written *venenum*, as in E. F. follows the correction.

absque licentia regis ab Anglia clam recessit; qua- A.D. 1155.  
propter rex tria ejus castella complanavit. Henry, bp. of Win-  
chester, leaves  
England privately.

*Hugo de Mortuo-mari de insolentia punitur.*

Rog.Wend. Circa eosdem dies Hugo de Mortuo-mari, vir arro- Insolence  
ii. 281. gantissimus, castella sua contra regem temere commu- of Hugh de  
nivit, turrim scilicet Gloverniæ, Wigemor<sup>1</sup> et Breges;<sup>2</sup> Mortimer  
sed rex superveniens, omnia cepit et subvertit. Tandem punished.  
tamen suam recognoscens impotentiam, et suæ temeri-  
tatis insolentiam, cum rege pacificatus est humiliatus.

*Rex Francorum Lodowicus dicit in uxorem filiam  
regis Hispaniae.*

Rog.Wend. Sub eisdem diebus Lodowicus, rex Francorum, duxit Marriage of  
ii. 281. filiam Aldefunsi,<sup>3</sup> regis Hispaniae, cuius regni caput Louis VII.  
est Tholetum. Quem, quia principatur regibus Arra- to the  
gonum et Galatiæ, imperatorem Hyspaniæ appellant.<sup>4</sup> daughter of Alfonso,  
king of Spain.

*Quomodo gradatim promovebatur beatus Thomas.*

Rog.Wend. Tempore quoque sub eodem Thomas, Cantuariensis Thomas,  
ii. 281. archidiaconus, Beverlacensis præpositus, et canonicus archdeacon of Canter-  
in diversis per Angliam ecclesiis, factus est regis<sup>5</sup> bury, made cancellarius. Semper tamen ecclesiæ Sancti Albani chancellor.  
devotus et clericus humillimus,<sup>6</sup> quia ab illa ecclesia Hereceived  
promotus primum cepit redditum in fortunatam arram his first  
futuræ promotionis, videlicet ecclesiolum<sup>7</sup> de Brante- living from  
feld.<sup>8</sup> the church of St. Al-  
ban's.

<sup>1</sup> *Wigemor*] Wigenor, MS.

<sup>2</sup> *Breges*] Breges, MS.; and so

A. C. D. F.; *Bruge*, Rob. de Monte, p. 504.

<sup>3</sup> *Aldefunsi*] Andefulsi, E.

<sup>4</sup> *appellant*] appellant, MS.

<sup>5</sup> *regis*] At first written *atque* regis cito, but the words *atque* and

cito are underscored, and they are omitted in F.

<sup>6</sup> *humillimus*] humilimus, MS.

<sup>7</sup> *ecclesiolum*] ecclesiolum, MS.

<sup>8</sup> On the lower margin is a note in plummet: "Quod primus redditus, quem habuit beatus Thomas, fuit ecclesia de Brantefeld."

A.D. 1155. *Papa Adrianus insulam Hyberniae regi Anglorum H[enrico] dedit.*

Henry asks leave of the pope to invade Ireland. Per idem tempus rex Anglorum Henricus nuncios sollempnes Romam mittens, rogavit papam Adrianum, ut sibi liceret, sine scandalo læsionis fidei Christianæ, Hiberniae insulam intrare, et terram illam, locum vide- licet horroris et vastæ solitudinis, utpote limbum mundi, sibi et Dei cultui subjugare; atque homines illos bestiales ad fidem et viam reducere veritatis et obedientiam<sup>1</sup> ecclesiæ Romanæ. Quod papa regi grantanter annuens, hoc ei privilegium destinavit.

### *Literæ papales.<sup>2</sup>*

Papal letters concerning Ireland. Adrianus episcopus, servus servorum Dei, karissimo in Christo [filio],<sup>3</sup> illustri Anglorum regi, salutem et apostolicam benedictionem. Laudabiliter et satis<sup>4</sup> fructuose de gloriose nomine tuo<sup>5</sup> propagando in terris, et æternae felicitatis præmio cunctando in cœlis, tua magnificentia cogitat, unde<sup>6</sup> ad dilatandos ecclesiæ terminos, ad declarandam indoctis et crudibus populis Christianæ fidei veritatem, et vitiorum plantaria de agro Dominico extirpanda, sicut catholicus princeps intendis, et ad id convenientius exequendum, consilium sedis apostolicae exigis et favorem; [in quo facto quanto altiori consilio et majori discretioni procedis,]<sup>7</sup> tanto in eo feliciorem progressum te, præstante Domino, confidimus<sup>8</sup> habiturum.<sup>9</sup> Significasti siquidem nobis, fili in Christo karissime, te Hyber-

<sup>1</sup> *obedientiam*] obedientiam, MS.

<sup>2</sup> This bull is printed in Rymer, i. 19, edit. 1816, from a copy of the 14th cent. in MS. Cott. Cland., E. viii., which is evidently derived from Diceto, Ymag. Hist., col. 529.

<sup>3</sup> *filio*] Supplied from W. A. C. D. and Diceto.

<sup>4</sup> *et satis*] satis et, Dic. and Rym.

<sup>5</sup> *tuo*] Om. Dic. and Rym.

<sup>6</sup> *unde*] dum, W. A. C. D., Dic. and Rym.

<sup>7</sup> *in quo . . . procedis*] Supplied from W. A. C. D., Dic. and Rym.

<sup>8</sup> *confidimus*] Above this word is written *tis*, so as to suggest the reading *confiditis*. F. agrees with the text.

<sup>9</sup> *habiturum*] After this word an additional passage is found in Dic. and Rym., which is followed by the paragraph beginning “Sane Yberniam et omnes insulas.”

niæ insulam, ad subdendum populum<sup>1</sup> legibus Christianis,<sup>2</sup> A.D. 1155. et vitiorum inde plantaria extirpanda,<sup>3</sup> velle intrare, et de singulis domibus annuam unius denarii beato Petro velle solvere pensionem, et jura ecclesiarum illius terræ illibata et integra conservare. Nos autem<sup>4</sup> pium et laudabile desiderium tuum favore<sup>5</sup> congruo prosequentes, et petitioni tuæ benignum<sup>6</sup> impendentes assensum, gratum et acceptum habemus, ut pro dilatandis ecclesiae terminis, et pro vitiorum distringendo<sup>7</sup> discursu, pro corrigendis moribus et virtutibus inserendis, pro Christianæ religionis augmendo, insulam illam ingrediaris, et quæ ad honorem Dei et salutem illius terræ spectaverint exequaris; et illius terræ populus te recipiat, et sicut dominum veneretur, jure<sup>8</sup> ecclesiarum illibato et integro

Rog. Wend. permanente, et salva beato Petro<sup>9</sup> de singulis domibus annua  
ii. 283. unius denarii pensione. Sane<sup>10</sup> omnes insulas, quibus sol

justitiæ Christus illuxit, et quæ documenta fidei Christianæ suscepérunt, ad jus beati Petri et sacrosanctæ Romanæ ecclesiæ, quod tua etiam voluntas<sup>11</sup> recognoscit, non est dubium pertinere.<sup>12</sup> Si ergo quod animo concepisti effectu duxeris prosequente complendum, stude gentem illam bonis moribus informare, et agas tam per te quam per illos, quos ad hoc fide, verbo, et vita idoneos esse perspexeris, ut decoretur ibi ecclesia, plantetur et crescat fidei Christianæ religio; et quæ ad honorem Dei et salutem pertinent animarum taliter ordinentur, ut et a Deo sempiternæ mercedis præmia<sup>13</sup> consequi merearis, et in terris gloriosum nomen valeas in seculis optinere.”

. Eodemque anno Frethericus consecratus est in imperatorem ab A[driano] papa.<sup>14</sup>

Consecration of the emperor Frederic.

<sup>1</sup> *populum*] illum populum, Dic. and Rym.

<sup>10</sup> *Sane*] Sane Yberniam et, Dic. and Rym.

<sup>2</sup> *Christianis*] Om. Dic. and Rym.

<sup>11</sup> *voluntas*] nobilitas, W. A. C. D., Dic. and Rym.

<sup>3</sup> *plantaria extirpanda*] plantariis extirpandis, W.A.C.D. Corr. from Dic. and Rym.

<sup>12</sup> *pertinere*] In Dic. and Rym. an additional passage is inserted here, and the whole paragraph from *Sane* is transposed before the word *significasti*.

<sup>4</sup> *autem*] itaque, Dic. and Rym.

<sup>13</sup> *præmia*] Added on to the text, and so in F.; but the other MSS., with Dic. and Rym., read *cumulum*.

<sup>5</sup> *favore*] cum favore, Dic. and Rym.

<sup>14</sup> *Eodemque . . . papa*] Added in marg., but inserted in text of F.

<sup>6</sup> *benignum*] benigne, Rym.

<sup>7</sup> *distringendo*] At first written *distringo*, but corr. in marg.

<sup>8</sup> *jure*] jure nimirum, Dic. and Rym.

<sup>9</sup> *Petro*] Petro, et sacrosanctæ Romanæ ecclesiæ, Dic. and Rym.

*Inventa est tunica Domini inconsutilis, cum scripto superposito.*

A.D. 1156. Anno Domini M<sup>o</sup>.C<sup>o</sup>.LVI<sup>o</sup>., in pago Parisiacensi, in nasterio Argentomonio,<sup>1</sup> revelatione divina tunica Saltatoris inconsutilis et subfusi<sup>2</sup> coloris reperta est. Quam, sicut literæ cum ea repertæ indicabant, gloriosa Mater ejus fecerat ei dum adhuc puer esset, et cum corpore ejus commensurabile suscepit incrementum.

Rog. Wend.

ii. 283.

*Rex Henricus quædam fortia castra cepit.*

Eodem anno rex Henricus in Normanniam transiens, cepit longa obsidione castella Mirebellum et Chinonem; Losdunum vero antea<sup>3</sup> in jus suum receperat. Nam paulo ante frater ejus Gaufridus, qui, expulso comite Britanniæ Hoelo, Nanneticam, civibus consentientibus, ceperat civitatem, hac conditione cum rege pacificatus est, ut rex daret ei singulis annis mille libras Anglicæ monetæ, et Andegavensium duo milia. Et sic inter eos discordia est sopita, mense Julio.

Rog. Wend.

ii. 283.

Rog. Wend.

ii. 284.

*Rex Siciliæ prosperatur.*

Tempore quoque sub eodem rex Siciliæ Willelmus civitatem Baruni funditus evertit, Græcos superavit, civitates et castella sibi prius ablata in jus suum revocavit; cum papa Adriano pacem fecit, consecrationes episcoporum regni sui ei concedendo. Tunc quoque temporis Alienora, Anglorum regina, peperit regi filiam, quam Matildem nuncupavit.

Rog. Wend.

ii. 284.

<sup>1</sup> Argentomonio] Argentoilo, W. A. C. D.

Robert de Monte of the 12th century, from whom the passage is borrowed), the reading is *subrufi*.

<sup>2</sup> subfusi] So also W. F. I.; subconfusi, A. C. D. and Edd. In MS. Reg. 13 C. xi. (a fine copy of

<sup>3</sup> antea] añaea, MS.

*Reges Anglorum et Scotorum mutua jura sibi ad invicem reddiderunt.<sup>1</sup>*

Rog.Wend. Anno Domini M<sup>o</sup>.C<sup>o</sup>.LVII<sup>o</sup>. rex Anglorum Henricus II. A.D. 1157  
ii. 286. transfretavit in Angliam, et rex Scotorum Malcolmus Henry returns to reddidit ei civitatem Karleolum, Bamburgi castrum, et England, Novum-Castellum super Thinam, et totum comitatum and makes Lodonensem; et rex reddidit ei Huntundoniæ comitatutum. terms with the king of Scots. Willelmus similiter, filius regis Stephani nothus, William, qui erat comes Moretonii et de Warennæ, reddidit regi natural son of Stephen, Pevenesel et Norwicum, et omnes munitiones suas in and Hugh Bigod, sur Anglia et Normannia, quæ ex dono regis Stephani possidebat. Et rex Henricus dedit ei<sup>2</sup> quicquid pater render their castles.

Rog.Wend. ejus rex Stephanus habuerat, die qua rex Henricus  
ii. 287. Primus mortuus fuit et vivus. Et eodem tempore Hugo Bigod castella sua regi resignavit. In Adventu 2 Dec. autem infirmatus<sup>3</sup> Willelmus, primogenitus regis Hen- Death of rici, obiit, diebus hujus anni scilicet<sup>4</sup> Nataliciis; unde William, eldest son dissentio est, utrum hoc vel anno præterito obierit.<sup>5</sup> of Henry. Sepultus est autem apud Radingum.

*Rex Henricus edomat Walenses, et firmat castra.*

Rog.Wend. Anno quoque sub eodem rex Henricus magnam pa- Henry sub-  
ii. 287. ravit expeditionem, ita ut duo milites de tota Anglia dues the tertium invenirent, ad expugnandum Walenses per Welsh. terram et per mare. Intrans ergo Walliam rex, exstirpati silvis et succisis, viisque patefactis, castrum Roelent<sup>6</sup> firmavit, aliasque munitiones antecessoribus suis sur- reptas potenter revocavit. Castellum etiam de Basinge-

<sup>1</sup> On the edge of the lower margin is written, "Malcolmus adhuc rex Scotorum."

<sup>2</sup> *ei]* Added in marg.

<sup>3</sup> *infirmatus]* *imfirmatus*, MS.

<sup>4</sup> *scilicet]* Originally *diebus* was

repeated, but afterwards underscored, and *scilicet* substituted.

<sup>5</sup> In A. *marg.*, C. D. this event is placed at the end of the year 1156.

<sup>6</sup> *Roelent]* *Toelent*, MS. and F.

A.D. 1157. *were restauravit.* - Apud Snaudun cepit rex multorum homagia Walensium.<sup>1</sup> Et, Walensibus ad libitum subjectis et subjugatis, magnificus triumphator in Angliam remeavit.

*Natus est Ricardus regi Henrico.*

Birth of  
prince  
Richard.  
Robert,  
abbot of  
Mont St.  
Michel,  
finishes his  
Chronicle.

Eodemque anno natus est Henrico regi ex Alienora, Rog. Wend. ii. 287. regina sua, filius apud Oxoniam, et vocatus est Ricardus, qui postea rex fuit. Et hucusque Robertus, abbas de Monte Sancti Michaelis, Cronica sua describendo digessit.<sup>2</sup>

*Rex Henricus coronam portavit.*

A.D. 1158. Anno Domini M<sup>o</sup>.C<sup>o</sup>.LVIII<sup>o</sup>. rex Henricus in Dominicæ Rog. Wend. ii. 287. Nativitatis die apud Wigorniam coronam portavit in magna gloria; et<sup>3</sup> dum coronam portaret, Spiritu Sancto infundente in cor ejus humilitatem, ad memoriam rediit nobile factum magni regis Cnutorum. Qui statuens regalem cathedram juxta ripam maris tunc ascendentis, et flatibus ventorum agitati, sedit in ea regalibus insignitus, coronatus, et sceptrum tenens; comminabatur que mari, imperando ne amplius ascenderet, terram suam madefaciendo. Et iterum crudelius et clamiosius ter vel quater, ut prius, imperium iteravit. Quod cum frustra factum hoc vidit, et mare ipsum fere absorbusset, recessit humiliatus. Et deponens coronam suam, in manu sua detulit eam usque veniret pedes ad proximam ecclesiam, et optulit eam super altare, præcipiens ut capiti Crucifixi apponeretur. Quod cum factum esset, adoravit rex pronus in terram cadens, et dixit, "Te solum decet, rex Domine Jesu Christe."

<sup>1</sup> *Apud . . . Walensium]* Added in marg., and in text of F.

<sup>2</sup> The Chronicle of Robert de Monte originally ended in 1156 and

1157. See Pertz, Mon. Germ., vi. 283.

<sup>3</sup> *in . . . et]* Added on to the text, and partly on erasure. F. agrees.

. omnipotens, regem appellari et esse, qui cœlos moderaris A.D. 1158.  
. et infima,<sup>1</sup> qui mari et ventis imperas. Te Deum ve-  
. neror homo, te Dominum servus adoro. Unde nobis  
. mortalibus, nobis miseris peccatoribus tanta præsumptio,  
. ut reges vel etiam reguli audeamus appellari vel esse ?  
. nedum corona et sceptro<sup>2</sup> insigniri, et regalibus redi-  
. miri ?” Rex igitur Cnuto in hac persistens humilitate,  
. nunquam postea voluit coronam portare. O, quam  
. placita est Deo magnatum in gloria sua humilitas !  
. Et, juxta illud Senecæ, “ Si magnum est uti fictilibus  
fol. 54 b. . sicut aureis, multo majus est aureis uti tanquam ficti-  
. libus.”<sup>3</sup> Rex Henricus hoc informatus<sup>4</sup> exemplo, post In imita-  
. divinorum celebrationem sacramentorum coronam mani-  
R. Wend. . bus de capite apprehendens, illam super altare posuit, Henry  
ii. 287. nec ultra coronam portare curavit. ceases to  
wear a crown.

*Moneta.*

Rog. Wend. Eodemque anno nova moneta fabricata fuit in An- New  
ii. 287. glia.<sup>5</sup> coinage.

*Thomas cancellarius transfretat in Galliam.*

Rog. Wend. Annoque sub eodem Thomas, regis cancellarius, in  
ii. 288. apparatu maximo, nam, inter cetera magnalia, ix. longas to demand  
. bigas habebat,<sup>6</sup> venit Parisius, Margaretam, regis Fran- the hand of  
. corum filiam, Henrico, filio regis Anglorum, in conjugem for prince  
rogaturus et<sup>7</sup> accepturus.

Thomas,  
the chan-  
cellor, goes  
to France,  
to demand  
the hand of  
Margaret  
for prince  
Henry.

<sup>1</sup> *infima*] *imfima*, MS.

<sup>2</sup> *sceptro*] *ceptrō*, MS.

<sup>3</sup> The words of Seneca are: “Magnus ille est, qui fictilibus sic utitur quemadmodum argento, nec ille minor est, qui sic argento utitur quemadmodum fictilibus.” Ep. v. Opp. tom. ii. 13, ed. Amst., 1672.

<sup>4</sup> *informatus*] *imformatus*, MS.

<sup>5</sup> In the margin occurs this note : “ Moneta tunc reprobata *Baseling* dicebatur.” It is omitted in F.

<sup>6</sup> *nam . . . habebat*] Added in marg., but in text of F.

<sup>7</sup> *rogaturus et*] Added in marg. Om. F

A.D. 1158.

King  
Henry  
takes pos-  
session of  
Nantes.  
He is  
received  
at Paris in  
the king's  
palace.

*Obiit Gaufridus. Nannetica [civitas]<sup>1</sup> adquiritur.*

Eodemque anno, Gaufrido, fratre regis Anglorum de- Rog. Wend.  
ii. 288.  
functo, idem rex transiens, Nanneticam civitatem in  
jus suum recepit. Quo etiam tempore rex Henricus a  
rege Francorum invitatus venit Parisius, et receptus  
est in palatio regis, rege Francorum, cum regina sua,  
in claustro canonicorum beatæ Mariae sese recipiente.

*Rex Henricus Tholosam obsedit.*

A.D. 1159. Anno Domini M<sup>0</sup>.C<sup>0</sup>.LIX<sup>0</sup>. rex Anglorum Henricus II. Rog. Wend.  
ii. 288.  
Hemarches duxit exercitum versus Tholosam, et cepit castella  
to Tou- fortia vicina, rege Francorum interim in urbe jugiter  
louse, and commorante. Sed rex Anglorum urbem assultu non  
takes some impetivit, ob regis Francorum reverentiam, cuius soro-  
castles. rem Constantiam comes Tholosanus duxerat in uxorem,  
et ex ea liberos suscepserat. Qua de causa reges in-  
imici facti sunt, sicut rerum exitus postmodum decla-  
ravit.<sup>2</sup>

*Scisma<sup>3</sup> ortum est inter duos papas.*

Schism be-  
tween pope  
Alexander  
III. and  
Octavian,  
antipope.  
[Victor  
IV.]

Eodem anno, defuncto papa Adriano, qui Anglicus Rog. Wend.  
ii. 288.  
fuit natione, et de Sancto Albano oriundus,<sup>3</sup> scisma<sup>4</sup> oritur inter duos, Alexandrum et Octovianum. Nam imperator cum clero suo receperat Octovianum, sed a regibus Francorum et Anglorum consensum est in Rog. Wend.  
ii. 289.  
Alexandrum. Imperator autem ad dictos reges literas direxit, ut Octovianum reciperent, sed, ipsis contradicentibus, Alexander papatum optimuit.

<sup>1</sup> *civitas*] Omitted in MS., which reads only *Nannet*'.

<sup>2</sup> *declaravit*] Corr. in marg. *declarabit*; but the original reading is confirmed by W. A. C. D.

<sup>3</sup> *qui . . . oriundus*] Added in marg., and is in text of F.

<sup>4</sup> *scisma*] *cisma*, MS.

*Henricus, filius regis Henrici, duxit uxorem.*

Rog. Wend. Anno Domini M<sup>o</sup>.C<sup>o</sup>.LX<sup>o</sup>., rex Anglorum Henricus II. A.D. 1160.  
ii. 289. a Tholosa reversus, Margaretam, filiam regis Franco- Capture of  
rum, quam in sua custodia habebat, Henrico filio suo the castles  
fecit desponsari,<sup>1</sup> et castellum de Gisortz<sup>2</sup> diu deside- of Gisors  
ratum suscepit. Quod, ut ait rex [Francorum],<sup>3</sup> præ- and Cau-  
propere factum fuerat,<sup>4</sup> indignatus<sup>5</sup> est valde; unde mont.  
cum auxilio Theobaldi, comitis Flandrensis, ad dedecus  
regis Anglorum, Calvum-Montem firmavit. Sed rex  
Anglorum festinus adveniens, rege Francorum et comite  
affugatis, castrum obsedit et infra paucos dies ad de-  
ditionem inclusos coegit; capti sunt autem intus milites  
lv. Et sic celebratum est matrimonium inter filium Marriage  
regis Anglorum septennem et filiam regis Francorum of prince  
triaenem, auctoritate scilicet Henrici Pisani et Willelmi  
Papiensis, presbiterorum cardinalium et sedis apostolicæ  
legatorum, iii<sup>o</sup>. nonas Novembris, apud Novum-Bur- 2 Nov.  
gum.

*Obiit Cantuariensis [archiepiscopus]<sup>6</sup> T[heobaldus].*

Rog. Wend. Eodemque anno<sup>7</sup> Theobaldus, Cantuariensis archiepi- Death of  
ii. 289. scopus, diem clausit extremum.<sup>8</sup> Theobald,  
abp. of Canterbury.

<sup>1</sup> *desponsari*] *deponsari*, MS.

<sup>2</sup> *Gisortz*] *Gisorecio*, E.

<sup>3</sup> *Francorum*] Supplied from W. A. C. D.

<sup>4</sup> *quod . . . fuerat*] So also W. A. C. D. F. I.; but a word is wanting to complete the sense. In the Edd. the passage is corrected thus: "Propter quod rex Francorum, *quia præ-*

*inserts quapropter before indigna-*  
*tus.*

<sup>5</sup> *indignatus*] *dignatus*, W. A. C. D. Corr. in ed. Wend. *indignatus*.

<sup>6</sup> *archiepiscopus*] Supplied from F.

<sup>7</sup> *anno*] Added in marg.

<sup>8</sup> Archbishop Theobald died 18 April 1161. *Fasti*, i. 8.

*De consecratione B[artholomæi], Exoniensis episcopi, et  
[de]<sup>1</sup> miraculo, quod vidit.*

A.D. 1161. Anno Domini M<sup>0</sup>.C<sup>0</sup>.LX<sup>0</sup>.I<sup>0</sup>. Bartholomæus, vir religiosus  
 Consecra- et in theologicis disciplinis eleganter eruditus, a Waltero, Rog. Wend.  
 tion of Bartholo- Rofensi episcopo, consecratus est antistes Exoniensis. <sup>ii. 290.</sup>  
 mew, bp. of De hoc Bartholomæo venerabili viro fama refert notis-  
 Exeter. sima, et cum scripti, quod idem episcopus confecit,  
 testimonio, crebra ejusdem relatio, quod cum<sup>2</sup> lucro<sup>3</sup>.  
 animarum devotus intendens, parochiam suam visitaret,  
 in villa quadam campestri cum suis clericis forte per-  
 Vision seen noctavit. Dormiens igitur de nocte in solario quodam,  
 by him. quod ecclesiæ villæ ac cimiterio imminebat,<sup>4</sup> cum circa  
 noctis medium ad matutinas decantandas evigilasset,  
 lumen, quod in ejus thalamo ardere consueverat, ap-  
 parebat extinctum. Episcopus igitur cubicularium suum  
 objurgans, quod in tenebris dormiret, præcepit ut velo-  
 citer lumen quæreret et afferret. Interea vero episcopus,  
 dum luminis adventum vigilans præstolaretur, audivit  
 manifeste quandam vocem puerilem hunc sermonem.  
 Nota mira- Anglice pronunciantem, “Riseth op, alle Cristes icorne, ·  
 culum de Levenoth ure fader of þis wrold fundeth.” Et hunc ·  
 Levenotho. sermonem audivit episcopus aliquotiens repetitum. Et ·  
 postea, juxta talia pronunciantem, velut puerorum voces ·  
 audivit plangentium aperte et articulatim dicentium,  
 “Væ nobis! vae nobis! Quis amodo pro nobis orabit  
 et elemosinas dabit? vel pro nostra salute missas cele-  
 brabit? Migrat ab hoc seculo noster consolator Leve- ·  
 nothus.”<sup>5</sup> Et cum primus horum puerorum, qui antea ·  
 locutus fuerat, diceret voce qua prius sed solemniori,  
 “Requiescat in pace,” responderunt omnes alii sub.

<sup>1</sup> *de]* Supplied from W. A. C. D. F.

<sup>2</sup> *cum]* Added in marg. ; *dum*, W. A. C. D.

<sup>3</sup> *lucro]* At first written *lucris*, as in W. A. C. D.

<sup>4</sup> *imminebat]* iminebat, MS.

<sup>5</sup> *Lerenothus]* Added in marg. The name is not given by Wendorver; nor in A. C. D.

. eadem voce, “Amen!” Audiens autem has voces episcopus,<sup>1</sup> et intelligens earum sententias, obstupuit vehementer, supra modum admirans quid hæc portenderent. Cubicularius vero interim lumen quærens, cum neque in aula neque coquina<sup>2</sup> ignem reperisset,<sup>3</sup> exivit in villam anxius, et, multis jam ædibus perlustratis, lumen optatum non invenit. Tandem, cum querendo hoc illucque diu discurrisset, vidi lumen quasi in ultima vel penultima domo villæ; et illuc se cum festinatione conferens, invenit in domo cujusdam hominis corpus tunc exanimatum, et cum presbitero villæ multos utriusque sexus homines circumstantes, præ dolore lacrimantes. At cubicularius episcopi, super hiis quæ vidit non multum sollicitus, lumen posuit in laterna sua, et festinanter ad dominum suum episcopum reversus, quæ sibi acciderant per ordinem enarravit.

*Rog. Wend.* Cantatis igitur matutinis, cum dies illuxisset, fecit ii. 291. episcopus convenire presbiterum, cum quibusdam hominibus villæ, et sciscitatus est<sup>4</sup> ab eisdem diligenter, quis homo ille nuper defunctus esset, et qualis vitæ ante obitum in seculo extitisset. Qui omnes fatebantur de eo, quod esset vir justus ac timens Deum, pater orphanorum et consolatio miserorum, ut qui omnem substantiam ejus in pauperibus, dum viveret, et hospitiis erogaverat. Tenuit præterea in domo sua unum presbiterum, cui de proprio omnia ministraverat necessaria, qui commendationes animarum et missarum suffragia diebus singulis pro defunctis celebrarat. Hæc autem cum audisset episcopus, continuo intellexit in spiritu voces, quas audierat de cimiterio emissas, nihil aliud esse quam voces animarum illorum corporum, quæ in illo cimiterio quiescebant, plangentium<sup>5</sup> de

<sup>1</sup> *episcopus*] Repeated again after *sententias*, but underscored for omission.

<sup>2</sup> *coquina*] quoquina, MS.

<sup>3</sup> *reperisset*] repperisset, MS.

<sup>4</sup> *est*] Interlined.

<sup>5</sup> *plangentium*] The last three letters of this word and of *gementium* are on an erasure, and no doubt the text was originally written *plangentes* and *gementes*, as in W. A. C. D.

A.D. 1161. morte hominis illius et gementium, per quem, dum vixerat, elemosinarum et missarum habere suffragia meruerunt. Tunc episcopus, vocato ad se presbitero illo, qui sub viro jam defuncto missas pro defunctis celebrarat, interrogavit<sup>1</sup> quod illi pio viro nomen erat, et quibus conditionibus sub ipso vixerat et stipendiis. Et omnia presbiter exposuit episcopo, annexens etiam, quod idem Levenothi vocabatur.<sup>2</sup> Intellexit igitur episcopus jam certius, quod homo Dei erat ille, et divinitus factum est hoc, quod prædicta sunt eidem revelata. Providit igitur episcopus ac dedit ipsi presbitero portionem in ecclesia illius villæ victui sufficientem, injungens ut, quamdiu viveret, missam et obsequia defunctorum diebus singulis celebraret. Ipseque episcopus missam pro anima Levenothi celebravit, et corpus sepelivit.<sup>3</sup>

*De execrabilibus nuptiis Mariae, abbatissæ Rumeseicæ.<sup>4</sup>*

Marriage of Mary, abbess of Rumsey, to the count of Bologne. Diebus etiam sub eisdem Maria, abbatissa de Rumsey, domo sua exierat<sup>5</sup> maritanda, sophisticis literis bullatis seducta, Mathæo, comiti Bononiæ, nupsit; volens ut dicitur, decipi, quia etiam velata infamis fuerat, secundum illud Ovidianum,

“Vim licet appelles,<sup>6</sup> et culpam nomine celest,  
Quæ totiens rapta est, præbuit ipsa rapi.”<sup>7</sup>

Et hoc quidem de Helena adultera dicebatur. Hoc quidem illicitum matrimonium nitebatur beatus Thomas cancellarius summopere<sup>8</sup> impedire, exemplo ductus. beati Mathæi apostoli et beati Johannis Baptistæ; sed.

<sup>1</sup> *interrogavit*] interrogavit, MS.

<sup>5</sup> *exierat*] exirat, MS.

<sup>2</sup> *vocabatur*] Added in marg.

<sup>6</sup> *appelles*] apelles, MS.

<sup>3</sup> *Ipseque . . . sepelivit*] Added in marg., and is in text of F.

<sup>7</sup> Ep. Heroid. v. 131, which reads *velis* for *celes*.

<sup>4</sup> This occurrence is placed in A. C. D. at the end of the preceding year, but related very briefly.

<sup>8</sup> *summopere*] On an erasure.

prævaluerunt carnis illecebræ, cum favore regis et A.D. 1161. magnatum. Unde ex tunc factus est comes memoratus ipsi Thomæ cancellario inimicus; ipse quoque rex contra ipsum fuerat commotus.

*Combustio.<sup>1</sup>*

Anno quoque sub eodem Cantuaria tota fere flamma, Canterbury burnt. manifeste ultrici, combusta<sup>2</sup> est.

*Reges Francorum et Anglorum concordiam inierunt.*

Rog. Wend. Anno Domini M<sup>o</sup>.C<sup>o</sup>.LX<sup>o</sup>.II<sup>o</sup>. Lodowicus, rex Francorum, A.D. 1162. ii. 291. et Henricus, rex Anglorum, undique armatorum copiis congregatis, cum jam campestre prærium inter eos immineret<sup>3</sup> prope<sup>4</sup> Fertevallum, intermeantibus viris modestis et discretis, amici subito sunt effecti.

*Alienora peperit filium A[lienoram].*

Rog. Wend. Eodemque anno Alienora, Anglorum regina, apud Rothomagum filiam peperit, et ei nomen suum impo- Birth of the princess Alienor. ii. 291. suit A[lienoram.]

*Obiit Londoniensis episcopus.<sup>5</sup>*

Rog. Wend. Hoc etiam anno Ricardus, Londoniensis episcopus, viam universæ carnis est ingressus. ii. 292. Death of Richard, bishop of London.

*Juratur fidelitas Henrico Juniori.*

Rog. Wend. Per idem tempus rex Henricus fecit jurare fidelitatem Henrico filio suo de hereditate sua. Et inter omnes magnates regni, Thomas cancellarius primus to prince Henry, ii. 292. The nobles swear fealty to prince Henry,

<sup>1</sup> *Combustio*] *Combustio*, MS.

<sup>2</sup> *combusta*] *combusta*, MS.

<sup>3</sup> *immineret*] *imineret*, MS.

<sup>4</sup> *prope*] On an erasure.

<sup>5</sup> In the margin are sketched an episcopal mitre and crosier, reversed.

A.D. 1162. fidelitatem ei juravit, salva fide regis patris, quamdiu  
 and the viveret et regno præesse vellet; quam adjectionem.  
 chancellor Thomas is dicitur filius non acceptasse. Et ex tunc rex filium.  
 appointed suum eundem Henricum, adolescentem elegantissimum.  
 his guar- et universorum heredem, beato Thomæ cancellario<sup>1</sup>.  
 dian. commisit alendum, et moribus ac curialitatibus infor-  
 mandum;<sup>2</sup> unde postea idem Thomas ipsum Henricum.  
 jocose filium suum adoptivum appellavit. Qui tamen.  
 alumpnus fuit innaturalis, sicut rerum effectus, ut in.  
 sequentibus dicetur, demonstravit.

*Thomas cancellarius eligitur in archiepiscopum.*

Thomas  
is elected  
archbishop  
of Canter-  
bury.

26 May.

He receives  
his pall  
from the  
popo.

Eodem anno, congregato clero et populo totius pro- Rog. Wend.  
ii. 292.  
 vinciae Cantuariensis apud Westmonasterium, Thomas,  
 regis cancellarius, ipso rege effectuose pro ipso petente,  
 sollempniter, nemine reclamante, electus est in archi-  
 episcopum Cantuariensem. Facta igitur electione, sab-  
 bato in Pentecosten, a Waltero, Rofensi episcopo, in  
 ecclesia Cantuariensi in presbiterum ordinatus est. Et  
 sequenti die Dominica consecratus est ab Henrico,  
 Wintoniensi episcopo, sollempniter et inthronizatus.  
 Nunciis igitur ad papam directis, quem citra Alpes  
 descendenter in Galliam invenerunt, cum pallio sunt  
 reversi; quod Thomas archiepiscopus, solitis astrictus  
 sacramentis, ab altari suscepit<sup>3</sup> reverenter. Summi  
 sacerdotis vestes induit, et habitum sic mutavit, ut et  
 animum renovatus permutaret. Nam curiæ curis  
 interesse renuncians, ecclesiæ suæ negotiis et lucris  
 spiritualibus intendebat.<sup>4</sup>

<sup>1</sup> *beato Thomæ cancellario*] Added in marg.

<sup>2</sup> *informandum*] *imformandum*, MS.

<sup>3</sup> *suscepit*] So also F.; *suscipiens*, W. A. C. D.

<sup>4</sup> In the margin is the following ad-

dition: “¶ Nota, quod beatus Thomas habitum monachi a papa suscepit, et præter nigram cucullam, habitum canonicorum, scilicet de Merctuna, præterea gestavit.” This is introduced into the text of F. after the word *permutaret*.

*Prima regis commotio contra archiepiscopum A.D. 1162.*  
*Thomam.*

Rog.Wend. Nuncios siquidem ad regem in Normanniam direxit, The first  
 ii. 292. cancellariæ renuncians et sigillum resignans; quod in cause of  
 Rog.Wend. cor regis altius resedit commotum, in sc solum causam anger  
 ii. 293. resignationis tam subito retorquentis. Et hæc prima against the  
 fuit regalis animi perturbatio adversus Thomam, archi- archbp.  
 præsulem Cantuariensem.

*Quis fuerit ille Thomas.*

Rog.Wend. Erat autem Thomas iste Londoniensis urbis indi- Biographi-  
 ii. 293. fol. 55 b. gena, a primis adolescentiæ annis gratia multiplici cal notice  
 . decoratus, patre editus. . . . .<sup>1</sup> Qui, quia die quadam of the abp.  
 . Martis, videlicet die beati Thomæ apostoli, natus est, Thomas.  
 . vocabatur Thomas. Ab ineunte autem ætate beatam Dei  
 . Genitricem, tanquam ducem viarum suarum, et beatum  
 . Thomam apostolum, quasi patronum, cuius luce, id  
 . est, die,<sup>2</sup> prodiit in lucem, specialius cœpit diligere et  
 . invocare. Liberalium quoque disciplinarum scolas egre- 21 Dec.  
 . diens, ad Theobaldi, Cantuariensis archiepiscopi, se  
 . contulit famulatum; ubi, industria promerente, in brevi  
 . inter majores curiæ suæ ascriptus est et provectus, ita  
 . ut<sup>3</sup> ei familiarissimus haberetur. Primum autem bene-  
 . ficium optinuit ab ecclesia Sancti Albani, scilicet eccl-  
 . siolam de Brantefeld, caritative collatum.<sup>4</sup> Quot autem  
 . et quantos ibi labores pro ecclesia Dei pertulerit, quo-  
 . tiensque pro expediendis arduis negotiis apostolorum  
 . limina expetierit, quam felici exitu sibi injuncta expe-  
 . dierit, non est facile dictu, præsertim cum in causis  
 . perorandis et decidendis ac populis instruendis tota  
 ejus intentio versaretur. Primo igitur a præfato archie-  
 pisco in archidiaconum Cantuariensem promotus, post

<sup>1</sup> A blank space is left here, and so in F.; but the name *Gilberto Becket* has been supplied in the text by the hand of abp. Parker.

<sup>2</sup> *id est, die*] Added in marg.  
<sup>3</sup> *ut*] Interlined.  
<sup>4</sup> *Primum . . . collatam*] Added in marg., and inserted in text of F.

A.D. 1162. modici vero temporis spatium regis cancellarius, eodem procurante archiepiscopo, efficitur. Cancellarii fungens officio, audaciam milvorum sapienter repressit, qui regi adulantes, conspiraverant tam provincialium quam ecclesiæ diripere facultates. Hæc de beato Thoma, qualis ante promotionem in archiepiscopum extiterit, breviter prælibavimus, quatinus ea, quæ de ipso sequuntur, lectori clarius elucescant.

*De finali concordia facta inter ecclesiam Lincolnensem et ecclesiam Sancti Albani.*

Final concord between the churches of Lincoln and St. Alban's.

Hoc quoque anno sopita est discordia et amicabili fine terminata inter ecclesiam Lincolnensem et cœnobium Beati Albani, Anglorum prothomartiris, Roberto de Chaisneto episcopo agente, et Roberto de Gorham, abbe de Sancto Albano, defendantे, in præsentia regis Henrici Secundi, et archiepiscoporum Thomæ Cantuariensis et Rogeri Eboracensis, et episcoporum Henrici Wintoniensis, Willelmi Norwicensis, Jocelini Saresbiriensis, Bartholomæi Exoniensis, Hylarii Cicestrensis, Hugonis Dunelmensis, Ricardi Coventrensis, Gileberti Herefordensis, et Godefridi<sup>1</sup> de Sancto Asaf; præsente etiam Roberto, comite Legecestrensi, justiciario Angliæ, cum comitibus, baronibus, abbatibus, prioribus, archidiaconis, et innumerabili regni populo, apud Westmonasterium.

<sup>1</sup> April. feria v. ante Passionem Domini, in hunc modum.

“ Robertus, Dei gratia Lincolnensis episcopus, omnibus sanctæ matris ecclesiæ filiis, salutem. Notum sit universitati vestræ, quod ego controversiæ illi, quam adversus Robertum, abbatem Sancti Albani, et fratres ejus moveram, qua monasterium ipsum Sancti Albani et quindecim ecclesias illas, quas in territorio suo<sup>2</sup> privilegiatas habent,<sup>3</sup> Lincolnensi ecclesiæ et mihi, ut ipsins<sup>4</sup> episcopo, in subjectionem et obedientiam petebam, in præsentia testium prædictorum, assensu capituli

Rog. Wend.  
ii. 294.

<sup>1</sup> *Godefridi*] Godefrido, MS.

<sup>3</sup> *habent*] So W. A. C. D.; but in  
Edd. and ed. Wend. *habuit.*

<sup>2</sup> *suo*] Partly on an erasure.

<sup>4</sup> *ipsius*] ipsi, MS.

mei in perpetuum renunciavi. Et, ut ab ea in perpetuum con- A.D. 1162.  
quiescam, de manu ipsius abbatis et fratrum ejus villam, quæ  
dicitur Tinghurst, cum ecclesia et omnibus pertinentiis  
eiusdem, pro decem libratis terræ, libere et quiete ecclesiae  
Lincolniensi in perpetuum de cetero possidendum, assensu  
domini mei regis et fratrum nostrorum episcoporum jam dic-  
torum consilio, capitulo meo in hoc assensum præbente, recepi.  
Et jus, quod jam dicta abbatia, et in persona Roberti abbatis  
et successorum ejus, et jam dictis quindecim ecclesiis, ecclesiae

Rog. Wend. Rog. Wend. meæ et mihi et successoribus meis vindicabam, in manu do-  
ii. 295. mini mei regis pro me et successoribus meis in perpetuum  
resignavi. Sit itaque de cetero liberum monasterium<sup>1</sup> Beati  
Albani, cum<sup>2</sup> quindecim jam dictis ecclesiis; crisma sibi et  
oleum et benedictionem liceat abbati suo, et cetera omnia ec-  
clesiae sacramenta, a quo voluerit episcopo, absque nostra et  
ecclesiæ<sup>3</sup> nostræ reclamatione, recipere; et de cetero in manu  
regis, sicut sua dominica, ecclesia libera remanebit. Reliquæ  
vero ecclesiæ ejusdem monasterii, passim per episcopatum  
Lincolniensem constitutæ, obedientiam et subjectionem, quam  
ceteræ debent ecclesiæ, episcopo Lincolniensi et archidiaconis  
exhibebunt. Quod, ne de cetero possit in litem revocari,  
scripti præsentis attestatione et sigilli mei et capituli ap-  
positione confirmavi."

Hanc pacem et concordiam cum rex Henricus et Confirmed  
Thomas, Cantuariensis archiepiscopus, suis confirma- by pope  
verunt munimentis, papa Alexander, eorum vestigia III.  
secutus, eam per privilegium ecclesiae Romanæ et sub-  
scriptione omnium cardinalium communivit.

### *Obiit rex Jerusalem Baldewinus.*

Rog. Wend. Eodem anno rex Jerosolimorum Baldewinus humanæ Death of  
ii. 295. naturæ debitum persolvit;<sup>4</sup> cui successit frater ejus Baldwin  
Amalricus.<sup>5</sup> II., king of  
Jerusalem.  
Amalric  
succeeds.

<sup>1</sup> *monasterium*] Corr. *monasterio*  
in Edd. and ed. Wend.

<sup>4</sup> A small crown reversed is drawn  
in the margin.

<sup>2</sup> *cum*] On an erasure. In W. A.  
C. D. et.

<sup>5</sup> *Amalricus*] Almaricus, MS. and  
D. F.

<sup>3</sup> *sacramenta. . . . . ecclesiæ*] Omitted in A. C. D.

*Secunda perturbatio regis contra Thomam, Cantuariensem archiepiscopum.*

A.D. 1163. Anno Domini M<sup>o</sup>.C<sup>o</sup>.LX<sup>o</sup>.III<sup>o</sup>. rex Anglorum Henricus Rog.Wend.  
ii. 295.  
 King Henry returns to England, and receives the archbp. ungraciously. II., finibus transmarinis pro voluntate dispositis, in Angliam rediit, et Thomas, Cantuariensis archiepiscopus, gaudenter veniens ei obviam, et secum ducens alumpnum suum Henriculum, forma præ filiis hominum speciosum, in osculum receptus est, sed non in gratiæ plenitudinem, sicut ipsius regis vultus statim aversus omnibus qui aderant patenter ostendit. Eodem anno, rege Anglorum ad hoc instante, et Alexandro papa id concedente, Gilebertus, Herefordensis episcopus, ad sedem ecclesiæ Londoniensis postulatus, illuc translatus est, et iiii<sup>or</sup>. kalendas Maii in illa ecclesia introductus. R.Wend.  
ii. 296.  
 Gilbert, bishop of Hereford, translated to London. 28 April.

*Translatum est corpus beati Edwardi, regis et confessoris.*

Translation of the body of S. Edward. Eodemque anno translatum est corpus sancti regis et confessoris Edwardi,<sup>1</sup> et positum reverenter in nobili feretro, ex auro et argento et gemmis artificiose composto,<sup>2</sup> ab archiepiscopo Cantuariensi Thoma, præsente rege Henrico II. et multis regni magnatibus. Scendumque, quod illud gloriosum ac virgineum corpus integrum inventum est et illibatum. fol. 56a.

*Henricus de Esexe de proditione convictus est.*

Henry de Essexe is convicted of treason. Eodem anno Robertus de Muntfort cum Henrico de Esexe, de proditione appellato<sup>3</sup> regis, duello congrediens, victoriam reportavit. Qua de causa Henricus notam infamiae<sup>4</sup> simul et exheredationis jacturam incurrens, ex<sup>5</sup>

<sup>1</sup> *Edwardi*] A. C. D. add, *apud Westmonasterium.*

<sup>2</sup> *composito*] *composite*, MS.

<sup>3</sup> *appellato*] Added in marg.

<sup>4</sup> *infamia*] *infamy*, MS.

<sup>5</sup> *ex*] Interlined.

indulgentia regiae clementiae, apud Radingum habitum A.D. 1163. monachilem suscipiens, ex tunc, de more conversorum, Hebe ante processionem crucis signum triumphale, quod <sup>comes a monk at</sup> fuerat<sup>1</sup> tutius quam alicujus regis mortalis, bajulavit. Reading. Quod et<sup>2</sup> juste factum est,<sup>3</sup> quia imponebatur ei inculpato, quod in quodam bello inter reges Francorum et Anglorum, vel eorum magnatum, quod tantundem pene significat, ipse Henricus signifer constitutus, sponte ac nequiter, immo et proditiose, vexillum regium quasi victus, cum nihil<sup>4</sup> mali vel laboris habuisset, cadere dimisit. Et nisi alias illud celerius sublevasset, exercitus regis Anglorum confusus succubuisse.

*Gaufridus fit archidiaconus Cantuariensis.*

Rog. Wend. Hoc etiam anno Thomas, Cantuariensis archiepisco- Geoffrey  
ii. 296. pus, ad instantissimam regis petitionem, archidiaconum Ridel made archdeacon Cantuariensem dedit Gaufrido,<sup>5</sup> clericu suo, nec of Canterbury. tamen inde regis gratiam sensit redintegratam.

*Papa Alexander celebravit concilium Turonis.*

Rog. Wend. Eodem anno papa Alexander Turonis concilium con- Council  
ii. 298. gregavit, in ecclesia Sancti Mauricii, xii<sup>o</sup>. kalendas held at Junii; ad cujus vocationem, ex permissione regis 21 May. Angliæ, venerunt archiepiscopi, episcopi, et alii ecclesiæ prælati. Thomas autem, Cantuariensis archiepiscopus, cum suis suffraganeis ad dextram papæ sedebat in concilio, et archiepiscopus Eboracensis Rogerus ad sinistram, cum solo episcopo Dunelmensi.

<sup>1</sup> *triumphale quod fuerat*] On an erasure.

<sup>2</sup> *bajulavit. Quod et*] Added to the text, and partly on an erasure.

<sup>3</sup> *est*] Interlined.

<sup>4</sup> *nihil*] nichil, MS.

<sup>5</sup> *Gaufrido*] Gaufrido Ridel, W. A. C. D.

A.D. 1163. *Malcolmus, Scotorum rex, et quidam alii reguli fecerunt homagium regi H[enrico].*

Malcolm,  
king of  
Seots, and  
Resus,  
prince of  
S. Wales,  
do homage  
to Henry.  
Anno quoque sub eodem, rex Scotorum Malcolmus,<sup>1</sup> Rog.Wend. ii. 298. et Resus, princeps Demetiæ, id est, Australium Walensem, cum aliis regulis et majoribus Cambriæ, kalendas Julii apud Wudestochæ fecerunt homagium regi Anglo-

rum Henrico, et Henriculo, filio ejus.<sup>2</sup>

1 July.

*Hic magis apparuit regis contra archiepiscopum indignatio.*

Roger, earl  
of Clare re-  
fuses to do  
homage to  
the arch-  
bishop for  
Tunbridge  
castle. Anni quoque sub ejusdem circulo, Rogerus, comes Rog.Wend. ii. 298. Clarensis, id est, Glovernensis, a Thoma, Cantuariensi. archiepiscopo, apud Westmonasterium vocatus ad faciendum sibi homagium de castello de Thunebrugge et ejus pertinentiis, contradixit ei comes instinctu regis, dicens, feudum illud totum<sup>3</sup> in servitio laicali ad regem potius quam ad archiepiscopum pertinere. In quo apparuit cor regis perturbatum et aversum ab archiepisco-

*Facta est recognitio consuetudinum Angliae apud Clarendonam.*

A.D. 1164. Anno Domini M<sup>o</sup>.C<sup>o</sup>.LX<sup>o</sup>.III<sup>o</sup>., in præsentia regis Hen- Rog.Wend. ii. 298. Constitu- rici apud Clarendunam, viii<sup>o</sup>. kalendas Februarii, præ- tions of sidente Johanne de Oxonia de mandato ipsius regis, Clarendon. 25 Jan. præsentibus etiam archiepiscopis, episcopis,<sup>4</sup> abbatibus, Rog.Wend. ii. 299. comitibus, baronibus, et totius regni proceribus, facta

<sup>1</sup> *Scotorum Malcolmus*] At first written *Malcolmus Scotorum*, as in W. A. C. D., but marked to be transposed.

<sup>2</sup> In the lower margin is the following note, in a hand of the 14th cent.: "Nota, quod rex Scottorum

Malcholmus fecit homagium regi Henrico."

<sup>3</sup> *totum*] com, MS. In E. at first written *comitis*, and *s* afterwards erased. Corrected from W. A. C. D.

<sup>4</sup> *episcopis*] Repeated, but underscored for omission.

est recognitio sive recordatio cuiusdam partis consuetudinum et libertatum antecessorum suorum, regis vide-  
licet Henrici I., avi sui, et aliorum, quae observari debent in regno ab omnibus et teneri, propter dissensiones et discordias saepius emergentes inter clerum et regis justiciarios et regni magnates.<sup>1</sup> Harum vero consuetudinum recognitarum<sup>2</sup> quedam pars in sexdecim capitulis subsequentibus continetur.

De advocatione et praesentatione ecclesiarum si con-  
troversia emerserit inter laicos, vel inter laicos et cleri-  
cos, vel inter clericos, in curia domini regis tractetur  
et terminetur.

Ecclesiæ de feudo domini regis non possunt in per-  
petuum dari, absque concessione ipsius.

Clerici accusati<sup>3</sup> de quacunque re, submoniti a justi-  
ciario regis, veniant in curiam ipsius responsuri ibidein  
de hoc, unde videbitur curiae regis quod ibi sit respon-  
dendum; [et in curia ecclesiastica, unde videbitur quod  
ibi sit respondendum ;]<sup>4</sup> ita quod regis justiciarius mittet  
in curiam sanctæ ecclesiæ, ad videndum quomodo res  
ibi tractabitur. Et si clericus convictus vel confessus  
fuerit, non debet de cetero ecclesia eum<sup>5</sup> tueri.

Archiepiscopis, episcopis et claris personis regni, non  
licet exire a regno absque licentia regis; et si exierint,  
si regi placuerit, securum eum facient, quod nec in  
eundo nec redeundo vel moram faciendo perquirent  
malum sive dampnum regi vel regno.

Excommunicati non debent dare vadium ad rema-  
Rog. Wend. nens, nec praestare juramentum, sed tantum vadium et  
ii. 300. plegium standi judicio ecclesiæ, ubi absolvuntur.

Laici non debent accusari, nisi<sup>6</sup> per certos et legiti-  
mos accusatores et testes in praesentia episcopi, ita quod ravit.

<sup>1</sup> *magnates*] magnatibus, W. A. C. D.

<sup>2</sup> *recognitarum*] recongnitarum, MS.

<sup>3</sup> *accusati*] acusati, MS.

<sup>4</sup> *et in . . . respondendum*] Sup-

plied from W. A. C. D., and so in Gerv. Chron., col. 1386.

<sup>5</sup> *eum*] Interlined.

<sup>6</sup> *nisi*] nec, MS. and F. Corr. from W. A. C. D.

A.D. 1164. archidiaconus non perdat jus suum, nec quicquam quod inde habere debeat. Et si tales fuerint, qui culpantur, quod non velit vel audeat aliquis accusare eos, vicecomes requisitus ab ipso, faciat jurare xii. legales homines de visneto sive de villa coram episcopo, quod veritatem secundum conscientiam suam manifestabunt.

**Hoc dampnavit.** Nullus qui de rege tenet in capite, nec aliquis dominorum ministrorum ejus, excommunicetur, nec alicuius eorum terræ sub interdicto ponantur, nisi prius rex, si in regno fuerit, conveniatur, [vel justiciarius ejus,]<sup>1</sup> si fuerit extra regnum, ut rectum de eo faciat; et ita, ut fol. 56 b. quod pertinebit ad regis curiam ibi terminetur, et de eo quod spectat ad curiam ecclesiasticam, ad eandem mittatur, ut ibidem terminetur.

**Hoc dampnavit.** De appellationibus, si emerserint, ab archidiacono debent procedere ad episcopum, ab episcopo ad archiepiscopum; et, si archiepiscopus defuerit in justitia exhibenda, ad regem pervenientum est postremo, ut præcepto ipsius in curia archiepiscopi controversia terminetur; ita quod non debet ultra procedere absque domini regis assensu.

**Ho[c] dampnavit.** Si calunnia emerserit inter clericum et laicum, vel converso, de ullo tenemento quod clericus velit ad elemosinam trahere, vel laicus ad laicum feodum, per recognitionem<sup>2</sup> xii. legalium hominum, juxta capitalis justiciarii regis considerationem, terminabitur, utrum tenementum sit pertinens ad elemosinam, sive ad laicum Rog. Wend.  
ii. 301. feodium, coram justiciario regis. Et si recognitum<sup>3</sup> fuerit ad elemosinam pertinere, placitum erit in curia ecclesiastica; si vero ad laicum feodium, nisi ambo tenementum de episcopo<sup>4</sup> eodem vel barone advocaverint, erit placitum in curia regis. Sed, si uterque<sup>5</sup> advocaverint

<sup>1</sup> vel justiciarius ejus] Supplied from W. A. C. D. and Gerv.

<sup>4</sup> episcopo] ipso, MS. and F. Corr. from W. A. C. D.

<sup>2</sup> recognitionem] recongnitionem, MS.

<sup>5</sup> uterque] Corrected *utrique* [in ed. Wend. The words *erit placitum . . . advocaverint* are omitted in A. C. D. and Edd. In Gerv. *uterque* *advocaverit*.

<sup>3</sup> recognitum] recongnitum, MS.

de feodo illo eundem episcopum vel baronem, erit A.D. 1164. placitum in curia ipsius, ita quod propter factam recognitionem saisinam non amittat, qui prius fuerat saisitus.

Qui de civitate, vel castello, vel burgo, vel dominico manerio regis fuerit, si ab archidiacono vel episcopo super aliquo delicto citatus fuerit, unde debeat eis respondere, et ad citationes eorum noluerit satisfacere, bene licet eis sub interdicto ponere eum, sed non debent eum excommunicare priusquam capitalis minister regis villæ illius conveniatur, ut justiciet eum ad satisfactionem venire; et si minister regis inde defecerit, erit in misericordia regis, et exinde poterit episcopus ipsum accusatum ecclesiastica justitia cohibere<sup>1</sup> vel coercere.<sup>2</sup>

Archiepiscopi, episcopi, et universæ personæ regni, qui de rege tenent in capite, habeant possessiones suas de rege sicut baroniam, et inde respondeant justiciariis et ministris regis, et sequantur et faciant omnes consuetudines regias; et, sicut ceteri barones, debent interesse judiciis curiæ regiæ cum baronibus, quounque perveniat ad diminutionem membrorum vel mortem.

Cum vacaverit archiepiscopatus, vel episcopatus, vel abbatia, vel prioratus in dominio regis, debet esse in manu ipsius, et inde percipiet omnes redditus et exitus, Rog. Wend. sicut dominicos redditus suos. Et cum ventum fuerit ii. 302. ad consulendum ecclesiam, debet rex mandare potiores personas ecclesiæ, et in capella ipsius regis debet fieri electio, assensu ipsius regis et consilio personarum regni, quas ad hoc faciendum advocaverit; et ibidem faciet electus homagium et fidelitatem regi, sicut ligio domino suo, de vita sua et membris et de honore terreno, salvo ordine suo, priusquam consecretur.

<sup>1</sup> *cohibere*] echoibere, MS.

| <sup>2</sup> *coercere*] echoercere, MS.

A.D. 1164 Si quisquam de proceribus regni deforciaverit archi-  
 ¶ *Hoc toleravit.* episcopo, [vel episcopo,]<sup>1</sup> vel archidiacono, de se vel  
 suis justitiam exhibere, dominus rex debet eos justi-  
 ciare; et si forte aliquis deforciaret domino regi recti-  
 tudinem suam, archiepiscopi, episcopi, et archidiaconi  
 debent eum justiciare, ut regi satisfaciat.

¶ *Hoc toleravit.* Catalla eorum, qui sunt in forisfacto regis, non de-  
 tineat ecclesia vel cimiterium contra justiciarios regis,  
 quia ipsius regis sunt, sive in ecclesiis sive extra  
 fuerint inventa.

¶ *Hoc dampnavit.* Placita de debitibus, quæ fide interposita debentur, vel  
 absque interpositione fidei, sint in justitia regis.

¶ *Hoc toleravit.* Filii rusticorum non debent ordinari absque assensu  
 domini, de cuius terra nati dinoscuntur.

*Expliciunt regiarum libertatum capitula.*

The pre-  
lates and  
nobility  
swear to  
observe  
these Con-  
stitutions.

Hanc recognitionem sive recordationem de consue- Rog.Wend.  
 tudinibus et libertatibus inquis, et dignitatibus Deo  
 detestabilibus, archiepiscopi, episcopi, abbates, priores,  
 clerus, cum comitibus, baronibus ac proceribus cunctis,  
 juraverunt, et firmiter in verbo veritatis promiserunt  
 viva voce se tenendas et observandas domino regi et  
 heredibus suis, bona fide et absque malo ingenio, in  
 perpetuum. Inter alios autem, hiis omnibus ipse Can-  
 tuariensis archiepiscopus Thomas consensit.

ii. 302.

*De pœnitentia Thomæ archiepiscopi pro consuetudini-  
 bus temere concessis.*

Archbp.  
Thomas  
repents  
having  
given his  
consent,

Hiis ita gestis, potestas laica in res et personas<sup>2</sup> Rog.Wend.  
 ecclesiasticas omnia pro libitu, ecclesiastico jure con-  
 tempto, tacentibus aut vix murmurantibus episcopis

ii. 303.

<sup>1</sup> *vel episcopo]* Supplied from W. A. C. D. and Gerv. | <sup>2</sup> *res et personas]* tres personas, MS. and F. Corr. from W. A. C. D.

potius quam resistentibus, usurpabat.<sup>1</sup> Thomas igitur, A.D. 1164. Cantuariensis archiepiscopus, in se reversus, cum leges iniquas et omnibus Christi fidelibus detestandas concessisset, et eas observare juramento firmasset, rem temere perpetratam diligenter examinans, seipsum graviter afflixit, ab altaris officio se subtrahens, donec per confessionem et condignos poenitentiae fructus a summo pontifice absolvi permeruisset. Nam illico nuncios ad Romanum pontificem dirigens, dum causam ecclesiae et suam ad summi pastoris in cedula conscriptam transmisisset cognitionem,<sup>2</sup> ab obligatione, quam inconsulte inierat, absolutionem petiit, et eam per has literas impetravit: "Alexander episcopus, servus ser-  
vorum Dei," etc. In Vita beati Thomæ reperies.<sup>3</sup>

and sends  
to Rome to  
be absolved  
from it.

Bull of  
pope Alex-  
ander III.  
granting  
him abso-  
lution.

*Rex decretit, ut a laicis clerici punirentur.*

Rog. Wend. Eodem anno rex Henricus II. volens in singulis, ut The king  
ii. 304. dicebat, maleficia debita cum severitate punire, et requires  
cujuscunque ordinis dignitatem ad iniquum<sup>4</sup> trahi to be sub-  
dispendium, incongruum<sup>5</sup> esse asseruit clericos a suis jected to  
fol. 57 a. justiciariis in publico flagitio deprehensos episcopo lay juris-  
loci tradere impunitos. Decrevit enim, ut quos epi-  
scopi inveniunt obnoxios, præsente regis justiciario,  
exauktorarent, et post curiæ regis traderent punien-  
dos. In contrarium sentiebat archiepiscopus Thomas,  
ut quos exauktorarent episcopi, a manu laicali post-

<sup>1</sup> *usurpabat*] usurpabant, MS.

<sup>2</sup> *cognitionem*] cognicionem, MS.

<sup>3</sup> *Vita . . . reperies*] These words are on an erasure, and, no doubt, as originally written, reference was made to the larger Chronicle in A. C. D., where the bull is inserted at length, and so also in F. It is in Epp., lib. i. 26, ed. Lupi, 1682; vol.

ii. 201, ed. Giles. The "Vita B. Thomæ," here and elsewhere mentioned, is the Life by John of Salisbury and others, published by Lopus.

<sup>4</sup> *iniquum*] iniquum, MS.

<sup>5</sup> *incongruum*] congruum, MS. Corr. from W. A. C. D.

A.D. 1164. modum [non]<sup>1</sup> punirentur, quia bis in id ipsum<sup>2</sup> puniri viderentur. Huic controversiae præstítit occasio Case of sionem Philippus de Broc,<sup>3</sup> canonicus Bedefordensis, Philip de Broc, canon of Bedford. qui tractus in causam propter homicidium, in regis Rog. Wend. ii. 305. justiciarum verbum protulit contumeliosum. Quod cum negare coram archiepiscopo non posset, præbendæ suæ beneficio multatus est, et per biennium pulsus a regno. Et sic<sup>4</sup> magis ac magis regis apparuit perturbatio.

*Quomodo beatus Thomas injuriatus recesserit a Northamtona.*

The archbishop attempts to leave England.

Charges brought against him.

Videns ergo archiepiscopus libertates ecclesiæ jam expirasse, inscio rege, apud Rumenel navem ascendit, Romanam curiam aditus, sed, vento in contrarium flante, in Angliam rejectus est; unde magnam regis offensam incurrit. Quapropter ilico tractus<sup>5</sup> in causam, quodam<sup>6</sup> Johanne regi deferente querelam, promanerio quodam, quod a multis temporibus, ut dicebatur, archiepiscopus inconcusse possederat, tandem post graves vexationes contrariam reportavit sententiā, et regi judicatum solvi sufficienter cavit.<sup>7</sup> Et sic ira regis dampnosa<sup>8</sup> crevit diatim. Item, apud Norhamtonam tractus in causam, super actis quæ<sup>9</sup>

<sup>1</sup> *non*] The sense requires the negative particle, as supplied in the margin of W. and Edd.; but it is omitted in A. C. D. Cf. Diceto, Ymag. Hist., col. 536, from whom the passage is borrowed.

<sup>2</sup> *id ipsum*] On an erasure.

<sup>3</sup> *Broc*] At first written *Broic*, as in F., and afterwards *s* added above, so as to make *Broisc*. Corr. from W. A. C. D. and Dic.

<sup>4</sup> *sic*] Added by a hand of the 16th cent.; and so in F. In W. A. C. D. *hic*.

<sup>5</sup> *tractus*] iratus, MS. Corr. from W. A. C. D.

<sup>6</sup> *quodam*] Added in marg. The name, *Johanne Mareschallo*, is given in W. A. C. D. and Dic.

<sup>7</sup> This is explained by the addition of the words "habita taxatione in quingentis libris," in W. A. C. D., and confirmed by Diceto, col. 537.

<sup>8</sup> *dampnosa*] dapnosa, MS.

<sup>9</sup> *actis quæ*] Originally written *actu quem*, as in W. A. C. D. and Dic.

in cancellaria egerat, presentiam suam exhibuit iii<sup>o</sup>. A.D. 1164 idus Octobris. Et quoniam castellanias<sup>1</sup> de Eya<sup>2</sup> et de Berchamestede<sup>3</sup> pluribus annis libere possedisset, multis<sup>4</sup> consentaneum rationi videbatur, "ut a capite incipiatis," aiunt, "reddere<sup>5</sup> rationem." Sed quoniam Rog. Wend. ante consecrationem suam archiepiscopus ab Henrico, ii. 306. filio regis et herede, quem rex in principio iræ suæ a custodia archiepiscopi subtraxerat, atque a justiciario regni liber et absolutus ab omni ratiocinio<sup>6</sup> fuerat absolutus, et<sup>7</sup> assignatus episcopis,<sup>8</sup> ne injusto con- The arch-  
dempnaretur<sup>9</sup> judicio, sedem apostolicam appellavit, et bishop  
sub poena anathematis, tam suis suffraganeis appeals to  
quam laicis universis, ne in patrem suum et judicem  
sententiam proferrent iniquam, interdixit.<sup>10</sup> Proceres  
vero et episcopi, qui ad hoc vocati erant a rege, in  
eum nihilominus<sup>11</sup> non convictum neque confessum,  
sed privilegium ecclesiæ suæ et suum protestantem,  
sententiam retorserunt.<sup>12</sup> Et sic archiepiscopus in arco  
positus et obprobriis lacesitus,<sup>13</sup> omniumque episcopo-  
rum solatio destitutus, crucem, quam manu tenebat, in  
altum erigens,<sup>14</sup> a curia palam recessit. Sicque sequente  
nocte villam latenter egrediens, de nocte iter expe- He leaves  
diens per dies aliquot, usque ad Sandwici portum per- England,  
venit, ubi in navicula fragili in Flandriam est trans-

<sup>1</sup> *castellanias*] cancellarias, MS. Corr. from W. A. C. D. F. I. In Edd. and ed. Wend. *castellaniū*.

<sup>2</sup> *Eya*] Tya, MS. and F.

<sup>3</sup> *Berchamestede*] Berchame, MS.

<sup>4</sup> *multis*] multum, W. A. C. D.

<sup>5</sup> *incipiatis aiunt reddere*] So also F.; but the sense is clearer in W. A. C. D., *incipiens perceptorum redderet*. Cf. Dic., col. 538.

<sup>6</sup> *ratiocinio*] raconio, MS.

<sup>7</sup> *absolutus, et*] Omitted in W. A. C. D., and is superfluous.

<sup>8</sup> *episcopis*] So Diceto and W. A. C. D. F. I. The Edd. and ed. Wend. correct it *episcopus*. See p. 334.

<sup>9</sup> *condempnaretur*] condempnaretur, MS.

<sup>10</sup> *interdixit*] Added in marg. The verb is omitted in W. and A. C., but D. has *inhibuit* added by a second hand after *anathematis*. The Edd. read *præcepit*, but on no authority.

<sup>11</sup> *nihilominus*] nichilominus, MS.

<sup>12</sup> *retorserunt*] Originally *intorse-  
runt* (as in Dic. and W. A. C.), but corr. in marg.; *intrauerunt*, D.; *rein-  
torserunt*, F.

<sup>13</sup> *lacesitus*] lascessitus, MS.

<sup>14</sup> *erigens*] On an erasure. In W. A. C. D. *erexit et*.

A.D. 1164. vectus. Actus ergo in exilium Christi confessor, a domino papa Alexandro, coexule suo, Senonis receptus est, et cito post Pontiniacensi monasterio commendatus.<sup>1</sup>

*Postquam ecclesiam dedicaverat de Radinge, portum ultramarinum subiit beatus Thomas.*

Dedication of the church of Reading. Notandum autem, quod ante exilium suum dedicaverat beatus Thomas ecclesiam conventualem de Radinge, præsente rege et quamplurimis episcopis. Unde tum propter translationem beati Edwardi, tum propter hanc dedicationem, ubi et<sup>2</sup> hinc et inde suam rex exhibuit præsentiam, credebatur ab omnibus rex omnem animi rancorem, quam adversus archiepiscopum conceperat, exsufflasse.<sup>3</sup> Sed non erat ita; sub ovino vellere rex lupinam crudelitatem palliando, vel suam quæsivit animam, vel ecclesiam pro eo, quasi culpis suis exigentibus, destruere. Quod manifeste apud Norhamtonam demonstravit, ut prædictum jam est.

*Procurat Frethericus imperator alium papam substituere.*

Death of Octavian, antipope, and election of Paschal III. Interim, defuncto Octoviano et exulante Alexandro, procurat Frethericus alium substituere<sup>4</sup> sumnum pontificem.

*Allegatio nunciorum regis H[enrici] II. contra beatum Thomam.*

Allegations against the archbishop laid before the pope. Missi sunt eodem tempore nuncii a rege Anglorum Rog. Wend. ad papam Senonis, qui in consistorio coram eo talia ii. 306. allegabant: Inter Thomam, Cantuariensem archiepisco- Rog. Wend. pum, et regem Anglorum controversia versabatur, de ii. 307.

<sup>1</sup> *commendatus*] commendatus, MS.

<sup>2</sup> *ubi et*] Om. F.

<sup>3</sup> *exsufflasse*] exuflasse, MS.

<sup>4</sup> *substituere*] substituere, MS.

utriusque voluntate die præfixo, ut, justitia mediante, A.D. 1164. illa controversia terminaretur;<sup>1</sup> ad eundem diem, ex præcepto regio, archiepiscopi, episcopi, et alii ecclesiarum prælati convocantur, ut quanto generalior esset concilii celebratio, tanto manifestior fieret fraudis et malitiæ denudatio. Die igitur constituto, catholici principis conspectui se præsentant magnates et<sup>2</sup> archiepiscopus, regni turbator et ecclesiæ; qui de suorum meritorum qualitate non securus, Dominicæ crucis armat se signaculo,<sup>3</sup> tanquam ad tiranni vel scismatici<sup>4</sup> præsentiam accessurus. Nec tamen regia majestas inde offenditur, sed causæ suæ judicium episcoporum fidei committit, ut sic ab omni suspicione liberetur. Restabat, ut in<sup>5</sup> judicio episcopi causam terminarent, ut sic dissidentes in gratiam sedarent, et dissensionis eorum materiam sepelirent. At obviat adversarius et objicit,<sup>6</sup> quoniam ipsum coram rege stare judicio, esset apostolicæ sedis et dignitatis diminutio; ac si nesciat, quod, etsi in illo judicio aliquantulum derogaretur ecclesiæ dignitati, dissimulandum erat pro tempore, ut pax ecclesiæ redideretur. Objicit<sup>6</sup> iterum, patris sibi nomen ascribens, quod arrogantiam redolere videtur, quod filii in patris dampnationem minime debuerant convenire; sed necessarium erat, ut patris superbiam filiorum humilitas The pope is urged temperaret. Instabant autem ad hoc nuncii studiose, to send ut duo legati mitterentur a papa, qui causam Cantuariensis archiepiscopi ac regis, omni appellatione remota, cause before the king and diffinirent. Demum multis promissionibus papam flectere curabant, ut consuetudines regni Angliæ et libertates, quas rex, ab avo suo rege Henrico, ‘avitas’ appellabat dignitates, concedere et confirmare dignaretur. Sed cum, reversis legatis, rex in hac petitione sese granted by Henry I.

fol. 57 b. Rog. Wend. ii. 308.

<sup>1</sup> terminaretur] Originally terminetur, as in W. A. C. D.

<sup>2</sup> magnates et] Added in marg. Omitted in W. A. C. D., which read also præsentavit.

<sup>3</sup> signaculo] At first signiculo.

<sup>4</sup> scismatici] cismatici, MS.

<sup>5</sup> in] Interlined. Om. W. A. C. D.

<sup>6</sup> objicit] obicit, MS.

A.D. 1164. cognovisset<sup>1</sup> repulsum, ira vehementi incanduit, et has sequentes literas singulis Angliæ vicecomitibus sub hac forma direxit.

*Literæ regis Anglorum ad vicecomites, contra clericos beati Thomæ.<sup>2</sup>*

Letter of the king to the sheriffs. “Præcipio tibi, quod si aliquis clericus vel laicus in bal-  
liva tua Romanam curiam appellaverit, eum capias et firmiter  
teneas,<sup>3</sup> donec voluntatem meam inde præcipiam.<sup>4</sup> Et omnes  
redditus clericorum archiepiscopi et possessiones saisias in  
manum meam, et omnium clericorum, qui cum archiepiscopo  
sunt, patres et matres, fratres et sorores, nepotes et neptes,  
ponas per salvos plegios, et catalla corum, donec voluntatem  
meam inde præcipiam.<sup>4</sup> Et hoc breve tecum afferas, cum  
submonitus fueris.”

Gileberto quoque, Londoniensi episcopo, scripsit in  
haec verba.<sup>5</sup>

Letter to Gilbert, bishop of London. “Nosti quam male Thomas, Cantuariensis archiepiscopus, operatus est adversum me<sup>6</sup> et regnum meum, et quam male recesserit. Et ideo mando tibi, quod clerici sui, qui detraxerunt honori meo et regni, et qui circa ipsum fuerunt post fugam suam, non percipient aliquid de redditibus, quos habuerunt in episcopatu tuo, nisi per me, nec habeant aliquod auxilium vel consilium a te.”

Item, justiciariis suis<sup>7</sup> significavit sic.

*Literæ regis justiciariis, contra beatum Thomam archiepiscopum.<sup>8</sup>*

Letter to the justiciaries. “Si quis inventus fuerit ferens literas domini papæ vel mandatum, aut Thomæ archiepiscopi, continens interdictum Christianitatis in Anglia, capiatur et retineatur, donec inde voluntatem meam præcipiam. Item, nullus clericus, monachus, canonicus vel conversus, transfretare permittatur, nisi habeat literas de reditu suo justiciarii, vel nostras; si quis

<sup>1</sup> *cognovisset*] congnovisset, MS.

<sup>2</sup> Epp. lib. i. 15, ed. Lupi.

<sup>3</sup> *teneas*] custodias, ed.

<sup>4</sup> *præcipiam*] percipias, ed., and so below.

<sup>5</sup> Epp. lib. i. 13.

<sup>6</sup> *me*] Added in marg.

<sup>7</sup> *suis*] At first written *meis*.

<sup>8</sup> In Hoveden, p. 496.

Rog. Wend.  
ii. 308.

aliter inventus fuerit, capiatur et retineatur. Nullus appellat<sup>1</sup> A.D. 1164. ad papam, neque ad Thomam archiepiscopum, neque aliquod placitum ex eorum mandato teneatur, neque aliquod mandatum eorum in Anglia recipiatur;<sup>2</sup> et si quis tenuerit vel receperit, capiatur et retineatur. Si episcopi, abbates, clerici vel laici sententiam interdicti tenuerint, sine dilatione a terra dejiciantur,<sup>3</sup> et tota eorum cognatio, ita quod nihil de catallis suis secum ferant, sed catalla eorum et possessiones in manu nostra saisiantur. Omnes clerici, qui redditus habent in Anglia, sint submoniti per omnes comitatus, ut infra tres menses sint in Anglia ad redditus suos, sicut eos diligunt, et amodo in Angliam cupiunt<sup>4</sup> redire. Et si ad terminum præfixum non venerint, redditus eorum in nostra manu saisiantur. Episcopi Londoniensis et Norwicensis summoneantur, quod sint coram justiciariis ad rectum faciendum, quod contra statuta regni interdixerunt<sup>5</sup> terram Hugonis comitis, et in ipsum sententiam excommunicationis tulerunt. Denarii beati Petri colligantur et serventur, quousque inde regia voluntas audiatur.”

Rog.Wend. Ecclesiam præterea Cantuariensem et omnia bona The king  
ii. 310. archiepiscopi et suorum, rex confiscari præcepit. Et, orders the  
quod in nullius historiæ serie legitur, totam ejus cog- archbi-  
nationem<sup>6</sup> exilio dampnavit, sine delectu conditionis, shop's  
sexus aut ætatis; immo et mulieres in puerperio. Et, goods to  
cum ecclesia catholica oret pro hæreticis et perfidis be con-  
Judaïs, prohibitum est a rege, ne quis orationum suf- fiscated,  
fragiis eum<sup>7</sup> adjuvaret. and his parentage exiled.

*Allegatio beati Thomæ, Cantuariensis archiepiscopi,  
in præsentia domini papæ A[lexandri].*

Rog.Wend. Beatus igitur Thomas, Cantuariensis archiepiscopus, Appeal of  
ii. 310. suffraganeorum suorum inter tot injurias omni solatio the abp.  
destitutus, profectus est ad curiam Romanam, et in to the pope.

<sup>1</sup> *appellet*] apellet, MS.

latter word afterwards obliterated.

<sup>2</sup> *recipiatur*] At first written *peri-*  
*cipiatur*.

Cf. Hoveden, p. 496.

<sup>3</sup> *dejiciantur*] deiciantur, MS.

<sup>5</sup> *interdixerunt*] interduxerunt,

<sup>4</sup> *cupiunt*] Added on to the text,  
and followed by *habere*, but the

MS.

<sup>6</sup> *cognitionem*] eognationem, MS.

<sup>7</sup> *eum*] Added in marg.

A.D. 1164. præsentia domini papæ sic loqui exorsus est: "Pater<sup>1</sup> sanctissime, ad vestram audientiam confugio, dolens statum ecclesiæ et jura ejus in avaritiam<sup>2</sup> principum dissipari; quapropter occurrentum credidi morbo venienti. Vocatus autem sum coram rege, ut de quibusdam custodiis, quas olim cancellarius regis existens disposeram, in ratiocinium, tanquam<sup>3</sup> laicus, computarem, qui in promotione mea ad archiepiscopatum, a filio regis primogenito et justiciario regni ab omni ratiocinio et obligatione liber fui episcopis<sup>4</sup> assignatus. Et nunc, unde mihi<sup>5</sup> resistendi suffragia speraveram, destitutus sum. Animadverti enim dominos et confratres meos episcopos, pro aulicorum arbitrio in me animadvertere paratos, et, cunctis incursantibus contra me, fere suffocatus ad tuæ pietatis audientiam, quæ nec in extremis negligit, respiravi. Sub qua demonstratus asto, me nec ibi fuisse judicandum, nec ab illis. Nam quid aliud hoc esset, nisi jura ecclesiæ sibi subtrahere? Quid Rog.Wend.  
aliud quam spiritualia temporalibus submittere? Semel  
hoc natum, exemplum esset ad multa enormia subsequenda.<sup>6</sup> Sed dicunt episcopi, 'Reddenda sunt Cæsari,  
quæ ejus sunt.' Sed [si]<sup>7</sup> in pluribus optemperandum  
est regi, in illis tamen optemperandum non est, quibus  
efficitur ne sit rex. Non enim essent illa Cæsar, sed  
tiranni, in quibus, etsi non pro me, pro seipsis episcopi  
ei resistere deberent. Quæ enim hæc causa tanti fuit  
odii, ut pro me<sup>8</sup> extinguendo seipsos extinguerent?  
Itaque dum spiritualia pro temporalibus negligunt, deficiunt in utrisque. Condescende<sup>9</sup> ergo, pater sanctis-

<sup>1</sup> Abridged from Epp. lib. i. 30; ed. Giles, i. 2.

<sup>2</sup> *avaritiam*] avaricia, MS. and F.

<sup>3</sup> *tanquam*] ut tanquam, MS. and F.

<sup>4</sup> *episcopis*] So W. A. C. F.; *episcopus*, D., Edd., and ed. Wend. This paragraph is not in the Appeal, as given by Diceto, col. 539, nor in edd. of Lupus and Giles.

<sup>5</sup> *mihi*] michi, MS.

<sup>6</sup> *enormia subsequenda*] Added in marg.

<sup>7</sup> *si*] Supplied from W. A. C. D.; *etsi*, ed. Giles.

<sup>8</sup> *me*] Interlined.

<sup>9</sup> *Condescende*] At first written *condescendente*, but the last three letters underscored for omission.

sime, in fugam meam et persecutionem, et me<sup>1</sup> aliquando A.D. 1164. compatiendo tui<sup>2</sup> reminiscere magnum fuisse, et propter fol. 58 a. te injuriis<sup>3</sup> lacessitum. Ut erit igitur rigore tuo, coercere<sup>4</sup> illos, quorum instinctu nævus<sup>5</sup> hujus persecutionis obrepserit; nec domino regi horum aliquid imputetur, qui hujus machinationis minister est resistens<sup>6</sup> potius quam repertor."

*Papa sententiam ab episcopis in archiepiscopum latam in irritum revocavit.*

Rog. Wend. Hiis auditis allegationibus, dominus papa, habita Sentence  
ii. 311. cum cardinalibus deliberatione, Thomæ, Cantuariensi given by  
archiepiscopo, tale fertur dedit responsum: "Quod<sup>7</sup>

minor majorem judicare non possit, et præsertim eum, cui jure prælationis subesse dinoscitur, et obedientiæ vinculo tenetur astrictus, tam divinæ quam humanæ leges demonstrant, et sanctorum patrum statuta<sup>8</sup> id manifestius declarant. Hanc<sup>9</sup> siquidem nos, quorum interest errata corrigere, sententiam ab episcopis et baronibus præsumptuose in te latam, in qua tibi jam dicti episcopi ac barones omnia mobilia tua, tam contra juris ordinem quam contra ecclesiasticam con-

Rog. Wend. suetudinem, abjudicarunt, præsertim cum nulla mobilia  
ii. 312. præterquam de bonis ecclesiæ tuæ habueris, irritam penitus esse censemus, et eam auctoritate apostolica cassamus; statuentes, ut nullas in posterum vires obti-

<sup>1</sup> *me*] So written at first, as in W. A. C. D. F. and ed. Giles, but afterwards altered to *mei*.

<sup>2</sup> *compatiendo tui*] Originally, *ipē tui*, a mistake, no doubt, for *tempore tuo*, as in W. A. C. D. F., Dic. and ed. Giles; but these words have afterwards been underscored, and the reading in the text substituted in the margin.

<sup>3</sup> *injuriis*] in *injuriis*, MS.

<sup>4</sup> *coerce*] *coherce*, MS.

<sup>5</sup> *nævus*] In the text *nomen* (as in W. A. C. D. and Dic.), but corr. in marg.

<sup>6</sup> *resistens*] Added in marg.

<sup>7</sup> Epp. lib. i. 49; ed. Giles, ii. 203.

<sup>8</sup> *statuta*] Originally *statutis*, as in W. A. C. D., Dic. and ed. Giles, all of which read *declaratur*.

<sup>9</sup> *Hanc*] At first, *Hæc* (as in W. A. C. I. and ed. Giles), but corr. in marg., and so Edd. In D. *Ad hæc*.

A.D. 1164. neat, vel tibi aut successoribus, seu ecclesiæ tuæ gubernationi commissæ, aliquod in posterum valeat præjudicium generare. Ceterum,<sup>1</sup> si hii, qui in possessionibus et bonis ecclesiæ tuæ tibi aut tuis vel violentiam aut injuriam intulerunt, legitime commoniti vobis ablata restituere, et satisfactionem congruam exhibere noluerint, tu in eos, si opportunum<sup>2</sup> esse videris, ecclesiasticam justitiam non differas exercere;<sup>3</sup> et nos quod inde rationabiliter feceris, ratum habebimus atque firmum. Verum de persona regis speciale tibi mandatum non damus, nec tamen in aliquo tibi jus pontificale, quod in consecratione tua suscepisti, adimimus, sed ipsum illæsum volumus conservare.” Et, hiis ita gestis, Thomas archiepiscopus ad Pontiniacense cœnobium remeavit.

The abp.  
returns to  
Pontigny.

*Matildis, filia regis H[enrici], duci Saxonum  
maritatur.*

A.D. 1165. Anno Domini M<sup>o</sup>.C<sup>o</sup>.LX<sup>o</sup>.v<sup>o</sup>. Reginaldus, Coloniensis Rog. Wend. archiepiscopus, qui scisma<sup>4</sup> Octoviani contra papam ii. 312. foverat Alexandrum, venit apud Westmonasterium ad regem Henricum, accepturus in conjugem Matildem, filiam regis H[enrici] primogenitam, Henrico, duci Saxonæ, maritandam.<sup>5</sup> Cui cum magnates Angliae sollempniter occurrisserent, Robertus, comes Legrecestriæ et justiciarius regis, illum in osculum non recepit; excommunicatus enim erat a papa et non absolutus; unde altaria, super quæ<sup>6</sup> missam<sup>7</sup> celebrarunt illi scismatici,<sup>8</sup> passim sunt subversa.

<sup>1</sup> *Ceterum*] From this word to the end is omitted in edd. of Lupus and Giles.

<sup>2</sup> *opportunum*] oportunum, MS.

<sup>3</sup> *exercere*] excereere, MS.

<sup>4</sup> *scisma*] cisima, MS.

<sup>5</sup> *maritandam*] Interlined.

<sup>6</sup> *quæ*] qnem, A. C. D.

<sup>7</sup> *missam*] Originally, *missam illi* (as W. A. C. D.), but *illi* afterwards underscored for omission.

<sup>8</sup> *scismatici*] cismatici, MS. In W. A. C. D. *scismatico*. The text is confirmed by Diceto, col. 539. The Edd. and ed. Wend. read *ille scismaticus celebravit*, but without authority.

*Alienora peperit Johannam.*

A.D. 1165.

Rog.Wend. Eodemque anno Alienora regina regi Anglorum Birth of the  
ii. 313. Henrico peperit filiam, quam vocavit nomine Johan- princess Joanna.

*Nota de crismate confecto apud Sanctum Albanum.<sup>1</sup>*

Rog.Wend. Eodem etiam anno Godefridus, episcopus de Sancto Godfrey,  
ii. 313. Asaph, in ecclesia Sancti Albani, Anglorum prothomar- bp. of St. Asaph, tiris, ad majus altare in Cœna Domini crisma confecit prepares solemniter<sup>2</sup> et oleum sanctum, fultus auctoritate in the privilegiorum ejusdem ecclesiae, in præsentia abbatis church of Roberti. St.Alban's.

13 May.

*Noradinus contra Christianos invaluit.*

Rog.Wend. Anno quoque sub eodem Noradinus, quidam Turco- Noradiu  
ii. 313. rum princeps potentissimus, in finibus Antiochenis besieges Hareng, Hareng castrum obsedit. Quo audito, Boamundus, and takes princeps Antiochenus, Reimundus, comes Tripolitanus, Salamannus,<sup>3</sup> Ciciliæ præsul, et Thoros, Armeniorum Antioch, princeps, obsidionem solvere cupientes, ad locum accedunt, et Noradinum in fugam propellunt. Quem cum prisoner. fugientem temere insequerentur, reversus est contra nostros ipsum insequentes; et, facta irruptione in ipsos vehementi, nobiles cepit memoratos, et eos vinculis constrictos apud Halapiam custodiæ carcerali mancipavit. Castrum etiam, quod prius obsederat, militaribus copiis circumcingens, levi sibi negotio subjugavit.

<sup>1</sup> This chapter is omitted in F.<sup>2</sup> solempniter] On an erasure.<sup>3</sup> Salamannus] Salomon, E.

A.D. 1165. *In medio hiemis terræmotus advenit, in triste auspicium.*

26 Jan. In confinio autem annorum illorum, videlicet in Adventu, et iterum vii<sup>o</sup>. kalendas Februarii, in Ely<sup>1</sup> et Northfolckia<sup>2</sup> et Sufolkia factus est terræ-motus, ita quod homines stantes prostravit, et campanas pulsavit.

*Rex Henricus in Normanniam transfretavit.*

A.D. 1166. Anno Domini M<sup>o</sup>.C<sup>o</sup>.LX<sup>o</sup>.VI<sup>o</sup>. rex Henricus in initio Rog.Wend. King Quadragesimæ in Normanniam transfretavit. Quod ii. 313. Henry audiens Thomas, Cantuariensis archiepiscopus, de Pontiniaco venit Viceliacum; et in die Dominicæ Ascensionis, videntibus [cunctis]<sup>3</sup> qui ad diem festum converant, et populo civitatis, repente in pulpitudine ascensio. Beatus Thomas ex- consuetudinum, quas in regno Angliæ ‘avitas’ Rog.Wend. communicat appellant, observatores, defensores et incentores candelis excommunicavit accensis. Et inter ceteros, nominatim ii. 314. num ini- Ricardum de Lucy, Ricardum, archidiaconum Pictaven- quarum ob- sem, Jocelinum de Bailluil, Alanum de Novilla, et alios quamplures. Sed ipsi absentes et non vocati nec convicti, ut dicebant, excommunicati, missis ad archiepiscopum legatis, appellaverunt, et ecclesiam intraverunt. The king and abp. are cited to Montmirail by the cardinal legates. Sed non multo post, Willelmus Papiensis et Johannes Neapolitanus, cardinales a latere summi pontificis destinati, apud Muntmirail regem Henricum et Thomam, Cantuariensem archiepiscopum, convenerunt. Et licet eos in partem regis archiepiscopus inclinatiiores sensisset, rem tamen in judicium deduci ea ratione concessit, residentibus illis in consistorio, ut, secundum ecclesiæ formam, tam sibi quam suis prius fieret plena restitutio ablatorum. Nec enim spoliatus judicium

<sup>1</sup> *Ely*] At first written *Elya*, but *a* erased.

<sup>2</sup> *Northfolckia*] Northfolekia, MS.

<sup>3</sup> *cunctis*] Supplied from W. A. C. D.

fol. 58 b. subire voluit, nec cogi potuit ratione. Quod cum illi A.D. 1166. [nec]<sup>1</sup> facere vellent nec possent, infecto negotio, prædictis excommunicatis prius absolutis, ad curiam sunt reversi. Alanum vero de Novilla absolvit Gilebertus, Londoniensis episcopus, accepto ab eo sacramento, quod in eundo Jerosolimam transiret per dominum papam, ejus mandato paritus.

*Rex Francorum venit Pontiniacum.*

Rog. Wend. Eodem tempore Lodouicu<sup>s</sup>, rex Francorum, venit Louis, king ii. 314. Pontiniacum; et, ne quid a rege Anglorum fieret in per- of France, goes to niciem Cisterciensis Ordinis, Thomam, Cantuariensem Pontigny, archiepiscopum, cui jam per biennium Pontiniacenses and brings monachi commoranti<sup>2</sup> omnem exhibuerant humani- the abp. to Sens. tatem, Senonis secum adduxit, et apud Sanctam Columbam ei per annos iiii<sup>or</sup>. sufficientiam in expensis invenit.

*Prophetia.*

Cum autem quidam monachorum Pontiniacensium, Prophecy qui eum per unam dietam ab eodem valefacentes redi- of the abp. turi recederent, archiepiscopus, junctis manibus, regra- relative to tiabatur eis de eorum beneficiis ei impensis, addens, of Pon- tigny. “ Salutate dominum abbatem et conventum, dicentes ei vice mea, ‘ Timeo, ne exiguae domui Pontiniaci oneri fuerim et gravamini; sed adveniet tempus, quo quidam meus successor et ecclesiæ meæ prælatus beneficia, in quibus vobis teneor obligatus, meam supplens<sup>3</sup> insufficientiam,<sup>4</sup> vobis plene recompensabit.’ ” At ipsi, “ Libenter verba nobis injuncta deferemus.” Nec tamen verba intellexerunt.

<sup>1</sup> nec] Supplied from W. A. C. D.

<sup>2</sup> commoranti] On an erasure.

<sup>3</sup> supplens] suplens, MS. The last two letters are on an erasure.

<sup>4</sup> insufficientiam] insufficientiam,

MS.

A.D. 1166.

*Subvenitur Terræ Sanctæ ex Anglia.*

Tax  
exacted  
for the  
relief of  
the Holy  
Land.

Per idem tempus, ad subventionem Terræ Sanctæ, de unaquaque carucata terræ totius Angliæ iiiij<sup>or.</sup> denarii <sup>Rog.Wend.</sup> ii. 315. concessi sunt et collecti.

Some per-  
sons con-  
victed of  
heresy are  
expelled  
the king-  
dom.

*Pullulavit hæresis in Anglia.*

Sub eisdem diebus quidam pravi dogmatis<sup>1</sup> disseminatores apud Oxoniam tracti sunt in judicium, præsente rege et regni episcopis; quos, a fide catholica devios et in examine superatos et confusos, facies cauteriata notabiles cunctis exposuit. Qui ilico expulsi sunt a regno.

*Natus est regi H[enrico] II. filius, scilicet Johannes.*

Birth of  
princee  
John, and  
evil reports  
respecting  
him.

A uno sub eodem Alienora, Anglorum regina, peperit filium, et vocatus est Johannes. De quo, cum adhuc esset in ventre matris suæ, et cum baptizaretur, mira sed relatu indigna pronostica evenisse referuntur.<sup>2</sup>

*Obiit Robertus, abbas Sancti Albani.<sup>3</sup>*

Death of  
Robert,  
abbot of  
St.Alban's.

Eodemque anno Robertus, abbas ecclesiae Sancti Albani octavus decimus, diem clausit extremum,<sup>4</sup> postquam ecclesiam præfatam annis xiiii. magnifice gubernasset.

<sup>1</sup> *dogmatis*] doematis, MS.

<sup>2</sup> In the margin is the following note : “ ¶ De quo mirum contigit præsagium matri impregnatae, et puer baptizato.” It is inserted in the text of F. before the words *cum adhuc*.

<sup>3</sup> In the margin are sketched an abbot’s mitre and crosier reversed. This chapter is omitted in F.

<sup>4</sup> In W. A. C. D. the date is added, “ in festo apostolorum Simonis et Judæ.” [28 Oct.]

*Frustra scriptum est regi et episcopis.*

A.D. 1166.

Rog. Wend. Temporibus quoque sub eisdem Cantuariensis archi- Archbp.  
ii. 315. episcopus Thomas, sperans se posse regem Henricum, writes to  
. nec non et episcopos Angliæ et alios, sibi et ecclesias- the king  
. ticas libertatibus adversantes,<sup>1</sup> humilitate vincere, nunc and bi-  
. regi nunc aliis elegantissimas epistolas transmisit, et shops.  
. nuncios favorabiles, prudentes et sollempnes destina-  
. vit, ad regis tirannidem præcipue emolliendam. Ita  
. quod inter ceteros<sup>2</sup> ipsam regis matrem Matildem,  
. quondam imperatricem, ad ipsum regem direxit; quæ,  
. licet blandis et maternis precibus uteretur, nihil<sup>3</sup> pro-  
. fecit. Epistolæ autem et persuasiones ipsius beati  
. Thomæ, quia specialem exigunt tractatum, hic brevius,  
. sed in Vita ipsius omnia hæc<sup>4</sup> plenius annotantur.

*Excommunicatur Alanus de Novilla.<sup>5</sup>*

Rog. Wend. Eodemque anno<sup>6</sup> idem Thomas, Cantuariensis archi- Excommu-  
ii. 329. episcopus, excommunicavit Alanum de Novilla, quia nication of  
Willelmum, capellum suum, vinculis tenuit irretitum. Alan de Neville.

*Episcopi suffraganei appellaverunt<sup>7</sup> contra beatum  
Thomam.*

Rog. Wend. Tempore quoque sub eodem episcopi suffraganei, Letter of  
ii. 316. metuentes ne omnes, quos in genere per sententiam the suffra-  
Rog. Wend. archiepiscopus ligaverat, nominatim iterato specificaret, gan bi-  
ii. 317. to the abp.,

<sup>1</sup> *adversantes*] adversantes posse, MS.

as in W. A. C. D.; Epp. lib. i. 64.

<sup>2</sup> *inter ceteros*] Written *ceteros* *inter*, but marked to be transposed.

<sup>5</sup> *Novilla*] Nuella, MS.

<sup>3</sup> *nihil*] nichil, MS.  
<sup>4</sup> *in Vita . . . hæc*] On an era-  
sure. In F. the words *quia . . .*

<sup>6</sup> In Wendover and A.C. D. F. this

*annotantur* are omitted, and the letter to the king inserted at length,

event is placed under the year 1168.  
F. here ceases to agree with the text,  
and follows the larger chronicle to  
the close of the year.

<sup>7</sup> *appellaverunt*] appellaverunt, MS.

A.D. 1166. in vocem appellationis contra juris ordinem proruperunt. Eodemque tempore archiepiscopus eisdem scribit. and his reply. amicabiliter. Item, Londoniensis episcopus regi Henrico, per verba vulpina. Has omnes epistolas invenies. Letter of the bishop of London to the king. in Vita beati Thomæ.<sup>1</sup>

*Literæ Alexandri papæ ad regem H[enricum] II.  
pro beato Thoma.*

A.D. 1167. Anno Domini M<sup>o</sup>.C<sup>o</sup>.LX<sup>o</sup>.VII<sup>o</sup>.<sup>2</sup> Alexander [papa]<sup>3</sup> regi. Cf. Rog. [1169.] Letter of pope Alexander to the king, and other letters. Anglorum scripsit in hæc verba: "Quam paterne<sup>4</sup> et. quam benigne regiam saepius," etc. Respice in Historia ipsius martiris,<sup>5</sup> et invenies et hanc epistolam et alias, quas ad invicem sibi miserunt papa regi, papaque episcopis, rex papæ, et sic ad invicem, ut difficile et diffusum foret in hiis Cronicis, quæ tantum statum regni Angliae debent describendo manifestare, plenius enucleare. Verumtamen eodem tempore Gilebertus, Londoniensis episcopus, cognomento<sup>6</sup> Folioth, nec sine ratione, quia vere Folioth, vel potius Nabal, id est, stultus dicebatur, a bono Thoma, Cantuariensi archiepiscopo, excommunicatus est. Post<sup>7</sup> vero scripsit rex.

<sup>1</sup> *episcopi suffraganei metuentes . . . Thomæ*] The whole of this is written over an erasure, and at first only as far as *invenies*, but the words *in Vita beati Thomæ inveniuntur* have afterwards been added, and the last is superfluous. The letters mentioned are in W. A. C. D. F. and Epp. lib. i. 123, 126, 127.

<sup>2</sup> *m<sup>o</sup>.c<sup>o</sup>.lx<sup>o</sup>.vii<sup>o</sup>.*] This date is partly on an erasure, and the traces of another *x* can still be discerned. There is evidently some confusion here, for the year 1167 commences rightly on fol. 59, (p. 343,) and the events entered previously are, in great measure, the same as those

belonging to the year 1169, as in Wendover and A. C. D. In F. the text from the beginning of the chapter to the words *plenius enucleare* is replaced by the text of W. A. C. D., which forms the real commencement of 1167.

<sup>3</sup> *papa*] Supplied from W. A. C. D.

<sup>4</sup> Epp. lib. iv. 4; ed. Giles, ii. 306. According to Jaffé, p. 716, it was written 22 May 1168.

<sup>5</sup> *Historia ipsius martiris*] On an erasure.

<sup>6</sup> *cognomento*] cognomento, MS.

<sup>7</sup> *Post*] Corrected *Postea*, by a late hand.

.. eidem G[ileberto]. Quas literas in Vita prædicta<sup>1</sup> in A.D. 1167.  
.. venietis.

[1169.]

Letter of  
the king  
to the  
bishop.

*Duo legati mittuntur in Angliam, sed discordes  
recesserunt.<sup>2</sup>*

Rog.Wend. Eodem anno missi sunt duo legati<sup>3</sup> a latere summi Two le-  
ii. 333. pontificis, Vivianus et Gratianus, ut pacem inter regem gates are  
Anglorum et archiepiscopum Cantuariensem reformarent. sent to effect a  
Sed quorum erat potestas æqualis, [eos]<sup>4</sup> varius dis- reconciliation.  
jungebat affectus, et ideo pietatis effectu caruit eorum  
adventus.

*Qualiter omni solatio caruit beatus Thomas.*

Rog.Wend. Hoc ergo tribulationis tempore Thomas, confessor Mental  
ii. 337. invictus, martirium, quod nondum suscepit in corpore, sufferings  
servavit in mente. Videns enim illum, qui caput esse of the arch-  
debuit ecclesiæ militantis, quod se non opposuit murum,<sup>5</sup> bishop.  
ut staret pro ea in die prælia, sed conversus est retror-  
sum<sup>6</sup> ut aries cornua non habens, omni humano destitu-  
tus solatio, ad divinum confugit auxilium, incessanter  
pro statu ecclesiæ orans, corpus suum in vigiliis et jeju-  
fol. 59 a. niis macerans, pro adversariis suis Deum nocte dieque  
orare<sup>7</sup> non cessavit.

*Iterum scribit papa A[lexander] regi Anglorum  
H[enrico] II., sed frustra.<sup>8</sup>*

Rog.Wend. Anno Domini M<sup>o</sup>.C<sup>o</sup>.LX<sup>o</sup>.VII<sup>o</sup>. Alexander papa iterum A.D. 1167.  
ii. 321. et iterum regi pro pace ecclesiæ scribit; et inter ceteras Letters of  
pope Alex-

<sup>1</sup> in Vita prædicta] On an era-  
sure. Both here and above, traces  
of letters are seen underneath, which  
appear to read, *in Cronieis . . .*  
The letters referred to are in Epp.  
lib. iii. 39, 47.

<sup>2</sup> This chapter and the next are  
both retained under the year 1167  
in F., but partly repeated in 1169.

<sup>3</sup> These legates were sent in May  
1169. Jaffé, p. 724.

<sup>4</sup> eos] Omitted also in E. F., but  
supplied from W. A. C. D.

<sup>5</sup> murum] mutum, MS.

<sup>6</sup> retrorsum] On an erasure.

<sup>7</sup> orare] Added above the line.

<sup>8</sup> This short chapter is omitted in  
F.

A.D. 1167. epistolas, in hæc verba: "Prædecessorum nostrorum,".  
ander to etc. Respice in Magnis Cronicis.<sup>1</sup>  
the king.

*Obiit Lincolniensis episcopus Robertus.*

Death of Robert,  
bishop of Lincoln.  
26 Jan.

Eodem anno Robertus, episcopus Lincolnensis, vir Rog.Wend.  
magnæ humilitatis, migravit ad Dominum, vii<sup>o</sup>. kalen-<sup>ii. 321.</sup>  
das Februarii.

*Symon, prior ecclesiæ Sancti Albani, eligitur in  
abbatem.<sup>2</sup>*

Election of Symon,  
prior of St.Alban's  
as abbat.  
18 May.

Anno quoque sub eodem Symon, prior ecclesiæ Rog.Wend.  
Sancti Albani, vir magnæ religionis et scientiæ, ama-<sup>ii. 321.</sup>  
tor librorum et sacrarum scripturarum, die Dominicæ.  
Ascensionis in abbatem ejusdem ecclesiæ electus, a  
Gileberto, Londoniensi episcopo, ante majus altare sol-  
lemniter est consecratus.<sup>3</sup>

*Discordes effecti sunt reges Francorum et Anglorum.*

War be-  
tween the  
kings of  
France and  
England.

Temporeque sub eodem effecti sunt discordes reges Rog.Wend.  
Francorum et Anglorum, unde Calvus-Mons, Gisorcio  
vicinus, succensus est a Normannis. Capti sunt ibi  
milites multi et cives, sed in illius dampni ultionem  
rex Francorum villam Andeliaci combussit. Et ipsa  
die reversus in Franciam, plusquam mille de suis in  
itinere amisit. Et non multo post, in pago Perticensi,  
milites multi de gente Francorum capti sunt a Nor-  
mannis.

<sup>1</sup> *Magnis Cronicis*] These words have been erased, but can be read by the aid of a chemical agent. The letter referred to is addressed not to the king, but to Becket, and is inserted in Wendover (who borrows it from Dieeto, col. 546), and in A.C.D. It is omitted in edd. of Lupus and Giles.

<sup>2</sup> This chapter is also omitted in F.

<sup>3</sup> *consecratus*] This word has been erased, but traces of it are still visible, and so read W.A.C.D. A more recent hand (of the 15th century) has supplied its place by *munus benedictionis suscepit*, and struck out est.

*Rex Henricus archiepiscopo Coloniensi, necnon et imperatori Fretherico consentit.<sup>1</sup>*

Rog.Wend. Anno Domini M<sup>o</sup>.C<sup>o</sup>.LX<sup>o</sup>.VIII<sup>o</sup>.<sup>2</sup> Henricus, rex Anglo- A.D. 1168.  
 ii. 322. rum, motus contra papam Alexandrum, ex hoc quod Henry is angry with Thomæ, Cantuariensi archiepiscopo, primatum Angliæ the pope conferens ipsi præsttit auxilium, consilium et favorem, for taking the part of et pro ipso cum suis efficaciter mandatis et<sup>3</sup> epistolis the abp. nitebatur adversariorum suorum rigorem mitigare. Reginaldo igitur, Coloniensi archiepiscopo, scismatico et His letters hosti papæ publico, literas in hæc verba direxit: “[Diu]<sup>4</sup> of Cologne desideravi justam habere occasionem recedendi a papa and the emperor Alexandro et a perfidis cardinalibus ejus, qui prodito- Frederie. rem meum Thomam, Cantuariensem archiepiscopum, contra me manu tenere præsumunt,” etc. Vide in Cronicis Magnis.<sup>5</sup> Simile autem mandatum significavit rex imperatori Fretherico, sed utrumque, Deo dante, effectu caruit. Eodemque tempore dominus papa Gileberto, Letter of ii. 324. Londoniensi episcopo, scripsit in hæc verba quandam elegantem et prolixam epistolam: “A memoria tua,” etc. of London, R. Wend. . Respice in . . . . .<sup>6</sup> Cui etiam ipse rescripsit prolixius. and reply. ii. 326.

*Gaufridus, filius regis H[enrici] II., fit comes Britanniae.*

Rog.Wend. Eodemque anno<sup>7</sup> Conanus, Minoris Britanniæ comes, Death of ii. 329. dum in fata concederet, ex sorore regis Scotorum Con-

<sup>1</sup> *consentit*] So MS. but we should, perhaps, read *conscriptis*.

<sup>2</sup> Throughout the years 1168 and 1169, MS. F. generally follows the larger chronicle.

<sup>3</sup> *et*] Interlined.

<sup>4</sup> *Diu*] Supplied from W. A. C. D. F.

<sup>5</sup> *Cronicis Magnis*] Partly erased, but still very legible. The letter is given in W. A. C. D. F., and in Epp. lib. i. 69.

<sup>6</sup> An erasure has again been made here, over which has been written, *auti . . .*; but the text probably stood originally, *in Epistolarum libro*, as may be inferred from E., which reads, *Epistolarum librum*. The letters referred to are in W. A. C. D. F. and Epp. lib. i. 37, 38. Jaffé, p. 704, places this letter of the pope in June 1165.

<sup>7</sup> *anno*] Interlined.

A.D. 1168. stantia<sup>1</sup> filiam reliquit heredem ; quam rex Anglorum H[enricus] Gaufrido, filio suo, ut suam potentiam ampliaret et famam dilataret, adquisivit uxorem.

*Papa scripsit regi Henrico, tanquam publico ecclesiae hosti indurato.*

A.D. 1169. Anno Domini M<sup>o</sup>.C<sup>o</sup>.LX<sup>o</sup>.IX<sup>o</sup>. papa Alexander regi . Cf. Rog. Letters of pope Alexander to the king and abp. Anglorum, jam non tantum contra Cantuariensem .. Wend. ii. 329-331. archiepiscopum Thomam, sed contra ecclesiam armato . archiepiscopo et aliis regni Angliae prælatis et magna- tibus; sed nihil<sup>2</sup> prorsus scripta<sup>3</sup> valuerunt. Tandem . archiepiscopus Gilebertum, Londoniensem episcopum, . Excommunication of the bp. of London. excommunicavit.

*Alienora, filia regis Anglorum, nupsit Andefulso, regi Castellæ, in Hispania.*

Marriage of the princess Alienor to the king of Castille. Eodem anno Alienora, filia regis Angliae, hoc summo conamine ipso rege procurante, nupsit regi Castellæ . Andefulso, principi in Hispania potentissimo.

*Condoleat rex Gileberto, Londonensi episcopo.*

Per idem tempus, cum rumor de excommunicatione Gileberti, Londoniensis episcopi, ad aures regis Anglorum pervenisset, eodem episcopo ipsi significante, re-

<sup>1</sup> Constantia] This is an error copied from Wendover. Conan's wife was named Margaret, by whom he left a daughter named Constance. His death took place 20 Feb. 1171. See "L'Art de Vérifier les Dates," ii. 898. In E. the reading is corrected rightly, *Constantiam*.

<sup>2</sup> nihil] Written *nil* in the text, but corr. *nichil* in marg.

<sup>3</sup> These are the letters mentioned previously, at p. 342. They are given at length in W. A. C. D. F.; Epp. lib. iv. 4, lib. v. 9.

. scripsit ei literas consolatorias, immo potius ad obsti- A.D. 1169.  
 . nationem et duritiam incentivas, in hæc verba. Quæ,  
 . quia sunt<sup>1</sup> brevia, hic duximus ea annotanda :

Rog.Wend. Rog. Wend. ii. 333. “ Audivimus<sup>2</sup> gravamen, quod ille Thomas, proditor et ad-  
 versarius meus, intulit in te et in alias personas regni mei,  
 quod non minus ægre fero de persona tua, quam si in per-  
 sonam meam virus suum evomuisset. Et ideo pro certo scias,  
 quod ego omnem operam dabo per dominum papam, et per re-  
 gem Francorum, et per omnes amicos meos, quod de cetero  
 non poterit nobis nec regno nostro nocere. Unde volo et con-  
 sulo, quod interim nullo modo in animo tuo turberis, pro certo  
 sciturus, quod si Romam adire volueris, omnia necessaria ad  
 viam de meo tibi honorabiliter et sufficienter inveniam.”

*De legatis, de quibus prædictum est.*

Rog.Wend. Rog. Wend. ii. 333. Venerunt iterum ipsi duo legati, de quibus prædictum Two le-  
 est,<sup>3</sup> ad regem in Normanniam de pace tractaturi, apud gates come  
 Baiocas, seseque regis et archiepiscopi conspectibus præ- to the king,  
 sentarunt. Et post tractatus<sup>4</sup> immensos et diffusos but fail to  
 valde, cum pax in januis ab omnibus crederetur,<sup>5</sup> literas reeoneile  
 illis direxit Willelmus, Senonensis archiepiscopus, in him with  
 quibus continebatur, ne sine ipsius conscientia, sicut a  
 domino papa in mandatis acceperant, in reconciliatione  
 procederent facienda. Sicque duo legati a regis curia,  
 sicut prius,<sup>6</sup> recesserunt. Noluit enim rex cum archie-  
 pi. 334. pisco aliqua ratione componere, nisi salvis sibi con-  
 suetudinibus inquis regni sui, et dignitatibus avitis,  
 quod etiam ipsis legatis nefas<sup>7</sup> videbatur et absurdum.

<sup>1</sup> *Quæ, quia sunt*] On an erasure.

gates at p. 343, and are not in W.A.  
C. D. F.

<sup>2</sup> *Audivimus*] Audivi, W. A. C.  
D. ; Epp. lib. iii. 47. ; Epp. Gilb.  
epise. Lond. ii. 493, ed. Giles.

<sup>4</sup> *tractatus*] tractus, MS.

<sup>5</sup> *crederetur*] At first written *cre-  
ditur*, but corr. in marg.

<sup>3</sup> *iterum . . . prædictum est*] These words refer to the entry previously made respecting the le-

<sup>6</sup> *sicut prius*] Omitted in W. A.  
C. D.

<sup>7</sup> *nefas*] nephæ, MS.

A.D. 1169.

*Literæ regis H[enrici] II. ad papam.*

fol. 59 b.

Gilbert, bp. Eodem quoque anno Gilebertus, Londoniensis epi- Rog.Wend.  
 of London, scopus, transfretavit, suam domino papæ præsentiam ii. 334.  
 goes to the king, to exhibiturus, et causas appellationis redditurus. Quo  
 concert measures veniente ad regem H[enricum] in Normannia, tractare  
 against the cœperunt communiter, quomodo beatum Thomam dolo  
 abp. circumvenirent,<sup>1</sup> et causam ejus, licet justissimam, coram  
 papa denigrarent. Tandem in hoc consenserunt, ut rex  
 Romam mitteret sollempnes nuncios cum literis ipsius,  
 in quibus expresse domino papæ denunciaret, quod  
 superbiam Thomæ, Cantuariensis archiepiscopi, severi-  
 tatis pede contereret, vel <sup>2</sup> ipse et omnes barones Angliae.  
 cum viris omnibus <sup>3</sup> ecclesiasticis ab ejus obedientia.  
 recederent. Quarum literarum tenor, quia materiae præ-  
 senti necessariæ sunt, huic eas paginæ duximus in-  
 scribendas.

*Epistola.<sup>4</sup>*

Letter of "Vestræ, pater, satis innescit serenitati, quanta me et Rog.Wend.  
 the king terram meam affligat molestia, quantisque me vexaverit injuriis ii. 334.  
 to the pope. Thomas ille, adversarius meus, cum, teste conscientia, nihil  
 meruerim,<sup>5</sup> nil gesserim tanta dignum contumelia. Nunc  
 autem innumeris præcedentibus novam adjecit injuriam, qui  
 affligere non desinit innocentem. Vesta siquidem fultus auctoritate, ut asserit, devotos et fideles ecclesiæ Romanæ filios  
 Londonensem et Saresbiriensem episcopos, cum quibusdam  
 familiaribus meis, anathematis sententia immodavit, nullam  
 habens adversus eos causam rationabilem. Hoc autem quam  
 sit mihi intolerabile, quamque famæ meæ generet laesionem, Rog.Wend.  
 vestræ credo non incognitum sanctitati. Videtur mihi etiam, ii. 335.  
 quod me quasi derelictum vistra projeccerit paternitas, cum ad  
 ignominiae meæ augmentum<sup>6</sup> flagitosum in me grassari per-  
 mittit inimicum, nec reprimit injuriarum vehementiam paternæ  
 correctionis moderatio. Vestrâ igitur obsecro suppliciter et

<sup>1</sup> *circumvenirent*] circumvenrent, MS.

<sup>2</sup> *vel*] Interlined.

<sup>3</sup> *omnibus*] 'On an erasure.'

<sup>4</sup> Abridged from Epp. lib. iii. 48.; Epp. Gilb. episc. Lond. ii. 491.

<sup>5</sup> *meruerim*] metuerim, MS.

<sup>6</sup> *augmentum*] auementum, MS.

adjuro, ut justum est, celsitudinem, ut quem filio debetis A.D. 1169. operis exhibitionem monstretis affectum, et illatam mihi et personis meis et terrae meae injuriam absque tardatione emendare dignemini; et quicquid adversarius meus contra juris ordinem et contra me et personas regni mei, clericos et laicos, statuit, irritum habeatis et inane. Petitionibus<sup>1</sup> enim, quas paternitati vestrae porrigitur, assensum de jure praebere tenemini, maxime cum petitionibus vestris, quas mihi nuncii vestri, Vivianus scilicet et Gratianus, proponebant, quatinus saepet archiepiscopo Cantuariensi archiepiscopatum suum et amorem nostrum redderemus, nos, postposito honore nostro, concessimus coram ipsis legatis et octo archiepiscopis, et episcopis et abbatibus multis, licet ille absque conscientia nostra et coactione aliqua a regno exierit, ut bene et in pace rediret, et omnes possessiones suas haberet, sicut habuit quando exivit, et omnes qui cum eo vel pro eo exierunt, salvis dignitatibus regni nostri. Serenitatem igitur vestram obnixe rogamus, quatinus attente consideretis honorem et utilitatem, quam vobis et curiae vestrae contulimus, et in futurum, nisi per vos<sup>2</sup> steterit, conferemus; et sic rem hanc temperare velitis, ne illius perfidi proditoris nostri malitiosae blanditiae simplicitatem nostram circumveniant, sed juxta petitionem nostram eos, qui excommunicati sunt, absolvatis, et, ne in alios venenum excommunicationis effundere valeat, providcatis; ne, si minus in hac justa petitione exauditi fuerimus, tanquam de benivolentia vestra desperantes, aliter securitati nostrae prospicere compellamur. Et, quoniam singula negotia nostra difficile sub scripto comprehendenderentur, mittimus ad pedes paternitatis vestrae clericos nostros familiares R[eginaldum], archidiaconum Saresbiriensem, et R[icardum] Barre, qui plenius vobis quae gesta sunt exponent."

*Regales causam beati Thomae depresso runt.*

Rog. Wend.  
ii. 336. Nuncii igitur Romam pervenientes talibus mandatis The king's  
armati et donariis pretiosis onerati, ad favorem regis messengers  
animum papae et cardinalium inclinarunt. Et quid ibi<sup>3</sup> the pope  
egerint, literis apostolicis, quas vicissim beato Thoma in his fa-  
vor

<sup>1</sup> *Petitionibus*] From this word to  
the end of the letter is omitted in  
edd. of Lupus and Giles.

<sup>2</sup> *vos*] Interlined.  
<sup>3</sup> *ibi*] sibi, C.D.

A.D. 1169. direxit, continetur expressum. In primis literis papa eidem ita scribit :

*Epistola papæ beato Thomæ prima.<sup>1</sup>*

First letter “ Novit industria tua, quam ferventem circa regni sui gubernationem karissimus in Christo filius noster H[enricus] II., illustris rex Anglorum, impendat, et eandem, ut firmior habebatur, eam vult auctoritate Romanæ ecclesiæ roborari, petens ut antiquas regni sui consuetudines et dignitates conservemus illætas. Item, cum legationis officium totius Angliæ postulassemus instantius Eboracensi archiepiscopo indulgeri, pensantes tempora periculosa, legationis literas præfato archiepiscopo concedendas eidem regi concessimns, licet antequam inclinari remur ad consensum, nuncii ejus nobis in verbo veritatis<sup>2</sup> promiserunt et super juramentum optulerunt, quod nunquam sine voluntate nostra<sup>3</sup> literæ Eboracensi archiepiscopo redderentur.”

*Secunda.<sup>4</sup>*

Tenor. In aliis autem literis suis idem papa dedit in manus archiepiscopo memorato, in virtute præcipiens obediencie, ne in ipsum regem, vel regnum ejus, vel personas regni, interdicti vel excommunicationis vel suspensionis promulgaret sententiam, nisi idem rex in pertinacia sua perseverans, ante initium Quadragesimæ sibi gratiam suam non redderet,<sup>5</sup> et bona omnia sibi et suis restitueret.

*Martirium Thomæ sine sanguinis effusione.<sup>6</sup>*

Beatus igitur Thomas jam de morte subarratus est. martirio, cum super hiis certificaretur, ex alto ingemuit,

Mental anxiety of abp. Thomas.

<sup>1</sup> This letter is much fuller in Epp. lib. i. 4; ed. Giles, ii. 198, dated “Senonis, tertio cal. Martii” [27 Feb.], where it is assigned to the year 1164, and so in Jaffé, p. 697. It is here, therefore, out of place, as also in W. A. C. D. F.

<sup>2</sup> *veritatis*] Added in marg.

<sup>3</sup> *nostra*] So all the MSS., but in Edd. and ed. Wend. *vestra*. This paragraph is omitted in edd. of Lupus and Giles.

<sup>4</sup> Epp. lib. iv. 16.

<sup>5</sup> *redderet*] At first written *reddit*.

<sup>6</sup> Compare the passage previously written, in p. 343.

et suspiria cruentata emittens, supra quam dici potest A.D. 1169.  
 doluit, videlicet usque ad amaritudinem animæ et  
 spiritus. Cum enim singularis columpna, cui tota eccle-  
 siæ incubuit structura, concussa minatur ruinam, quid  
 de ceteris est sperandum? Instabat jamjam exilii sui  
 annus septenus; parentes et amici sui pro ipso exulave-  
 rant; clerici et laici terræ suæ ecclesiæ pro eo depau-  
 perabantur; papa, de quo baculum fecerat sustenta-  
 tionis, confractus est, et eum jam fragmenta vulner-  
 averunt. Ad Deum igitur, totius patrem consolationis,  
 fol. 60 a. conversus, oravit pro consequentibus se et odio haben-  
 Rog. Wend. tibus, preces fundens; lacrimosis suspiriis Deum solli-  
 ii. 337. citare studuit, ut ecclesiam conservare dignaretur, quam  
 redemit. Quis enim hujus viri Dei angustias et mentis  
 Rog. Wend. poterit explicare passiones, cujus pater et mater, fratres  
 ii. 338. et sorores, nepotes et neptes, clerici et ministri, nec  
 non et amici, pro eo sunt in exilium pulsi, et homines  
 terrarum suarum laccessiti et depauperati; et ipse, qui  
 tam reverenda erat in ecclesia Dei persona, panem  
 suum in terra aliena compulsus est mendicare? Sed  
 fortasse, quia nemo repente fit summus, hæc ejus fuerunt  
 subarrationis tormenta præcurrentia ad illius animum  
 solidandum et preferendas injurias, quo usque strictis  
 ensibus ad martirii gloriam pertingeret, cui nondum  
 fuerat certus locus martirii deputatus.<sup>1</sup>

*Proceres Britanniae Henrico regi et Galfrido filio suo  
fidelitatem fecerunt.*

Rog. Wend. Anno Domini M<sup>o</sup>.C<sup>o</sup>.LXX<sup>o</sup>. rex Anglorum Henricus A.D. 1170.  
 ii. 340. in Natali tenuit curiam suam apud urbem Nanetensem, The  
 præsentibus episcopis et baronibus Britanniæ Minoris, bishops  
 and nobles of Britanny  
 swear

<sup>1</sup> In F. here follows the letter from the pope to the sultan of Yconium, added by Matthew Paris to the text of Wendover in A., and copied into

C. (ed. Wats., pp. 112-116.) F. inserts also the chapter in W. A. C. concerning Becket's terms of reconciliation.

A.D. 1170. ubi fidelitatem omnes juraverunt sibi et filio suo fealty to Gaufrido. Et in Quadragesima sequenti ad Angliam Henry and his son transfretavit, in qua transfretatione procellis exagitatus, Geoffrey. vix mortem evasit. Ubi etiam se vovit et certe promisit Deo et ecclesiæ Cantuariensi et archiepiscopo Henry returns to England. læso satisfacere et humiliare; sed, arridente serenitate, perveniens ad portum prospere, hac Dei clementia abusus et ingratus effectus, omnia promissa tradidit. Absolution of the bp. of London. oblivioni, vel fecisse dissimulavit. Eodem etiam anno, ad absolutionem aspirans, apud Rothomagum in die Paschæ Gilbertus, episcopus Londoniensis, sollempniter beneficium meruit accipere absolutionis.

*Sanctus Godricus heremita migravit ad Deum.*

Death of St. Godric the hermit. Eodem quoque anno, venerabilis heremita Godricus Rog. Wend. ex hac luce transiens, pro vita temporali commutavit ii. 340. æternam. Cujus vita et virtutes in Cronicis<sup>1</sup> Sancti Albani annotantur.<sup>2</sup>

*De coronatione regis Henrici III. Junioris nimis detestanda.*

15 June. Anno quoque sub eodem, idus<sup>3</sup> Julii,<sup>4</sup> convenerunt Rog. Wend. Coronation ad mandatum regis Henrici apud Westmonasterium, ii. 354. of prince Henry, contrary to the pope's prohibition. Rogerus, Eboracensis archiepiscopus, et omnes suffraganei Cantuariensis ecclesiæ episcopi, ad coronationem Henrici, filii regis primogeniti. Qui, patre jubente, coronatus est a' Rogero, Eboracensi archiepiscopo, et aliis episcopis regni, xiiii<sup>o</sup>.<sup>5</sup> kalendas Julii, contra prohibitionem

<sup>1</sup> *Cronicis*] Partly erased, but legible.

<sup>2</sup> The legend is given at length in Wendover, ii. 341–354, and in A. C. D. F.

<sup>3</sup> *idus*] So in all the MSS.

<sup>4</sup> *Julii*] So also in W. A. C. D. E.,

but we must evidently read *Junii*. The error originates with Diceto, col. 551. Hoveden, p. 518, fixes the meeting at the feast of S. Barnabas, 11th June.

<sup>5</sup> *xiiii<sup>o</sup>.*] *iiii<sup>o</sup>*. MS. and F. Corr. from W. A. C. D. and Dic.

. papæ, in enormemque ecclesiæ Cantuariensis læsionem. A.D. 1170.  
 . Quantumque Deo<sup>1</sup> displicuit hæc præsumptio, mors  
 . ipsius elegantissimi juvenis festina evidenter edocuit.<sup>2</sup>  
 . Præterea, ipsa die coronationis, dum a dextris novi  
 . regis in mensa pompose prandentis sederet<sup>3</sup> archiepisco-  
 . pus Eboracensis Rogerus, rex pater formam senescalli  
 . ministrantis sibi assumpsit. Et stans coram eis, palam Conduct of  
 . protestatus est coram omnibus, se deinceps non esse the king at  
 . regem, sed filium suum Henricum. Et cum primum the corona-  
 . ferculum ipsemēt dapifer egregius, tubis præviis, baju-  
 . laret et poneret ante novum regem filium suum, scilicet  
 . caput aprinum magnum, dixit archiepiscopus R[ogerus]  
 . ipsi juveni regi jocose, "Exulta satis et merito gratulare.  
 . Non enim est aliquis in mundo, qui tantum habeat in  
 . mensa ministrum, sicut tu hodie." At juvenis non æquo  
 . oculo archiepiscopum intuens, respondit, "Non est dis-  
 . personatus, degradatus, minoratus vel degeneratus, si  
 . mihi ministret. Ego enim sum filius regis et reginæ,  
 . ipse vero non." Quod cum aures regis non sine offendiculo attigisset, illico doluit se fecisse quod fecit; et  
 . instillans auribus archiepiscopi demissa voce<sup>4</sup> dixit,  
 . "Pœnitet me fecisse hominem."<sup>5</sup> Et statim postea alii, He repents  
 . sibi proximo, "Filiū enutri vi et exaltavi, ipse autem having  
 . jam sprevit me."<sup>6</sup> Et quasi præsaga mente suspicabatur caused his  
 . et augurabatur, et jamjam palam confitebatur son to be  
 . se infelicitate errasse. Unde, ultore Deo Domino ultimo  
 . num, postea in vita patris non cessavit ficta filii dilectio vel persecutio manifesta patrem inquietare.<sup>7</sup>

<sup>1</sup> *Deo*] Repeated after *præsumptio*, but afterwards erased.

<sup>2</sup> *Quantumque . . . edocuit*] In the place of this passage F. inserts, from W. A. C. D., the letter of the pope to the archbishop of York and other prelates, Epp. lib. iv. 42.<sup>1</sup>

<sup>3</sup> *dextris . . . sederet*] On an erasure.

<sup>4</sup> *voce*] Added on to the text.

<sup>5</sup> *2 Gen. vi. 7.*

<sup>6</sup> *Is. i. 2.*

<sup>7</sup> *patrem inquietare*] Added in marg. Here follows another insertion in F. from W. A. C. D., relative to the meeting of Louis and Henry at Montmirail.

A.D. 1170. *De concordia facta inter Henricum II. et Thomam, Cantuariensem archiepiscopum.*

Meeting of the kings of France and England, and reconciliation of the latter with archbishop Thomas.

Convenerunt iterum rex Francorum et rex Anglorum, cum Willelmo, Senonensi archiepiscopo, et episcopo Nivernensi, apud Fractam-Vallem. Cum autem rex et archiepiscopus Cantuariensis<sup>1</sup> in quodam prato, quod ab antiquo, quasi in præsagium, Pratum Proditorum<sup>2</sup>. [dicebatur],<sup>3</sup> in partem secesserunt,<sup>4</sup> bisque descendissent et bis equos ascendissent, bis stapham archiepiscopi rex tenuisset<sup>5</sup> cum equum ascenderet, quasi in favorem et arram futuræ et proximæ amicitiæ, tandem apud Ambazium,<sup>6</sup> procurante Rotrodo,<sup>7</sup> Rothomagensi archiepiscopo, rex et Thomas, Cantuariensis archiepiscopus, concordiam inierunt. Et, firmata pace, rex Henricus scripsit Henrico filio suo, novo regi, literas sic:<sup>8</sup>

Letter of the king to his son.

“Sciatis quod Thomas, Cantuariensis archiepiscopus, pacem mecum fecit ad voluntatem meam, et ideo præcipio, ut ipse et omnes sui pacem habeant.<sup>9</sup> Et faciatis ei habere et suis, qui pro eo exierunt ab Anglia, omnes res suas bene et in pace et honorifice, sicut habuerunt tribus mensibus antequam exiret ab Anglia. Et faciatis venire coram vobis<sup>10</sup> de melioribus et antiquioribus militibus de honore de Saltwde, et corum jura-mento faciatis [recognosci]<sup>11</sup> quid ibi habetur de feodo archi-episcopatus Cantuariensis; et quod recognitum<sup>12</sup> fuerit esse de feodo ejus, ipsi faciatis habere. Valeto.”

The abp. obtains leave to

Quo optento, archiepiscopus regratians, licentiam ro-gavit, ut liceret ei exercere<sup>13</sup> rigorem in sibi subjectos. fol. 60 b.

<sup>1</sup> *Cantuariensis*] Added to the text, and not in W. A. C. D.

<sup>2</sup> *in quodam . . . Proditorum*] Added in marg., and is in text of F.

<sup>3</sup> *dicebatur*] Omitted in MS., but required by the sense.

<sup>4</sup> *secesserunt*] secessissent, W. A. C. D.

<sup>5</sup> *tenuisset*] tenuit, W. A. C. D.

<sup>6</sup> *Ambazium*] Ambarium, MS. and F.

<sup>7</sup> *Rotrodo*] Retrodo, MS. and D. F.

<sup>8</sup> Epp. lib. v. 43.

<sup>9</sup> *ideo præcipio . . . habeant*] On an erasure.

<sup>10</sup> *vobis*] nobis, MS.

<sup>11</sup> *recognosci*] Supplied from W. A. C. D.

<sup>12</sup> *recognitum*] recongnitum, MS.

<sup>13</sup> *exercere*] exercere, MS., throughout.

. suffraganeos, apostolici mandati et suarum precum jus- A.D. 1170.  
 . tarum transgressores, et super hoc mandatum aposto- punish his  
 . licum plene prosequi. Quod rex vultu screnissimo suffragan  
 . benigne annuit. bishops.

*Papa ad se reversus et pœnitens, favorabiliter  
 sribit beato Thomæ.*

Rog. Wend. *Hiis ita gestis, Thomas, venerabilis Cantuariensis* He writes  
 ii. 356. *archiepiscopus, antequam ad Angliam transfretaret, Ro-* to the pope,  
*mam misit, domino papæ denuncians, quod cum rege* to inform  
*Anglorum pacifice, cognitis causis et modis, convenisset.* him of his  
*Quod cum papa audisset, diu secum revolvit quæ acci-* reconciliation  
*derant, et de suo proprio tempore<sup>1</sup> cœpit gemere et* with the king.  
*dolere; glorificans tamen Deum, literas quæ sequun-*  
*dur<sup>2</sup> consolatorias beato Thomæ transmisit. Quæ, quia*  
*breves et multum operantur ad præsentem materiam,*  
*hic notantur.*

### *Epistola.<sup>3</sup>*

Rog. Wend. “Anxietate cordis et amaritudine premimur, cum angustias, Letter of  
 ii. 356. onera et gravamina, quæ zelo justitiæ et pro libertate ecclesiae the pope to  
 manutencenda, æquo animo et invicta fortitudine tolerasti, ad the abp.  
 memoriam reducimus et meditatione sedula cogitamus. Verum-  
 tamen, ut in te virtutis perfectionem adimpleres, non potuisti  
 frangi adversis, nec a tuæ constantiæ proposito amoveri; tuam  
 super hoc admirandam commendamus virtutem, et tibi super  
 tanta patientia in Domino plurimum congaudemus. Ceterum,  
 quoniam regem Anglorum diutius in patientia et benignitate  
 portavimus,<sup>4</sup> et blandis dulcibusque verbis, et interdum duris  
 et asperis, ut ad se rediret sæpe monuimus, si pacem, quam  
 tecum fecit, executione operis non impleverit, et tibi ac tuis  
 et ecclesiæ tuæ possessiones et honores ablatos<sup>5</sup> non restituerit,  
 tibi plenam auctoritatem concedimus in personas et in loca,  
 quæ ad tuam legationem pertinent,<sup>6</sup> ecclesiasticam justitiam  
 exercere, nullius obstaculo appellationis obstante.”

<sup>1</sup> *proprio tempore*] propriio tempore, MS.

<sup>4</sup> *portavimus*] exspectavimus, edd. Lup. Gil.

<sup>2</sup> *sequuntur*] sequntur, MS.

<sup>5</sup> *ablatos*] oblatos, MS.

<sup>3</sup> Epp. lib. v. 29; ed. Giles, ii. 227, dated “Signini, tertio idus [13th] Octobris.”

<sup>6</sup> *pertinent*] After this word is inserted in edd. of Lupus and Giles, “excepta persona regis, uxoris quoque et filiorum.”

A.D. 1170.  
Archbp.  
Thomas  
arrives in  
England.  
1 Dec.

*De adventu beati Thomæ in Angliam.*

Hac igitur securitate tam a papa quam a rege An- Rog.Wend.  
glorum accepta, in Angliam rediit, valedicens regi. <sup>ii. 356.</sup>  
Francorum et omnibus qui ei pietatis officia exibue-  
rant; et in kalendis Decembris ad portum applicuit Rog.Wend.  
Sandwicensem. Qui statim, ut nihil de contingentibus <sup>ii. 357.</sup>  
omitteret, quibus martirii gloria, quam ardenter sitiebat,  
impediretur, misit literas domini papæ Eboracensi archi-  
episcopo, hæc verba continentes:<sup>1</sup>

Letter of  
the pope,  
suspending  
the abp. of  
York.

"Cum filium suum rex vester<sup>2</sup> coronari voluerit, contempto  
Thoma, Cantuariensi archiepiscopo, ad cuius officium de anti-  
quo jure dinoscitur pertinere, per manum tuam, frater archi-  
episcopo, in aliena provincia diadema regni ei fecit imponi.  
In coronatione vero illius nulla ex more de conservanda eccle-  
siæ libertate cautio juratoria est praestita, nec, sicut aiunt, a  
vobis exacta; sed potius juramento asseritur confirmatum, ut  
regni consuetudines iniquæ,<sup>3</sup> sub quibus dignitas periclitatur  
ecclesiæ, illibatae<sup>4</sup> debuerant<sup>5</sup> omni tempore conservari. In  
quo etsi multum prænominati regis vehementia nos conturbat,  
amplius tamen de vestra et aliorum coepiscoporum vestrorum  
possumus<sup>6</sup> infirmitate moveri. Qui, quod dolentes dicimus,  
"facti sicut arietes non habentes cornua, abiistis<sup>7</sup> absque  
fortitudine ante faciem subsequentis"<sup>8</sup> fugientes.<sup>9</sup> Et si forte  
hoc liceret<sup>10</sup> tibi, frater archiepiscopo, in propria potuisse<sup>11</sup>  
provincia, quomodo tamen in aliena, et illius præcipue, qui  
exulare pro justitia et solus exire voluit, et dare gloriam Deo,  
tibi licuerit, nec de ratione possumus nec de sanctorum patrum  
constitutionibus invenire. Unde et post tam iniquas consuetu-  
dines juramento firmatas, nec<sup>12</sup> adjecisti sumere scutum fidei, Rog.Wend.  
ut starestis pro domo Domini in die prælia, ne, si diutius ta- <sup>ii. 358.</sup>  
enerimus, una vobis in die judicii dampnationis sententia

<sup>1</sup> Abridged from Epp. lib. v. 67; ed. Giles, ii. 249; dated "Ferentini, decimo sexto cal. Octobris" [16 Sept.]

<sup>2</sup> *vester*] noster, MS. and W.A. C.D.F.

<sup>3</sup> *iniquæ*] iniquas, MS. and W.A. C.D.F. Omitted in Diceto, col. 553, and edd. Lup. Gil.

<sup>4</sup> *illabatae*] illibatas, Lup. Gil.

<sup>5</sup> *debuerant*] debeant, W.A.C.D.; debeat, Lup. Gil.

<sup>6</sup> *possumus*] possimus, MS. and F.

<sup>7</sup> *abiistis*] abistis, MS.

<sup>8</sup> Lament. i. 6.

<sup>9</sup> *fugientes*] Added in marg.

<sup>10</sup> *liceret*] licere, W.A. see. m., C.

D.; Dic. Lup. Gil.

<sup>11</sup> *potuisse*] potuisset, W.A.C.D., Dic. Lup. Gil.

<sup>12</sup> *nec*] non, W.A.C.D., Dic.

Lup. Gil.

involvamur, auctoritate sacrosanctæ Romanæ ecclesiæ, cui A.D. 1170. auctore Deo ministramus, ab omni vos officio episcopalis suspenderimus dignitatis.”

Rog. Wend. Item sane Thomas, Cantuariensis archiepiscopus, per  
ii. 358. alias domini papæ literas episcopos Londoniensem, Sa-  
resbiriensem, Exoniensem, Cestrensem, Rofensem, de  
Sancto Asaph et Landavensem, eum aliis, qui præfatae  
coronationi ministerium præbuerunt, ab omni episcopali  
dignitate per has literas subscriptas suspendit.

*Item, epistola ultrix injuriarum.<sup>1</sup>*

Rog. Wend. “ Quæ causa venerabilem fratrem nostrum Thomam, Can- Letter of  
ii. 358. tuariensem archiepiscopum et sedis apostolicæ legatum, a sua the pope,  
sede exulare compulerit, non oportet præsentibus annotare, suspending  
quoniam et vos præsentialiter aspexistis, et id per totam fere the bi-  
occidentalem ecclesiam fama celebris divulgavit. Cum autem  
piæ memoriae Theobaldus, prædecessor hujus archiepiscopi,  
Anglorum regi coronam imposuerit, ac per hoc Cantuariensis  
ecclesia quasi possessionem hujus dignitatis habuerit,<sup>2</sup> vos<sup>3</sup>  
nunc novi regis coronationi, archiepiscopo non præmunito, in  
ejus provincia ministerium præbere, literis apostolicis id pro-  
hibentibus, præsumpsistis; et qui relevare ipsius exilium quali-  
buscunque solatiis debuistis, aggravastis potius causam ejus,  
et super dolorem vulnerum suorum,<sup>4</sup> quod mœrentes dicimus,  
addidistis. In quo facto, si contra personas vestras non quant-  
um culpa exigit moveamur, pertransire tamen hoc sub silentio  
non debemus, ne forte, quod Dominus avertat, et nos et vos  
sententia divinæ feriat<sup>5</sup> severitatis, si ea, quæ<sup>6</sup> in oculis om-  
nium perperam acta suut, neglexerimus vindicare. Noveritis

Rog. Wend. itaque vos tamdiu ab episcopali officio, commissa nobis, Deo  
ii. 359. auctore, potestate,<sup>7</sup> suspensos, donec ad scdem apostolicam de-  
tanto excessu satisfacturi accedatis, nisi præfato archiepiscopo  
ita satisfacere curaveritis, ut poenam istam ipso judicet relax-  
andam.”

<sup>1</sup> Abridged from Epp. lib. v. 68; ed. Giles, ii. 273; dated, “Tusculi, octavo cal. Decembris” [24 Nov.].

<sup>5</sup> *feriat*] addicat, W. A. C. D., Lup. Gil.

<sup>2</sup> *habuerit*] haberet, edd. Lup. Gil.

<sup>6</sup> *quæ*] Added to the text.

<sup>3</sup> *vos*] nos, MS.

<sup>7</sup> *potestate*] Added in marg., and so F. No doubt the reading should be, *a Deo auctoritate*, as in W. A. C. D., Lup. Gil.

<sup>4</sup> *suorum*] ejus, W.A.C.D.; ipsius, Lup. Gil.

A.D. 1170. *Ministri regis beato Thomæ præceperunt, ut episcopos excommunicatos absolveret.*

The abb.  
comes to  
London,  
and is re-  
ceived  
joyfully.

He pro-  
ceeds  
towards  
Harrow,  
and is  
ordered by  
the king's  
officers to  
absolve the  
persons  
excommu-  
nicated.

He con-  
sents to do  
so, on cer-  
tain con-  
ditions.

Postquam autem Thomas, venerabilis Cantuariensis archiepiscopus, ad ecclesiam suam cum magna cleri et populi devotione susceptus pervenit, et cito post Londoniarum civitatem, locum scilicet nativitatis, adiit. laetabundus; ubi occurrerunt venienti cleris, cives et omnis populus, clamantes et dicentes, "Benedictus, qui venit in nomine Domini."<sup>1</sup> In classico autem<sup>2</sup> campanarum et revestitorum festive processionibus receptus, benedixit civitati et omnibus eam promoventibus, et in suis libertatibus et prosperitatibus custodientibus. In mensa autem splendidissima tot xeniorum numerositate respectus est, quod tedium poterant generare. Unde per aliquot dies ibidem, convocatis urbis prælatis et civibus convivis, epulabatur cum gaudio post suorum dolorum diuturnitatem. Et cum inde versus Harewes, manerium suum, quod a Londoniis circiter xiii. distat miliaribus, versus Sanctum Albanum, quem adire causa venerationis et orationis proposuerat, progrederetur, ecce regis officiales cum magno strepitu denunciaverunt ei ex parte regis utriusque, ut suspensos et excommunicatos absolveret; acerbis verbis eum increpantes, quod in primo adventu suo tam enormiter in regum infamiam regnum jamjam perturbasset, et ipsos, qui desiderium et honorem regium compleverunt, tam odiosc. persequeretur. Quod totum in regum injuriam redundabat, et eversionem consuetudinum regni. Archiepiscopus autem, hiis auditis, perturbatus, demissa voce collateralibus suis dixit, "Talia sunt gaudia hujus mundi. Omnia suspecta, et mœroribus miscentur universa." Et conversus ad regales nuncios, respondit, quod si ipsi excommunicati jurare vellent in forma ecclesiæ, se mandato domini papæ parituros, ipse pro

<sup>1</sup> Matth. xxi. 9.

<sup>2</sup> autem] On an erasure.

Cf. Rog.  
Wend. ii.  
359.  
fol. 61 a.

pace ecclesiæ et ipsorum dominorum suorum regum A.D. 1170. eos absolveret. Quod cum episcopis relatum fuisse, responderunt, juramentum hujusmodi, nisi ex voluntate regis, se non debere præstare. Et cum manerio, ubi hospitaturus fuit, appropinquaret, advenerunt ei Messengers from the obviam junioris regis nuncii, quasi equis rapti velocibus, interdicentes ex parte ejus, ne ultra procederet, vel are sent to him, to per regnum ulterius cum superbia sua vagaretur. At stop his ipse, cum talia de alumpno suo audiret, gravius turbabatur, et ait, "Propositum habui ipsum visere apud Wudestoc, ut audivi, commorantem, et in crastino per Sanctum Albanum indistanter<sup>1</sup> transiturus, iter matutare. Novit enim, qui nihil ignorat, quod desiderio ipsius faciem videre desiderans, diligo ipsum totis visceribus caritatis et amplector." At illi torvo vultu responderunt, "Quare ergo ipsum et patrem suum persequeris? Durum est tibi contra stimulum<sup>2</sup> calcitrare."<sup>3</sup> At ipse nolens objurgari, factus est sicut homo non audiens, et non habens in ore suo redargutiones. Et cum tumultuose cum minis denunciarent ei, ut non progrediens<sup>4</sup> nisi ad illud manerium suum, quo jam pervenerat hospitaturus, obtemperavit archiepiscopus, sciens in spiritu quod non venerat hora ejus.

*. De obsequio humanitatis quod ei impendit Symon,  
abbas Sancti Albani.*

Moram autem faciens ibidem archiepiscopus aliquot diebus, festum faciebat, ut moris est,<sup>5</sup> de hiis eulogiis quæ "O sapientia"<sup>6</sup> cum sequentibus nuncupantur, nec ullam faciem turbidam ostendit ipse athleta<sup>7</sup> Dei invictissimus, licet in spiritu daretur ei mortem suam nosse appropinquare. Cum igitur ei abbas Sancti The abbat

<sup>1</sup> *indistanter*] indistenter, MS.

<sup>2</sup> *stimulum*] stumulum, MS.

<sup>3</sup> Act. ix. 5.

<sup>4</sup> *progrediens*] So also F.

<sup>5</sup> *est*] On an erasure.

<sup>6</sup> The introit of the anthem for 10 Dec. Hampson, "Med. Ævi Calend.," ii. 350.

<sup>7</sup> *athleta*] adletha, MS. and F.

A.D. 1170. Albani, Symon nomine, in esculentis et poculentis no-  
of St. Al-  
ban's visits  
him.  
The abbat  
goes to the  
young  
king, on  
behalf of  
the abp.,  
but in vain.  
bile xenium transmisisset, et ipse, ut ipsum archiepi- .  
scopum visitaret, sequebatur, regratians archiepiscopus .  
ait nunciis satis civiliter, “Accepto utique ejus præ- .  
sentias, sed ejus præsentiam plus acceptarem.” Cui .  
unus de nunciis abbatis, “Domine, ecce appetet veni- .  
ens in foribus.” Cui occurrit venienti archiepiscopus .  
usque ostium, et dans ei osculum, regratiabatur ei, .  
jocose loquens de ejus adventu, quem vocavit præsen- .  
tiam, et de xenio suo, quod præsentiam vulgariter lo- .  
quendo vocavit. Quod Gallice civilius sonat, scilicet .  
sic, “*De sun present, e sa presence.*” Et post multas .  
simul habitas collocutiones,<sup>1</sup> petiti archiepiscopus ipsum .  
abbatem, quatinus caritatis intuitu iret ex parte ejus .  
ad juvenem regem, admonitus eum dulcibus, qui- .  
bus abundavit,<sup>2</sup> ac efficacibus sermocinationibus, ut .  
rigorem et rancore in conceptum mitigaret. Obtempe- .  
rans igitur abbas, ipsum regem adiit festinanter; sed .  
cum nihil nisi superbiam et indignationem cum am- .  
pulosis verbis et juramentis irrecitabilibus inveniret, .  
rediit infecto negotio. Quæ cum cuncta rediens archi- .  
episcopo renunciaret, vultu demisso ac tristi respondit .  
archiepiscopus suspirans, “Sine modo, sine;” et movens .  
caput addidit, “Siccine, siccine adesse festinant tempora .  
consummationis?” Et quasi propheticō spiritu edoctus .  
subjunxit, “Non diu durabit ludus, sed illusio ista.” .  
Abbas autem tunc non intellexit verbum, sed postea, .  
scilicet infra<sup>3</sup> septimanam, omnia luce clarius patuerunt. .  
Et intuens ipsum abbatem oculo piissimo et fere lacri- .  
manti, ait, “Domine abbas, grates tibi refero aduberis .  
de labore tuo, licet inutili. Non stat per te, quin .  
mitigaretur adolescens ille.

“Non est in medico semper relevetur ut æger, .  
Interdum valida plus valet arte malum.”<sup>4</sup> .

<sup>1</sup> *habitas collocutiones*] Partly on  
an erasure.

<sup>2</sup> *abundavit*] habundavit, MS.

<sup>3</sup> *infra*] imfra, MS. throughout.

<sup>4</sup> Ovid. Epp. ex Ponto, lib. I. iii.  
17., but where we read *docta* for  
*valida*.

. Et subjunxit, "Sed et ipse sine dilatione portabit ju-  
. dicium, et præcidetur velut a texente vita sua."<sup>1</sup> Et  
. respiciens clericos suos circumsedentes, addidit dicens, The abp.  
. "Ecce, amici mei, quid contigit. Plus mihi fecit nunc <sup>praises the</sup>  
. obsequii et honoris iste abbas, qui in nullo mihi<sup>2</sup> tene- <sup>liberality</sup>  
fol. 61 b. tur ascriptus, quam omnes confratres et suffraganei <sup>of the</sup>  
. mei episcopi." Præceperat enim abbas recedens ab  
. archiepiscopo, quando apud Wudestoc iter arripuit,  
. cellarario suo, ut cotidie ipsum archiepiscopum, qui  
. prope erat, munifice visitaret. Unde ipse archiepiscopus  
. in calce sermonis addidit. "Primum quem habui hono-  
. rem mihi contulit beatus Angliæ prothomartir Albanus,  
. et ultimum." Et hoc dicebat gratissimus ille archi-  
. præsul pro ecclesia de Brantefeld, illi adhuc pauperi ac  
. juveni collata per abbatem Sancti Albani, et pro honore  
. illi apud Harewes,<sup>3</sup> ut dictum est, collato. Cum igitur <sup>The abbat</sup>  
. abbas domum redditurus peteret archiepiscopum obnoxius, <sup>invites him</sup>  
. junctis manibus, ut dignaretur caritatis intuitu domum <sup>to St. Al-</sup>  
. Sancti Albani ad Natale, quod imminebat,<sup>4</sup> sua deside-  
. ratissima præsentia illustrare, et tenere ibidem festum  
. Christi nati et Angliæ prothomartiris, respondit obortis  
. lacrimis archipræsul, "O quam libenter vellem, sed  
. multo aliter de me divinitus diffinitum est. Wade in  
. pace, pater carissime,<sup>5</sup> vade ad ecclesiam tuam, quam  
. Deus conservet, vado autem ad meam; cito audies  
. meam sufficientem excusationem, quare tecum non  
. venio. Sed tu potius, si fieri potest, mecum veni, ut  
. meus sis conviva, et in tribulationibus, quibus abun-  
. danter<sup>6</sup> opprimor, consolator." Quod cum excusans se  
. sufficienter abbas renuisset, quia oportuit<sup>7</sup> eum sollemp-  
. niis suæ ecclesiæ interesse, dixit archiepiscopus, "Ita, <sup>The abp.</sup>  
. ita times pelli tuæ! Oportet me mortis periculis ex- <sup>returns to</sup>  
. poni."<sup>8</sup> Accepta igitur benedictione, abbas recessit, et <sup>his church</sup>  
. at Canterbury.

<sup>1</sup> Is. xxxviii. 12.<sup>2</sup> *mihi*] *michi*, MS.<sup>3</sup> *Harewes*] *Hareswes*, MS.<sup>4</sup> *imminebat*] *iminebat*, MS.<sup>5</sup> *carissime*] *karissime*, MS.<sup>6</sup> *abundanter*] *habundanter*, MS.<sup>7</sup> *oportuit*] *opportuit*, MS.<sup>8</sup> *exponi*] The last letter is on an erasure.

A.D. 1170. archiepiscopus ad ecclesiam suam iter maturavit. O. quantis lamentis quantisque suspiriis abbas ipse postea. cor suum cruentavit, eo quod non fuit ei desuper concessum<sup>1</sup> in tanti martiris consortio gloriam suscepisse. Archiepiscopus autem Cantuarium reversus, dies Natalios quatuor celebravit; quinto vero, ut supra dicetur, migravit ad Dominum.

*De gloriosa passione beati Thomæ.<sup>2</sup>*

- A.D. 1171. Anno Domini m<sup>o</sup>.c<sup>o</sup>.LXX<sup>o</sup>.1<sup>o</sup>. beatus Thomas, Cantuariensis archiepiscopus, sermonem habiturus ad populum, dic Dominice Nativitatis, quæ vi. feria tunc evenerat, pulpiture ascendit; et, sermone completo, Nigellum de Sackville, ecclesiæ de Herges violentum incubatorem,<sup>3</sup> Robertum quoque de Broc, qui quendam equum ipsius archiepiscopi in ejus contumeliam mutilaverat, sollempniter excommunicavit. Eadem<sup>4</sup> quoque die, sicut in mensa Domini, scilicet in altari, totus juxta suam consuetudinem fuit in lacrimis, ita totum<sup>5</sup> se serenissimum præbuit commensalibus. Et cum apponenter carnes, et renuissent aliqui de ipsa comedere, ipse, apprehensa bucella, comedit, inquiens cum risu modesto, “Quid detestamini carnem propter sextam<sup>6</sup> feriam? Magnum habet caro privilegium. Verbum caro factum hodie prodiit in lucem, et apparuit nobis.” Et jocundus fuit sermo in auribus audientium. Quinta vero die sequenti, circa horam vespertinam, cum archiepiscopus in thalamo cum
- Rog. Wend. ii. 360.
- He excommunicates Nigel de Sackville and Robert de Broc.
- 25 Dec.
- His pleasant discourse at table.
- 29 Dec.

<sup>1</sup> concessum] Added in marg.

<sup>2</sup> In the lower margin are the following verses:—

“Notandum } Annus millenus, een-  
versus de } tenus, septuagenus,  
tempore } Primus erat, primas quo  
mortis ejus. } eadit ense Thomas.”  
In F: they are inserted in the text after the author's lamentation on the results of the young king's coronation, p. 366.

<sup>3</sup> incubatorem] incubitorem, MS.

<sup>4</sup> Eadem] Eeadem, MS.

<sup>5</sup> totum] At first written *totus*.

<sup>6</sup> sextam] quintam, MS., but corr. from F., and so noted by a late hand in the margin. Christmas day fell on Friday, and the archbishop was killed on the Tuesday following. See Gerv. Chron., col. 1418.

clericis suis resideret, Reginaldus dictus *Filius-Ursi*, A.D. 1171. Willelmus de Tracy, Hugo de Morevilla, et Ricardus Four Brito, de Normannia, milites eximii licet flagitiosi, suddenly venientes, tanquam furia invecti subito in thalamum irruperunt, denunciantes ex parte regis, ut episcopos Angliæ suspensos officio suo restitueret, et excommunicatos absolveret. Quibus respondit archiepiscopus, those who "Non est judicis inferioris<sup>1</sup> ut sententiam superioris were excommunicated." Rog. Wend. absolvat, nullique hominum licet infirmare, quod sedes  
ii. 361.

apostolica decrevit statuendum." Attamen, si Londoniensis et Sarisbiriensis episcopi et alii excommunicati suo mandato se parituros jurare vellent, eos pro pace ecclesiæ et domini regis reverentia absolveret. Illi vero ilico ira incandescentes, et scelus nefarium,<sup>2</sup> quod in mente conceperant, ad effectum perducere propellant, cum impetu et minis recesserunt. Archiepiscopus vero, monentibus clericis suis, et hora diei vespertina urgente, in majorem ecclesiam intravit vespertas cantaturus. Quatuor satellites nefandi<sup>3</sup> supradicti, and is armis interim induti militaribus, archiepiscopum e vespertino sunt secuti. Qui cum ad ecclesiam pervenissent, knights. ostia ejus, ut præceperat archiepiscopus, invenerunt aperta. "Neque enim," ut ait, "Christi ecclesiam, quæ cunctis debet esse refugium patens, ordine turbato commutabimus in castellum." Turbis quoque undique confluentibus, præfati *iiii<sup>or.</sup>* milites ecclesiam irreverenter ingressi, clamitare cœperunt, "Ubi est proditor regis? Ubi est proditor regis?" Quibus archiepiscopus a tertio vel quarto gradu presbiterii, quem jam ascenderat, obviam regressus est, dicens, "Si quæritis archiepiscopum, non autem proditorem, ecce me in promptu habetis." Quibus acerba satis proponentibus ac mortem comminantibus, ait, "Ego mori paratus sum pro assertioni veritatis et ecclesiæ libertate. Rogo tamen, ut

<sup>1</sup> *inferioris*] *imferioris*, MS.

<sup>2</sup> *nefurium*] *nepharium*, MS.

<sup>3</sup> *nefandi*] *nephandi*, MS.

A.D. 1171. mei non sint participes<sup>1</sup> poenæ, sicut non fuerunt incentores causæ." Dum autem carnifices strictis in eum insurgerent ensibus, ait, " Deo beatæque Mariæ, sancto quoque Dionisio et hujus ecclesiæ patronis, meipsum et ecclesiæ causam commendo." Percussit igitur sacrum caput ejus primo Reginaldus, abjecto pilleo; consequenter alii, ita ut excerebratus expiraret. Sanctus vero per modum orantis solo procubuit spiritum emitens, qui nec gemitum nec clamorem nec etiam suspirium emisit. Ipsi autem funesti milites cerebrum cum . fol. 62 a. sanguine ejicientes<sup>2</sup> a lacerato capite, sparserunt super pavimentum. Immolatus est itaque ante altare beati Benedicti, de qua immolatione quidam satis eleganter dixit,

Verses on his martyrdom.  
They put him to death.

"Quis moritur? præsul. Cur? pro grege. Qualiter?  
ense.  
Quando? Natali. Quis locus? ara Dei."

*Argumenta sanctitatis beati Thomæ tunc demum apparuerunt.<sup>3</sup>*

The assassins take away the household goods of the abp. and his clerks.  
Practice of the abp. to wear hair-cloth.

Translato autem ad cœlestia beato martire Thoma, Rog. Wend. lictores cum suis complicibus omnem<sup>4</sup> suppellectilem ii. 362. martiris, et clericorum ejus vestes et lectisternia et utensilia, penitus rapuerunt. Corpus autem sanctissimum, quod in ecclesiæ decubuit pavimento, ante majus altare est sub ipsis diei crepusculo deportatum; ubi, quod prius ad notitiam solius cubicularii devenerat, astantibus tunc cunctis venit in lucem. Licet enim archiepiscopus habitum monachilem, quem a tempore suæ promotionis occulte portaverat, habitu canonicali suppressisset, carnem tamen cilicio attritam cum femoribus cilicinis, quod fuerat inauditum, carnem curaverat edomare.

<sup>1</sup> *participes*] partipes, MS.

<sup>2</sup> *ejicientes*] cientes, MS.

<sup>3</sup> This rubric is written over an erasure.

<sup>4</sup> *omnem*] Added in marg.

*De præsagio diei Martis, quo omnia passus est.<sup>1</sup>* A.D. 1171.

Rog.Wend. Et, ut aliqua breviter perstringamus quæ concur- Presage of  
ii. 362. runt, idem archiepiscopus, nescitur quo præsagio, vel Tuesday, as exemplified  
potius Dei providentia, die Martis, cui, secundum phi- in his life.  
losophos, bellum attribuitur, natus fuit, scilicet, die  
sancti Thomæ apostoli, quapropter sic nominatus est;<sup>2</sup>  
die Martis idem apud Norhamtonam a curia regis re-  
cessit, multis injuriis laceratus; die Martis recessit ab  
Anglia exilium subiturus; die Martis, præcepto domini  
papæ, revertens in Angliam est appulsus; die Martis  
audivit hanc vocem, "Thoma, Thoma, in sanguine tuo  
glorificabitur ecclesia mea;" die quoque Martis mar-  
tirio consummatus est; die quoque Martis<sup>3</sup> translatus  
est, sicut supra loco suo dicetur.

*De dedecore facto ipsi corpori.*

Rog.Wend. Sequenti vero dic, videlicet Mercurii, summo diluculo<sup>4</sup> Rumours  
ii. 362. rumor increbuit, quod nefandi<sup>5</sup> carnifices corpus archi- respecting indignities  
Rog.Wend. episcopi abstrahere ab ecclesia<sup>6</sup> condixerant, et extra to be offered to  
ii. 363. muros civitatis illud projicere<sup>7</sup> avibus et canibus dis- his corpse, which is  
cerpendum; sed abbas de Boxsleia, cum priore et con- buried by  
ventu ecclesiæ Cantuariensis, illud marturiori tradentes<sup>8</sup> the abbat of Boxley.  
sepulturæ, nec abluendum illud fore judicabant, quod Notable  
sanguis martirii purpurabat. In quo, inquam, martirio facts in  
multa notabilia concurrebant. Primo, quod passus est regard to  
pro assertione justitiæ et ecclesiæ libertate; secundo, his mar-  
quod in ecclesia non qualicunque sed in illa, quæ mater tyrdom.

<sup>1</sup> In F., instead of this chapter, one of a similar character is inserted from *A. marg.* and C., under the year 1169 (ed. Wats., p. 116).

<sup>2</sup> *scilicet . . . est]* Added in marg.

<sup>3</sup> *Martis]* Added in marg.

<sup>4</sup> *diluculo]* *diliculo*, MS.

<sup>5</sup> *nefandi]* *nephandi*, MS.

<sup>6</sup> *archiepiscopi . . . ecclesia]* Partly on an erasure.

<sup>7</sup> *projicere]* *proicere*, MS.

<sup>8</sup> *tradentes]* So read W. A. C. D. F., but the Edd. and ed. Wend. alter it to *tradiderunt*.

A.D. 1171. est omnium ecclesiarum gentis Anglicanæ ; tertio, quod quod non in quolibet tempore, sed in diebus Nataliciis, in quibus homicidæ rei lesæ majestatis habent<sup>1</sup> pacem et gaudium ;<sup>2</sup> quarto, quod non simplicem sacerdotem peremerunt, sed utique talem, qui in regno Angliæ erat summus in populo et pater omnium sacerdotum ; quinto, quod non passus est in quovis membro, sed in eo corporis loco, quo tonsuram acceperat, et quem sacri perfusio olei Domino consecravit.

*Exclamatio de tam lugubri casu.*

O infelix, O temeraria, O injuriosa, O superba regis junioris a te facta, Rogere Eboracensis,<sup>3</sup> coronatio ! . quam sequebatur totius regni scisma ac imminens<sup>4</sup> . perturbatio, prælatorum excommunicatio, summi pontificis amaricatio, archipræsulis occisio, ecclesiæ Cantuariensis anathematisatio ;<sup>5</sup> immatura tam juvenis tam elegantis novi regis mors ultrix manifesta, regis patris incomparabilis per universum orbem scandalum probrosum<sup>6</sup> et dedecus indelebile; militum perpetua exheredatio, perennis<sup>7</sup> in paupertate et exilio lugubris ac miseranda deportatio.<sup>8</sup> Qui, inquam, milites iiii<sup>or.</sup> omnes infra iiii<sup>or.</sup> annos, quicquid fingant girivagi, diem clauerunt extreum.

*De pœnitentia regis H[enrici] II. gravissima.*

Rex autem Anglorum Henricus II. tunc temporis in Rog. Wend. Normannia morabatur apud Argentomium, quando rumor iste<sup>9</sup> medullam cordis sui penetravit. Qui in primis

<sup>1</sup> *habent*] At first written *habentur*, as in W. A. C. D.

<sup>2</sup> *pacem et gaudium*] Added in marg., and so F., but not in the other MSS.

<sup>3</sup> *Eboracensis*] Eboracense, MS.

<sup>4</sup> *iminens*] iminens, MS.

<sup>5</sup> *anathematisatio*] Originally written *anathemaco*, and *ci* afterwards inserted before *co*. Corr.

from F. Du Cange, however, has admitted *anathematio* as a recognized form.

<sup>6</sup> *scandalum probrosum*] On an erasure.

<sup>7</sup> *perennis*] perhennis, MS.

<sup>8</sup> *ac miseranda deportatio*] Added in marg.

<sup>9</sup> *iste*] On an erasure.

ad omnia lamentorum genera se convertens, regiam A.D. 1171.  
majestatem prorsus in cinerem, cilicum et jejunium  
commutavit, omnipotentem Deum testem invocans, quod  
hoc opus nefarium<sup>1</sup> nec sua voluntate vel conscientia  
commissum est, nec suo artificio perquisitum; nisi forte  
ex hoc reus sit, quod archiepiscopum minus diligere  
. videbatur, et inconsulta verba, quæ solet ira fervens  
. elicere, properanter proferre, sed non quæ deberent ali-  
. quem sani capitis ad sanguinis effusionem provocare.  
. Sedit interim in camera, in<sup>2</sup> tenebris et silentio, sus-  
. pensis cum sigillo omnibus regiæ curiæ negotiis; et  
. renuens consolationem, cibum non accepit biduo vel  
. potius triduo, præter lac amigdalarum. Super hoc  
autem inopinato infortunio se judicio ecclesiæ prorsus  
exposuit, et humiliter se suscepturum quicquid in eum  
fieret<sup>3</sup> statuendum, salubriter repromisit.<sup>4</sup>

*Mittuntur nuncii ad summum pontificem.*

Rog. Wend. Misit igitur rex nuncios ad summum pontificem, The king  
ii. 364. qui eum excusarent, et ejus innocentiam allegarent; sends mes-  
sengers to  
quos dominus papa nec videre voluit, nec ad pedum the pope.  
saltem oscula admittere dignabatur. Sed nuncios, qui  
secundo missi fuerunt, aliqui cardinalium suscepserunt,  
sed verbis tantum. Instante tandem quinta feria ante  
Pascha, in qua de consuetudine Romanæ ecclesiæ solet  
papa publice prædicare,<sup>5</sup> vel absolvere vel excommuni-  
care, quibusdam papæ silentiariis ad aures nunciorum  
perferentibus devenit, quod papa eadem die decreverat The pope  
in regem Angliæ nominatim, et in omnibus terris suis, contem-  
fol. 62b. de communi fratrum suorum consilio, interdicti ferre plates a sentence of  
interdict.

<sup>1</sup> *nefarium*] *nepharium*, MS.

<sup>2</sup> in] On an erasure.

<sup>3</sup> fieret] So also W. pr. m., A. C. D. F. I.; foret, W. sec. m.

<sup>4</sup> *repromisit*] At first written *com-promisit*, as in W. A. C. D.

<sup>5</sup> *prædicare*] Added in marg., but not in W. A. C. D.

A.D. 1171. sententiam, et eam, quæ lata fuerat in archiepiscopum Eboracensem<sup>1</sup> et alios Angliæ episcopos, confirmare. Sicque nuncii regis in arcto positi, quibusdam cardinalibus domino papæ suggesteribus quod iidem nuncii a rege Anglorum acceperant in mandatis, ut jurarent regem Anglorum ejus et cardinalium judicio statutum et per omnia paritum; sicut igitur nuncii petierunt, juraverunt, et sic interdicti sententiam declinaverunt. Nuncii vero Eboracensis archiepiscopi et aliorum episcoporum Angliæ idem fecerunt. Eadem tamen die dominus papa excommunicavit sceleratissimos interfectores beati Thomæ, Cantuariensis archiepiscopi et martiris, et omnes qui consilium, auxilium vel consensum præbuerunt, et omnes qui eos in terra sua reciperent aut foverent. Ipsi tamen, licet vagi et sanæ mentis egentes, regnum per plures menses pervagantes, receptaculum invenerunt in borealibus Angliæ partibus ab hiis, qui rei veritatem non noverunt, et apud Knareburgum<sup>2</sup> annum morando in dolore et timore compleverunt. Deinde tum regio præcepto,<sup>3</sup> tum conscientiæ stimulo, tum omnium compatriotarum detestatione compellente, sub jugo poenitentiae in laneis et nudis pedibus, in jejuniis et orationibus Terram Sanctam petierunt, et sanctorum suffragia pro expiacione peccatorum suorum flagitabant. Omnes vero infra paucos annos pro vita asperitate dissueta obierunt.

*Quomodo Deus pro beato Thoma martire miracula celebraverit.*

Miracles performed at the archbishop's tomb. Eodem quoque anno, circa Paschalem sollempnitatem, Rog. Wend. Dominus noster Jesus Christus, qui in sanctis suis semper est et ubique mirabilis, gloriosissimi martiris sui Thomæ, Cantuariensis archiepiscopi, vitam lauda-

ii. 365.

<sup>1</sup> *Eboracensem*] Eborancem, MS.

<sup>3</sup> *præcepto*] precep, MS.

<sup>2</sup> *Knareburgum*] Cuaresbure, W.

A. C. D.

bilem et insuperabilem in mortis eminentia constantiam A.D. 1171. crebris miraculorum signis cœpit irradiare; ut qui protuenda libertate periclitantis ecclesiæ suam suorumque proscriptionem tot annis sustinuit patienter, dignum pro meritis cognoscatur<sup>1</sup> ab omnibus reportasse triumphum. De sepulchro vero martiris gloriosi nullus in fide accedens recedit vacuus, quacunque sit infirmitate gravatus. Nam restituitur ibi claudis gressus, surdis auditus, cæcis visus, loquela mutis, sanitas leprosis, vita mortuis; et non solum utriusque sexus homines, verum etiam aves et animalia de infirmitate ad sanitatem, et a morte ad vitam restaurantur. Hoc quoque anno Dedicatione Hugo, episcopus Dunelmensis, dedicavit capellam sancti Cuthberti, quæ est juxta claustrum Sancti Albani, in honore sancti ejusdem, scilicet Cuthberti, et sancti Johannis Baptistæ, xvi. kalendas Junii, Simone tunc abbate.<sup>2</sup>

*Rex Henricus rediit in Angliam.*

Rog. Wend. Eodem quoque anno rex Anglorum Henricus viii<sup>o</sup>. The king returns to  
ii. 365. idus Augusti in Angliam rediens, visitavit Henricum, England, Wintoniensem episcopum, jam in extremis agentem. and visits Qui eum<sup>3</sup> pro morte Thomæ martiris ipsum durissime the bp. of et dirissime increpans, eum,<sup>4</sup> quasi spiritu propheticō, Win- multa adversa sine dilatione prædixit passurum. Et chester. hæc<sup>5</sup> cum ultima verba protulisset episcopus dierum 6 Aug. plenus, vi<sup>o</sup>.<sup>6</sup> idus Augusti migravit ad Dominum. 8 Aug.

*Rex Henricus Hiberniam ingressus, a quibusdam regulis ibidem homagium suscepit.*

Rog. Wend. Per idem tempus rex Anglorum Henricus xv<sup>o</sup>. ka- Henry  
ii. 365. lendas Novembbris hostiliter Hyberniam intravit; ubi invades Ireland. 18 Oct.

<sup>1</sup> cognoscatur] cognoscatur, MS.

<sup>2</sup> Hoc quoque . . . abbate] Added in marg. Omitted in F.

<sup>3</sup> eum] cum, MS.

<sup>4</sup> cum] ipsum, W. A. C. D.

<sup>5</sup> hæc] Interlined.

<sup>6</sup> vi<sup>o</sup>.] So W. A. C. D. I. and Diceto, col. 557; but the Edd. and ed. Wend. have octavo, which is wrong.

A.D. 1171. archiepiscopi [et]<sup>1</sup> episcopi ipsum in regem et dominum Rog. Wend.  
 He is received as alacriter suscepérunt, et eidem fidelitatem juraverunt. ii. 366.  
 chief monarch, but Regulus de Limelye, regulus de Chore, et regulus qui  
 Roderic, Monoculus dicebatur, ei homagium juraverunt. Rode-  
 king of ricus autem, regulus de Commat,<sup>2</sup> quia regio quam in-  
 Connaught, habitat inaccessibilis est, nemorosa et palustris, carens  
 refuses to do homage. vallis et pontibus, sibi tuta habetur, regi occurrere  
 supersedit.

*Eboracensis<sup>3</sup> [archiepiscopus]<sup>4</sup> purgatur et absolvitur.*

6 Dec. Anno quoque sub eodem, in festo sancti Nicholai, Rog. Wend.  
 The abp. apud Albemarliam, Rogerus, Eboracensis archiepiscopus, ii. 366.  
 of York obtains ab- præstito juramento, quod ante coronationem novi regis .  
 solution. literas prohibitionis a papa nequaquam suscepérat, et  
 quod se regi de consuetudinibus observandis non obli- .  
 gaverat, quodque mortem Thomæ, gloriosi martiris, nec .  
 verbo, nec scripto, nec facto scienter procuraverat, ad  
 officii sui absolutus restituitur plenitudinem.

*De reconciliatione Cantuariensis ecclesice, post mortem  
 beati Thomæ.*

Reconcilia- Sub illius quoque anni curriculo, post mortem beati Rog. Wend.  
 tion of the Thomæ martiris, anno tamen fere integro, ecclesia Can- ii. 366.  
 church of tuariensis a divinis cessans obsequiis, continuis per-  
 Canterbury. stitit in lamentis. Subversum est autem ecclesiæ pav-  
 mentum, sonus campanarum est suspensus, nudati sunt  
 parietes ornamenti; et sic in silentio, et quasi in cinere  
 et cilicio, exequias in tristitia et mœrore persolvit. Sed  
 tandem, ad matris suæ Dorobernensis ecclesiæ vocatio-  
 21 Dec. nem, in festo sancti Thomæ apostoli suffraganei con-  
 venerunt episcopi, ut ecclesiam longa suspensione con-

<sup>1</sup> el] Supplied from W. A. C. D.

<sup>2</sup> Commat] Comnat, W. A. C. D.

<sup>3</sup> Eboracensis] Eborañtis, MS.

<sup>4</sup> archiepiscopus] Supplied from

F.

sternatam, juxta mandatum<sup>1</sup> domini papæ, in statum A.D. 1171. pristinum reformarent. Bartholomæus igitur, Exoniensis episcopus, ad petitionem conventus missam celebra-  
Rog. Wend. ii. 367. braturus solempnem, et sermonem ad populum habi-  
the bishop of Exeter.  
turus, sic exorsus est : "Secundum multitudinem dolorum meorum, consolationes tuæ lœticaverunt animam meam, Deus."<sup>2</sup>

*De tonitruo generalissimo et terribili.*

Rog. Wend. Anno Domini M<sup>o</sup>.C<sup>o</sup>.LXX<sup>o</sup>.II<sup>o</sup>., in nocte Natalis Domini, A.D. 1172.  
ii. 367. tonitrua audita sunt generalia, in Anglia scilicet, Hibernia et Gallia, qualia non se meminit quis audisse. Unusual thunderstorms at Christmas.

*Junior rex cœpit recalcitrare contra patrem.*

Rog. Wend. Eodem tempore, rege Anglorum moram faciente in The young  
ii. 367. Hybernia, Hugo de Seinte-more et Radulphus de Fesne,<sup>3</sup> king is  
persuaded avunculus Alienoræ reginæ, consilio, ut dicitur, ipsius to take  
fol. 63 a. reginæ, regis Henrici junioris cœperunt avertere cor<sup>4</sup> a part  
patre suo, asserentes, magnum fore dedecus nomen regis father.  
habere sine re et<sup>5</sup> dominatione, ut dici possit, "Stat  
magni nominis umbra."<sup>6</sup> Sed rex pater, antequam ab  
Hibernia rediret, apud Lissenor<sup>7</sup> concilium congreg- English laws esta-  
gavit, ubi leges Angliæ ab omnibus sunt grataanter blished in  
acceptæ, et juratoria cautione præstita confirmatæ. Ireland.  
Urbes et<sup>8</sup> castella, quæ rex receperat in sua, sub fideli  
custodia deputavit. Et quoniam varia ipsum trahebant  
negotia, in die Paschæ sub ipsius diei crepusculo navem 16 Apr.  
ascendens, in crastino applicuit in Walliam. Et inde Henry  
Porecestriam<sup>9</sup> veniens, navigatione felici in Norman- crosses to  
Wales, and  
Rog. Wend. niam est transvectus. Et confestim ad cardinales a thence  
ii. 368. goes to

<sup>1</sup> mandatum] On an erasure.

<sup>2</sup> Ps. xciii. 19.

<sup>3</sup> Fesne] Faie, W. A. C. D., and so Diceto.

<sup>4</sup> cor] Written above the line.

<sup>5</sup> re et] Added on to the text.

<sup>6</sup> Lucan, Phars., i. 135.

<sup>7</sup> Lissenor] Lissenor, MS.

<sup>8</sup> Urbes et] videlicet, MS. and F. Corr. from W. A. C. D.

<sup>9</sup> Porecestriam] Porescestriam, MS.

A.D. 1172. papa missos, Albertum et Theodinum, accedens, post Porchester longos tractatus, in præsentia eorumdem legatorum hanc and Normandy, to fecit sui purgationem.  
meet the papal legates.

*De purgatione et satisfactione regis Henrici de morte sancti Thomæ.*

Terms of  
the king's  
purgation  
from the  
crime of  
Becket's  
death.

Primo igitur juravit, mortem Thomæ nec voluntate sua vel conscientia perpetratam fuisse, nec suo artificio perquisitam. Sed quoniam malefactores ex verbis, quæ ipse<sup>1</sup> rex iracundiæ calore succensus minus caute protulit, quod videlicet nequissimos commilitones educaverat, qui ipsum in proditorem suum archiepiscopum noluerunt vindicare, occasionem virum Dei sumpserant perimendi, rex cum summa humilitate absolutionem postulans impetravit. Promisit igitur rex, ad mandatum legatorum, quod tantum daret de pecunia sua, unde ducenti milites ad defensionem Terræ Sanctæ possent per annum sustentari. Promisit insuper, quod permetteret deinceps libere appellationes fieri; et quod consuetudines, quæ suis erant introductæ temporibus contra libertates ecclesiæ, in irritum revocaret; et quod possessiones Cantuariensis ecclesiæ, quæ post recessum archiepiscopi ablatae fuerant, in integrum redderentur. Promisit præterea, quod clericis et laicis utriusque sexus, qui pro beato martire de regno exierant, cum pace sua bona recipere universa, et libere redire licebit. Et hoc totum promittere et jurare ac facere, ex parte domini papæ regi injunctum est, in remissionem omnium peccatorum.

*Rex juvenis idem juravit.*

The young  
king  
swears to  
the same  
terms.  
21 Aug.

Rex vero juvenis, quicquid rex pater juraverat et promiserat, juravit et promisit. Et, hiis ita gestis, rex juvenis cum sponsa sua Margareta, mense Augusti in Angliam transfretavit; et xii<sup>o</sup>. kalendas Septembris

Rog.Wend.  
ii. 368.

Rog.Wend.  
ii. 369.

<sup>1</sup> quæ ipse] On an erasure.

apud Wintoniam præfatam Margaretam Rotrodus, Ro- A.D. 1172.  
thomagensis archiepiscopus, in reginam Angliæ, minis- Margaret,  
trantibus sibi suffraganeis Cantuariensis ecclesiæ, con- his queen,  
secravit, vel coronavit.<sup>1</sup> is crowned  
at Win-  
chester.

*Gilebertus, Londoniensis episcopus, absolvitur.*

Rog.Wend. Eodemque anno Gilebertus, Londoniensis episcopus, Gilbert,  
ii. 369. . beati Thomæ indefessus persecutor, præstito juramento, bp. of  
quod mortem beati Thomæ nec verbo, nec facto, nec absolved.  
scripto scienter procuravit, suo est officio restitutus.

*Johannes, filius regis, uxorem duxit.*

Rog.Wend. Anno Domini M<sup>o</sup>.C<sup>o</sup>.LXX<sup>o</sup>.III<sup>o</sup>. rex Anglorum Henricus A.D. 1173.  
ii. 369. Johanni filio suo, cognomento<sup>2</sup> Sine-terra, vix adhuc Prince  
septenni,<sup>3</sup> filiam Huberti, comitis de Moriana, primo- John be-  
genitam, quam ex relicta Henrici, ducis Saxonie, sus- trothed to  
tulerat, in sponsam dedit.<sup>4</sup> the daughter of the  
count of Maurienne.

*De electo Cantuariensi.*

Rog.Wend. Eodem etiam anno Rogerus,<sup>5</sup> abbas Beccensis, pridie 6 March.  
ii. 369. nonas Martii apud Lamheiam, præsentibus suffraganeis Roger, ab-  
ecclesiæ Cantuariensis, in archiepiscopum ejusdem eccle- bat of Bee,  
siæ est electus. Sed abbas ille electioni de se factæ elected  
penitus contradixit, utrum pusillanimitatis intuitu abp. of  
religionis, incertum habetur. Canterbury  
bury.

<sup>1</sup> *vel coronavit*] Added in marg.

<sup>2</sup> *cognomento*] cognomento, MS.

<sup>3</sup> *septenni*] So also W. A. C. D. E. F. I., and Diceto, col. 561. The Edd. and ed. Wend. read *septennem*, but without authority.

<sup>4</sup> *dedit*] On an erasure. In W. A. C. D. *accepit.*

<sup>5</sup> *Rogerus*] So W. A. C. D. F. I. and Dic., and confirmed by Gall. Christ., vol. xi. p. 230. In Edd. and ed. Wend. *Robertus.*

A.D. 1173. *Henricus, rex juvenis, jam manifestus fit patris adversarius. Et jam Ricardus et Galfridus fratres a patre recedunt.*

The young king openly rebels against his father. Eodem quoque anno rex Henricus juvenis, in con- cilium abiens impiorum, animum suum a patre jam manifeste divertit, et ad sacerdotum suum regem Franco- rum secessit. Quo facto, Ricardus, comes<sup>1</sup> Aquitaniæ, et Gaufridus, comes Britaniæ, consilio matris suæ Ali- enoræ, fratrem potius elegerunt sequi quam patrem; unde fiunt undique dissensiones, scismata, conjurationes, inimicitiae, rapinæ et incendia. Et sic, ut creditur, in ultionem beati Thomæ martiris, suscitavit Deus viscera regis Henrici contra eundem, ut sicut ipse rex in patrem suum spiritualem, sic in eum insurgerent ejus filii carnales, qui<sup>2</sup> ipsum usque ad mortem persecuti sunt, sicut sequens sermo declarabit. Timetur etenim, quod non vera, sed propter mundi scandalum, regis fuerit umbratilis poenitentia. Sed hoc soli Deo patet.

Rog. Wend. ii. 369.

*Nota justum Dei judicium.*

Rog. Wend. ii. 370.

King Henry  
concedes  
the power  
of electing  
to vacant  
benefices.

### Rex Henricus mitescit.

Per idem tempus, ad instantiam cardinalium Alberti et Theodini, rex Henricus liberas fieri electiones vacantium ecclesiarum concessit.

Rog. Wend. ii. 370.

Ralph de  
Warne-  
ville made  
chancellor.

### Creatur cancellarius; creantur et quidam episcopi.<sup>3</sup>

Eodemque anno Radulphus de Warnevilla, sacrista Rothomagensis et thesaurarius Eboracensis, constitutus est<sup>4</sup> Angliae cancellarius. Porro Ricardus, Pictavensis

Rog. Wend. ii. 370.

<sup>1</sup> *comes*] More correctly, *dux*, W. A. C. D.

been erased. F. follows the correction.

<sup>2</sup> *ut sicut . . . qui*] Added in marg. instead of *qui* in the text (as in W. A. C. D.), which has

<sup>3</sup> In the margin are sketched six small episcopal mitres and crosiers.

<sup>4</sup> *est*] Interlined.

archidiaconus, ad Wintoniensem, Gaufridus, Cantuariensis archidiaconus, ad Elyensem, Gaufridus, Lincolnensis archidiaconus, ad Lincolnensem, Reginaldus, Sa resbiriensis archidiaconus, ad Bathoniensem, Robertus, Exoniensis archidiaconus, ad Herefordensem, et Johannes, Cicestrensis decanus, [ad]<sup>1</sup> Cirecestrensem, ecclesias sunt electi.

*Eligitur Ricardus in Cantuariensem archiepiscopum.<sup>2</sup>*

Rog. Wend. Anno quoque sub eodem, pridie nonas Julii, suffra- 6 July.  
 ii. 370. ganei Cantuariensis ecclesiæ et ejusdem loci sanior<sup>3</sup> pars Richard,  
 fol. 63 b. conventus elegerunt in archiepiscopum Ricardum, prio- prior of  
 rem Doverensem. Electus igitur ille regi fidelitatem Dover,  
 juravit, salvo ordine suo, nulla prorsus habita mentione elected  
 de regni consuetudinibus conservandis. Acta autem abp. of  
 sunt hæc apud Westmonasterium, in capella sanctæ bury.  
 Katerinæ, justiciario assensum præbente; ubi tunc con-  
 cilium celebratum est.<sup>4</sup>

*De canonizatione beati Thomæ.*

Rog. Wend. Quo etiam concilio recitatæ fuerunt literæ domini Papal  
 ii. 370. papæ in audience episcoporum omnium et baronum, letters for  
 Rog. Wend. hæc inter cetera continentes:<sup>5</sup> “Universitatem vestram the canoniza-  
 ii. 371. Becket. monemus, et auctoritate qua fungimur districte præ-  
 cipimus, ut natalem beati Thomæ, martiris gloriosi,  
 Cantuariensis olim archiepiscopi, diem videlicet pas-  
 sionis ejus, sollempniter sub annis singulis celebretis, et  
 apud eum votivis orationibus satagatis peccatorum  
 veniam promereri; ut, qui pro Christo in vita exilium  
 et in mortis virtutis constantia martirium pertulit pas-

<sup>1</sup> ad] Supplied from W. A. C. D.

<sup>2</sup> In the margin is drawn a small mitre and archiepiscopal cross.

<sup>3</sup> sanior] So all the MSS., but senior in Edd. and ed. Wend.

<sup>4</sup> ubi tune . . . est] Added in marg.

<sup>5</sup> Epp. lib. v. 93; ed. Giles, ii. 266, dated “Signiæ, quarto idus [12th] Martii.”

A.D. 1173. sionis, fidelium jugi supplicatione pulsatus apud Deum pro vobis intercedat." Apicibus autem vix perfectis, levaverunt vocem omnes in sullime dicentes, "Te Deum laudamus," etc. Et quoniam suffraganei ejus debitam patri reverentiam, aut exultanti aut ab exilio revertenti, vel etiam reverso non exhibuerant, sed potius fuerant persecuti, ut suum publice omnibus confiterentur errorem et iniquitatem, ex ore unius episcopi omnium episcoporum est expressa confessio, dicentis,

*¶ Hac-  
oratione  
uti solebat  
conventus  
Sancti  
Albani,  
etiam in  
passione.*

"Adesto, Domine, supplicationibus nostris, ut qui ex iniquitate nostra reos nos esse cognoscimus,<sup>1</sup> beati Thomæ, martiris tui atque pontificis, intercessione liberemur."

*Soror beati Thome fit abbatissa Berkingiae.*

Mary,  
sister of  
Becket, is  
made ab-  
bess of  
Barking.

Anno quoque sub eodem Maria, soror ejusdem sancti Rog. Wend. ii. 371. martiris, rege jubente et meritis suis exigentibus, est facta abbatissa Berkingensis,<sup>2</sup> ut sic genus <sup>3</sup> suum . videretur ad honorem restaurare, qui illud antea mul- tiplici scandalo fatigarat.

*Abbas Redingice fit archiepiscopus Burdegalensis.*

The abbat  
of Reading  
made abp.  
of Bor-  
deaux.

Tempore quoque sub eodem Willelmus, abbas Redingiae, vir quidem prudens, religiosus et eleganter literatus, assumptus est in archiepiscopum Burdegalensem.<sup>4</sup>

*Gornacum obsidetur.*

Siege and  
capture of  
the castle  
of Gour-  
nay.

Per idem tempus rex Henricus juvenis castrum Gornaci obsedit, et cepit in eo Hugonem, dominum castri, et filium ejus, cum quater xx. militibus; castrum

<sup>1</sup> *cognoscimus*] *congnoscimus*, MS.

<sup>2</sup> *Berkingensis*] Written at first *Berkinge.*

<sup>3</sup> *ut sic genus*] On an erasure.

<sup>4</sup> *Burdegalensem*] *Burdebalensem*, MS.

· vero succedit, et burgenses ad gravem coegit redemp- A.D. 1173.  
 · tionem. Unde patrem usque ad spiritus amaritudinem  
 · offendit, et cor ejus cruentans, maledictionem incurrit  
 · et promeruit, quod et ipse contempsit.

*Multi nobiles venerunt ad regem juvenem.*

Rog.Wend. Quo etiam tempore Robertus, comes Legrecestrensis, Robert,  
 ii. 371. et cum eo Willelmus de Tankarvilla, cum multis aliis earl of  
 comitibus et baronibus, regem patrem relinquentes, ad Leicester,  
 regem filium transfugium fecerunt. and other nobles,  
 join the young king.

*Quod rex Francorum Normanniam hostiliter invaserit.*

Rog.Wend. Eodemque anno rex Francorum Lodowicus, ad Nor- Louis, king  
 ii. 372. maniam penitus devastandam, innumerabilem exercitum of France,  
 congregavit. Qui quamtocius Normanniam ingressus, invades  
 castrum cepit Albamarlense, et Willelmus, ejus dominum,  
 cum comite Symone et pluribus aliis ad ditionem  
 coegit. Deinde cepit castrum Driencurt, et custodiæ  
 deputavit; indeque ad castrum de Archis progrediens,  
 amisit in itinere Bononiæ comitem; unde comes Flan- Death of  
 dreensis de morte comitis fratris sui animo nimis con- the count  
 sternatus, ad propria tristis remeavit. of Bou-  
 logne.

*Rex Francorum declinat rancorem regis H[enrici] II.  
 nimis offensi.*

Rog.Wend. Tempore quoque sub eodem<sup>1</sup> rex H[enricus] senior Troubled  
 ii. 372. spiritus amaritudinem sereno vultu pallians, hæc omnia state of  
 Rothomagi commorans æquo animo, ut populo videba- mind of  
 tur, toleravit, et solito frequentius venatui indulgens, king Henry.  
 ad se venientibus vultum protendit hilariorem. Dilabebantur autem ab eo diatim etiam hii<sup>1</sup>, quos ab annis

<sup>1</sup> *Tempore . . . codem]* On an erasure.

A.D. 1173. puerilibus educaverat, credentes dominationem filii ilico  
imminere.<sup>1</sup> Sedente ergo rege Francorum cum filio  
regis H[enrici] II., rege juniore, in obsidione Vernolii,  
He sends a rex pater in spiritu iracundiæ et amaritudinis nuncios.  
menacing message to direxit ad regem Francorum, mandans ut cum festina-  
Louis. tione a Normannia recederet, alioquin, ipsum ea die  
cum impetu validissimo hostiliter visitaret, ad vindictam.  
quocunque fine insurgendo. Quod audiens rex<sup>2</sup> Fran-  
corum, cum sciret regem potentissimum et in articulo  
circumspectum, animo quoque nimis amaricatum, elegit  
potius ad horam cedere, quam ambigua fata Martis  
experiri. Et sic a facie regis Anglorum fugiens, intra  
Gallias sese cum festinatione recepit.

*De subversione Legrecestriæ, et fuga civium.*

3 July. Eodem quoque anno, [quinto]<sup>3</sup> nonas Julii, rege Rog. Wend.  
Siege of jubente, obsessa est Legrecestria, civitas opulentissima. ii. 372.  
Leicester. ac munitissima, quam quondam rex Leir potentissimus.  
muro indissolubili communivit; et si murus fundamento.  
roboraretur, nulli civitatum fuisset secunda. Hanc Sora.  
fluvius lambit, et piscibus, foeno et molendinis reddit.  
uberiores. Hanc igitur in ultionem obsedit rex Hen-.  
ricus milite copioso, eo quod comes Legrecestriæ Rober-. Cf. Rog.  
tus, quem rex multum honoraverat, dominus videlicet Wend.  
illius civitatis, transfugium fecit ab patris fidelitate ad ii. 373.  
obsequium regis junioris; in hoc inexcusabiliter re-.  
prehensibilis, quia solius amicus fortunæ est effectus.<sup>4</sup>.  
Urbis igitur muris fundamento carentibus subfossis, et .  
fulciminibus tandem combustis, moeniorum fragmenta<sup>5</sup>.  
cederunt, quæ usque in præsentem diem, propter ce- . fol. 64 a.  
menti indissolubilem tenacitatem, scopulorum retinent.

<sup>1</sup> *imminere*] *iminere*, MS.

<sup>2</sup> *rex*] Added in marg.

<sup>3</sup> *quinto*] Supplied from W. A.  
C. D.

<sup>4</sup> *est effectus*] Added in marg.

<sup>5</sup> *fragmenta*] *fragmanta*, MS.

. cum integritate magnitudinem. Subversa igitur et pro A.D. 1173.  
. magna<sup>1</sup> parte combusta civitate, cives in castro et in The de-  
. solidioribus palatiis sese receperunt defendantes. Deni-  
que de pace tractaverunt et obtinuerunt, datis regi make terms  
trecentis libris,<sup>2</sup> ut haberent copiam divertendi. Con- with the  
cessa est igitur tali conditione licentia, ut in urbibus<sup>3</sup>  
regiis vel castellis locum susciperent habitandi. Dis-  
persi sunt ergo nobiles civitatis illius, et quia regis  
animum in defensione suæ civitatis diuturne nimis of-  
fenderant, et thesaurum evacuerant, locum tuti refugii The chiefs  
quærebant, ut<sup>4</sup> minas et gravamen regis declinarent. take refuge  
Ad civitates igitur sanctorum Albani, Anglorum pro- at St. Al-  
thomartiris, et Edmundi, regis et martiris, quasi ad Edmunds-  
sinum tutioris protectionis, configerunt. Quia tunc  
temporis tanta fuit eorum reverentia, ut eorum civi-  
tates, et maxime ecclesiæ, omnibus transfugis asilum  
et tutam protectionem ab hostibus præbuerunt. Illis  
igitur abeuntibus, subversæ sunt portæ civitatis, reli-  
quum murorum dirutum est; militibus quibusdam  
paucis in castelli turri receptis dantur inducæ usque  
ad festum sancti Michaelis. Et sic v°. kalendas Au- 28 July.  
gusti obsidio est soluta.

*Willelmus, rex Scotorum, Angliam invadens confusus  
redit.*

Rog. Wend. Quo facto, rex Scotorum Willclmus provinciam William,  
ii. 373. Northanhimbrorum, quæ David regi, avo suo, data king of  
fuerat et longo tempore possessa, constanter<sup>5</sup> a rege invades  
repetens, repulsam invenit. Qui exercitum congregans Scots,  
tam Walensium quam Scotorum, per fines episcopi Northum-  
Dunelmensis securum habuit transitum, donec, villis  
quampluribus succensis, mulieribus ac parvulis inter- berland.

<sup>1</sup> magna] mangna, MS.

<sup>2</sup> libris] marcis, W. I.

<sup>3</sup> urbibus] urbiis, MS.

<sup>4</sup> ut] et, MS.

<sup>5</sup> constanter] On an erasure.

A.D. 1173. fectis, prædam impretiabilem congregaret.<sup>1</sup> Ad propul-  
 He is com- sandam ergo tantam injuriam magnates Angliæ aquilo-  
 pelled to nares alacriter occurentes, regem Scotorum W[illelmum]  
 retreat by the north- ad sua redire compulerunt; ejusque vestigia pedeten-  
 ern barons. tim insequentes, totum Laudonesium<sup>2</sup> incendio tradi-  
 derunt. Quicquid etiam extra muros civitatum repe-  
 rerunt,<sup>3</sup> Anglis cessit in prædam. Et sic, ad instantiam  
 regis Scotorum, intermeantibus viris religiosis et favore.  
 fideque dignis, datæ sunt induciæ usque ad festum  
 13 Jan. sancti Hylarii, pro quibus forte munera intercesserunt. .  
 Et sic magnates Angliæ cum manubiis, prædis<sup>4</sup> et  
 præmiis victores, ad propria remearunt.

*Qualiter comes Legrecestrensis et ejus uxor Petronilla  
 et Flandrenses capti incarcerantur.*

The earl of Audiens autem Robertus, comes Legrecestrensis, quæ Rog.Wend.  
 Leicester assembles de nobili civitate sua, quam præcordialiter dilexerat. .  
 forces, and et merito,<sup>5</sup> facta fuerant, tactus dolore cordis intrin-  
 lands in secus, cum uxore sua Petronilla in Angliam reversurus,  
 England. per Flandriam transitum fecit. Ubi Normannorum et  
 Flandrenium, tam equitum quam peditum, plurima Rog.Wend.  
 concomitante caterva, naves ascendit, confidenter illis. .  
 promittens totius Angliæ dominium; et applicuit in.  
 29 Sept. Sufolckia, apud Waletunam, iii<sup>o</sup>. kalendas Octobris.  
 Qui de navibus egressus, ejusdem villæ castrum ob-  
 sedit, sed nihil<sup>6</sup> omnino ibidem profecit. Indeque  
 13 Oct. progrediens, iii<sup>o</sup>. idus Octobris castellum de Hagenet  
 He takes invasit, cepit et succedit; ubi etiam de armis multa.  
 the castle laude digna contra quosdam sibi adversantes et obsi-  
 of Ilagnet. dionem solvere volentes operatus est. Milites quoque.  
 intus captos xxx<sup>a</sup>. ad gravem redemptionem coegit.

<sup>1</sup> congregaret] congregavit, W. A.

C. D.

<sup>2</sup> Laudonesium] In the text, *Lc-*  
*donesium*, but corr. in marg.

<sup>3</sup> repererunt] reppererunt, MS.

<sup>4</sup> prædis] Added in marg.

<sup>5</sup> dilexerat, et merito] Added in  
 marg.

<sup>6</sup> nihil] Added in marg.

Regrediens autem inde ad Fremingeham, cum mora A.D. 1173.  
 ejus onerosa Hugoni Bigod, castri domino, videretur,  
 . castellum in sua sine difficultate recepit. Deinde animi  
 . desiderio succensus, ut saltem reliquias viseret Legre-  
 . cestriæ, lora illæ divertit et vexilla. Iter igitur arri- And  
 piens cum suis Flandrensisbus, proposuit burgum et marches  
 . ecclesiam Sancti Edmundi, consilio eorum enervatus, towards  
 . deprædari; fingens se ex industria tamen illa loca  
 . prætereundo sinistrare, ut sic repente rueret in incau- Leicester.  
 tos. Quod profecto per exploratores familiares exerci-  
 tum regis, qui ad patriæ illius custodiam deputabatur,<sup>1</sup>  
 non latebat. Stipatus ergo comes milite copioso ad  
 pugnam<sup>2</sup> præparato, scilicet tribus milibus Flandrensi-  
 um, quos viæ participes tunc habuit, non minimum  
 . in eisdem confidebat, quos sanguinis sitatores noverat  
 . et ad sancta invadenda sacrilegos. Qui etiam, quando Songs of  
 . ad aliquam planitiem gratia pausandi diverterant, the  
 . choreas ducentes patria lingua saltitando cantabant, Flemish  
 . soldiery.

“ Hoppe, hoppe, Wilekin, hoppe, Wilekin,  
 . Engelond is min ant tin.”

Appropinquavit autem caute regius exercitus, in-  
 terponens se illis et burgo, cui insidiabantur inimici.  
 Invocato igitur Dei et beati Edmundi adminiculo, The king's  
 . irruit exercitus regis in Flandrenses, ad instar tor- forces at-  
 rentis de proclivo montium irruentis; et, inito cru- attack them.  
 entissimo certamine, post belli varios eventus, comes  
 et comitissa, Flandrenses, Normanni et Franci, et Capture of  
 qui cum eis venerant, omnes capiuntur, xvi. kalen- the earl  
 das Novembris, et vinculis mancipantur. Comitissa and coun-  
 vero superba nimis, anulum habens in digito cum 17 Oct.  
 gemma pretiosissima, in amnem prope fluentem præ  
 indignatione projicit, nolens hostibus de sua captione  
 tantum habere proventum. Tandem pars major Flan- The Flem-  
 drensum occiditur, pars submergitur, pars ad vincula ings are  
 trahitur, carcerali custodiæ deputanda. slain or  
 taken pri-  
 soners.

<sup>1</sup> *deputabatur*] deputabantur, MS. | <sup>2</sup> *pugnam*] pungnam, MS.

A.D. 1173. *Rex Henricus multos hostium suorum cepit.*

The young king's forces are defeated at Dol. Rege autem<sup>1</sup> Anglorum patre eodem tempore com- Rog. Wend. morante in Anglia,<sup>2</sup> nunciatum est ei electam regis ii. 374. filii sui militiam apud Dolensem urbem a suis, a<sup>3</sup> Rog. Wend. Brebanciis et ruptariis circumclusam. Qui continuo ii. 375. equos ascendens, sequenti mane ad urbem pervenit memoratam, et militiam filii sui sibi repugnantem infra<sup>4</sup> dies paucos comprehendit; sed, priusquam veniret, hostium suorum maxima multitudo a suis rup- Capture of the earl of Chester and others. tariis fuerat interempta. Captus est ibidem comes Cestrensis Ranulphus, qui nuper transfugium<sup>5</sup> fecerat ad filium suum, dominum regem juniorem, Radulphus. quoque de Fulgeriis, Willelmus Patricius, Radulphus de la Haie, Hasculphus de Sancto Hillario, et cum istis milites quater viginti.

*Eo tempore comes Bigod confusus est.*

The nobles march against earl Bigod. He makes a truee with them, and embarks at Dover. The abp. elect of Canterbury goes to Rome. Eodemque tempore magnates Angliae cum exercitu infinito, ad Hugonis Bigod superbiam reprimendam, contra ipsum profecti sunt; et cum de facili posset expugnari,<sup>6</sup> interventu pecuniae, mediantibus induciis usque ad Pentecosten, xiii. milibus Flandrenium armatorum stipendiariorum stipatus agminibus, per Esexiam et Cantiam elapsus est, et apud Doveram naves ascenden- dens, transfretavit; sed nunquam postea comes ad plenum respiravit. Eodemque anno electus Cantuariensis Romam proficiscens, electum Bathoniensem habuit in comitatu suo.

<sup>1</sup> autem] Interlined.

<sup>2</sup> in Anglia] Interlined, and in text of F.; but we should read *apud Rothomagum*, as in W. A. C. D. I., which is borrowed from Dieeto, col. 574.

<sup>3</sup> a] Interlined, and so in Edd.

and ed. Wend., but not in W. A. C. D. I. or Dic.

<sup>4</sup> repugnantem infra] repugnantem imfra, MS.

<sup>5</sup> qui nuper transfugium] On an erasure.

<sup>6</sup> expugnari] expungnari, MS.

*De subversione Anxiholm, et magna militia capta.*

Rog. Wend. Anno Domini M<sup>o</sup>.C<sup>o</sup>.LXXXIII<sup>o</sup>. Rogerus de Molbraio a A.D. 1174.  
ii. 375. fidelitate regis senioris recedens, in insula Anxiholm Capture of  
castellum ab antiquo dirutum reparavit. Ad quem the castle  
multitudo Lincolniensium navigio transvecta, castellum of Ax-  
obsedit, constabularium et milites omnes ad deditio-  
nem coegit, et castellum subvertit. holme.

*Militia Ricardi, contra regem patrem suum recalci-  
trantis, confusa est.*

Rog. Wend. Eodemque tempore, pridie kalendas Maii, rex Anglo- 30 Apr.  
ii. 376. rum senior, cum audisset militiam Ricardi filii sui urbem Defeat of  
Sanctonicam occupasse, sumptis secum Pictavensibus, prince  
ad ejus liberationem processit. Milites autem illi neque Richard's  
Deo neque sanctæ ecclesiæ reverentiam exhibentes,  
majorem ingressi ecclesiam, ipsamque in castellum re-  
digentes, armis, armatis et victualibus impleverunt.  
Cum autem rex hostes in tribus munitionibus confidere  
edoctus fuisset, ad eos invadendum operam impendit.  
Duobus igitur illico munitionibus subjugatis, ad majo-  
rem ecclesiam militibus armatis et lenonibus<sup>1</sup> refertam  
accessit; ita tamen, ut non eam impugnaret, sed a  
. sordibus liberaret. Et, Deo vindice, prosperatum est  
. opus martium in manu ejus<sup>2</sup> Capti sunt autem, tam  
in ecclesia quam in aliis locis, milites sexaginta cum  
balistariis quadringentis. Positis igitur in securitate  
finibus illis, rex in Normanniam reversus est, ne-  
cessitate compulsus.

<sup>1</sup> *lenonibus*] So also F. In W. A. C. D. I. *lenocinatoribus*; Edd. *latrocinatoribus*, falsely.

<sup>2</sup> *Et, Deo . . . ejus*] Added in marg., and inserted in the text of F. Originally, this addition went on

thus: "Et maledixit præcordialiter ambos filios, qui regem . . .", but these words have been afterwards erased, together with a note in red letters, "Vacat, quia offendiculum." The passage erased is not in F.

A.D. 1174. *Incipit perturbatio regis Henrici II. mota per filium suum H[enricum].*

Philip,  
count of  
Flanders,  
takes the  
part of the  
young  
king.

14 July.

The Flem-  
ish forces  
land at  
Orwell, and  
capture  
Norwich.

14 June.

The bp.  
elect of  
Winches-  
ter is sent  
to Henry.

18 June.

Philippus enim, comes Flandrensis, præsente rege Rog.Wend. ii. 376. Francorum Lodowico et majoribus regni illius, tactis reliquiis juraverat, quod infra dies xv. post tunc instans festum sancti Johannis, in manu forti Angliam intraret, et regis eam juvenis potestati subjugaret. Qua fiducia

rex junior intumescens, pridie idus Julii apud Witsant venit, Radulphum de la Haie in Angliam cum multa militia transmissurus. Comes vero Flandrensis cectos.

et x. et viii<sup>o</sup>. milites probatissimos ad transfretandum præmiserat, sed postquam apud Orewellam in Angliam sunt appulsi, xviii<sup>o</sup>. kalendas Julii, sociis eorum maxima parte periclitatis, Hugonem Bigod comitem secum illico assumpserunt. Norwicumque invadentes ceperunt, infinitamque pecuniam inde sustulerunt, et multos abduxerunt captivos, xiiii<sup>o</sup>. kalendas Julii, et ad ultimam

redemptionem compulerunt. Quod videntes justiciarii Rog.Wend. ii. 377. regis, de consilio communi miserunt ad regem Ricardum, Wintoniensem electum, qui pericula Angliæ imminentia<sup>1</sup> eidem fideliter intimaret. Qui celeriter in Normaniam transvectus, omnia sibi injuncta referebat.

*Rex pater veniens in Angliam, beatum Thomam petens, se ipsi reconciliavit.*

Henry pre-  
pares to  
come to  
England  
with his  
family.

Rex autem talem nuncium debita cum veneratione Rog.Wend. ii. 377. suscipiens, et se ad ejus exhortationem transfretare præparans, reginam Alienoram reginamque Margaretam, filium et filiam Johannem et Johannam secum adduxit; comitem quoque Legrecestensem et comitissam, aliosque quamplurimos, quos tenebat in vinculis, ante faciem suam Barbefluvium præmisit; ubi, navibus con-

<sup>1</sup> *imminentia*] *iminencia*, MS.

gregatis, cum innumera armatorum copia impiger naves A.D. 1174. concendit, sed ventus in contrarium veniens, transitum ea die nautis denegavit.<sup>1</sup> Cum autem rex mare conspexisset turbulentum, erectis in cœlum luminibus, palam cunctis in navi audientibus ait, "Si ea, quæ ad pacem sunt cleri et populi, habeam efficaciter in proposito, et si pacem in adventu meo Rex cœlorum passage. pacificus dare disponat, tunc pro sua misericordia indulget mihi portum salutis attingere; <sup>Prayer of the king for a fair passage.</sup> si autem aversus fuerit, et regnum in virga furoris sui Angliæ visitare decreverit, nunquam mihi concedat attingere terminos Anglicanos. Hoc tamen totum a beati Thomæ dispensatione dependeat." Mira<sup>3</sup> res! Oratione completa, ilico ipsa die tranquilla navigatione, cum vasorum, personarum, et omnium rerum indemnitate, ad portum He lands Hamonis applicuerunt rex et qui cum eo fuerant <sup>at Southampton.</sup> universi.<sup>4</sup> Deinde in pane et aqua rex jejunans, ab

*fol. 65 a.* ingressu civitatum abstinuit, quoisque vota orationum persolvisset mente concepta beato Thomæ, Cantuariensi archiepiscopo, et martiri glorioso ac jam manifesto.

Rog. Wend. Cum autem Cantuariæ appropinquasset, equo dissiliens His acts of ii. 378. et regiam majestatem prorsus deponens, nudus pedes, penance at faciem peregrinantis, pœnitentis et supplicantis assumens, Canterbury bury.

iii<sup>o</sup>. idus Junii, feria vi<sup>a</sup>., ad ecclesiam majorem usque 11 June. pervenit, et cum gemitibus et suspiriis alter Ezechias, lacrimarumque affluentia petiit sepulchrum martiris gloriosi; ubi toto corpore prostratus, manibusque in cœlum expansis, diutius in oratione devotissima permanxit. Nec poterant hæc videntes lacrimas continere. Statimque per os episcopi Londoniensis, sermonem ad populum, qui certatim ac catervatim copiosus ad tale spectaculum convenerat, habentis, rex Deum et martirem beatum in animam suam invocans publice protestatus est, quod mortem martiris non mandavit, nec voluit,

<sup>1</sup> *denegavit*] In the text, *suspen-*  
*dit*, but corr. in marg.

<sup>2</sup> *attingere*] Added in marg.

<sup>3</sup> *Mira*] Mirara, MS.

<sup>4</sup> *rex et . . . universi*] Added on  
to the text.

A.D. 1174. nec suo artificio perquisivit. Sed quoniam interfectores martiris gloriosi ex verbis ejus non satis circumspecte prolati occasionem sumpserant archiepiscopum permendi, ab episcopis, qui tunc præsentes<sup>1</sup> erant, absolutionem rex petiit; carnemque suam nudam virgarum disciplinæ supponens, a singulis viris religiosis, quorum multitudo magna convenerat, ictus ternos vel quinos excepit, eo asperius percutere persuadente. Vestibus igitur resumptis, muneribus pretiosis martirem honoravit, assignans insuper annui census xl<sup>a</sup>. libras ad luminaria circa sepulchrum martiris continuanda; reliquumque diei ac noctis sequentis in mentis amaritudine transegit. Crastina vero die jussit rex sollempniter missam de martire celebrari, cuius introitus fuit, "Gaudemus," etc. Cui intererat assidue stans et orans, nudis pedibus et lutosis, sicut venerat per plateas civitatis; vixque permisit, ut unus fratrum, propter pavimenti frigiditatem et plantarum regiam teneritudinem, mattam pedibus supponeret infrigidatis.<sup>2</sup> Post evangelium<sup>3</sup> quoque, dum cantaretur offertorium, optulit<sup>4</sup> rex seipsum in holocaustum Deo et sancto martiri, sicut solet aliquis suo victori, dicens vulgariter,<sup>5</sup> "Pulcher Domine Deus, et sancte martir Thoma, quem amare et tu me diligere consueveras, ego me vobis reddo." Consuetudines etiam illas, quæ inter martirem et ipsum totius fuerunt dissensionis materia, rex, tanquam vere pœnitens, pro martiris devotione et per martiris virtutem abdicavit malas et iniquas; bonas vero solum observandas sanxit in posterum. Quarum tamen abdicatarum sic nonnullæ, etiam ab ecclesia dampnatæ, per regnum observantur adhuc. Quod, si rege sciente.

The king renounces the evil customs which had caused his quarrel with the abp.

<sup>1</sup> præsentes] In the text *p'sntes*, but corr. in marg.

but *se* is repeated again, interlined, before *ipsum*.

<sup>2</sup> infrigidatis] *infrigidatis*, MS.

<sup>5</sup> In the margin is this note:

<sup>3</sup> evangelium] *eunangelium*, MS.

"Verba hæc Gallie dixit, scilicet,

<sup>4</sup> optulit] In the text *optulit se*;

'Beus Sirc Deus,' etc." Omitted

in F.

. et approbante factum sit, ipse viderit, Deus novit. A.D. 1174.  
 . Sed vehementer formidandum est, quod quia non  
 . observantur leges vel consuetudines, præcipue de in-  
 . dempnitate vacantium ecclesiarum cathedralium et  
 . conventionalium, et libertate electionum, regnum Angliæ  
 . miserable suscepit detrimentum, utpote in tributo, et  
 . terrarum ultramarinarum mutilatione, et nobilium  
 . Angliæ clipeorum irrestaurabili deletione. Sed hæc  
 . infra.

*Qualiter, pacato beato Thoma martire, rex H[enricus]  
 II. feliciter respiravit.*

Rog.Wend. Orationibus igitur, vigiliis et jejunii rex deditus ad- His affairs  
 ii. 378. huc, usque scilicet in diem tertium ab alimentis absti- now turn  
 nuit. Unde beatum martirem sibi reddens placabilem, out pros-  
 ipso die sabbati, qua sibi ab eo indulgentiam dari perously. ¶ *Nota, qualiter Deus*  
 postulabat, tradidit Deus regem Scociae Willelmum in *dedit in manibus regis*  
 manus suas, apud Richemund castellum custodiæ man- *H. hostes suos.*  
 cipatum; qui vel maximus, vel de maximis regis  
 fuerat adversarius. Ipsa etiam die sabbati, rex filius *Hostes* { *Comes Le-*  
*eius, navibus, quas congregaverat ad transfretandum* *grecestren-*  
*Rex Scoto-*  
*Rex junior*  
*H.*  
 Rog.Wend. in Angliam, ut eam sibi subjugaret, dissipatis penitus  
 ii. 379. et fere submersis, coactus est cum confusione ad Gal-  
 liam remeare. Unde cœpit rex juvenis, immo potius  
 puerilis, contra patrem, quem jam Deus manifeste pro-  
 texerat, recalcitrasse pœnitere.

*De captione Willelmi, regis Scotorum.*

Rog.Wend. De captione vero regis Scotorum Willelmi ut bre- Capture of  
 ii. 379. viter dicatur, dum Northambriam<sup>1</sup> intraret, sicut in William,  
 anno præterito, ut eam subjugaret et suo regno copu- king of  
 laret, occurserunt ei magnates regionis illius, et, com- Scots.

<sup>1</sup> *Northambriam*] Northanhumbriam, W. A. C. D. F.

A.D. 1174. misso campestri prælio,<sup>1</sup> ipsum ceperunt et custodiae arctiori manciparunt. De formicis autem Scotulorum tot interfectæ referuntur, quod numerum excedere videbantur.<sup>2</sup> Rege autem Willelmo, ut prælibatum est, apud Richemund carcerali custodiæ deputato, impleta videtur Merlini prophetia vel pronosticum dicentis, "Dabitur maxillis ejus frænum, quod in Armorico sinu fabricabitur;"<sup>3</sup> sinum Armoricum forte vocans castellum de Richemund, ab Armoricis principibus ab <sup>4</sup> antiquis temporibus possessum.

Prophecy  
of Merlin  
fulfilled.

*Manifestum indicium reconciliationis regis H[enrici]  
II. cum martire Thoma.*

Henry  
comes to  
London.

Ut autem veraciter perstringamus beneficia, quæ Rog.Wend. regi H[enrico] II. Deus post satisfactionem, quam <sup>ii. 379.</sup> idem beato Thomæ fecerat, exhibuit, per ea quæ sequuntur intelligamus. Rex autem Londoniam veni-

He subdues  
the castle  
of Hun-  
tingdon  
and others.

19 July.

ens, a civibus susceptus est reverenter. Inde Huntun- doniam veniens, castellum obsedit et sibi<sup>5</sup> potenter subjugavit, xiiii<sup>o</sup>. kalendas Augusti; ubi milites comitis Legrecestriæ ad regem accedentes, reddiderunt castella de Groby et Montsorel, ut cum domino suo mitius se

22 July.

haberet, xi. kalendas Augusti. Proceres Norenses, du- cem habentes electum Lincolnensem, regis videlicet filium, Malassart, castellum Rogeri de Molbraio, viri- bus subjugarunt. Rex etiam Henricus, turmis milita- <sup>Rog.Wend.</sup> ribus undique ad eum confluentibus, cum apud Sanc- <sup>ii. 380.</sup> tum Edmundum copiosum congregasset exercitum, duo castella Hugonis Bigod, Bungheie et Frammingheham, obsidere decrevit; comes autem non habens fiduciam resistendi, datis mille marcis cum obsidibus, pacem regis impetravit,<sup>5</sup> viii<sup>o</sup>. kalendas Augusti. Tunc quo-

Submis-  
sion of  
Hugh  
Bigod.

25 July.

<sup>1</sup> *prælio*] Added in marg.

<sup>2</sup> *videbantur*] The first two syllables are on an erasure. In W. and A. C. D. *dicebantur*.

<sup>3</sup> Merlini Vaticinia, etc., p. 96, ed. 1608.

<sup>4</sup> *ab*] On an erasure.

<sup>5</sup> *sibi*] Interlined.

que multitudo Flandrensum, quam Philippus comes A.D. 1174.  
in Angliam miserat, ut præmissum est, præstito jura- The Flem-  
mento, quod fines Angliae amplius hostiliter non in- ish forces  
traret, de regis gratia et licentia ad propria remeavit. and those  
Militia etiam regis junioris, cui præerat Radulfus de of the  
la Haie, absque impedimento de regis benevolentia young king  
recessit. Robertus, comes de Ferrariis, et Rogerus de leave the  
Molbraio, quorum castella tunc obsidebantur a rege, Several  
Trese<sup>1</sup> et Stutebire, missis ad regem legatis, pacem nobles  
eius impetrarunt. Willelmus, comes Gloverniæ, et submit  
cardus, comes de Clare, regi occurrerunt, suo mandato<sup>2</sup> to the  
. et arbitrio in omnibus parituri. Quid plura? Rex Henry re-  
. Henricus similis factus regi Ninivitarum, qui regem turns to  
. invincibilem, id est, Deum, humilitate vicit in oratione Normandy,  
. et jejunio, per intercessionem martiris gloriosi Thomæ, taking  
. memoratis hostibus et aliis, quos longum foret numerare, with him  
. superatis, et statu Angliae solidato et pacificato, vii<sup>o</sup>. 7 Aug.  
. idus Augusti in Normanniam transfretavit, ducens se-  
. cum regem Scotorum, comitem Legrecestrensem<sup>3</sup> et  
Hugonem de Castello, quos in vinculis retinebat.<sup>4</sup>

*Rex Francorum ab obsidione Rothomagi confusus  
recessit.*

Reg.Wend. Cum autem rex Henricus iii<sup>o</sup>. idus Augusti appli- 11 Aug.  
ii. 380. cuiisset, invenit Rothomagensem civitatem obsessam. Rouen be-  
Rog.Wend. Lodouicu[m] enim, rex Francorum, et Henricus, rex sieged by  
ii. 381. juvenis, cum comite Flandrensi Philippo, in absentia the king of  
regis Anglorum cum exercitu copioso supervenerant, et France,  
requiem non dederant civibus obsessis. Sed rex Fran- who  
corum, cum Anglorum regem supervenire didicisset, retreats  
succensis machinis, non sine famæ dispendio confusus with dis-  
honour.

<sup>1</sup> *Trese*] So in W. A. C. D.; but we should read *Tresc* [Thirsk], as at p. 394, and in Diceto, col. 578.

<sup>2</sup> *mando*] In the text, *mando*, but corr. in marg.

<sup>3</sup> In the margin is added: "Iste comes Robertus in omnibus agendis beato Thomæ adversabatur, et ideo

merito sic punitus est." In F. this is improperly inserted in the text.

<sup>4</sup> In the lower margin a note has been erased, but can still be partially read, as follows: "Amotis secularibus, introdueti sunt canonici regulares. . . ." See p. 398.

A.D. 1174. recessit. In cuius recessu<sup>1</sup> milites Angli subito supervenientes, arma plurima et instrumenta bellica, necnon et variam suppælectilem, quam non Franci recessurū cito poterant vehiculis imponere, invenientes, asportarunt; ut, qui prius talibus indiguerunt, plenius abundarent.<sup>2</sup>

*Archiepiscopus Cantuariensis Ricardus<sup>3</sup> rediit a Roma cum potestate.*

Richard,  
abp. of  
Canter-  
bury, re-  
turns from  
Rome.

30 Aug.  
He con-  
secrates  
several  
bishops.

Eodemque anno archiepiscopus Cantuariensis a Roma Rog.Wend. rediens, pallium et primatum Angliæ reportavit. Veneransque apud Londonias, iii<sup>o</sup>. kalendas Septembris, vacantium ecclesiarum personas principales, quæ sibi pastores elegerant, convocavit; ubi, electionibus confirmatis, Wintoniensem, Elyensem et Cicestrensem, atque Herefordensem electos consecravit. Gaufridus vero, Lincolniensis electus, quia nondum electio ejus fuerat confirmata, transfretavit in propria persona Romanam iturus, vel ad ipsam nuncios transmissurus.

*Omnis filii regis Anglorum ad pacem patris sunt reversi.*

A.D. 1175. The king  
of France  
and count  
of Flanders  
cease from  
hostilities.

Anno Domini M<sup>o</sup>.C<sup>o</sup>.LXX<sup>o</sup>.V<sup>o</sup>. Lodowicus, rex Fran- Rog.Wend. corum, et comes Flandrensum, sumptibus tædiosis et ii. 381. infructuosis affecti, quos<sup>4</sup> pro rege Anglorum juvene. et puerili impenderant, et dampna sibi ac suis illata, et interfectiones et incendia ad memoriam revocantes, promiserunt se velle ab infestatione Normannorum<sup>5</sup> revocare; unde filios regis Angliæ, quos paternam maledictionem, odium cleri, populorum imprecationem noverant incurrisse, ut ad patris gratiam redire

<sup>1</sup> recessu] Added in marg.

<sup>2</sup> abundarent] habundarent, MS.

<sup>3</sup> Ricardus] Added in marg.

<sup>4</sup> quos] At first written *quas*.

<sup>5</sup> Normannorum] memoratorum,  
MS. and F. Corr. from W. A. C. D.

possent, summopere satagebant. Rex igitur per internuncios omnes adversarios suos ad poenitentiam re-viz. A.D. 1175  
 Rog.Wend. vocatos intelligens, ipsos apud Cenomanniam ad suum place be-  
 ii. 382. venire colloquium procuravit; ubi a Gaufrido primitus tween Henry and et Ricardo, filiis suis, homagium et fidelitatem accepit. his sons, Post dies autem aliquot,<sup>1</sup> apud Burum in Normannia at which they are venit ad eum rex filius ejus, cum archiepiscopo Rotho- reconciled. magensi et aliis episcopis et baronibus multis; et cum multa lacrimarum effusione ad pedes patris prostratus, misericordiam precabatur. Rex autem formam induens patris-familias, redeunte filio suo prodigo, motus pietate super filio, quem totis visceribus diligebat, intelligens eum ex corde loqui, iram et omnem ei indignationem remisit, atque ejus homagium, addito juramento, suscepit.

### *Concordia plena.*

Rog.Wend. Omnibus igitur bene pacificatis, et osculis undique The pri-  
 ii. 382. ex corde collatis, rex pater milites nongentos et sexa- soners are ginta novem, quos tempore belii ceperat, sine redemp- released on both sides. tione a vinculis solvit; paucos vero, quorum facinus enorme principem mansuetissimum ad iracundiam provocarat, arctiori custodia tradidit mancipandos. Rex vero filius eodem modo milites, quos jure belli ceperat, quorum numerus ad centum et eo amplius excreverat, sine pecunia relaxavit. Tunc rex pater literas in Letters no- omnes fines suæ dominationis, formam hujus pacis con- tifying the peace are tinentes, direxit, ut omnes quos generale discrimen belli issued.  
 fol. 66 a. afflixerat, communis lætitia recrearet. Continebant insuper literæ, quod omnia castella, quæ communita fuerant tempore belli contra ipsum, ad illum redigentur statum, in quo erant quando guerra incepit.

---

<sup>1</sup> *aliquot]* Added in marg.

A.D. 1175. *Concilium celebratum est apud Westmonasterium.* .

Couneil      Eodemque anno concilium generale habitum est apud :  
held at      Westmonasterium, xv<sup>o</sup>. kalendas Julii, præsente Ri-  
Westmin-      cardo, Cantuariensi archiepiscopo et apostolicæ sedis .  
ster.  
17 June.      legato. Rogerus vero, Eboracensis archiepiscopus, con- .  
Death of      cilio noluit interesse. Anno quoque sub eodem obiit .  
Reginald,      Reginaldus, comes Cornubiæ. Hugo Petroleonis, dia- .  
earl of      conus cardinalis, venit legatus in Angliam, et præstitit .  
Cornwall.      auctoritatem tradendi clericos ante judicem secularem .  
Arrival of      pro forisfacto forestæ et laico feudo, in favorem regis. .  
the papal  
legate.

*Willelmus, rex Scotorum, pacem fecit cum rege  
Anglorum.*

Peacemade      Anno quoque sub eodem Willelmus, rex Scotorum, Rog. Wend. .  
with the      apud Falesiam tentus in vinculis, cum rege Anglorum ii. 383.  
king of      pacem fecit in hunc modum, vi<sup>o</sup>. idus Decembris : Rex  
Scots.  
8 Dec.      Scotorum devenit homo ligius regis Anglorum de regno  
*Nota quod*      Scociæ et omnibus terris suis, et homagium fecit ei et  
*Willelmus,*      ligantiam, ut domino suo speciali, et Henrico, filio ejus,  
*rex Sco-*      salva fide patris ejus ; et similiter omnes episcopi,  
*torum, de-*      cum comitibus et baronibus de regno Scociæ, de quibus  
*venit homo*      *Henrici II.* rex Anglorum homagium voluit et fidelitatem habere.  
*ligius regis*      Et non solum sibi, sed et successoribus regis, ipsi et suc-  
cessores ejus in perpetuum, sine malo ingenio. Forma .  
verò cartæ, scilicet transcriptum, in multis thesauris .  
Angliae habetur.<sup>1</sup> Ipsi vero cartæ appensa sunt omnia .  
Substance      sigilla episcoporum et baronum Scociæ. Summam autem .  
of the      huic paginæ duximus inserendam. Rex Scotorum et . R. Wend.  
treaty.      omnes homines sui nullum amodo fugitivum de regno ii. 383.  
Angliae receptabunt in Scociæ partibus, nec in alia terra  
sua ; sed rex Scociæ et homines sui eum capient, et eum  
regi Anglorum vel suis justiciariis reddent. Pro hac  
autem conventione et fine firmiter observando, dedit

<sup>1</sup> See Rymer, i. 39.

rex Scotorum regi Anglorum et successoribus suis cas- A.D. 1175.  
 tella de Berewic et de Rokesbure, in perpetuum pos-  
 sidenda. Et si rex Scotorum aliquo tempore contra  
 hæc venire attemptaverit, episcopi Scociae cum comi-  
 tibus et baronibus contra regem suum tenebunt, et  
 episcopi terram ejus sub interdicto ponent, donec ad  
 regis Anglorum obsequium revertatur. Igitur rex Sco- The king  
 torum, datis obsidibus, rediit in Angliam sub libera of Scots  
 custodia deputatus, donec castella, quæ regi pepige- returns to  
 rat, pro illius arbitrio redderentur. Castella vero per The castles  
 Angliam et Normanniam multorum, quæ tempore dis- erected  
 Rog.Wend. criminis inter patrem et filium constructa fuerant, during the  
 ii. 384. . passim eversa sunt, rege jubente, et filio vel non au- war, are  
 . dente,<sup>1</sup> vel velle dissimulante. ordered to  
 be levelled.

*Reges Anglorum, pater scilicet et filius, beatum  
 Thomam petierunt.*

Rog.Wend. Anno Domini M<sup>o</sup>.C<sup>o</sup>.LXX<sup>o</sup>.VI<sup>o</sup>. reges Anglorum, pater A.D. 1176.  
 ii. 384. scilicet et filius, in Angliam venientes, per dies sin- Henry and  
 gulos in eadem mensa sunt refecti, et idem thalamus the young  
 fomenta quietis de noctibus ministravit. Et properantes king come  
 simul, ut beatum Thomam martirem visitarent, cum to England,  
 omni humilitate orationum vota et mansuetudine pere- and pay  
 gerunt. Indeque per Angliam pariter profecti, pacem their devo-  
 singulis et justitiam generaliter,<sup>2</sup> tam clericis quam tions to  
 laicis, promiserunt, et id opere compleverunt. St.Thomas.  
 Equal jus-  
 tice is pro-  
 mised to  
 clerks and  
 laymen.

*Walenses multi perimuntur.*

Rog.Wend. Eodemque anno Willelmus de Brause multitudinem Many of  
 ii. 384. Walensium, in castello de Bergeveni<sup>3</sup> callide convo- the Welsh  
 are put to

<sup>1</sup> *audente*] So in the text (followed by F.), but in marg. *vel diente*, i.e. *audiente*. In A. C. D. and Edd. we find *contradicente*. Perhaps we should read, *non contradicere audente*.

<sup>2</sup> *generaliter*] On an erasure.

<sup>3</sup> *Bergeveni*] In the text, *Begemini*, but in marg. *vel Berga*, i.e. *Bergamini*, which is followed by F. I have corrected it from W. A. C. D., which copy Diceto, col. 587.

A.D. 1176. catam, sub forma honestatis occupavit. Inclusis enim death in the castle of Bergavenny. talem legem proposuit eis jurandam, ne quis ex tunc cnipulum ferret viator vel arcum; sed illis hujusmodi decreto contradictibus præcise, capitali sententia omnes condempnavit. Hanc autem proditionem fecit in ultionem avunculi sui, Henrici de Hereford, quem ipsi in sancto Paschæ sabbato proditiose peremerunt,

“ Nec enim lex æquior ulla est,  
Quam necis artifices arte perire sua.”<sup>1</sup>

*Nota de tribus archidiaconis Cantuariensisibus.*

Three archdeacons appointed in the diocese of Canterbury. John, dean of Salisbury, consecrated bp. of Norwich. Anno quoque sub eodem Ricardus, Cantuariensis archiepiscopus, in diocesi sua, quæ ab antiquis temporibus uno tantum fuerat archidiacono contenta, ultimis hiis diebus tres archidiaconos constituit, Savaricum scilicet, Nicholaum, et Herbertum. Tempore quoque sub eodem Johannes, decanus Saresbiriensis, consecratus est antistes Norwicensis.<sup>2</sup>

*Complanantur quedam castella.*

Many castles are razed to the ground. Nec multo post rex Anglorum fecit complanari castella de Legrecestria, Hontundonia, Waletonia, de Grobi, de Stutesbire, de Haie, et de Tresc, et alia quamplurima, in ultionem injuriarum, quas ipsi frequenter domini castellorum compatriotis intulerant, et regi et regiis ministris.

*Constituuntur justiciarii plures.*

Justiciaries are appointed. Deinde ipse rex, per consilium filii sui et episcoporum, constituit justiciarios per sex partes regni, in

<sup>1</sup> Ovid. de Arte Am., lib. i. 655, where we read *justior* for *æquior.* | bishop of Norwich, 14 Dec. 1157. Fasti, ii. 459.

<sup>2</sup> John of Oxford was consecrated

qualibet scilicet parte tres, qui in fide juraverunt, quod A.D. 1176.  
cuilibet jus suum conservarent illæsum.

*Petro, Romane sedis legato, rex Anglorum iiii. capitula concessit.*

Rog.Wend. Veniente eodem tempore in Angliam Petroleone, Articles  
ii. 385. legato sedis apostolicæ, iiii<sup>or</sup>. ei rex concessit capitula conceded  
quæ sequuntur, in regno Angliæ conservanda. Primo, by the  
quod de cetero clericus non trahatur ante judicem king to the  
secularis personaliter pro aliquo crimine vel transgres- papal  
sione, nisi pro foresta et laico feudo, unde regi vel alio legate.  
domino seculari laicum debetur servitium. Secundo,  
ut archiepiscopatus, episcopatus vel abbatiae non tene-  
fol. 66 b. antur in manu regis ultra annum, nisi pro causa evi-  
denti, vel necessitate urgente.<sup>1</sup> Tertio concessit, ut  
interfectores clericorum convicti vel confessi coram jus-  
ticiario regni, præsente episcopo, puniantur. Quarto,  
quod clerici duellum facere non cogantur.

*Johanna, filia regis, nupsit regi Siciliæ.*

Rog.Wend. Eodemque anno Johanna, filia regis, Siculorum<sup>2</sup> regi Marriage  
ii. 385. et regi similiter vel domino Apuliae<sup>3</sup> nuptura, v<sup>o</sup>. idus of the  
Novembris, apud Sanctum Egidium in conspectu viro- princess  
rum illustrium suo tradita est marito. Joanna to  
the king  
of Sicily.  
Nov. 9.

*Omnia Angliæ castra ad regium imperium devolvuntur.<sup>4</sup>*

Rog.Wend. Quo utique tempore universa Angliæ castella sunt  
ii. 385. ad regis imperium custodiis salvis deputata. The castles  
throughout  
England  
are given  
up to the  
king.

<sup>1</sup> In the margin is added, "Sed ne aliquatinus tenerentur, exegit beatus Thomas." Om. F.

<sup>2</sup> *Siculorum*] At first written *Siculo*, as in W. A. C. D. F.

<sup>3</sup> *et regi . . . Apuliae*] Added in marg., and inserted in text of F.

<sup>4</sup> *devolvuntur*] *divolvuntur*, MS.

A.D. 1176. *Quod Johannes, filius regis, fit heres Gloverniae.*

William,  
earl of Gloucester,  
constitutes  
prince John his  
heir.      Quo utique tempore Willelmus, comes Glovernæ, cum Rog. Wend. ii. 385. filium non haberet, ægre ferens hereditatem inter filias dividere, Johannem Sine-terra, regis filium, si superviveret,<sup>1</sup> constituit successorem.

*Reges extranei discordes regis Anglorum sese arbitrio subdiderunt.*

Dispute  
between  
the kings  
of Castille  
and Nar-  
varre re-  
ferred to  
the arbi-  
tration of  
Henry.      Circa dies illos Aldefonsus, rex Castellæ, regis Angliæ Rog. Wend. ii. 386. gener, et Sancius, rex Navarorum, avunculus ejus, discordes ad invicem, missis ad regem Angliæ legatis, se staturos illius arbitrio juraverunt. Nuncii vero apud Westmonasterium in præsentia regis, episcoporum, comitum et baronum constituti,<sup>2</sup> proponebant illi, qui causam Aldefonsi<sup>3</sup> regis tuebantur, Santium, regem Navarorum, memorato regi Castellæ, dum adhuc pupillus esset et orphanus, castella et terras Legionum,<sup>4</sup> videlicet Navaret, Andlena, Aptol et Agosen,<sup>5</sup> cum pertinentiis suis, quæ pater suus, die qua decessit, et ipse post aliquos annos quiete possederat, injuste ac violenter abstulisse;<sup>6</sup> unde domino suo restitutionem fieri postulabant.<sup>7</sup> Illi autem, quibus causa Santii regis commissa fuerat, nihil eorum, quæ ab aliis proposita fuerant, contradicentes,<sup>8</sup> asserebant Aldefonsum<sup>9</sup> præfatum Sancio castella, Legin scilicet, Portel, et castellum quod tenet Godin, per werram et injuste abstulisse; parte altera in nullo<sup>10</sup> sibi contradicente,

<sup>1</sup> *superviveret*] Added in marg.

<sup>5</sup> *Agosen*] Agosiæ, Dic. ; Agosoio, Rym. i. 34.

<sup>2</sup> *Nuncii . . . constituti*] So read all the MSS., but the sense would be clearer if corrected, *Nuncius . . . constitutus*, as in Edd.

<sup>6</sup> *abstulisse*] On an erasure.

<sup>3</sup> *Aldefonsi*] Andefonsi, MS.

<sup>7</sup> *postulabant*] postulabat, MS.

<sup>4</sup> *Legonium*] Logtonium W.; Legionum, A. I.; Legionum, D.; Logronum, Diceto, col. 597, and Rymer, i. 32.

<sup>8</sup> *contradicentes*] So in the text, as in W. A. C. D. F., and Diceto, col. 597, but altered by an interlinear addition, to *conce[d]entes*.

<sup>9</sup> *Aldefonsum*] Andefonsum, MS.

<sup>10</sup> *in nullo*] At first written *non-nullo*.

eorum domino suo restitutionem fieri pari instantia A.D. 1176. flagitabant. Nuncii præterea in jure confessi sunt palam, inter reges præfatos treugas usque septennium, fide interposita, fuisse firmatas. Rex igitur Anglorum, habito cum episcopis, comitibus et baronibus consilio super querelis prætaxatis, hinc inde violenter et injuste ablatis, cum nihil contra violentiam utrinque propositam a parte alterutra responderetur alterutri, nec

Rog.Wend. quicquam,<sup>1</sup> quo minus restitutiones,<sup>2</sup> quas petebant,  
ii. 387.

faciendæ essent, allegaretur, plenariam utrique parti supradictorum, quæ in jure petita erant, restitutionem judicavit. Adjunxit etiam, treugas præfatas inter eos fide firmatas usque ad constitutum terminum esse inviolabiliter observandas. Judicavit etiam pro bono pacis, ut rex Aldefonsus donaret liberaliter Santio regi singulis annis usque ad decennium tria milia marbotinorum; et sic pacem haberent ad invicem, et perpetuam amicitiæ firmitatem.

*Item, de auctoritate regis H[enrici] II.*

Rog.Wend. Eisdemque diebus nuncii Manuelis, Constantinopolis. The mes-  
ii. 387. tani imperatoris, nuncii Romani imperatoris Frethe-  
singers  
from  
rici, nuncii Willelmi, Treverensis archiepiscopi, nuncii  
other sove-  
Henrici, ducis Saxonici, nuncii Flandrensis comitis  
reigns seek  
Philippi, et aliorum magnatum per Christianitatis lati-  
counsel.  
tudinem constitutorum, quos varia ardua et difficilia  
trahebant negotia, tanquam ex condicto communi, pridie  
idus Novembris apud Westmonasterium, de suis causis  
et quæstionibus edocendi convenerunt. Et alii, aliis  
temporibus et locis, pro suis negotiis dirigendis,<sup>3</sup> ad  
curiam regis magnifici Henrici, immo etiam Francorum  
electi primates, velut ad scolam prudentiæ et justitiæ,  
undique confluxerunt; ita ut viderentur Arthuri tem-

<sup>1</sup> *quicquam*] quisquam, MS., and  
so C. D.

<sup>2</sup> *restitutiones*] restituones, MS.

<sup>3</sup> *dirigendis*] Between the lines is  
written *vel mendis*, i.e. *dirimendis*.  
F. follows the text.

12 Nov.

A.D. 1176. pora renovari. Hæc iccirco dixerim, ut notum sit omnibus, quantæ rex Henricus sapientiae fuerit, quantæque magnificentiæ, ad cuius audientiam et discussionem totius fere orbis consilia principum profunda ac obscura<sup>1</sup> judicia devolvebantur.

*¶ Nota regis Henrici magnificientiam.*

*Hugo de Petroleone, expirante tempore legationis sue, Romam revertitur.*

The papal legate returns to Rome.

Anno quoque sub eodem Hugo de Petroleone, legationis suæ cursu perfecto, Romam revertitur.

Deaths of the earls of Strigoil, and Arundel.

12 Oct.  
Walter, prior of Winchester, made abbat of Westminister.

*Obierunt quidam magnates.*

Eodemque anno obiit<sup>2</sup> Willelmus, comes de Strigoil. Comes Willelmus de Harundel <sup>iiii<sup>o</sup>.</sup> idus Octobris apud Waverle viam universæ [earnis]<sup>3</sup> est ingressus; cuius corpus delatum est apud Wimundham, prioratum et cellam Sancti Albani, sepeliendum, cuius domus patrus extiterat. Item, Walterus quoque, prior Wintoniensis, factus est abbas Westmonasterii.

*De remotione canonorum secularium a Waltham.*

Removal of the secular canons from Waltham abbey.

11 June.

Anno Domini M<sup>o</sup>.C<sup>o</sup>.LXX<sup>o</sup>.VII<sup>o</sup>., amotis ab ecclesia Walthamensi canonici, quos seculares vocamus, introducti sunt regulares summi pontificis auctoritate, in vigilia Pentecostes, rege procurante Henrico et præsente, qui illius ecclesiæ amator fuit specialis. Et eadem dic. Radulfus, Cireccstrensis<sup>4</sup> canonicus, de manu Londoniensis episcopi curam ecclesiæ prædictæ suscipiens, ipsi, tanquam diocesano, de canonica subjectione servanda verbis sc obligavit<sup>5</sup> expresse; et, fratribus cum eo Rog.Wend. ii. 387.

Rog.Wend.  
ii. 388.

<sup>1</sup> *obscura*] Interlined.

<sup>2</sup> *obiit*] The last two letters are on an erasure.

<sup>3</sup> *carnis*] Supplied from F.

<sup>4</sup> *Cireccstrensis*] In ed Wend. *Cireccstrensis*, by an error of the press.

<sup>5</sup> *obligavit*] oligavit, MS.

introductis, prior est ab eodem episcopo assignatus, et A.D. 1177.  
in sua sede sollempniter collocatus.

Ralph  
appointed  
prior.

*Concordia firmata est inter Francorum et Anglorum  
reges.*

Rog. Wend. Quo etiam tempore rex Anglorum, regno pro sua Henry  
ii. 388. voluntate disposito, xv<sup>o</sup>. kalendas Septembris in Nor- crosses  
fol. 67 a. maniam transfretavit. Et confestim inter regem over to  
Francorum et ipsum habito colloquio, hoc modo con- Normandy.  
cordiam inierunt: "Ego Lodowicus, rex Francorum, 18 Aug.  
et ego Henricus, rex Anglorum, volumus ad notitiam Treaty of  
omnium plenam<sup>1</sup> pervenire, nos, Deo inspirante, pro- peace made  
misisse et juramento confirmasse, quod simul ibimus with the  
in servitium Crucifixi, et ituri Jerusolimam suscipiemus king of  
signaculum sanctæ crucis. Et amodo volumus esse France.  
amici ad invicem, ita quod uterque nostrum alteri conservabit vitam, membra et honorem terrenum contra omnes homines. Et si quæcunque persona alteri nostrum malum facere præsumpserit, ego Henricus invadam eum, tanquam<sup>2</sup> adversarium, juvans Ludowicum, regem Francorum, dominum meum, contra omnes homines. Et ego Lodouuicus juvabo regem Anglorum Henricum contra omnes homines, sicut fidelem et amicum meum, salva fide quam debemus hominibus nostris, quamdiu nobis fidelitatem servabunt." Acta autem sunt hæc apud Minantcurt, vii<sup>o</sup>. kalendas Octobris. 25 Sept.

- . *Quidam potentes peregre proficiscuntur, et Frethericus Philip,* count of
  - . *imperator humiliatur.* Flanders, and W. de Mandeville
- . Eodemque anno Philippus, comes Flandrensis, et Willelmus de Mandevilla profecti sunt Jerusalem. go to the Holy Land.
- . Frethericus autem imperator venit ad pedes Alexandri The emperor Frederic
  - . papæ, humiliatus et compunctus. Audierat enim et

<sup>1</sup> *plenum]* On an erasure.

| <sup>2</sup> *tanquam]* Added in marg.

A.D. 1177. certificabatur super hoc, quod cum idem papa fugeret .  
 humbles himself to a persecutione imperiali, et non fuerat ei tutus tran- .  
 pope Alex- situs per terram nec etiam per mare, elegit fugam per .  
 ander. vastum mare. Exorta igitur tempestate valida, dixe- .  
 runt omnes qui in nave erant, “ Ora pro nobis, pater, .  
 ecce enim perimus ! Vicarie Christi, fac quod Christus .  
 fecit, qui imperavit ventis et mari, et facta est tran- .  
 quillitas.” Papa igitur, assumptis et indutus omnibus .  
 papalibus ornamentiis, stans imperavit vice Christi .  
 mari et ventis, ut staret mare a fervore suo et tumultu. .  
 Et ilico facta est post benedictionem in mari et aere .  
 tranquillitas magna, et transivit papa in pace. Hoc .  
 igitur audito, imperator stupefactus est,<sup>1</sup> humiliatus .  
 satis<sup>2</sup> illi per omnia, plus tamen Deum quam hominem .  
 timens ; et sic cessavit, sicut in mari tempestas, .  
 scisma<sup>3</sup> inter ecclesiam et imperium.

*De fundatione monasterii<sup>4</sup> de Westwude.<sup>5</sup>*

A.D. 1178. Anno Domini M<sup>o</sup>.C<sup>o</sup>.LXX<sup>o</sup>.VIII<sup>o</sup>. Ricardus de Luci, Rog.Wend. .  
 11 June. Angliae justiciarius, iii<sup>o</sup>. idus Junii fundamenta jecit .  
 Foundation of the ad construendam ecclesiam conventualem in honorem .  
 monastery of beati Thomæ martiris, in loco qui vocatur Westunde, .  
 West- in territorio Rofensi; provocatus exemplo senescalli .  
 wood. Henrici regis, filii Willelmi conqueroris Angliæ, qui .  
 apud Colecestriam ecclesiam conventualem fundavit, in .  
 honorem sancti Johannis.

*Rex petit beatum Thomam. Gaufridus, filius regis,  
 cingulo donatur militari.*

King Henry visits the Eodem anno rex Anglorum Henricus, cum per Rog.Wend. .  
 omnes provincias suæ potestatis, quæ vel Francorum ii. 389.

<sup>1</sup> est] On an erasure. Om. A. C. D.

<sup>2</sup> satis] So also F., but in A. C. D. satisfecit.

<sup>3</sup> scisma] sic cisma, MS. and F.

<sup>4</sup> monasterii] monastii, MS.

<sup>5</sup> Westwude] The second w has been partly erased.

liminibus, vel montibus Pirenæis, vel Britannico [vici- A.D. 1178.  
nantur]<sup>1</sup> oceano,<sup>2</sup> munitiones optinuisse, et omnia pro tomb of  
velle disposuisse, idus Junii<sup>3</sup> beati Thomæ martiris, Becket.  
tanquam gratus, sepulchrum devote visitavit. Et, paucis IIe knights  
inde diebus evolutis, Gaufridum, filium suum, viii<sup>o</sup>. his son  
idus Augusti apud Wudestoke cingulo donavit militari. Geoffrey.  
6 Aug.

*Nix maxima. Solis eclipsis.*

Eodemque anno nix maxima et diu durans pisces *Nix.*  
fluviales et etiam quosdain marinos suffocavit, et avium, Unusual  
ita quod videbatur genus volatile extinctum, multitu- continuance of  
dinem interemit; insuper agriculturam usque ad de- snow.  
sperationem suspendit. Sol passus est eclipsim, vi. idus Eclipse of  
Januarii. the sun.  
8 Jan.

*De revelatione inventionis sancti Amphibali socio-  
rumque ejusdem.*

Rog. Wend. Eodem anno vir quidam<sup>4</sup> Beati Albani burgum in- the inven-  
ii. 389. habitans et loci illius indigena, inter convicaneos suos tion of St.  
sine querela vitam duxit innocentem. Hic ab ineunte Amphiba-  
ætate, quantum substantiæ mediocritas permittebat,  
honeste vivens, devotus ecclesiæ extitit frequentator.  
Dum igitur una noctium in stratu jaceret, circa galli-  
cinium intravit quidam decori vultus et eleganti statura  
procerus thalamum suum interiorem; qui vestibus  
indutus candidis, virgam in dextra pulcherrimam  
bajulabat. In eujus ingressu domus confestim tota  
resplenduit, et quasi claritas solaris interiora cubiculi  
perlustravit. Qui illico appropinquans, jacentem vocavit,  
et, si dormiret, leniter exquisivit, dicens, "Roberte,  
dormis?" Expavit Robertus timore vehementi, et supra

<sup>1</sup> *vicinatur]* Supplied from W. A. C. D.

<sup>2</sup> *oceano]* *oceano*, MS.

<sup>3</sup> *Junii]* Diceto has *Julii*, and so has Brompton, col. 1138.

<sup>4</sup> In the margin of A. his name is given, "Robertus, civis Sancti Albani, cognomento Mercer."

A.D. 1178. modum admirans ait, “ Quis es, domine ? ” At ille,  
 “ Ego sum martyr Albanus, qui ad hoc venio, ut an-  
 nunciem tibi Domini voluntatem de magistro meo,  
 clero videlicet illo, per quem fidem Christi suscep-  
 i, de quo inter homines sermo frequens habetur ; et, cum  
 spes fidelium sit quod futuris temporibus debeat re-  
 velari, locus tamen sepulturae ab omnibus ignoratur.  
 Surgens ergo velociter, circumda tibi vestimentum  
 tuum, et sequere me, et ostendam tibi sepulchrum pre- Rog. Wend.  
ii. 390.  
 tiosis reliquiis ejus insignitum.” Surgens ergo Robertus  
 velociter, vestitus et calciatus secutus est eum. Et ·  
 versus aquilonem in strata publica gradientes, perrex-  
 erunt<sup>1</sup> pariter, donec ad planitiem quandam ab antiquo  
 incultam, quae sita est juxta viam regiam, pervenissent.  
 Obiter autem colloquebantur, ut solet amicus cum amico . fol. 67 b.  
 coitinerante, tum de moeniis dirutæ civitatis, tum de .  
 amne diminuto, tum de strata communi adjacente civi- .  
 tati, tum de nomine utriusque, tum de adventu beati .  
 Amphibali, magistri sui, in civitatem, pro cuius reli- .  
 quiis iter agebatur, tum de recessu ab invicem lacri- .  
 mabili, tum de utriusque passione. Et quæcumque Ro- .  
 bertus interrogare<sup>2</sup> volebat, martyr prompta ac benigna .  
 responsione disserebat. Contigit autem, ut inter lo- .  
 quendum quosdam mercatores de Dunestaplia obvios .  
 haberent, qui mane interesse fori negotiis in pago .  
 Sancti Albani festinabant. Quorum adventum præ- .  
 dicens martyr, Roberto dixit, “ Divertamus paulisper, .  
 donec pertransierint adventantes, ne forte iter nostrum .  
 præpediant percunctando ; ”<sup>3</sup> via enim ab ipso martire .  
 coruscavit.<sup>4</sup> Quod et factum est. Cum autem ad .  
 medium circiter itineris, ubi duæ arbores in medio .  
 stratæ fuerant, pervenissent, ait martyr, “ Hucusque .  
 duxi magistrum meum beatum Amphibalum, cum ultimo .  
 in hac vita mundiali dolentes colloquebamur, tunc ab .

<sup>1</sup> *perreverunt*] pereverunt, MS.<sup>2</sup> *interrogare*] interrogare, MS.<sup>3</sup> *percunctando*] pereuntando, MS.<sup>4</sup> *coruscavit*] choruscavit, MS.

. invicem recessuri.<sup>1</sup> Ob quam rem memoriter recolen- A.D. 1178.  
. dam, cum ante passionem meam hoc novellis Christi-  
. anis retulisse, has metas venerabantur, has arbores  
. confoventes." Hæc et alia plurima colloquentes itiner-  
. ando recolebant; et nisi splendor, qui a martire pro-  
. cedebat, obtutus Roberti reverberasset, et timor cum  
. simplicitate sensus suos hebetasset,<sup>2</sup> martir ipsum de  
. multis tam futuris quam præteritis evidenter certifi-  
. casset.

*Quid factum est, cum ad locum inventionis  
pervenissent.*

Cum igitur ad memoratam planitiem pervenissent, Legend  
ad sinistram partem itineris, quantum arcus bis jacere continued.

R. Wend. ii. 390. potest, diverterunt. Habebat locus ille gratam, ut  
prætangitur, planitiem, tam pascuis quam fessis in via  
hominibus ad pausandum aptissimam, in villa quæ  
Redburna nuncupatur, tribus ferme miliaribus a Sancto  
distans Albano. Sane in hac planicie duo colliculi  
eminebant, qui Colles Vexillorum dicebantur, eo quod  
circa illos populares fiebant concursus, quando populus  
fidelis ex antiqua traditione sollempnem annuatim pro-  
cessionem ecclesiæ Sancti Albani debita cum venera-  
tione persolvebant. Tunc sanctus Albanus, apprehensa  
manu viri, duxit eum ad unum de colliculis, qui sepul-  
chrum beati martiris continebat. Deinde, converso ad  
eum vultu, "Hic," inquit, "locus magistri mei reli-  
quias continet; hic ejus ossa contegit et conservat."  
Et sic fatus, pollice viri ad instar crucis terram<sup>3</sup>  
aperuit, et, eversa cespitis modica portione, quoddam

<sup>1</sup> In the margin was added a note, which has afterwards been erased, so that only a few words are now legible, as follows : "In cuius rei memoria compatriotæ . . . locum illumi . . . arboribus . . . arbores . . ." Over this note is written in red

letters : "Nota ex post facto certitudinem, quia, sicut prædixit S. Albanus, inventus est beatus Amphibalus." These notes are not in F.

<sup>2</sup> hebetasset] ebetasset, MS.

<sup>3</sup> terram] Added in marg.

A.D. 1178. serinium reseravit; ex quo splendor nimius exiens, orbem occiduum illustravit, et post<sup>1</sup> lucis radios in mundi latitudinem copiose diffudit. Quo facto, capsula recluditur, et loci planities in statum pristinum reformatur. Stupet vir ille, et quid sibi super hiis sit agendum, a sancto postulat edoceri. Ad quem beatus Albanus, "Signa locum diligenter, ut quae meo tibi sunt revelata ministerio, firmius adhaereant menti tuæ. Veniet enim in proximo tempus, quando hæc instructio multis proderit ad salutem." Robertus vero aeris et platiniei visum<sup>2</sup> dimetiens, lapides quosdam, qui ibi jacebant, collegit et ibidem quodam scemate locavit, dicens, "Hiis metis et signis de hoc sancto loco cras plenius certificabor." Et, hiis dictis, ait sanctus, "Redeamus."

### *Argumentum veritatis.*

Legend continued. Illis autem per viam qua venerant revertentibus, cum Rog. Wend. venirent ante portam ecclesiæ Sancti Albani mutuis. ii. 391.

colloquiis recreati, ait sanctus Roberto, "Progredere ad domum tuam<sup>3</sup> in pace, ego autem in meam, unde veni, regredior." Erat autem domus Roberti remotior. Et sic vale dicto, sanctus suam intravit ecclesiam, et homo ille domum suam ingressus, lectulo suo sese recepit. Istud, ut quidam fingunt veritati detrahentes, non ut sompnium evenit, sed in expressa veritate; cui testimonium perhibet finalis rei eventus, et multorum fratum, videlicet monachorum ecclesiæ Sancti Albani assertio, cum quibus memoratus Robertus colloquium habuit familiare ac frequenter. Qui in periculo animæ et sub attestatione tremendi judicii asserebat, se ipsum martirem facie ad faciem vidiisse, et, sicut prænarratur,

<sup>1</sup> *post*] So also F.; in W. C. p<sup>o</sup> (post), and in A.D. *sup. ras.* I. p<sup>o</sup> (primo), as in Edd. and ed. Wend. The variation arises from the contractions used in the MSS.

<sup>2</sup> *risum*] visu, MS. and F. Corr. from A. C. D.

<sup>3</sup> *tuam*] Added in marg.

. ad placitum diffusum colloquium cum eodem habuisse. A.D. 1178.  
. Et hoc etiam in extremis agens, veraciter affirmavit.<sup>1</sup>

*Veritatis dilucidatio.*

Rog.Wend. Vir autem mane expergefactus, in apercipi positus Confirmation of the  
ii. 391. fluctuabat, utrum sub silentio dissimulando praeteriret, legend.  
an alij, quæ corporaliter gesta didicerat, sine aliqua hæsitatione revelaret. Si enim sileret, peccare metuebat in Deum; si rem publicaret, saunas hominum verebatur. Ista tandem animo sæpe revolvens, timor Dei humum absorbuit; et, licet adhuc verbum hoc communibus esset auribus absconditum, domesticos tamen suorum et privatos effecit conscos secretorum. Illi autem, quod dicebatur in tenebris, in lumine proferebant, et quod in aure audierant, super tecta prædicabant. Factum est autem, ut in brevi verbum istud per totam disseminaretur provinciam, adeo quidem, ut rumor claustrum Sancti Albani intraret. Denique fama desiderata, qui busdam perferentibus, abbatis Symonis aures penetravit, cuius post Deum auctoritate negotium illud robur erat specialiter habiturum; qui protinus electos de conventu fratres aliquot ad locum, quem vir ille ostensurus erat, codem viro prævio, destinavit. Conventus interea domi devotis orationibus incumbebat, et fratres ductorem suum sequentes, videre martirum reliquias properabant. Quo demum pervenientes, invenerunt ibidem fidelium multitudinem, quos Spiritus Sanctus prospero pronostico in unum collegerat, ut inventioni martiris interessent.

Rog.Wend. Illis autem eventum rei præstolantibus, sæpedictus homo præcedebat, fratribus planitem ostendens sauctorum corpora continentem. Erat autem feria vi<sup>a</sup>. ante 22 June.  
ii. 392. sollemnitatem beati Albani, quando hæc facta sunt, qua ejusdem sancti passio celebratur. Ab illo ergo die

---

<sup>1</sup> *Et hoc . . . affirmavit]* Added to the text, partly on an erasure. F. agrees.

A.D. 1178. usque ad elevationem sanctorum, loco illi custodia non defuit, sed fratres jugiter cum laicis affuerunt. Conventus interim abstinentiam vitæ cum disciplinis et orationibus suscepit arctioris; et, statuto cum processione multiplici suffragio elemosinarum, sollempne jejunium in populo prædicatur. Jamque locus ille futuræ inventionis nundinarum similitudinem præferebat, et, recendentibus aliis, quos fervor devotionis adduxerat, alii cotidie succedebant.

*De miraculis jam jam coruscantibus.<sup>1</sup>*

Miracles performed. Porro interea signorum miracula, jam jam adhuc Rog. Wend. sanctorum corporibus in corde terræ latitantibus, æterna recordatione digna coruscabant,<sup>2</sup> ita ut viderentur apostolorum tempora renovari. Quae propter eorum multitudinem omittens, ad Majora Cronica<sup>3</sup> Sancti Albani ea scire volentes transmitto.<sup>4</sup>

*De inventione sancti Amphibali<sup>5</sup> cum novem sociis suis.<sup>6</sup>*

Invention of St. Amphibalus and his companions. Clarecente interim die, quam sanctorum inventio Rog. Wend. consecrabat, venerabilis pater Symon abbas locum adiit ii. 394. sanctissimum, et, celebratis in capella sancti Jacobi loco illi contigua, in veneratione beati martiris Albani, nostræ redemptionis misteriis, monachis qui aderant, ut diligenter quærerent, et, pluribus adhibitis fossoribus,

<sup>1</sup> *coruscantibus*] choruscantibus, MS.

<sup>5</sup> *Amphibali*] Amphabali, MS.

<sup>2</sup> *coruscabant*] choruseabant, MS.

<sup>6</sup> On the lower margin is drawn a representation of a pair of hands digging the ground with a pick, and above is written, in red, “*Invenitur sanctus Amphibalus martyr, cum sociis suis.*”

<sup>3</sup> *Cronica*] This word has been erased, but is still legible. It is omitted in F.

<sup>4</sup> The narrative of the miracles is inserted at length in A. C. D. and in Wendover, ii. 392-394.

ut cœptis insisterent, imperavit. Reverso itaque abbate A.D. 1178 domum, et jam cum conventu ad prandium sedente, legebatur passio beati martiris, quem quærebant, et sociorum ejusdem, per quam carnis ergastulo soluti, promeruerunt gloriam sempiternam. Dum igitur sævitia judicis, lictorum immanitas, martirum patientia, et mors  
 Rog. Wend. prolixius recitata pias mentes conventus in fletus et  
 ii. 395. suspiria commovisset, beatum Amphibalum cum tribus sociis suis repertum accurrens aliquis nunciavit. Quid ergo? Suspiria mutantur in laudes, et tristitiae successit lætitiae magnitudo. Exsurgens<sup>1</sup> ergo a mensa congregatio, ad ecclesiam festinanter procedit, et lætitiam cordis conceptam elevatis laudibus protestatur?<sup>2</sup> Inventus est autem beatus martir Amphibalus inter duos socios medius et collateralis<sup>3</sup> ambobus, tertio socio quasi ex transverso et ab opposto locum solitarium occupante. Inventi sunt autem prope locum illum numero sex ex sociis suis, scilicet martirum prædictorum, ita quod beatus martir Amphibalus decimus habebatur. Inter reliquias autem athletæ<sup>4</sup> Christi Amphibali cultelli duo magni inventi fuerunt, unus in testa capitis et alter circa præcordia. Quod in libello passionis ejus, scripto antiquis temporibus, continetur.<sup>5</sup> Ut enim habet passionis ejus textus, alii occubuerunt gladiis cæsi, alii lanceis transverberati, alii decapitati. Ipse vero martir Amphibalus, primo patefactis et intestinis ejectis, et post lanceis confossus et cultellis, occubuit tandem lapidibus conquassatus; unde nullum fere ex ossibus ejus integrum apparebat, cum sociorum ejus ossa illæsa penitus extitissent.

<sup>1</sup> *Exsurgens*] Exurgens, MS.

<sup>2</sup> *protestatur*] protestantur, MS.

<sup>3</sup> *collateralis*] colleteralis, MS.

<sup>4</sup> *athletæ*] adlethe, MS., and so in W. A. C. D.

<sup>5</sup> *continetur*] After this word is

added in Edd., *apud Sanctum Albanum*, but without any sanction from the MSS. This has deceived the editor of Wendover, ii. 395, who quotes Matthew Paris as the authority for this assertion.

A.D. 1178. *Reliquiae sancti Amphibali apud Sanctum Albanum sunt translatæ.*

Translation of the relies of St. Amphibalus to St. Alban's.

Abbas autem, ut diximus, auditio nuncio desiderato, Rog. Wend. ii. 395. adjuncto sibi priore cum<sup>1</sup> aliquot fratribus de conventu, sanctorum celeriter adiit sepulturas, et effossas reliquias erigens, in lintheaminibus ydoneis collocavit. Metuentesque supra modum fraudem plebis et vim turbæ undique confluentis, quam a compressione inventi thesauri arcere non poterat, unde placuit abbati ut martires Rog. Wend. ii. 396. sancti in Beati Albani basilicam portarentur, ubi eustodia diligentior et securitas amplior poterat adimpleri atque plenius adhiberi. Quid multa? Redeunt cum abbatे fratres separatim<sup>2</sup> sanctorum pignora<sup>3</sup> processionaliter<sup>4</sup> deferentes. Procedit martiribus obviam cum processione conventus, corpus secum beati martiris Albani deportans. Quod cum aliquotiens consuevit suis esse portitoribus onerosum, tantam sui facilitatem illa hora exhibuit, ut volare potius quam humeris ferentium incumbere videretur. Occurrit ergo martir martiribus, magistro discipulus, et jam palam magistrum recipit revertentem, quem habebat olim clam fidei doctorem in tugurio<sup>5</sup> latitantem.

### *Miraculum.*

Miracle. Sed miraculum, quod in elementis suis Dominus Rog. Wend. ii. 396. ostendere dignatus est, cum obviantes primitus reliquiae hinc inde convenirent, non decebat sub silentio praeteriri. Cum enim siccitas prolixior, exustis herbis, floribus, frugibus et fructibus, antea nimis perdurasset, id est, 25 June. toto vere, et usque ad vii<sup>o</sup>. kalendas Julii, quia hic.

<sup>1</sup> *eum*] Interlined.

<sup>2</sup> *separatim*] seperatim, MS.

<sup>3</sup> *pignora*] pignera, MS. At first written *corpora* (as in W. A. C. D.),

but corr. in marg. and followed by F. and Edd.

<sup>4</sup> *processionaliter*] Added in marg.  
<sup>5</sup> *tugurio*] tugurio, MS.

fuit dies inventionis sanctorum, et omnes agricolas A.D. 1178. desperatos reddidisset, eodem momento, cum in aere nulla appareret nubecula, tanta pluviarum inundatio subito<sup>1</sup> prorupit, ut et copiose descendentes ymbres terram imbuerent, et desperatæ messis spem promitterent uberiorem. Et, quod dignissimum fuit admiratione, pretiosæ cappæ et aurifrigiatæ et vestimenta carissima, quibus conventus incedebat redimitus, cum non esset domus ad quam confugerent, ymbrium sustinebat infusiones, nec sunt in aliquo vestimenta vel deturpata vel aliquantulum deteriorata.

### *Conclusio.*

Rog.Wend. Inventus est autem pretiosus martir Amphibalus Date of  
ii. 396. cum sociis suis, in crastino Nativitatis sancti Johannis the invention of the  
. Baptiste,<sup>2</sup> et in ecclesiam Beati Albani cum canticis reliquies.  
et laudum præconiis sollempniter delatus, anno a passione 25 June.  
sua DCCC<sup>o</sup>.LXXX<sup>o</sup>.VI<sup>o</sup>., ab incarnatione Domini  
M<sup>o</sup>.C<sup>o</sup>.LXX<sup>o</sup>.VII<sup>o</sup>,<sup>3</sup> die sabbati, vii<sup>o</sup>. kalendas Julii. In  
præsentia autem sanctorum reliquiarum ipsius, necnon  
et in loco sepulturæ ejus, ad laudem Dei et gloriam  
martiris, a diversis infirmitatibus sanantur ægroti, adeo  
ut omnium audientium et videntium stuporem mira-  
R.Wend. cula generarent. Si quis ea scire desiderat, librum  
ii. 397. requirat de ipsis specialiter confectum.

### *Junior rex torneamenta exercuit.<sup>4</sup>*

Rog.Wend. Anno Domini M<sup>o</sup>.C<sup>o</sup>.LXX<sup>o</sup>.IX<sup>o</sup>. H[enricus], rex Anglo- A.D. 1179.  
ii. 397. rum junior, mare transiens, in conflictibus Gallicis, qui Henry, the  
hastiludia vel torneamenta vocantur, in expensis profusioribus, ut laudem militarem promereretur, triennium  
frequents the tournaments in France.

<sup>1</sup> *subito*] Added in marg.

<sup>2</sup> *in crastino . . . Baptiste*] Added in marg., and is in text of F.

<sup>3</sup> M<sup>o</sup>.C<sup>o</sup>.LXX<sup>o</sup>.VII<sup>o</sup>.] So read all the

MSS.

<sup>4</sup> *exercuit*] exercuit, MS.

A.D. 1179. peregit. Deinde, multis insignitus<sup>1</sup> triumphis et laudibus, ad patrem reversus, cum honore debito susceptus est.

*Rex Francorum Lodowicus orationis gratia beatum Thomam adiit.*

Louis, king of France, visits the tomb of St. Thomas. 22 Aug. Munificence of Henry to the French nobles.

Eodemque anno Lodowicus, [rex]<sup>2</sup> Francorum piis-  
simus, beatum Thomam martirem, cui devotissimus et amicissimus quandoque extiterat, orationis gratia visi-  
tare decernens, Angliam, quam nec ipse nec suorum aliquis antecessorum aliquo tempore visitaverat, devotus intravit. Rex autem Anglorum venienti, navem apud Doveram ascendens, gaudenter occurrit, et quicquid honoris, gaudii ac reverentiae poterat, ei<sup>3</sup> xi<sup>o</sup>. kalendas Septembbris impendit. Concurrentibus enim archiepi-  
scopo Cantuariensi cum suis suffraganeis, episcopisque aliis<sup>4</sup> fere Angliae omnibus, comitibus, baronibus, cum clero et populo, sollempnis processio in tanti principis adventu majorem ecclesiam illustravit. Quantum vero auri vel argenti Gallicanæ nobilitati rex Henricus magnificus et munificus contulerit, quantumque in vasis et lapidibus pretiosis omnes honoraverit, cum non sit qui hoc sciat, desit qui scribat. Sed, ut brevi-  
bus multa perstringamus, ad regii thesauri vel etiam imperialis quantitatem summa dicitur ascendisse. Praeterea rex Henricus, de adventu tanti amici et domini-  
letissimus, gazas totius regni, quibus multum tunc abundavit<sup>5</sup> et<sup>6</sup> omnes antecessores suos<sup>7</sup> superavit, regi-  
Francorum et suis exposuit; sed, ne viderentur aliud quam martirem quæsisse, manus ab oblatis muneri-

<sup>1</sup> *insignitus*] At first written *insig-  
nitis*.

<sup>2</sup> *rex*] Supplied from W. A. C. D. F.

<sup>3</sup> *poterat, ei*] Added in marg.

<sup>4</sup> *episcopisque aliis*] *episcopique  
alii*, MS.

<sup>5</sup> *abundavit*] *habundavit*, MS.

<sup>6</sup> *et*] *super*, MS. and F. If *super* is retained, we must omit *supe-  
ravit*.

<sup>7</sup> *suos*] Added in marg.

.bus tantis cohibuerunt, sed et ne Gallicana nobilitas A.D. 1179.  
 .Romanæ cupiditatis ignobilitati<sup>1</sup> assimilaretur; immo  
 .muneribus contenti primitivis, grates regi largissimo  
 .multiplices retulerunt. Rex autem Francorum Christi- Louis  
 anissimus, post jejunia et orationes, quas Deo et beato makes a  
 martiri Thomæ effudit devotissimas, centum vini mo grant of  
 dios<sup>2</sup> annuatim in perpetuum solvendos Cantuariensi wine to  
 conventui contulit pro oblatione. Deinde, licet urgen- the church  
 tissime ac instantissime rex Anglorum postulasset, ut of Canterbury  
 ad alios Angliæ sanctos visitandos et honorandos, ut-  
 .pote beatum Albanum, Angliæ prothomartirem, et  
 .beatum Edmundum, regem et martirem, et regalem  
 civitatem Londoniarum, interiora terræ Anglicanæ in-  
 grederetur; rex suorum distractus consiliis recusavit,  
 dicens, "O quam libenter hoc vellem, sed meorum He returns  
 consiliis nequaquam audeo obviare." Et sic vii<sup>o</sup>. ka- to France.  
 lendas Septembbris ad Galliam transfretavit.<sup>3</sup> 26 Aug.

#### *De obitu duorum episcoporum.<sup>4</sup>*

Rog. Wend. Eodemque anno Rogerus, Wigorniensis episcopus, Death of  
 ii. 398. obiit, v<sup>o</sup>. idus Augusti. Obiitque Ricardus de Lucy, Roger, bp. of Wor-  
 .episcopus Wintoniensis.<sup>5</sup> Quidam quoque puer marti- cester.  
 .rizatus est apud Wudestoc. 9 Aug.

#### *De concilio Romæ habitu, presidente papa Alexandro.*

Rog. Wend. Eodem anno habitum est Romæ concilium ge- General  
 ii. 398. nerale ecc<sup>torum</sup>. et x. episcoporum, xiii<sup>o</sup>. kalendas Council  
 held at Rome.

<sup>1</sup> *ignobilitati*] *ingnobilis*, MS.

<sup>2</sup> *modios*] In the margin is added  
"d" [dubium] *quid modius.*"

<sup>3</sup> *transfretavit*] *transfretavit*, MS.

<sup>4</sup> Two small mitres reversed are drawn in the margin.

<sup>5</sup> *Obiit . . . Wintoniensis*] There is an error here. In A. and D. the entry is simply, "Ricardus de Lyci, Wintoniensis episcopus," and so in

Edd., but in C., "Obitus Ric. de Lyci, episc. Wint." For *episcopus Wintoniensis* we should certainly read, *justiciar* *Angliae*; for the person intended is the chief *justiciar*, whose death is recorded in this year by Gervase, Chron. col. 1456, and Hoveden, p. 590. Richard *Tocliffe*, bishop of Winchester, did not die until 1188. 19 March.

A.D. 1179. Aprilis, in palatio<sup>1</sup> Lateranensi, cui præsedidit papa Alexander III<sup>us.</sup>; cuius statuta,<sup>2</sup> omni laude dignissima, sub xxviii<sup>o</sup>. quæ sequuntur capitulois decreta<sup>3</sup> continentur:<sup>4</sup> De electione summi pontificis. De hæreticis Albigensibus, et diversis eorum appellationibus. De ruptariis et Brebanciis prædonibus, qui fideles affligunt. Quod nullus promoveatur in episcopum, vel ad aliquem ordinis gradum, nisi legitimæ sit ætatis, et de legitimo matrimonio susceptus. Ne, viventibus personis, ecclesiæ conferantur, nec, illis defunctis, ultra sex menses vacent. De appellationibus. Ne infra sacros ordines constituti, vel qui ecclesiasticis sustentantur stipendiis, [rebus]<sup>5</sup> se immisceant secularibus. De treugis statuendis et temporibus treugarum. Quod clerici unam tantum habeant ecclesiam, et quod episcopus, si aliquem sine certo ordinaverit titulo, tamdiu necessaria inveniat, donec ei in aliqua ecclesia stipendia assignet. Ne patroni vel quilibet laici ecclesias opprimant, aut ecclesiasticas personas. Ne Judæi vel Sarraceni Christiana mancipia permittantur habere, sed, ad fidem Christi si converti voluerint, a possessionibus suis nullatenus excludantur. Ut leprosi, si excluduntur a cohabitatione hominum, oratorium habeant et sacerdotem. Ne bona ecclesiastica in usus alios convertantur, nec decani pro certa pecuniae quantitate jurisdictionem exerceant<sup>6</sup> episcopalem. Ut in electiōnibus vel ecclesiasticis ordinationibus consequatur effectum, quod a majoris vel sanioris consilii parte fuerit constitutum. Quod usurarii manifesti ad communionem altaris non admittantur, nec Christianam habeant sepulturam. Ut agricultoræ et viatores, et om-

Heads of  
the decrees  
passed.

Rog. Wend.  
ii. 399.

fol. 69 a.

<sup>1</sup> *palatio*] In the text *patriarchio*, (as in W. A. C. D., and Diceto, col. 603), but underscored, and replaced in the margin by *palatio*, with which reading E. agrees. In F. *patriarchæ palatio.*

<sup>2</sup> *statuta*] instantia, MS. and F. Corr. from W. A. C. D.

<sup>3</sup> *decreta*] Added in marg.

<sup>4</sup> See Harduin, *Coneilia*, tom. vi. 2. col. 1673.

<sup>5</sup> *rebus*] Supplied from W. A. C. D.

<sup>6</sup> *exerceant*] *exerceant*, MS.

nia quæ sua sunt, plena ubique pace et securitate A.D. 1179.  
lætentur. Ut ordinationes a scismaticis<sup>1</sup> factæ irritæ  
habeantur et inanes, et beneficia ab eis collata revo-  
centur. Ne pro ecclesiasticis instituendis personis, seu  
mortuis sepeliendis, aut nubentibus benedicendis, vel  
aliis ecclesiæ sacramentis, aliquid exigatur. Ne viri  
religiosi, vel quilibet alii, ecclesias vel decimas præsu-  
mant de manu suscipere laicorum, sine auctoritate  
episcoporum; et non nisi<sup>2</sup> semel in anno Templarii  
sive Hospitalarii ecclesias sub interdicto positas aperiant,  
nec corpora tunc sepelire præsumant. Ne quis inter-  
Rog. Wend. ventu pecuniaæ habitum religionis usurpare præsumat,  
ii. 400. nec conversus peculium habeat, nec facti prælati, non  
nisi pro dilapidatione vel incontinentia degradentur.  
Ne Christiani Sarracenis arma vendant, nec patienti-  
bus naufragium quisquam injuriam faciat, vel eos spo-  
liare præsumat. Ut clerici infra sacros ordines consti-  
tuti continenter vivant, et si in illa incontinentia,<sup>3</sup>  
quæ contra naturam sit, deprehensi fuerint laborare,  
excommunicentur, et a clero abjiciantur.<sup>4</sup> Ut archi-  
episcopi parrochias vel ecclesias visitantes, quadraginta  
vel quinquaginta equorum numero sint contenti; epi-  
scopi, viginti vel triginta; legati, viginti vel xxv.;  
archidiaconi, v. vel vii.; decani, duarum<sup>5</sup> evectionum  
numerum non excedant. Ut nullus torneamenta exer-  
ceat,<sup>6</sup> et mortui in torneamentis Christiana careant  
sepultura. Quod unaquæque<sup>7</sup> cathedralis ecclesia mag-  
istrum habeat, qui pauperes scolares et alios doceat,  
nec pro licentia docendi aliquis pretium exigat. Ut  
prælati unam tantum regant ecclesiam, et quod pa-

<sup>1</sup> *scismaticis*] cismaticis, MS.

<sup>2</sup> *nisi*] Om. A. C. *pr. man.*, D., Edd. and ed. Wend., but is in W. I. Cf. Diceto, col. 603.

<sup>3</sup> *incontinentia*] continentia, W. A. C. D., but falsely. See Harduin, tom. vi. 2. col. 1678.

<sup>4</sup> *abjiciantur*] abiciantur, MS.

<sup>5</sup> *duarum*] At first written *duo-  
rum*.

<sup>6</sup> *exerceat*] excerceat, MS.

<sup>7</sup> *unaquæque*] unaquaque, MS., and W. A. C. D. I.

A.D. 1179. troni ab ecclesiis in suo fundo constitutis exactiones non faciant. Ne episcopi seu viri ecclesiastici stare compellantur laicorum judicio,<sup>1</sup> nec laici laicis decimas conferre præsumant. Si quis ab aliquo, commodata<sup>2</sup> pecunia, possessiones in pignus acceperit, si, deductis expensis, sortem suam receperit ex fructibus possessionis, pignus restituat debitori.

*Epistola Alexandri papæ contra heresim Petri Lumbardi.*

Relatum<sup>3</sup> fuit præterea ejusdem papæ apostolati, Rog.Wend. quod magister Petrus Lumbardus in quibusdam scriptis suis ab articulis fidei deviavit; unde Willelmo, Senonensi archiepiscopo, literas sub hac forma direxit.<sup>4</sup>

Letter of “Alexander episcopus, servus servorum Dei, Willelmo, Rog.Wend. pope Alex- Senonensi archiepiscopo, salutem. Cum in nostra olim esses ii. 401. ander III. against the præsentia constitutus, tibi viva voce injunximus, ut, suffra-doctrine of ganeis tuis Parisius tibi ascitis, ad abrogationem pravæ doc-Peter Lom-trinæ Petri, quondam Parisiaceusis episcopi, qua dicitur, quod bard. Christus secundum quod est homo, non est aliquid, omnino intenderes, et efficacem operam adhiberes. Inde siquidem est, quod fraternitati tuæ per apostolica scripta mandamus, quatinus, quod tibi, cum præsens esses, præcipimus, suffraganeos<sup>5</sup> tuos Parisius convokes, et una cum illis et aliis viris religiosis et prudentibus præscriptam doctrinam studeas penitus abrogare, et a magistris scolaribus ibidem in theologia studentibus Christum, sicut perfectum Deum, sic et perfectum hominem ex anima et corpore consistentem, præcipias edoceri; universis firmiter et districte injungens, quod doctrina illa de cetero nequaquam docere præsumant, sed ipsam penitus detestentur.”

<sup>1</sup> *judicio*] Added in marg.

<sup>2</sup> *comodata*] comodata, MS.

<sup>3</sup> *Relatum*] The large initial letter was at first written D., and so in W. 1.

<sup>4</sup> This letter was written in June 1170. See Jaffé, p. 733.

<sup>5</sup> *suffraganeos*] suffraneos, MS.

*De libello abbatis Joachim, quem scriptisit contra A.D. 1179.  
Petrum Lombardum.*

- Rog.Wend. Scripsit etiam eisdem diebus contra eundem Petrum Work of  
ii. 401. Lombardum abbas Joachim Florensis cœnobii libellum, Joachim,  
vocans eum hæreticum et insanum, eo quod in libro Flor,  
Sententiarum, quem composuerat, idem Petrus de uni- against Peter Lombard.  
tate sive essentia Trinitatis dixit, "Quoniam quædam  
summa res est, Pater et Filius et Spiritus Sanctus, et  
Rog.Wend. illa non est generans, neque genita, nec procedens."  
ii. 402. Contra hanc assertionem opposuit abbas præfatus, quod  
non tam trinitatem astruebat in Deo quam quaterni-  
tatem, tres videlicet personas et illam communem  
essentiam quasi quartam manifeste protestans; quod  
nulla res est quæ sit Pater et Filius et Spiritus  
Sanctus, nec essentia, nec substantia, nec natura, quam-  
vis concedat, quod Pater et Filius et Spiritus Sanctus  
sunt una essentia, una substantia, et una natura. Et  
hanc suam assertionem idem Joachim hiis quæ se-  
quuntur auctoritatibus affirmat, "Tres sunt qui testi-  
monium dant in cœlo, Pater, Verbum, et Spiritus  
Sanctus, et huius tres unum sunt; et tres sunt qui tes-  
timonium dant in terra, spiritus, aqua, et sanguis, et  
huius tres unum sunt."<sup>1</sup> Item, "Volo, Pater, ut sint  
unum in nobis, sicut et nos unum sumus."<sup>2</sup> Unde  
fol. 69 b. videtur, quod sæpedictus [Joachim]<sup>3</sup> hujusmodi uni-  
tatem non veram et propriam, sed quasi collectivam  
et similitudinariam esse fateatur, quemadmodum multi  
homines unus populus.

*Quod papa Innocentius III. libellum Joachim  
dampnavit.*

- Rog.Wend. Stetit autem hæc indeterminata altercatio a diebus The work  
ii. 402. Alexandri papæ usque ad tempora Innocentii III. of Joachim  
condemned

<sup>1</sup> Ep. Joh. v. 7. 8.

<sup>2</sup> Joh. xvii. 22.

<sup>3</sup> Joachim] Supplied from W. A.

C. D.

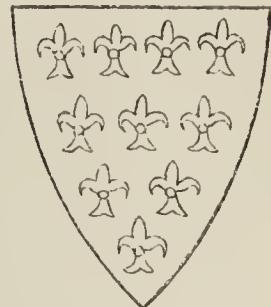
A.D. 1179. papæ per annos multos, sedentibus inter eos in cathedra Romana Lucio, Urbano, Gregorio, Clemente, et Innocentio, pontificibus Romanis. Quibus succedens reticulæ. Innocentius Tertius, anno Domini M<sup>o</sup>.CC<sup>o</sup>.XV<sup>o</sup>., Romæ generale concilium celebrans, libellum Joachim, quem contra Petrum edidit memoratum, hiis verbis dampnavit:<sup>1</sup> "Nos," inquit, "sacro et universali approbante concilio, credimus et confitemur cum Petro, quod una Rog.Wend. quædam suinma res est, incomprehensibilis quidem ii. 403. et ineffabilis,<sup>2</sup> quæ veraciter est Pater et Filius et Spiritus Sanctus, tres simul personæ, ac sigillatim<sup>3</sup> quælibet earumdem. Et ideo in Deo solummodo trinitas est et non quaternitas, quia quælibet trium personarum est illa res, substantia videlicet, essentia seu natura divina, quæ sola est universorum principium, præter quam aliud inveniri non potest. Et illa res non est generans, neque genita, neque procedens, sed est Pater qui generat, et Filius qui gignitur,<sup>4</sup> et Spiritus Sanctus qui procedit, ut distinctiones sint in personis, et unitas in natura. Licet enim alius sit Pater, alius Filius, alius Spiritus Sanctus, non tamen aliud. Pater enim ab æterno Filium generando substantiam ei dedit, juxta quod ipse testatur, 'Pater quod dedit mihi, majus omnibus est.'<sup>5</sup> Et diei non potest, quod partem suæ substantiæ illi dederit, et partem retinuerit ipse sibi, cum substantia Patris indivisibilis sit, utpote simplex omnino. Sed nec diei potest, quod Pater in Filium transtulerit suam substantiam generando illum, quasi sic dederit eam Filio, quod non retinuerit ipsam sibi, alioquin desiisset esse substantia. Filius vero substantiam Patris integrum nascendo accepit, et ita Pater et Filius eandem habent substantiam, et eadem res est Pater et Filius, nec non et Spiritus Sanctus, ab utroque procedens et in

<sup>1</sup> See Harduin, tom. vii. col. 18.<sup>2</sup> ineffabilis] effabilis, MS.<sup>3</sup> sigillatim] singillatim, MS.<sup>4</sup> gignitur] gingnitr, MS.<sup>5</sup> Joh. x. 29.

utroque manens. Non enim, ut ait abbas Joachim, A.D. 1179.  
fideles Christi sunt unum, id est, una quædam res,  
quæ communis sit omnibus, sed sunt unum in unione  
caritatis, in gratia; pro personis vero divinis, ut  
attendatur idemperitatis<sup>1</sup> unitas in natura. Dampna-  
mus igitur et reprobamus libellum Joachim sive doc-  
trinam, ita quod, si quis ejus sententiam in hac parte  
defendere vel approbare præsumpsert, tanquam hære-  
ticus ab omnibus habeatur." Sed hoc suo loco plenius  
determinabitur.

*Philippus consecratur in regem Francorum.<sup>2</sup>*

Eodem vero anno Philippus, filius Lodowici regis  
Francorum, in sollempnitate Omnis Sanctorum per  
manum Wilhelmi, Remensis archiepiscopi, in eadem  
civitate consecratur in regem Francorum, patre adhuc  
vivente, et tantæ coronationi omnia necessaria minis-  
trante.



Philip is crowned  
king of France.  
1 Nov.

*Princeps Walensium perimitur.*

Eodem tempore Cadwallanus, princeps Walensium, Cadwalan,  
coram rege Anglorum tractus in causam et multo-  
rum querelis impetus, dum sub regis conductu reme-  
asset, in itinere hostium perpessus insidias, interfectus  
est x<sup>o</sup>. kalendas Octobris. Quod plurimum in regis 22 Sept.  
scandalum redundavit, licet non deliquerit; unde auc-  
tores cædis graviter puniri præcepit.

*Confœderatio facta inter reges Francorum et  
Anglorum.*

Anno Domini M<sup>o</sup>.C<sup>o</sup>.LXXX<sup>o</sup>., habito inter regem Fran- A.D. 1180.  
corum Philippum, nuper coronatum, et regem Anglo- Treaty  
between

<sup>1</sup> *idemperitatis*] *idemperitas*, MS. and C. F. Corr. from W. A. D. I. and Harduin, Concilia, vii. eol. 19. shield of France, viz., azure, semée of fleurs-de-lis, 4, 3, 2, 1, surmounted by a crown.

<sup>2</sup> In the margin is drawn the

A.D. 1190. rum Henricum colloquio inter<sup>1</sup> Gisorcium et Triam,  
 Philip II. sicut convenit inter eos, videlicet sic : "Ego Philippus,  
 and Henry. Dei gratia rex Francorum, et ego Henricus, eadem  
 gratia rex Anglorum, ad omnium volumus pervenire  
 notitiam, quod foedus et amicitiam fide media innovavimus et sacramento. Et, ut omnes amodo inter  
 nos auferantur occasiones discordiae, concessimus ad Rog.Wen  
 invieem, ut de terris nostris et possessionibus, et de  
 omnibus aliis rebus, quos habemus modo, alter adversus  
 alterum nihil amodo petet, excepto de Arvernia,<sup>2</sup> de  
 qua inter nos est contentio, .et excepto feodo de  
 Castro-Radulphi, et exceptis minutis feudis nostris, et  
 divisis terrarum nostrarum de Berri. Si autem super  
 hiis, quae excepta sunt, per nosmetipsos convenire non  
 poterimus, ego Philippus tres elegi episcopos et barones,  
 et ego Henricus totidem, et nos judicio eorum stabimus firmiter et bona fide."<sup>3</sup>

*Obiit Lodowicus, rex Francorum pius.<sup>4</sup>*

Death of Louis VII. Eodemque tempore Lodowicus, rex Francorum piis- Rog.Wen  
 simus ac Christianissimus, et pius<sup>5</sup> beati Thomæ mar- ii. 405.  
 tiris consolator, et in tribulatione et exilio receptator.  
 et protector, Parisius diem clausit extremum, xiiii.  
 18 Sept. kalendas Octobris. Et sepultus est in monasterio  
 Cisterciensis Ordinis, quod Barbellum nuncupatur, pro-  
 priis sumptibus constructo.<sup>6</sup>

<sup>1</sup> *Henricum colloquio inter*] Written over an erasure, but the words erased are merely a repetition of *Philippum nuper coronatum*.

<sup>2</sup> *Arvernia*] Arvenia, MS. ; *Al-  
 vernia*, Hoveden, p. 593.

<sup>3</sup> This treaty is given at length in Hoveden, p. 593. In Diceto it is

dated 4 kal. Jul. [28 June], col. 610.

<sup>4</sup> The shield of France (as above) reversed is drawn between the columns of the text.

<sup>5</sup> *et pius*] On an erasure.

<sup>6</sup> *constructo*] At first written *con-  
 structum*.

*Ricardus, comes Pictaviæ, terras Gaufridi de Liziniaco<sup>1</sup> graviter afflxit.*

A.D. 1180.

Rog. Wend. Per idem quoque tempus Aquitannorum dux Ricardus Richard,  
ii. 405. et Henrici regis filius, per superbiam Gaufridi de duke of  
Rancona multis sæpe lacesitus injuriis, collectis undi- Aquitaine,  
que copiis militaribus, Tailleburg, castellum ejusdem attacks the  
G[aufridi], obsidione vallavit; opus desperatissimum, castle of  
et quod suorum nullus antecessorum attemptare præ- Taille-  
sumpsit. Castrum enim illud ante dies illos hostium bourg.  
cuneis prorsus incognitum, triplici fossato totidemque  
mœniis septum, seris, armis et repagulis sufficienter  
communitum, turribusque per intervalla cum propug-  
naculis roboratum, abundans<sup>2</sup> in victualibus et militi-  
bus, ducis Ricardi, licet impetuosum, non expavit  
adventum. Sed postea<sup>3</sup> dux memoratus, qui leone  
fortior extitit et audacior, partes illas hostiliter inva-  
dit,<sup>4</sup> contremuerunt incolæ a formidabili adventu illius;  
. pomeria enim et vineas, quibus patria illa abundat,<sup>5</sup>  
. succidit, domos succedit, et, miserabile faciens exter-  
minium, omnia demoliendo contrivit. Prope igitur  
castellum tentoria fixit, proprius machinas erigendo fit  
. assaultus acerrimus, nec inclusis requies est concessa.  
Tandem de communi consilio civium placuit obsessis, ut  
ante expectatum foras erumperent, et expeterent ducis  
exercitum improvise. Quod cum animose satis attemp-  
tassent, dux suos ad arma ruere persuasit, et retrorsum  
cedere compulit oppidanos;<sup>6</sup> sed in ipso portarum  
ingressu, cum dux terga dantes insequeretur, fit gra-  
vissimus hinc inde conflictus, dum ibidem quid equus,<sup>7</sup>  
quid lancea, quid ensis, quid clipeus,<sup>8</sup> quid galea cer-

<sup>1</sup> *Liziniaco*] So also W. A. D., but, apparently, an error. In C. *Rancona*, to agree with the text, which is borrowed from Diceto, col. 603. See under A.D. 1188, p. 446. In Ben. Abb. p. 500, the two persons are clearly distinguished, as also in Anselme, "Hist. Genealogique," tom. iii. p. 77. Richard was both

duke of Aquitaine and earl of Poitou.

<sup>2</sup> *abundans*] habundans, MS.

<sup>3</sup> *postea*] At first written *post*.

<sup>4</sup> *invadit*] Added in marg.

<sup>5</sup> *abundat*] habundat, MS.

<sup>6</sup> *oppidanos*] opidanos, MS.

<sup>7</sup> *equus*] equus, MS.

<sup>8</sup> *clipeus*] clepeus, MS.

A.D. 1180. tantibus conferant, experitur. Oppidanis<sup>1</sup> denique assultus ducis, qui semper prævium se exhibuit, acerri-  
mos ultra ferre non valentibus, sed intra mœnia sese certatim recipientibus, dux impiger<sup>2</sup> raptim pariter intra villam se contulit, hostibus commixtum et associatum, commilitonibus et signiferis subsequentibus. Et cum civibus nusquam locus pateret diffugii, per plateas hinc inde discurritur; cædibus, rapinis insistitur et incendiis; et quos felix eventus<sup>3</sup> ab hiis eruit,  
The castle  
is razed to  
the ground.  
Richard  
returns to  
England.
ad castellum confugiunt principale. Castelli tandem dominus ad deditio[n]em compellitur, facies murorum ligonibus, rastris et tridentibus ilico solotenus complanatur. Alia quoque castella rebellionis terrore concussa, exemplo prioris fortioris et majoris, infra mensem simile subiere discrimen. Omnibus igitur ad votum completis, dux Ricardus transfretavit in Angliam, maximoque est receptus [honore],<sup>4</sup> velut triumphator magnificus, [a]<sup>5</sup> genitore.

*Rex Francorum Philippus regnum suum sub dispositione regis Anglorum commisit.*

A.D. 1181. Anno Domini M<sup>o</sup>.C<sup>o</sup>.LXXX<sup>o</sup>.I<sup>o</sup>., cum rex Francorum Rog. Wend.  
ii. 407.  
Philip  
commits  
the charge  
of his realm  
to king  
Henry.  
Nota in-  
comparabi-  
lem regis  
H[enrici]  
sapientiam.
Philippus, cum<sup>6</sup> quibusdam de suis sibi ad memoriam reducentibus, cognovisset<sup>7</sup> qualiter rex Anglorum regnum suum tam late diffusum in<sup>8</sup> tam barbaris nationibus, Scotis scilicet, Hiberniensibus<sup>9</sup> et Walensi- bus, ex una parte, ultramarinis ex alia, unde, ut breviter dicatur, undique pacifice ac discrete gubernaret, de commun[i] consilio domesticorum suorum prædicti regis dispositioni omne regnum et seipsum com-

<sup>1</sup> *Oppidanis*] Opidanis, MS.

<sup>2</sup> *impiger*] The last two letters are on an erasure.

<sup>3</sup> *eventus*] Added on to the text.

<sup>4</sup> *honore*] Supplied from W. A. C. D.

<sup>5</sup> *a*] Supplied from the same.

<sup>6</sup> *cum*] On an erasure, but so also in W. and all the MSS. It seems superfluous, and is omitted in ed. Wend.

<sup>7</sup> *cognovisset*] congnovisset, MS.

<sup>8</sup> *in*] a, W. A. C. D. and Diceto, col. 611.

<sup>9</sup> *Hiberniensibus*] Added in marg.

misit. Hoc etiam exemplo rex Anglorum ductus, cum A.D. 1181. totam Normanniam filii sui regis dispositioni suppō- suisset, viii<sup>o</sup>. kalendas Augusti in Angliam transiens, 25 July. beatum Thomam martirem gratia orationis petivit, Henry returns to regnum suum et Francorum, immo corpus suum et England, animam, ejus committens gubernationi. Quod cum ad and places audientiani regis Francorum devolveretur, circumse- his king- dentibus jocosa quadam dixit maturitate, "Eja, jam the pro- duos praeelectos habeo regni mei conservatores, sanctum tection of St.Thomas. Thomam, pretiosissimum martirem in cœlis, et poten- Witty tissimum regem Henricum in terris. O utinam et ego speech of Louis. saltem patris mei meritis ejusdem martiris tutelæ commendar, regar in anima et conserver in corpore!"

*Obiit Rogerus, archiepiscopus Eboracensis.*

Reg.Wend. Eodem quoque anno Rogerus, Eboracensis archi- Death of  
ii. 407. episcopus, diem clausit supremum, xii<sup>o</sup>. kalendas De- Roger, abp.  
cembris. Qui adhuc vivens, [a papa]<sup>1</sup> Alexandro 20 Nov. privilege impetraverat, ut si clericus suæ suppositus Privilege  
jurisdictioni, agens in extremis testamentum conficeret, obtained  
et propriis manibus bona sua moriturus non distri- by him  
bueret, archiepiscopus haberet facultatem injiciendi<sup>2</sup> from pope Alexander.  
manus<sup>3</sup> in bona defuncti. Unde, quia non caritas sed  
avaritia hujus impetrationis causa fuisse non est am-  
biguum, secus quam deceret meruit ab hoc seculo  
migrare. Et quoniam quod quisque juris in alterum Ilis wealth  
statuerit, uti debet eodem jure, post mortem memo- confis-  
rati archiepiscopi<sup>4</sup> qualemqualem, quæcunque reperta cated after  
sunt in thesauris ejus justo Dei judicio ilico sunt his death.  
confiscata; quorum summa ascendit ad xi. milia libra-  
rum argenti,<sup>5</sup> cuppæ vero aureæ<sup>6</sup> et argenteæ vii.,

<sup>1</sup> *a papa*] Supplied from W. A. C. D.

<sup>5</sup> *argenti*] In W. A. C. D. is added here, "et aurei trecenti."

<sup>2</sup> *injiciendi*] iniciendi, MS.

<sup>3</sup> *manus*] Added in marg.

<sup>4</sup> *archiepiscopi*] episcopi, MS. and F. Corr. from W. A. C. D.

<sup>6</sup> *cuppæ vero aureæ*] cuppa aurea, W. A. C. D.

A.D. 1181. ciphi argentei ix., præter alia, quæ non oportet, licet carissima, numerare. Monetam tamen totam dudum coacervaverat ad dejectionem beati Thomæ, Cantuariensis archiepiscopi.

*Epistola Alexandri papæ ad Johannem presbiterum,  
[regem]<sup>1</sup> Indorum.*

Letter of Circa eosdem dies<sup>2</sup> papa Alexander scripsit presbi- Rog. Wend.  
the pope to Prester ii. 408.  
tero Johanni, Indorum regi, in hæc verba :

John, king  
of India.

“ Alexander episcopus karissimo in Christo filio . . .<sup>3</sup> salutem et apostolicam benedictionem. Audieramus jampridem, referentibus multis, quomodo, cum sis Christianam religionem feliciter professus, piis velis operibus incumbere diligenter; sed dilectus filius noster Philippus medicus, qui de intentione propria et proposito tuo cum magnis et honorabilibus viris tui regni se verbum habuisse proponit, sicut vir providus constanter nobis retulit, sc manifestius ab hiis audivisse, quod tuæ voluntatis sit et propositi erudiri catholica et apostolica disciplina, et ad hoc ferventer intendas, ut tu et cuncta plebs tuæ sullimitati commissa nihil<sup>4</sup> unquam videamini in fide vestra<sup>5</sup> tenere, quod a doctrina sedis apostolice dissentiat. Illud autem ad commendationem tuæ virtutis accedit, quod, sicut praedictus Philippus se a tuis asserit audivisse, ferventi desiderio cuperes in urbe habere ecclesiam, et Jerusalem altare aliquod, ubi viri religiosi de regno tuo et prudentes manere possent, et apostolica plenius instrui disciplina, per quos tui et homines tui doctrinam ipsam facilius recipieren et tencrent. Nos autem vos ab hiis articulis, in quibus erratis a Christiana et catholica fide, revocare volentes, præfatum Philippum ad tuam remittimus<sup>6</sup> magnitudinem, per quem de articulis fidei Christianæ, in quibus tu et tui a nobis discordare videmini, in proximo per Dei<sup>7</sup> gratiam eruditus, nihil prorsus timere

fol. 70 b.

Rog. Wend.  
ii. 409.

<sup>1</sup> regem] Supplied from W. A. C. D.

resira, as in C. sec. m. and Hoveden, p. 581.

<sup>2</sup> This letter is assigned by Jaffé, p. 775, to Sept. 1177.

<sup>6</sup> remittimus] At first written mittimus, as in W. A. C. D.

<sup>3</sup> A blank is here left in MS.

<sup>7</sup> Dei] So also W. F. I. and Hoveden, p. 581; fidei, C. D., Edd. and ed. Wend.

<sup>4</sup> nihil] nichil, MS.  
<sup>5</sup> vestra] nostra, MS. and so W.A. C. pr. m., D. l., but the sense requires

poteris, quod de errore tuam vel tuorum salutem præpediat, A.D. 1181.  
vel in vobis<sup>1</sup> nomen Christianitatis obsuscet."

*Papæ Alexandro Lucius successit.*

R.Wend. Eodemque anno, vigilia Exaltationis sanctæ Crucis, Eclipse of  
facta est eclipsis solis, hora tertia. Anno quoque 13 Sept.  
ii. 409. sub eodem obiit papa Alexander, postquam sedisset in Death of  
cathedra Romana annis xxii.<sup>2</sup> Successit autem ei Hun- pope Alex-  
baldus, Hostiensis episcopus, et vocatus est Lucius ander III.  
Tertius, sedens in ecclesia apostolica annis Lucius III.  
succeeds.

*Regina Francorum.*

Rog.Wend. Eodem anno Philippus, rex Francorum, duxit uxo- Marriage  
ii. 409. rem Margaretam,<sup>3</sup> filiam Baldewini, comitis Hamau- of Philip  
to the  
eensium, ex Margareta, sorore Philippi, comitis Flan- daughter of  
drensis, susceptam. the count of  
Hainault.

*Nova moneta.*

Rog.Wend. Eodem anno, moneta veteri in Anglia reprobata, New  
ii. 409. nova successit, in festo sancti Martini. Eodemque coinage  
anno<sup>4</sup> Baldewinus, abbas Fordensis, Cisterciensis Ordi- 11 Nov.  
nis, successit Rogero episcopo ad ecclesiam Wigorni- Baldwin  
ensem. made  
bishop of  
Worcester.

*Gaufridus, Lincolniensis electus, renunciavit electioni.*

Rog.Wend. Anno Domini M<sup>o</sup>.C<sup>o</sup>.LXXX<sup>o</sup>.II<sup>o</sup>. Gaufridus, Lincolniensis A.D. 1182.  
ii. 409. electus et regis Anglorum filius, cum ejus electio esset Geoffrey  
a domino papa confirmata, postquam per septennium resigns  
eidem ecclesiæ præfuisset pacifice, præsente rege et the bishop-  
episcopis regni, in Epiphania Domini apud Merleberge rie of  
electioni sponte renunciavit. Lincoln. 6 Jan.

<sup>1</sup> *vobis*] nobis, MS. and W. A. C. D., erroneously.

<sup>2</sup> *xxii.*] xxi. MS. and E. Corr. from W. I. In A.C.D.F., falsely, *xii.*

<sup>3</sup> *Margaretam*] A mistake for *Isabellam*, copied from Wendover,

and so in all the MSS. The marriage took place 28 Apr. 1180. See "L'Art de Vérifier les Dates," i. 577.

<sup>4</sup> Baldwin was consecrated bp. of Worcester 10 Aug. 1180. Fasti, iii. 50.

A.D. 1182. *Rex, facta quadam maxima elemosina, transfretavit.*

Henry gives a large sum in aid of the Holy Land, and crosses to Normandy.

Eodem tempore rex H[enricus] apud Waltham, in Rog.Wend. præsentia procerum regni,<sup>1</sup> ad subventionem Terræ Sanctæ xlii. milia mareas argenti et quingentas mareas auri liberaliter assignavit. Et sic in Normanniam Rog.Wend. transfretavit.<sup>ii. 409. ii. 410.</sup>

*Dux Saxonum Henricus venit ad<sup>2</sup> regem.*

Henry, duke of Saxony, munificently treated by the king.

Quibus utique diebus dux Saxonum Henricus et Rog.Wend. gener regis, ab imperatore in exilium pulsus, in Normanniam venit ad regem, duens secum ducissam et duos filios ejus, Henricum scilicet et Othonem; et per tres annos exhibitus est a regali munificentia in omnibus vitæ necessariis abundanter.<sup>3</sup><sup>ii. 410.</sup>

Walter, archdeacon of Oxford, consecrated bishop of Lincoln. Death of Walter bishop of Rochester.

*Fit episcopus Lincolniensis. Obiit Rofensis.<sup>4</sup>*

Eodemque anno Walterus de Constantiis, archidiaco- Rog.Wend. nus Oxoniensis, consecratus est episcopus Lincolniensis<sup>5</sup> ii. 410. a Ricardo, Cantuariensi archiepiscopo. Eodem quoque anno obiit Walterus,<sup>6</sup> Rofensis episcopus.

*De morte Simonis, abbatis Sancti Albani, cui succedit Garinus, et qualiter acceptus fuit regi?*

A.D. 1183. Anno Domini M<sup>o</sup>.C<sup>o</sup>.LXXX<sup>o</sup>.III<sup>o</sup>. defuneto Simone, ab-Rog.Wend. Death of Simon, abbot of St. Albans.

bate Sancti Albani, Warinus, ejusdem ecclesiae prior, vir quidem profundi pectoris in ordine conservando,.

<sup>1</sup> *regni*] *rengni*, MS.

<sup>2</sup> *ad*] Repeated, but underscored for omission.

<sup>3</sup> *abundanter*] *habundantur*, MS.

<sup>4</sup> In the margin are drawn a mitre and erosier creet, and also another mitre and erosier reversed.

<sup>5</sup> He was not consecrated till 12 June 1183. *Fasti*, ii. 8.

<sup>6</sup> *Walterus*] *Rogerns*, MS. and E. F., erroneously.

<sup>7</sup> This chapter is omitted in F.

et in consiliis juris ecclesiastici et civilis<sup>1</sup> peritus, et in A.D. 1183.  
 literatura multiplici eleganter eruditus, eligitur in ab- Warren  
 batem. Quod cum regi innotuisset, ipsum electum <sup>elected</sup> abbot.  
 gratanter acceptavit, promittens suum patrocinium do-  
 mui Sancti Albani sub tali pastore non deesse.

*De morte Henrici, regis junioris.*

Rog.Wend. Circa dies quoque illos rex Henricus diligentem ope- Henry  
 ii. 410. ram impendit, ut filii ejus, Gaufridus de Britannia et <sup>urges his</sup> sons  
 Ricardus de ducatu Aquitaniae, homagium facerent filio Geoffrey  
 suo primogenito, regi Henrico. Quod quidem pater <sup>and Ri-</sup>chard to  
 petiit, Gaufridus de comitatu Britanniæ gratanter an- do homage  
 nuit et complevit. Ricardus vero, cum rogatus a patre <sup>to the</sup> young  
 idipsum facere debuisse, ira incanduit vehementi, in- king.  
 congruum esse dicens, cum ex eodem patre et matre Richard  
 ducerent originem, si, patre vivente, fratrem primo- refuses.  
 genitum aliqua subjectionis forma<sup>2</sup> agnoscerent supe-  
 riorem; sed, sicut fratri primogenito bona debentur  
 paterna, sic et in bonis maternis successionem legi-  
 timam vendicabat. Hæc autem audiens rex pater,  
 Rog.Wend. ii. 411. iracundia calore succensus, adversus Ricardum dura  
 proposuit, et, ut rex junior ad edemandam fratris  
 superbiam totus insurgeret, constanter indixit. Habi- The young  
 tis igitur inter se colloquiis frequenter, cum spes nulla king raises  
 de pace haberetur, rex [juvenis]<sup>3</sup> undique copiosum forces  
 congregavit exercitum. Et dum congredi cum fratre against  
 suo decrevisset, præcisa est, velut a texente, vita ejus, Richard,  
 quæ spem multorum deficiens præcidit. Siquidem in but dies  
 flore juventutis, cum annum ætatis vicesimum octavum suddenly.  
 complevisset, intra<sup>4</sup> Guasconiam, in illo tractu terræ  
 quæ Turoinna dicitur, apud castellum [Martel],<sup>5</sup> in  
 festo sancti Barnabæ apostoli, rex junior de medio est  
 11 Junc.

<sup>1</sup> *in . . . civilis]* On an erasure.

<sup>2</sup> *forma]* Added in marg.

<sup>3</sup> *juvenis]* Supplied from W. A.

C. D.

<sup>4</sup> *intra]* inter, MS.

<sup>5</sup> *Martel]* Supplied from W. A.

C. D.

A.D. 1183. sublatus.<sup>1</sup> Corpus autem in lineis pannis, id est, vestibus candidis, quas habuit in consecratione sacro crismate delibatas, regaliter involutum, Rothomagum delatum est, et in ecclesia cathedrali prope majus altare cum honore tanto congruo principi tumulatur. Eodem tempore Girardus, cognomento<sup>2</sup> Puella, consecratus est<sup>3</sup> episcopus Coventrensis; qui cum x. septimanis sedisset, in fata concessit. Eodemque anno Walterus de Constantiis, Lincolniensis antistes, in Angliam veniens, in sua sede sollempniter est collocatus.



Death of  
Girard,  
bp. of  
Coventry.

A.D. 1184. Anno Domini M<sup>o</sup>.C<sup>o</sup>.LXXX<sup>o</sup>.III<sup>o</sup>. Ricardus, Cantuariensis archiepiscopus, apud Hallingum, villam Rofensis episcopi, diem clausit extremum.

The duke  
of Saxony  
comes to  
England.  
Birth of  
his son  
William.

*Henricus, dux Saxonum, venit in Angliam.*

fol. 71 a.

Eodemque anno rex Henricus duxit in Angliam Rog.Wend. ii. 411. Saxoniæ ducem, cum familia sua. Et infra dies paucos apud Wintoniam peperit ducissa filium, quem vocavit Willielmum.

Rog.Wend. ii. 411.

Rog.Wend. ii. 412.

*Duo cliguntur archiepiscopi, Cantuariensis et Rothomagensis.*

Election of  
the abps. of  
Canter-  
bury and  
Rouen.

Anno quoque sub eodem Baldewinus, Wigorniensis episcopus, electus est archiepiscopus Cantuariensis, et Walterus Lincolniensis electus est archiepiscopus Rothomagensis. Qui, susceptis palliis,<sup>4</sup> in suis sunt sedibus sollempniter et rite collocati.

Rog.Wend. ii. 412.

<sup>1</sup> In the margin is drawn the shield of England, reversed, with a crown beneath it. At the side is written in red letters, "Corona et clipeus regis Henrici junioris."

<sup>2</sup> cognomento] cognomento, MS.

<sup>3</sup> est] On an erasure.

<sup>4</sup> palliis] paliis, MS.

*Archiepiscopus Coloniensis et comes Flandrensis A.D. 1184.  
veniunt in Angliam.*

Rog. Wend. Tempore quoque sub eodem Philippus, archiepiscopus The abp. ii. 412. Colonensis, et Philippus, comes Flandrensis, venerunt of Cologne and count in Angliam, vota orationum beato Thomæ martiri solu- of Flanders turi. Quibus rex Anglorum occurrens, petiit ut Lon- pay their donias venirent, [visuri]<sup>1</sup> regiam civitatem. In quo- vows to St. rum adventu, quomodo autea visum non fuerat, civitas coronata resplenduit, ex præcepto regis; gaudium et diversi joci per plateas insonuerunt. Archiepiscopus quoque Colonensis, et cum eo comes Flandrensis, in They are ecclesia Sancti Pauli sollempniter cum processionis tri- received at pudio sunt suscepti. Et die eodem, simili honore sibi London exhibito, et per v. sequentes, in magno palatio regis with great expensis sunt effusioribus hospitati; sed, an multis honoribus donati recesserint, quaerere superfluum vide- return. Eodemque anno, ut Deo et beato Thomæ The king plenius reconciliaretur, rex Henricus fundavit unam founds a domum de Ordine Cartusiae in Anglia; ad cuius regi- house of men vocavit fratrem Hugonem, postea episcopum Lin- the Car- colniensem et sanctum. Et maxime hoc fecit pro anima thusian Order. regis H[enrici], filii sui, licet ipsum provocaverit.<sup>2</sup>

*Obiit episcopus Sarisbiriensis.*

Rog. Wend. Eodemque anno obiit Jocelinus, episcopus Saresbiri- Death of ii. 412. ensis. Joscelin, bishop of Salisbury.

*Sarraceni Hispanice Christianos inquietantes con-  
funduntur.*

Rog. Wend. Horum quoque dierum curriculis, circa festum beati Hostile ii. 412. Johannis Baptiste, rex Sarracenorum qui sunt in proceed- Hyspania, Gamius, duxit regem regum Sarracenorum, ings of the Saracens in Spain. 24 June.

<sup>1</sup> *visuri*] Supplied from W. A. | <sup>2</sup> *Eodemque . . . provocaverit*] Added C. D. in marg., and inserted in text of F.

		They are defeated by the prince of Portugal.	A.D. 1184. nomine Macemunt, intra fines Christianorum, cum regibus xxxvii. Qui in primis obsederunt Sanctum Hyrenaeum, <sup>1</sup> et tribus diebus et totidem noctibus pugnaverunt, <sup>2</sup> et tandem, dejectis mœniis, intraverunt; qui autem interius muros defendebant, sese infra turrem receperunt, ut ibidem protegerentur. Nocte vero sequenti venit antistes Portigalensis, cum filio regis, et xv. milia peremerunt Sarracenorum, et regem Gadium, ducem eorum; et posuerunt corpora defunctorem ubi murus dejectus erat, ut per ea loco muri defenderentur. In crastino autem, scilicet die sanctorum Johannis et Pauli, archiepiscopus sancti Jacobi xx. milia conduxit armatorum, et in aurora diei de Sarracenis xxx. milia interfecit. In die beatæ Margaretæ postea, apud Alcubaz, peremerunt Sarraceni x. milia mulierum et infantum; sed illi, qui fuerunt in oppido <sup>3</sup> Alcubazexeuntes, tres reges cum omni eorum exercitu percusserunt. Postea vero, in vigilia sancti Jacobi, rex Macemunt audivit quod Galaciae rex <sup>4</sup> advenerat hoc postulatus, ut solus cum solo dimicaret; utroruinque namque <sup>5</sup> exercitus in hoc consensit, ut regum duello generalis conflictus terminatur. Macemund autem ad pugnam <sup>6</sup> præparatus, cum equum vellet ascendere, tremebundus præ pavore, febre correptus est, et tertio, cum equum jam ascendiisset, ex pusillanimitate pavore vel febre interiit. Quo mortuo, totus ejus fugit exercitus, omni pecunia derelicta. Rex vero Portigalensis victor, nec cruentus, qui sine vulnere, immo sine ictu, de hoste tanto victoriā reportavit, ex captivis Sarracenis dedit servos, qui cementariis ministrarent ad ecclesias, quas Sarraceni destruxerant, reparandas; et de eorum auro sancto Vincentio auream fecit thecam, gemmis pretiosis redimitam.	Rog. Wend. ii. 413.
26 June.				
20 July.				
25 July.				
Death of Macemund, the Saracen monarch.				
Distribution of the Saracen prisoners.				

<sup>1</sup> *Hyrenæum*, Hereneum, MS.

<sup>5</sup> *namque*] *nanque*, MS. through-

<sup>2</sup> *pugnaverunt*] *pungnaverunt*, MS. out.

out.

<sup>3</sup> *oppido*] opido, MS.

<sup>6</sup> *pugnam*] *pungnam*, MS.

[*recd.*] Added in marg.

Venerunt autem postea galeæ infinitæ Sarracenorum A.D. 1184. apud Ulixebonam, ducentes dromundum, in quo talis erat machina, quod per ipsam poterant ire et redire ultra muros civitatis armati, dummodo navis possit muris applicari; mare autem mœnia lambebat civitatis. Deo tamen disponente, quidam in aqua messor<sup>1</sup> se dromundi carinæ supposuit, et, eo terebrato per loca plurima, cum omnibus contentis miserabiliter ipsa immanis navalis machina submersa est. Sarraeni autem se delusos cognoscentes, ilico, sibi vento favente, fugerunt, infinita bona, quæ sua fuerant, relinquentes.

*Guido de Liziniaco regni Jerusalem constituitur procurator.*

Rog. Wend. Regnavit autem sub hiis diebus in Jerusalem Bal- Malady of ii. 414. denuinus, Almarici quondam regis filius. Qui ab initio Baldwin regni sui elefantino laborans incommodo,<sup>2</sup> jam jam of Jeru- lumen amiserat oculorum; et, putrescentibus membro- rum extremitatibus, pedes ejus et manus officium sibi morbido denegarunt. Regiam tamen administrationem, licet corpore debilis esset, animo fortis et circumspec- tus, supra vires nitebatur adimplere. Convocatis itaque tandem regni principibus, matre præsente et patriarcha, Guidonem de Liziniaco, comitem scilicet Jopensem et Guy de Aschalonitarum,<sup>3</sup> ejusdem regni universitas<sup>4</sup> constituit Lusignan appointed procuratorem. Habuit autem idem Guido sororem regis guardian uxorem, nomine Sibillam, quæ prius marchisio de of the Monte-Ferrato matrimonio copulata, filium ex illo sus- who is re- ceperat, nomine Baldwinum. Sed cum, aliquo tempore placed by Guidone procuratore existente, Jerosolimitanum non count of fol. 71 b. prosparetur regnum, rex, amoto eo, Reinundo, comiti Tripoli. Tripolitano, regni curam commisit.

<sup>1</sup> *messor*] Added in marg.

<sup>2</sup> *incommodo*] *ineomodo*, MS.

<sup>3</sup> *Aschalonitarum*] Ascalonita- num, W. A. C. D.

<sup>4</sup> *universitas*] Added, partly on an

erasure, and omitted in W. A. C. D.

A.D. 1184. *Salahadinus, vel Saladinus, Babilonie Soldanus, civitates Christianorum subvertendo destruit Christianos.*

Conquests  
of Saladin.

Contigit autem hac tempestate, ut Salahadinus, vel <sup>Rog. Wend.</sup> <sub>ii. 414.</sub> Saladinus, vel Salaadinus,<sup>1</sup> Babiloniæ et Damasci Soldanus, subjugatis sibi quampluribus orientis regibus, adeo, Deo permittente, invaluit, ut rex regum et dominus dominantium diceretur, et obedirent ei omnium <sup>Rog. Wend.</sup> <sub>ii. 415.</sub> fere gentium nationes. Natus autem erat ex quadam muliere nobili Christiana et Anglica, sclava, et a viro suo rapta; vir autem ejusdem,<sup>2</sup> qui<sup>3</sup> miles fuit strenuissimus, similiter eaptus et captivus. Unde multum dilexit<sup>4</sup> regem Ricardum, tum quia fuit Anglorum rex, tum quia militum fuit strenuissimus; sed proelium inter eos continuum amicitiam exsufflavit.<sup>5</sup> Erat insuper idem Saladinus miles strenuus, audax et bellicosus, et super omnes munificus et dapsilis. Adjecit igitur ex animi magnitudine, ut superius dicetur, sibi Christianitatem, non<sup>6</sup> Terræ tantum Sanctæ, sed etiam totius occidentis sibi potenter subjugare. Mense igitur intrante Aprilis,<sup>7</sup> Jordanem transivit, terramque circa castrum Crac, quod antiqua appellatione Petra-Deserti He ravages dicebatur, feraliter devastavit, prædas egit, cibaria collegit. Indeque progrediens ad urbem Sebasteam et Jordan. Neapolim, omnia spoliavit, et residuum conseruavit; Sebasteæ vero episcopus ecclesiam suam lxxx. bisanciis eum<sup>8</sup> captivis redemit. Indeque Arabiam veniens, eam destruxit, viris et mulieribus captivatis.<sup>9</sup> Ad magnum<sup>10</sup>

<sup>1</sup> In the margin is added, "Nota de triplici nomine illius magni regis."

<sup>2</sup> *eiusdem*] At first written *eius*.

<sup>3</sup> *qui*] Interlined.

<sup>4</sup> *dilexit*] The last two letters of this word are on an erasure.

<sup>5</sup> *exsufflavit*] *exsufflavit*, MS.

<sup>6</sup> *Christianitatem non*] Christianita, MS., after which is an erasure. The hiatus is supplied from F.

<sup>7</sup> *Aprilis*] Interlined. In W. A. C. D., *Julio*.

<sup>8</sup> *bisanciis eum*] Interlined.

<sup>9</sup> *captivatis*] *eaptivitatis*, MS.

<sup>10</sup> *magnum*] *mangnum*, MS.

quoque inde Gerinum veniens, castrum diruit, et, qui- A.D. 1184.  
busdam captivatis, mulieres et parvulos interfecit.  
Inde [ad]<sup>1</sup> Gerinum minus<sup>2</sup> veniens, quæ villa Templi  
est, eam vastavit. Et recedens per castrum quoddam  
Hospitalis, quod Belverium dicitur, quibusdam captis,  
quibusdam imperfectis, recessit.

*Rex Anglorum H[enricus] eligitur in regem  
Jerusalem.*

Rog. Wend. Mortuo interea Baldewino,<sup>3</sup> Jerosolimorum rege le- Death of  
ii. 415. proso, regnavit pro eo Baldewinus, puer quinque Baldwin  
annorum, nepos ejus, ex sorore Sibilla et Willelmo, IV. Baldwin  
marchione Montis-Ferrati, genitus. Qui statim in succeeds,  
regem coronatus, Reimundo, comiti Tripolitano, com- aged five  
mittitur nutriendus. Salaadinus igitur audiens quod years.  
post leprosum regnaret puer, sannas inde faciens, cœpit  
confidentius sperare quod influeret Jordanis in os  
suum, omnia absorpturus.<sup>4</sup> Videntes igitur clerus et The clergy  
populus regnum in eum devenisse statum, scilicet, in and people  
quem non posset diu subsistere, quid facto opus sit, resolve to  
diligenter pertractant. Et cum pax Salaadini haberetur offer the  
suspecta,—quievit enim tunc temporis, forte aliquo gra- crown to  
vatus morbo,—de rege puero nihil remedii sperabatur. the king of  
Tandem omnibus unum erat consilium, ut ad Henricum, England.  
Anglorum regem, quo non erat in Christianitate, immo  
nec in mundo, potentior, ditior, aut sapientior, [num-  
cium]<sup>5</sup> aliquem sollempnem destinaret, qui ei ex parte  
universitatis regni Jerosolimitani regnum offerrent, et  
claves sanctæ civitatis et sepulchri<sup>6</sup> Domini sanctæque

<sup>1</sup> ad] Supplied from W. A. C. D.

<sup>2</sup> minus] Added on to the text.

<sup>3</sup> Baldwin IV. did not die till 10 March 1185. "L'Art de Vérifier les Dates," i. 444.

<sup>4</sup> absorpturus] absorturus, MS.

<sup>5</sup> nuncium] Originally written mitterent, but all the letters erased, except the first. The word wanting

has been supplied from F. which reads, *modo scilicet aliquem solempnem nuncium*. In W. A. C. D. we have *legatos mitterent*, which accounts for the plural verbs which follow, but which, in the text, should be in the singular.

<sup>6</sup> sepulchri] sepuchri, MS.

A.D. 1184. resurrectionis<sup>1</sup> sollempniter deportarent. Eraclius au- Rog.Wend.  
 The tem patriarcha hujus officium legationis ab omnibus  
 patriarcha multum rogatus suscepit. Qui, adjuncto sibi Magistro  
 undertakes Hospitalis, et quibusdam aliis, mare Mediterraneum in-  
 the em- columis prospere transivit; et Romam usque perveniens,  
 bassy. ad regem Anglorum literas deprecatorias et verba  
 consolatoria, sed nihil<sup>2</sup> aliud, a papa Lucio impetravit. .

*Eraclius patriarcha in Angliam veniens, regi electio-  
 nem de se factam publicavit.*

A.D. 1185. Anno Domini M<sup>o</sup>.C<sup>o</sup>.LXXX<sup>o</sup>.V<sup>o</sup>. Eraclius, patriarcha Rog.Wend.  
 Arrival of sanctæ resurrectionis, et dominus Rogerus, Magister ii. 416.  
 Eraclius domus Hospitalis Jerusalem, venerunt ad regem Angliæ  
 and the Master of the Hos- Henricum apud Radingum. Qui cum sui itineris cau-  
 pital in England. sas cum suis literis apostolicis exposuissent, sanctæque  
 civitatis Jerusalem et Terræ Promissionis desolationem  
 per ordinem enarrassent, regem et omnem multitudinem,  
 quæ convenerat, in lacrimas et suspiria provocarunt.  
 The keys of the holy places and banner of Jerusalem are offered to the king. Deferebant enim ad regem memorabilia suæ signa pe-  
 titionis, videlicet, nativitatis Jesu Christi, passionis,  
 resurrectionis, turris David, sanctique sepulchri claves  
 et vexillum regium, quæ super omnia rex acceptavit  
 et honoravit. Literæ vero domini papæ hæc inter-  
 cetera continebant: <sup>3</sup>

Letter of pope  
 Lucius to Henry. “Lucius episcopus, servus servorum Dei, etc. Cum cuncti  
 prædecessores tui præ ceteris terræ principibus armorum  
 gloria et animi nobilitate longe retro claruerint, eosque fide-  
 lium populus habere in sua didisseerit adversitate patronos.  
 merito ad te, non tantum regni sed paternarum heredem vir-  
 tutum, quadam securitate præsumpta reenrritur, ubi populo Rog.Wend.  
 Christiano imminere<sup>4</sup> periculum, immo exterininium, formi- ii. 417.  
 datur, ut per brachium [regiae]<sup>5</sup> magnitudinis [Ejus]<sup>6</sup> mem-  
 bris impendatur præsidium, qui te ad tantæ gloriæ apicem

<sup>1</sup> resurrectionis] resurrectionis,  
 MS. here and below.

<sup>2</sup> nihil] nichil, MS.

<sup>3</sup> The letter is given at length in  
 Hoveden, col. 628.

<sup>4</sup> imminere] iminere, MS.

<sup>5</sup> regiae] Supplied from W. A.

C. D. and Hoveden, col. 628.

<sup>6</sup> Ejus] Omitted in all the MSS.,  
 but supplied from Hoveden.

pervenire sua pietate concessit, et te contra sui nominis im- A.D. 1185.  
pugnatores nefarios<sup>1</sup> murum inexpugnabilem<sup>2</sup> ordinavit. Porro  
noverit vestra serenitas, quod Salaadinus ille, sancti nominis  
Crucifixi immanissimus persecutor, ita nunc in spiritu furoris  
contra Christi fideles Terræ Sanctæ adeo invaluit, quod nisi  
immanitatis ejus impetus objectis obicibus reprimantur, habet  
fiduciam, quod influat<sup>3</sup> Jordanis in os ejus," et cetera.

*Rex Henricus regnum Jerusalem recusavit.*

Rog.Wend. Hiis auditis, rex Anglorum, convocato clero regni Henry  
ii. 417. ac populo, convenerunt Londoniis apud Fontem-Clerico- assembles  
rum, xv. kalendas Aprilis, cum<sup>4</sup> universa regni nobili- the clergy  
tate, ubi dictus rex, audientibus patriarcha et Magistro and laity at  
domus Hospitalis, omnes fideles suos multis adjura- Clerken-  
tionibus astrinxit, quatinus proferrent in medium quid well.  
super hiis saluti animæ suæ viderent expedire. Ad 18 March.  
hoc enim asserit animum suum inclinatum, ut quod ex  
eorum consilio acciperet, modis omnibus observaret.  
Tunc concilium universum super præmissis colloquium Who de-  
habens, sanius judicabatur<sup>5</sup> cunctis, et animæ regis eide on the  
salubrius, ut regnum suum debita moderatione gubernaret, refusal of  
et illud a barbarorum irruptione in pace ecclesiastica tueatur, quam orientalium consulat in propria the crown  
persona saluti. De filiis autem regis, quorum aliquem of Jeru-  
petiit patriarcha, si rex venire recusaret, quicquam  
statuere, cum essent absentes, incongruum videbatur.  
salem.

*Johannes, filius regis, fit miles.*

Rog.Wend. Eodem tempore<sup>6</sup> Johannes, filius regis H[enrici], a Prince  
ii. 418. patre militaribus armis accinctus apud Windeleshoram John is  
knighted,  
and goes to  
Ireland.

<sup>1</sup> *nefarios*] *nepharios*, MS.

is repeated superfluously; and so  
in F.

<sup>2</sup> *inexpugnabilem*] *inexpungnabi- lem*, MS.

<sup>5</sup> *judicabatur*] *judicabat*, MS.

<sup>3</sup> *influat*] *imfluat*, MS.

<sup>6</sup> *tempore*] On an erasure, and originally written *anno*, as in W.

<sup>4</sup> *cum*] Before *cum* the word *rex*

and marg. of A. C. Om. D.

A.D. 1185. pridie kalendas Aprilis, in Hyberniam transfretavit  
 31 March. Quo facto, rex Henricus cum patriarcha, mari transito,  
 Henry celebrates Easter at Rouen. diem Paschæ apud Rothomagum magnifice celebavit.  
 Rex autem Francorum, auditore regis Anglorum adventu,  
 The king of Franece meets him, and they promise aid to the Holy Land. cum festinatione venit ad Vallem-Ruil<sup>1</sup> castellum, ubi reges in colloquiis familiaribus triduo perstiterunt. Et in eorum præsentia multi nobiles cruce signati sunt; sed ipsi reges patriarchæ nihil aliud dederunt nisi quod uterque Terræ Sanctæ festinum promiserit auxilium. Non enim leve eis videbatur, ab extremis finibus<sup>2</sup> occidentis transmigrantes, corpora sua et multorum mortis exponere discrimini, et rem tam arduam attemptare. Patriarcha vero, cuius negotium in arcto ponebatur, spe frustratus ad propria remeavit.  
 The patriarch returns to the East.

*Hugo de Lasci perimitur.*

Death of Hugh de Lacy. Anno quoque sub eodem Hugo de Lascio, dominus Rog. Wend. ii. 418. provinciæ quæ Midia<sup>3</sup> in Hybernia dicitur, interfectus est, viii<sup>o</sup>. kalendas Augusti.

*Terræ-motus.*

Earthquake at Lincoln. Sub eodem quoque anno factus est terræ-motus horribilis apud Lincolniam et partibus ejus, xvii<sup>o</sup>. kalendas Maii.

*Fit episcopus Rofensis.*

Gilbert de Glanville consecrated bishop of Rochester. Et sub eodem anno Gilebertus de Glanvilla, archidiaconus Luxoviensis, consecratus est in episcopum Rofensem, iii<sup>o</sup>. kalendas Octobris.

29 Sept.

<sup>1</sup> *Vallem-Ruil*] Vallem de Ruil, MS. and F.

<sup>2</sup> *finibus*] sinibus, MS.

<sup>3</sup> *Midia*] Written at first *Media*, as in W. A. C. D.

A.D. 1185.

*Comitatus de Huntendonia datur regi Scotorum.*

R. Wend. . Eodemque tempore Symon, comes Huntendoniæ, cum  
ii. 418. absque liberis dececessisset, rex Anglorum dedit comita-  
tum illum regi Scotorum Willelmo, cum pertinentiis.

Henry  
gives the  
county of  
Hunting-  
don to  
William,  
king of  
Seots.

*Lucio successit Urbanus.*

. Anni quoque illius et anni subsequentis confinio, Death of  
: videlicet, vel in fine Adventus Domini, vel diebus pope  
. Nataliciis, defuncto Lucio papa, successit Urbanus.<sup>2</sup> Lucius III.  
Urban III.  
succeeds.

*Repatriat dux Saxonum reconciliatus.*

Rog. Wend. . Eodemque tempore dux Saxonum Henricus impera- The duke  
ii. 418. tori reconciliatus repatriat, suo tantum contentus pa- of Saxony  
trimonio. is recon-  
ciled to the  
emperor.

*Obiit Matildis, quondam imperatrix.*

. Circa eadem<sup>3</sup> tempora obiit mulierum nobilissima Death of  
Matildis, quondam Romanorum imperatrix, regis Hen- the em-  
rici I. filia, et mater Henrici Secundi, et apud Rotho- press  
magum sepulta; cuius epitaphium totius vitae summam Matilda,  
suae continet. mother of  
Henry II.

*Epitaphium.*

. “Ortu magna, viro major, sed maxima partu,  
. Hic jacet Henrici filia, sponsa, parens.”<sup>4</sup>

Her  
epitaph.

<sup>1</sup> In the lower margin is written with a plummet, “ Nota, quod comitatus Huntendoniæ datur regi Scotorum.”

<sup>2</sup> Pope Lucius III. died 25 Nov. 1185, and Urban III. was elected the same day. Jaffé, p. 854. After

*Urbanus*, is added in A. C. D., “ secundum quondam Historiam.”

<sup>3</sup> *eadem*] eodem, MS.

<sup>4</sup> This epitaph is added in the margin, accompanied by the sketch of a tomb, with the word *Tumba* in red letters written above. In F. it is inserted in the text.

*B[aldewinus], Cantuariensis archiepiscopus, pallium suscepit et legatiam.*

A.D. 1186.

Baldwin,  
abp. of  
Canter-  
bury,  
receives  
his pall.

Anno Domini M<sup>o</sup>.C<sup>o</sup>.LXXX<sup>o</sup>.VI<sup>o</sup>. Baldewinus, Cantua- Rog.Wend.  
riensis archiepiscopus, pallium cum legatione in pro- ii. 418.  
vincia sibi subdita accepit. Rog.Wend.  
ii. 419.

*Obiit Gaufridus, comes Britanniaæ.*

Death of  
Geoffrey,  
count of  
Britanny.

Eodemque anno Gaufridus, comes Britanniae et filius Rog.Wend.  
regis Anglorum, in quodam hastiludio prostratus et . ii. 419.  
toto corpore dissipatus, cum fomentis et balneis nullo .  
modo curari potuisset; tandem morti appropinquans, .  
in lienteriam prolapsus interiit. Et sic veritas visio- .  
nem nocturnam, quam beatus Thoma martir vidit, .  
dilucidavit. Unum quippe genus mortis, id est, una .  
species infirmitatis<sup>1</sup> interemit regem Henricum ju- .  
niorem et Gaufridum, comitem Britanniæ, de quo sermo .  
est, scilicet, lienteria incurabilis.<sup>2</sup> Sed aliud genus .  
mortis, id est, letalis infirmitatis, patrem extinxit, .  
videlicet, gulositas, accidia, et mentis alienatio, scilicet, .  
mania,<sup>3</sup> ut in sequentibus dicetur, suffocavit.<sup>4</sup> Visio .  
autem talis fuit. Una noctium post nocturnum, dum,<sup>5</sup> .  
suspenso sompno,<sup>6</sup> beatus Thomas exul meditaretur de .  
hiis tribus tam sollempnibus personis, rege videlicet .  
Henrico et duobus filiis suis H[enrico] et G[aufrido], .  
desiderans scire, si Deo placeret, quid de ipsis finaliter .  
venturum esset, audivit hunc de cœlo versum, .  
“Mors tulit una<sup>7</sup> duos,<sup>8</sup> tulit altera<sup>9</sup> sed male patrem.”<sup>10</sup> :  
Cui versui si prædicta adaptentur, patebit sententia. .

Vision  
seen by  
St.Thomas.

<sup>1</sup> *infirmitatis*] infirmitatis, MS., and so again below.

<sup>2</sup> *incurabilis*] Written on a piece of vellum pasted over the word *interemit*, which, as well as the words following, *sed aliud genus mortis*, is on an erasure.

<sup>3</sup> *scilicet, mania*] Added in marg.

<sup>4</sup> *suffocavit*] Added in marg.

<sup>5</sup> *dum*] Repeated after *exul*, but expunited.

<sup>6</sup> *sompno*] sopno, MS.

<sup>7</sup> *una*] In the margin is added, “*id est, unum genus infirmitatis, scilicet, lienteria.*”

<sup>8</sup> *duos*] Interlined is, *G[aufridum] et H[enricum]*.

<sup>9</sup> *altera*] In the margin, “*scilicet, aliud genus infirmitatis, scilicet, mania et mentis amaritudo.*” In F. both these glosses are inserted in the text.

<sup>10</sup> *patrem*] Interlined is, *H[enricum]*.

*De ejus sepultura et prole.*

A.D. 1186.

Rog.Wend. Sepultus est comes memoratus Gaufridus Parisius, in Burial  
ii. 419. ecclesia cathedrali<sup>1</sup> Beatae Mariae, intra chorum cano- of count  
nicorum. Reliquit autem duas filias, quas genuerat Geoffrey.  
His chil- ex Constantia uxore sua, filia scilicet Cōnani, comitis dren.  
Britanniae. Quae etiam tempore, quo vir ejus obiit,  
gravida fuit, et postea filium pariens, Arthurum illum  
. vocavit. Sed et pater et proles infortunato subjacuere  
. discrimini, sicut sequens sermo suo loco declarabit.

*Consecrantur quidam episcopi.*

Rog.Wend. Eodem anno Willelmus de Ver, [in]<sup>2</sup> festo beati Consecra-  
ii. 419. Laurentii, Herefordensis est episcopus consecratus. tion of some  
Eodemque anno Hugo, genere Burgundus et prior bishops  
. Cartusiensis Ordinis in Anglia,<sup>3</sup> vir quidem eximiæ 10 Aug.  
sanctitatis, consecratus est episcopus Lincolnensis, in  
festo sancti Mathæi. Et eadem die Willelmus de Nor- 21 Sept.  
hale consecratus est Wigorniensis episcopus. Et per  
idem tempus<sup>4</sup> Johannes, precentor Exoniensis, ejusdem  
ecclesiae consecratus est antistes.

*Papa Urbanus B[aldewino], Cantuariensi archiepi-  
scopo, ut construeret ecclesiam apud Akintonam,  
concessit.*

Rog.Wend. Eodem tempore papa Urbanus Baldewino, Cantua- Pope Ur-  
ii. 419. riensi archiepiscopo, scripsit in hæc verba:<sup>5</sup> ban grants  
fol. 72 b. leave to abp. Bald-  
“ Praesentium tibi auctoritate mandamus, ut liceat tibi eccl- win to  
siam in honorem beatorum martirum Stephani et Thomæ con- found a  
struere, et de ydoneis eam ordinare personis, quibus beneficia,  
church at Akinton.

<sup>1</sup> *cathedrali*] Added in marg.<sup>2</sup> *in*] Supplied from W.A. C. D. F.<sup>3</sup> *in Anglia*] These words are erroneously transposed in the MS. after *sanctitatis*, and so in F.<sup>4</sup> John was consecrated bp. of Exeter, 6 Oct. 1185. Fasti, i. 368.<sup>5</sup> This letter is in Diceto, col. 631, dated Verona, 1 Oct.

A.D. 1186. quæ ad eorum sustentationem constitueris, canonice debeas assignare. Item, fraternitati tuæ mandamus, ut, quarta parte oblationum, quæ ad reliquias beati Thomæ martiris offeruntur, Rog. Wend. ii. 240. monachorum usibus concessa, quarta fabricis ecclesiae deputata, quarta pauperibus erogata, quartam portionem liceat tibi in alios usus<sup>1</sup> pro tuae voluntatis arbitrio erogare.”

*Sibilla in reginam Jerosolimorum coronatur.*

Sibilla, wife of Guy, count of Joppa, is chosen queen of Jerusalem. Circa dies istos, Baldewino pueno rege Jerosolimo- Rog. Wend. ii. 420. rum defuncto, non erat qui ei in regnum succederet, præter Sibillam, uxorem Guidonis, comitis Jopensis, quæ soror erat regis leprosi, et regis pueri nuper defuncti mater. Sed quoniam<sup>2</sup> tempus instabat, ut trengæ inter Salaadinum et populum Christianum constitutæ solverentur, regni provisio jam in arcto posita erat, nec differri potuit, quin de illius ordinatione illico tractaretur. Convocato igitur procerum consilio, in hoc pariter consenserunt, ut Sibilla, Guidonis uxor, tanquam heres justissima<sup>3</sup> regum prædictorum, coronaretur in reginam; ita tamen, quod Guidonem, qui regno insufficiens erat regendo, sollempniter repudiaret. Respuuit Sibilla regnum<sup>4</sup> sibi sub tali conditione oblatum, donec proceres id generaliter illi concesserunt et juramento firmaverunt, ut quem ipsa maritum eligeret, omnes ipsi sicut regi obedirent. Guido etiam, vir ejus, suppliciter postulabat, nc pro suo dampno regni provisio differretur. Illa tandem cum lacrimis tamen adquiescens, coronata est sollempniter in reginam, et omnium fidelitatem, adhibito juramento, suscepit. Et Guido, vir ejus, sine spe conjugis et regni, ad sua divertit.

<sup>1</sup> *usus*] usus bonos, W. A. C. D.

<sup>2</sup> *quoniam*] et, MS. on an erasure, and F. Corr. from W. A. C. D.

<sup>3</sup> *justissima*] justissima, MS.

<sup>4</sup> *regnum*] regnum, MS.

*Saladinus se jam præparat ad præliandum.*

A.D. 1186.

Rog. Wend. Nunciatur interea Saladini hostilis adventus, quod Rumours  
ii. 420. nec a vero discrepabat, vel propinquitate distabat. of the  
Rog. Wend. Unde regina, convocatis edicto regio viris ecclesiasticis hostile ap-  
ii. 421. et secularibus, de rege habuit eligendo tractatum. Et proach of  
Sibilla chooses count G.  
quoniam id sibi prius ab omnibus concessum fuerat, ut quem vellet maritum eligeret, exspectantibus rei for her  
exitum universis, regina Guidoni, qui inter alios asta- husband,  
bat, voce clara dixit, "Domine mi, Guido, ego te in whom she  
maritum eligo, et me simul cum regno tibi dedens et had pre-  
tradens, te regem futurum publice protestor." previously  
repudiated.

*Nota muliebrem cautelam mirabilem in rege eligendo.*

Rog. Wend. Ad hanc vocem omnes stupefacti admirabantur valde, Commen-  
ii. 421. quod tot viros prudentes una mulier simplex sic pru- denter circumvenerat. Laudabilis plane femina, et tam wit.  
pudicitiae quam prudentiae præconiis extollenda! Sic enim negotium temperavit, ut et regnum viro et sibi virum optineret.

*De matre Salaadini injuriam passa.*

Rog. Wend. Contigit autem hiis diebus matrem Salaadini ab The  
ii. 421. Ægipto in partes transire Damascenas, in apparatu mother of  
magno et divitiis copiosis. Quæ de fide treugarum plundered  
præsumens, per fines regionis, quæ trans Jordanem of her  
sunt, secure perrexit; in cuius comitatum Reginaldus treasure.  
de Castellione temere irrumpens, divitias diripuit<sup>1</sup> universas. Quod cum audisset Salaadinus, commotus Saladin  
est vehementer, et restitutionem ablatorum et super demands  
injuriis satisfactionem sub pactione fœderis postulavit. satisfaction in vain.  
Conventus autem super hiis Reginaldus a Salaadino,  
dure nimis et contumeliose respondit. Salaadinus vero

<sup>1</sup> *diripuit*] *diripiuit*, MS.

A.D. 1186. lætus admodum, quod in parte Christianorum diruptæ erant treugæ, ad vindictam, nec immerito, provocatur. .

*Saladinus Terram Sanctam depopulatur.*

A.D. 1187. Anno Domini M<sup>o</sup>.C<sup>o</sup>.LXXX<sup>o</sup>.VII<sup>o</sup>, Salaadinus contra Rog. Wend.

He assem- Christians indignatione succensus, Parthos, Bedewinos, bles an Turcos, Sarracenos, Arabes, Medos convocat et Choros- army, and ravages the minos; <sup>1</sup> et hiis omnibus cum Ægyptiis stipatus, fines Christian territories. Christianorum conterit et conturbat, omnia succedit,

omnia exterminat, non parcens ætati, sexui, vel conditioni. Et jam non contentus quod parva quædam in Galilæa occupaverat præsidia, Calvariam obsidere proponit. Cum omni igitur machinarum genere illuc properaret, Magistrum militiæ Templi [cum]<sup>2</sup> fratribus lx. et Christianorum<sup>3</sup> multitudine [itinerando]<sup>4</sup> peremit, et cum palma martirii ad cœlestia regna transmisit. Hac igitur Salaadinus victoria elatus, ad obsidionem Calvariæ festinus contendit. Rex autem Jerusalem, ut urbem audivit obsidione vallatam, et inclusos vehementer affligi, edicto regio omne regni robur convoca- marches to vit; illis solummodo in castrorum præsidio relictis, oppose him. quos ætatis et sexus infirmitas armorum prorsus habens immunes excusavit. Castra igitur moventes a fonte Sephoritano, ubi convenerant, stipati militum xx<sup>ti</sup>. milibus incesserunt. Praefecto igitur exercitui Reimundo, comite Tripolitano, versus Tabariam<sup>5</sup> sunt profecti. Cumque funesta dies certaminis instaret, camerario regis visio contigit tremebunda, videlicet, quod aquila quædam Christianum transvolaret exercitum, quæ missilia vii. gerens cruentata<sup>6</sup> in pedibus,

The king  
of Jern-  
salem  
marches to  
oppose  
him.  
  
Vision  
seen by  
the king's  
chamber-  
lain.

<sup>1</sup> *Chorosmines*] Cordinos, W. A. C. D., and Hist. Hierosol. p. 1152, ap. Bongars.

<sup>2</sup> *cum*] Supplied from W. A. C. D.

<sup>3</sup> *Christianorum*] Christianorum, MS.

<sup>4</sup> *itinerando*] Supplied from W. A. C. D.

<sup>5</sup> *Tabariam*] So W. and F.; Tybaream, A. C. D. Corrected *Tiberiam* in Edd. and ed. Wend., but unnecessarily. See Ben. Abbas, p. 488.

<sup>6</sup> *cruentata*] Added in marg.

voce terribili personaret, "Væ vobis, Jerusalem inha- A.D. 1187.  
bitantibus,<sup>1</sup> væ vobis!" Ad hujus vocis expositionem  
sufficere nimirum credimus, quod Sanctus Sanctorum<sup>2</sup>  
fol. 73 a. de reprobis loquitur per prophetam, "Tetendit Domi-  
nus arcum suum, et in eo paravit vasa mortis."<sup>3</sup>

*De captione sanctæ Crucis et regis Jerusalem a  
Salaadino.*

Rog.Wend. Audiens autem Salaadinus, quod rex in succursum Saladin  
ii. 423. veniret obsessorum, venientibus audacter occurrit; et attacks the  
cum eos in scopolis angustis et præruptis inclusos cog- Christians.  
novisset,<sup>4</sup> non longe a Tabaria, in loco qui Marescallia  
dicitur, in regis exercitum irruit confidenter. Chris-  
tiani autem hostes viriliter exceperunt, quantum  
locorum angustiæ permittebant. Pugnatum<sup>5</sup> est igitur  
acriter hinc inde, et commissum prælium est<sup>6</sup> cruen-  
tissimum, aera usque ad nubes cum clamore terribili  
quod<sup>7</sup> potuit penetrare. Cruor præcordialis diffunditur,  
exta<sup>8</sup> distrahuntur, excerebratorum gemitus, vulnera-  
torum suspiria per diffusa spatia audiuntur. Tandem, The  
exigentibus Christianorum peccatis, prævaluit pars ad- Christians  
versa. Nam, ut aiunt, invidiæ stimulis exagitatus, are defeat-  
et thesauri infiniti excæcatus sibi promissi cupiditate, ed through  
comes Tripolitanus vexillum regis in terram proditiose, the  
quod ea die propter strenuitatem suam tulit, demittens,  
totum exercitum sponte insatuavit, et fugam fecit  
meditari. Sed quo fugerent, refugium non habentes?  
Quem sequerentur, ducatu carentes? Confusi igitur,  
quasi oves pastore destitutæ, et pro pastore lupis laniatae,

<sup>1</sup> *inhabitantibus*] Added in marg.

<sup>2</sup> *Sanctus Sanctorum*] Originally written *Sanctus*, and *Sanctorum* afterwards added, which is copied in F. In W. A. C. D. *Spiritus Sanctus*, which is, no doubt, the correct reading.

<sup>3</sup> Ps. vii. 13, 14.

<sup>4</sup> *cognovisset*] *congnovisset*, MS.

<sup>5</sup> *Pugnatum*] *Pungnatum*, MS.

<sup>6</sup> *est*] Added on to the text.

<sup>7</sup> *quod*] Interlined, and so in F.

<sup>8</sup> *exta*] So in the text, but in the margin altered to *intestina*. F. reads *intestina exta*.

A.D. 1187. dissipantur, dissipati vincuntur, victi trucidantur. Rex Guy, king of Jerusalem, is captured, and the holy Cross. Evasit<sup>1</sup> tamen ab hac clade tam generali comes Tripolitanus, omnibus de seditione suspectus, dominus Reginaldus, Sydonis patronus,<sup>2</sup> atque dominus Balianus, cum paucis Templi militibus, multis vulneribus cruentati. Facta est autem haec misera belli congressio quinto et

3-4 July. Slaughter of the Templars. non enim poterat nox interpolata tam animosum.

certamen dirimere. Evasit etiam ex hac peste lugubri et funesta Theodoricus, Magister militiae Templi, qui ipsa die ducentos et xxx. de fratribus præelectos amisit. Quod autem sine sanguinis effusione comes Tripolitanus armipotens et fortis solus evaserat, in argumentum sinistrum sumebatur, tam formidolositatis quam prodigionis, quod in regem et Dei populum nequiter fuerit<sup>3</sup> operatus. Capiuntur etiam cum Crucifixus bajulatores, episcopus scilicet Achonensis et præcentor Dominici sepulchri; ille caesus et iste captus pariter cum ipsa succumbunt. Sic igitur capitur Crux sancta propter peccata hominum, et quæ nos a veteri captivitatis jugo absolvit, pro nobis captiva abducitur, et profanis<sup>4</sup> gentilium manibus contrectatur.

Rog. Wend.  
ii. 424.

### *Miraculum.<sup>5</sup>*

Miraculous blood-shedding of an infant Jesus. Eodem anno, in regno Francorum, ymago pueri Ihesu in gremio matris sedentis a nebulone quodam aleatore percussa lapide et blasphemata, sanguine ubertim, liceat. lapidea, cruentata est, et cruor inde copiosus emanavit.

<sup>1</sup> *Evasit*] Evaserunt, W. A. C. D.

<sup>2</sup> *patronus*] On an erasure.

<sup>3</sup> *fuerit*] On an erasere.

<sup>4</sup> *profanis*] prophani, MS.

<sup>5</sup> This and the next short chapters are placed at the end of 1186 in A. C. D.

*Combustio.*

A.D. 1187.

Mater ecclesia Cicestrensis cum tota civitate, quasi irato Deo, xiii<sup>o</sup>. kalendas Novembris in favillam est redacta.

The church of Chichester burnt.  
20 Oct.

*Salahadinus in prosperitate debacchatur.<sup>1</sup>*

Rog. Wend. Saladinus itaque potitus victoria, Tyberiadem rever- Continued  
ii. 424. titur, et, solo præsidio quod supererat capto, regem cum successes  
ceteris quos ceperat Damascum transmisit. Deinde of Saladin.  
Galilæam invadens, universa pro libitu occupavit; et  
veniens Tholomaidam, sine sanguinis eam effusione  
suscepit. Inde Jerusolimam festinans, urbem obsedit, Who  
machinasque locat per circuitum. Cives quoque di- besieges  
versis argumentis quas possunt defensiones objiciunt,  
sed arcus, balistæ, petrariaeque, immo etiam clipeus,  
lorica, lancea et galea effectu carent, quia capite carent  
defensivo. Vulgus igitur pavidum ad patriarcham et  
reginam confugiunt, qui tunc urbi præerant, flebiliter  
supplicans, ut cum Salaadino de urbe tradenda, proh  
dolor! convenient. Pactio tandem intercedit magis do- ¶ Dolor lu-  
lenda quam memoranda. Nam singuli capitis sui cen- mentabilis.  
suui statuentes, vir bisantios x., mulier v., infans unum Capitula-  
persolveret; et quisquis qui ad hoc non sufficit, tenetur tion of the  
captivus. Erant autem in civitate ad xiii. milia utri- city.  
usque sexus hominum, qui ad hoc non sufficientes, jugum  
subierunt perpetuae servitutis. Reddita est ergo civitas,  
. tanto prius sanguine tot nobilium adquisita, hostibus  
Christi, et sepulchrum possident, qui Sepultum perse-  
quuntur, et Crucem optinent blasphemantes Crucifixum.

*Proh dolor! amittitur Jerusalem.<sup>2</sup>*

Rog. Wend. Ingressus igitur civitatem cum strepitu timpanorum Entry of  
ii. 425. et tubicinum, ad templum accedere properabat Salaa- Saladin  
into Jeru-  
salem.

<sup>1</sup> *debacchatur*] *debaecatur*, MS. | manibus Christianorum per lxxxvi.

<sup>2</sup> *Jerusalem*] F. adds, "quam in | annos fuerat custoditus."

A.D. 1187. dinus,<sup>1</sup> et, Cruce, quæ in eo erecta stabat, deposita, ejectisque quæ Christiani venerabantur, templum intus et extra lustrabat aqua rosacea; et sic erroris sui superstitiones per iiiii. angulos templi magno fecit cum strepitu conclamari, et conclamando nomen Machometi.

*¶ Profanatio execrabilis.* He subduces all the adjacent cities. exaltari. Et inde ecclesiam sanctæ resurrectionis et sepulchrum Domini, cum locis aliis venerabilibus, qui busdam Surianis sub certo constituit tributo. Festinanterque inde progressus, urbes omnes circumquaque positas et oppida<sup>2</sup> sibi potenter subjugavit, præter Ascalonam et Tyrum, et Crach, quod alio nomine Mons-Regalis dicitur, quod est similiter in antiquis scripturis Petra-Deserti nominatum. Unde dolor et suspiria Christianis, insultationes et sales paganorum. perstrepuerunt.<sup>3</sup>

*Prohibitio, ne ecclesia de Akintonā construatur.*

fol. 73 b.

Letter of pope Urban, for bidding the church at Akinton to be erected. Eodem anno papa Urbanus scripsit Baldeuuino, Cantuariensi archiepiscopo, pro negotio conventus ecclesiæ ejusdem, in hæc verba:<sup>4</sup>

“Dilecti filii nostri, prior et conventus ecclesiæ tibi commissæ, ad nostram præsentiam literas et nuncios destinantes, proposuerunt de ecclesia, quam ædificare cœpisti, tantum sibi et ecclesiæ dispendium proventurum, quod, nisi fuerit ab ejus constructione<sup>5</sup> cessatum, præscripta ecclesia suæ honestatis et status miserabile suscipiet detrimentum. Nos autem sollicite providere volentes, ne inter te et fratres tuos materia remaneat jurgiorum, cum non possint convenienter intendere divinis obsequiis, qui sunt in contentionebus, de consilio fratrum nostrorum monimus fraternitatem et distincte præcipimus,

<sup>1</sup> *Salaadinus]* Added on to the text.

Imag. col. 1318. Jaffé dates it 8 May 1187, p. 865.

<sup>2</sup> *oppida]* opida, MS.

<sup>3</sup> *insultationes . . . perstrepuerunt]* Added to the text, and so in F. <sup>5</sup> *constructione]* structione, MS. and F., but at first written *constructione*, and *con* afterwards erased by mistake, with some other words beyond the line of the text.

<sup>4</sup> The letter is at greater length in Diceto, col. 635, and Gervase,

qnatius donec, causa cognita,<sup>1</sup> statnamus quid de ipsa fieri A.D. 1187. debeat, omni occasione et appellatione postposita, ab illius ecclesiae constructione desistas, literis aliis non obstantibus a sede apostolica impetratis."

*Mortuo Urbano, successit Gregorius, cui et Clemens.* Deaths of popes Urban III. and Gregory VIII.

Rog.Wend. Anno quoque sub eodem, mortuo papa Urbano, Gregorius successit. Qui cum sedisset duobus mensibus, potionatus, ut creditur, defunctus est, et Clemens Tertius xiii<sup>o</sup>. kalendas Januarii subrogatur. Clement III. succeeds.

20 Dec.

*Obiit Londoniensis [episcopus.]<sup>2</sup>*

Rog.Wend. Eodem anno Gilebertus, Londoniensis episcopus, naturae debitum persolvit.<sup>3</sup> Death of Gilbert, bishop of London.

*Comes Pictavensis Ricardus crucesignatur.*

Rog.Wend. Eodemque anno Ricardus, comes Pictavensis, cum Richard, audisset calamitatem Terræ Sanctæ, et de capta Cruce, non expectata alicujus prædicatione, vel etiam patris assumes sui consilio aut voluntate, primus inter proceres transmarinos crucis suscepit signaculum de manu archiepiscopi Turonensis. Eodemque anno Hugo de Nunant factus est episcopus Cestrensis. Hugh de Nunant made bishop of Chester.

*Imperator F[rethericus] et reges Francorum et Anglorum crucesignantur.*

A.D. 1118.

Rog.Wend. Anno Domini M<sup>o</sup>.C<sup>o</sup>.LXXX<sup>o</sup>.VIII<sup>o</sup>., Frethericus, Romanorum imperator, ad prædicationem Henrici, Albanensis episcopi et apostolicae sedis legati, qui a papa Clemente missus fuerat, crucem suscepit. The emperor Frederic assumes the cross.

<sup>1</sup> cognita] congnita, MS.

<sup>2</sup> episcopus] Supplied from F.

<sup>3</sup> He died 13 Feb. 1187-8. Fasti,

ii. 282.

A.D. 1188. *Distinguuntur crucisignati diversis crucibus.*

As also  
the kings  
of France  
and Eng-  
land, and  
count of  
Flanders.

The  
crusaders  
agree to  
adopt  
crosses of  
different  
colours.

Et eodem tempore rex Francorum Philippus et rex Anglorum Henricus in Normannia pro subventione Terræ Sanctæ ad colloquium convenientes, inter Triam et Gisorcium, post longos tractatus, præsente comite Flandrensi Philippo, in hoc pariter consenserunt, ut scilicet, sumpto crucis signaculo, iter Jerosimitanum socialiter expedirent. Rex igitur Anglorum primo crucem suscepit de manibus archiepiscoporum Remensis et Willelmi Tirensis, quorum ultimus a domino papa super negotio crucis officium legationis susceperat in partibus occidentis. Deinde rex Francorum et Philippus, comes Flandrensis, crucem sumentes, aliis exemplum potissimum præbuerunt. Unde, tam de imperio quam de utroque regno regum prædictorum, archiepiscopi, duces, marchiones, comites, barones, milites et cives, et mediæ manus homines, vulgusque promiscuum crucem animosius susceperunt. Provisum est etiam inter eos, ut omnes de regno Francorum cruces rubeas, de terris regis Anglorum albas, de terra vero comitis Flandrensis cruces virides bajularent. De terris autem, catallis<sup>1</sup> et rebus omnibus, usque peracta peregrinatione, et quilibet eorum in terra sua xl<sup>a</sup>. diebus moram fecisset, omnia essent in eo statu, quo fuerunt in die quando crucem susceperunt.

*Qualiter Ricardus, comes Pictavensis, animum suum  
a patre suo alienaverit.*

Proceed-  
ings of earl  
Richard  
against  
Geoffrey  
de Lusig-  
nan.

Circa dies eosdem Gaufridus de Liziniaco, quendam Ricardo, comiti Pictavensi, familiarem, structis insidiis, interfecit. In tanti vero ultiōrem delicti comes ad arma provocatur, sed, acceptæ crucis non immemor,

<sup>1</sup> *catallis*] *castellis*, W. L., but altered by Matthew Paris himself in A., and so in C. D. F.

Rog. Wend.  
ii. 426.

Rog. Wend.  
ii. 427.

omnibus hominibus Gaufridi crucis signaculo insignitis A.D. 1188. vel<sup>1</sup> insigniri pepercit volentibus, alias autem in ore gladii trucidavit, in deditonem plura ejusdem castella suscipiendo. Sed Gaufridus, regis Anglorum fultus pecunia et auxilio, comiti nitebatur resistere, sed parum perfecit; unde Ricardus comes patrem suum jam habuit Richard invades the alienum. Gaufrido tamen tandem sed vix superato, territory of cum comes R[icardus] comitis Tholosani, qui Gaufrido the count of Tou- præbuerat auxilium, terram hostiliter ingressus fuisse, louse.

Rog. Wend. eo non certiorato, rex Francorum indigne ferens, Cas-  
ii. 428.

tellum-Radulfi latenter ingressus est, et omnes in illo repertos ad fidelitatem sibi faciendam coegit. Quod factum tanto principi ignominiosum videbatur, cum præsertim rex Anglorum post crucem susceptam trans- iturus in Angliam, regi Francorum totius terræ suæ custodiam tradidisset. Deinde<sup>2</sup> rex Francorum castel- lanos quosdam regi Anglorum subjectos in suum favorem tam minis quam promissis attraxit; et sic, instinctu diabolico, post crucem susceptam reges discordes mutuis sese dampnis ad invicem<sup>3</sup> afflixerunt. Unde rex An- glorum Francorum hostiliter ingressus regnum, a Ver- nolio usque Meduanam omnia contrivit. Eodem anno, Death of Richard, xi<sup>o</sup>. kalendas Januarii, Ricardus, Wintoniensis episcopus, bishop of obiit, and Wintoniæ sepultus est. Winchester.

22 Dec.

*Epistola imperatoris F[retherici] ad Salaadinum.*

Rog. Wend. Tempore sub eodem<sup>4</sup> Frethericus, Romanorum<sup>5</sup> im- Letter of  
ii. 428. perator, Salahadino scripsit sic:<sup>6</sup>

“ Frethericus, Dei gratia Romanorum imperator, semper augustus, et hostium triumphator magnificus, Salaha-

<sup>1</sup> *insignitis vel]* Added in marg.

<sup>2</sup> *Deinde]* Dein, MS.

<sup>3</sup> *ad invicem]* adinceem, MS.

<sup>4</sup> *edem]* edem, MS.

<sup>5</sup> *Romanorum]* Romoñ, MS.

<sup>6</sup> This letter, fuller in some respects, and with many variations, is in Ben. Abbas, p. 535, copied by

Hoveden, col. 650; Geoff. de Vino- salvo, ap. Gale, ii. 258, and Cogges- hale, “ Chron. Terr. Sanctæ,” ap. Martene, Vet. Mon. v. col. 577. I have also compared it with an early copy in MS. Reg. 14 C. x., fol. 256. Only the principal variations are noticed.

A.D. 1188. dino, Sarrauenorum præsidi, Jerusalem fugere, utque cedat et recedat,<sup>1</sup> exemplo Pharaonis præmunitus. Quoniam Terram Sanetam nuper profanasti,<sup>2</sup> cui æterni regis imperio imperamus et præsumus, in tanti seeleris præsumptuosam plectibilemque audaciam animadversione decernere, imperialis cel-situdo<sup>3</sup> et officii sollicitudo nos admonet. Quapropter, nisi occupatam terram<sup>4</sup> et omnia restituas, adjuneta satisfactione Rog.Wend. competenti saeris constitutionibus pro tam nefariis excessibus taxata, ne legitimum minime videamur indicere bellum, a capite kalendarum Novembrium, evoluto anni spatio, terminum constituimus ad experiendam belli fortunam in campo Taphneos, in virtute mirifice Crueis et in nomine veri Joseph. Vix enim credere possumus hoc<sup>5</sup> te latere, quod ex scriptis veterum et in historiis nostri temporis factum redolet. Numquid scire dissimulas, ambas Ethiopias, Mauritaneam, Persiam, Syriam, Parthiam,<sup>6</sup> Judæam, Samariam maritimam, Arabiam, Caldæam, Aegiptum, et Armeniam, eum innumerabilibus terris nostræ ditioni subjectis, nobis fuisse potenter adquisitas.<sup>7</sup> Norunt hæc reges, quorum<sup>8</sup> eruore gladii Romani sunt crebrius debriati.<sup>9</sup> Et tu quidem, auctore Deo, intelliges quid nostræ victrices aquilæ, quid cohortes diversarum nationum, quid furor Theutonius et<sup>10</sup> in pace arma movens; quid caput indomitum Hreni, cuius juventus<sup>11</sup> nunquam fugam novit, quid procerus Bavarus, quid Suevus astutus, quid Franconia<sup>12</sup> circumspecta,<sup>13</sup> quid in gladio ludens Saxonia, quid Thuringia imperterrita, quid ardens ad arma Westfallia,<sup>14</sup> quid vigil<sup>15</sup>. Braibaneia, quid nescia pacis Lothoringia, quid impatiens servitutis Austria, quid inquieta Burgundia,<sup>16</sup> quid vulpina Pro-

<sup>1</sup> *utque cedat et recedat*] Added in marg., and is in text of F. Om. W. A. C. D.

<sup>2</sup> *profanasti*] prophanasti, MS.

<sup>3</sup> *eelsitudo*] On an erasure.

<sup>4</sup> *terram*] In Ben. Abb. and MS. Reg. is added, "Judææ, Samariæ et Palæstinorum," and for *et omnia* they read *ante omnia*.

<sup>5</sup> *hoc*] hæc, W. D.

<sup>6</sup> *Parthiam*] An additional paragraph is here inserted in Ben. Abb., Vin., and MS. Reg., and another after *Aegiptum*.

<sup>7</sup> *nobis . . . adquisitas*] Added in marg., and in text of F.

<sup>8</sup> *quorum*] On an erasure. In W. A. C. D. *qui*.

<sup>9</sup> *debriati*] So also read W. A. C.

D. F., and the word is authorised by usage, but in Edd. and ed. Wend. *inebriati*, as in Ben. Abb., Cogg., Vin., and MS. Reg.

<sup>10</sup> *et*] etiam, W. A. C. D., Ben. Abb., and MS. Reg.

<sup>11</sup> *cuius juventus*] quid juventus Histri, quæ, Vin.

<sup>12</sup> *Franconia*] Francia, Ben. Abb.

<sup>13</sup> *circumspecta*] Here is inserted in Ben. Abb. and MS. Reg., "quid Anglia, provida et ingeniosa, quid Albania, quid Cambria."

<sup>14</sup> *Westfallia*] Westfalekia, MS., and so A. C. D. F.

<sup>15</sup> *rigil*] agilis, W. A. C. D., Ben. Abb., and MS. Reg.

<sup>16</sup> *Burgundia*] Burgunda, MS. and F.

. vincia, quid infallibilis Ytalia, quid armorum magistra Gallia, A.D. 1188.  
 . quid victoriosa Neustria, quid spatiosa Græcia, quid navalis  
 . Anglia, quid agilis Wallia, quid fugæ nescia palustris Scocia,  
 . quid glacialis Norwegia, quid insulæ boreales, quid Alpium  
 . incolæ, quid Flandria invincibilis,<sup>1</sup> quid Polemia<sup>2</sup> suis feris  
 . ferocior, quid demum Hispani mortem fugæ præponentes,  
 . quid<sup>3</sup> Cretes, Veneti, Pisani, Januenses navales et piratæ,  
 . quidque poterunt innumerabiles vires nationum, quæ pro  
 . Christo ulti mori desiderant, vel suas injurias vindicare.<sup>4</sup>  
 Denique dextra nostra,<sup>5</sup> quam senio arguis consecutam, gladium  
 Rog. Wend. qualiter vibrabit et lanciam, dies illa lætitiae nostræ plane  
 ii. 430. . plena pleniū te docebit.<sup>6</sup> Quæ dies, inquam, triumphi jocunditatem nostri decorata, nomen Domini nostri Redemptoris hominum exaltabit, et superstitionem pseudoprophetæ<sup>7</sup> Machometi condempnabit."

*Rescriptum.<sup>8</sup>*

Rog. Wend. Illi regi sincero, amico, magno, excenso, Fretherico, regi Reply of  
 ii. 430. Alemaniæ, in nomine Dei miserentis, per gratiam Dei unius, Saladiu.  
 potentis, exuperantis, victoris, perhennis, enjus regni<sup>9</sup> non est  
 finis. Gratias ei agimus perpetnas, cujus gratia est super  
 omnem mundum; deprecamur eum, ut infundat misericordiam<sup>10</sup>  
 snam super prophetas suos, et maxime super instructorem

<sup>1</sup> *quid vulpina . . . invicibilis*] Instead of this passage we read as follows in W. A. C. D., Cogg., Vin., and MS. Reg.: "quid Alpini salices [salaceæ, MS. Reg.], quid Frisonia in armento prævolans [prævalens, Cogg.], quid Boemia [Reemia, Ben. Abb. and MS. Reg.] ulti mori gaudens."

<sup>2</sup> *Polemia*] Boemia, W. A. C. D. I.; Boemia, Ben. Abb. and MS. Reg.; Bolenia, Cogg.; Bolonia, Vin. Corrected *Polonia* in Edd. and ed. Wend.

<sup>3</sup> *quid*] qui, MS.

<sup>4</sup> *quid demum . . . vindicare*] In W. A. C. D., Ben. Abb., Cogg., Vin., and MS. Reg. thus: "quid Austria, quid Stricia [Frisia, Ben. Abb. and MS. Reg.]; Stiria, Cogg.] quid Bugresia [Ruthenia, Ben. Abb. and MS. Reg.]; Ruwennia, quid Histria, quid Rocumphia, Vin.],

quid partes Illiricæ, quid Leobardia [Lombardia, Cogg., Vin., MS. Reg.], quid Tuseia, quid Archarichtana [Amonitana Marsia, Ben. Abb. and MS. Reg.; Anearictana Marcia, Cogg.; Aconitana Marcia, Vin.], quid vetus [Venetus, Ben. Abb., Vin., Cogg., and MS. Reg.], proretha [pirotaus, Ben. Abb.; spreta, Vin.; pirotoris, MS. Reg.], quid Spinacius [Pisanus, Ben. Abb., Vin., and MS. Reg.] nauclerus."

<sup>5</sup> *dextra nostra*] dextram nostram, MS., and W. A. C. D. F.

<sup>6</sup> *te docebit*] edocebit, MS. and F.

<sup>7</sup> *pseudoprophetæ*] pseudoprophete, MS.

<sup>8</sup> In Coggeshale, col. 579, and Vinesauf, p. 259, and MS. Reg. 14 C. x, fol. 256 b.

<sup>9</sup> *regni*] Om. A. C. D.

<sup>10</sup> *misericordiam*] orationem, W. A. C. D., Cogg., Vin., and MS. Reg.

A.D. 1188. nostrum, nuncium suum Mahumeth prophetam, quem misit Deus pro correctione tutæ<sup>1</sup> legis, quam etiam faciet apparere super cunctas leges. Attamen notum facimus tibi, regi sincero, potenti, magno, amico, amicabili, regi Alemanniæ, quod homo quidam, Henricus nomine, venit ad nos, dicens se esse nuncium vestrum, et detulit nobis quandam cartam, quam dixit esse vestram. Nos legi fecimus cartam, et audivimus eum viva voce loquentem, et verbis, quæ ore dixit, verbis respondimus. Et hoc est responsum cartæ. Quod si computatis, qui vobiscum concordant veniendi super nos, et nominatis, et dicitis, rex talis terræ, et rex alterius terræ, et comes talis, et tales archiepiscopi, et marchiones et milites; et<sup>2</sup> si nos vellemus dinumerare omnes, qui sunt in nostro potentatu,<sup>3</sup> et qui sunt intendentis nostro præcepto et prompti nostro sermoni, et qui dimicarent coram nostris manibus, non posset hoc<sup>4</sup> in scriptum redigi; plus æquo tanta ac talis pagina dilataretur. Et si Christianorum computatis nomina, Saracenorum sunt plura et abundantiora<sup>5</sup> quam Christianorum, et climata spatiösiora et longinquieriora, atque multa<sup>6</sup> populo-siora. Et si inter vos et eos, quos nominasti Christianos, maria sunt procellosa, intransmeabilia et periculosa, ut in ventorum et acriis sit arbitrio adventus eorum et convocatio.

*Nota quod ad edictum vestrum, inter nos et nostros non est mare vel Rog. Wend. Saluadinus marium impedimenta ad nos, cum ipsos convocare voluerimus, . ii. 431.*

vii. habuit regna nobilia propria, exceptis soldanis et admirabilibus et con-federatis, promptis ad veniendum ei in adjutorium. veniendi, confestim contra quem voluerimus dimicaturi. Qui tot et tanti sunt, ut non possint aestimari. Et nobiscum habentur Bedewini, qui pro Machometica legi tuenda ultra. cupiunt trucidari, quos si opponeremus inimicis nostris, sufficerent. Habemus et Thurcomanos, quos si effunderemus super inimicos nostros, destruerent eos. Habemus et montanarios et rusticos, qui pro præcepto nostro strenue dimicarent contra gentes quæ venturæ sunt universas super terram nostram, ut spoliis earum ditarentur, et exterminarent eas. Habemus et soldarios bellicosos, quia auro et argento et gemmis. pretiosis abundamus,<sup>7</sup> per quos terram apertam habemus et adquisitam, et expugnatos inimicos. Et hii et omnes reges orientis et totius paganisimi non tardabunt, cum eos submonue-

<sup>1</sup> *tutæ*] reetæ, W. A. C. D., Cogg., Vin., and MS. Reg.

<sup>4</sup> *hoc*] So also W. and MS. Reg. Om. A. C. D.

<sup>2</sup> *et*] Om. W. A. C. D.; *at*, Vin. In Edd and ed. Wend. *sed*.

<sup>5</sup> *abundantiora*] habundaneiora, MS.

<sup>3</sup> *potentatu*] Added in marg.; *serritio*, W. A. C. D., Cogg., Vin., and MS. Reg.

<sup>6</sup> *multa*] Interlined.

<sup>7</sup> *abundamus*] habundamus, MS.

. rimus et vocaverimus, convenire ilico ad formidabile edictum A.D. 1188.  
 fol. 74 b. nostrum. Et vos, cum fueritis congregati, sicut carta vestra  
 dicit, et ducetis multitudinem vestram, ut narrat nuncius  
 vester, obviabimus vobis confidenter per potentiam Dei, et  
 optinebimus terras fortitudine Dei. Nam, si veneritis, cum  
 toto posse vestro venietis, et praesentes eritis cum omni gente.  
 Et scimus, quod nullus remanebit in terra vestra, qui se  
 defendere possit aut terram tueri. Et quando Deus victoriam  
 sua fortitudine nobis de vobis donaverit, nihil amplius erit  
 quam ut terras vestras capiamus pro libitu nostro, Dei forti-  
 tudine et voluntate. Adunatio enim legis Christianorum bis  
 venit super nos in Babilone, una vice apud Damiatam, et  
 altera apud Alexandriam. Et nostis qualiter utraque vice  
 redierunt, et ad qualem exitum devenerunt.<sup>1</sup> Et Deus aduna-  
 bit<sup>2</sup> propitius<sup>3</sup> nobis [regiones]<sup>4</sup> affluentius, sicut<sup>5</sup> et adunavit  
 eas<sup>6</sup> longe lateque sub potestate nostra, Babiloniam cum per-  
 tinentiis suis, terram Damasci, et maritimam Jerusalem,  
 terram Gethsuræ et castella ejus, terram Roasiæ cum perti-  
 Rog. Wend. nentiis.<sup>7</sup> Et per gratiam Dei hoc totum est in manibus nos-  
 ii. 432. tris, et residuum regum<sup>8</sup> Sarracenorum nostro pertinens est  
 imperio. Nam si mandaremus excellentissimis regibus orien-  
 talium<sup>9</sup> Sarracenorum, non retraherent se a nobis. Et si sum-  
 moneremus calipham de Baldach, quem Deus salvet, de sede  
 excelsi imperii sui exsureret,<sup>10</sup> et venire properaret in auxilium  
 excellentiae nostræ. Et nos per virtutem Dei optinebimus Jern-  
 salem et terras ejus. Et remanent adhuc in manibus Christiano-  
 rum tres civitates, Tyrus, Tripolis et Antiochia; et de hiis non  
 est aliud, nisi ut capiantur. Attamen si bellum vultis, et si Deus  
 voluerit, nt sit per voluntatem suam, et quod totam terram  
 adquiramus Christianorum, obviabimus vobis, sicut scriptum est  
 in carta nostra.<sup>11</sup> Verum, si nos de bono pacis requisieritis, man-  
 dabitis<sup>12</sup> procuratoribus istorum trium locorum prædictorum, ut

<sup>1</sup> *devenerunt*] The first syllable is interlined.

<sup>2</sup> *adunabit*] adunavit, A. C. D. I., Cogg., Vin., and MS. Reg. In W. *adjnvavit*.

<sup>3</sup> *propitius*] Interlined. Om. W. A. C. D.

<sup>4</sup> *regiones*] Supplied from W. A. C. D., Cogg., Vin., and MS. Reg.

<sup>5</sup> *sicut*] Interlined. Om. W. A. C. D.

<sup>6</sup> *eas*] ea, MS. ; eos, A. C. D. Corr. from W., Cogg., Vin., and MS. Reg.

<sup>7</sup> *pertinentiis*] In W. A. C. D.,

Cogg., Vin., and MS. Reg. is added,  
“regionem Indiæ cum pertinentiis.”

<sup>8</sup> *regum*] regnum, Cogg.

<sup>9</sup> *orientalium*] Interlined. Om. W. A. C. D.

<sup>10</sup> *exsureret*] exurgeret, MS.

<sup>11</sup> *nostra*] vestra, W. A. C. D.

<sup>12</sup> *mandabitis*] At first written *mandamus*, and then altered to *mandabimus*, which is found also in F. and Cogg.; but the more correct reading has been adopted from W. A. C. D., Vin., and MS. Reg.

A.D. 1188. ea nobis sine contradictione resigunt. Et nos vobis vestram sanctam Crucem reddemus, et liberabimus omnes captivos Christianos, qui sunt in tota terra nostra. Et permittemus vobis, ut peregrinos admittant hii, qui custodes sunt locorum, ut ad ea veniant peregrini in tota vita nostra, et habebimus vobiscum pacem. Carta hæc scripta fuit anno adventus prophetæ nostri Macumeth, d.lxxx°.iii°.<sup>1</sup> gratia Dei solius."

Hæc quoque carta translata fuit verbo ad verbum de Arabico in Latinum, quapropter non est composita in verbis rhetorice ordinatis.

*Guido, rex Jerosolimorum, a carcere liberatur.*

Guy, king  
of Jerusa-  
lem, is  
released  
from  
captivity.

He is per-  
suaded to  
break his  
faith with  
Saladin.

Eodem anno Guido, rex Jerosolimorum, cum apud Rog.Wend. Daimascum per annum detentus fuisset in vineulis, Sal- ii. 432. lahadinus sub tali illum pactione absolvit, ut, abjurato regno, mare quamtoius proscriptus transiret. Hanc pactionem cassandam clerus regni deliberat, nec ibi fidem esse servandam, ubi periclitatur religio; dum Terra Rog.Wend. Promissionis omni solatio destituta, caput non habeat ii. 433. nec rectorem, nec peregrini venturi ductorem, nec populus defensorem. Quapropter Saladinus detestabatur<sup>2</sup>. Christianorum dolositatem.<sup>3</sup> Regem igitur a vinculis soluto, confluxerunt ad eum multi peregrini, qui nuper advenerant, cum populo regionis, et copiosum exercitum conflaverunt. Qui, cum rex pactionem, qua Saladinus tenebatur, absolvendus a carcere tenere vellet, animabant<sup>4</sup> eundem sapientes dicentes, quod ipsum timor excusabat, qui poterat cadere etiam in constantem. Ipsi igitur Tyrum ingredi volentes, a marchisio non admittuntur, licet eo pacto civitas ei commissa fuisset, ut regi repetenti et regni heredibus redderetur. Sed post dies paucos, eodem marchisio defuncto, hæc pestis cessavit. Mortuus est etiam eodem tempore Reimun-

<sup>1</sup> The year of the Hijra 584 cor- responds to A.D. 1188.

<sup>2</sup> *detestabatur*] *destestabatur*, MS.

<sup>3</sup> *Quapropter . . . . dolositatem*]

Added in marg., and is in text of F.

<sup>4</sup> *animabant*] *animabat*, MS.

dus, comes Tripolitanus, cui imputabatur totius casus A.D. 1188. . sinistri eventus in Terra Promissionis. Quod pessimæ Death of . suspicionis argumentum suscepit, quia ex mentis aliena-<sup>the count</sup> of Tripoli. . tione in extremis non recognovit vel eukaristiam<sup>1</sup> sus- ceptit. Hiis igitur ita gestis, rex cum exercitu baro- Guy num regni, qui sibi adhaeserant, sociatis sibi Templariis with an et Hospitalariis, Venetianis etiam, qui nuper advene- army to rant, cum Januensibus peregrinis, iter versus Tholo- maidam, quæ alio nomine Achon dicitur, arripuit. Cujus robur veraciter numeratus<sup>2</sup> ad ix. milia arma- torum excrevit.

*Achon a Christianis obsidetur.*

Rog.Wend. Rex itaque Jerosolimitanus, cum Tholomaidam per- Siege of  
ii. 433. venisset, fecit omnes suos in collem ascendere civitati. Acre.  
vicinum, quem, eo quod ad instar turris erectus sit in sullime et rotundus, Turonum a vulgo nuncupatur. Mons autem iste a parte urbis orientali consurgit edi-  
fol. 75 u. tior, et in circuitu longe porrectus<sup>3</sup> in plana diffunditur. Die igitur tertia post suum adventum, urbem Christiani obsident obsidione instantissima, quæ postea non defecit usque ad tempus quo capta fuit a regibus Francorum et Anglorum, Philippo scilicet et Ricardo,  
Rog.Wend. prout in sequentibus dicetur. Adeo quidem peregrini  
ii. 434. simplices et mediae manus homines bellatores concepto devotionis fervore dueuntur, quod, suis regibus<sup>4</sup> vel dominis non exspectatis, ab extremis mundi partibus confluunt Domino Christo servituri.

*Salahadinus ab Achon confusus recessit iratus.<sup>5</sup>*

Rog.Wend. Rex autem Jerosolimorum, multitudine vallatus pere-  
ii. 434. grinoruu, fecit omnes suos de Turono descendere, et

<sup>1</sup> eukaristiam] Added in marg.

<sup>1</sup> rectum, and so in W.; prospectum,

<sup>2</sup> numeratus] All the MSS. read

A. C. D. I.

thus, but in Edd. and ed. Wend. corrected numeratum.

<sup>1</sup> regibus] legibus, MS.

<sup>3</sup> porrectus] At first written por-

<sup>5</sup> Salahadinus... iratus] On an

erasure.

A.D. 1188. una cum peregrinis, qui nuper advenerant, ante civitatem casta locavit. Post dies autem paucos, superveniente Salahadino in manu robusta, impetum in Christianos fecit acerrimum, ut qui putabat eos insultu primo conterendos; at fideles Christi in unum conglobati, quasi pro animabus decentantes, viriliter restiterunt. Quos Salahadinus circumcingi jubens, pro impossibili habuit, quod ex omnibus illis pes unus evaderet, sicque<sup>1</sup> judicabat; sed aliter visum est Ei, qui consilia dissipat reproborum. Nam cum per triduum insultus infidelium undique advenientium pertulissent, et jam quasi debilitati ab hostibus deficere inchoassent, ecce aspieiunt classem cum xii. milibus Danorum et Frisonum velis accedere sinuosis ad portum, vento satis favorabili; quem, Deo opitulante, tempore opportuno<sup>2</sup> eum prosperitate portum jam intrare conspiiunt, in eorum auxilium desideratum. Quod cum eis nunciatum fuisset, respiravit eorū desolatorum, "ut solet in fuso vena redire mero."<sup>3</sup> Ipsi igitur, cum adjuncti fuissent regis exercitui, exercitum copiosissimum et quasi invincibilem conflaverunt. Insper, qui advenerant, victualium<sup>4</sup> copiam multum exercitui Christiano necessariam secum deferebant. Quod cum compriisset Salahadinus, utpote vir circumspectus et guerræ peritus, loca retraxit, et confusus sed dissimulans ad terræ suæ inferiora<sup>5</sup> festinus descendit.

Who are reinforced by a body of Danes and Frisians.

Ovidius.

Saladin retires to his own kingdom.

### *De impedimento undique promotionis Terræ Sanctæ.*

Accessit autem hiis diebus ad Terræ Sanctæ magnum Rog. Wend. impedimentum discordia, quæ nuper, et post crucem susceptam, inter regem Francorum et comitem Pictavensem R[icardum] ex una parte, et Henricum, regem

<sup>1</sup> *sicque*] Added in marg.

<sup>2</sup> *opportuno*] oportuno, MS.

<sup>3</sup> Ovid. Epp. ex Ponto, iii. 10.

<sup>4</sup> *victualium*] The last three letters are on an erasure.

<sup>5</sup> *inferiora*] imferiora, MS.

Anglorum, surrexit<sup>1</sup> ex altera ; adeo quidem, ut mutua A.D. 1188 ad invicem castella surriperent, et multa mala in hominiciis, succendiis et spoliis perpetrarent. Qui tandem pro bono pacis in Normanniam ad colloquium convenientes, diabolo superseminante zizania in medio tritici, discordes ab<sup>2</sup> invicem recesserunt.

*Quomodo Johannes, Agnaniæ cardinalis, pacem inter Philippum Francorum et Henricum Anglorum reges fecerit.<sup>3</sup>*

Rog. Wend. Anno Dominicæ Nativitatis M<sup>o</sup>.C<sup>o</sup>. octogesimo nono<sup>3</sup> A.D. 1189. ii. 435. rex Henricus in partibus transmarinis moram faciens, infestationes, quas sibi rex Francorum Philippus et comes Pictavorum Ricardus, filius ejus, faciebant, graviter nimis et moleste ferebat. Fuit autem ad Natale Henry Domini in Andegavia apud Saumur, et sollempne festum ibi tenuit, licet quamplures de comitibus et baronibus suis ab eo recessissent, et Ricardo filio suo adhaesissent. Post festum [vero]<sup>4</sup> sancti Hylarii, 13 Jan. ruptis treugis, quæ erant inter reges, Philippus, rex Francorum, et comes Ricardus, congregatis copiis militaris, intraverunt terras regis Anglorum, et eas fera-liter devastare cœperunt. Britones etiam, relicto eo, Ricardo comiti adhaeserunt. Sed papa Clemens, admirans nondum pacem inter reges fuisse reformatam, misit Johannem de Agnanio cardinalem cum plena potestate ad lites regias dirimendas. Qui cum ad eos venisset, et ipsos nunc asperis nunc blandis sermoni-

Hostilities recom-  
mence. The sove-  
reigns are reconciled

<sup>1</sup> surrexit] surexit, MS.

<sup>2</sup> ab] ad, MS.

<sup>3</sup> Quomodo . . . . fecerit] In the margin opposite is the following note, in a hand of the 14th century : " Hie est vera contin[uatio] Historiae Mathei Parisiensis in alio volumine, in quo habetur Historia ab origine mundi usque ad annum

Domini hic notatum." [The volume referred to, is no doubt MS. Corp. Chr. Coll. Cambr., No. xxvi., marked by me A. From this year begin MS. C.C.C.C., No. xvi., and the second portion of MS. Cott. Nero D. v.]

<sup>4</sup> vero] Supplied from W. B. C. D. I.

A.D. 1189. bus ad pacem commonuisset,<sup>1</sup> ipsi tandem reges, præ-  
by the in- stita cautione, juraverunt, quod starent judicio Bituri-  
tervention of John, censis, Rothomagensis et Cantuariensis archiepiscoporum,  
cardinal of ita scilicet, ut si quis eorum deficeret, quo minus inter  
Anagni. eos pax solida firmaretur, et iter Jerosolimitanum ex-  
pediretur, in eum, tanquam in Dominicæ crucis et <sup>Rog. Wend.</sup>  
ii. 436. totius Christianæ religionis subversorem, domini papæ  
sententiam excommunicationis promulgarent. Statim-  
que cardinalis sententiam tulit in omnes, tam cleri-  
cos quam laicos, per quos staret quo minus pax fieret  
inter reges, salvis tantummodo regum personis eorum-  
dem. Eodemque tempore transmissa est hujusmodi  
epistola Cantuariensi archiepiscopo.<sup>2</sup>

*Epistola filii marchionis, de oppressione Terræ  
Sanctæ.<sup>3</sup>*

Letter from “Cantuariensi archiepiscopo Baldewino Conradus, filius mar. <sup>Rog. Wend.</sup>  
Conrad of chionis de Monte-Ferrato,<sup>4</sup> salutem. Turbantur elementa et <sup>ii. 436.</sup>  
Mont- catholicæ fidei derogatur, cum sedes Jerosolimitana apostolicæ  
Ferrat to sedi subtrahitur. Periit enim Jerosolima, et inertia Christi-  
the abp. of anorum a Sarracenis vilissime pertractatur. Fœdant namque <sup>fol. 75 b.</sup>  
Canter- Dominicum sepulchrum, destruunt Calvariae locum, nativi-  
bury. tatem Christi contempnunt, et beatae Virginis eradicant sepul-  
chrum. Sedes Constantinopolitana Romanae sedi nullam exhibet reverentiam; Anthiochena quidem laborare dinoseitur in  
extremis. Hæc autem omnia Christianorum constat desidia  
contigisse. Lugenda est civitas Jerusalem atque lugubriter  
lamentanda, quæ suis cultoribus spoliata, ubi Christus per  
horas diei ac noctis constitutas Deo cantando et orando famu-  
labatur, nunc, proh dolor! Machometh excelsa voce laudatur,  
ritibus polluta Saracenicis. Vestrae igitur celsitudini preces.  
cum lacrimis porrigo commixtas, quatinus calamitatum Terræ

<sup>1</sup> commonuisset] In the text *com-  
movisset*, as in W. B. F.; but corr.  
in marg. *vel commonuisset*, and the  
latter reading is substituted by  
Matth. Paris in the margin of B.,  
which is followed by C. In D. *cog-  
norisset*, erroneously.

<sup>2</sup> Eodemque . . . . archiepiscopo]

Added in marg., and is in text of F.

<sup>3</sup> Partly in Diceto, col. 642, where  
it is dated Tyre, xii. kal. Oct. [20th  
Sept.] It is omitted in D.

<sup>4</sup> Monte-Ferrato] Monte-Ferar-  
rio, W. B. C.

Sanctæ misereri dignemini, ut confortetis reges, commoneatis<sup>1</sup> A.D. 1189.  
fideles, ut, canibus expulsis à patrimonio Jesu Christi, mise-  
ricorditer subveniant, vincula solvant, profanata<sup>2</sup> mundent; ut  
Rog.Wend. terra sanctis Christi<sup>3</sup> pedibus calcata de potestate infidelium  
ii. 437. potenter liberetur."

*Item idem. De conspiratione imperatoris Constanti-  
nopolitani et Salahadini contra Christianitatem.*

Rog.Wend. "Accedit etiam ad cumulum iniquitatis, ad obprobrium et Continua-  
ii. 437. desolationem Christianitatis, familiaritas, quæ viget inter Sala-  
dinum et imperatorem Constantinopolitanum, cui idem Saladi-  
nis tradidit omnes ecclesias Terræ Promissionis, ut in eisdem  
serviatur<sup>4</sup> secundum ritum Græcorum. Insuper etiam et  
idem Salahadinus misit ydolum suum Constantinopolim impe-  
ratoris assensu, ut ibi publice coleretur; sed per gratiam Dei  
captum est in mari a Januensibus, et<sup>5</sup> cum ipsa navi per-  
ductum est Tyrum. Nuper etiam exercitus constructus est  
copiosus ante urbem Antiochiaë, et dictus imperator promisit  
centum galeias Salabadino; Salahadinus quoque dedit ei  
totam Terram Promissionis, ita scilicet, ut impedit<sup>6</sup> viam  
Christianorum, maxime autem Francorum, ad succursum  
Terræ Sanctæ properantium. Nec est<sup>7</sup> aliquis apud Constan-  
tinopolim, qui crucem accipiat,<sup>8</sup> quin statim capiatur<sup>9</sup> et  
incarceretur. Hoc autem nobis solatum est, quod nuper  
frater Salahadini et filius ante Antiochiam capti sunt, et sub  
salva custodia deputati. Valete."

*Quibus de causis Ricardus, comes Pictavensis, a  
fidelitate patris recesserit.*

Rog.Wend. Eodem quoque anno, post Paschalem sollempnitatem<sup>10</sup> Meeting of  
ii. 437. the kings  
bis inter reges Francorum et Anglorum habitum est  
of France  
colloquium prope Feritatem-Bernardi; sed ad ultimum, and Eng-  
land.

9 April.

<sup>1</sup> commoneatis] Interlined is, *vel v.*,  
i.e., *commoveatis.*

<sup>6</sup> impedit] impediret, B. *marg.*  
and C.

<sup>2</sup> profanata] prophanata, MS.

<sup>7</sup> est] erat, B. *marg.*, C.

<sup>3</sup> Christi] Added on to the text.

<sup>8</sup> accipiat] acciperet, B. *marg.*,

<sup>4</sup> serviatur] So also W., but corr.  
serviretur by Matth. Paris in B.  
*marg.*, and so C.

C. *sec. man.*

<sup>5</sup> ct] ec, MS.

<sup>9</sup> capiatur] caperetur, B. *marg.*,

C.

<sup>10</sup> sollempnitatem] sollempnita, MS.

A.D. 1189. in ebdomada Pentecostes ibidem convenientes, tractatum .  
 28 May. diligentem habuerunt super hoc. Postulavit utique .  
 rex Francorum Alesiam, sororem suam, quam rex Angliae  
 habuit sub custodia sua, donari Ricardo, Pictavensium  
 comiti, in uxorem, et aliquam securitatem sibi fieri de  
 regno Angliae, post decessum suum. Petiit insuper, ut Rog.Wend.  
 iohannes, filius ejus, crucem susciperet Jerosolimam  
 profecturus ; nam Ricardus, frater ejus, iter illud nul-  
 latenus sine ipso arriperet. Sed quia rex Angliae huic  
 petitioni assensum præbere noluit, discordes ab invicem  
 recesserunt.

The demands of Philip are not complied with.

*Comminatio cardinalis, et responsio regis  
 Francorum.*

Hoc utique colloquio cardinalis memoratus constanter Rog.Wend.  
 asserebat, quod, nisi rex Francorum et comes Ricardus  
 cum rege Anglorum ad plenum compouerent, omnes  
 terras eorumdem sub interdicto concluderet. Cui rex  
 Francorum respondit, se ipsius sententiam nullatenus  
 formidare, cum nulla æquitate fulciretur. Addidit etiam,  
 ad ecclesiam Romanam minime pertinere in regem ali-  
 quem, maxime Francorum, per sententiam animadver-  
 tere, si rex idem in homines suos demeritos, indomitos  
 et regno suo rebelles, uleiscendi<sup>1</sup> causa insurgere dis-  
 posuerit. Adjunxit insuper, quod cardinalis prænomina-  
 tus jam desiderabiles esterlingos regis Angliae olfeccerat,  
 quorum odore attractus, ipsi plus æquo Romanorum  
 more extitit favorabilis; unde ipsum judicem suspectum  
 habebat.<sup>2</sup> Comes etiam Ricardus vix se continuuit, vix-  
 que magnatum manibus retentus est,<sup>3</sup> quin, extracto  
 gladio, in ipsum cardinalem furibundus irruisset; unde  
 cardinalis retrocedens, latuit tremulus et verba con- .

Philip denies his authority to interfere.

Avarice imputed to the cardinal.

Anger of earl Richard.

<sup>1</sup> *uleiscendi]* injurias suas uleiscendi, W. B. C.; injurias uleiscendi, D. and Ben. Abb. p. 542.

<sup>2</sup> *habebat]* In D. is here added,

"enim pertineat ad Romanos patulis rictibus thesauris semper inhiare."

<sup>3</sup> *cst]* On an erasure.

. tinuit ampulosa. Archiepiscopi vero aliique magnates A.D. 1189.  
. impetum comitis refrænantes, asseruerunt cardinalem  
. de negotio crucis et Christianitatis honore sollicitari.  
. Et sic, reposito gladio, spiritus commoti comitis feliciter  
. conquievit. Datum est igitur regi Anglorum consilium,  
. ut petitionibus filii sui præberet assensum. Dignum  
. enim esse consiliarii sui dicebant, ut filio suo et heredi  
fol. 76 a. legitimo militique tam strenuo aliquam securitatem  
faceret<sup>1</sup> gaudenter de hereditate sua habenda, si ipsum, Henry re-  
Deo ordinante, supervixisset.<sup>2</sup> Quibus respondit rex fuses to  
inecontinenti, se nullatenus hoc in tali statu facturum,  
quia id coactus potius quam spontaneus fecisse vide-  
retur. give secu-  
rity that  
Richard  
should be  
his heir.

*Comes Ricardus homagium facit regi Francorum.*

Rog. Wend. Comes igitur Ricardus, commotus vehementer cum Richard  
ii. 438. talia cognovisset,<sup>3</sup> videntibus cunctis, fecit homagium does  
regi Francorum de toto tenemento patris sui, quod homage to  
Rog. Wend. ad regnum Franciae pertinebat, salvo patri tenemento, Philip for  
ii. 439. quamdiu viveret, et salva fide, quam patri debebat. his territo-  
Sicque soluto colloquio, reges et tota recessit multi-  
tudo. ries in France.

*Ut rex Francorum quatuor<sup>4</sup> castella regis Anglorum  
ceperit, ipsumque a Cenomannica urbe fugaverit.*

Rog. Wend. Rex igitur Francorum cum comite Ricardo in hunc Several  
ii. 439. modum recedens, cepit Feritatem-Bernardi, Montem- castles are  
fortem, Baalunque,<sup>5</sup> castella regis Angliae, ope et opera subdued by  
comitis R[icardi];<sup>6</sup> et post captionem illam, moram Philip and  
Richard.

<sup>1</sup> *faceret*] facere, MS.

added, and “Bellum-montem,” Ben. Abb., p. 542.

<sup>2</sup> *supervixisset*] supevixisset, MS.

<sup>5</sup> *Baalunque*] Baalverque, MS. and W. F., and so Edd. and ed. Wend., but erroneously, and corrected from B. C. D. E. I.

<sup>3</sup> *cognovisset*] congновisset, MS.

<sup>6</sup> *ope . . . R.*] Added in marg. and in text of F.

<sup>1</sup> *quatuor*] So read Wendover and B. C. D. F., although only three castles are named; but in the earlier authoritics, “Malum-Stabulum” is

A.D. 1189. trium dierum fecit ibidein. Deinde Cenomanniam veniens, fingens se Turonim iturum, proxima die Lunæ, cum rex Anglorum suique viderentur ibidem esse securi, Mans is attacked, and Henry put to flight. rex Francorum acies suas disposuit, in civitatem Cenomanniae insultum facturus. Quod videns Stephanus de Turnham, tunc Andegaviae regis Anglorum senescallus, in suburbio ignem conjecit; sed ignis accensus muros transcendens, fere civitatem totam in favillas redigit. Hoc autem Franci cognoscentes,<sup>1</sup> ad quendam pontem lapideum pervenerunt, ubi Gaufridus de Broillun et multi eum eo ex parte regis Angliæ eis occurserunt, pontem diripere<sup>2</sup> cupientes; factoque conflictu maximo, multi hinc et inde gladio corruerunt. In quo cruentissimo certamine captus est Gaufridus membratus, in cervice graviter vulneratus, cum aliis quamplurimis. Ceteri autem volentes in civitatem fugere, cum catervatim ruerent, Franci una cum illis ingressi sunt civitatem. Quod videns rex Anglorum, de se desperatus,<sup>3</sup> cum militibus septingentis illico aufugit. Rex vero Francorum et Ricardus, comes Pictavorum, per tria illum miliaria raptim inseuti sunt; et nisi vadum, per quod transitum fecerunt, altum esset et immensum, omnes de familia regis Angliæ, qui tunc forte per ducem peritum impune transierant, milites caperentur. In illa vero fuga multi sunt Walensium interfecti. Rex autem Anglorum Turonim cum paucis veniens, ibi se in munitionem recepit; residui vero, qui remanerant de suis, in turrim sese Cenomanie Philip captures the town of Mans. receperunt. Rex Francorum illico turrim obsedit, et tum<sup>4</sup> per effossores suos tum per<sup>5</sup> machinarum insultus, infra diem tertium reddita est ei turris, cum militibus xxx<sup>a</sup>. et servientibus xl<sup>a</sup>.<sup>6</sup> Indeque recedens, cepit

R. Wend.  
ii. 440.<sup>1</sup> cognoscentes] congnoscentes, MS.<sup>2</sup> diripere] dirripere, MS.<sup>3</sup> desperatus] In the margin is written, *vel ans*, i.e. *desperans*, and so in W. B. C. D. F.<sup>4</sup> tum] cum, MS. and E. F.<sup>5</sup> tum per] et, MS. and F. Corr. from W. B. C. D.<sup>6</sup> xl<sup>a</sup>.] lx<sup>a</sup>, W. B. C. D.

Montem-duplicem, per deditonem. Deinde reddita A.D. 1189.  
sunt ei castella de Troia, de Rupibus,<sup>1</sup> Montarium,<sup>2</sup> Other  
Castrum-Careeris, et de Leir, Calvi-Montis, Ambasiae, render to  
de Rupibus-Carbonis, et Mons-bellus. him.

*De captione Silvæ civitatis.*

Rog. Wend. Eodemque anno multæ naves a partibus aquilonis Seville  
ii. 440. Britannicum mare sulcantes, cum peregrinis Angliæ captured  
fœdus inierunt. Itaque de consilio communi, xv<sup>o</sup>. king of  
kalendas Junii de Derdemue exeuntes, naves videlicet Portugal,  
multum oneriferæ numero xxxvii., sese pelago com- with the  
miserunt. Rex autem Portigalensis comperiens<sup>3</sup> aid of the  
naves præmunitæ essent, cum post varios rerum even- crusaders.  
tus Ulixebonam pervenerunt, tam armis quam homi- 18 May.  
nibus roboratae, supplicavit ut ei venirent in auxilium,  
ad sibi subjugandam civitatem nomine Silviam. Pro-  
misit etiam eis in adjutorium galeias xxxvii. et alias  
Rog. Wend. naves plurimas, et pactum cum eis iniit, præstito sa-  
ii. 441. cramento, quod quicquid auri vel argenti, vel cuius-  
cunque generis lueri, civitate subacta, possent adquirere,  
in usus suos redigentes, urbem tantum regi concederent. Igitur ab Ulixebona recedentes, velis prosperis  
in brevi portum Silvæ intraverunt; impulsisque ad  
terram navibus, tentoriisque fixis, urbem obsidione  
vallarunt. Erat autem numerus Christianorum ad  
pugnam præparatorum tria milia quingenti. Deinde  
die tertia muris appropinquantes, insultum fecerunt  
acerrimum, suburbium irruperunt; fontem etiam dupli-  
muro circumlatum, habentem barbecanam ix. turribus  
circumseptam, a quo cives haurire solebant aquæ abun-  
dantiam,<sup>4</sup> terra, fimo et lapidibus obstruxerunt. Gentiles  
vero aquæ penuria laborantes, animo sunt consternati.

<sup>1</sup> *Rupibus*] In Ben. Abb., p. 544,  
and Hoveden, p. 453, *Rupibus-Epi-*  
*scopi.*

<sup>2</sup> *Montarium*] *Mentarium*, MS.  
and F.

<sup>3</sup> *comperiens*] Added in marg.

<sup>4</sup> *abundantiam*] *habundantiam*,  
MS.

A.D. 1189. Princeps vero civitatis, Alchad nomine, regem adiit Portigalensem, reddiditque ei civitatem, ignorantibus Christianis.

*Tria milia Christianorum lx<sup>a</sup>. milia paganorum peremerunt.*

Great slaughter of the Unbelievers. Subacta igitur mirabiliter urbe a peregrinis Crucifixi,<sup>1</sup> inventa sunt in illa paganorum plusquam Ix<sup>a</sup>. milia, qui omnes in ore gladii, praeter solummodo xiii. milia utriusque sexus, perierunt. Sieque Omnipotentis virtute, sine dampno<sup>2</sup> Christianorum, triumphatum est The temple of Mahomed is consecrated, and a bishop appointed. de paganis gloriose; et, civitate sordibus ydolatriæ emundata, Portigalensis episcopus mahomariam magnam secerat, in honorem Die Genitricis dedicavit, præficiens ibidem episcopum quendam de partibus Flandriæ, qui gratia peregrinationis<sup>3</sup> illuc advenerat.

*Rex Henricus cum Ricardo filio suo pacem coactus init.*

Meeting of the kings of England and France at Saumur. Eodemque anno, in crastino apostolorum Petri et Pauli, comes Flandriæ Philippus et Willelmus, Re-

Rog. Wend.  
ii. 441.  
fol. 76 b.

mensis archiepiscopus, et Hugo, dux Burgundiæ, venerunt apud Saumur ad regem Anglorum, ad compo-

29 June.

nendum inter eum et regem Francorum et Ricardum, comitem Pictavorum. Habuit autem comes Ricardus Britones confederatos cum Pictavensibus, qui a rege Francorum literas patentes acceperant, quod ipse nullatenus cum rege Anglorum componeret, nisi et ipsi in pace fuissent comprehensi.

<sup>1</sup> *Crucifixi*] In the text *Christi crucifixi*, but corr. in marg.

<sup>2</sup> *dampno*] *dapno*, MS.

<sup>3</sup> *peregrinationis*] *peregrinationis*, MS.

*Turonis capitur a rege Francorum.*

A.D. 1189.

Rog. Wend. Interea vero rex Francorum et Ricardus, comes Pictavorum, civitatem Turonicam obsidione vallarunt, proxima die Lunæ post festum præfatum; et ex parte Ligeris fluminis, præ modicitate aquæ, scalis muro applicatis, violenter civitatem ceperunt, in eaque milites lxix. et c. servientes. Tunc rex Anglorum in arcto Henry is constitutus, pacem sibi turpissimam facere compulsus forced to make est, in hunc modum: Rex Anglorum se posuit ex toto peace, and in consilio regis Francorum, ita quod quicquid<sup>1</sup> idem does rex provideret vel fieri judicaret, rex Angliae sine homage to con- Philip. traditione compleret. Tunc rex Anglorum regi Francorum fecit homagium, quia in principio hujus guerræ homagium suum reddiderat regi Francorum. Provisum Terms of est insuper, ut Alesia, soror regis Francorum, redderetur in custodia comitis Ricardi, usque ad redditum<sup>2</sup> suum de peregrinatione Terræ Sanctæ, ut tunc ipsam duceret in uxorem. Provisum est etiam, quod comes Ricardus acciperet<sup>3</sup> homagia hominum de omnibus terris patris sui citra marc et ultra; et nullus baronum sive militum, qui in werra adhæsit comiti Ricardo, redibit ad regem Angliae, nisi in ultimo mense, ante motionem regnum versus Terram Sanctam, cuius terminus in media Quadragesima erit. Dabit preterea regi Francorum, pro laboribus suis in obsequio comitis Ricardi impensis, xx. milia marcas argenti. Et rex Francorum et comes Ricardus tenebunt civitates Cenomannicam et Turonicam, cum castellis de Leir, de Trou, donec omnia fiant, quæ sunt prælocuta.

*Prælocutio Merlini.*

In hoc autem eventu videtur prophetia, si prophetia Prophecy vel pronosticum dici debeat, Merlini completa, quæ of Merlin fulfilled.

<sup>1</sup> *quicquid*] Added in marg.<sup>2</sup> *redditum*] redditum, MS.<sup>3</sup> *acciperet*] At first written acci-  
piet.

A.D. 1189. dicit, "Dabitur maxillis ejus frenum, quod in Armo-  
rico sinu fabricabitur;"<sup>1</sup> frenum maxillis ejus, vide-  
licet regis Angliae Henrici, est datum, dum, quod  
prædecessores hereditario jure<sup>2</sup> tenuerant, dominio sub-  
jecit alterius; dumque trans fugas suos, Gaufridum sci-  
licet de Meduana, Guidonem de Valle, Radulfum de  
Fulgeriis, intra sinum habitantes Armoricum, id est,  
Britannicum, qui sinus transitum facientibus a Bri-  
tannia versus Franciam se pacificum et comineabilem  
offerebat, vitatis<sup>3</sup> finibus Normannorum, in ligantiam  
et potestatem filii sui Ricardi, vellet nolle, transire  
concessit. Sed, ut verius dicatur, potius creditur divina.  
fuisse ultio et sanguinis beati Thomæ martiris recla-  
matio, quia quod Deo et sanctæ ecclesiæ rex palam.  
promisit, præcipue contra libertatem ecclesiæ, bona.  
vacantium ecclesiarum infiscando, minime adimplevit.

*Imperator iter Jerosolimitanum arripuit.*

23 April. Circa dies istos, in festo scilicet sancti Georgii, Rog. Wend.  
The emperor  
Frederic  
I. sets out  
for the  
Holy Land. Frethericus, Romanorum impérator, loca Dominicæ  
passionis visitaturus, peregrinationis suæ iter arripuit  
apud Reinesburg, transitum per Hungariam et Bulga-  
riam, ut proposuerat, habiturus.

*De morte regis Henrici.*

Death of  
Henry II.  
at Chinon. Rex autem Henricus de colloquio mœstus valde ad Rog. Wend.  
Chinonem veniens, gravi tactus incommodo,<sup>4</sup> maledixit  
diei in qua natus fuerat; et sic in angaria positus,  
infra triduum post concordiam factam, diem clausit

<sup>1</sup> See p. 388, ante.

<sup>2</sup> *jure*] In W. B. C. D. and Diec.  
col. 645, the words *in Arvernia* are  
added here.

<sup>3</sup> *vitatis*] Above the line is writ-

ten *mu*, so as to read *mutatis*; but  
the former reading is confirmed by  
W. and all the MSS. and Diecio.

<sup>4</sup> *incommodo*] *ineomodo*, MS.

extremum. Obiit autem postquam regnaverat annis A.D. 1189. xxx<sup>ta</sup>.i<sup>ii</sup>or. mensibus vii. et diebus v., in octabis<sup>1</sup> [apostolorum]<sup>2</sup> Petri et Pauli. In crastino autem, dum porta- 6 July.  
retur ad sepeliendum, regio indutus apparatu, coronam The corpse  
in capite habens auream et cirotecas<sup>3</sup> in manibus, cal- is dressed  
ciamenta auro texta in pedibus et calcaria, anulum in royal  
magnum in digito, et in manu sceptrum,<sup>4</sup> accinctusque  
gladio, discooperto vultu jacebat.

*Sanguis de naribus regis erupit mortui.*

Rog.Wend. Quod cum Ricardo filio suo nunciaretur, festinanter Blood  
ii. 444. ei venit obviam, male sibi conscious. Quo superveni- bursts from  
ente, confestim erupit sanguis ex naribus regis de- the nose  
functi, ac si indignaretur spiritus in adventu ejus, at the approach  
qui ejusdem<sup>5</sup> mortis causa esse credebatur; ut vide- of Richard.  
retur sanguis clamare ad Deum.<sup>6</sup> Quod videns comes abhorruit, et amarissime flere cœpit; et, inæstimabili perturbatus angustia, usque ad Fontem-Ebraudi fere- Burial at  
trum sequens, corpus patris sui ab archiepiscopis Tu- Fontev-  
ronensi et Treverensi, divinis sollempniter ut decuit rault.  
celebratis, fecit honorifice tumulari. Et quoniam idem rex adhuc vivens dicere consueverat ex animi magnificientia, orbem universum uni non debere pro voto principi magnifico sufficere, inscriptio tumuli talis extitit.

*Epitaphium regis Henrici II.*

Rog.Wend. “ Rex Henricus eram, mihi plurima regna subegi, Epitaph of  
ii. 445. Multiplicique modo<sup>7</sup> duxque comesque fui. Henry II.  
Cui satis ad votum non essent omnia terræ  
Climata, terra modo sufficit octo pedum.

<sup>1</sup> *octabis*] *ocabis*, MS.

<sup>5</sup> *ejusdem*] Interlined; *ipsius*, W.

<sup>2</sup> *apostolorum*] Supplied from W.

B. C. D.

B. C. D.

<sup>3</sup> *cirotecas*] *cireticas*, MS.

<sup>6</sup> *ut videretur . . . Deum*] Added

<sup>4</sup> *sceptrum*] *ceptrum*, MS.

in marg. and is in text of F.

<sup>7</sup> *modo*] Added in marg.

A.D. 1189. Qui legis hæc, pensa discrimina mortis, et in me,  
Humanæ speculum conditionis habe.”<sup>1</sup>

Laws established by him. Leges autem, quas idem rex ad utilitatem regni statuit, hoc in loco scriberem, si lectorem offendere pro prolixitate<sup>2</sup> non dubitarem.<sup>3</sup>

*Obiit Matildis, filia ejus.*

Death of Matilda, wife of the duke of Saxony. Per idem tempus Matildis, uxor ducis Saxonie et Rog. Wend. ejusdem regis filia, præ dolore hujus dicti infortunii, ut dicitur, defuncta est.

<sup>1</sup> *habe]* In the margin is added:

*Epithafium.*

*Item.* “Sufficit hic tumulus, eui non suffecerat orbis.” And below this is the following note : “Memento, quod hoc dietum a Pompeio Magna (*sic*) sumpsit exordium. Lucanus:—

“Cui non suffecerat orbis,  
Sufficit exciso defossa ex cespite  
terra,

Quinque pedum fabricata domus.”

There are no such lines in the *Pharsalia* of Lucan, but compare lib. x. 456.

In D. is a remarkable addition after the word *habe*, as follows : “Hi versu[m] ante obitum suum compoſiti, cum ante ipsum languentem et mortem exspectantem legerentur,

commendavit sententiam eorum, et benedixit compositori, dicens, ‘Michi bene competunt, et super tumulum michi ad futurorum informationem seribantur.’” In *Diceto*, col. 645, two additional lines are given to the epitaph in the text, and one more line to that cited in the note.

<sup>2</sup> *pro prolixitate]* Added in marg. Om. W. B. C.

<sup>3</sup> *si lectorem . . . dubitarem]* Instead of these words D. reads, “si lector non fastiditus aurem benignam accoom[m]odaret, sed ‘quid juvat in sterili spargere semen humo?’” A paragraph is then added relative to Matilda, mother of Henry II., and her epitaph ; and with this MS. D. ends.

END OF VOL. I.

LONDON :

Printed by GEORGE E. EYRE and WILLIAM SPOTTISWOODE,  
Printers to the Queen's most Excellent Majesty.

For Her Majesty's Stationery Office.

[197.—1000.—5/66.]

## LIST OF WORKS

PUBLISHED

By the late Record and State Paper Commissioners, or under the Direction of the Right Honourable the Master of the Rolls, which may be purchased of Messrs. Longman and Co., London; Messrs. James Parker and Co., Oxford and London; Messrs. Macmillan and Co., Cambridge and London; Messrs. A. and C. Black, Edinburgh; and Mr. A. Thom, Dublin.

---

### PUBLIC RECORDS AND STATE PAPERS.

ROTULORUM ORIGINALIUM IN CURIÂ SCACCARIÂ ABBREVIATIÂ. Henry III.—Edward III. *Edited by HENRY PLAYFORD, Esq.* 2 vols. folio (1805—1810). *Price 25s. boards, or 12s. 6d. each.*

CALENDARIUM INQUISITIONUM POST MORTEM SIVE ESCAETARUM. Henry III.—Richard III. *Edited by JOHN CALEY and JOHN BAYLEY, Esqrs.* Vols. 2, 3, and 4, folio (1806—1808; 1821—1828), boards : vols. 2 and 3, *price 21s. each; vol. 4, price 24s.*

LIBRORUM MANUSCRIPTORUM BIBLIOTHECÆ HARLEIANÆ CATALOGUS. Vol. 4. *Edited by the Rev. T. HARTWELL HORNE.* Folio (1812), boards. *Price 18s.*

ABBREVIATIO PLACITORUM, Richard I.—Edward II. *Edited by the Right Hon. GEORGE ROSE and W. ILLINGWORTH, Esq.* 1 vol. folio (1811), boards. *Price 18s.*

LIBRI CENSUALIS vocati DOMESDAY-BOOK, INDICES. *Edited by Sir HENRY ELLIS.* Folio (1816), boards (Domesday-Book, vol. 3). *Price 21s.*

LIBRI CENSUALIS vocati DOMESDAY-BOOK, ADDITAMENTA EX CODIC. ANTIQUISS. *Edited by Sir HENRY ELLIS.* Folio (1816), boards (Domesday-Book, vol. 4). *Price 21s.*

STATUTES OF THE REALM. *Edited by* Sir T. E. TOMLINS, JOHN RAITHBY, JOHN CALEY, and WM. ELLIOTT, Esqrs. Vols. 4 (in 2 parts), 7, 8, 9, 10, and 11, including 2 vols. of Indices, large folio (1819—1828). *Price* 31s. 6d. each; except the Alphabetical and Chronological Indices, *price* 30s. each.

VALOR ECCLESIASTICUS, temp. Henry VIII., Auctoritate Regia institutus. *Edited by* JOHN CALEY, Esq., and the Rev. JOSEPH HUNTER. Vols. 3 to 6, folio (1810, &c.), boards. *Price* 25s. each.

\* \* \* The Introduction is also published in 8vo., cloth. *Price* 2s. 6d.

ROTULI SCOTIÆ IN TURRI LONDINENSI ET IN DOMO CAPITULARI WEST-MONASTERIENSI ASSERVATI. 19 Edward I.—Henry VIII. *Edited by* DAVID MACPHERSON, JOHN CALEY, and W. ILLINGWORTH, Esqrs., and the Rev. T. HARTWELL HORNE. 2 vols. folio (1814—1819), boards. *Price* 42s.

“Fœdera, Conventiones, Litteræ,” &c.; or, Rymer’s Fœdera, New Edition, 1066—1377. Vol. 2, Part 2, and Vol. 3, Parts 1 and 2, folio (1821—1830). *Edited by* JOHN CALEY and FRED. HOLBROOKE, Esqrs. *Price* 21s. each Part.

DUCATUS LANCASTRIÆ CALENDARIUM INQUISITIONUM POST MORTEM, &c. Part 3, Calendar to the Pleadings, &c., Henry VII.—Ph. and Mary; and Calendar to the Pleadings, 1—13 Elizabeth. Part 4, Calendar to the Pleadings to end of Elizabeth. (1827—1834.) *Edited by* R. J. HARPER, JOHN CALEY, and WM. MINCHIN, Esqrs. Folio, boards, Part 3 (or Vol. 2), *price* 31s. 6d.; and Part 4 (or Vol. 3), *price* 21s.

CALENDARS OF THE PROCEEDINGS IN CHANCERY, IN THE REIGN OF QUEEN ELIZABETH; to which are prefixed, Examples of earlier Proceedings in that Court from Richard II. to Elizabeth, from the Originals in the Tower. *Edited by* JOHN BAYLEY, Esq. Vols. 2 and 3 (1830—1832), folio, boards, *price* 21s. each.

PARLIAMENTARY WRITS AND WRITS OF MILITARY SUMMONS, together with the Records and Muniments relating to the Suit and Service due and performed to the King’s High Court of Parliament and the Councils of the Realm. Edward I., II. *Edited by* Sir FRANCIS PALGRAVE. (1830—1834.) Folio, boards, Vol. 2, Division 1, Edward II., *price* 21s.; Vol. 2, Division 2, *price* 21s.; Vol. 2, Division 3, *price* 42s.

ROTULI LITTERARUM CLAUSARUM IN TURRI LONDINENSI ASSERVATI. 2 vols. folio (1833—1844). The first volume, 1204—1224. The second volume, 1224—1227. *Edited by* THOMAS DUFFUS HARDY, Esq. *Price* 81s., cloth; or separately, Vol. 1, *price* 63s.; Vol. 2, *price* 18s.

PROCEEDINGS AND ORDINANCES OF THE PRIVY COUNCIL OF ENGLAND. 10 Richard II.—33 Henry VIII. *Edited by Sir N. HARRIS NICOLAS.* 7 vols. royal 8vo. (1834—1837), cloth. *Price 98s.*; or separately, 14s. each.

ROTULI LITTERARUM PATENTIUM IN TURRI LONDINENSI ASSERVATI. 1201—1216. *Edited by THOMAS DUFFUS HARDY, Esq.* 1 vol. folio (1835), cloth. *Price 31s. 6d.*

\* \* \* The Introduction is also published in 8vo., cloth. *Price 9s.*

ROTULI CURIAE REGIS. Rolls and Records of the Court held before the King's Justiciars or Justices. 6 Richard I.—1 John. *Edited by Sir FRANCIS PALGRAVE.* 2 vols. royal 8vo. (1835), cloth. *Price 28s.*

ROTULI NORMANNIÆ IN TURRI LONDINENSI ASSERVATI. 1200—1205; also, 1417 to 1418. *Edited by THOMAS DUFFUS HARDY, Esq.* 1 vol. royal 8vo. (1835), cloth. *Price 12s. 6d.*

ROTULI DE OBLATIS ET FINIBUS IN TURRI LONDINENSI ASSERVATI, tempore Regis Johannis. *Edited by THOMAS DUFFUS HARDY, Esq.* 1 vol. royal 8vo. (1835), cloth. *Price 18s.*

EXCERPTA E ROTULIS FINIUM IN TURRI LONDINENSI ASSERVATIS. Henry III., 1216—1272. *Edited by CHARLES ROBERTS, Esq.* 2 vols. royal 8vo. (1835, 1836), cloth, *price 32s.*; or separately, Vol. 1, *price 14s.*; Vol. 2, *price 18s.*

FINES, SIVE PEDES FINIUM; SIVE FINALES CONCORDIÆ IN CURIA DOMINI REGIS. 7 Richard I.—16 John (1195—1214). *Edited by the Rev. JOSEPH HUNTER.* In Counties. 2 vols. royal 8vo. (1835—1844), cloth, *price 11s.*; or separately, Vol. 1, *price 8s. 6d.*; Vol. 2, *price 2s. 6d.*

ANCIENT KALENDARS AND INVENTORIES OF THE TREASURY OF HIS MAJESTY'S EXCHEQUER; together with Documents illustrating the History of that Repository. *Edited by Sir FRANCIS PALGRAVE.* 3 vols. royal 8vo. (1836), cloth. *Price 42s.*

DOCUMENTS AND RECORDS illustrating the History of Scotland, and the Transactions between the Crowns of Scotland and England; preserved in the Treasury of Her Majesty's Exchequer. *Edited by Sir FRANCIS PALGRAVE.* 1 vol. royal 8vo. (1837), cloth. *Price 18s.*

ROTULI CHARTARUM IN TURRI LONDINENSI ASSERVATI. 1199—1216. *Edited by THOMAS DUFFUS HARDY, Esq.* 1 vol. folio (1837), cloth. *Price 30s.*

REPORT OF THE PROCEEDINGS OF THE RECORD COMMISSIONERS, 1831 to 1837. 1 vol. folio, boards. *Price 8s.*

REGISTRUM vulgariter nuncupatum "The Record of Caernarvon," e codice MS. Harleiano, 696, descriptum. *Edited by* Sir HENRY ELLIS. 1 vol. folio (1838), cloth. *Price* 31*s.* 6*d.*

ANCIENT LAWS AND INSTITUTES OF ENGLAND; comprising Laws enacted under the Anglo-Saxon Kings, from Æthelbirht to Cnut, with an English Translation of the Saxon; the Laws called Edward the Confessor's; the Laws of William the Conqueror, and those ascribed to Henry the First; also, Monumenta Ecclesiastica Anglicana, from the 7th to the 10th century; and the Ancient Latin Version of the Anglo-Saxon Laws; with a compendious Glossary, &c. *Edited by* BENJAMIN THORPE, Esq. 1 vol. folio (1840), cloth. *Price* 40*s.* Or, 2 vols. royal 8vo. cloth. *Price* 30*s.*

ANCIENT LAWS AND INSTITUTES OF WALES; comprising Laws supposed to be enacted by Howel the Good; modified by subsequent Regulations under the Native Princes, prior to the Conquest by Edward the First; and anomalous Laws, consisting principally of Institutions which, by the Statute of Ruddlan, were admitted to continue in force. With an English Translation of the Welsh Text. To which are added, a few Latin Transcripts, containing Digests of the Welsh Laws, principally of the Dimetian Code. With Indices and Glossary. *Edited by* ANEURIN OWEN, Esq. 1 vol. folio (1841), cloth. *Price* 44*s.* Or, 2 vols. royal 8vo. cloth. *Price* 36*s.*

ROTULI DE LIBERATE AC DE MISIS ET PRÆSTITIS, Regnante Johanne. *Edited by* THOMAS DUFFUS HARDY, Esq. 1 vol. royal 8vo. (1844), cloth. *Price* 6*s.*

THE GREAT ROLLS OF THE PIPE FOR THE SECOND, THIRD, AND FOURTH YEARS OF THE REIGN OF KING HENRY THE SECOND, 1155—1158. *Edited by* the Rev. JOSEPH HUNTER. 1 vol. royal 8vo. (1844), cloth. *Price* 4*s.* 6*d.*

THE GREAT ROLL OF THE PIPE FOR THE FIRST YEAR OF THE REIGN OF KING RICHARD THE FIRST, 1189—1190. *Edited by* the Rev. JOSEPH HUNTER. 1 vol. royal 8vo. (1844), cloth. *Price* 6*s.*

DOCUMENTS ILLUSTRATIVE OF ENGLISH HISTORY in the 13th and 14th centuries, selected from the Records in the Exchequer. *Edited by* HENRY COLE, Esq. 1 vol. sep. folio (1844), cloth. *Price* 45*s.* 6*d.*

MODUS TENENDI PARLIAMENTUM. An Ancient Treatise on the Mode of holding the Parliament in England. *Edited by* THOMAS DUFFUS HARDY, Esq. 1 vol. 8vo. (1846), cloth. *Price* 2*s.* 6*d.*

MONUMENTA HISTORICA BRITANNICA, or, Materials for the History of Britain from the earliest period. Vol. 1, extending to the Norman Conquest. Prepared, and illustrated with Notes, by the late HENRY PETRIE, Esq., F.S.A., Keeper of the Records in the Tower of London, assisted by the Rev. JOHN SHARPE, Rector of Castle Eaton, Wilts. Finally completed for publication, and with an Introduction, by THOMAS DUFFUS HARDY, Esq., Assistant Keeper of Records. (Printed by command of Her Majesty.) Folio (1848). *Price 42s.*

REGISTRUM MAGNI SIGILLI REGUM SCOTORUM in Archivis Publicis asservatum. 1306—1424. *Edited by THOMAS THOMSON, Esq.* Folio (1814). *Price 15s.*

THE ACTS OF THE PARLIAMENTS OF SCOTLAND. 11 vols. folio (1814—1844). Vol. I. *Edited by THOMAS THOMSON and COSMO INNES, Esqrs.* *Price 42s.* Also, Vols. 4, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11; *price 10s. 6d.* each.

THE ACTS OF THE LORDS AUDITORS OF CAUSES AND COMPLAINTS. 1466—1494. *Edited by THOMAS THOMSON, Esq.* Folio (1839). *Price 10s. 6d.*

THE ACTS OF THE LORDS OF COUNCIL IN CIVIL CAUSES. 1478—1495. *Edited by THOMAS THOMSON, Esq.* Folio (1839). *Price 10s. 6d.*

ISSUE ROLL OF THOMAS DE BRANTINGHAM, Bishop of Exeter, Lord High Treasurer of England, containing Payments out of His Majesty's Revenue, 44 Edward III., 1370. *Edited by FREDERICK DEVON, Esq.* 1 vol. 4to. (1835), cloth. *Price 35s.* Or, royal 8vo. cloth. *Price 25s.*

ISSUES OF THE EXCHEQUER, containing similar matter to the above; James I.; extracted from the Pell Records. *Edited by FREDERICK DEVON, Esq.* 1 vol. 4to. (1836), cloth. *Price 30s.* Or, royal 8vo. cloth. *Price 21s.*

ISSUES OF THE EXCHEQUER, containing similar matter to the above; Henry III.—Henry VI.; extracted from the Pell Records. *Edited by FREDERICK DEVON, Esq.* 1 vol. 4to. (1837), cloth. *Price 40s.* Or, royal 8vo. cloth. *Price 30s.*

NOTES OF MATERIALS FOR THE HISTORY OF PUBLIC DEPARTMENTS. By F. S. THOMAS, Esq., Secretary of the Public Record Office. Demy folio (1846), cloth. *Price 10s.*

HANDBOOK TO THE PUBLIC RECORDS. By F. S. THOMAS, Esq. Royal 8vo. (1853), cloth. *Price 12s.*

STATE PAPERS, DURING THE REIGN OF HENRY THE EIGHTH : with Indices of Persons and Places. 11 vols., 4to. (1830—1852), cloth. Price 5*l.* 15*s.* 6*d.* ; or separately, price 10*s.* 6*d.* each.

Vol. I.—Domestic Correspondence.

Vols. II. & III.—Correspondence relating to Ireland.

Vols. IV. & V.—Correspondence relating to Scotland.

Vols. VI. to XI.—Correspondence between England and Foreign Courts.

HISTORICAL NOTES RELATIVE TO THE HISTORY OF ENGLAND ; from the Accession of Henry VIII. to the Death of Queen Anne (1509—1714). Designed as a Book of instant Reference for ascertaining the Dates of Events mentioned in History and Manuscripts. The Name of every Person and Event mentioned in History within the above period is placed in Alphabetical and Chronological Order, and the Authority whence taken is given in each case, whether from Printed History or from Manuscripts. By F. S. THOMAS, Esq. 3 vols. 8vo. (1856), cloth. Price 40*s.*

CALENDARIUM GENEALOGICUM ; for the Reigns of Henry III. and Edward I. Edited by CHARLES ROBERTS, Esq., Secretary of the Public Record Office. 2 vols. imperial 8vo. (1865), cloth. Price 15*s.* each.

---

## CALENDARS OF STATE PAPERS.

[IMPERIAL 8vo. *Price 15s.* each Volume or Part.]

CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS, DOMESTIC SERIES, OF THE REIGNS OF EDWARD VI., MARY, and ELIZABETH, preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office. *Edited by ROBERT LEMON, Esq., F.S.A.* 1856–1865.

Vol. I.—1547–1580.  
Vol. II.—1581–1590.

CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS, DOMESTIC SERIES, OF THE REIGN OF JAMES I., preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office. *Edited by MARY ANNE EVERETT GREEN.* 1857–1859.

Vol. I.—1603–1610.  
Vol. II.—1611–1618.  
Vol. III.—1619–1623.  
Vol. IV.—1623–1625, with Addenda.

CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS, DOMESTIC SERIES, OF THE REIGN OF CHARLES I., preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office. *Edited by JOHN BRUCE, Esq., F.S.A.* 1858–1866.

Vol. I.—1625–1626.  
Vol. II.—1627–1628.  
Vol. III.—1628–1629.  
Vol. IV.—1629–1631.  
Vol. V.—1631–1633.  
Vol. VI.—1633–1634.  
Vol. VII.—1634–1635.  
Vol. VIII.—1635.  
Vol. IX.—1635–1636.

CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS, DOMESTIC SERIES, OF THE REIGN OF CHARLES II., preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office. *Edited by MARY ANNE EVERETT GREEN.* 1860–1866.

Vol. I.—1660–1661.  
Vol. II.—1661–1662.  
Vol. III.—1663–1664.  
Vol. IV.—1664–1665.  
Vol. V.—1665–1666.  
Vol. VI.—1666–1667.  
Vol. VII.—1667.

CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS relating to SCOTLAND, preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office. *Edited by MARKHAM JOHN THORPE, Esq., of St. Edmund Hall, Oxford.* 1858.

Vol. I., the Scottish Series, of the Reigns of Henry VIII., Edward VI., Mary, and Elizabeth, 1509–1589.  
Vol. II., the Scottish Series, of the Reign of Elizabeth, 1589–1603; an Appendix to the Scottish Series, 1543–1592; and the State Papers relating to Mary Queen of Scots during her Detention in England, 1568–1587.

CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS relating to IRELAND, preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office. *Edited by HANS CLAUDE HAMILTON, Esq., F.S.A.* 1860.

Vol. I.—1509—1573.

CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS, COLONIAL SERIES, preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office, and elsewhere. *Edited by W. NOËL SAINSBURY, Esq.* 1860—1862.

Vol. I.—America and West Indies, 1574—1660.

Vol. II.—East Indies, China, and Japan, 1513—1616.

CALENDAR OF LETTERS AND PAPERS, FOREIGN AND DOMESTIC, OF THE REIGN OF HENRY VIII., preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office, the British Museum, &c. *Edited by J. S. BREWER, M.A., Professor of English Literature, King's College, London.* 1862—1864.

Vol. I.—1509—1514.

Vol. II. (in Two Parts)—1515—1518.

CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS, FOREIGN SERIES, OF THE REIGN OF EDWARD VI., preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office. *Edited by W. B. TURNBULL, Esq., of Lincoln's Inn, Barrister-at-Law, and Correspondant du Comité Impérial des Travaux Historiques et des Sociétés Savantes de France.* 1861.

CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS, FOREIGN SERIES, OF THE REIGN OF MARY, preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office. *Edited by W. B. TURNBULL, Esq., of Lincoln's Inn, Barrister-at-Law, and Correspondant du Comité Impérial des Travaux Historiques et des Sociétés Savantes de France.* 1861.

CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS, FOREIGN SERIES, OF THE REIGN OF ELIZABETH, preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office, &c. *Edited by the Rev. JOSEPH STEVENSON, M.A., of University College, Durham.* 1863—1865.

Vol. I.—1558—1559.

Vol. II.—1559—1560.

Vol. III.—1560—1561.

CALENDAR OF LETTERS, DESPATCHES, AND STATE PAPERS relating to the Negotiations between England and Spain, preserved in the Archives at Simancas, and elsewhere. *Edited by G. A. BERGENROTH.* 1862.

Vol. I.—Hen. VII.—1485—1509.

CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS AND MANUSCRIPTS, relating to ENGLISH AFFAIRS, preserved in the Archives of Venice, &c. *Edited by RAWDON BROWN, Esq.* 1864.

Vol. I.—1202—1509.

---

*In the Press.*

CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS relating to IRELAND, preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office. *Edited by HANS CLAUDE HAMILTON, Esq., F.S.A.* Vol. II.—1574—1585.

CALENDAR OF LETTERS AND PAPERS, FOREIGN AND DOMESTIC, OF THE REIGN OF HENRY VIII., preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office, the British Museum, &c. *Edited by J. S. BREWER, M.A., Professor of English Literature, King's College, London.* Vol. III.—1519—1523.

CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS AND MANUSCRIPTS, relating to ENGLISH AFFAIRS, preserved in the Archives of Venice, &c. *Edited by RAWDON BROWN, Esq.* Vol. II.—Henry VIII.

CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS, FOREIGN SERIES, OF THE REIGN OF ELIZABETH. *Edited by the Rev. JOSEPH STEVENSON, M.A., of University College, Durham.* Vol. IV.—1561—1562.

CALENDAR OF LETTERS, DESPATCHES, AND STATE PAPERS relating to the Negotiations between England and Spain, preserved in the Archives at Simancas, and elsewhere. *Edited by G. A. BERGENROTH.* Vol. II.—Henry VIII.

*In Progress.*

CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS, DOMESTIC SERIES, OF THE REIGN OF CHARLES I., preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office. *Edited by JOHN BRUCE, Esq., F.S.A.* Vol. X.—1636.

CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS, COLONIAL SERIES, preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office, and elsewhere. *Edited by W. NOËL SAINSBURY, Esq.* Vol. III.—East Indies, China, and Japan. 1617, &c.

CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS, DOMESTIC SERIES, OF THE REIGN OF ELIZABETH (continued), preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office. *Edited by MARY ANNE EVERETT GREEN.* 1591, &c.

THE CHRONICLES AND MEMORIALS OF GREAT BRITAIN  
AND IRELAND DURING THE MIDDLE AGES.

[ROYAL 8vo. Price 10s. each Volume or Part.]

1. THE CHRONICLE OF ENGLAND, by JOHN CAPGRAVE. *Edited by* the Rev. F. C. HINGESTON, M.A., of Exeter College, Oxford. 1858.
2. CHRONICON MONASTERII DE ABINGDON. Vols. I. and II. *Edited by* the Rev. JOSEPH STEVENSON, M.A., of University College, Durham, and Vicar of Leighton Buzzard. 1858.
3. LIVES OF EDWARD THE CONFESSOR. I.—La Estoire de Seint Aedward le Rei. II.—Vita Beati Edvardi Regis et Confessoris. III.—Vita Æduuardi Regis qui apud Westmonasterium requiescit. *Edited by* HENRY RICHARDS LUARD, M.A., Fellow and Assistant Tutor of Trinity College, Cambridge. 1858.
4. MONUMENTA FRANCISCANA ; scilicet, I.—Thomas de Eccleston de Adventu Fratrum Minorum in Angliam. II.—Ada de Marisco Epistolæ. III.—Registrum Fratrum Minorum Londoniæ. *Edited by* J. S. BREWER, M.A., Professor of English Literature, King's College, London. 1858.
5. FASCICULI ZIZANIORUM MAGISTRI JOHANNIS WYCLIF CUM TRITICO. Ascribed to THOMAS NETTER, of WALDEN, Provincial of the Carmelite Order in England, and Confessor to King Henry the Fifth. *Edited by* the Rev. W. W. SHIRLEY, M.A., Tutor and late Fellow of Wadham College, Oxford. 1858.
6. THE BUIK OF THE CRONICLIS OF SCOTLAND ; or, A Metrical Version of the History of Hector Boece ; by WILLIAM STEWART. Vols. I., II., and III. *Edited by* W. B. TURNBULL, Esq., of Lincoln's Inn, Barrister-at-Law. 1858.
7. JOHANNIS CAPGRAVE LIBER DE ILLUSTRIBUS HENRICIS. *Edited by* the Rev. F. C. HINGESTON, M.A., of Exeter College, Oxford. 1858.
8. HISTORIA MONASTERII S. AUGUSTINI CANTUARIENSIS, by THOMAS OF ELMHAM, formerly Monk and Treasurer of that Foundation. *Edited by* CHARLES HARDWICK, M.A., Fellow of St. Catharine's Hall, and Christian Advocate in the University of Cambridge. 1858.

9. EULOGIUM (HISTORIARUM SIVE TEMPORIS) : Chronicon ab Orbe condito usque ad Annum Domini 1366 ; a Monacho quodam Malmesbiriensi exaratum. Vols. I., II., and III. *Edited by* F. S. HAYDON, Esq., B.A. 1858-1863.
10. MEMORIALS OF HENRY THE SEVENTH : Bernardi Andreæ Tholosatis Vita Regis Henrici Septimi ; necnon alia quædam ad eundem Regem spectantia. *Edited by* JAMES GAIRDNER, Esq. 1858.
11. MEMORIALS OF HENRY THE FIFTH. I.—Vita Henrici Quinti, Roberto Redmanno auctore. II.—Versus Rhythmici in laudem Regis Henrici Quinti. III.—Elmhami Liber Metricus de Henrico V. *Edited by* C. A. COLE, Esq. 1858.
12. MUNIMENTA GILDHALLÆ LONDONIENSIS ; Liber Albus, Liber Custumarum, et Liber Horn, in archivis Gildhallæ asservati. Vol. I., Liber Albus. Vol. II. (in Two Parts), Liber Custumarum. Vol. III., Translation of the Anglo-Norman Passages in Liber Albus, Glossaries, Appendices, and Index. *Edited by* HENRY THOMAS RILER, Esq., M.A., Barrister-at-Law. 1859-1860.
13. CHRONICA JOHANNIS DE OXENEDES. *Edited by* Sir HENRY ELLIS, K.H. 1859.
14. A COLLECTION OF POLITICAL POEMS AND SONGS RELATING TO ENGLISH HISTORY, FROM THE ACCESSION OF EDWARD III. TO THE REIGN OF HENRY VIII. Vols. I. and II. *Edited by* THOMAS WRIGHT, Esq., M.A. 1859-1861.
15. The "OPUS TERTIUM," "OPUS MINUS," &c., of ROGER BACON. *Edited by* J. S. BREWER, M.A., Professor of English Literature, King's College, London. 1859.
16. BARTHOLOMÆI DE COTTON, MONACHI NORWICENSIS, HISTORIA ANGLICANA. 449-1298. *Edited by* HENRY RICHARDS LUARD, M.A., Fellow and Assistant Tutor of Trinity College, Cambridge. 1859.
17. BRUT Y TYWYSOGION ; or, The Chronicle of the Princes of Wales. *Edited by* the Rev. J. WILLIAMS AB ITHEL. 1860.
18. A COLLECTION OF ROYAL AND HISTORICAL LETTERS DURING THE REIGN OF HENRY IV. *Edited by* the Rev. F. C. HINGESTON, M.A., of Exeter College, Oxford. 1860.
19. THE REPRESSOR OF OVER MUCH BLAMING OF THE CLERGY. By REGINALD PECKOCK, sometime Bishop of Chichester. Vols. I. and II. *Edited by* CHURCHILL BABINGTON, B.D., Fellow of St. John's College, Cambridge. 1860.
20. ANNALES CAMBRIÆ. *Edited by* the Rev. J. WILLIAMS AB ITHEL. 1860.

21. THE WORKS OF GIRALDUS CAMBRENSIS. Vols. I., II., and III. *Edited by J. S. BREWER, M.A., Professor of English Literature, King's College, London.* 1861–1863.
22. LETTERS AND PAPERS ILLUSTRATIVE OF THE WARS OF THE ENGLISH IN FRANCE DURING THE REIGN OF HENRY THE SIXTH, KING OF ENGLAND. Vol. I., and Vol. II. (in Two Parts). *Edited by the Rev. JOSEPH STEVENSON, M.A., of University College, Durham, and Vicar of Leighton Buzzard.* 1861–1864.
23. THE ANGLO-SAXON CHRONICLE, ACCORDING TO THE SEVERAL ORIGINAL AUTHORITIES. Vol. I., Original Texts. Vol. II., Translation. *Edited and translated by BENJAMIN THORPE, Esq., Member of the Royal Academy of Sciences at Munich, and of the Society of Netherlandish Literature at Leyden.* 1861.
24. LETTERS AND PAPERS ILLUSTRATIVE OF THE REIGNS OF RICHARD III. AND HENRY VII. Vols. I. and II. *Edited by JAMES GAIRDNER, Esq.* 1861–1863.
25. LETTERS OF BISHOP GROSSETESTE, illustrative of the Social Condition of his Time. *Edited by HENRY RICHARDS LUARD, M.A., Fellow and Assistant Tutor of Trinity College, Cambridge.* 1861.
26. DESCRIPTIVE CATALOGUE OF MANUSCRIPTS RELATING TO THE HISTORY OF GREAT BRITAIN AND IRELAND. Vol. I. (in Two Parts); Anterior to the Norman Invasion. Vol. II.; 1066–1200. *By THOMAS DUFFUS HARDY, Esq., Deputy Keeper of the Public Recrds.* 1862–1865.
27. ROYAL AND OTHER HISTORICAL LETTERS ILLUSTRATIVE OF THE REIGN OF HENRY III. From the Originals in the Public Record Office. Vol. I., 1216–1235. Vol. II., 1236–1272. *Selected and edited by the Rev. W. W. SHIRLEY, D.D., Regius Professor in Ecclesiastical History, and Canon of Christ Church, Oxford.* 1862–1866.
28. CHRONICA MONASTERII S. ALBANI.—1. THOMÆ WALSINGHAM HISTORIA ANGLICANA; Vol. I., 1272–1381: Vol. II., 1381–1422.  
2. WILLELMI RISHANGER CHRONICA ET ANNALES, 1259–1307.  
3. JOHANNIS DE TROKELOWE ET HENRICI DE BLANEFORDE CHRONICA ET ANNALES, 1259–1296; 1307–1324; 1392–1406. *Edited by HENRY THOMAS RILEY, Esq., M.A., of Corpus Christi College, Cambridge, and of the Inner Temple, Barrister-at-Law.* 1863–1866.
29. CHRONICON ABBATIÆ EVESHAMENSIS, AUCTORIBUS DOMINICO PRIORE EVESHAMÆ ET THOMA DE MARLEBERGE ABBATE, A FUNDATIONE AD ANNUM 1213, UNA CUM CONTINUATIONE AD ANNUM 1418. *Edited by the Rev. W. D. MACRAY, M.A., Bodleian Library, Oxford.* 1863.

30. RICARDI DE CIRENCESTRIA SPECULUM HISTORIALE DE GESTIS REGUM ANGLIÆ. Vol. I., 447-871. *Edited by JOHN E. B. MAYOR, M.A.*, Fellow and Assistant Tutor of St. John's College, Cambridge. 1863.
31. YEAR BOOKS OF THE REIGN OF EDWARD THE FIRST. Years 30-31, and 32-33. *Edited and translated by ALFRED JOHN HORWOOD, Esq.*, of the Middle Temple, Barrister-at-Law. 1863-1864.
32. NARRATIVES OF THE EXPULSION OF THE ENGLISH FROM NORMANDY, 1449-1450.—Robertus Blondelli de Reductione Normanniæ: Le Recouvrement de Normendie, par Berry, Herault du Roy: Conferences between the Ambassadors of France and England. *Edited, from MSS. in the Imperial Library at Paris, by the Rev. JOSEPH STEVENSON, M.A.*, of University College, Durham. 1863.
33. HISTORIA ET CARTULARIUM MONASTERII S. PETRI GLOUCESTRÆ. Vols. I. and II. *Edited by W. H. HART, Esq., F.S.A.*; Membre correspondant de la Société des Antiquaires de Normandie. 1863-1865.
34. ALEXANDRI NECKAM DE NATURIS RERUM LIBRI DUO; with NECKAM'S POEM, DE LAUDIBUS DIVINÆ SAPIENTIÆ. *Edited by THOMAS WRIGHT, Esq., M.A.* 1863.
35. LEECHDOMS, WORTCUNNING, AND STARCRAFT OF EARLY ENGLAND; being a Collection of Documents illustrating the History of Science in this Country before the Norman Conquest. Vols. I. and II. *Collected and edited by the Rev. T. OSWALD COCKAYNE, M.A.*, of St. John's College, Cambridge. 1864-1865.
36. ANNALES MONASTICI. Vol. I.:—Annales de Margan, 1066-1232; Annales de Theokesberia, 1066-1263; Annales de Burton, 1004-1263. Vol. II.:—Annales Monasterii de Wintonia, 519-1277; Annales Monasterii de Waverleia, 1-1291. *Edited by HENRY RICHARDS LUARD, M.A.*, Fellow and Assistant Tutor of Trinity College, and Registrar of the University, Cambridge. 1864-1865.
37. MAGNA VITA S. HUGONIS EPISCOPI LINCOLNIENSIS. From Manuscripts in the Bodleian Library, Oxford, and the Imperial Library, Paris. *Edited by the Rev. JAMES F. DIMOCK, M.A.*, Rector of Barnburgh, Yorkshire. 1864.
38. CHRONICLES AND MEMORIALS OF THE REIGN OF RICHARD THE FIRST. Vol. I.:—ITINERARIUM PEREGRINORUM ET GESTA REGIS RICARDI. Vol. II.:—EPISTOLÆ CANTUARIENSES; the Letters of the Prior and Convent of Christ Church, Canterbury; 1187 to 1199. *Edited by WILLIAM STUBBS, M.A.*, Vicar of Navestock, Essex, and Lambeth Librarian. 1864-1865.

39. RECUEIL DES CRONIQUES ET ANCHIENNES ISTORIES DE LA GRANT BRETAIGNE A PRESENT NOMME ENGLETERRE, par JEHAN DE WAURIN. From Albina to 688. *Edited by WILLIAM HARDY, Esq., F.S.A.* 1864.
40. A COLLECTION OF THE CHRONICLES AND ANCIENT HISTORIES OF GREAT BRITAIN, NOW CALLED ENGLAND, by JOHN DE WAVRIN. From Albina to 688. (Translation of the preceding.) *Edited and translated by WILLIAM HARDY, Esq., F.S.A.* 1864.
41. POLYCHRONICON RANULPHI HIGDEN, with Trevisa's Translation. Vol. I. *Edited by CHURCHILL BABINGTON, B.D., Senior Fellow of St. John's College, Cambridge.* 1865.
42. LE LIVERE DE REIS DE BRITTANIE E LE LIVERE DE REIS DE ENGLETERE. *Edited by JOHN GLOVER, M.A., Vicar of Brading, Isle of Wight, formerly Librarian of Trinity College, Cambridge.* 1865.
43. CHRONICA MONASTERII DE MELSA, AB ANNO 1150 USQUE AD ANNUM 1400. Vol. I. *Edited by EDWARD AUGUSTUS BOND, Esq., Assistant Keeper of the Department of Manuscripts, and Egerton Librarian, British Museum.* 1866.
44. MATTHÆI PARISIENSIS HISTORIA ANGLORUM, SIVE, UT VULGO DICITUR, HISTORIA MINOR. Vols. I. and II. *Edited by Sir FREDERICK MADDEN, K.H., Keeper of the Department of Manuscripts, British Museum.* 1866.

### *In the Press.*

THE WARS OF THE DANES IN IRELAND: written in the Irish language. *Edited by the Rev. J. H. TODD, D.D., Senior Fellow of Trinity College, Dublin.*

A COLLECTION OF SAGAS AND OTHER HISTORICAL DOCUMENTS relating to the Settlements and Descents of the Northmen on the British Isles. *Edited by GEORGE WEBBE DASENT, Esq., D.C.L. Oxon.*

OFFICIAL CORRESPONDENCE OF THOMAS BEKYNTON, SECRETARY TO HENRY VI., with other LETTERS and DOCUMENTS. *Edited by the Rev. GEORGE WILLIAMS, B.D., Senior Fellow of King's College, Cambridge.*

ORIGINAL DOCUMENTS ILLUSTRATIVE OF ACADEMICAL AND CLERICAL LIFE AND STUDIES AT OXFORD BETWEEN THE REIGNS OF HENRY III. AND HENRY VII. *Edited by the Rev. HENRY ANSTEY, M.A.*

ROLL OF THE PRIVY COUNCIL OF IRELAND, 16 RICHARD II. *Edited by the Rev. JAMES GRAVES, A.B., Treasurer of St. Canice, Ireland.*

RICARDI DE CIRENCESTRIA SPECULUM HISTORIALE DE GESTIS REGUM ANGLIÆ. Vol. II., 872-1066. *Edited by JOHN E. B. MAYOR, M.A., Fellow and Assistant Tutor of St. John's College, and Librarian of the University, Cambridge.*

THE WORKS OF GIRALDUS CAMBRENSIS. Vol. IV. *Edited by J. S. BREWER, M.A., Professor of English Literature, King's College, London.*

CHRONICON RADULPHI ABBATIS COGGESHALENSIS MAJUS; and, CHRONICON TERRÆ SANCTÆ ET DE CAPTIS A SALADINO HIEROSOLYMIS. *Edited by the Rev. JOSEPH STEVENSON, M.A., of University College, Durham.*

YEAR BOOKS OF THE REIGN OF EDWARD THE FIRST. 20th, 21st, and 22nd Years. *Edited and translated by ALFRED JOHN HORWOOD, Esq., of the Middle Temple, Barrister-at-Law.*

RECUEIL DES CRONIQUES ET ANCHIENNES ISTORIES DE LA GRANT BRETAIGNE A PRESENT NOMME ENGLETERRE, par JEHAN DE WAURIN (continued). *Edited by WILLIAM HARDY, Esq., F.S.A.*

POLYCHRONICON RANULPHI HIGDEN, with Trevisa's Translation. Vol. II. *Edited by CHURCHILL BABINGTON, B.D., Senior Fellow of St. John's College, Cambridge.*

ITER BRITANNIARUM : THE PORTION OF THE ANTONINE ITINERARY OF THE ROMAN EMPIRE RELATING TO GREAT BRITAIN. *Edited by WILLIAM HENRY BLACK, Esq., F.S.A.*

ANNALES MONASTICI. Vol. III. *Edited by HENRY RICHARDS LUARD, M.A., Fellow and Assistant Tutor of Trinity College, and Registrar of the University, Cambridge.*

HISTORIA ET CARTULARIUM MONASTERII S. PETRI GLOUCESTRÆ. Vol. III. *Edited by W. H. HART, Esq., F.S.A.; Membre correspondant de la Société des Antiquaires de Normandie.*

LIBER DE HYDA : A CHRONICLE AND CHARTULARY OF HYDE ABBEY, WINCHESTER. *Edited, from a Manuscript in the Library of the Earl of Macclesfield, by EDWARD EDWARDS, Esq.*

CHRONICLE ATTRIBUTED TO BENEDICT, ABBOT OF PETERBOROUGH. *Edited by WILLIAM STUBBS, M.A., Vicar of Navestock, Essex, and Lambeth Librarian.*

LEECHDOMS, WORTCUNNING, AND STARCRAFT OF EARLY ENGLAND ; being a Collection of Documents illustrating the History of Science in this Country before the Norman Conquest. Vol. III. *Collected and edited by the Rev. T. OSWALD COCKAYNE, M.A., of St. John's College, Cambridge.*

CHRONICON SCOTORUM : A CHRONICLE OF IRISH AFFAIRS, from the EARLIEST TIMES to 1135. *Edited and translated by W. MAUNSELL HENNESSY, Esq., M.R.I.A.*

CHRONIQUE DE PIERRE DE LANGTOFT. *Edited by THOMAS WRIGHT, Esq., M.A.*

CHRONICA MONASTERII DE MELSA, AB ANNO 1150 USQUE AD ANNUM 1400. Vol. II. *Edited by EDWARD AUGUSTUS BOND, Esq., Assistant Keeper of the Department of Manuscripts, and Egerton Librarian, British Museum.*

CHRONICA MONASTERII S. ALBANI.—4. GESTA ABBATUM MONASTERII S. ALBANI, A MATTHÆO PARIS, THOMA WALSHAM, ET QUODAM AUCTORE ANONYMO CONSCRIPTA. *Edited by HENRY THOMAS RILEY, Esq., M.A., of Corpus Christi College, Cambridge, and of the Inner Temple, Barrister-at-Law.*

MATTHÆI PARISIENSIS HISTORIA ANGLORUM, SIVE, UT VULGO DICITUR, HISTORIA MINOR. Vol. III. *Edited by Sir FREDERICK MADDEN, K.H., Keeper of the Department of Manuscripts, British Museum.*

---

### *In Progress.*

DOCUMENTS RELATING TO ENGLAND AND SCOTLAND, FROM THE NORTHERN REGISTERS. *Edited by the Rev. JAMES RAINES, M.A., of Durham University.*

WILLELMI MALMESBIRIENSIS DE GESTIS PONTIFICUM ANGLORUM, LIBRI V. *Edited, from William of Malmesbury's Autograph MS., by N. E. S. A. HAMILTON, Esq., of the Department of Manuscripts, British Museum.*

CHRONICLE OF ROBERT OF BRUNNE. *Edited by FREDERICK JAMES FURNIVALL, Esq., M.A., of Trinity Hall, Cambridge, Barrister-at-Law.*

DESCRIPTIVE CATALOGUE OF MANUSCRIPTS RELATING TO THE HISTORY OF GREAT BRITAIN AND IRELAND. Vol. III.; 1201, &c. *By THOMAS DUFFUS HARDY, Esq., Deputy Keeper of the Public Records.*

---

*May 1866.*

466-55







